



DELHI UNIVERSITY  
LIBRARY

RATAN TATA

LIBRARY

## RATAN TATA LIBRARY

( Delhi University Library System )

Cl. No. 221: 222

DA

c. No. 489987

**Date of release for loan**

This book should be returned on or before the date last stamped below. An overdue charge of Six nP. will be charged for each day the book is kept overtime.

[illegible]





# BIBLIOTHECA INDICA:

A

COLLECTION OF ORIENTAL WORKS

PUBLISHED BY

THE ASIATIC SOCIETY OF BENGAL

NEW SERISE, Nos. 700, 706, 810, 872, 890, 947, 1058, 1076,  
& 1104.

---

THE

## MĀRKANDEYA PURĀṆA

TRANSLATED WITH NOTES

BY

F. EDEN PARGITER, B.A.

*Indian Civil Service;*

*Judge of the High Court of Judicature, Calcutta;*

*Late Boden Sanskrit Scholar, Oxford.*

INDOLOGICAL BOOK HOUSE

1675, DAKHNI RAI STREET,  
SUBHASH MARG,  
DELHI-6

CK 34/10 NEPALI KHAPRA,  
POST BOX NO. 98  
VARANASI

INDIA

1969

**PUBLISHED BY :**

**S.B. SINGH**

**INDOLOGICAL BOOK HOUSE**

**VARANASI**

**ALL RIGHTS RESERVED**

**PRICE RS. 60/-**

**PRINTED BY TODAY & TOMORROW'S PRINTERS & PUBLISHERS  
FARIDABAD, INDIA.**

## PREFACE.

This translation of the Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa was undertaken by me for the Asiatic Society of Bengal many years ago, when I hoped to be able to carry it through in no long period ; but onerous official duties left little leisure, and for years removed me to a distance from the Society's Library and other means of reference. The Society was reluctant that the translation should be dropped, and it has therefore been continued as well as leisure permitted. It is hoped that in spite of these difficulties the translation may be of service to scholars, and the notes with all their shortcomings not unwelcome.

CALCUTTA :

*3rd December, 1904.*

F. E. P.



## INTRODUCTION.

This translation of the *Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa* being made for the Asiatic Society of Bengal naturally follows the edition of this work prepared by the Rev. Dr. K. M. Banerjea, and published in the *Bibliotheca Indica* in 1862; yet other editions and some MSS. have been consulted and are referred to. The translation has been kept as close to the original as possible, consistently with English sense and idiom; for a translation loses some of its interest and much of its trustworthiness, when the reader can never know whether it reproduces the original accurately or only the purport of the original. The time during which the work has been in hand has rendered it difficult to maintain one system of transliteration throughout; but, in order to place the whole in a consistent state, the system established by the Royal Asiatic Society and approved by the Asiatic Society of Bengal has been adopted in the Index and in this Introduction.

The general character of this *Purāṇa* has been well summed up by Prof. Wilson in his preface to his Translation of the *Viṣṇu Purāṇa*, except that his description hardly applies to the *Devi-māhātmya*. "This *Purāṇa* has a character different from that of all the others. It has nothing of a sectarian spirit, little of a religious tone; rarely inserting prayers and invocations to any deity; and such as are inserted are brief and moderate. It deals little in precepts, ceremonial or moral. Its leading feature is narrative; and it presents an uninterrupted succession of legends, most of which when ancient are embellished with new circumstances, and when new partake so far of the spirit of the old, that they are disinterested creations of the imagination, having no particular motive, being designed to recommend no special doctrine or observance. Whether they are derived from any other source, or whether they are original inventions, it is not possible to ascertain. They are most probably, for the greater part at least, original; and the whole has been narrated in the compiler's own manner; a manner superior to that of the *Purāṇas* in general, with exception of the *Bhāgavata*."

### *Composition.*

The *Purāṇa* is clearly divisible (as Dr. Banerjea noticed) into five distinct parts, namely :—

1. Cantos 1-9, in which Jaimini is referred by Mārkaṇḍeya to the wise Birds, and they directly explain to him the four questions that perplexed him and some connected matters.

2. Cantos 10-44, where, though Jaimini propounds further questions to the Birds and they nominally expound them, yet the real speakers are Sumati, nicknamed Jaḍa, and his father.

3. Cantos 45-81: here, though Jaimini and the Birds are the nominal speakers, yet the real speakers are Mārkaṇḍeya and his disciple Krauṣṭuki.

4. Cantos 82-92, the *Devī-māhātmya*, a pure interpolation, in which the real speaker is a ṛṣi named Medhas, and which is only repeated by Mārkaṇḍeya.

5. Cantos 93-136, where Mārkaṇḍeya and Krauṣṭuki carry on their discourse from canto 81.

The 137th canto concludes the work; it is a necessary corollary to the first part.

There can be no doubt that only the third and fifth of these parts constituted the *Purāṇa* in its original shape as Mārkaṇḍeya's *Purāṇa*. The name would imply that originally Mārkaṇḍeya was the chief figure, and it is only in the third part that he appears as the real teacher. There is, however, clearer evidence that the *Purāṇa* began with the third part originally, for this is asserted almost positively in canto 45, verses 16 to 25. There Mārkaṇḍeya, after declaring that this *Purāṇa*, equally with the Vedas, issued from Brahmā's mouth, says—"I will now tell it to thee . . . . Hear all this from me . . . . as I formerly heard it when Dakṣa related it." These words plainly mean that the true *Purāṇa* began here; or, if the necessary words of introduction be prefixed, that it began at verse 16 or 17, which verses have been slightly modified since in order to dovetail them into the preceding portion.

The first and second parts were composed afterwards and then prefixed to the *Purāṇa* proper. That they were later compositions is implied by the fact that the Birds recite the *Purāṇa* proper as an

authority, and is indeed indicated by the origin attributed to them. While the original Purāṇa was proclaimed to be a revelation from Brahmā himself, no higher authority is claimed for the first and second parts than Mārkaṇḍeya and the unknown brahman Sumati Jaḍa. Further, mention is made in canto 20, verse 33, of Purāṇas which narrate Viṣṇu's manifestations. This expression is vague. If it means lengthy descriptions of some of the incarnations, such Purāṇas might be the Viṣṇu, Brahma-vaivarta, Brahma and Bhāgavata; but the last two were pronounced by Prof. Wilson to be late compositions, and the reference here may be to the former two only, to which he assigned about an equal date with this Purāṇa. There is nothing definite to show whether the first and second parts had been united before they were prefixed to the Purāṇa proper, or whether the second part was inserted after the first had been prefixed; yet it would seem more probable that they had been united before they were prefixed. There is a marked similarity between them.

The prefixing of the discourses delivered by the Birds to the Purāṇa proper raised the Birds to the primary and chief position and tended to derogate from Mārkaṇḍeya's pre-eminence; but clashing was avoided and Mārkaṇḍeya's supremacy was preserved by two expedients; *first*, he was introduced at the very beginning in order that he might expressly declare the wisdom and authority of the Birds; and *secondly*, the original Purāṇa was interfered with as little as possible by making the Birds repeat it in its entirety as Mārkaṇḍeya's teaching, conclusive upon the subjects dealt with in it. The Birds on beginning it retire from further notice, but reappear with Jaimini in the final canto to conclude their discourse and give consistency to the combined instruction. This was a termination rendered necessary by the prefixing of the first two parts to the original Purāṇa.

The second part appears to have been amplified beyond its primary scope. It discourses about birth and death, about the hells, about sins and their punishments and about yoga or religious devotion. All these subjects are briefly dealt with, though the description of the different hells is ampler than in other Purāṇas, but the last subject leads to a discursive exposition. If dealt with like the other subjects, the exposition would pass from canto 16, verse 12



immediately to canto 37, where king Alarka is driven by adversity to seek Dattātreyā's advice and that ṛṣi expounds the doctrines of yoga to him in cantos 38 to 43, and the story naturally closes with canto 44. But the reference to that king and that ṛṣi was considered to require some elucidation at canto 16, verse 13, hence the story of Dattātreyā and the story of Alarka's parents Ṛtadhvaja and Madālasā are made the introduction to the direct exposition of yoga, with the result that the digression is so long that, when the subject of yoga is reached, its connexion with Jaimini's questions has been lost to sight; and even the passage from the story of Dattātreyā to that of Alarka at the end of canto 19 is inapt and abrupt.

Both these stories moreover appear in their turn to have been expanded beyond their natural course. The story of the brahman and his devoted wife in canto 16, which furnishes an unnecessary explanation of the birth of Dattātreyā, is a story of common town life, an absurd anachronism compared with what it explains; and it seems with its reference to a temple dedicated to Anasūyā during her life-time to be an interpolation intended for her glorification. The story of Ṛtadhvaja and Madālasā is a charming one of simple marvel and runs its natural course in cantos 20 to 27 as far as Madālasā's instruction of her son Alarka in kingly duties; but the following cantos 28 to 35, in which she expounds the laws regarding brahmans, śrāddhas, custom, &c., hardly accord with the story or with her position and knowledge, and seem to be an interpolation. Some teaching on such matters being deemed desirable, here was the only place where the addition was possible.

The *Devī-māhātmya* stands entirely by itself as a later interpolation. It is a poem complete in itself. Its subject and the character attributed to the goddess shew that it is the product of a later age which developed and took pleasure in the sanguinary features of popular religion. The praise of the goddess *Mahā-māyā* in canto 81 is in the ordinary style. Her special glorification begins in canto 82, and is elaborated with the most extravagant laudation and the most miraculous imagination. Some of the hymns breathe deep religious feeling, express enthusiastic adoration, and evince fervent spiritual meditation. On the other hand, the descriptions of the battles abound with wild and repulsive incidents, and revel in gross and amazing

fancies. The *Devi-māhātmya* is a compound of the most opposite characters. The religious out-pourings are at times pure and elevated : the material descriptions are absurd and debased.

The ending of the *Purāṇa* deserves notice. It closes with the exploits of king Dama. According to the *Gauḍiya* or *Bengal MSS*, which Dr. Banerjea followed, the *Purāṇa* ends abruptly in canto 136, leaving Dama acquiescing tamely in the flight of his father's murderer *Vapuṣmat*. The up-country version (the ending of which he placed in an appendix) is found in the *Bombay* and *Poona* editions and carries the story on till Dama takes vengeance on *Vapuṣmat*. Dr. Banerjea considered the abruptness and incompleteness were strong evidence of the genuineness of the *Bengal* ending ; and no doubt that is a fair argument, but it overlooks the character of the two endings. The pusillanimity which that ending ascribes to Dama jars with the whole tone of his threat in canto 135 which both versions account genuine. On the other hand the up-country ending narrates the fulfilment of that threat, and the savage and even inhuman incidents which it mentions are hardly explicable if it is spurious, for Dama after killing *Vapuṣmat* used *Vapuṣmat*'s blood and flesh for the oblations due to his murdered father, and also (it is implied) gave certain degraded brahmans a cannibal feast. A forger would not wish nor dare to invent in his eulogy of one of the kings such repulsive incidents, desecrating the most sacred rites and tenets of his religion, nor if we can imagine such a forgery did occur, could it have ever obtained even tolerance. It is impossible, therefore, to think that the up-country ending is a forgery ; and if it be the true original, one can easily understand why such an ending should have been struck out, and how the reviser, unable to invent or palm off a new ending, had to bring the story to the abrupt and jejune conclusion of the *Bengal* version. The up-country ending has, therefore, been adopted as the true version in this translation, and the *Bengal* ending has been noticed separately. The former discloses, like stray passages elsewhere, that savagery was not absent from the earliest memories of the *Aryans* in *India*.

For the purpose of discussing the *Purāṇa* further, it will be convenient to consider the first and second parts as composing one Section, and the third and fifth parts as composing another Section ;

and this division will be observed in what follows. The *Devi-māhātmya* constitutes a Section by itself.

*Place of Origin.*

With regard to the question of the place of its origin, the *Purāṇa* in both its Sections professes to have emanated from Western India.

The second Section as the oldest may be considered first. In canto 45, vs. 24 and 25, Mārkaṇḍeya says positively that Cyavana was the ṛṣi who first declared it: Cyavana obtained it from Bhṛgu and declared it to the ṛṣis, they repeated it to Dakṣa and Mārkaṇḍeya learnt it from Dakṣa. Now Cyavana is intimately associated with the west of India, especially with the region about the mouths of the rivers Narmadā and Tapti. His father Bhṛgu and their descendants Ṛcika, Jamadagni and Paraśu Rāma are connected in many a legend with all the country north, east and south of that region. That was the territory of the Bhārgava race (see pp. 310 and 368). As Cyavana settled near the mouths of those rivers, the *Purāṇa* itself claims to have been first declared by him in that region.

Mārkaṇḍeya himself was a Bhārgava. This is stated in canto 45, v. 18 and canto 52 vs. 14-17; and also in the *Mahā-bhārata*, Vana-p. ccxvi. 14104-5. The Bhārgavas spread from Cyavana's region, especially eastward along the valleys of the Narmadā and Tapti, as those valleys were gradually wrested from the hill races by the Yādavas and Haihayas, the most famous conquerors of which race were Arjuna Kārtavīrya and Jyāmagha. The former reigned in Māhiṣmatī on the Narmadā; and the latter apparently conquered further eastward (see M. Bh., Vana-p. cxvi., Śānti-p. xlix; Hari-V., xxxiii. 1850-90, and xxxvii. 1980-87; Viṣṇu P., cli-clxxiv; and Matsya P. xliii.-13-51 and xlv. 28-36). Mārkaṇḍeya is said to have paid visits to the Pāṇḍavas and to have had a tirtha at the junction of the Ganges and Gomatī (M. Bh., Vana-p. lxxxiv. 8058-9), but his special abode appears to have been on the river Payoṣṇī (the modern Purnā and its continuation in the Tapti, see p. 299) (*id.* lxxxviii. 8330). Both by lineage and by residence therefore he belonged to that western country, and the original *Purāṇa* must have been composed there. Bhārgavas are continually alluded to throughout the *Purāṇa*.

As regards the first Section, it is said the Birds, to whom Jaimini was referred, were living in the Vindhya mountains, and it was there that they delivered the Purāṇa to him. They are explained of course to be four brahman brothers in a state of transmigration, and it appears to be implied in canto 3, vs. 22-24, that their father, the muni Sukṛṣa, dwelt on or near the Vindhya. He had a brother named Tumburu. There were other persons of this name, such as Tumburu who was a guru among the Gandharvas (see pp. 571, 647, 648, and 118 as corrected; and M. Bh., Sabhā-p. li. 1881.) ; but it seems permissible to connect this brother Tumburu with the tribes of the names Tumbura and Tumbula who dwelt on the slopes of the Vindhya (p. 343).

The Birds are said to have dwelt in the Vindhya in a cave, where the water was very sacred (p. 17), and which was sprinkled with drops of water from the river Narmadā (p. 19); and it is no doubt allowable to infer the situation from these indications, namely, some cliffs of the Vindhya hills where those hills abut on the river Narmadā at a very sacred tirtha. Such a spot cannot be sought above the modern Hoshangabad, for the river above that was encompassed in early times by hills, dense forest and wild tribes. Among the very sacred places where the Vindhya hills on the north approach close to the river, none satisfies the conditions better than the rocky island and town of Mandhātā, which is to be identified with Māhiṣmati, the ancient and famous Haihaya capital. The modern town of Mahesar, some fifty miles lower down the river, claims to be the ancient Māhiṣmati, but does not satisfy the allusions. Māhiṣmati was situated on an island in the river and the palace looked out on the rushing stream (Raghu-V., vi. 43). This description agrees only with Mandhātā. Māhiṣmati was sacred to Agni in the earliest times (M. Bh., Sabhā-p. 1125-63). Mandhātā has special claims to sanctity; it has very ancient remains; it has become sacred to Śiva, and the famous shrine of Ōmkāra and other temples dedicated to him are here (Hunter, Impl. Gaz., "Mandhātā."). The hills close in on the river here, and on the north bank are Jain temples. In these hills on the north bank overlooking the river at Mandhātā we may place the alleged cave where the first part of the Purāṇa professes that it was delivered; and this identification will be found to explain many further features of the Purāṇa

With regard to the second part it may be noticed that Sumati Jaḍa, whose words the Birds repeat, belonged also to the family of Bhṛgu (p. 68). Hence this part belonged to the same region where the Bhārgavas predominated. With this view agrees the statement that the rainy season lasts four months and the dry season eight months (p. 147), as I understand is the rule in this region. It is further worthy of note that eyes of blue colour, like the blue water-lily (*nilotpala*) are given to Lakṣmī (p. 104) and to Madālasā (p. 114); and such a comparison is rare, I believe, in Sanskrit. It was (may it be inferred?) in Western India that people with blue eyes could have been seen as visitors in circumstances of such appreciation that their features became a model of beauty.

There are some other matters that might have been expected to yield information of a local character, such as the lists of various trees, plants, birds and animals (pp. 24-31, 164-6 and 244-5) and the peculiar exposition of the construction and nomenclature of fortresses (pp. 240-2). I have, however, been unable to deduce any definite conclusion from the latter, and the lists betray no special local character, but rather aim at being as comprehensive in their way as the geographical cantos (57 and 58).

Both the first and second Sections, therefore, plainly emanated from Western India, and indicate the middle portion of the Narbadā and Tapti valleys as their place of origin. It remains to consider the Devi-māhātmya, and the following considerations point to the same place of origin, especially to Mandhātā.

The Devi-māhātmya must have originated in some place dedicated to the goddess in her terrible form. The poem has now become a text-book of the worshippers of Kālī throughout Northern India and in Bengal, especially at the great Durgā-pūjā festival, but it did not originate in Bengal. The goddess whom the poem glorifies is a goddess formed by the union of the vigours or energies (*tejas*, not *śakti*) of all the gods (p. 478), and she is called Mahā-māyā, Caṇḍikā, Ambikā, Bhadrā-kālī and Mahā-kālī (pp. 469, 476, &c. and 521). Though identified with Śrī once (p. 484), yet she is generally identified in the hymns with Śiva's consort as Durgā, Gaurī, Śiva-dūti and Mahā-kālī (pp. 484-5, 494-6, and 521). The goddess Kālī, however, who is also called Cāmuṇḍa (p. 500), is made

a separate goddess who issued from Caṇḍikā's forehead (p. 499); and Caṇḍikā gave her the name Cāmuṇḍā, because (as it is expressed in a *bon mot*) she had killed two great demons Caṇḍa and Muṇḍa (p. 500). Whether this derivation has any imaginary truth or not must be very doubtful, because fanciful derivations are common in this Purāṇa and elsewhere. The Śaktis of the gods are made separate emanations from the gods, and are called the Mothers, *mātr-gaṇa* (pp. 502, 504). The poem is therefore a glorification of Durgā in her terrible aspect, with Kālī as an emanation from her.

One would therefore look among the strongholds of Śiva worship for the birth-place of this poem. Now it is remarkable that of the great liṅga shrines (which are reckoned to be twelve), no less than six are situated in or near the very region of Western India where the Purāṇa originated; *viz.* Oṃkāra at Mandhātā, Mahākāla at Ujjain, 'Tryambak at Nasik, Ghr̥ṇeśvara at Ellora, Nāganāth east of Ahmadnagar, and Bhīma-śaṅkar at the sources of the river Bhīma. Mandhātā was doubly distinguished, for another famous liṅga was Amreśvara on the south bank of the river there. At none of them however, except at Oṃkāra, was Śiva or Durgā worshipped with sanguinary rites, as far as I can find.

In the Mahā-bhārata Durgā has the names Mahākālī, Bhadrakālī, Caṇḍā and Caṇḍī; and she is also called Kālī, no distinction being made (Virāṭa-p. vi. 195; Bhīṣma-p. xxiii. 796-7). The name Cāmuṇḍā does not apparently occur there. Cāmuṇḍā was worshipped with human sacrifices, for she is mentioned in the fifth Act of the Mālatī-mādhava, where her temple is introduced and her votaries tried to offer a human sacrifice at the city Padmāvati. Padmāvati was a name of Ujjain; but some scholars would identify it with Narwar which is on the R. Sindh, though that town seems to be too distant to suit the description at the beginning of the ninth Act. Whether Padmāvati was Ujjain or not, there can be no doubt from that description that it was situated in the region north of the Vindhya between the upper portions of the rivers Chambal and Parbatī, that is, in the region immediately north of Mandhātā.

The only local allusion in the poem is that the goddess is Mahākālī at Mahākāla (p. 521), which is a shrine of Śiva at Ujjain; and it is possible the poem may have been composed to proclaim the

māhātmya or glory of that place. But this is hardly probable, because the allusion is very brief, and the worship there was not apparently of the kind to originate this poem. Moreover, if Padmāvati was Ujjain, the Mālati-mādhava distinguishes between the temple of Cāmunda and the shrine of Mahākāla, for the temple is described as being adjacent to a field which was used as a burning-ground for corpses and which must have lain outside the city; and if Padmāvati was some other town, the allusion here to Mahākāla has no connexion with Cāmunda or Caṇḍikā at Padmāvati. It is hardly probable that, if this poem originated at Ujjain, the goddess at the shrine of Mahākāla would have been referred to in this manner. Hence this passage more probably conveys only a commendatory allusion; and it seems more natural and appropriate to connect the poem with Mandhātā, where this phase of sanguinary worship was particularly strong.

The worship of Cāmunda points to the same conclusion. Human sacrifices had long been abolished in the civilized countries of India, and the offering of such sacrifices at Padmāvati could hardly have been a survival but must have been introduced from elsewhere. Such a practice would naturally be clandestine. Human sacrifices were offered in those times only among the rude tribes of Central India, among whom such sacrifices survived till the last century; hence it may be inferred that such offerings to Cāmunda at Padmāvati must have been introduced from places which bordered on those tribes and were affected by their rites. The middle portion of the Narbada valley was eminently such a place. Pointing in the same direction is the statement in the Mahā-bhārata that Durgā had her eternal abode on the Vindhya and was fond of intoxicating liquor, flesh and cattle (Virāṭa-p. vi. 195). It seems reasonable then to conclude that the Devi-māhātmya is earlier than the Mālati-mādhava; and if so, the name Cāmunda and the form Caṇḍikā occur apparently the first time in this poem.

Mandhātā was a famous ancient tīrtha and appears to have fallen into neglect and been almost deserted in the 11th and 12th centuries A.D., but its glory was revived. About the year 1165 "a Gosāin, named Daryāo Nāth, was the only worshipper of Omkāra on the island, which pilgrims could not visit for fear of a terrible god called Kal

Bhairava and his consort Kālī Devī, who fed on human flesh. At last Daryáo Náth by his austerities shut up Kālī Devī in a cave, the mouth of which may yet be seen, appeasing her by erecting an image outside to receive worship; while he arranged that Kál Bhairava should, in future, receive human sacrifices at regular intervals. From that time devotees have dashed themselves over the Birkhala cliffs at the eastern end of the island on to the rocks by the river brink, where the terrible god resided; till in 1824 the British officer in charge of Nimár witnessed the last such offering to Kál Bhairava." (Hunter, Impl. Gaz., "Mandhāta"). There does not appear to be any information, what kind of worship was offered there before the 11th century, yet the facts suggest strongly that such sanguinary rites were not a new ordinance but had prevailed there before.

Both Śiva and his consort in their most terrible forms were thus worshipped at Mandhāta, which was almost exclusively devoted to their service; and it is easy to understand how such a sanguinary form of religion could take shape here. This region of the Narbadā valley was specially connected with demon legends, such as the demon stronghold of Tripura and the demon Mahiṣa, after which the towns Tewar and Mahesar are said to be named. It also bordered on the Nāga country. Mandhāta, with such associations, would be the most probable birth-place of this poem, and the brief allusion to Mahākāla would then be only a collateral one; yet, even if the poem was composed at Ujjain, the conclusion would still remain good that the poem originated in this region of Western India.

#### *Date of the Purāṇa.*

The question of the date of the Purāṇa is more difficult, since all questions of chronology in Sanskrit writings are most uncertain. One definite and important date may be first noticed. Mahāmahopādhyāya Haraprasād Śāstri found a copy of the Devī-māhātmya in old Newari characters in the Royal Library in Nepal, and it is dated 993 A.D. (See his Catalogue). It may be safely inferred therefrom, that this poem must have been composed before the beginning of the 10th century at the latest. The Devī-māhātmya cannot therefore be later than the 9th century and may be considerably earlier. Since it is the latest part of the Purāṇa, the other parts must have been



composed earlier, and the question for consideration is, how much earlier ?

Prof. Wilson in his preface to his Translation of the Viṣṇu Purāṇa pointed out that this Purāṇa is later than the Mahā-bhārata but anterior to the Brahma, Padma, Nāradiya and Bhāgavata Purāṇas, and conjectured that it may be placed in the ninth or tenth century A.D. This, as already noticed, is too recent, moreover it has been discovered since that his estimates of the composition of the several Purāṇas under-reckon their age, and that the periods assigned by him should be moved some centuries earlier. For instance, he conjectured the collective writings known as the Skanda Purāṇa to be modern and " the greater part of the contents of the Kāśī Khaṇḍa anterior to the first attack upon Benares by Mahmud of Ghizni " (Preface, p. lxxii)—which must mean that the Kāśī Khaṇḍa is earlier than the 11th century A.D. But Mahāmahopādhyāya Haraprasād Śāstri found in the Royal Library in Nepal a copy of the " Skanda Purāṇa " written in the later Gupta characters of the 6th or 7th century A.D. From that it is obvious that the composition of the Skanda Purāṇa must have taken place four or five centuries earlier than Prof. Wilson's estimate. Hence it is possible that a corresponding modification of his estimate regarding the Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa should be made, and that would place it about the 4th century A.D.

Further evidence is obtained from Jain writings that the Purāṇas are much earlier than Prof. Wilson estimated. Thus the Padma Purāṇa of the Jains, which was written by Raviṣena in imitation of the Hindu Padma Purāṇa, contains, I understand, a couplet showing that it was composed in the year 678 A.D ; and that Purāṇa mentions all the Purāṇas. All are mentioned again in the Jain Ādl Purāṇa of Jinasena who lived about a century later. This evidence would demonstrate that all the Hindu Purāṇas had been composed before the end of the sixth and probably by the end of the fifth century A.D ; though of course it leaves room open for subsequent additions and interpolations in them.

A common method of estimating the age of a Sanskrit composition is to consider the religious and philosophical ideas embodied in it ; yet to discuss questions of chronology on the basis of such ideas seems to be more interesting than convincing. Such ideas have passed

along a course of development in India, but it is doubtful how far general inferences therefrom can be safely applied to fix the date of a particular work. Where such ideas are founded on sacred compositions, which are the subject of reverent study, there must be flows, eddies and intervals of stagnation, and even rapids and back currents, in the stream of such ideas. Their course may be compared with similar speculations, not in a single European country, but in the whole of Europe, for India has always comprised many countries ; and the history of Europe during the last four hundred years shews, whether it would be easy to determine the date of a writing on such subjects in Latin solely from its contents, for the progress of thought in the different countries has been neither simultaneous nor uniform. Similarly in India, there can be no doubt that, while religion and philosophy have had their general course of development, the course has been very unequal in the different countries, so that it would not be unreasonable to suspect that at the same time one country was advancing, another was stationary, and a third was even degenerating under political adversity. The development of religion and philosophy in India then is not so clear that one can do more than venture to conjecture upon such grounds, at what period or periods this Purāṇa, which was written in Western India, was composed. And, as already mentioned, it has so little of a sectarian spirit or of special doctrines that the basis for conjecture is meagre. Subject to this caution the following features may be noticed.

Among the deities, Indra and Brahmā are mentioned oftenest ; next stand Viṣṇu and Śiva ; then the Sun and Agni ; and lastly Dharma and others. Indra is mentioned most often in the first and fifth parts, and Brahmā in the third and fifth parts ; while Viṣṇu and Śiva do not show any particular preponderance. If the *Devī-māhātmya* is put aside, the Sun is the deity that receives the most special adoration, and his story is related twice, first, briefly in cantos 77 and 78, and afterwards with fullness in cantos 102-110. To this may be added the cognate worship of Agni in cantos 99 and 100. Such marked reverence for Agni and the Sun would be natural in such a place as Māhiṣmatī, which (as already mentioned) was specially sacred to Agni before the worship of Śiva obtained supremacy there. Kāma-rūpa, the modern Gauhāṭi in Assam, is mentioned as specially

appropriate for the worship of the Sun (p. 581), and why it should have been so characterized seems unintelligible unless it was considered to be an *udaya-giri*.

The prominent notice of the great Vedic god Indra, and of Brahmā the earliest of the post-Vedic gods, would indicate a fairly high antiquity for the Purāṇa, especially for the second Section, which boldly claims to have issued from Brahmā's mouth equally with the Vedas (p. 219) and thus to stand almost on an equality with them—an honour which none of the other Purāṇas ventures to arrogate for itself. Such an antiquity would also explain the high position assigned to the Sun and Agni, who are also among the chief Vedic gods ; yet the special praise offered to the Sun may, as Dr. Banerjea hinted, be perhaps attributable in part to Persian influences.

The first Section of the Purāṇa is certainly later than the Mahā-bhārata, for the four questions that Jaimini propounds to the Birds arose expressly out of that work. These questions are, *first*, a religious enigma, Why did Vāsudeva (Viṣṇu) though devoid of qualities assume human shape with its qualities of goodness, passion and ignorance? *secondly*, a social perplexity, Why was Draupadi the common wife of the five Pāṇḍava brothers? *thirdly*, a moral incongruity, Why did Baladeva expiate the sin of brahmanicide by pilgrimage? and *fourthly*, a violation of natural justice, Why did Draupadi's five sons all perish in their youth? The obtrusion of these questions implies that the Mahā-bhārata was firmly established as an unimpeachable authority, so that difficulties involved in it could not be disputed and must admit of reconciliation with the laws of Righteousness.

The explanations offered by the Birds appear to be these. Vāsudeva (Viṣṇu) existed in quadruple form ; the first form was devoid of qualities, but each of the others was characterized by one of the three qualities, so that in his assuming human and other shapes with all the qualities no violation occurred to his nature. The second question is solved by the assertion, that because of Indra's transgressions five portions of his essence became incarnate in the Pāṇḍavas, and his wife became incarnate as Draupadi, so that she was still the wife of only one person. The third question seems to turn on the ideas, that brahmanicide was a heinous sin expiable by death

and that pilgrimage was a pious undertaking ; how therefore could such a sin be expiated by such action ? The answer seems to be that the sin was unintentional, being due to overpowering sensual influences, and did not call for the full rigour of punishment, while the real penance consisted in *confession*. The fourth question is solved by a story of transmigration ; Draupadī's sons were five Viśve Devās who were cursed by Viśvāmitra to assume human form for a brief period.

The first two questions and answers call for some notice and throw some light on the age of the first Section of the Purāṇa.

With regard to the first question, Dr. Banerjea has remarked in his Introduction that the description of Vāsudeva belongs to the school Nārada-pañcarātra, to which Śaṅkarācārya has given an elaborate reply in his commentary on the Brahma Sūtras ; while no trace of this doctrine is to be found in the second Section of the Purāṇa. As Śaṅkara lived in the 8th century A.D., that school existed before him. The first part of this Purāṇa was, therefore, probably prior to his time ; yet it may possibly have been later. This comparison then yields nothing definite.

The second answer presents some remarkable peculiarities when compared with the Mahā-bhārata. That work gives two explanations about Draupadī's wifehood, *first*, why she was destined to have five husbands, and *secondly*, why the five Pāṇḍavas became her husbands.

The first explanation is given twice in the Ādi-parvan, *viz.*, in clxix. 6426-34 and in cxvii. 7319-28. She had been a ṛṣi's daughter and unmarried ; in order to obtain a husband she propitiated Śiva with austerities, and he offered her a boon. She begged for a husband, and in her eagerness made the request five times, hence he promised her five husbands, and in spite of her objection adhered to his word and promised them to her in another life. Hence she was born as Draupadā's daughter. In the latter of these two passages and in line 7310 she is made an incarnation of Lakṣmī.

The second explanation is given in Ādi-parvan cxvii. 7275-7310. Indra went to Śiva on Mount Himavat and accosted him rudely, but Śiva awed him and pointed to a cave in the mountain wherein were four prior Indras. Śiva said that Indra and those four prior Indras

should be born in human shape in order to reduce the over-population of the world, and that Lakṣmī should be born and be their common wife. Accordingly Indra was born as Arjuna and the prior Indras as the other Pāṇḍavas, and Lakṣmī was born as Draupadi.

Now these stories in the Mahā-bhārata itself furnished some explanation, and why Jaimini should have felt any perplexity, if he had these explanations before him, is at first sight strange. This suggests a doubt whether they were then in the Mahā-bhārata, or whether they were inserted there afterwards to meet this very question. On the other hand, it may be noted that these explanations did not really solve the difficulty, for the five Indras who became the Pāṇḍavas were not the same deity, and thus Draupadi's husbands were still separate persons. On this point, therefore, the difficulty remained, and the answer given by the Birds removes it (though at variance with the Mahā-bhārata) by declaring that the Pāṇḍavas were all incarnations of portions of the same deity, Indra, and were thus really only one person. The Mahā-bhārata, however, presented a further difficulty, for why should Lakṣmī have become incarnate to be the wife of incarnations of Indra? The Birds alter this by declaring (again at variance with the Mahā-bhārata) that it was Indra's own wife who became incarnate as Draupadi. Both these contradictions are left unnoticed; yet it is said very truly that there was very great perplexity about this matter (p. 19).

This incongruity of Lakṣmī's becoming incarnate to be wife to incarnations of other deities suggests a further speculation. In the Mahā-bhārata as it now stands, Kṛṣṇa is an incarnation of Viṣṇu, and it was proper that Lakṣmī should become incarnate to be his queen. Nevertheless that work states that she became the wife of five persons all distinct from Viṣṇu. May it be surmised that these explanations in the Mahā-bhārata were fashioned before Kṛṣṇa had been deified, and before it was perceived that they could have any bearing on his story? If so, it is quite intelligible that it was deemed necessary, after Kṛṣṇa was deified, to remove the incongruity by asserting that Draupadi was an incarnation, not of Lakṣmī, but of Indrāṇi. This view, that the revised explanations here given regarding Draupadi and the Pāṇḍavas were necessitated by the deification of Kṛṣṇa, seems not improbable. If so, the revision and the name

Vāsudeva, by which Viṣṇu is specially addressed in the first part, would indicate that the first part was composed, when the Kṛṣṇa legend had become so well established that it was needful to bring other stories into harmony with it.

The Purāṇa contains little reference to the political condition of India; yet it may be pointed out that all the stories narrated in the first Section relate to Madhya-deśa, the Himālayas and Western India, while no mention occurs of Southern, Eastern or North-Western India. In the second Section, few illustrative stories occur apart from the main discourse on the Manus and the royal genealogies. Only one dynasty is treated of, that in which the chief princes were Vatsapri, Khanitra, Karandhama, Avikṣit and Marutta. These were famous kings, especially Marutta who was a universal monarch. I have not been able to find anything which indicates where their kingdom was, yet it must have been somewhere in the Middle-land or North-West, because of Marutta's relations with Vṛhaspati and Sanivartta (M. Bh., *Aśvam* -p. iii-vi); the Middle-land here comprising the country as far east as Mithilā and Magadha. In the second Section the only allusions to other parts of India are one to the river Vitastā in the Panjab (p. 438), one to an unknown town in South India (p. 412), and several to Kāmarūpa, the modern Gauhāṭī in Assam; but the author's knowledge of Eastern India was so hazy that he treats Kāmarūpa as being easy of access from the Middle-land (p. 581). Is it reasonable to draw any inference from the mental horizon here disclosed? It agrees with the state of India in the third century A.D.

The geographical cantos 57 and 58 are no doubt special compilations and may to a certain degree stand apart. They appear to aim at being comprehensive, and to enumerate all the countries, races and tribes till then known, whether ancient or mediæval. This comprehensive character rather prevents the drawing of any large definite conclusions from them, yet two points may be noticed.

The Hunas are placed among the peoples in the north in canto 58, though the context is not very precise. The Huns in their migrations from the confines of China appear to have arrived to the north of India about the beginning of the third century A.D., and one branch the White Huns, established a kingdom afterwards in the

Oxus valley. India had no actual experience of them until their first invasion, which was made through the north-western passes in the middle of the fifth century (Mr. V. Smith's *Early History of India*, pp. 272, 273). The allusion to the Huns therefore, with the position assigned to them in the north, in canto 58, is plainly earlier than their invasion, and is what a writer in the third century or the early part of the fourth century would have made.

In these two cantos Prāgjyotiṣa is placed in the east, and no mention is made of Kāmarūpa. Prāgjyotiṣa was the ancient kingdom that comprised nearly all the north and east of Bengal (p. 328); later on it dwindled and seems to have lingered and perished in the east of Bengal; and after that Kāmarūpa came into prominence in its stead. In the Mahā-bhārata and Rāmāyaṇa Prāgjyotiṣa alone is named; Kāmarūpa is never, I believe, mentioned there, and it occurs in later writings only. In the Second Section however Kāmarūpa is mentioned, and no allusion is made to Prāgjyotiṣa. This difference tells in favour of the antiquity of these cantos.

With regard to the Devī-māhātmya, if the comparison made above between it and the Mālātī-mādhava is reasonable, it would follow that, since Bhavabhūti who wrote that play lived about the end of the seventh century A.D., this poem must be anterior. It would represent the incorporation of barbarous practices borrowed from the rude tribes of Central India into brahmanic doctrines, and might be assigned to the sixth or perhaps the fifth century.

From all these considerations it seems fair to draw the following conclusions. The Devī-māhātmya, the latest part, was certainly complete in the 9th century and very probably in the 5th or 6th century A.D. The third and fifth parts, which constituted the original Purāṇa, were very probably in existence in the third century, and perhaps even earlier; and the first and second parts were composed between those two periods.

#### *Other matters of interest.*

Certain other matters may be mentioned, which are of great interest in the Purāṇa.

In the first part Jaimini, though a disciple of Vyāsa and a famous ṛṣi (Mahā-bh., Śānti-p. cceli. 13647), is yet made, when perplexed by four difficult questions in Vyāsa's own work, the Mahā-bhārata, to

seek instruction, not from Vyāsa but from Mārkaṇḍeya; and this raises a presumption that there was an intention to make Mārkaṇḍeya equal with, if not superior to, Vyāsa. Further, Mārkaṇḍeya does not himself explain the questions but, declining with a transparent excuse, refers Jaimini to the Birds. The Birds, though said no doubt to be brahmins undergoing a transmigration, were inferior in education and fame to Jaimini, yet they were deemed fully capable of authoritatively answering the questions that puzzled him. It seems hard to avoid suspecting again in this construction of the story, that there was an intention to exalt the instruction given by the munis of the Vindhyaś to equality with, if not superiority over, that given in Madhya-deśa. It may be mentioned that according to certain legends Vaiśampāyana's pupils were transformed into partridges (*tittiri*) in order to pick up the Black Yajus verses disgorged by one of their companions; but it does not seem reasonable to ascribe the introduction of these Birds as *dramatis personæ* in this Purāṇa to any imitation of those legends, because the nature of the stories is wholly different. The use of the Birds seems rather to be the application of a class of ideas common in the animal-tales of folk-lore to religious teaching, and to be similar to the machinery employed by Bāṇa in his story of Kādambari.

In the second part it is worthy of note that indulgence in spirituous liquor and in sensual enjoyments is viewed with little or no disapprobation in the story of Dattātreyā; and meat and strong drink are mentioned as most acceptable offerings in the worship of Dattātreyā (p. 106), as an incarnation of Viṣṇu (p. 99). Meat of various kinds, including even hog's flesh, is declared to be most gratifying to the pitṛs. Such food was not unknown in ancient times, for it is said that during a severe famine king Trisāṅku supported Viśvāmitra's wife with the flesh of deer, wild pigs and buffaloes (Hari-V., 724-731).

A most extraordinary passage may be noticed in conclusion. It is related of king Dama that, after taking vengeance on prince Vapuṣmat, "with Vapuṣmat's flesh he offered the cakes to his [murdered] father, he feasted the brāhmins who were sprung from families of Rākṣasas" (p. 688 with 679). Brahmins at times lost their caste and became degraded, but here the position is reversed and certain



descendants of Rākṣasas were reckoned as brahmans. Such cannibalism is, I believe, unparalleled in Sanskrit, and it is almost incredible that there should have been brahmans of any kind whatever who would have participated in it. Eating human flesh was not unknown in ancient times (p. 427), yet a story is told in the Mahā-bhārata where Rākṣasas and even flesh-eating Dasyus disdained the flesh of a true though degraded brahman (Śānti-p. clxxii. 6420-29). This story of king Dama would seem to imply that it is of real antiquity, and that the account of the dynasty in which he occurred, and which is the only dynasty described, must be a purāṇa in the full meaning of the term.

## CONTENTS.

CANTO.	Introduction.	PAGE.
1	Jaimini applied to Mārkaṇḍeya for instruction on four questions. Mārkaṇḍeya referred him to four learned Birds, sons of Droṇa and the Apsaras Vapu who was cursed by the	1
2	ṛṣi Durvāsas to be a bird ; and narrated the story of their	6
3	birth, and of their education by Śamika ; and explained that they were four brāhmanas, who were so born, because cursed by their father Sukṛṣa for not offering their bodies as food to a famished bird.	11
<i>The Birds' discourse on Jaimini's four questions.</i>		
4	Jaimini visited the Birds at the Vindhya Mts. and they answered his four questions thus :—Viṣṇu assumed bodily	17
5	forms in order to accomplish good ; Draupadī became the joint wife of the five Pāṇḍavas because they were all	21
6	emanations of Indra ; Baladeva committed brahmanicide during intoxication and expiated it by pilgrimage ; and five	23
7	Viśve Devās, who, on seeing Viśvāmitra's brutality to king Hariścandra, censured Viśvāmitra, incurred his curse thereby and were born as the five sons of Draupadī to die young and unmarried.	32
8	This story led the Birds at Jaimini's request to narrate the whole story of king Hariścandra's sufferings and	38
9	ultimate beatitude ; and the terrible fight which resulted therefrom between Vasiṣṭha and Viśvāmitra as gigantic birds.	59
<i>The Birds' discourse on Jaimini's further questions.</i>		
<i>Discourse on life, death and action.</i>		
10	Jaimini propounded further questions regarding conception, foetal life, birth, growth, death and the consequences of action ; and the Birds answered them by reproducing	62

## CANTO.

## PAGE.

the instruction that a brāhman Sumati, nick-named Jaḍa, once gave to his father (cantos x—xliv).

- Thus the Birds gave in Jaḍa's words a description of  
 11 death, after-existences and certain hells ; of human concep- 69  
 12 tion and birth, and the evils of all existence; of certain other 71  
 13 hells and the various terrible torments inflicted there; and 74  
 they narrated the story of king Vipāścīt's descent into hell,  
 14 with a discourse regarding actions and the specific punish- 76  
 15 ments for a long list of various sins, and of his deliverance 88  
 from hell together with other persons confined there.

*Stories illustrating religious devotion (yoga).*

- 16 The Birds, continuing Jaḍa's discourse, broached the sub- 91  
 ject of *yoga* or religious devotion, but prefaced it with a long  
 narrative (cantos xvi to xliv). A brāhman Māṇḍavya was  
 saved from a curse by his devoted wife, who stopped the rising  
 17 of the sun and gained a boon from Atri's wife Anasūyā; the 99  
 gods in consequence blessed Anasūyā, and Brahmā, Viṣṇu and  
 Śiva were born as her three sons Soma, Dattātreyā and Durvā-  
 18 sas; Dattātreyā indulged in sensual pleasures; Arjuna Kār- 101  
 tavīrya, however, being advised by his minister Garga to  
 propitiate Dattātreyā, because Dattātreyā (being an incar-  
 nation of Viṣṇu) had once saved the gods from the demons,  
 19 did so and by Dattātreyā's blessing reigned gloriously. 106  
 This led on to the story of Alarka, which is used to convey  
 political, religious and social instruction (cantos xx to xliv).

*Alarka's birth and education.*

- 20 King Satrujit's son Ṛtadhvaṇya lived in intimate friend- 109  
 ship with two Nāga princes; they told their father Aśva-  
 tara—how Ṛtadhvaṇya had succoured the brāhman Gālava  
 21 with the help of a wondrous horse named Kuvalaya, and 113  
 descending to Pātāla, had killed the demon Pātāla-ketu there,  
 and had rescued and married the Gandharva princess Madā-  
 22 lasā, and was famed as Kuvalayāśva; and also how a 121  
 demon had caused Madālasā to die on a false report of

## CANTO.

## PAGE.

- 23 Kuvalayāśva's death. King Aśvatara, by propitiating Sa- 125  
 rasvati then, gained perfect skill in poetry and music  
 (which are described), and by propitiating Siva received  
 24 Madālasā restored to life; he invited Kuvalayāśva to 136  
 25 Pātāla and gave Madālasā back to him. Kuvalayāśva had 140  
 26 a son by her, and she prattled to the infant; they had 142  
 three other sons and she named the youngest Alarka.

*Political, religious and social instruction.*

- 27 Then followed an exposition of political, religious and social 145  
 doctrine in the guise of instruction given by Madālasā to  
 Alarka. She instructed him in the duties and conduct  
 28 of a king; in the duties of the four castes and of a brāh- 148  
 29 man's life; in the general duties of a gr̥hastha and various 151  
 30 religious matters; in the duties of a gr̥hastha in detail; 155  
 31 in the śrāddha ceremonies; in the performance of the Pār- 157  
 32 vaṇa Śrāddha and the persons to be excluded; in the par- 164  
 ticular foods, periods, sites and ordinances to be observed in  
 33 the śrāddha; in the Voluntary śrāddhas and their benefits 168  
 34 and proper occasions; in the rules of Virtuous Custom, 170  
 35 generally and with much detail; about diet, purification, 180  
 conduct, holy days and various religious ceremonies.

*Exposition of religious devotion (yoga).*

- 36 R̥tadhvaja then resigned his kingdom to Alarka and de- 186  
 37 parted to the forest. Alarka lived in pleasure, but, being 187  
 reduced to great straits by his brother and the king of  
 38 Kāśi, sought relief from Dattātreyā. Dattātreyā spoke 191  
 about the soul and, on Alarka's asking about religious devotion  
 39 (yoga), expounded the method, conditions and signs of its 193  
 40 proper performance; the attendant ailments and the stages 198  
 41 which lead to final emancipation from existence; the way 202  
 in which a yogi should live, beg, eat and reach his end;  
 42 the composition, meaning and efficacy of the word "Om"; 205  
 43 ill omens and their signification; and the seasons for, and 207  
 the importance of, yoga. Alarka then relinquished the

CANTO.	PAGE.
44 kingdom, but his brother, glad at Alarka's conversion, declined it and departed. Alarka gave it to his son and departed to the forest. This ends Jaḍa's exposition.	213

*The Birds' discourse on Jaimini's further questions.*

*Discourse on Creation.*

45 Jaimini put further questions, and the Birds answered them by repeating what Mārkaṇḍeya had taught Krauṣṭuki. This discourse runs on to the end of the Purāṇa.	217
---	-----

Mārkaṇḍeya, after extolling this Purāṇa, described the course of creation from Brahmā through Pradhāna, &c., and	
46 the mundane egg; he discoursed about Brahmā, and explained divine and human time and the four ages. He described the creation of the earth and all it contains; the gods, demons, pitṛs, mankind, &c., and the positions assigned them; the origin of the primeval human race and its social and moral evolution; the birth of the nine Sages, Rudra, Manu Svāyambhuva and his descendants, Dakṣa and his offspring; A-dharma and his progeny, especially the goblin Duṣṣaha and his powers, whose brood of goblins and hags are named with their particular functions; the creation of the Rudras; and the wives and offspring of the ṛṣis and pitṛs.	224 228 232 237 246 257 268

*Account of the Manus.*

53 Mārkaṇḍeya next discoursed of the Manus and manvantaras. He told of the <i>first</i> Manu, Svāyambhuva, and his descendants who peopled the seven Continents. Jambudvīpa was occupied by Agnidhra, and his descendant Bharata gave his name to India. This introduced the subject of geography.	271
--	-----

*Geography.*

54 Mārkaṇḍeya described the earth and its continents, especially Jambudvīpa; and also Mount Meru, first briefly, and then with full mention of neighbouring forests, lakes and mountains; and the course of the Ganges in the sky and on	275 278 280
--	-------------------

CANTO.	PAGE.
57 the earth. He mentioned the nine divisions of Bhārata, and then dealt with India in detail; naming its seven mountain ranges and its scattered hills; and its rivers, distinguishing them according to their sources, in the Himālaya, the Pāripātra, the Vindhya, the Rkṣa, the Sahya, the Malaya, the Mahendra and the Suktimat ranges. He named the various peoples inhabiting India and its confines, according as they dwelt in the Middle Land (Madhya-deśa), in the north-west, outside northwards, in the north, in the east, in the south, in the west, around the Vindhya mountains and beneath the Himālayas.	288 284 290 293 303 307 311 324 340
58 Next representing India as resting upon Viṣṇu in the form of a tortoise, Mārkaṇḍeya named the various peoples (with the corresponding lunar constellations) as they were distributed over the middle of the tortoise's body, over its face, its right fore-foot, its right flank, its right hind-foot, its tail, its left hind-foot, its left flank and its left fore-foot; and he added some astrological, religious and political comments. He then described the countries Bhadrāśva, Ketumāla, the Northern Kurus, Kimpuruṣa, Hari-varṣa, Ilāvṛta, Rāmyaka, and Hiraṇmaya.	348 349 358 370 384 387 390

*Account of the Manus (resumed).*

61 Mārkaṇḍeya related the birth of the <i>second</i> Manu. A brāhman visited Himavat and met an Apsaras Varūthini; a Gandharva Kali by personating him gained her affection; and she bore a son Svarocis. Svarocis delivered a maiden Manoramā from a curse and married her, and also rescued her two girl-companions and married them; after living long in heedless pleasure with them, he had three sons whom he established in separate kingdoms by the knowledge called Padmini; and he had by a forest goddess another son Dyutimat who became the <i>second</i> Manu, Svārociṣa; and his period is noticed. The allusion to the knowledge Padmini introduced a discourse on its supporters, the Nidhis.	391 399 401 406 408 411 415 415
--	--

CANTO.	PAGE.
69 Continuing, Mārkaṇḍeya related how king Uttama	419
banished his queen for bad temper, and helped a brāhman	
to find his ill-tempered wife who had been carried off ; he	
70 was rebuked by a ṛṣi for his own conduct ; he recovered the	425
brāhman's wife, whose bad temper a Rākṣasa consumed.	
71 A Nāga king had taken the queen to Pātāla, and she was	429
72 hidden ; the brāhman changed her nature and the Rākṣasa	432
restored her to king Uttama ; she bore a son, who became	
73 the <i>third</i> Manu, Auttama, and his period is noticed.	436
74 Mārkaṇḍeya related how king Svarāṣṭra when driven	438
from his kingdom, met his deceased queen, and had a son	
who became the <i>fourth</i> Manu, Tāmasa ; his period is noticed.	
75 The ṛṣi R̥tavāc made the constellation Revati fall ; a maiden	443
was born therefrom ; she married king Durgama and bore	
a son, who became the <i>fifth</i> Manu, Raivata ; his period is	
76 noticed. Cākṣuṣa, being changed when an infant by a hag,	449
became king Vikrānta's son, but turned an ascetic and be-	
came the <i>sixth</i> Manu, Cākṣuṣa ; his period is noticed.	
77 Continuing the manvantaras, Mārkaṇḍeya said the Sun	455
married Tvaṣṭr's daughter Sañjñā and had two sons Vaivas-	
vata and Yama ; Sañjñā quitted him, leaving her Shadow	
78 behind, because his splendour was excessive ; Tvaṣṭr pared	458
his splendour down while the gods hymned the Sun ; the Sun	
regained Sañjñā ; he had by the Shadow a son who will be the	
79 <i>eighth</i> Manu, Sāvarṇi. Vaivasvata is the <i>seventh and present</i>	461
80 Manu ; his period is noticed. The future period of Sāvarṇi	463
with its ṛṣis, gods, &c., is prophesied.	

*The Devī-māhātmya.*

81 The mention of Sāvarṇi introduced the Devī-māhātmya.	465
Mārkaṇḍeya related that king Suratha, being ousted from	
his kingdom, met a vaiśya driven from his family, and both	
consulted a ṛṣi about their longings for home ; the ṛṣi as-	
cribed their feelings to the goddess Mahā-māyā (Great	
Illusion), and related how, when she was lauded by Brahmā,	
Viṣṇu slew the demons Madhu and Kaiṭabha.	

- 82 The ṛṣi then recited her exploits. Here begins the Devi- 473  
māhātmya properly. The demons under Mahiṣa vanquish-  
ed the gods, and the goddess was formed as Caṇḍikā (Am-  
83 bikā) out of their special energies combined; she began a 478  
great battle and destroyed the demons, all the demon chiefs  
84 and finally Mahiṣa himself. The gods praised her in a 482  
hymn, and she promised to befriend them always. Again  
the gods were vanquished by the demons Śumbha and  
Niśumbha, and invoked her; she appeared, and Śumbha  
86 wanted to marry her but she declined; he sent an army 497  
and she destroyed it; he sent another with Caṇḍa and Muṇḍa;  
87 the goddess Kālī destroyed them and Caṇḍikā gave her the 499  
88 combined name Cāmuṇḍā; Śumbha sent all his armies; 501  
89 Caṇḍikā killed the chief Raktaviṣa, then Niśumbha in spite 506  
90 of Śumbha's aid, and many demons, and finally Śumbha 509  
91 himself; whereat the universe was filled with joy. The 511  
gods praised her in a hymn and she promised to deliver them  
92 always. She descanted on the merits of this poem. The 519  
gods regained their supremacy; and she is extolled. Here  
ends the Devi-māhātmya properly.
- 93 After hearing this poem king Suratha worshipped Caṇḍi- 522  
kā, and she promised he should be the *eighth* Manu, Sāvārṇi.

*Account of the Manus (resumed).*

- 94 Mārkaṇḍeya, continuing, mentioned the other future 524  
Manus, the *ninth, tenth, eleventh* and *twelfth* named Sāvārṇa,  
95 and the *thirteenth* named Raucya; and their periods. H- 526  
narrated the story of Raucya. A prajāpati Ruci was ur- ed  
96 by the Pitṛs to marry; he propitiated Brahmā and praised 529  
97 the Pitṛs in a hymn; they appeared and promised him a 534  
98 wife and extolled his hymn; he married an Apsaras and had 538  
99 a son who will be the *thirteenth* Manu Raucya. Sānti, the 539  
disciple of an irascible ṛṣi Bhūti, finding the sacred fire ex-  
100 tinguished, offered a hymn to Agni. Agni restored the fire 546  
and promised to Bhūti a son who should be the *fourteenth*



Manu, Bhautya. Bhautya's period is noticed. This account of the manvantaras is extolled.

*Commencement of the Genealogies.*

- 101 At Krauṣṭuki's request Mārkaṇḍeya began the genealo- 550  
gies. Brahmā created Dakṣa, from whom came Mārtaṇḍa,  
the Sun. Then mentioning that Brahmā was born from  
the mundane egg, and produced the lokas (worlds), and  
next the four Vedas with their merits—Mārkaṇḍeya di-  
verged into a laudation of the Sun.

*The majesty of the Sun.*

- 102 The gods and the Vedas are declared to be manifesta- 553  
103 tions of the Sun. The Sun's glory was at first too great, 556  
and Brahmā with a hymn induced him to contract it  
104 and then finished the creation. Marici's son Kaśyapa 558  
begot the gods, demons, mankind, &c. The demons over-  
came the gods and Aditi sought help of the Sun in a  
105 hymn. He became her son as Mārtaṇḍa and destroy- 563  
106 ed the demons. The story of the Sun and his wife Sañ- 566  
jñā (as told in cantos lxxvii and lxxviii) is re-told here  
with more detail regarding the Shadow-Sañjñā, the curse on  
107 Yama, the paring down of the Sun's splendour, the hymns 572  
108 offered to the Sun, and the Sun's offspring and the sta- 574  
tions allotted them.
- 109 Further Mārkaṇḍeya related that king Rājya-varḍhana 577  
when old resolved to resign the kingdom, but his people in  
110 grief propitiated the Sun, and the Sun granted him great 583  
length of life; the king similarly obtained the same boon  
for them. This story is extolled.

*The Genealogies resumed.*

- 111 Mārkaṇḍeya mentioned Manu Vaivasvata's seven sons 587  
112 and Ilā-Sudyumna, Purūravas, &c. Manu's son Pūṣadhra 590  
killed a brāhman's cow and being cursed became a sūdra.  
113 Karuṣa's descendants were mentioned. 593  
Diṭṭa's son Nābhāga married a vaiśya maiden wilfully

CANTO.	PAGE.
114 and became a vaiśya ; their son Bhanandana conquered the	597
earth, but Nābhāga declined to reign. Then Nābhāga's	
wife explained that she was not really a vaiśya, but that her	
father was a king who became a vaiśya under a ṛṣi's curse	
115 with a promise of recovery, and that she was a princess and	601
had become a vaiśya under Agastya's curse.	
116 Bhanandana became king. His son Vatsapri rescued a	604
princess Sunandā from Pātāla after killing a demon king	
117 who had a magic club, and married her. His son was	610
Prāṁśu, and Prāṁśu's son Prajāti. Prajāti's son Khani-	
tra was beneficent ; his brothers' ministers practised magic	
118 to dethrone him but destroyed themselves ; Khanitra re-	615
119 signed the kingdom in grief and went to the forest. His	617
son Kṣupa performed sacrifices for the harvests. His son	
120 was Vira and grandson Vivimśa. Vivimśa's son Khanine-	619
tra while hunting met two deer eager to be sacrificed, and	
121 by Indra's favour obtained a son Balāśva. Balāśva was called	623
Karandhama because of a fanciful victory.	
122 His son Avikṣit married many princesses and carried off	256
123 princess Vaiśālini at her svayamvara : the suitor kings	628
conquered and captured him, but she refused them all :	
124 Karandhama rescued Avikṣit, but Avikṣit refused to marry	631
the princess after his discomfiture ; she turned to austerities	
125 and obtained an assurance from the gods : Avikṣit's mother	637
by a ruse obtained a promise from him to beget a son :	
126 while hunting he rescued the princess from a demon and	641
127 pleased the gods : she proved to be a Gandharva maiden and	645
Avikṣit married her in the Gandharva world ; she bore a son	
128 Marutta there. Avikṣit returned but refused the kingdom	649
129 because of his discomfiture. Marutta became king, and was	653
a universal monarch, a great sacrificer, and liberal benefactor	
130 to brāhmins. The Nāgas gave great trouble, and he at-	658
tacked them, but Avikṣit interposed in favour of the Nāgas ;	
131 a battle was averted by the ṛṣis, and the Nāgas made repara-	660
tion. Marutta's wives are named.	
132 His son Nariṣyanta enriched the brāhmins permanently	665

CANTO.	PAGE.
133 at a great sacrifice. His son Dama was chosen by the	668
Daśārṇa princess, and defeated the suitor kings, who, in vio-	
134 lation of marriage laws, opposed him. Dama became king.	674
Nariṣyanta was murdered in the forest by Vapuṣmat one of	
135 those kings. Dama bewailed, and vowed vengeance against	678
136 the murderer ; he slew Vapuṣmat and celebrated his father's	680
obsequies with Vapuṣmat's flesh and blood.	

*Conclusion.*

137 The Birds closed their long repetition of Mārkaṇḍeya's	684
instruction to Krauṣṭuki, with an encomium on the Purāṇas	
and this Purāṇa in particular. Jaimini thanked them.	



## ADDITIONS AND CORRECTIONS.

- P. 2, l. 23, *after* sacred *add* customs.
- P. 20, l. 19, *for* Sâma *read* Sâman.  
     l. 26, *for* nâra *read* nârâ.
- P. 25, l. 6, *dele* -phul.
- P. 26, l. 21, *for* Ksoka *read* Aśoka.
- P. 27, l. 25, *for* Peninsular *read* Peninsula.
- P. 29, l. 18, *add* unless it is the same as the bird 'putra-priya'  
     which was so named because its note resembled  
     'putra putra.' Rāmây., Ayodh.-k. (Ed. Gorr.)  
     cv. 11, (Ed. Bom.) xcvi. 12.
- P. 29, l. 24, *for* btween *read* between.
- P. 29, l. 33, *add* See Raghu-V., vi. 36.
- P. 31, l. 8, *for* famalies *read* families.
- Cantos VII, VIII & IX *for* Hariś-ċandra *read* Hariścandra.
- P. 42, l. 15, *for* back *read* bark.
- P. 44, l. 11, *for* compassionate *read* passionate.
- P. 55. l. 13, *for* Brāhman *read* Brahman.  
     l. 17, *for* Brāhman *read* the Prajāpati.
- P. 65, l. 29, *for* the *read* thee.
- P. 89, l. 33, *for* not therefore long *read* therefore ; *dele* not.
- P. 93, l. 15, *for* etcetera *read* et cetera.
- P. 99, l. 6, *for* Dattatreya *read* Dattātreya.
- P. 100, l. 12, *for* yogi *read* yogi.
- P. 102, l. 35, *for* Bāla-khilyas *read* Vālakhilyas.
- PP. 100-107, *passim* *for* Lakshmi *read* Lakshmī.
- P. 108, heading, *for* XX *read* XIX.
- P. 109, l. 1-3 *read* *instead* And the doctrine of religious devotion  
     was indeed declared by Dattātreya to that high-  
     souled royal ṛishi Alarka who was faithful to  
     his father.
- P. 113, l. 2, *for* excedingly *read* exceedingly.

- P. 118, l. 5, *for* him, the large-thighed\* hero, the chief of his race, *read* Tumburu\*, the spiritual preceptor of her family.
- l. 7, *for* accepted her *read* arrived.
- note\*, *cancel the note and substitute* See canto cxxvii, verses 13 and 26.
- P. 122, l. 15, *dele* funeral.
- P. 124, last line, *for* son and daughter *read* son's wife.
- P. 125, l. 38, *after* anxiety *add* "
- P. 133, l. 30, *after* inspirer *add* "
- P. 136, l. 12, *for* atru-jit's *read* Śatru-jit's.
- P. 143, l. 14, *for* religion *read* righteousness.
- P. 159, l. 34, *for* begun *read* begin.
- P. 173, bottom, *for* Kāmatās *read* Kāmatas.
- P. 174, l. 14, *for* carry *read* use.
- l. 15, *for* are carrying *read* have used.
- P. 177, l. 20, *read instead* the wise man should bathe, keeping his clothes on; and so also after resorting to a place where bodies are burnt.
- P. 179, l. 34, *for* guru *read* gurus.
- P. 181, l. 2, *for* *holidoys* *read* *holidays*.
- P. 182, l. 3, *for* screened by many *read* concealed within many things.
- P. 197, l. 34, *for* practice *read* practise.
- P. 201, l. 7, *for* Gandarvas *read* Gandharvas.
- P. 236, l. 3, *for* aptor *read* āptor.
- P. 239, l. 8, *for* is *read* are.
- P. 241, l. 21, *add* The Bombay edition reads instead "the kharvaṭaka and the dramī."
- P. 242, l. 1, *to* varma-vat *add* note The Bombay edition reads "kharvaṭa" instead.
- l. 21, *add* The Bombay edition reads "jana" instead of "jala."
- l. 38, *add* The Bombay edition reads "dramī" instead.
- P. 245, l. 27, *for* mentiueed *read* mentioned.
- P. 269, l. 21, *for* Dhūpravati *read* Dhūmravati.

- P. 288, l. 23, *delete the words from* In a list to Nága-rát.  
 P. 298, l. 3, *for* Vritra-ghní *read* Vṛitra-ghní.  
 P. 300, l. 40 *for* Śilāvati *read* Śilavati.  
 P. 332, l. 4, *add* May this name be identified with the town  
     Kodungalūr (the modern Cranganore) north of  
     Cochin? It is a place of sanctity, and was  
     formerly an important town and harbour.  
 P. 366, l. 6, *add* See p. 445.  
 P. 368, l. 13, *for* Badavá *read* Baḍavá.  
 P. 403, l. 12, *for* mightly *read* mighty.  
 P. 445, l. 35, *add* and p. 365.  
 P. 469, l. 9, *for* universel *read* universal.  
 P. 486, l. 25, *for* my *read* may.  
 P. 581, l. 27, *for* ungnents *read* unguents.  
 P. 636, last line, *for* om *read* from.
-



THE  
MARKANDEYA PURANA.

OM ! REVERENCE TO THE ADORABLE VISHNU !

---

May Vishnu's lotus-feet, which power have  
To dissipate the woes wrought by the fear  
Of existence, and which are lauded high  
By ascetics, assiduous, whose minds  
From all things else are rapt—may those same feet,  
Whose steps the earth, the sky, and heaven o'erpassed,  
To sight appearing, purify your souls !

May He protect you, who is skilled to save  
In every kind of sin impure ; whose form  
Within the bosom of the sea of milk  
Upon the hooded snake reclines ; and at  
Whose touch the sea grows mountainous, its spray  
Up-tossing from its waters by his breath  
Disturbed, and into seeming dancing breaks !

---

CANTO I.

*The Curse on Vapu.*

*Jaimini applies to Márkandeya for instruction regarding certain difficulties in the Mahábhárata—Márkandeya refers him to four learned Birds, the sons of Drona, and narrates their history—Their*



mother Vapu, an Apsaras, was condemned by the Muni Duroḍas to become a bird for tempting him.

Having adored Nārāyaṇa, and Nara the best of men, the goddess Sarasvatī, and then Vyāsa, let him utter the verse of Victory!

- 1 The illustrious Jaimini, the disciple of Vyāsa, interrogated the great Muni Mārkaṇḍeya, who was engaged in the performance of austerities and the study of the Veda.
- 2 "Sir! the high-souled Vyāsa related the story of the Mahābhārata, which is replete with splendid spotless collections
- 3 of various Śāstras, which is characterized by accuracy regarding the different classes, is embellished with beautiful words, and contains complete knowledge of *primā facie* assertions, and
- 4 established conclusions. As Viṣṇu is chief among the gods, as the brahman *chief* among men, and as the crest-jewel *chief*
- 5 among all decorations, as the axe\* is the best among weapons, as the mind *best* among the organs, so in this world is the
- 6 Mahābhārata the best among all the Śāstras. Here are described both Wealth and Virtue, Love, and Final emancipation from transmigration; these have both reciprocal and peculiar
- 7 consequences. It is the best Dharma-śāstra, it is the most eminent Artha-śāstra; it too is the foremost Kāma-śāstra, as
- 8 well as the noblest Moksha-śāstra. It has been declared, Sir, by Veda-Vyāsa the wise, to be the authority for the sacred and maxims of the laws of the four periods of a *brahman's*
- 9 life. For this Mahā-śāstra has been so constructed, dear Sir, by Vyāsa the noble in deeds, that *although* beset with
- 10 difficulties it is not overthrown by them. The earth has been freed from the dust of passion by the stream of Vyāsa's words, which has descended from the mountain of the Veda,
- 11 and has swept away the trees of bad reasoning. Therefore have I come to thee, Sir, being desirous to know truly the story of Vyāsa, in which melodious sounds are the geese, the
- 12 noble story is the splendid lotus the words are the expanse of water, and the Vedas are the great lake—this precious
- 13 and long story of the Mahābhārata. Why was Janārdana

\* Or Indra's thunderbolt.

- Vásudeva, who is the cause of the creation preservation and destruction of the world, although devoid of qualities, endued  
 14 with humanity ? And why was Drupada's daughter Krishná the common wife of the five sons of Páṇḍu ? for on this point  
 15 we feel great perplexity. Why did the mighty Baladeva Haláyudha expiate his brahmanicide by engaging in a pilgrim-  
 16 mage ? And how was it that the unmarried heroic high-souled sons of Draupadí, whose protector was Páṇḍu, were slain, as  
 17 if they had no protector ? Deign to recount all this to me here at length ; for sages like thee are ever the instructors of the ignorant."
- 18 Having thus heard his speech, the great Muni Márkaṇḍeya, devoid of the eighteen\* defects, began to speak.

**Márkaṇḍeya spoke.**

- 19 " The time for my engaging in religious rites has now arrived, most virtuous Muni ! and this is not esteemed the season  
 20 for a long discourse. But I will now tell thee, O Jaimini, of those birds who will speak to thee and so resolve thy  
 21 doubts. *They are* Pingáksha and Vibodha, Supatra, and Sumukha, the sons of Droṇa, the noblest of birds, versed in the principles of philosophy, and meditators on the Śástras.  
 22 Their mind is unclouded in the knowledge of the meaning of the Veda and Śástras. They dwell in a cave of the Vindhya mountains, visit and question them."
- 23 Then, thus addressed by the wise Márkaṇḍeya, replied the Muni pre-eminent, his eyes wide open with astonishment.

**Jaimini spoke.**

- 24 " Very wonderful is this, O brahman ! that those birds have gained knowledge most difficult to be acquired, as if birds

\* The 18 defects are said, in a translation begun by the late Rev. K. M. Banerjee, to be these—palpitation, fear, thickness in speech, indistinctness, speaking through the nose, discordancy, want of emotion, disconnectedness, roughness, hoarseness, high pitch, inaccuracy in pronunciation, perturbation, want of cadence, sing-song, shaking the head, weakness of voice, and unmeaningness.

25 possessed human speech. *If their birth is of the brute creation,*  
 whence have they the knowledge? And how is it that those  
 26 winged ones are called the children of Drona? And who was  
*this famous Drona, who had those four sons.* Do those virtuous  
 high-souled birds possess the knowledge of righteousness?"

**Márkanḍeya speaks.**

27 "Listen attentively to ~~what~~ happened of yore in Nandana  
 at the meeting of Indra and the Apsarases and Nárada.  
 28 Nárada saw Indra the king of the gods in Nandana, sur-  
 rounded by a band of those wanton maidens, with eyes fasten-  
 29 ed on their faces. Śac'í's lord, immediately he was seen by  
 that best of Rishis, rose up, and respectfully gave him his own  
 30 seat. Those heavenly maidens, on seeing him, the slayer of  
 Bala and Vritra, rise up, prostrated themselves before the  
 31 Devarshi and stood reverently bending. He then, worshipped  
 by them, duly greeted Indra, when he had seated himself, and  
 conversed pleasantly with him.

32 "Then in the course of their talk, Indra said to the great  
 Muni— 'Declare, which of these dancers pleases thee most. Is  
 33 it Rambhá, or Karkáśá, or Urvasí, Tilottamá, Ghrítac'í, or  
 34 Menaká? or whichever delights thee.' Nárada, best of dvijas,  
 hearing this speech of Indra, pondered and then addressed  
 35 the reverently bending Apsarases:—'She, of you all here  
 present, who thinks herself pre-eminent in beauty, nobility  
 36 and good qualities, let her dance before me. There is indeed  
 no success in dancing for one who is ~~destitute~~ of good qualities  
 and beauty. *Good dancing implies graceful comportment:*  
 other dancing is vexation.'

**Márkanḍeya speaks.**

37 "And immediately on that speech, each one of those bowing  
 ones thus exclaimed—'I excel in good qualities; not you, nor  
 38 you!' The lord Indra seeing their agitation said, 'Let the Muni  
 be asked, he will say which of you excels in good qualities.'  
 39 What Nárada, sought by those followers of Indra's will,  
 40 then said, hear that from me, O Jaimini! 'She among you

who by her power perturbs the most noble Muni Durvásas, who is performing austerities, dwelling on the mountain, her among you I deem pre-eminent in good qualities.'

Márkaṇḍeya spoke.

- 41 "Having heard that his sentence, they all exclaimed, with  
trembling necks, 'this is impossible for us!'
- 42 "Among them an Apsaras named Vapu, confident of perturb-  
ing the Muni, replied, 'I will follow where the Muni dwells;  
43 now will I make that tamer of his body, who has yoked  
the horses of his organs, but a poor charioteer whose reins  
44 drop before the weapons of love. Whether it be Brahmá, or  
Janárdana or the purple Ś'iva, his heart will I now pierce  
with the arrow of love.'
- 45 "Having thus spoken Vapu departed then to the Snowy  
mountain to the Muni's hermitage, where the beasts of prey  
46 were quelled by the might of his austerities. Stopping at the  
distance of a call from where the great Muni is seated,  
47 the lovely Apsaras sang the cuckoo's melody. Hearing  
the strains of her song, the Muni astonished in mind went  
48 to where sits that beauteous-faced maiden. On seeing  
her, beautiful in every limb, the Muni, summoning his  
resolution, was filled with anger and resentment, knowing  
49 that she had come to perturb him. Then the great Ṛishi, the  
performer of mighty austerities, pronounced this sentence.  
50 'Since thou hast come here, O maiden! intoxicated with pride,  
to cause me pain by obstructing my austerities, which are ac-  
51 complished with difficulty, O Apsaras, therefore shalt thou,  
polluted by, my wrath, be born in the foolish race of birds  
52 for the space of sixteen years, losing thine own form, and  
taking the form of a bird; and four sons shall be born to  
53 thee, O vilest of Apsarases; and without having gained affection  
among them, absolved from guilt by dying in the field of  
battle, thou shalt regain thy dwelling in the sky. Never  
make any reply.'
- 54 The Bráhmaṇ, red-eyed with anger, having pronounced this  
grievous sentence on that proud maiden, whose tinkling

bracelets were trembling, abandoned the earth, whose waves were very tremulous, and departed to the heavenly Ganges whose stream consists of a multitude of renowned qualities."

---

## CANTO II.

*The Birth of the Sparrows.*

*The story of the Birds continued—Kandhara, king of the birds killed a Rákhasa Vidyud-rúpa for killing his brother, and, marrying the Rákhasa's wife, had a daughter by her named Túrksí who was the Apsaras Vapu—She married Droṇa—When pregnant by him she was killed at the battle of the Kauravas and Páṇḍavas, and there laid four eggs from which the four Birds were born—The Birds were nourished by the Muni Ś'amska.*

Márkaṇḍeya spoke.

- 1 The king of the birds, Garuda by name, was the son of
- 2 Arishtanemi : Garuda's son was renowned as Sampáti : and
- his son was Supársva, heroic, mighty as Váyu : Supársva's son
- 3 was Kunti ; Kunti's son was Pralolupa. And he had two sons
- Kanka and Kandhara.
- 4 On the top of Kailása, Kanka saw the Rákshasa famed as
- Vidyud-rúpa, whose eyes were like a lotus leaf, a follower
- 5 of Kuvera, who was busied in a banquet, clad with strings of
- bright garlands, sitting in company with his wife on a beau-
- 6 tiful clean rocky seat. Then the Rákshasa, immediately he
- was seen by Kanka, filled with anger, said, " Wherefore hast
- 7 thou come hither, O vilest of the egg-born ? Why hast thou
- approached me when I am in company with my wife ? Such
- is not the rule of the wise in matters that must be accom-
- plished in secret."

Kanka spoke.

- 8 " This mountain is common both to you and me and to other
- creatures also ; what special ownership then canst thou, Sir,
- have here ? "

Márkaṇḍeya spoke.

- 9 The Rákshasa with his sword slew Kanka, while he was thus speaking, *who fell* defiled with the streaming blood, quivering and senseless.
- 10 Having heard that Kanka was slain, Kandhara the king of the birds, bewildered with anger, resolved speedily to slay
- 11 Vidyud-rúpa. Having gone to the mountain-top, where Kanka lay slain, the king of the birds, his eyes swollen with anger and resentment, and sighing like the king of the Nágas
- 12 performed the Sankalana for his elder brother. Where sits the slayer of his brother, there he went, rocking the lofty
- 13 mountains with the mighty wind from his wings. He, with blood-red eyes, overtopping the mountains, and forcibly hurling down masses of clouds with his wings, used to destroy
- 14 his enemies suddenly. There he saw that demon, whose thoughts were intent on drinking, whose face and eyes were of a copperish colour, and who was seated on a golden couch,
- 15 whose crest was covered with strings of garlands, who was adorned with yellow sandal, whose face was very horrible with teeth that resembled the inside of the Ketaki leaf.
- 16 And he saw, seated on the Rákshasa's left thigh his long-eyed wife, named Madaniká, whose voice was soft as the cuckoo's.
- 17 Then Kandhara, whose mind was filled with wrath, addressed that inmate of the cave, "O thou of utterly evil soul! come
- 18 forth and fight with me. Since thou hast murdered my trustful elder brother, therefore I will bring thee, while en-
- 19 grossed in drunkenness, down to Yama's abode. To-day, slain by me, shalt thou go to all those hells that are the abodes of the murderers of those who trust in them, and of the murderers of women and children."

Márkaṇḍeya spoke.

- 20 Addressed even thus by the king of the birds in his wife's presence, the Rákshasa, filled with anger, then answered the
- 21 bird. "If thy brother has been slain, then have I displayed my valour; thee, too, to-day, will I slay with this sword, O

22 bird. Stay a moment, thou shalt not move here alive, O vilest of birds."

Thus he spoke and seized his bright sword that resembled  
23 a mass of collyrium. Then took place a marvellous battle  
between the king of the birds and Kuvera's warrior, such  
24 as between Garuda and Indra. Then the Rákshasa, in anger  
swiftly hurling his sword, black as charcoal, flung it against  
25 the king of the birds. And then the king of the birds, slightly  
springing up from the ground, seized it with his beak, as  
26 Garuda seizes a serpent; and the egg-born one broke it with  
his beak and talons, and shook it. Thereupon, the sword  
27 being broken, they began to fight with their arms. Then the  
Rákshasa, being attacked in the breast by the king of the  
birds, was speedily deprived of arms, feet, hands and head.

28 When he was killed, his wife besought protection of the  
29 bird: somewhat fearful, she said, "I am thy wife." That  
noblest of birds, taking her, returned to his abode, having  
obtained a recompense for his brother by the slaughter of  
30 Vidyud-rúpa. And she, the daughter of Menaká, with beautiful  
eyebrows, capable of assuming forms at pleasure, on reaching  
the house of Kandhara, took a form resembling Garuda's.  
31 Of her, he then begat a daughter named Tárkshí,  
(namely Vapu the loveliest of the Apsarases, who was consumed  
by the fire of the Muni's curse). Then the bird gave her the  
name Tárkshí.

32 And Mandapála had four sons of boundless intellect, Jari-  
33 tári the eldest and Droṇa the youngest, best of dvijas. The  
youngest of them, righteous in soul, thoroughly read in the  
Vedas and Vedāngas, married her the beauteous Tárkshí,  
34 with the consent of Kandhara. And after a while Tárkshí  
conceived; when she had gone seven fortnights in her pregnant  
35 nancy, she went to Kurukshetra. The very terrible battle  
between the Kurus and Paṇḍavas was then being fought, and,  
in consequence of her action being predestined, she entered into  
36 the battle. There, then, she beheld the contest between Bhagadatta  
and Arjuna. The sky was thick filled with arrows,  
37 as if with locusts. Discharged from the bow of Arjuna an

arrow, black as a serpent, fell with great force and pierced  
 38 the skin of her belly. Her belly being pierced, four moon-like  
 eggs fell on the ground as if on a heap of cotton, from the  
 39 fact that their allotted period of life was not ended. At the  
 same time that they fell, fell the great bell, the cord of which  
 was cut by an arrow, from the noble elephant Supratika.  
 40 It reached *the ground* evenly all around, cutting into the  
 surface of the ground, and covering the eggs of the bird which  
 lay upon flesh.

41 And after king Bhagadatta, ruler of men, was slain, the  
 fight between the armies of the Kurus and Pándavas went on  
 42 many days. At the end of the battle, when Dharma's son  
 Yudhishtira approached the son of Sántanu to hear the high-  
 43 souled Bhíshma proclaiming the entire laws, a sage named  
 Samíka came to the spot where, O best of dvijas, lay the eggs  
 44 within the bell. There he heard the voice of the little birds  
 chirping, whose voices were inarticulate on account of their  
 45 infancy, although they had transcendant knowledge. Then the  
 Rishi, accompanied by his disciples, lifted up the bell and  
 saw with surprise the young motherless and fatherless birds.

46 The venerable Muni Samíka, having so seen them on the  
 ground there, filled with astonishment, addressed his attendant  
 dvijas.

47 "Well was it said by the chief of the dvijas, Uśanas himself,  
 the regent of the planet Venus, when he saw the army of  
 48 the Daityas intent on fleeing, hard-pressed by the gods. 'Ye  
 must not go, turn ye back; why run ye away, ye feeble ones?  
 Abandoning valour and glory, where have ye gone? Ye shall  
 49 not perish. Whether one perishes or whether one fights,  
 one possesses life as long as God originally created, not as  
 50 long as one's mind desires. Men perish, some in their  
 homes, some in flight; so, too, do they meet their death when  
 51 eating food and drinking water. So, too, others, when  
 sporting themselves, seated in the chariot of Love, free from  
 sickness, their bodies unpierced by arrows, fall into the power  
 52 of the King of the departed. Others, when intent on aus-  
 terities, are led off by the servants of the King of the departed:



and others occupied in meditation and study have not gained  
53 immortality. Of yore, Indra hurled his thunderbolt against  
Sambara, yet that demon, though pierced thereby to the heart,  
54 did not perish. By that very thunderbolt, indeed, and by  
the same Indra, when their time was come, the Dánavas  
55 were slain, the Daityas forthwith perished. Perceiving  
this, ye should not fear: return ye.' Then those Daityas, aban-  
56 doning the fear of death, turned back. This speech of  
Uśanas is proved true by these most noble birds, which even  
in the superhuman battle did not meet with destruction.  
57 Whence comes the laying of the eggs, O brahmans? Whence  
comes the even fall of the bell? And how comes it that the  
58 ground is covered with flesh, fat, and blood? Certainly these  
*must be* some brahmans; they are not ordinary birds. The  
favour of destiny shows great good-fortune in the world."  
59 Having spoken thus he looked at them and spoke again,  
"Return, go to the hermitage, taking the young birds *with you*.  
60 Where these egg-born may have no fear of cat, or rat, of  
61 hawk or ichneumon, there let the birds be placed. O dvijas,  
what is the use of great care? All creatures are destroyed  
or preserved by their own actions, as have been these young  
62 birds. Nevertheless men must exert themselves in all matters;  
he who does a manly act gains commendation from us, the  
good."  
63 Thus urged by that illustrious Muni, those young Munis,  
taking those birds, went then to their own hermitage, delight-  
ful to ascetics, where clusters of bees settled on the boughs of  
64 the trees. And he, the noblest of dvijas, gathering wild  
roots, flowers, fruits, grasses, such as his mind loved, perform-  
65 ed the various religious ceremonies ordained by the Veda to  
all the deities, to Viṣṇu, Rudra, and the Creator, to Indra,  
Yama, and Agni, to Varuṇa, to Vṛihaspati and Kuvera, and  
also to Vayu, to Dhātri and Vidhātṛi.

---

## CANTO III.

*The Visit to the Vindhya Mountain.*

*The Story of the Birds continued—The Birds, when full-grown, were endowed with speech, and explained that wonder to the Muni Samika—They were the four sons of a Rishi Sukrisha—Indra appeared to the Rishi in the form of an aged bird, and asked for human flesh—The Rishi ordered his four sons to sacrifice themselves—They refused, and he cursed them to be born in the brute creation, but, moved with compassion at their entreaty, bestowed on them perfect knowledge—Hence they were born as birds.*

Mārkaṇḍeya spoke.

- 1 Thus he, the most virtuous Muni, O princely brahman, nourished them day by day with food and water, and in safety.
- 2 After a month they resorted to the sun's chariot-road, being gazed at by the Munis' sons, whose eyes were tremulous
- 3 with curiosity. After seeing the earth, with its cities, and with its ocean and noble rivers, which appeared of the size
- 4 of a chariot wheel, they returned to the hermitage. The spirited birds were wearied in their souls with their toil : and their knowledge was developed there through their energy.
- 5 They all performed the reverential circumambulation around the Rishi, who was expounding the truths of the law in compassion for his disciples, and respectfully saluted his feet
- 6 and said, " We have been delivered by thee, O Muni ! from dreadful death ; thou hast given us shelter, food, and water ;
- 7 thou art our father and spiritual guide. Our mother died, when we were still in the womb ; nor have we been nourished by a father : thou, by whom we were preserved when young,
- 8 hast given us life. Thou, of perfect splendour on the earth, lifting high up the elephant's bell, didst purge away evil
- 9 from us who were withering like worms. ' How may these strength-less ones grow ? When shall I see them flying in the sky ? When shall I see them alighting on a tree of the
- 10 earth, settling within the trees ? When shall my natural colour be obliterated by the dust which the wind from their

- 11 wings raises, as they flit about near me ? ' Thou, dear Sir,  
 thus thinking, didst nourish us ; now we, those *very birds*, are  
 grown up and have become wise, what ought we to do ? "
- 12 Having clearly heard this their perfectly articulated speech,  
 the Rishi, surrounded by all his disciples, and accompanied  
 13 by his son S'ringin, being full of eager curiosity, and covered  
 with horripilation as with a garment, said, " Tell me truly the  
 14 cause of your power of speech. Through whose curse did  
 you incur this wondrous transformation both in form and  
 speech ? Deign here to tell me that."

The birds spoke.

- 15 " There was of yore a most virtuous Muni named Vipulasvat.  
 16 To him were born two sons Sukrisha and Tumburu. We are  
 the four sons of soul-subdued Sukrisha ; to that Rishi we were  
 ever submissive in reverence, religious practices and faith.  
 17 As he desired, who was diligent in the performance of  
 austerities, and who constantly kept his organs under control,  
 18 we at once produced fuel, flowers and everything else, and  
 whatever was needed for sustenance.
- 19 " Now while he and we thus dwelt in the forest, there came  
 the king of the gods in the appearance of a bird, mighty in  
 size, with broken wings, stricken with age, with eyes of a  
 20 copperish colour, down-cast in soul ; desirous to prove that  
 venerable Rishi, who practised truth, purity, and patience,  
 and who was exceedingly lofty in mind ; and for the coming of  
 the curse upon us.

" The bird spoke.

- 21 " ' O exalted dvija, deign here to save me, who am consumed  
 with hunger. I seek for food, noble Sir ! be thou my in-  
 22 comparable refuge. As I was standing on a summit of the  
 Vindhya Mountains, I fell, Sir, at an exceedingly swift blast sent  
 23 by the wings of a bird. So there I *lay* on the ground, lost  
 in unconsciousness, without memory, for seven days ; with the  
 24 eighth day I regained consciousness. New fully conscious,  
 pressed by hunger, I have come for help to thee ; I am seek-

ing for food, deprived of all pleasure, and with a mind in  
 25 pain. Therefore turn, pure-minded *sage*, thy steadfast mind  
 to my rescue; give me, O Brahmarshi, food suitable to  
 support my life.'

26 "He, thus invoked, answered him, Indra in bird-like shape,  
 'I will give thee the food thou desirest for the support of thy  
 27 life.' Thus having spoken, that best of dvijas further asked  
 him, 'What food shall I prepare for thy use?' and he replied,  
 'My chiefest delight is in human flesh.'

"The Rishi spoke.

28 "'Thy childhood is past; thy youth, too, gone; thou art as-  
 29 suredly in the decline of life, O egg-born. Why art thou  
 most malign-hearted even in old age, thou in whom of all  
 30 mankind every desire has ceased? What has thy last stage  
 of life to do with human flesh? Assuredly no one is created  
 31 foremost among evil-beings! Or what need hast thou to ad-  
 dress me, being what I am? One should always give when  
 one has promised—such is our professed opinion.'

32 "Having thus spoken to him, the Brahmarshi resolved that  
 it should be so. Calling us quickly and commending us accord-  
 33 ing to our good qualities, the Muni, agitated at heart, ad-  
 dressed a most severe speech to us all, who were respectfully  
 34 bowing, full of faith, with hands reverently joined. 'Ye noble  
 dvijas, whose minds are improved, are bound by obligations  
 equally with me. A glorious progeny has sprung from you, just  
 35 as ye, O twice-born, have sprung from me. If a father is  
 deemed by you a guru worthy of reverence and most exalted,  
 perform ye then my promise with cheerful mind.'

36 "Whilst he so spoke we exclaimed respectfully, 'What thou  
 shalt say, consider that in truth as already accomplished.'

"The Rishi spoke.

37 "'Of me has this bird sought protection oppressed with  
 hunger and thirst; wherefore let him be straightway satisfied  
 38 with your flesh, and let his thirst be quickly assuaged with  
 your blood.

“Then we, afflicted, our terror visible in our trembling, ex-  
 39 claimed, ‘Alas, alas!’ and said, ‘not this deed! How for  
 the sake of another’s body can a wise man destroy or injure  
 40 his own body? for a son is even as one’s own self. A son  
 pays those debts, indeed, that have been declared due to the  
 pitris, the gods, and men; a son does not offer up his body.  
 41 Therefore we will not do this; we have done as has been  
 done by men of old. While alive one receives good things,  
 42 and while alive one does holy acts. When one is dead, the  
 body perishes, and there is an end of righteousness, &c.  
 Men skilled in holy law have declared that one ought by all  
 means to preserve one’s self.’

43 “Having heard us speak thus, the Muni, burning as it were  
 with anger, again addressed us, scorching us, as it were, with  
 44 his eyes. ‘Since ye will not perform this my plighted word  
 for me, therefore, blasted by my curse, ye shall be born among  
 the brute creation!’

45 “Having thus addressed us, he next said to that bird, ‘When  
 I have performed for myself the final sacrifice, and my obsequies,  
 46 according to the S’ástras, do thou unhesitatingly eat me  
 here, (O best of dvijas): this my body I here grant thee for  
 47 food. The brahmanhood of a brahman is deemed such, so far  
 indeed as he maintains his truthfulness, O chief of the feather-  
 48 ed race. Not by sacrifices accompanied with presents, nor by  
 any other act, do brahmans acquire such great virtue as by the  
 observance of truth.’

49 “Having thus heard the Rishi’s speech, Indra, in bird-like  
 form, his soul filled with astonishment, then replied to the  
 50 Muni, ‘Applying thyself to deep meditation, O lord of brah-  
 mans, quit this thy body; for living thing I never eat, O lord  
 of brahmans.’

51 “Having heard this his speech, the Muni concentrated himself  
 in deep meditation. Perceiving that his fixed resolution, Indra,  
 52 further, resuming his own form said, ‘Ho! princely brah-  
 man, understand with thy understanding what is to be under-  
 stood, O man of understanding! To prove thee have I thus  
 53 transgressed, O sinless one! Pardon me then, O pure-minded

one: and what wish is there of thine that may be granted? Pleased most highly am I with thee, for maintaining thy true  
 54 word. Henceforth, knowledge like Indra's shall be revealed to thee, and no obstacle shall withstand thee in austerities and holy law.'

55 "But when Indra after speaking thus had departed, we prostrate on our faces thus implored our father, the renowned  
 56 Muni, who was filled with anger. 'Dear father, high-minded, deign to pardon us miserable ones who dread death; for life  
 57 is dear to us. In an aggregate of skin bones and flesh, filled with pus and blood, wherein one should take no delight, therein  
 58 do we find this delight. Hear too, Sir, how people are beguiled when overcome by those powerful enemies, their faults,  
 59 love, anger and so forth. Great is the fortress which has Wisdom for its rampart, the bones for its pillars, the skin for  
 60 its walls and banks, the flesh and blood for its plaster. Nine gates it has; it is capable of great effort; it is enclosed on all sides with sinews; and there the Sentient Soul\* sits firm as  
 61 king. He has two rival ministers, the Intelligencet and the Understanding‡; those two strive to destroy each other as  
 62 foes. Four enemies desire the destruction of that king, Desire,§ Anger, and Covetousness; and Folly|| is the other enemy. But  
 63 when that king closes those gates and stands firm, then he becomes indeed both happily strong and free from alarm;  
 64 he displays his affections; he is not overcome by his enemies. But when he leaves all the gates open, then the enemy named  
 65 Passion¶ assails the gates of the eyes, etc. Gaining an entrance by the five gates, he penetrates everywhere and spreads widely: then indeed enter, following on his track, the three other  
 67 terrible enemies. That very enemy, Passion, having entered there, forms a close union with the Understanding, together

\* Purusha.

† Buddhi, *perceptive faculty*.

‡ Manas, *cognitive faculty*.

§ Kāma, *love, desire, affection*.

|| Moha, *folly, infatuation*.

¶ Rāga, *passion, emotion*; used as equivalent to Kāma.

68 with the other gates which are known as the organs. He,  
 difficult to be approached, having reduced into subjection the  
 organs and the Understanding, and having reduced into sub-  
 69 jection the gates, then destroys the rampart. The Intelligence,  
 seeing the Understanding the dependent of that enemy, perishes  
 forthwith. And there, deprived of his ministers and abandoned  
 70 by his subjects, the king, his strategetical points gained by  
 the enemies, perishes. Even so Passion, Folly, Covetousness and  
 71 Anger prevail, evil in their nature, wrecking the memory of  
 mankind. From Passion springs Anger; from Anger is born  
 72 Covetousness; from Covetousness arises Folly; from Folly errors  
 of memory; from loss of memory loss of the intellect; through  
 73 loss of the intellect man perishes. Shew favour, O thou most  
 virtuous! to us who have thus lost our intellects, who are  
 compliant to Passion and Covetousness, and who covet life.  
 74 And let not this curse take effect, which thou hast pronounced,  
 Sir! Let us not tread the miserable path of darkness, O best  
 of Munis!

“ The Rishi spoke.

75 “ ‘ What I have uttered, will never become false; my voice  
 76 has not spoken untruth hitherto, O sons! Fate is here supreme,  
 I think. Fie on worthless manhood, whereby I have been  
 thoughtlessly forced to do a deed that ought not to be done!  
 77 And since I am besought reverently by you, therefore, when  
 endowed with the nature of brutes, ye shall obtain the highest  
 78 knowledge. And ye, having your paths illuminated by  
 knowledge, with the stains of pain removed, free from doubt,  
 shall through my favour gain the highest perfection.’  
 79 “ Thus, Sir, we were cursed of old by our father through the  
 power of destiny; hence we have descended to a lower grade of  
 80 created beings for a long time; and we were born on the  
 field of battle; we were nourished by thee: thus have we  
 acquired the nature of birds, O bráhmaṇ. There is no man  
 in this world who is not bound by fate.”

Márkaṇḍeya spoke.

81 Having heard this their speech, the venerable and eminent

- Muni Samika answered those dvijas who stood near him.
- 82 ‘ Even before did I make this remark in your presence, ‘ These are not ordinary birds ; these must be some bráhmans, who even in the superhuman battle escaped destruction.’ ”
- 83 Then they, permitted by that affectionate high-souled Muni, went to the Vindhya, the goodliest of mountains, clad with
- 84 trees and creepers. Hitherto have the righteous birds remained on that mountain, engaged in austerities and the study
- 85 of the Vedas, and resolute in meditation. Thus those Muni’s sons gained the hospitality of the noble Muni, acquired the shape of birds, and are dwelling on the Vindhya range, in a cave of the noble mountain, where the water is very sacred, with their minds subdued.

---

#### CANTO IV.

##### *The Incarnation of the Four-formed God.*

*Jaimini visits the Birds, and explaining the reason of his visit, puts them the four questions that perplexed him—After invoking Vishnu, Brahmá and S'iva, they explain the first question, why Vishnu, though devoid of qualities, is endued with humanity.*

Márkaṇḍeya spoke.

- 1 Thus those birds, the sons of Droṇa, became learned ; and they dwell on the Vindhya mountain : visit them and ask them.
- 2 Jaimini, having heard this speech of the Rishi Márkaṇḍeya, went to the Vindhya mountain, where dwelt those righteous birds. And when Jaimini reached that mountain, he
- 3 heard their voices as they were reading, and having heard
- 4 filled with surprise, he reflected. ‘ The bráhmans are reading, observing the beauties of the various passages, regulating their breath, without any intermission, distinctly and
- 5 without faults : wondrous is this, methinks, that Sarasvatí does not forsake these Muni’s sons, although they are born in
- 6 the brute creation. One’s circle of relatives and a friend and whatever else is desired in one’s home—all that forsakes one



- 7 and departs ; Sarasvati does not abandon one.' Thinking even  
 thus, he entered the mountain cave ; and entering saw those  
 8 dvijas standing on a ledge of the rock. Looking at them as  
 they were reading, their faces free from blemish, he then  
 addressed them all, with *mingled* sorrow and joy.
- 9 "Hail to you, O bráhmans ! Know that I am Jaimini a  
 disciple of Vyása, who am come to you, being eager for learn-  
 10 ing. Verily be ye not angry ; whereas ye, being cursed by  
 your father, who was exceedingly wrathful, have been turned  
 11 into birds, that was indeed altogether fate. In a family of  
 immense wealth some intelligent members, it is said, were born ;  
 when their wealth was lost, they were well comforted,  
 12 O bráhmans, by S'abara. Men after giving to *others* become  
 beggars *themselves* ; and others, after killing *men*, have been  
 killed *themselves* ; and *others*, after having overthrown *men*, have  
 been *themselves* overthrown ;—those very men, through the decay  
 13 of austerities. Thus I have very often seen opposites of this  
 kind : the world is constantly distressed by the destruction of  
 14 existence and non-existence. At such thoughts as these in  
 your minds, ye should not give way to sorrow : so much is  
 invulnerability to sorrow and joy the fruit of knowledge."
- 15 Then they all did Jaimini honour, by giving *him* water for  
*his* feet, and the arghya offering ; and they bowed to him, and  
 16 questioned him with deep respect. Then all the birds address-  
 ed him, the disciple of Vyása, rich in austerities, as he sat at  
 ease, resting himself, with his fatigue mitigated by the breeze  
 from their wings.

The birds spoke.

- 17 "To-day has our birth become fruitful, and our lives have been  
 well-lived, inasmuch as we see thy lotus-feet which are worthy  
 18 to be praised by the gods. The blazing fire of our father's  
 anger, which continues in our bodies, has been quenched to-  
 19 day by the water of the sight of thee, O bráhman. We trust  
 that all is well in thy hermitage among the deer and birds,  
 among the trees too, and the *various* kinds of creepers, shrubs,  
 20 reeds, and grasses. Or perhaps we *though* respectful have  
 not spoken this fittingly ? Whence can evil befall those who

21 have met with thee? And here, shew us favour, tell us the cause of thy visit; union with thee, as with the gods, is great prosperity; by whom, powerful for our good fortune, hast thou been brought to our view?"

Jaimini spoke.

22 "Let the reason be heard, O bráhmans, why I have come here to the Vindhya mountain's delightful cave, which is sprinkled  
23 with drops of water from the river Narmadá. At first I questioned the great Muni Márkaṇḍeya, a scion of Bhrigu's race, since I found difficulties in connexion with the Mahá-  
24 bhárata. And he, when asked by me, replied, 'Droṇa's high-souled sons are living on the mighty Vindhya mountain;  
25 they will declare the full meaning to thee.' And I, impelled by his speech, have come to this great mountain: therefore hear *me* fully; having heard, deign to give an explanation."

The birds spoke.

26 "The matter being one specially known to us, we will declare it; listen then, free from distrust; why should we not tell  
27 thee that of which our intellects are cognizant? For even in the four Vedas, for in the Dharma-śāstras also, and in all the Angas and whatever else is conformable to the Vedas—  
28 in these does our intellect range, O best of bráhmans; but  
29 nevertheless we are not able to give a promise. Therefore declare fearlessly what is doubtful in the Mahábhárata; we will declare it to thee, O thou who art wise in the law; if not there will be bewilderment."

Jaimini spoke.

30 "Hear, O ye pure ones! the matters in connexion with the Mahábhárata, which are doubtful to me here; having heard,  
31 deign to explain them. Why is Janárdana Vísudeva, who is the support of everything and the cause of all causes, al-  
32 though devoid of qualities, endued with humanity? And why was Drupada's daughter Kṛishná the common wife of the five sons of Páṇḍu? On this point *there is* very great perplexity.  
33 Why did the mighty Baladeva Haláyudha expiate his brah-  
34 manicide by engaging in a pilgrimage? And how was it that

the unmarried heroic high-souled sons of Draupadí, whose protector was Páṇḍu, were slain, as if they had no protector ?  
 35 Let all these doubtful points in connexion with the Mahá-  
 bhárata be explained to me ; that I having attained my object,  
 may return to my hermitage in comfort."

The birds spoke.

36 " Having paid adoration to Vishnu, the lord of the gods, the  
 pre-eminent, the universal soul, the immeasurable, the eternal,  
 37 and the changeless ; to him who subsists in four forms, possessed  
 of the three qualities, and devoid of qualities, the most choice,  
 38 the most venerable, the most excellent, and the immortal ; to  
*him* than whom there is nothing more minute, than whom there  
 is nothing more immense, by whom—the unborn one, the begin-  
 39 ning of the worlds—this universe is permeated,—this *universe*  
 which, characterized by appearance and disappearance, by visi-  
 bility and invisibility, has, men say, been created and also been  
 40 destroyed in the end : and having paid adoration with  
 profound meditation to Brahmá, the creator, who purifies the  
 three worlds with his mouths as he utters the Ric' and Sáma  
 41 hymns : also having prostrated ourselves before the lord,  
 conquered by one of whose arrows the bands of the Asuras do  
 42 not interrupt the sacrifices of the sacrificers : we will declare  
 the whole doctrine of Vyása, who was wonderful in his actions,  
 by whom, in delivering the Mahábhárata, justice and the other  
*virtues* were made manifest.

43 " The waters were called Nára by Munis conversant with  
 truth ; they were originally his place of movement\* ; hence he  
 44 is called Náráyana. The adorable god, the lord Náráyana, per-  
 vading all things, lives, O brahman, in a quadruple form : he  
 45 is possessed as well as devoid of attributes. His first form is  
 inscrutable ; the wise behold it bright ; it is covered with gar-  
 46 lands of flame ; it is the acme of perfection to devotees ; it is  
 both far and it is near ; it is to be understood as transcending  
 attributes ; when called Vásudeva, it is seen devoid of egoism ;  
 47 its shape, colour, etc., are not real but imaginary ; it is indeed  
 48 always pure ; it is the sole form of pre-eminence. His second

\* Ayana.

form, called Śeṣha, supports the earth below with its head ; it is described as being characterized by the quality of darkness ;  
 49 it belongs to the brute creation. His third form is active, and devoted to the preservation of creatures ; it is to be considered as consisting chiefly of the quality of goodness ; it is the  
 50 fashioner of virtue. His fourth form abides in water ; it lies on a serpent as its bed ; its attribute is passion ; and it is always indeed active.

51 “ The third form of Vishnu, which is assiduously intent on the preservation of creatures, always maintains righteousness on the  
 52 earth. It destroys the haughty Asuras, the exterminators of righteousness ; it protects the gods, and holy men, who are  
 53 devoted to the preservation of righteousness. Whensoever, O Jaimini, the wane of righteousness occurs and the rise of  
 54 iniquity, then it creates itself. Having formerly become existent, as a wild boar it repelled the water with its snout, and  
 55 lifted out the earth like a lotus with one of its tushes. Having taken the form of the man-lion, it slew Hiraṇya-kaśipu, and  
 56 destroyed Viprac'itti and other Dánavas. I cannot now enumerate its other incarnations, those of the dwarf, etc. : his  
 57 recent incarnation here was this one in Mathurá. Thus that form, which is characterized by goodness, becomes incarnate ; and it is designated Pradyumna ; it is occupied in the work of  
 58 preservation. And ever by Vāsudeva's will, it exists in divine form, human form, and brute form, and partakes of their several natures.

59 “ Thus this has been declared to thee, how that the lord Vishnu, though all-successful, assumed human form. Hear again the sequel thereof.”

#### CANTO V.

##### *Indra's Transformations.*

*The Birds explain the second question—Draupadī was the wife of the five Páṇḍavas, because they were partial incarnations of Indra, and she was the incarnation of his wife.*

The birds spoke.

1 “ Of old, O brahman ! when the son of Tvasht̥ri was slain,

- Indra's splendour, oppressed by the brahmanicide, suffered a  
 2 grievous decline. Then because of his wrong conduct Indra's  
 splendour entered Dharma; and, his righteousness and splendour  
 being gone, Indra became splendourless.
- 3 "Then hearing that his son was slain, the prajāpati Tvasṭṛi  
 enraged, tearing out a single matted lock of hair, uttered this  
 4 speech. 'Let the three worlds and the gods thereof see my  
 might this day, and let Indra the perverse brahmanicide see,  
 5 by whom my son when engaged in his own business was des-  
 troyed.' Thus having spoken, he, his eyes red with anger,  
 sacrificed that lock of hair in the fire.
- 6 "Then uprose Vṛitra, the mighty Asura, encircled with flame,  
 huge in body, with great teeth, resembling a mass of broken  
 7 collyrium. He, the enemy of Indra, of immeasurable soul  
 surpassing the might of Tvasṭṛi, mighty in valour, increas-  
 8 ed daily a bow-shot *in stature*. And Indra, having seen the  
 mighty Asura Vṛitra *eager* for his slaughter, unnerved by  
 9 fear, sent seven Rishis, desiring peace. Then the affectionate-  
 minded Rishis, who delighted in benevolence towards all crea-  
 tures, brought about friendship and treaties between him and  
 10 Vṛitra. When Indra violating the rules of the treaty slew  
 Vṛitra, then his might overwhelmed by the *sin of the slaughter*  
 11 waned; and that might which quitted Indra's body entered the  
 wind, which pervades everything, is imperceptible, and is the  
 supreme deity of power.
- 12 "And when Indra, assuming the form of Gautama, violated  
 13 Ahalyá, then the lord of the gods lost his form. Thereupon his  
 beauty of limb and feature, which was exceedingly captivat-  
 ing, forsook the wicked lord of the gods and went to the  
 Ásvins.
- 14 "Perceiving the lord of the gods to have lost his uprightness  
 and glory, to be powerless and formless, the Daityas endeavour-  
 15 ed to conquer him. Daityas of exceeding might, desirous to  
 conquer the lord of the gods, were born in the families of kings  
 16 of surpassing valour, O great Muni. Then the Earth, afflicted  
 with their weight, once went to the summit of Meru, where is  
 17 the abode of the heaven-dwelling gods. Afflicted with their

excessive weight, she declared that the cause of her distress  
 18 arose from the Dánavas and Daityas. 'These Asuras, widely  
 resplendent, have been slain by you ; they have all been born in  
 19 the world of men in the families of kings ; their armies are  
 numerous indeed : oppressed by their weight, I am sinking  
 downward ; do ye, O ye thirty gods, devise how tranquillity  
 may be attained for me.'

The birds spoke.

20 "Then the gods descended with portions of their glory from  
 heaven to earth, to benefit the creatures and to alleviate the  
 21 burden of the Earth. Dharma himself relinquished the  
 glory which is innate in the body of Indra, then was born  
 22 of Kuntí the resplendent raja Yudhishthira ; Váyu relin-  
 quished his might, then was born Bhíma ; and from the half  
 of Indra's power was born Dhananjaya, the son of Prithá ;  
 23 Yama's two sons, resembling Indra in form, of glorious dignity,  
 were born of Mádrí. Thus the adorable Indra became incar-  
 24 nate in five forms. His auspicious wife was born as Kṛishṇá  
 25 from Agni : she, Kṛishṇá, is the wife of Indra alone, and of no  
 one else. The lords of ascetics can even multiply their bodies.  
 26 "Thus the fact of her being one wife to five men has been  
 explained to thee ; be it heard how Baladeva went to the  
 Sarasvatí."

---

## CANTO VI.

### *Baladeva's brahmanicide.*

*The Birds explain the third question—Baladeva, in order to  
 avoid siding with the Pándavas and Kauravas, went to the Raivata  
 forest—Overcome by intoxication, love, and the influences of the  
 place, he killed Síta for not saluting him—To expiate that sin  
 he undertook the pilgrimage.*

The birds spoke.

1 The plough-armed Ráma, knowing the perfect affection of  
 Kṛishṇa for Arjuna, deliberated much—"Can what has been  
 2 done be better done ? Without Kṛishṇa, assuredly, I will not  
 go near Duryodhana ; or how, siding with the Pándavas, shall

- 3 I slay king Duryodhana, my royal son-in-law and disciple ?  
Therefore I will go neither to Arjuna nor to king Duryodhana.
- 4 I will myself bathe myself at holy bathing places, so long as  
it conduces to the ending of the Kurus and Pándavas."
- 5 Having thus taken leave of Kṛishṇa, Arjuna and Duryodhana,  
the descendant of Súra, surrounded by his army, went to Dváká.
- 6 Arriving at Dváravatí, which was thronged with glad  
and well-fed citizens, Ráma Haláyudha drank a draught at the
- 7 holy bathing places, which are to be visited in future. Having  
drank his draught, he then marched to the flourishing park of
- 8 Raivata,\* taking with him the intoxicated Apsaras-like Revatí.
- 9 Encircled by a bevy of maidens, the hero went on, intoxicated,  
stumbling in his walk. And he saw a forest, fascinating, beyond
- 10 compare, loaded with the fruits and flowers of every season,  
thronged with troops of monkeys, sacred, dotted with clumps of
- 11 lotus-flowers, a great forest abounding in pools. Listening to the  
copious, pleasure-inspiring, love-soft, beautiful, ear-delighting,  
melodious songs poured forth from the mouths of the birds, he
- 12 saw the trees there, loaded with the weight of the fruits of  
every season, bright with the blossoms of every season, ren-  
dered resonant by the birds;—mango trees, hog-plums,†  
kámaringas,‡ cocoanuts, and tindaka trees,§ and little bel

\* A mountain near Dváraká in Gujarat. The woodland scene described seems to be a fanciful one, compounded from the author's observations everywhere.

† Amrataka, the Hog-plum, *Spondias mangifera* ; the modern *amra*. It is both wild and cultivated. I give the botanical names, from Hooker's Flora of British India, of all except the most common, as many of the trees have no English names, and are better known by those names: but there can be no doubt that the various *species* in a *genus* are not always distinguished, and that the Sanskrit names are sometimes as much generic as specific. The descriptions are taken from Roxburgh's Flora Indica, Edn. Clarke, 1874, from Oliver's Indian Botany, 1869, and from Firminger's Manual of Gardening for India.

‡ Bhavya, *Averrhoa carambola*, the modern *kámringa*. A garden tree.

§ I do not find *tindaka* in Prof. Monier-Williams' Dictionary: *tinduka* occurs in verse 14. The late Rev. Dr. Banerjee, in a translation he began, translates it Ebony, which is *Diospyros melanoxylon*, the modern *tindu*. It is a large tree, growing in most woody mountainous parts of India.

13 trees,\* cumin,† pomegranates,‡ citrons,§ jack trees,|| monkey-jack trees,¶ plantain trees, and very charming kadam trees,\*\* and párávata trees,†† kankola trees,‡‡ nalina  
14 trees,§§ docks,||| marking-nut trees,¶¶ emblic myroba-

\* A'bilvaka. I do not find this in the Dictionary. Bilva, the Bel or Bengal Quince, *Ægle marmelos*; the modern *bel-phul* and *s'rl-phal*. Both wild and cultivated. It bears panicles of large white flowers, which are used in worship.

† Jíra, Cumin, *Cuminum cyminum*; the modern *jíra*; this is a slender cultivated annual. Jíra also means *Panicum miliaceum*, Roxb., the modern *cheena*, which is a cultivated cereal from 2 to 4 feet high. (Roxb., p. 104.) Neither seems appropriate.

‡ Dádima, the Pomegranate, *Punica granatum*; the modern *dárim* or *dálim*. A cultivated tree in India.

§ Vija-púraka, Citron, *Citrus medica*, the modern *nebu*. A cultivated tree in India.

|| Panasa, the Jack or Jack-fruit tree, *Artocarpus integrifolia*; the modern *kánphul*. A cultivated tree. (Roxb., p. 633; Oliver, p. 272; not in Hooker).

¶ Lakuc'a, the Monkey-jack, *Artocarpus lacucha*; the modern *dephul*. A garden tree. (Roxb., p. 634; Firminger, p. 188; not in Hooker).

\*\* Nípa, *Anthocephalus cadamba* (*Nauclea cadamba*, Roxb.); also kadamba, the modern *kadam*. A garden tree, highly ornamental with its large, globular, beautiful, orange-coloured heads of flowers, and very useful from its extensive close shade (see Roxb., p. 172).

†† Párávata: the Dictionary says this is *Diospyros embryopteris* (*glutinosa*, Roxb.), which is the modern *gáb*: but this tree is also *tinduka*, which occurs in the next verse, and *tinduka* has occurred in verse 12. Párávata means also a dove or pigeon, and has been corrupted into the Bengali *páyará*; might not párávata, the tree, be corrupted into the Bengali *peyará*, which means the Guava, *Psidium guyava*?

‡‡ Kan'kola. I do not find this in the Dictionary. Read *kan'kellán* for *kan'kolán*? Kan'kola is given as the Asok, *Saraca indica* (*Jonesia asoka*, Roxb.), but this occurs in verse 15.

§§ Nalina. Dr. Banerjea translates this as the Indigo plant, but Prof. Monier-Williams says *nalina*, *neut.*, is the Indigo shrub, *Indigofera tinctoria*; while *nalina*, *masc.* as *horo*, is the *Carissa carandas*; but the latter occurs in the next verse.

||| Amla-vetasa, the Dock or Sorrel, as Prof. Monier-Williams gives it. The Dock is *Rumex vesicarius*, Roxb. The Sorrel is *Oxalis corniculata*, Hooker (see Oliver, pp. 181 and 269).

¶¶ Bhallátaka, the Marking-nut tree, *Semecarpus anacardium*, the Bengali



lans,\* and gáb treest† bearing large fruits, almond trees,‡  
 karamcha trees,§ yellow myrobalans,|| beleric myrobalans.¶  
 15 He, Yadu's descendant, saw these and other trees, and also aśo-  
 16 kas,\*\* punnāgas,†† screw-pines,‡‡ and vakulas,§§ c'ampakas,|||

*bhela*. A tree, growing in all the mountainous parts of India, with large panicles of small greenish yellow flowers. (Roxb., p. 268.)

\* A'malaka, the Emblic Myrobalan, *Phyllanthus emblica*, the modern *amla* (Roxb., p. 684 and Oliver, p. 279). I do not find it in Hooker. *Emblica officinalis* is an earlier name.

† Tinduka, *Diospyros embryopteris* (*glutinosa*, Roxb.), the modern *gdh*. It is a tree common in Bengal, and among the mountains in the Circars. Its fruit is as large as a medium-sized apple.

‡ Inguda, the Almond tree, *Terminalia catappa*, the modern *badám*. A beautiful large tree, growing everywhere.

§ Karamarda, *Carissa carandas*, the modern *karamcha*. A common small tree, with beautiful, white, jasmine-like flowers.

|| Haritaka, the Yellow or Chebulio Myrobalan, *Terminalia chebula*; a large forest tree.

¶ Vibhitaka, the Beleric Myrobalan, *Terminalia belerica*, the modern *bahepa*; a large forest tree.

\*\* A'soka, the Asok, *Saraca indica* (*Jonesia asoka*, Roxb.). A middling-sized, very handsome, garden tree, with large, globular bunches of rather large flowers. The flowers are of a beautiful orange colour when they first expand, and gradually change to red, forming a variety of beautiful shades: they are fragrant during the night. (Roxb., p. 312).

†† Punnāga, *Rottlera tinctoria*, (Roxb. and Oliver): it is still called *punnāg*. I do not find it in Hooker. A tree, a native of Coromandel.

‡‡ Ketakí, the Screw-Pine, *Pandanus odoratissimus*, (Roxb. and Oliver), the modern *keorá*. A large shrub, with panicles of large white, sheath-like leaves, enclosing bundles of closely-packed minute flowers. "It is the tender white leaves of the flowers, chiefly those of the male, that yield that most delightful fragrance, for which they are so universally and deservedly esteemed; for of all the perfumes in the world it must be the richest and most powerful." (Roxb., p. 707.)

§§ Vakula, *Mimusops elenghi*, the modern *bakul*. A tree, commonly cultivated, with flowers middle-sized drooping, white and fragrant; but Firminger says they are small, pale-green. (Roxb., p. 318; Hooker, p. 458; Firm., p. 490).

||| O'ampaka, *Michelia champaca*, the modern *champak* or *chám্পá*. A garden tree with large yellow delightful fragrant flowers.

saptaparnas,\* karnikáras,† and Spanish jasmines,‡ párijáta trees,§ kovidáras,|| mandáras,¶ and jujube trees,\*\* delightful Bignonia trees†† in blossom, and devdár trees,‡‡ sál trees,§§ palmyra palms,||| and ta-

\* Saptaparna, *Alstonia scholaris*. An ever-green tree growing in the drier forests of India.

† Karnikára, *Pterospermum acerifolium*, the Bengali kanak-champa. A Himalayan tree, but also grown in gardens. It has very large, pure white, fragrant flowers.

‡ Málati, the Catalonian or Spanish Jasmine, *Jasminum grandiflorum*, the Bengali játl or chamelí, Hindustani chambelí. It is a spreading garden shrub with graceful pinnate foliage and middling-sized white fragrant flowers, which retain their odour when dried and are much used for perfume. (Firm., p. 518). Málati also means the Clove-scented Echites, *Aganosma caryophyllata* (*Echites caryophyllata*, Roxb.), now called málati, which is a climbing shrub, with bay-like leaves and sprays of middling-sized fragrant white flowers. (Roxb., p. 245; Firm., p. 518.)

§ Párijáta, *Erythrina indica*. A large tree growing all over India, with racemes of numerous large bright scarlet flowers. This tree is generally called mandár now.

|| Kovidára, *Bauhinia variegata*, the Bengali rakta-kanchan. A garden tree with large reddish-purple flowers.

¶ Mandára. Prof. Monier-Williams says this is *Erythrina fulgens*, but I do not find it in Hooker or Roxburgh. May it be *E. stricta*, which grows in the Western Peninsular and much resembles *E. indica*? In Bengal *E. indica* is now generally called mandár.

\*\* Badara, *Zizyphus ænoplia* (*jujuba* or *scandens*, Roxb.), the Bengali kul, the Hindustani ber. A small tree with fruit of the size of a large cherry.

†† Pátala, *Bignonia suaveolens*, Roxb., the modern pdrul. I do not find it in Hooker. A tree, with large, exquisitely fragrant, dark dull crimson flowers. It blossoms during the hot season. Prof. Monier-Williams calls it the Trumpet-flower tree, but I do not find this name in any of the Botanical books I have consulted.

‡‡ Deva-dáru, *Pinus devdara*, Roxb, the modern devdár. I do not find it in Hooker. A great tree, native of the mountains north of Rohilkhand. No species of pine is native in the Peninsula (Oliver, p. 294); this tree therefore is quite out of place in this Gujarat scene.

§§ Sála, the Sál tree, *Shorea robusta*, the modern sál. An immense timber tree.

||| Tála, the Palmyra Palm, *Borassus flabelliformis*, Roxb., the modern tál. Not in Hooker. Fans are made from the large fan-like leaves.

18 málas,\* kimsukas,† and fine vanjula trees‡:—inhabited by chakors,§ and woodpeckers, shrikes,|| and parrots, kóils,¶ and  
 19 sparrows, green pigeons,\*\* and jívajívaka pheasants,†† by priya-

\* Tamála. Prof. Monier-Williams says this is *Garcinia xanthochymus* (*Xanthochymus pictorius*, Roxb.); this is a tree, a native of the mountainous districts in India. But Roxburgh says the Tamála is *Diospyros cordifolia*, which Hooker unites with *D. montana*; this is a common tree.

† Kims'uka, *Butea frondosa*, the Bengali palásh. Oliver calls this tree the Dhak, (p. 195), but I do not find this name anywhere else. It is a common tree, with handsome, irregular, orange-red flowers in racemes which are covered with a soft greenish-purple down. (Roxb., p. 540.)

‡ Vanjula, *Ougeinia dalbergioides* (*Dalbergia oojenensis*, Roxb.). A tree with racemes of numerous, rather small, very pale rose-coloured flowers, somewhat fragrant.

§ C'akora, *Caccabis chukor*. The Chakor is said in Prof. Monier-Williams' Dictionary to be the Greek partridge, *Perdix rufa* or *Tetrao rufus*, but the Greek partridge, *Caccabis saxatilis*, is a different species, inhabiting Europe, from the chakor the Asiatic species. The chakor is found in the Himalayas and the other northern ranges. It is always a bird of the hills, and does not occur in Gujarat, where this scene is laid (Jerdon's Birds of India, Edn. Godwin-Austen, Vol. II, p. 564; Hume and Marshall's Game Birds of India, Vol. II, p. 33). *Tetrao rufus* is the name Linnaeus gave the European bird. *Perdix rufa* seems, from the edition of his works in the Bengal Asiatic Society's Library, to be an earlier name. There are other partridges in the plains of India, *Ortygornis gularis*, &c., but I do not think the reference can be to them, for the writer seems to be mentioning birds inhabiting the Himalayas; see the note on the *Jívajívaka* pheasant, below.

|| Bhínga-rája. Prof. Monier-Williams translates this, Malabar shrike, *Lanius malabaricus*. This bird stands in Jerdon as *Edolus malabaricus*, and is, I am informed by Dr. J. Scully, a king-crow. Another bird may be meant, the Malabar Wood-shrike, *Tephrodornis sylvicola*, but, as the writer seems to be referring to birds found near the Himalayas, bhínga-rája may mean any kind of shrike, almost every kind of which is common throughout the greater part of India. (Jerdon, Vol. I, p. 400).

¶ Kóila, the Kóil, *Eudynamis orientalis* (Jerdon, Vol. I, p. 342).

\*\* Harita, the Green Pigeon, probably the Bengal green pigeon, *Crocopus phœnicopterus*, or the Orange-breasted green pigeon, *Osmotreron bicincta*. The Southern green pigeon, *Crocopus chlorogaster*, and the Green imperial pigeon, *Carpophaga sylvatica*, are not found near the Himalayas.

†† Jívajívaka. Prof. Monier-Williams gives the synonyms jíva-jíva and jívanjiva, and explains the word as a kind of bird supposed to be a pheasant,

putras,\* and pied-crested cuckoos,† and by various other birds,  
 20 warbling pleasingly and very melodiously :—and the lakes,  
 beautiful and placid, crowded on all sides with the lotus  
 water-lilies,‡ and lotuses,§ and the brilliant blue water-

or the chakor. As the chakor is mentioned already, it must have the first meaning. Taking it to be a kind of pheasant, I would suggest that it is the Cheer Pheasant, *Phasianus Wallichii*. The Sanskrit name looks like an onomatopœous one, and the cry of this bird is “something like the words *chir a pir, chir a pir, chir chir, chirwa chirwa*.” Cheer is the native name. The bird is found in Garhwal and Kumaon and the neighbouring country, and inhabits the middle slope of the Himalayas (Hume and Marshall, Vol. I, p. 169 : Jordon, Vol. II, p. 527). If this bird be a pheasant, it is clear the writer is mentioning, not the fauna of Gujarat, but of the country near the Himalayas, for it appears from Hume and Marshall, and Jerdon, that no pheasants are found in India except in the Himalayan and Indo-Burmese mountains and forests.

\* Priya-putra. I do not know what this bird is. The name affords no indication.

† C’átaka, the Pied-crested Cuckoo. Prof. Monier-Williams says the bird is *Cuculus melanoleucus*, but I find no such name mentioned in Jerdon. It is the *Coccyzus melanoleucos* of Jerdon (Vol. I, p. 339), which he says is called chatak. It is found all over India.

‡ Kumud, the Lotus water-lily, *Nymphaea lotus* (Oliver, p. 155). There seems to be some confusion in distinguishing between the Sanskrit names for the lotus and the water-lilies, and I would attempt a solution in this and the following notes.

Of the water-lilies, *Nymphaea*, large water-herbs with leaves and flowers floating on the surface, there are 2 species common in India, viz., *N. lotus*, the Lotus water-lily, and *N. stellata*, the Blue water-lily.

*N. lotus* has leaves 6—12 inches broad, and flowers 2—10 inches broad, white, rose, or red. This species combines Roxburgh’s *N. rubra* and *N. edulis* (*esculenta*). Its Sanskrit name is *kumud*, and probably *ambu-ja*; the red variety is *raktotpala*. It closes during the day and opens at night.

The latter species, *N. stellata*, has flowers 1—10 inches broad, slightly odorous. It comprises 3 varieties, (1) *cyanea* (*N. cyanea*, Roxb.), flowers medium-sized, blue; (2) *parviflora*, flowers usually smaller, blue; (3) *versicolor* (*N. versicolor*, Roxb.), flowers larger, white, blue, purple, or flesh-coloured. The blue-flowered *N. stellata* is called *indívara*, *utpala*, *kuvalaya* and *nlotpala*. (Hooker, Vol. I, p. 114 : Roxburgh, p. 427.)

§ Pundarika, the Lotus or Sacred Lotus, *Nelumbium speciosum*. This is the only species of *Nelumbium* in India. It is a large erect water-herb with its

21 lilies,\* with water-lilies,† and lotuses;‡ and thronged with  
 kádamba geese,§ and ruddy shieldrakes|| and water-fowl,¶  
 22 with káranḍava ducks,\*\* pelicans,†† geese,‡‡ tortoises, and

leaves and flowers raised high above the water. Its leaves are peltate, cupped, 2—3 feet in diameter. The flowers are 4—10 inches broad, white or rose-red. Its Sanskrit names are *kamala*, *nalini*, *padmini*, *punḍarīka*, *sarasi-ja*, and *sahasra-patra*. The flower is *padma* and *panka-ja*. The red variety is *kokanada* and *támarasa*. Roxburgh says the white variety is called in Sanskrit *sitámbu-ja*, and the red variety *raktotpala*; but these names more properly designate the white and red varieties of the water-lily (*Nymphaea*), and Prof. Monier-Williams translates them so. The Lotus opens during the day and closes at night (Hooker, Vol. I, p. 116; Oliver's Indian Botany, p. 156; Roxburgh, p. 450.)

\* *Nilotpala*, the Blue water-lily, *Nymphaea stellata*, see note ‡ on *kumud*, *supra* p. 29.

† *Kahlára*. Prof. Monier-Williams says this is the White esculent water-lily, *Nymphaea lotus*, but Roxburgh assigns it to his *N. cyanea*. Can it mean the rose-coloured variety of the *N. lotus* or *stellata*? See note ‡ on *kumud*, *supra* p. 29.

‡ *Kamala*, the Lotus, *Nelumbium speciosum*; see note § on *Punḍarika*, *supra* p. 29. But there must be some difference between the two.

§ *Kádamba*, a kind of goose with dark-grey wings (*kala-hansa*), so Prof. Monier-Williams. It seems to be the Grey Lag-Goose, *Anser cinereus*, which is called *kar-háns* in Behar. (Hume and Marshall, Vol. III, p. 55; Jerdon, Vol. II, p. 779.)

|| *O'akraváka*, the Ruddy Shieldrake or Brahminy Duck, *Asarca rutila*. *Anas casarca* is the Linnæan name. (Hume and Marshall, Vol. III, p. 125; Jerdon, Vol. II, p. 791.)

¶ *Jala-kukkuta*. This is probably the Water-hen, *Gallinula chloropus*, commonly called the *jal-murghi*, which means the same. (Jerdon, Vol. II, p. 718.)

\*\* *Káranḍava*, a kind of duck; also called *karanda*. I would suggest that this is the Common Teal, *Querquedula crecca*, which is now called *kerra* in the N. W. Provinces, and *kardo* in Sindh. (Hume and Marshall, Vol. III, p. 205; Jerdon, Vol. II, p. 806.)

†† *Plava*. Prof. Monier-Williams translates this as pelican, *Pelecanus fuscicollis*; but I do not find any such species in Jerdon. It may be the Grey pelican, *Pelecanus Philippensis*, which is the most abundant species in India. (Jerdon, Vol. II, p. 858.)

‡‡ *Hansa*. This is of course general, and means any kind of goose or duck.

divers;\* thronged with these and other birds swimming in the water all around.

23 So gazing on the delightful forest, Sauri accompanied by the  
 maidens gradually proceeded onwards to an incomparable  
 24 bower of creepers. There he saw brahmans, deeply read in  
 the Vedas and Vedāngas, belonging to the families of Kuśika,  
 25 and Bhṛigu, Bharadvāja, and Gotama, and brahmans sprung  
 from various families, all eagerly listening to the tales,  
 26 seated on large outer garments made of the hide of the black  
 antelope, and on the kuśa grass and on kuśa-grass seats; and  
 27 Sūta (their bard) in the midst, reciting glorious tales of the  
 olden times, based on the deeds of the first Surarshis. Seeing  
 28 Rāma, whose eyes were red with drinking, all the brahmans,  
 perceiving he was intoxicated, rose up in haste, saluting the  
 29 plough-bearer, except that scion of the bards. Then filled with  
 rage, the mighty plough-bearer, who caused all the Dānavas  
 to quake, rolling his eye, smote Sūta.

30 When that bard was slain while repeating the words of the  
 Veda, all those brahmans, clad in black antelope skins, depart-  
 31 ed from the wood. And the plough-armed hero, perceiving  
 himself disregarded, thought, "This is a very grievous sin  
 32 that I have committed; for since I have come here to a  
 brahmans' abode and have slain Sūta, these dvijas perceiving  
 33 me have all departed. And my body has a disgusting odour,  
 as it were of blood, and I perceive that I am condemned as  
 34 a brahmanicide. Fie on my rage, and the wine, my arrogance,  
 my cruelty! Possessed by them, I have committed this most  
 35 grievous sin. To expiate it I will perform a twelve-year vow,  
 making the confession of my deed the uttermost penance.  
 36 This then is the pilgrimage which I have now undertaken; I  
 37 will go to the Pratilomā Sarasvatī itself." Hence he, Rāma,  
 went to the Pratilomā Sarasvatī.

Next listen to this reference to the story of the Pāṇḍaveyas.

\* Madgu, a kind of diving bird. It is probably the Little Grebe, *Podiceps Philippensis*, commonly called *dub-dubi* from its inveterate diving. (Jerdon, Vol. II, p. 822.) But it may be the Bald Coot, *Fulica atra*, which is also a ready diver (*id.*, p. 715.)

## CANTO VII.

*The Birth of the Sons of Draupadī.*

*The Birds explain the fourth question—King Hariś-candra incurred Viśvámitra's anger, and to appease him gives up to him his kingdom and all his wealth—Viśvámitra ill-treats the queen, and five Viśve Devas censure him for his brutality—He curses them to be born as men, but exempts them from marriage—They were born as the five sons of Draupadī, and died young.*

The righteous birds spoke.

- 1     There lived formerly in the Tretā Age a most exalted Rájarsi named Hariś-candra, virtuous in soul, a ruler of the earth,
- 2     brilliant in fame. No famine, nor sickness, nor untimely death occurred among men, nor did the citizens delight in evil, while
- 3     he ruled as king; nor, further, did the people become uproarious through wealth, valour, austerities or spirituous liquors; nor were any females born who failed to reach womanhood.\*
- 4     And he, of mighty arm, when once chasing a deer in the
- 5     forest, heard women repeatedly crying, "save us"! The king, giving over the deer, called out "fear not! who is this perverse being that, under my rule, behaves with injustice?" At
- 6     this interval also the Raudra Vighna-ráj, the opponent of every
- 7     undertaking, who was following that cry, deliberated:—"This Viśvámitra, full of heroism, undertaking incomparable austerities, keeping a vow, is mastering the sciences of Siva and others, which have not been perfected before. Those sciences
- 8     being mastered by this man, who governs his mind in patience and silence, are verily lamenting, afflicted with dread. How
- 9     can I manage this? Glorious is *this* noblest of the Kauśika family; I am much weaker than he: these terrified sciences are thus bewailing: it appears to me difficult to be accomplished. Now this king has come in my way, calling out
- 10    repeatedly 'fear not!'; into him indeed entering, I will speedily accomplish my desire."
- 11    Then the king possessed by that Raudra Vighna-rāja, who had thus taken counsel with himself, uttered this speech in anger:—

\* An allusion to infanticide?

12 "Who is this wicked man that binds fire in the corner of his  
 garment, when I the lord am present, gleaming with the  
 13 glowing splendour of my power? He to-day, pierced in every  
 limb by my arrows, which in their flight from my bow illumine  
 the other regions of the sky, shall enter upon a long sleep."

14 Thereupon Viśvámitra having heard the king's speech was  
 enraged: and, when that great Rishi was enraged, those  
 15 sciences perished in a moment. The king moreover, seeing  
 Viśvámitra, rich in austerities, being terrified, suddenly trem-  
 16 bled exceedingly like the leaf of the peepul tree.\* When the  
 Muni exclaimed, "wretch!" and "stand!"; then the king fall-  
 17 ing prostrate in reverence addressed him:—"O adorable lord!  
 this is my duty! I have committed no fault! Deign not O  
 Muni! to be angry with me, who am engaged in my duty.  
 18 A king, conversant with his duties, must give gifts, and  
 must afford protection, and lifting his bow must wage war,  
 according to the Dharma-sástras."

Viśvámitra spoke.

19 "To whom, O king, must thou give gifts, whom must thou  
 protect, and with whom must thou wage war? Speedily  
 declare this, if thou fearest unrighteousness."

Hariś-c'andra spoke.

20 "I must always give gifts to brahmans principally, and to  
 others who are straitened in their means; I must protect those  
 in fear; I must make war with enemies."

Viśvámitra spoke.

21 "If your highness, a king, duly regards the duties of kings—I  
 am a brahman desirous of a reward, let the desired fee be  
 given me."

\* *Ficus religiosa*. The leaf, which varies from 2½ to 5½ inches in length  
 and almost the same in breadth, is ovate-cordate, and has a long slender apex  
 (acumen) 1 to 2 inches long. It has a round flexible stalk 2 to 3 inches long,  
 which is twisted so as to make the inner surface of the leaf face outwards  
 from the branch. The leaf hangs downwards by the long stalk, with its  
 inner surface, which is slightly concave, facing outwards, and thus catches  
 the lightest breeze.



The birds spoke.

- 22 The Raja, having heard this speech with gladdened soul,  
deemed himself as it were born anew, and addressed the sage  
23 of the Kauśika race: "Be it declared, adorable sir! what, free  
from doubt, I must give thee; consider it as already given,  
24 albeit most difficult to be obtained, whether gold or money,  
son, wife, body, life, kingdom, city, good fortune—whatever is  
the desire of my own soul."

Viśvámitra spoke.

- 25 "O king! this present has been accepted, which thou hast  
given: first, however, bestow the fee appertaining to the  
Rāja-súya sacrifice."

The Raja spoke.

- 26 "O brahman! I will indeed give your honour that fee. Choose,  
O chief of the dvijas, whatever present thou desirest."

Viśvámitra spoke.

- 27 "Give me this earth, with its ocean, and with its mountains,  
villages and towns; and thy entire kingdom, O warrior, with  
28 its multitude of chariots, horses, and elephants; also thy trea-  
sury and treasure: and whatever else thou possessest, excepting  
29 thy wife, and son and body, O sinless one! and *excepting* thy  
virtue, which, O thou that knowest all the virtues, follows its  
possessor when he moves. What need for me to say more?  
Let all this be granted me"

The birds spoke.

- 30 With gladdened mind the king, unperturbed in countenance,  
having heard the Rishi's speech, joining his hands respectfully  
replied, "So be it!"

Viśvámitra spoke.

- 31 "If all thy property is given me, thy kingdom, the earth, thy  
army, thy wealth,—whose is the lordship, O Rájarshi! when I  
the ascetic am seated in the kingdom?"

Hariś-c'andra spoke.

- 32 "At what time I have yielded up the earth to thee, O brah-  
man! at that time thou, Sir, art the owner how much more  
now the king"

Viśvámitra spoke.

- 33 "If O king! the whole earth has been given me by thee,  
thou must deign to depart from the realm where I hold sway,  
34 unfastening all thy ornaments, such as thy waist-band and  
every thing else, and clothing thyself with the bark of trees,  
together with thy wife and son."

The birds spoke.

- 35 Having said "So be it!" and having so done, the king started  
to go, in company with his wife Saivya and his young son.  
36 Then he addressed the king, having obstructed the road as  
he was moving—"Where wilt thou go, without giving me the  
fee appertaining to the Raja-súya sacrifice?"

Hariś-c'andra spoke.

- 37 "Adorable Sir! this kingdom has been given thee free from  
adversaries: these *our* three bodies, O Brahman! are all that  
remain to me this day."

Viśvámitra spoke

- 38 "Nevertheless thou must assuredly give me the sacrificial fee;  
a promise unfulfilled, especially to brahmans, proves injurious.  
39 As long as brahmans delight, O king! in the Raja-súya sacri-  
fice, so long indeed must the fee for the Raja-súya sacrifice be  
40 given. After making a promise, one must bestow the gift;  
and one must fight against assailants; so too the afflicted must  
be protected; thus hast thou already agreed."

Hariś-c'andra spoke.

- 41 "Adorable Sir, I have nought at present; I will give thee  
*the fee* after a while: and show me favour, O Brahmarshi!  
bearing in mind noble behaviour."

Viśvámitra spoke.

- 42 "What length of time must I wait for thee, O guardian of  
men! Tell me speedily, or the fire of my curse shall con-  
sume thee."

Hariś-c'andra spoke.

- 43 "In a month will I give thee the fee-money, O Brahmarshi! At  
present I have no means; deign to grant me *this* permission."

Viśvámitra spoke.

- 44 "Go, go, O noble king; observe thy duty; and may thy way  
be auspicious! May there be no enemies!"

The birds spoke.

- 45 Permitted to go, the king departed; his queen, who was  
46 unused to walk afoot,\* followed him. Seeing that most noble  
king departing from the city with his wife and son, the citizens  
raised a cry and followed the king, *exclaiming*—

- 47 "Alas, O master! why leavest thou us, who are afflicted  
with continual sufferings? Thou, O king, art devoted to  
righteousness, and thou art the benefactor of the citizens.  
48 Lead us also, O Rajarshi! if thou regardest righteousness.  
Stay a moment, O king of monarchs! Our eyes as bees drink†  
49 thy lotus-like mouth. When again shall we behold thee, who,  
when thou goest forth, art preceded and followed by kings?  
50 Here is thy wife, holding her young son in her hand, following  
thee, before whom, when thou goest forth, go thy servants seated  
51 on elephants! Here goes to-day walking afoot the king  
of monarchs, Haris-c'andra! Alas, O king, what will thy  
52 very youthful, beautiful-browed, soft-skinned, fine-nosed face  
become, when injured by the dust on the road? Stay, stay,  
53 O best of kings, observe thy own duty. Mildness is a very  
noble virtue, especially among kshatriyas; what need have we  
of wife, what need of children, or of wealth, or of grain,  
54 O master? Abandoning all this, we have become mere  
shadows of thee. Alas master! alas Mahárájá! alas, O lord!  
55 why dost thou abandon us? Where thou art, there indeed  
will we be. That is joy, where thou indeed art. That is our  
city where thou art. That is Svarga where thou, our king,  
art."

- 56 Having thus heard the citizens' address the king, overwhelmed  
with grief, stood then in the road through very compassion for  
57 them. Still Viśvámitra, seeing him distressed by the citi-  
zens' exclamations, approaching him, with eyes rolling in anger

\* Read *padbhyám* for *pradbhyám*.

† Be *tes pivama* for *pibmo*, let us drink?

58 and impatience, spoke: "Fie on thee, vile in thy conduct,  
false, crooked in thy speech! who also, after giving me thy  
59 kingdom, wishest again to withdraw it." The king thus roughly  
accosted by him replied thus trembling, "I am going," and de-  
60 parted hastily drawing his wife in his hand. Thereupon the  
sage of the Kāṁśika family suddenly belaboured with a wooden  
staff the very youthful toil-wearied wife, as *the king was*  
61 drawing her along. Seeing her thus beaten, the king Hariś-  
c'andra, oppressed with pain, exclaimed "I am going;" nor did  
he utter aught else.

62 But then spoke five Viśve Devas full of pity, "This Viśvá-  
mitra is very wicked; what worlds will he obtain, who has  
63 uprooted this best of sacrificers from his throne? By whose  
funeral ceremony further shall the soma juice expressed at  
the great sacrifice be purified, by drinking which we shall  
reach the exhilaration that is preceded by incantations?"

The birds spoke.

64 Having heard this their remark, the sage of the Kāṁśika race,  
exceedingly enraged, cursed them—"Ye shall all assume human  
65 form!" And propitiated by them, the great Muni added, "Al-  
66 though in human form, ye shall have no offspring. There  
shall be neither marriage of wives for you, nor hostility: freed  
67 from love and anger ye shall become gods again." Thereupon  
those gods descended to the mansion of the Kurus with their  
own portions; they were born of the womb of Draupadī as the  
68 five grandchildren of Pāṇdu. Hence the five heroic Pāṇda-  
veyas did not take to themselves wives, through the curse of  
that great Muni.

69 All this has been declared to thee with reference to the tale  
of the Pāṇdaveyas. Thy four questions have been answered  
in song. What else dost thou wish to hear?

---

## CANTO VIII.

*The Story of Hariś-c'andra (continued).*

*Viśvāmitra not satisfied demands further fees, and Hariś-c'andra in desperation sells his wife and his son to a brahman and himself to a c'andāla, and gives Viśvāmitra all the price—Hariś-c'andra earns his livelihood as the c'andāla's servant at a burning-ground in the most abject state for a year—Then he sees a vision of his future transmigrations with a promise of happiness ultimately—His son is bitten by a snake, and the queen brings the corpse to the burning-ground—They recognise each other and bewail their misfortunes—Both resolve to immolate themselves on their son's funeral pile; but the gods interpose and restore his son to life—Dharma explains that he had personated the c'andāla—Indra calls the king to Svarga, but he refuses to go without his faithful people—He, and his queen and people ascend to Svarga in perfect bliss.*

Jaimini spoke.

- 1 Ye have declared this in order according to my questions : great is my curiosity regarding the story of Hariś-c'andra.
- 2 Ah ! passing great was the woe incurred by that magnanimous king ; I trust he obtained a happiness fully commensurate, O bráhmans !

The birds spoke.

- 3 Hearing Viśvāmitra's speech, the king moved on slowly, full of sorrow, followed by his wife Saivyá with her young boy.
- 4 The king having reached the divine city\* of Benares—the choice of Śiva *who pronounced* that it was not to be enjoyed
- 5 by men. Distressed with sorrow, he travelled afoot with his compliant wife. On entering the city, he saw Viśvāmitra
- 6 present. Seeing he had already arrived, Hariś-c'andra bowed reverently and, joining his hands respectfully, addressed the
- 7 great Muni :—" Here is my life, and this is my son, and this is my wife, O Muni ! Take that as the choicest arghya offering
- 8 with which thou shouldst quickly deal. Whatever else we should do, deign to excuse that."

\* For *parím* read *purím*.

Viśvámitra spoke.

- 9 "Gone is the month, O Rájáarshi ! ; let my fee be given me, if thy word regarding the Rája-súya sacrifice be remembered."

Haris'-c'andra spoke.

- 10 "O brahman, rich in fadeless austerities ! to-day the month will, in truth, be completed : await this half-day which remains, *but* not long."

Viśvámitra spoke.

- 11 "Be it so, Mahárájá ! I will come again : unless to-day thou shall make the gift, I will pronounce a curse on thee."

The birds spoke.

- 12 Thus having spoken the bráhmaṇ departed : and the Raja then took thought—"How shall I give him the fee which has  
13 been promised ? Whence *can I find* powerful friends ? Whence *can I get* wealth at this moment ? Blameworthy is  
14 my present : how can I escape going downward ? How much more am I abandoning life ! To what region shall I, who am nothing, go, if I perish without having performed my promise ?  
15 I shall become a robber of bráhmans, a worm, a wicked man, the vilest of the vile ; or I shall become a slave—better indeed let me sell myself."

The birds spoke.

- 16 Then his wife in words broken with weeping answered the king, who was distressed, dejected, anxious, with downcast  
17 face—"Leave off care, O Mahárájá ; preserve thy truthfulness ; a man destitute of truth should be avoided like a burning-  
18 ground. There is no higher righteousness, they say, for a man than this, namely, maintaining his truthfulness, O noble  
19 man ! Oblations to consecrated fire, or study, or the whole circle of *good* deeds, such as liberality, &c. are fruitless in  
20 him who speaks at random. Truthfulness is constantly declared in the Dharma-śástras to tend to the salvation of men of understanding ; and falsehood to the overthrow of men of  
21 uneducated minds. A king named Kriti, after offering seven horse-sacrifices and a Rája-súya sacrifice, fell forthwith from  
22 Svarga for falsehood. O king, I have given birth to a child—'

Thus having spoken she wept aloud. The king spoke as follows to her whose eyes were bathed in tears.

Hariś-c'andra spoke.

- 23 "Cease, lady, thy agitation ; here stands thy boy ; pray, speak what thou desirest to say, O thou who art graceful in thy gait !"

The queen spoke.

- 24 "O king, I have given birth to a child : the wives of good men bear fruit in their sons. Do thou therefore, being such a man, give me in exchange for wealth, and pay the brahman the fee."

The birds spoke.

- 25 Hearing this proposal, the king lost his senses ; and on re-  
26 gaining consciousness lamented, sorely grieved :—"Dire is this  
grief, O lady, that thou thus mentionest to me : is thy joyous  
27 intercourse with me, wretch that I am, forgotten ? Ah ! alas !  
how couldst thou suggest this, O sweet-smiler. Repugnant  
28 is this plan : how can I execute it ?" Thus having spoken,  
the king, repeating the word "Shame ! shame !" fell to the  
29 ground overwhelmed by faintness. Seeing the king Hariś-  
c'andra prostrate on the earth, the queen full of sorrow,  
uttered these piteous words :—

The queen spoke.

- 30 "Alas ! Mahārājā ! from whom has come this evil thought,  
that thou, who art accustomed to coverings made of the hair  
31 of the spotted deer, hast fallen on the bare ground ? Here  
sleeps the king, my lord, on the ground,—he, by whom ten  
thousands of choice cattle and wealth were dispensed among  
32 brahmans. Ah ! woe ! what has this king done to thee, O  
brahman, that he, the equal of Indra and Vishṇu, has been  
33 reduced to a state of coma ?" Having soliloquised thus, she,  
beautiful-hipped, fell swooning, crushed by the intolerable  
34 great weight of her husband's misfortunes. The child seeing  
his parents lying thus helpless on the ground, being exces-  
35 sively hungry and very unhappy, spoke :—"Father, dear  
father, give me some food ; mother, mother, give me something

to eat. I have become dreadfully hungry, and the tip of my tongue is growing parched."

The birds spoke.

36 At this interval arrived Viśvámitra great in austerities; but, seeing Haris'-c'andra lying on the ground in a swoon, he sprinkled the king with water and addressed him thus:—

"Rise up, rise up, O supreme king; give me the fee I desire. A debtor's misery increases from day to day." Then being refreshed with the snow-cold water, the king, recovering consciousness, and perceiving Viśvámitra, again fell into a swoon, and the Muni grew angry. The brahman, making the king recover, spoke:—"Let my fee be given me, if thou regardest righteousness. By truth the sun sheds warmth; in truth the earth stands *firm*; truth in speech is the highest righteousness: Svarga is based on truth. Also a hundred horse-sacrifices and truth are placed in the balance—truth verily outweighs the hundred horse-sacrifices. Otherwise what motive is there for my speaking thus peaceably to *thee*, base one, evil-intentioned, and cruel, false in speech? Since thou art powerful as king, let this my kindly feeling be heeded. If O king, thou shalt not give me the fee to-day, when the sun reaches the Western mountain, then I will assuredly curse thee."

Having spoken thus the bráhmaṇ departed; and the king remained, weak with terror, fugitive, vile, indigent, harassed by the malicious and the rich. His wife again spoke thus—  
47 "Let my proposal be complied with, lest consumed by the fire of his curse thou perish." But the king, thus urged by his wife again and again, replied—"Lady, here without pity I proceed to sell thee; what even the malicious could not do, that do I, if my voice be able to utter so hard a speech as this." Thereupon having so spoken to his wife, he went unnerved to the city and then, his throat and eyes impeded with tears, uttered this speech;—

The king spoke.

50 "Ho! ho! citizens, listen ye all to my word. Why do ye ask me, 'ho! who art thou?' I am mischievous, inhuman"



51 either a very cruel Rákshasa, or even more wicked than that  
52 I, who will not yield up my life, am come to sell my wife. If  
any of you has need of the desire of my life as a slave-girl,  
let him speak quickly while I survive."

The birds spoke.

53 A certain aged bráhmaṇ approaching accosted the king—  
"Deliver the slave-girl to me; I am a purchaser, paying  
54 ready money. I have no little wealth, and my wife is very  
young; she cannot perform the household duties; therefore  
55 give me *this girl*. This wealth is proportionate to the skill,  
age, beauty and disposition of thy wife: take it; deliver me  
56 the maiden." When thus addressed by the brahmaṇ, king  
Harís-c'andra's mind was lacerated with grief; nor did he  
57 make him any reply. Thereupon the brahmaṇ binding up  
the money in cash in the end of the king's back-cloth dress,  
58 dragged off the queen, seizing her by the hair. But the  
child Rohitáśya, who had a boy's side-locks of hair, and who  
was clutching her dress with his hand, wept on seeing his  
mother dragged away.

The queen spoke.

59 "Loose, loose me, noble Sir! while I take a look at my boy.  
A future view of him, kind Sir! will be difficult to get.  
60 See! come my child to me thy mother thus sold into slavery.  
Do not touch me, my royal child! I must not be touched by  
61 thee now!" Then suddenly the boy seeing his mother dragged  
along, ran to her crying "Mother!" with tear-soiled eyes.  
62 The bráhmaṇ purchaser, seeing the child had approached,  
kicked him with his foot; the latter, however, exclaiming  
"Mother!" did not leave hold of his mother.

The queen spoke.

63 "Shew me favour, O master! and buy this boy. Although  
purchased, I shall not be a diligent servant to thee, Sir,  
64 when separated from him. Do thou in this way beam fa-  
vourably on me unfortunate; unite me with my child, as a  
cow with her calf."

The bráhmaṇ spoke.

65 "Take thou this wealth and give me the boy: the wages of a man and woman have been fixed by those conversant with the Dharma-śástras at a hundred, a thousand, and a hundred thousand *pieces*, and a price of ten millions by others."

The birds spoke.

66 Accordingly then he bound that money in the king's upper garment, and taking the boy bound him close together  
67 with his mother. Seeing them both, his wife and son, led away, the king lamented sorely grieved, sighing deeply again  
68 and again. "My wife whom neither the wind, nor the sun, nor the moon, nor the populace formerly gazed on, here she  
69 is, fallen into bondage. Here is my boy, who is sprung from the Solar race, and whose hands and fingers are very young,  
70 disposed of by sale. Shame on me, sorry fool that I am! Ah, my darling! ah, my child, my pet! my imprudent conduct, base man that I am, has brought me into thralldom to fate; yet I am not dead, ah shame!"

The birds spoke.

71 While the king was thus lamenting, the bráhmaṇ taking them both disappeared hastily among trees, houses and other  
72 high objects. Then Viśvámitra meeting the king, demanded the wealth; Hariś-c'andra delivered that money to him.  
73 Considering those riches, procured by the sale of the wife, insufficient, Kauśika enraged addressed the sorrow-stricken  
74 king. "O kshatriya, if thou deemest this a fitting sacrificial fee for me; then behold thou quickly my supreme might,  
75 *arising* from austerities well performed here, and from stainless bráhmaṇhood, and from my terrible majesty, and from my perfect study."

Hariś-c'andra spoke.

76 "More will I give thee, adorable one; be pleased to wait some time; at present I have nought; my wife has been sold, and my young son."

Viśvámitra spoke.

77 "This fourth part that now remains of the day, O king, for that I must wait; nought more must I say to thee."

The birds spoke.

- 78 So, having uttered the harsh pitiless speech to the supreme king, the angry Kauśika took the money and quickly departed.
- 79 When Viśvámitra had gone, the king, encompassed by a sea of fear and sorrow, after reflecting in every aspect, spoke aloud,
- 80 with downcast face :—" Whatever man desires me for a slave, bought with money, let him speak quickly, while the sun yet shines."
- 81 Then advanced hastily *the god* Dharma, wearing the form of a c'andála, foul-smelling, disfigured, uncouth, bearded,
- 82 with projecting teeth, compassionate, dark in complexion, his belly pendulous, his eyes tawny and haggard, his pronunciation rude, and carrying a batch of birds, adorned with gar-
- 83 lands taken from corpses, a skull in his hand, his face long, horrid *to look at*, talking much and often, surrounded by a pack of dogs, dreadful, a staff in his hand, hideous.

The c'andála spoke.

- 84 " I am an applicant to thee ; tell me quickly thy own hire, at which, whether little or much, thou art to be acquired."

The birds spoke.

- 85 There gazing at him, such as he was, cruel-eyed, very coarse, muttering, very bad in disposition, the king asked " Who art thou ?"

The c'andála spoke.

- 86 " I am a c'andála, known here in this greatest of cities as Pravira, famed as the slayer of those condemned to death, the gatherer of blankets from corpses."

Hariś-c'andra spoke.

- 87 " I should not wish to become the despicable slave of a c'andála ; better to be consumed by the fire of the curse rather than to be thrall to a c'andála."

The birds spoke.

- 88 While he was so speaking, the great hermit Viśvámitra

arrived, his eyes rolling with anger and wrath, and said this to the king :—

Viśvámitra spoke.

- 89 “This c’andála is ready to give thee no little wealth; why is not my full sacrificial fee paid me?”

Haris'-c'andra spoke.

- 90 “Adorable descendant of Kuśika! I know myself to be sprung from the Solar race; how, though desirous of wealth, shall I go into bondage to a c’andála?”

Viśvámitra spoke.

- 91 “If thou wilt not give me the c’andála’s wealth, obtained in exchange for thyself, at the fixed time, I will assuredly curse thee.”

The birds spoke.

- 92 Thereupon the king Haris'-c'andra, his life bound up in his anxiety, overcome with agitation seized the Rishi's feet,  
93 exclaiming—“Be thou gracious! I am a slave; I am in suffering; frightened am I; and I am specially thy votary: shew me favour, O Brahmarshi! Deplorable is association with  
94 c’andálas. Instead of the balance of the money, I would be subject to thee indeed, O mighty Muni! thy agent in every matter, thy servant, obedient to thy will.”

Viśvámitra spoke.

- 95 “If your honour is my servant, then, given by me to the c’andála for a hundred millions of money, thou hast fallen into slavery.”

The birds spoke.

- 96 When he had so spoken, the low out-caste then, glad in mind, giving that pelf to Viśvámitra, bound the king and  
97 led him, bewildered by blows of the staff, his senses utterly confused, grieved at his separation from his loved kindred, to his town.

- 98 Then king Haris'-c'andra, dwelling in the c’andála’s town,

99 at morning, noon and evening sang this :—" My downcast  
 girl seeing before her my downcast son, filled with grief,  
 100 remembers me; *hoping* 'the king will free us both, by  
 giving, when he has amassed wealth, more wealth than this  
 to the bráhmaṇ.' She, fawn-eyed, does not know that I  
 101 have done more wickedly. Loss of kingdom, abandonment  
 of friends, sale of wife and son, and this c'andála-life that  
 102 I have sunk to :—alas ! a succession of misfortunes." Dwell-  
 ing in this condition, he remembered unceasingly his beloved  
 son and his soul-engrossing wife ; deprived of all his pro-  
 perty, and abject.

103 Now for some time king Hariś-c'andra, as a servant to that  
 man, became a gatherer of garments from dead bodies at the  
 104 burning-ground, and was instructed by the c'andála, who  
 gathered garments from dead bodies—" Stay here day and  
 105 night on the look out for the arrival of corpses. This part  
 is to be given to the king, and a sixth part is for the corpse,  
 let three parts be for me, and two parts for thy wages."

106 Thus instructed he went to the mortuary house and to the  
 southern quarter, where then stood in Benares the burning-  
 107 ground, a place of horrible cries, frequented by hundreds of  
 jackals, strewn with the garlands from corpses, foul-smelling,  
 108 reeking with smoke, thronged by Piśác'as, Bhútas, Vetálas,  
 Dákinís, and Yakshas, crowded with vultures and jackals,  
 109 encompassed by packs of dogs, thickly strewn with heaps  
 of bones, full of dreadful odours ; pervaded with the cries  
 of the friends of the various dead persons and with a terrible  
 110 hubbub—" Ah ! son !—friend !—ah ! kinsman !—brother !—  
 my child, dear to me now !—ah ! husband !—sister !—mother !  
 111 —ah ! maternal uncle !—paternal grandfather !—maternal  
 grandfather !—father !—grandson !—where art thou gone !  
 —come, my kinsman !" ; where was heard a great din of  
 112 persons uttering such cries as *these* :—*a place filled with the*  
 113 *sputtering of burning flesh, marrow and fat. Black half-*  
*burnt corpses, their rows of teeth just bursting into view,*  
*grinned from amidst the fire, as if saying, 'This is the body's*  
 114 *final state !'* Here the fire crackled along rows of bones of

various ages ; and there was the sound of the wailing of the relations, which was caused by the merriment of the puk-  
 115 *kasas*.\* There is heard a very loud and frightful sound,—  
 as if at the close of the age,—of Bhútas, Vetálas, Piśác'as,  
 116 *Gaṇas* and *Rákshasas* singing. Crowded with great heaps  
 of buffaloes' ordure and cows' dung ; and surrounded with  
 high piles of the ashes derived therefrom, mixed with bones ;  
 117 darkened by the confusion of the crows among the many  
 offerings, garlands and lamps ; filled with many sounds, the  
 118 burning-ground resembles *Naraka*.† The burning-ground  
 reverberated with the fire-pregnant, inauspicious yells of the  
 she-jackals ; it was impenetrable by reason of the terrific cries ;  
 very dire‡ with the close contagion of fear ; and painful by  
 reason of the sounds of lamentation.

119 The king arrived there, unhappy, ready to grieve : “ Ah  
 servants, ministers, bráhmans ! Where has that my kingdom  
 120 gone, O Creator ? Ah *Saivyá* ! ah my young son ! forsaking  
 me, luckless one, through *Viśvámitra*'s fault they both, mine  
 121 own *relatives*, have gone elsewhere.” There revolving thus in  
 his mind over and over again the words of the *c'andála*,  
 dirty, uncouth in every limb, his hair long, mal-odorous, bear-  
 122 ing a flag, armed with a club, somewhat resembling Death, and  
 running hither and thither, exclaiming “ This price has been  
 123 obtained for this corpse, and shall I get it ? This is mine,  
 this is for the king, and this for the head *c'andála* ;”  
 the king, while running in all directions, and while alive,  
 124 entered into another birth. Clothed in patched cloth made  
 of old rags well fastened together ; his face, arms, belly and  
 feet covered with ashes from funeral piles and with dust ;  
 125 his hands and fingers smeared with various kinds of fat,  
 oil and marrow ; sighing ; intent on satisfying *himself* by  
 126 feeding on various corpses and water ;§ his head dressed with

\* A low caste.

† *Naraka*, the general name for hell or the place of torment ; it is distinguished from *Pátála*, the lower regions.

‡ Read *bheyam* for *bhayam* ?

§ The text *nána-śvodaṇa-kritáhára* seems to be incorrect.

bands of garlands therefrom ; he sleeps not either by day  
127 or by night, frequently exclaiming “ah ! alas !” In this  
manner passed twelve months as if a hundred.

One day that noble king wearied, separated from his kind-  
128 red, and uncouth in form, being overpowered by slumber, fell  
indeed into a dead sleep ; and there on his pallet beheld a  
129 great wonder :—Through the power of destiny, he had in  
another body by diligent occupation at the burning-ground  
130 given the guru his fee, and there was immunity from the infliction  
of pain for twelve years. Then he saw himself conceived  
131 in the womb of a pukkasa woman. Further the king, when  
in that condition, considered thus—“Immediately I am  
132 born, I will verily practice the duty of liberality.” Thereupon  
he was born. Then as a pukkasa boy he was always  
ready to perform the obsequies of the dead bodies in the  
133 burning-ground. On his reaching his seventh year, a dead  
bráhmán was brought to the burning ground by the relatives ;  
then he perceived that the bráhmán had been poor and  
134 virtuous. But he, asking for his wage, despised the bráhmáns ;  
those bráhmáns mentioned there what Viśvámitra had done,—  
135 “Do thou a deed most sinful, and vicious, O evil-doer ; Hariś-  
c’andra the king was formerly turned by Viśvámitra into  
136 a pukkasa for breaking the slumber of a bráhmán, by the  
destruction of his merit.” When he did not have patience  
137 with them, they then in anger cursed him—“Go forthwith  
thou vilest of men to terrible Naraka.” Immediately upon  
138 these words, the king still in his sleep saw Yama’s mes-  
sengers, bearing nooses, terror-inspiring. He saw himself  
139 then seized by them and led off by force. Sorely afflicted,  
exclaiming, “Alas now, O mother ! O father !” he fell  
140 into Naraka into a tub of oil. And he was torn asunder beneath  
by saws and the edges of razors, and suffered pain in dense  
141 darkness, feeding on pus and blood. He saw his dead self,  
seven years old, in the form of a pukkasa. Day by day in  
142 Naraka he is burnt and roasted in one place ; he is afflicted  
and shaken in another place ; he is killed and torn asunder

in another place; in another he is made to melt away and to  
 143 blaze; in another place he is assailed with cold winds. He  
 remained in Naraka one day, which was as long as a hun-  
 dred years; so a hundred years there in Naraka are called by  
 144 the demons. Thereafter cast upon the earth he was born as  
 a dog, eating filth and vomited matter, and enduring cold  
 145 and heat: in a month he died. Next he saw his body *born*  
 as an ass, an elephant, a monkey, an ox, a goat, a cat, and  
 a heron, a bull, a sheep, a bird, a worm, a fish, a tortoise, and  
 146 a wild boar, a porcupine, a cock, a parrot, a maina,\* and mo-  
 tionless living objects, a snake and other corporeal beings.  
 147 Day by day consumed with grief he saw the birth of one  
 living being after another; a day was as a hundred years.  
 148 A full hundred years thus passed *with him* there *born* among  
 the lower creation. And the king saw himself born once *again*  
 149 in his own race. While in that state, he lost his kingdom  
 in dice-playing; and his wife was carried off, and his son *too*;  
 150 and he sought the forest alone. There he saw a terrible  
 ravenous lion approaching with open mouth, accompanied by a  
 151 young elephant†; and again he was devoured, while ready  
 to bewail his wife, 'Ah S'aivyá! where art thou gone now,  
 152 forsaking me here in misery?' Again he saw his wife with  
 her son *imploring him*, 'Rescue us O Haris'-c'andra! What  
 153 hast thou to do with dice-playing, my lord? Thy son has  
 fallen to a lamentable condition, and so has thy wife S'aivyá.'  
 Then he no longer saw them, though running about again and  
 154 again. And again he saw,—he the king was seated in

\* S'áriká, a mainá. There are several kinds of mainas (or mynas). The best known are the Common maina *Acridotheres tristis*, which is a brown bird common throughout India, and the Nepal Hill maina *Eulabes intermedia*, which is a black bird found along the lower ranges of the Himálayas. Both are commonly caged and learn to talk, but the latter attains much higher proficiency. (Jerdon's Birds of India, Edn. Godwin-Austen, Vol. II, pp. 325 and 339). Prof Monier-Williams says S'áriká is *Gracula religiosa* or *Turdus salica*. The former name is an old name of the Southern Hill maina (*E. religiosa*) and of the Nepal Hill maina (*E. intermedia*). (Id., Vol. II, pp. 337, 339). I do not find the second name in Jerdon.

† *Sarabha*; or a fabulous animal with eight legs, stronger than a lion.



- Svarga ; she poor thing was brought by force, with dishevelled  
 155 hair, stript of her garments, exclaiming 'Ah ! alas ! rescue  
 me !' in repeated cries. Then again he saw there through  
 156 Yama's ordainment—the dwellers in the sky are calling out,  
 'Come hither O king ! Yama has been addressed by Viśvá-'  
 157 mitra, O king, regarding thee.' Yama's servants, who bore  
 nooses of serpents, having thus spoken, lead away the prince  
 158 by force. Yama related Viśvámitra's deed. At that point, how-  
 ever, his change which resulted from iniquity came to an end.  
 These were all his states of being which were revealed in sleep ;  
 159 they were all experienced by him during twelve years. When  
 the twelve years were spent, being brought forcibly by the  
 160 demons, he saw Yama in bodily shape. Yama addressed the  
 king, This anger of the high-souled Viśvámitra is difficult  
 161 to be resisted. Kauśika will inflict even death on thy son.  
 Go thou to the world of men, and undergo the remainder of  
 thy suffering. When thou art gone there, O supreme king !  
 162 thou shalt obtain happiness.' And when the twelve years  
 expired, the king, at the end of his misery, fell from the sky,  
 being thrust away by Yama's messengers.
- 163 And when fallen from Yama's world, he awoke through the  
 agitation of fear, *exclaiming*, "Alas ! woe is me !" thinking  
 of the working of the corrosive substance in his wounds.  
 164 "In my sleep I have seen grievous woe, the end of which I  
 do not perceive : but have twelve years, as I have seen in  
 165 my sleep, gone with me ?" he inquired with agitation of the  
 pukkāsas standing there. "No" replied certain of the by-  
 standers ; and others said exactly the same.
- 166 Then the king grieved at hearing this, sought the gods  
 for refuge, *ejaculating*, "May the gods bestow blessings on me,  
 167 on S'aivyá and on my child. Adoration to great Dharma !  
 Adoration to Kṛishṇa the creator, all-comprising, pure,  
 168 ancient, and immutable ! Adoration to thee, O Vṛihaspati !  
 and adoration to thee, Indra !"
- 169 Having uttered this *prayer*, the king employed himself in  
 the pukkāsas' occupation, in fixing the price of corpses, as  
 if again dead in memory. Filthy, matted-haired, black,

170 armed with a club, despondent was the king. No son had he, nor wife indeed, in the track of his memory ; ruined in energy was he through the loss of his kingdom ; dwelling then in the burning-ground.

171 To that place came his queen, bewailing, bringing her son  
172 dead, for the boy had been bitten by a snake. "Ah my darling ! ah my son, my child !" thus she was oft exclaiming ; emaciated, pallid, insane, her hair covered with dust.

The queen spoke.

173 "Alas O king ! dost thou not see to-day on earth this thy child, whom thou didst formerly see playing about, now bitten by a huge snake and dead ?"

174 The king, listening to that her lamentation, hurried *thither*  
175 *thinking* "here will be a dead man's blanket." But the king did not recognise as his wife her, who was weeping sorely, who worn with his long absence was like a woman in another  
176 birth. The princess too seeing him, who formerly had beautiful locks, *now* with matted curls did not recognise the  
177 king, who was like a withered tree. The king seeing the snake-bitten child, who was characterized with the kingly  
178 marks, on the black cloth, fell into a reverie :—" Ah ! alas ! to what a state has this child born in the family of some king  
179 been brought by malignant Death ! For, since I have seen my child thus lying in his mother's lap, my child Rohitásya  
180 with his lotus-like eyes recurs to my memory. Such indeed would be my child, *and* of about this age, if dreadful Death has not made him his thrall."

The queen spoke.

181 "Ah my child ! through disregard of some sin this great and terrible evil has befallen us, the end of which we do not  
182 perceive. Ah, my lord king ! how dost thou remain placidly in some place without consoling me who am miserable ?  
183 Loss of kingdom, forsaking of friends, sale of wife and child—what has thou not done to the Rájars̥hi Haris'-c'andra, O creator ?"

184 Hearing this her lament the fallen king, recognising his

185 loved wife and his dead son, exclaimed "Alas! this is indeed my very S'aivyá, this is my child!" and wept consumed  
 186 with sorrow, and fell into a swoon. *She too recognising him fallen into that state, fainted with affliction and sank motion-*  
 187 *less to the ground. The king and queen both regaining consciousness together, wailed in deep suffering, oppressed with the load of anguish.*

The king spoke.

188 "Alas my child! when I look on thy very young face, with its beautiful eyes, brows, nose and curls, is not my afflicted  
 189 heart torn asunder? To whom, as he comes to me of himself sweetly babbling, 'Father, dear father,' shall I affectionately exclaim with an embrace, 'My child, my child'?  
 190 By whose knees shall the yellow dust be brought that shall  
 191 soil my upper garment, my lap and body? Born of my body and limbs, thou wast the delight of mind and heart to me, who, bad father that I am, sold thee, O my child, like a chattel.  
 192 After snatching away my large kingdom entire, with its resources and wealth, Fate as a noxious serpent then bit my  
 193 child. Just gazing on the lotus-face of my son, who has been bitten by the serpent Fate, even I am now blinded  
 194 by the dire poison." Having thus spoken, incoherent through tears, he took the boy, and embracing him, fell motionless in a swoon.

The queen spoke.

195 "This tiger-like man is known truly by his voice; he has the moon-like mind of a wise man; it is Hariś-c'andra without  
 196 doubt. And his nose is prominent in front and goes downwards; and like opening buds are the teeth of him,  
 197 the renowned, the high-souled. Wherefore has this king come to the burning-ground to-day?"

198 Ceasing her grief for her son, she looked at the prostrate king. Agitated, surprised, afflicted, sorely oppressed on account of her husband and son, gazing earnestly, she then saw her husband's abominable staff fit for a low outcaste.

- 199 Thereupon the long-eyed lady fainted, and gradually regain-  
 ing consciousness, spoke falteringly :—
- 200 “ Fie on thee, O Fate ! most doleful, unruly, abominated, who  
 hast reduced this god-like king to the position of a low out-  
 201 caste. Though thou didst make him undergo loss of kingdom,  
 forsaking of friends and the sale of wife and son, *yet* hast  
 thou turned the king, after he was parted from us, into this  
 202 c’andála. Ah ! O king ! why dost thou not now raise me,  
 who am thus afflicted, from the ground and tell me to mount  
 203 to thy couch ? I do not see this day thy regal umbrella, nor  
 yet thy golden vase, thy chowrie or fan ; what is this revolu-  
 204 tion ? He, before whom formerly, when he moved, kings in  
 the guise of servants freed the earth from dust with their  
 205 own upper garments,—such having been, he the supreme  
 king now walks oppressed with grief in the burning-ground,  
 which is thickly strewn with jars and pots, with skulls fast  
 fixed therein ; where the hair of corpses is concealed by the  
 206 remains of sacrificial ceremonies and strings ; where the  
 cavities of the dry ground are bedecked with oily exudations ;  
 which is dreadful by reason of the mixing of the marrow and  
 half-burnt bones with the ashes and charcoal ; where the  
 207 small birds have been scared away by the cries of the  
 vultures and jackals ; which has spread gloom over the  
 regions of the sky with the colour of the trails of smoke from  
 208 the funeral piles ; where the night-roaming demons are  
 joyful through the delight of tasting carrion.”
- 209 Thus having spoken the princess embraced the king’s neck  
 and, bearing hundreds of woes and griefs, lamented with sor-  
 rowful voice,—

The queen spoke.

- 210 “ O king, is it sleep or *waking* truth ? Tell me Sir, this  
 that thou art thinking of : my mind is bewildered indeed.
- 211 If this be so, O thou conversant with righteousness, there is  
 no help in righteousness, nor in worship of bráhmans, gods
- 212 and others, *nor* in protecting the world ; there is no *such thing*  
 as righteousness. Whence are there truth, and candour, and

meekness, in that thou, the devotee of righteousness, hast been ousted from thy kingdom ?”

- 213 Hearing this her speech, sighing deeply he related in  
faltering accents to the slender-limbed lady, how he had  
214 become a low outcaste. She also the timid *lady* wept very  
long, and sighing deeply, full of grief, told him how her son  
had met his death.

The king spoke.

- 215 “ My darling, I choose not to undergo affliction for a long  
time, nor is my soul docile, O slender-limbed *lady*. Behold  
216 my ill-fortune. If I shall enter the fire, with the permis-  
sion of the c’aṇḍāla, I shall in another birth go again into  
217 bondage to c’aṇḍālas. I shall fall into Naraka, as a worm-  
eating insect ; into Vaitariṇī\* which is slimy with much pus,  
218 fat, blood, and sinews. Reaching the Asi-patra wood, I  
shall be frightfully cut to pieces ; or reaching Mahā-raurava  
219 and Raurava I shall be burnt. Surrender of life is the shore  
for one sunk in the ocean of grief. I had just one son, who  
220 was this boy, to continue my family. He too has sunk  
through the violence of the waters of my Fate, which are  
very strong. How *shall* I resign my life ? I am dependent  
221 on others, *and* in a strait. Or, does not a man afflicted with  
pain regard evil ? There is no such suffering in the brute  
222 creation, nor in the Asi-patra forest. Whence is there such  
*suffering* in Vaitariṇī as in the bereavement of a son ? I will  
223 fall then with my son’s body into the blazing fire, O  
slender-limbed ! Thou must pardon my ill-deeds ; and do thou  
who hast my permission go to the bráhmaṇ’s house, O bright  
224 smiler ! And hearken, O slender-limbed ! to my word with  
respectful mind. If one makes gifts, if one offers sacrifices,  
225 if the gurus are satisfied, there may be union *for me* in an-  
other world with my son and with thee. But whence in this  
226 world will there be this aim for me ? In company with thee  
I shall speed happily on in the search for our son, which I  
*shall make* laughingly or somewhat secretly, O bright-smiler.

\* The river of Naraka.

- 227 Thou must pardon at my request all that I have spoken ill ;  
despise not that bráhmaṇ through pride that thou art a  
queen ; thou must please him with thy utmost efforts, as if  
he were thy lord and god, O beautiful *lady* !”

The queen spoke.

- 228 “I also, O Rájārshi, unable to endure the burden of grief  
will assuredly enter the blazing fire with thee here this day.”

The birds spoke.

- 229 Thereupon the king heaping up the funeral pile, placed  
his son *thereon* ; and then associated with his wife he joined his  
230 hands reverently, thinking of the Supreme Soul, Śiva,  
Nárāyaṇa Hari Vāsudeva, the ruler of the gods, who sits in  
the cave-like recesses of the heart, of Bráhmaṇ who is without  
beginning or end ; of Kṛishṇa, yellow-clad, beautiful.
- 231 While he was thinking, Indra and all the gods, making  
232 Dharma their leader, assembled in haste. Approaching spake  
they all—“Ho ! O king ! hearken, O lord ! This is Bráh-  
233 man, visible to open sight, and the adorable Dharma himself ;  
and *here are* all the Sádhyas,\* the Maruts,† the Lokapálas,‡  
with their vehicles, the Nágas,§ the Siddhas|| and the Gand-  
234 harvas,¶ and the Rudras\*\* and the two Ásvins,—these and  
and others, many in number, and also Viśvámitra, whom the  
235 three worlds could not formerly make a friend. But Viśvá-  
mitra desires to proffer thee friendship and good.”

He mounted, thereon he met Dharma, and Indra and Viśvá-  
mitra.

Dharma spoke.

- 236 “Be not rash, O king ! I Dharma have visited thee, gratified  
with thy patience, self-command, truth and other virtues.”

\* Class of inferior deities.

† Wind-gods.

‡ Guardian-gods of the world.

§ Human-faced serpents of Pátála.

|| Class of demi-gods.

¶ Demi-gods, Indra's celestial musicians.

\*\* Eleven demi-gods (personified roaring of the wind).

Indra spoke.

- 237 "O virtuous Hariś-c'andra! I Indra have approached nigh  
thee; the eternal worlds are won by thee and thy wife and  
238 son! Accompanied by thy wife and son, ascend, O king! to  
the *third* heaven, which to others is very difficult of attain-  
ment, *but* which has been won by thine own deeds."

The birds spoke.

- 239 Then Indra, the lord, going to the funeral pile, poured  
down from the sky a shower of nectar that prevents sudden  
240 death, and a very copious shower of flowers, accompanied  
with the sound of the heavenly drums, here and there on  
241 that closely-gathered assemblage of gods. Then the high-  
souled king's son arose, very youthful in body, in per-  
242 fect health, placid in his organs and mind. And king  
Hariś c'andra immediately embraced his son; and in pos-  
sessing his wife regained his own Fortune. He was decked  
243 with heavenly garlands; and was happy, completely satisfied  
in heart, and filled with supreme joy.  
244 Indra at once re-addressed him. "Accompanied by thy wife  
and son, thou shalt gain supreme felicity. Ascend, O vir-  
tuous *king*, by the results of thy own actions!"

Hariś-c'andra spoke.

- 245 "O king of the gods! while unpermitted by my master the  
low outcaste, I will not, without having recompensed\* him,  
ascend to the abode of the gods."

Dharma spoke.

- 246 "Perceiving this thy affliction that was to be, I myself de-  
scended as the low outcaste through an illusion of myself;  
and I displayed that inconsiderate conduct."

Indra spoke.

- 247 Ascend, O Hariś-c'andra, to the supreme abode which is  
desired by all mankind on the earth, the abode of men holy in  
deed."

Hariś-c'andra spoke.

- 248 "O king of the gods, adoration to thee! hearken also to this

\* For *a-gatvá* read *a-dattvá*?

my speech, that, filled with affection, I speak to thee whose  
 249 countenance is beautified through benignity. My subjects in  
 the city of Kōśalá\* remain with minds sunk in my grief;  
 how disregarding them shall I now ascend to heaven?  
 250 The murder of a bráhmaṇ, the killing of a guru, the slaugh-  
 ter of cattle, and the slaying of women—equal to these has  
 been pronounced the great sin *incurred* in the abandonment  
 251 of one's adherents. Neither in this world nor in the other  
 do I see happiness for one who abandons an obsequious  
 252 and innocent adherent, who ought not to be abandoned. If  
 they go to Svarga in company with me, O lord of the gods!  
 then I too will go; or *I will go* even to Naraka with them."

Indra spoke.

253 "Many are their merits and sins, various and diverse.  
 How wilt thou again attain to Svarga which will be enjoyed  
 by multitudes?"

Hariś-c'andra spoke.

254 "O Indra, by the influence of the householders a king enjoys  
 his kingdom, and sacrifices with great sacrifices, and works  
 255 meritorious deeds; and therefore by their influence have I  
 performed everything; I will not forsake those benefactors  
 256 in the desire to gain Svarga. Therefore whatever, O lord of  
 the gods, I have done well, whatever I have given in alms,  
 whatever sacrifices or prayers I have made, let that be com-  
 257 mon to them and us. For whatever fruit of my action must  
 be eaten through long time, let that be *for me* and them to-  
 gether just a single day through thy favour!"

The birds spoke.

258 "So shall it be!" thus having spoken Indra, lord of the  
 three worlds, and Dharma, and Viśvámitra, Gádhi's son,  
 259 became propitious in their minds. Indra went from Svarga  
 to the earth, with a company of ten million heavenly  
 chariots and addressed the people of Ayodhyá thus, "Ascend  
 260 ye to heaven." And having heard with affection that  
 speech of Indra and the king's speech, and having brought

\* I. e. Ayodhyá.



- 261 Rohitása, Viśvámitra himself, great in austerities, with the gods also, the Munis, and the Siddhas, enthroned the king's son in the charming city of Ayodhyá, after enthroning the king.
- 262 Then all the people, his glad and prosperous friends, with their children servants and wives, ascended to heaven with the king.
- 263 Those people moved step by step from one heavenly chariot to another. Then king Hariś-c'andra also grew in gladness.
- 264 The king, attaining unparalleled dignity with the heavenly chariots, sat on the figure of a city which was surrounded with ramparts and walls.
- 265 Then beholding his prosperity, Uśanas, the eminent spiritual guide of the Daityas, conversant with the meaning and the truth of all the S'ástras, sang a verse there.

S'ukra (Uśanas) spoke.

- 266 "Like unto Hariś-c'andra there has been no king, nor shall there be. Whoever, when afflicted with his own sufferings
- 267 listens to those of others, may he obtain great happiness! May he who longs for Svarga gain Svarga; may he who longs for a son gain a son; may he who longs for a wife gain a wife; may
- 268 he who longs for a kingdom gain a kingdom! Ah, the majesty of patience! ah, the great fruit of liberality! since Hariś-c'andra has reached his city and has gained his sovereignty."

The birds spoke.

- 269 This whole *story of the* deeds of Hariś-c'andra has been declared to thee: hear the remainder of the discourse next,
- 270 O best of Munis! the outcome of the Rája-súya sacrifice, which was the cause of the decay of the earth, and the cause of that outcome, viz. the great battle of the Mainá\* and Heron.†

\* Ađi, also called S'aráli. The dictionaries all say this bird is *Turdus gin-ginianus*, which is the old name. It is Jerdon's Bank Maina, *Acridotheres gin-ginianus*, which is common throughout Upper India, and burrows in the river banks (vol. II, p. 326). Jerdon gives *salik* (śáriká) as the general Bengali name for mainas; but I do not trace either of these two words in his book.

† Vaka. Prof. Monier-Williams called this bird *Ardea nivida*, but I do not find this name in Jerdon. *Bak*, *bag*, (Bengali) and *baglá* (Hindi) are the general modern names for various kinds of common herons, egrets and

## CANTO IX.

*The Battle of the Mainá and the Heron.*

*Vaśishṭha, enraged with Viśvámitra for his cruelty to Hariś-c'andra, cursed him to become a heron, and Viśvámitra cursed Vaśishṭha to become a mainá—Both Munis as gigantic birds have a terrible fight, and are at length pacified by Brahmá.*

The birds spoke.

When Hariś-c'andra had left his kingdom and had gone to the abode of the thirty gods, there came out from his residence in the water the glorious family priest, Vaśishṭha, the Muni, who dwelt at the Ganges, at the end of twelve years; and he heard the whole of the deeds of Viśvámitra, and also the downfall of the noble-dealing king Hariś-c'andra, and his association with the c'aṇḍála, and his sale of his wife and son. That most illustrious *Muni* having heard *the story*, being full of affection for the king, grew wrathful in his dignity against the Ṛishi Viśvámitra.

Vaśishṭha spoke.

“It was Viśvámitra who destroyed my hundred sons; yet on that *occasion* I was not so wroth as I am this day, on hearing that this king, who was high-souled, eminent, worshipful towards the gods and bráhmans, had been ousted from his kingdom. Since that king, truthful, tranquil, devoid of envy even towards an enemy, faultless also, upright in soul, vigilant, a relier on me, has been reduced to the last extremity together with his wife dependants and son, has been expelled from his kingdom by Viśvámitra, and has been greatly worsted, therefore that impious bráhmaṇ-hater, uprooted from among

bitterns. The Large Egret (*Herodias alba*, Jerdon), the Smaller Egret (*H. egretoides*), and the Little Egret (*H. garzetta*) are all white; the Cattle Egret (*Buphus coromandus*) and the Pond Heron, generally known as the Paddy-bird, (*Ardeola leucoptera*), which are most commonly called *bag* and *baglá*, have white bodies (Jerdon, vol. II, pp. 744-751).

the wise, blasted by my curse, the fool, shall be turned into a heron."\*

The birds spoke.

- 10 Hearing the curse, the glorious Viśvámitra likewise,  
 Kuśika's descendant, inflicted the counter-curse, "Do thou also  
 11 become a mainá."† Both those most illustrious *sages* were  
 transformed into birds through their mutual curses, the  
 glorious Vaśishṭha and Viśvámitra, Kuśika's descendant.  
 12 Both of them, boundless in might, allying themselves with  
 other classes of *beings*, fought together, exceedingly exasperated,  
 13 great in strength and prowess. The Mainá increased in  
 size to two thousand yojanas; as the Heron, O bráhmaṇ,  
 14 increased to three thousand and ninety. And then those  
 two, of wide heroism, assailing each other with blows of  
 15 their wings, created sore fear among the creatures. The  
 Heron, his eyes swollen with blood, lifting his wings beat  
 the Mainá; and he also, stretching out his neck, struck the  
 16 Heron with his feet. Overthrown by the wind from their  
 wings, mountains fell down on the earth; and struck by the  
 17 downfall of the mountains the earth quaked; and the earth,  
 as it quaked, caused the waters of the seas to swell up, and  
 reeled over on one side, turning towards the descent to Pátála.  
 18 Living beings perished, some by the fall of the mountains,  
 others by the waters of the seas, others through the quaking  
 19 of the earth. Thus everything being terrified was turned  
 into lamentation, bereft of consciousness; the world was  
 greatly agitated, and its countries were thrown into confusion,  
 20 *people exclaiming* "Ah, my child! ah my beloved child! come,  
 here I am fixed"—"ah my darling wife!"—"my beloved  
*husband!*"—"this rock is falling, escape quickly."  
 21 Then, when the world was thus distressed and averted in  
 terror, surrounded by all the gods, advanced the fore-father,  
 22 the lord of the universe, and replied to both those *combatants*  
 who were violently enraged—"Let this your strife cease, and

\* See note †, p. 58.

† See note \*, p. 58.

let the worlds recover their stability !" Although they heard  
 23 the words of Brahmá, whose birth is inscrutable, yet both  
 of them, filled with anger and fury *still* fought, and did not  
 desist.

24 Thereupon the fore-father, the god, seeing the destruction  
 of the worlds, and desiring the welfare of both of them, dis-  
 25 sipated their brute-nature ; and the god, the lord of creation,  
 addressed them both, clothed in their former bodies, Vaśishṭha  
 and the noble descendant of Kuśika, the state of darkness  
 having been dispelled :—

26 " Stay thou, my beloved Vaśishṭha, and thou, most virtuous  
 Kauśika, this contest that, while involved in the state of  
 27 darkness, ye desire to carry on. This outcome of the Rája-  
 sūya sacrifice of king Hariś-c'andra, and this war between  
 28 you two, are causing the earth to waste away. Nor moreover  
 does that best of the Kauśikas offend against that king, *for*  
 since he has caused him to attain to Svarga, O bráhmaṇ ! he  
 29 occupies the position of a benefactor. Do ye both, the  
 creators of obstacles to *your* austerities, who have fallen into  
 subjection to lust and anger, cease ; for worthy *are your*  
 prayers, *and ample is your power.*"

30 Thus admonished by him, both then grew ashamed, and  
 31 embracing lovingly forgave each other. Thereupon, hymned  
 by the gods, Brahmá departed to his own world, and Vaśishṭha  
 to his own place, and Kauśika also to his own hermitage.

32 Those mortals, who shall fittingly relate and who shall fit-  
 tingly hear this battle of the Mainá and the Heron, and the  
 33 story of Hariś-c'andra, what they hear shall verily dispel  
 their sins ; nor shall they ever encounter antagonistic  
 duties.

---

## CANTO X.

*Conversation between a father and son.*

*Jaimini asks the Birds for instruction how living beings come into existence and die, and how the foetus lives and develops—The Birds repeat the explanation that a wise young brahman Sumati, who was nick-named Jada\* because of his apparent stupidity, but who remembered his former existences, gave his father—He explains how death occurs, and describes the after-existences through which a living being passes according as it has lived well or ill—He describes incidentally the hell Raurava.*

Jaimini spoke.

- 1 Declare my doubt, when I enquire, O powerful bráhmans,
- 2 wherein the appearance and disappearance of living beings
- 3 consist. How is an animal produced? How too does it
- 4 develop? How, again, is it placed when contained within the
- 5 womb, pressed upon by the limbs? How, again, when it has
- 6 issued from the womb, does it grow? And how at the moment
- 7 of departure is it deprived of the sentient state? Every dead
- 8 person also experiences *the results* of both his good and his bad
- deeds, and how then do those *deeds* bring about† their results to
- him? Why does the foetus not become digested there in the
- stomach, as if it were converted into a morsel of food? In the
- female's belly, where the various foods consumed are digested
- although highly indigestible, how is it that the little animal
- is not digested there? Declare all this to me, free from
- doubtful terms; this very matter is a transcendant mystery,
- where men do err.

The birds spoke.

- 7 Unparalleled is this burdensome question that thou hast
- propounded to us; it is difficult to be imagined, touching *as*
- 8 *it does* the existence and death of all living beings. Listen to
- it, Sir! as a son, most thoroughly righteous, named Sumati,‡
- once declared it to his father.

\* See Canto XIV.

† For *sampádayanti* read *sampádayatí* (neuter, dual, present participle)?

‡ For *Samatir* read *Sumatir*.

9 A certain highly intelligent bráhmaṇ of Bhṛigu's line ad-  
 10 dressed his son Sumati who had undergone his initiation, and  
 11 who was tranquil, and in appearance stupid. "Study the  
 12 Vedas, O Sumati, in order from the beginning, be zealous in  
 obedience to thy guru, make thy food of victuals collected by  
 begging. After that taking upon thee the duties of a house-  
 holder, and performing the chiefest sacrifices, beget the  
 desired offspring. Next resort to the forest, and then living  
 in the forest, my son, be a wandering ascetic,\* free from  
 family ties. Thus shalt thou attain that highest object of  
 religious knowledge, *the Supreme Being*, reaching which thou  
 shalt not grieve."

The birds spoke.

13 Thus frequently counselled, he through his stupidity never  
 14 replied : still the father again and again repeatedly admonish-  
 ed him affectionately. He thus frequently exhorted by his  
 father, through paternal love, alluringly and in pleasant  
 terms, spoke thus at length with a laugh :—  
 15 "Father ! I have repeatedly studied this that thou enjoimest  
 16 me to-day, the other Śástras also, and the various mechanical  
 17 arts. Ten thousand births and more have passed into my  
 memory ; disgusts and gratifications have sported in the  
 decay and the rise of my mind. I have seen partings and  
 meetings among enemies, friends and wives ; I have seen  
 mothers of various kinds, and fathers of various kinds also.  
 18 I have tasted joys and sorrows thousands of times. Many  
 19 kinsmen have I gained, and fathers of divers kinds. I have  
 also dwelt in women's wombs, slimy with ordure and urine ;  
 and thousands of times have the pains of sicknesses also taken  
 20 grievous hold of me. Many sufferings have I endured in  
 my stomach in childhood, and youth and old age : all those do  
 21 I remember. *I have been begotten* of bráhmaṇs, kshatriyas  
 and vaiśyas, and even súdras ; and again of cattle and insects,  
 22 of deer and birds. I have been born moreover in the houses  
 of kings' dependants, and of kings resplendent in battle, and

\* For *parivrāṭa* read *parivraṇ*.

23 in thy dwelling also. I have been a servant and a slave  
 frequently to men. I have been a master and a lord, and a  
 24 poor man as well. I have given blows, and I have received  
 blows from others, and my own blows have procured me  
 blows in return. Others have given me gifts, and I have given  
 25 gifts to others many a time. I have been gratified also by  
 the deeds of father, mother, friend, brother, wife and other  
 relatives. And often have I fallen into misery with my face  
 26 washed with tears. Whilst thus wandering, O father, in  
 the crowded circle of mundane existence, I have gained this  
 knowledge, which procures final emancipation from existence.  
 27 That being known, all this body of religious rites, called  
 Ric' Yajus and Sáman, is worthless, *and* does not appear fit-  
 28 tingly to me. Of what use consequently are the Vedas to  
 me, who am mature in wisdom, satiated with the knowledge  
 29 of the gurus, void of desires, virtuous in soul? I will gain,  
 O bráhmaṇ! the highest seat, that Supreme Soul, which is  
 exempt from the qualities of the sixfold actions, pain, pleasure,  
 30 joy, and love. Hence, O father, I will abandon this well-known  
 series of pains which is tainted by love, joy, fear, inquietude,  
 anger, resentment and old age, and which is hampered with  
 31 hundreds of nooses in close contact ensnaring one's own self as  
 game, and I will depart. Does not the duty enjoined by  
 the three Vedas, which abounds in unrighteousness,\* resemble  
 the result of sin?"

The birds spoke.

32 Hearing that his declaration, which was interrupted by joy  
 and surprise, the eminent father with gladsome mind address-  
 ed his son.

The father spoke.

33 "What is this thou sayest, my son? Whence arose thy  
 wisdom? How came thy stupidity before, and thy awakening  
 34 now? Is this a curse-wrought change inflicted on thee by a  
 Muni or god, since thy wisdom which was obscured has  
 become manifest?"

\* A pun on *dharma* and *a-dharma*. Prof. Monier-Williams gives *trayí-dharma* as masc. only.

The son spoke.

35 "Listen, father, how this happened to me, entailing pleasure  
and pain *on me*, and who I was in another birth, and what  
is beyond myself.

36 I was formerly a bráhmaṇ, my soul *fixed* on the Supreme  
Being; I attained the highest perfection in the considera-  
37 tion of the knowledge of the Supreme Being. While con-  
tinually occupied in devotion, through constant application  
to study, through association with the good, through my  
own natural disposition, through deliberation, behaviour and  
38 purification, while occupying myself in this indeed I ex-  
perienced the sublimest joy at all times, and I gained the  
position of a spiritual guide, the most successful remover of  
39 the doubts of disciples. A long while afterwards I attained  
absolute perfection; and my good disposition warped by  
40 ignorance fell into calamity through carelessness. Begin-  
ning from the time of my departure I had no failure of  
memory, until a year had passed and had returned to my  
41 recollection of my births. Being such, I, keeping my organs  
under control, will strive indeed, O father, by means of that  
*my* former study, so to act that I may not have another  
42 existence. For this is the result of learning and liberality  
that I remember *former* existences; this indeed is not obtained,  
O father, by men who apply themselves to the duty enjoined  
43 by the three Vedas. Being such I, from my former hermitage  
indeed, recurring to the duty of perfection, will attain to  
devotion to one object and will strive for the final emancipa-  
44 tion of my soul. Declare thou then, Sir! what is perplexing  
in thy heart: and to this extent let me, bringing the joy,  
discharge my debt."

The birds spoke.

45 Thereupon the father spoke to his son that speech of a man  
of faith, which relates to the perfection of mundane existence,  
and which *we* have been asked by thee, Sir.

The son spoke.

46 "Listen, O father, how I have often perceived the truth; the  
circle of mundane existence is ever young, the duration of



- 47 which is not known. I then tell thee the whole, with thy  
 permission, O father, commencing from the period of depar-  
 ture, as no one else will tell thee.
- 48 "Hot moisture is excited in the body; it is set in motion by  
 a strong vital air; blazing without fuel it pierces the sites of  
 49 the vital organs. And then the vital air, called Udána, passes  
 upwards, impeding the downward course of the water and  
 food consumed.
- 50 "Hence he, who has offered presents of water and has given  
 51 food and drink, obtains joy therefrom in adversity. He also,  
 who has bestowed food with a mind purified by faith, is then  
 52 satisfied even without food. He, who has not spoken un-  
 truth, nor caused a breach of amity, a faithful believer,  
 53 meets a happy death. Men who have been intent on the  
 worship of the gods and bráhmans, and who are unspiteful,\*  
 54 fair, charitable, shamefast, die happily. He who would not  
 forsake righteousness through lust, or anger or hatred, who  
 acts up to his words and is gentle, meets a happy death.
- 55 Men who do not give away water, nor give away food, endure  
 then, on the approach of death, burning thirst and hunger.
- 56 Those who give away fuel overcome cold; those who give  
 away sandal *overcome* heat; and those who do not inflict dis-  
 57 tress *overcome* the woeful life-ending pang. Those who cause  
 error and ignorance suffer grievous terror; base men are op-  
 58 pressed with intense pains. A false witness, a liar, and he  
 who teaches evil, they all and also blasphemers of the  
 Vedas die in delusion.
- 59 "Then Yama's officers, terrific, foul-smelling, carrying  
 hammers and maces, hard-hearted, approach the false man.
- 60 When they meet his eyesight, trembling seizes him, and he  
 bewails without ceasing his brother, mother, and children.
- 61 His voice seems thick, O father! *and* monotonous; and his  
 sight wanders through terror; and his mouth grows dry with  
 62 his breathing; his breathing grows loud; his sight fails; next  
 63 he is pervaded with pains; then he quits the body. Preceded  
 by the vital airs he assumes another body, similar to the

\* For *anustyavah* read *an-astýavah*.

former, produced by the actions of the former, intended for chastisement, born of no mother and father, like the previous one, with the periods of life and death conformable thereto.

- 64 "Thereupon Yama's messenger speedily binds him with  
cruel fetters; drags him, bewildered as he is with the blows  
65 of his staff, to the southern region. And so, to some place  
which is rough with kuśa grass, thorns, ant-hills, stakes,  
and stones, where a fire is raging, which abounds in hundreds  
66 of holes, and which is heated by the blazing sun, which is  
scorched by his rays, he is haled by Yama's emissaries, terrible  
67 through their ghastly cries. Being dragged about by those  
fearful *servants*, being eaten by hundreds of she-jackals, he,  
the evil-doer, proceeds by an awful road to Yama's abode.  
68 Men who give umbrellas and shoes, and who bestow garments,  
those men pass along that road in ease; and so also do those  
69 who give away food. Thus encountering afflictions, the man  
oppressed with sin is led in twelve days to the city of king  
Yama.

- 70 "While the body is being burnt, he experiences a great  
burning; also while it is being beaten, and while it is being  
71 divided into pieces, terrible agony. While *the body* is being  
wetted a living being endures a very long pain, even while  
it is inhabiting another body, through the consequences of  
72 its own acts. There the deceased feeds on the water that his  
relatives offer together with the sesamum seed and the cake  
73 that they offer. The anointing with oil by relations, and the  
kneading of the limbs that *they perform*,—a living being is  
74 nourished thereby, and by what his relations\* eat. A living  
being does not encounter excessive affliction on the earth  
through his deceased relatives; and so when dead he is  
nourished by his relatives who make gifts.

- 75 "Being led off he sees his own abode for twelve days and he  
enjoys the water, cake &c. that are offered on the earth.  
76 After twelve days, the man who is being carried off, next sees  
Yama's city, awful, made of iron, terrible in appearance.  
77 Immediately he has gone *there* he beholds Yama, with fiery

\* For *sa bāndhavāḥ* read *eva-bāndhavāḥ* ?

- red eyes, like to a mass of broken collyrium ; in the midst of  
 78 Death, the destroyer Time and others ; his mouth gaping with  
 projecting teeth, his countenance dreadful with frowns ; a lord,  
 surrounded by hundreds of deformed, horrible and crooked  
 79 diseases ; busy in *awarding* punishment, with long arms, a  
 noose in his hand, very formidable. Then the living being  
 80 takes the happy or miserable course decreed by him. But  
 the false witness goes to Raurava, and the man who is un-  
 truthful. Listen while I describe the nature of that Raurava.
- 81 “Raurava\* is in truth two thousand yojanas in size. Then  
 there is a chasm, just knee-deep, very difficult to pass over :  
 82 in it charcoal is heaped up and made level with the ground.  
 It burns vehemently with its glowing surface of kindled  
 83 charcoal. In its midst Yama’s servitors cast the evil-doer.  
 84 He runs *about* there, being burnt by the violent flame ; and  
 at each step, his foot is wasted and consumed again *and again* ;  
 day and night he continues on the move.
- 85 “When he has thus passed over a thousand yojanas he is  
 released, and then enters another similar *hell* Niraya,† to  
 86 purge away his sins. Afterwards when he has passed  
 through all *the hells*, the sinner enters the brute creation,  
 among worms, insects and birds ; among carnivorous animals ;  
 87 among mosquitoes and such like. After having been born  
 among elephants, trees and such like, among cattle, and  
 among horses also ; and among other evil and noxious crea-  
 88 tures ; he attains humanity, and is born a man, contemptible  
 as a hunch-back or a dwarf ; among c’andālas, pukkasas and  
 89 such-like castes ; and then accompanied by the remainder of  
 his sin and merit, he *enters* the castes in ascending order,  
 90 such as súdras, vaiśyas, kings and so on ; also the position  
 of bráhmans, the gods and Indra. Sometimes in descending  
 order, and thus evil-doers fall headlong into the hells.
- 91 “What happens to righteous-doers, listen while I declare  
 that. They take the holy course decreed by Yama. Bands  
 92 of Gandharvas singing, bevvies of Apsarases dancing, brilliant

\* Terrible.

† Devoid of happiness.

with various celestial garlands, bedecked with strings of pearls  
 93 and anklets and *gay with music*,\* and heavenly chariots  
 beyond compare go forth quickly *to them*. And when  
 they descend therefrom, they are born in the family of  
 94 kings and other high-souled men: there observing upright  
 conduct, they experience vigorous† pleasures, and afterwards  
 95 they go upwards; and otherwise, when they take the down-  
 ward *path*, they become men as before.

“This has all been declared to thee, how a living being  
 perishes. Next listen, O Brahmarshi, how the foetus begins.”

## CANTO XI.

*Conversation between the father and son (continued).*

*Sumati (Jaḍa) explains how living beings are conceived and  
 born, and mentions the evils of all existence.*

The son spoke.

1 “Now human impregnation‡ of women is a seed sown in  
 darkness; immediately it is discharged it sets out from  
 2 Naraka or Svarga. Dominated thereby the two seeds attain  
 firmness, O father! and next the character of a speck—of a  
 3 globule—of a ball of flesh. As there may be a minute seed in  
 the ball of flesh, so it is called a germ. So the five limbs up-  
 4 grow according to their parts; and the minor limbs also, the  
 fingers, the eyes, the nose, the mouth, and the ears, grow out of  
 the limbs; similarly the nails and other *features* grow out of  
 5 them. In the skin is developed the hair of the body, and  
 afterwards the hair of the head. The womb verily increases  
 6 in size equally with it. Just as the cocoa-nut enlarges together  
 with its shell, so it grows in size. The womb is situated with  
 7 its mouth downwards. But at the bottom *of the womb the foetus*  
 develops, placing its hands on either side of the knees: and  
 its thumbs are placed upon the knees, and its finger in  
 8 front of them; behind the knees are the eyes, and between

\* For *-śobhitāni* read *-śobhitā*?

† *Ugra*; or noble.

‡ For *nishekam mānavam* read *nisheko mānavah*?

the knees is the nose ; and the buttocks rest on the heels ; the arms and legs lie outside.

- 9      “In this way gradually grows the human being, when  
 10 contained in a woman’s womb : in the womb of other crea-  
 11 tures, the position of the fœtus corresponds to its form. The  
 12 gastric fluid\* renders it firm. It lives on the food and drink  
 13 *taken by its mother*. Thus the gestation of a living creature is  
 14 meritorious, and constitutes a means of *obtaining* merit. Also  
 15 the cord, which is called *Āpyāyanī*, is fixed in its navel, and it  
 16 becomes fixed in the belly of women. As women’s food and  
 17 drink penetrate into their womb, the fœtus increases in size,  
 18 its body being nourished thereby.

- 13      “Numerous matters of its transmigrations occur to its  
 14 memory ; hence distressed on this side and on that it becomes  
 15 dispirited, *thinking*, ‘Never again will I thus act, when once  
 16 I am delivered from this womb ; assuredly I will so strive  
 17 that I do not *again* undergo conception.’ Thus it meditates,  
 18 recollecting the hundreds of pains attending existence, which  
 19 have been experienced aforetime, and which spring from  
 20 destiny.

- 16      “Afterwards in the course of time the fœtus turns round  
 17 with its face downwards, since it is born in the ninth or tenth  
 18 month. While it is being expelled, it is pained by the wind  
 19 of the *prajāpatis*, and it is expelled wailing, being pained at  
 20 heart by its sufferings. And when expelled from the belly, it  
 21 falls into an intolerable swoon ; and it gains consciousness  
 22 when it comes into contact with the air. Thereupon Vishnu’s  
 23 magical power, which effaces consciousness, assails it ; its  
 soul being stupefied thereby, it loses its knowledge.

- 20      “Thereafter the human being, bereft of knowledge, enters  
 21 on childhood ; and afterwards on boyhood, youth and mature  
 22 age ; and again the human being undergoes death, and so  
 23 birth. Hence he revolves in this round of mundane existence,  
 like the jar and rope at a well.

- 22      “Sometimes a man reaches Svarga, sometimes Niraya ; and  
 23 sometimes the dead man goes to Naraka and Svarga. Some-

\* *Agni* ; or, the digestive faculty.

- times indeed re-born here, he obtains *the consequences of his own actions*; and sometimes the man who has consumed *the consequences of his actions*, passes at death with a very small remainder. And hence he is sometimes born here with a scanty stock of good and evil, having almost consumed them in heaven\* and in hell,† O bráhmaṇ! In the hells there is this very great suffering that the dwellers in Svarga are visible *thence*, O father; and the denizens of hell rejoice,‡ as they are hurled down. Even in Svarga there is an unparalleled pain in that from the very time of ascension there this *thought* revolves in one's mind, 'I shall fall from hence': and from viewing the hells great suffering is felt; day and night one is cheerless, *thinking* 'I shall go this course.' One who is being born has great suffering in remaining in the womb; and after birth one has suffering in childhood and old age. The connexion also between desire envy and anger is grievous to bear in youth; and old age is almost all suffering; the heaviest suffering lies in death. Both for him who is borne off by Yama's messengers, and for him who is hurled down to the hells, there are again *destined* both conception, and birth, death and hell.
- 31 "So in this round of mundane existence creatures revolve about, like the jar and rope at the well; and having been bound with the fetters of nature, they are bound repeatedly.
- 32 No pleasure is there a whit, O father in this world crowded with hundreds of pains; why then should I in striving for emancipation from existence observe the three branches of religion?"

## CANTO XII.

*Jada describes the Hells Mahá-raurava, Tamas, Nikṛintana, Apratishṭha, Asi-patra-vana, and Tapta-kumbha to his father.*

The father spoke.

- 1 "Good, my son! thou hast declared the deepest obscurity of mundane existence, relying on the great fruit that grows
- 2 from the bestowal of knowledge. Therein thou hast verily

\* Svar-loka.

† Naraka.

‡ For *modante* read *sídante*?

described the Rauravas as well as all the Narakas ; tell me of them at length, O mighty in intellect !”

The son spoke.

3 “ I have described to thee first the hell Raurava, now listen  
to the description of the hell named Mahá-raurava,\* O father !  
4 There for seven times five thousand yojanas all around the  
5 earth is made of copper; beneath it† is fire. Heated by the heat  
thereof the whole region shines with a light equal to that of  
6 the rising moon, most intensely severe to sight touch and the  
other sensations. There the evil-doer is deposited, bound hand  
and foot, by Yama’s servants ; he moves rolling about in the  
7 midst. Preyed upon by crows, herons, wolves, and owls,  
scorpions, and mosquitoes, and vultures he is speedily drag-  
8 ged out into the road. Burnt and confounded, he exclaims  
repeatedly, “ Father ! Mother ! Brother ! Dear one !” Full of  
9 fear he can get no repose. In this manner therefore emanci-  
pation from existence is attained to by violent men, who evil-  
minded have committed sin, in ten thousand times ten  
thousand years.

10 “ Moreover there is another hell named Tamas ;‡ it is bitterly  
cold naturally ; it is as long as Mahá-raurava, and is enveloped  
11 in darkness. There the men, afflicted with the cold, running  
about in the awful darkness, encounter one another and seek  
12 refuge clasping one another. And their teeth adhere together,  
chattering with pain through the cold ; there are also other  
13 plagues the strongest of which are hunger and thirst. A cut-  
ting wind, laden with particles of snow, pierces their bones ;  
pressed with hunger, they feed on the marrow and blood that  
14 trickle down therefrom. Constantly licking, they whirl about  
in mutual contact. So there in Tamas very great affliction is  
15 indeed endured by human beings, until, O most worthy  
bráhmaṇ ! their sins are completely consumed.

“ Next there is another notable hell, known as Nikṛintana.§  
16 In it potter’s wheels revolve incessantly, O father ! Human

\* Very terrible.

† For *tasya* read *tasyá* ?

‡ Darkness.

§ Cutting off.

- beings are mounted thereon and are cut by the string of Fate  
 17 which is borne on the fingers of Yama's servant, from the  
 sole of the foot to the head ; and these men do not lose their life  
 18 thereby, most virtuous brāhman ! and their portions severed  
 in hundreds reunite. In this way sinners are cut in sunder  
 19 during thousands of years, until indeed the whole of their  
 sins are consumed.
- 20 " Listen also while I speak of the hell A-pratishṭha, the  
 occupants of which hell undergo intolerable pain. Those  
 wheels are there indeed, and jar and well-ropes on the other  
 21 side, which have been constituted causes of pain to men who  
 engage in sin. Some human beings mounted on the wheels  
 22 whirl around there ; for thousands of years no other condi-  
 tion is theirs ; and *then* another man is bound to the jar and  
 23 well-rope, as the jar in the water. Human beings whirl  
 around, continually spitting out blood, with blood pouring  
 24 from their faces, *and* with eyes streaming with tears. They  
 are visited with pains that are beyond endurance by living  
 creatures.
- 25 " Hear also of another hell called Asi-patra-vana ;\* which  
 has the ground covered with blazing fire for a thousand  
 yojanas, where they are grievously scorched by the very  
 26 fierce vehement beams of the sun. The living beings that  
 inhabit the hell are ever falling down there. In the midst  
 27 thereof appears a charming forest with moist leaves. The  
 leaves there are sword-blades, O most virtuous brāhman !  
 28 Myriads† of powerful black dogs also bark there, with long  
 muzzles, with large teeth, formidable as tigers. Then gazing  
 at that forest before them, with its cool shades, the living  
 beings hasten thither, oppressed with raging thirst, crying ' Ah  
 30 mother ! ah dear one ! ' in deepest woe ; their feet burnt by the  
 fire lambent on the ground. When they wend there, a wind  
 31 blows, that hurls down the sword-leaves, and so casts the  
 swords down upon them. Thereat they fall to the earth into  
 32 a mass of blazing fire, which has pervaded the entire surface

\* Sword-leaf- forest.

† For *ayuta-śobhitāḥ* read *ayutāśo 'śitāḥ* ?



- of the ground, and is constantly licking in other directions.
- 33 Thereupon the terrific dogs quickly rend many limbs from the bodies of those wailing ones. I have described this *Asi-patra-vana* to thee, dear father!
- 34 "Next learn of me about the very dreadful *Tapta-kumbha*.\* On all sides heated pitchers are surrounded with the flames
- 35 of fire, and are filled with oil iron and powder which boil over on to the heaps of blazing fire. Into them the workers of
- 36 iniquity are cast head-long by Yama's servants.† They are boiled, and foul the water with the marrow that oozes from their bursting limbs. Terrible vultures pulling them out
- 37 fracture the eye-bones of their bursting skulls; again they are dropped into the same *pitchers* by the impetuous birds; again
- 38 they become united with the liquefied heads, limbs, sinews, flesh, skin and bones, by means of the oil in the seething vessel. Then being quickly and vigorously stirred up by Yama's ser-
- 39 vants with a spoon, the sinners are churned up in the whirling pool of copious oil. Such is the *Tapta-kumbha* that I have fully described to thee, O father!"

## CANTO XIII.

*Conversation between the father and son (continued).*

*Sumati relates an incident in one of the periods he spent in hell—King Vipāś-c'it comes there and asks why, in spite of a righteous life, he was condemned there.*

The son spoke.

- 1 Now I was born in a *Vaiśya*'s family in the seventh life that preceded my present one. Once upon a time I obstructed
- 2 the cattle at their drinking. In consequence of that act I was consigned to a very terrible hell, fearful with flames of
- 3 fire, infested with birds with iron beaks, muddy by reason of the streams of blood that flowed from limbs crushed by machines, pervaded with the sound of blood pouring down from sinners who are being cut asunder. When cast down

\* Burning-pitcher.

† For *yāmyaḥ* read *yāmyaiḥ*.

- 4 there I spent a hundred years and more, scorched by the intense heat, and burning with thirst.
- 5 On a sudden a wind blew on me there, bringing gladness, deliciously cool, issuing from out of a pitcher of meal and sand.\*
- 6 Through contact with it all the men were relieved of their torments, and I too gained a bliss supreme, such as the celestial beings enjoy in Svarga. And with eyes fixed in a wide gaze of joy, *in wonder at* what this was, we saw at hand a
- 8 peerless perfect man; and Yama's dire servant, staff in hand, like Indra's thunderbolt, *was* showing the path in front, and
- 9 a voice *came* saying "come hither!" Then that man seeing the hell filled with hundreds of tortures, moved with compassion, addressed that servant of Yama.

The man spoke.

- 10 "Ho! servant of Yama! say, what sin have I committed, for which I have incurred this deepest hell, frightful for its
- 11 torments? Known as Vipas'-c'it, I was born in the family of the Janakas, in the country of Videha, in very truth a guardian of men. I sacrificed with many sacrifices; I protected the earth with uprightness; nor did I let fighting rage; no
- 12 guest departed with averted countenance; nor did I offend the pitris, the gods, the rishis or my servants; nor did I covet other men's wives, or wealth, or aught else belonging to them.
- 14 At the moon's changes the pitris, on *other* lunar days the
- 15 gods, voluntarily approached mankind† as cows a pool. The two religious duties, both sacrifice and meritorious work, perish inasmuch as the performers of domestic sacrifices depart
- 16 sighing with averted faces. The merit amassed in seven lives is dissipated by the sighing of the pitris; the sighing assuredly destroys the destiny that springs from three lives. Hence
- 17 I was ever indeed kindly disposed to what concerned the gods and the pitris; being such, how have I incurred this very terrible hell?"

\* Or, camphor.

† Purusha.

## CANTO XIV.

*Jaḍa's\* narrative (continued)—The conversation with Yama's officer.*

*Yama's officer tells king Vipraś-c'it why he was condemned to hell—He explains to him the nature and results of good and evil deeds generally, and mentions at great length the punishments awarded to various special sins.*

The son spoke.

- 1 Thus interrogated then by that high-souled king in our hearing, Yama's officer, though dreadful, with modest speech replied.

Yama's officer spoke.

- 2 "Mahárájá! it is even as thou hast said, undoubtedly. Nevertheless thou didst commit, Sir! a very trifling misdeed;
- 3 I will recall it to thy mind. The wife whom thou hadst, a princess of Vidarbha, named Pívarí,—her season of aptitude for sexual intercourse was formerly rendered barren by thee,
- 4 who wast enamoured of the resplendent Kaikeyí; hence for the transgression in the matter of her season thou hast incurred, Sir! a deadful hell such as this. As the Fire expects the fall of the liquid butter at the time of the Homa oblation, even so does Brahmá expect the deposit of seed at the
- 6 approved season. A righteous man who disregarding that season, may become absorbed in objects of desire, would still incur sin by reason of the debt due to his ancestors and
- 7 would fall into hell. Such indeed was thy sin; naught else is found; come then! go, O king, to the enjoyment of thy meritorious acts."

The king spoke.

- 8 "I will go, O servant of the god, where thou shalt lead me. Something I ask, deign to declare it to me aright. These
- 9 crows with adamant beaks are tearing out men's eyes; and these men are having their eyes renewed again and again.
- 10 And what deed have they done? Explain this abominable thing. Likewise they are tearing out the tongue from these

\* The 'Stupid one,' Sumati's nickname.

- 11 *other men* as it is being reproduced anew. Why are these grievously afflicted men torn with a saw? *Why* are these *other men*, immersed in oil, boiled among meal and sand?
- 12 And these *other men* are dragged about by iron-beaked birds; say, of what kind are they, screaming with loud cries through the pain caused by the loosened bodily bands.
- 13 Pained by the wounds in every limb, why are these men, who have wrought iniquity, struck by the onslaught of the iron
- 14 beaks day and night. Tell me without reservation, through what maturing of their acts are these and other torments seen among sinners."

Yama's officer spoke.

- 15 "Since thou askest me, O king, concerning the rise of the fruits of sinful actions, I will tell thee that succinctly *and*
- 16 correctly. A man verily attains merit and demerit in regular order; and his sin or his merit diminishes as he consumes it.
- 17 But no human action, whether virtuous or sinful, quickly cleanses except by consumption. Diminution arises through
- 18 consumption. And he abandons merit and demerit through consuming it; hearken to me! From famine indeed to famine,
- 19 from affliction to affliction, from fear to fear go needy sinners, more dead than the dead. A manifold course do
- 20 creatures take through the fetters of their actions. From festival to festival, from Svarga to Svarga, from happiness to happiness go the faithful, and the peaceful, the rich, *and* the
- 21 doers of good. But sinners, when slain by sin, encounter perils from beasts of prey and elephants, terrors from snakes
- 22 and thieves; what surpasses this? *Decked* with fragrant garlands, *clad* in fine apparel, *enjoying* beautiful carriages dwellings and food, those who are praised ever go to sacred groves with their meritorious deeds.
- 23 "Thus men's merit and demerit are amassed in the sum of many hundreds of thousands of lives: they spring from the
- 24 germs of pleasure and pain. For as the seed, O king, awaits the water, so do merit and demerit await him who acts
- 25 otherwise than at the right time and place. A trifling sin committed by a man, when it reaches the place and time,

inflicts the pain produced by a thorn, when the foot is planted  
 26 down *heedlessly*. Then it inflicts the acuter severe pain that  
 is caused by pins and wedges, and likewise scarcely endurable  
 27 headaches and other *pains*. It causes *the pains engendered*  
*by eating unwholesome things*, by cold, heat, fatigue, inflammation  
 and such like. Moreover sins have regard to one another  
 28 amid the confluence of their results. In this way heinous  
 sins *have regard to* the deteriorated state of protracted  
 illness, &c; and *they verily tend to* the consequences produced  
 by weapons, fire, calamity, pain, imprisonment, and so forth.  
 29 A trifling good deed confers at once a pleasing fragrance, or  
 30 touch, or sound, taste, or shape; more marked likewise after  
 a long time, and great when arising at the proper period.  
 And in this way pleasures and pains spring indeed out of good  
 31 and bad actions. *A man* stays here consuming the produc-  
 tions of numerous mundane existences. And the results of  
 knowledge or ignorance are checked by race and country,  
 32 and remain there united merely by outward sign to the soul.

“Never and nowhere doth the man exist who doeth not a  
 33 wicked or holy act in body, mind, or speech. Whatever a man  
 receives, whether pain or pleasure, whether great or insig-  
 34 nificant, it produces a changed condition of the mind; by so  
 much either his virtue, or on the other hand his sin, *gradually*  
 35 diminishes by consumption, just like food that is being eaten.  
 In this way these men, dwelling within hell, diminish *their*  
 36 awful heinous sins by torments day and night. Likewise, O  
 king, they consume their virtues in the company of the im-  
 37 mortals in Svarga with the songs and other *joys* of the  
 Gandharvas, Siddhas and Apsarases. In the condition of a  
 god, and a human being, and a brute creature, one con-  
 38 sumes good or evil, arising from virtue or sin, *and* characterized  
 by pleasure or pain.

“What thou enquirest about of me, O king! namely ‘Of  
 what particular sins are the tortures of wicked-doers the  
 consequences?’ that I will declare to thee in full detail.

39 “*When* vile covetous men have gazed on others’ wives and  
 40 on others’ goods with evil eye and evil mind, these birds

with adamant beaks tear out their eyes; and they have their  
 41 eyes reproduced continually. Moreover during as many twink-  
 lings of the eyes as these men have committed the sin, so many  
 thousands of years they undergo the eye-torture.

42 “Those men who have given instruction in wicked S’ástras,  
 and those who have advised *such instruction*, for the purpose of  
 43 completely destroying the sight even of their enemies; those  
 who have repeated the S’ástra improperly; those who have  
 given utterance to an evil word; those who have blasphemed  
 the Veda, the gods, the dvijas and their guru; for so  
 44 many years these very terrible *birds* with adamant beaks  
 tear out those men’s very tongues as they are continually  
 reproduced.

45 “Also base men, who have caused dissension among friends,  
 or dissension between a father and his son and relations,  
 between a sacrificer and a spiritual preceptor, between  
 46 a mother and her son who is her companion, and between  
 wife and husband,—see! these *men* who are such are torn with  
 a saw, O king!

47 “Also those who cause pain to others; and those who forbid  
 joyousness; and *those* who deprive *others* of fans, breezy places,  
 48 sandal, and usír grass;\* and base men who have inflicted  
 suffering on innocent men at life’s end,—these participators  
 in sin, who are such, are placed within meal and sand.

49 “Moreover the man who eats another’s s’ráddha, when  
 invited by the other to a ceremony either to the gods or to the  
 pitris, he is rent in twain by birds.

50 “But whoever lacerates the vitals of good men with wicked  
 words, these birds unchecked continually strike him.

51 “And whoever indulges in backbiting, dissembling in  
 speech, dissembling in mind, his tongue is assuredly torn in  
 twain thus by sharp razors.

\* *Andropogon muricatus*, Roxburgh; the modern *khas-khas*. The roots,  
 when dry, and then gently moistened, emit a pleasant fragrance; they are  
 employed to make large fans; and also screens, which are placed before doors  
 and windows, and which being kept moist during the hot winds render the  
 air that passes through them cool and fragrant (Roxb. p. 89).

- 52 "Whoever, puffed up, show contempt towards their parents  
and gurus—these *men*, who are such, are plunged head fore-  
most into a pit *reeking* with pus, ordure and urine.
- 53 "Those who eat, while the gods, guests and living beings,  
dependants and visitors, and also the *pitṛis*, the fire and birds  
54 are left unfed; those evil men feed on carrion and exudations,  
and they become *Súc'i-mukha* birds,\* as large as mountains.  
Behold! these are men of that kind.
- 55 "But those who feed a *bráhma*n or a man of another caste  
in one company disagreeably on earth,—those men, like these  
persons, feed on ordure.
- 56 "Whoever eat their own food neglecting a man, who has  
gone forth in company with them, and who being destitute  
seeks wealth,—these *men*, who are such, feed on phlegm.
- 57 "Those men who, without washing their hands and mouth  
after meals, O king! have touched cattle, *bráhma*ns and the  
fire,—these hands of theirs placed in fire-pots are licked  
repeatedly.
- 58 "But those men who, without washing their hands and  
mouth after meals, have gazed longingly at the sun, moon  
and stars,—in their eyes *Yama's* servants place fire and  
augment it.
- 59 "Moreover whatever men have touched cattle, fire, their  
mother, a *bráhma*n, their eldest brother, father, sister,  
60 daughter-in-law, their gurus and the áged with their feet,  
they stand mid piles of charcoal, with their feet bound with  
red-hot iron fetters, enduring burning up to the knees.
- 61 "Whoever have eaten in an unhallowed manner milk,  
*khichree*, goat's flesh, and things offered as food to the gods,—  
62 the eyes of those sinners, as they *lie* hurled to the ground  
gazing with starting eyes, are torn out, see! from their faces  
by *Yama's* servants with pincers.

\* The dictionaries do not say what bird this is. I would suggest from the meaning of the word, that it means a Honey-Sucker (the commonest species of which is the Purple Honey-Sucker, *Arachnechthra asiatica*), or it may be the Hoopoe, *Upupa epops*, which also has a long slender beak (Jerdon, vol. I, pp. 370 & 380.)

- 63 “ And base men who have hearkened to blasphemy against  
gurus, the gods, and dvijas, and against the Vedas,—these  
64 servants of Yama continually drive iron wedges, red as fire,  
into the ears, of such wicked men who rejoice *in such things*  
though they bewail *the while*.
- 65 “ Whoever, led by anger and covetousness, have broken up  
and destroyed beautiful rest-houses,\* the abodes of gods and  
bráhmans, and assemblages in the temples of the gods,—  
66 Yama’s exceedingly cruel servants continually flay the skins  
of those men from their body by means of these sharp instru-  
ments.
- 67 “ Whatever men have made water in the path of cattle,  
bráhmans, and tho sun, these entrails of theirs are drawn  
out through the anus by crows.
- 68 “ Where *a man* after having given his daughter to some  
one, gives her to a second *person*, truly that *man* is thus  
divided into many portions, and swept along in a stream of  
burning corrosive.
- 69 “ Whatever man, moreover, engrossed in his own nourish-  
ment abandons his destitute children, dependants, wife and  
70 other relatives in a famine or in a disturbance, he indeed  
in his hunger thus gets portions of his own flesh, which  
Yama’s servants cut off and put into his mouth.
- 71 “ Whoever through avarice abandons those who have sought  
protection and who are dependent *on him* for their livelihood,  
he indeed is thus tortured by Yama’s servants with tortures  
by means of machines.
- 72 “ Men who check good deeds all their lives long are ground  
with the grinding of rocks, as *are* these evil-doers.
- 73 “ Men who carry off pledges are bound with bands on all  
their limbs, and are devoured day and night by insects, scor-  
pions, and ravens.
- 74 “ Wicked men who indulge in sexual intercourse by day,  
and men who defile others’ wives, are worn away by hunger,  
have their tongues dropping from their palates by reason of  
thirst, *and* are racked with pangs.

\* *Prapá*, road-side sheds for accommodating travellers with water.



- 75 "Moreover, see the "seemul tree"\* with its long iron  
 thorns; mounted *thereon* the bodies of *sinner*s are pierced,  
 and they are foul with the streams of blood that pour forth.
- 76 "See also, O tiger-like man! these defilers of others' wives,  
 who are being destroyed by Yama's servants in the "mouse."†
- 77 "Whatever man, deposing his spiritual preceptor, stub-  
 bornly pursues his learning or art,—he verily, bearing thus a  
 78 rock on his head, undergoes affliction in the public way, suffer-  
 ing exceeding pain, emaciated with hunger day and night, his  
 head quivering through the pain of his burden.
- 79 "Those who have discharged urine, phlegm or ordure  
 in water,—they, *such as* these *persons*, have come to a hell  
 stinking with phlegm ordure and urine.
- 80 "Pressed with hunger these men are devouring one another's  
 flesh—these *men* formerly did not eat according to the rules of  
 hospitality mutually.
- 81 "Those also who have discarded the Vedas and the fires,  
*themselves* kindling their own fires,—they, *such as* these *persons*,  
 are repeatedly hurled down from the loftiest summit of a  
 mountain.
- 82 "Those men who have married virgin widows and have  
 grown old to the full extent of life,—these turned into worms  
 are consumed by ants.
- 83 "By receiving favours from an outcaste,‡ by performing  
 sacrifices for an outcaste, by constant attendance on an outcaste,  
 a man ever reaches the condition of an insect *that lives* among  
 stones.
- 84 "The man, who eats sweetmeats all by himself, while his  
 relatives or his friends or a guest look on, eats a pile of  
 burning charcoal.
- 85 "This man's back is continually devoured by fearful wolves,  
 because, O king! he was a backbiter of people.

\* Sâlmali, the Cotton or Silk-cotton tree, *Bombax malabaricum* (*heptaphylla*, Roxb.), the Bengali *simul*, the Hindustani *semal*. It is a large tree, common almost everywhere, with stout hard conical prickles (Hooker, vol. I, p. 349; Roxb., p. 514). Here it means a kind of instrument of torture.

† A kind of instrument of torture.

‡ See Canto XV. verse 1.

- 86 "Blind, moreover, deaf, dumb, this man roams about, sick  
with hunger—he, base man, was ungrateful to men who oc-  
cupy themselves in conferring benefits.
- 87 "This man, who returns evil for good, working injury to  
his friends, very evil-minded, drops into Tapta-kumbha ;  
88 thereafter he will suffer grinding ; then *he will go to Karam-*  
*bha-báluká ;\** next *he will undergo* mechanical tortures ; then  
Asi-patra-vana ; and rending with saw-like leaves. After ex-  
89 perienicing, too, division by the thread of Fate and manifold  
torments, how he will obtain expiation herefrom I know not.
- 90 "Corrupt Bráhmans, for having assailed one another when  
assembled at S'ráddhas, drink verily the moisture that exudes  
from every limb.
- 91 "A gold-stealer, a bráhman-slayer, a drinker of spirituous  
liquors, a defiler of his guru's bed, remain, being burnt in  
92 blazing fire beneath, above, around, for very many thousands  
of years ; thereafter they are re-born as men afflicted with  
93 leprosy, consumption, sickness and other *diseases*. And when  
again dead, they enter hell ; and when again born, they under-  
go a similar malady until the end of the kalpa, O king !
- 94 "A cow-slayer also goes to hell for a rather less *period*,  
*namely*, during three lives.
- "There is likewise a fixed ordinance regarding all minor sins.
- 95 "To what various grades of creatures, for what several  
definite sins, men go, when released from hell—listen to me  
while I recount that."

## CANTO XV.

*Conversation between the father and son—(Continued).*

*The exposition of sins and their punishments is continued, and  
Jaḍa concludes his story of king Vipāś-c'it—The king by his  
merit delivers all the inhabitants of hell and ascends to heaven.*

Yama's officer spoke.

- 1 "For accepting anything of value from an outcaste,† let a  
dvija be born an ass : but let him who sacrifices for the  
outcaste become a worm, on his release from hell.

\* See Canto XIII, verse 5.

† See Canto XIV. verse 83.

- 2 "But the *dvija* who has misbehaved towards his spiritual preceptor,\* by coveting the latter's wife and the latter's property in his mind, undoubtedly becomes a dog.
- 3 "The man also who scorns his parents is born an ass; for reviling his mother and father he is born a *mainá*;† and he
- 4 who scorns his brother's wife becomes a pigeon; but for injuring her he becomes a tortoise.
- 5 "He who, while eating his brother's *pinḍa*, does not pursue his brother's welfare, being overwhelmed with folly is indeed born after death a monkey.
- 6 "He who carries away a deposit is born a worm on his release from hell: And the detractor when released from hell
- 7 becomes a *Rákshasa*. And the man who destroys trust is born a fish.
- 8 "For carrying off through folly paddy, barley, sesamum‡ seed, *másh* beans,§ kulattha beans,|| mustard-seed,¶ chickpeas,\*\* beans,†† *áman* rice,‡‡ mudga beans,§§ wheat

\* *Upádhya*ya.

† *Sáriká*; see note \* p. 49.

‡ *Tila*, *Sesamum*, *Sesamum orientale*, Roxb. (*indicum*, Linnæus); the modern *til* (Roxb., p. 401). Not in Hooker.

§ *Másha*, a kind of bean, *Phaseolus mungo*, variety *radiatus*, the Bengali *másh-kaláy*. It is esteemed the best of all the leguminous plants, and the meal is made into bread for many religious ceremonies. (Hooker, vol. II, p. 203; Roxb., p. 557.)

|| *Kulattha*, a kind of bean, *Dolichos biflorus*, the Bengali *kulattha* (Hooker, vol. II, p. 210; Roxb., p. 563.)

¶ *Sarshapa*, Mustard, *Sinapis campestris*; which combines Roxburgh's *S. dichotoma*, (the Beng. *śádá rái* or *sarishá*, Hind. *sarson*), and *S. glauca* (the Beng. *sveta rái*). From both varieties an oil is expressed which is used in diet, and for various other purposes. (Hooker, vol. I, p. 156; Roxb., p. 497.)

\*\* *C'ana*, Chick pea or Gram, *Cicer arietinum*, the Beng. *bu*, *chandá* and *chholdá*; it is the same as *vartula*. (Hooker, vol. II, p. 176; Roxb., p. 567; Oliver, p. 196.)

†† *Kaláya*. This is the general name for most of the commonly cultivated kinds of beans, *Phaseolus*.

‡‡ *Kalama*, the *áman* (*hemanta*) or later rice, which is sown in May and June and is reaped in December and January. The *ásu* (*áśu*) or early rice is sown about April and reaped about August.

§§ *Mudga*, Green gram, *Phaseolus mungo*, the Beng. *mug* or *mug-kaláy*.

9 and flax, or other crops, a man void of understanding is born a large-mouthed rat resembling an ichneumon.

“Moreover for improperly touching another’s wife he is  
10 born a horrible wolf. And the foolish sinner who violates his brother’s wife *becomes* a dog, a jackal, a heron, a vulture, a  
11 snake, and a bird of prey,\* by degrees. And the sinner, who has violated his friend’s wife, his guru’s wife, and the king’s  
12 wife, becomes a cock-cuckoo when released from hell. The man of lustful soul is born a hog.

“Let him who hinders sacrifice liberality and marriage become a worm.

13 “And he who gives his daughter away twice is verily born a worm.

“He who obtains food, without giving some to the gods  
14 the pitṛis and bráhmans, is indeed born a crow when released from hell.

“He who scorns his eldest brother, or a brother who is like  
15 a father to him, is indeed born a curlew when dismissed from hell.

“And the súdra for approaching a bráhman-woman is born  
16 a worm; for begetting offspring of her, let him become an insect living within wood. And a c’andála *for the same sin* is born a hog, a small worm, a diver.†

17 “A man ungrateful, base among men, who returns evil for good, when released from hell is born a small worm, an insect, a bird, a scorpion also, and a fish, a crow, a tortoise,  
18 then a pukkasa.

19 “For slaying an unarmed man, a man is born an ass. The murderer of a woman also and a child-slayer are born worms.

“But for stealing victuals a man is born a fly.

20 “There is moreover a difference among victuals, listen thereto. For taking rice-food, he is born a cat, when quit

Másha (see note § above) is a variety of this. (Hooker, vol. II, p. 203; Roxb., p. 556).

\* Kan-ka. This must mean a bird of prey. Vaka which is a synonym has just been mentioned.

† Madgu; see note \* p. 31.

21 from hell ; but for taking rice-food mixed with sesamum and  
oil-cake *he is born* a rat ; and for taking clarified butter  
22 an ichneumon ; *for taking* goat's flesh, a crow, a diver.\* He  
who carries away fish-meat *becomes* a crow ; he who carries  
away venison a hawk ; but when salt is taken away, *the offen-*  
*der becomes* a water-crow :† when curdled milk *is taken away*,  
23 a worm ; and for stealing milk he is born a hen-heron ;‡  
24 but he who steals oil is born a cockroach ; for taking honey  
a man is born a gad-fly ; for taking a cake, an ant ;§ but for  
25 stealing pulse|| a small house-lizard ;

“ For stealing distilled spirits let the sinner become a  
francolin partridge ;¶ and for taking iron be born a crow.  
26 When brass is carried off, *he is born* a green pigeon ;\*\*  
when a silver vessel *is carried off*, a pigeon ; but for taking  
27 a golden vessel, he is born a worm ; and for stealing  
a garment of woven silk he becomes a partridge;†† and  
when a silk garment is taken away he is born a silk-

\* See note † p. 85.

† Vic'í-káka. I do not find this in Prof. Monier-Williams' Dictionary. I would suggest that it is a Tern, most probably the Black-bellied Tern, *Sterna javanica*, which has a black and grey plumage and is found in every river in India. The Terns are commonly called *gangá-chil* or *gáng-chil*, i. e., the river-kite. (Jerdon, vol. II, pp. 834 and 840.)

‡ Baláká. Baláká is the Pond Heron or Paddy-bird, *Ardeola leucoptera*, the Beng. *konch-bak*. (Jerdon, vol. II, p. 751.)

§ Pipílita ; the modern pipirá or piprá denotes the larger species of ants.

|| Nishpáva ; this appears to be a general name for most kinds of pulse.

¶ Tittiri, the Francolin or Meadow partridge, of which there are two species in India, (1) the Black partridge, *Francolinus vulgaris* (the modern *títir* or *kala-titar*) which is found throughout the whole of Northern India, and (2) the Painted partridge, *F. pictus* (also called *kala-titar*) which is found in Central and part of Southern India. (Jerdon, vol. II, pp. 558 and 561). The former is probably the bird meant here.

\*\* Háríta ; see note \*\* p. 28.

†† Krakara. Prof. Monier-Williams says this is *Perdix sylvatica*, but I do not find any such name in Jerdon. It is probably either the Grey partridge, *Ortygornis ponticeriana*, which is common throughout the greater part of India, or the Kyah partridge, *O. gularis*, which is found throughout Behar and Bengal. (Jerdon, vol. II, pp. 569, and 572.)

28 worm ; when very fine cloth, an instrument of horn\* and  
fine cloth are carried off, the sinner is born a parrot ; and so too  
for taking a garment of goat's-hair or sheep's wool, and a linen  
29 one ; when a cotton thing is taken away he is born a curlew ;  
and the stealer of a barken thing *is born* a pond-heron ; for  
30 taking paint and potherbs *he is born* a peacock. The man who  
carries off a red garment becomes a *jíva-jíva* pheasant ;† for  
taking splendid perfumes let him become a musk-rat ; and *for*  
31 *taking* clothes a hare ; for theft of fruit a man *becomes* a eu-  
nuch ; *for theft* of wood, a wood-insect ;‡ and a flower-stealer  
32 *becomes* a poor man ; a carriage-stealer lame ; and one who  
takes vegetables *becomes* a green pigeon ;§ and one who takes  
water a pied-crested cuckoo.|| One who takes away land,  
after going to Raurava and the other very terrible hells,  
33 becomes grass, a bush, a creeper, a climbing shrub, a reed  
and a tree by degrees ; and the man afterwards, when his sins  
34 have been diminished to insignificance, becomes a worm, an in-  
sect, and a grasshopper, a bird, an aquatic animal, a deer ; and  
having attained the condition of kine, *and* despicable *castes*  
35 such as c'aṇḍála and pukkaśa, *he becomes* lame and blind, deaf,  
leprous, and afflicted with pulmonary consumption ; he is seized  
with diseases affecting the mouth and the eyes and the  
36 anus ; and he becomes epileptic ; he attains also the condi-  
tion of a súdra. This truly is known to be the course of  
stealers of cattle and gold.

37 “ And fierce men who steal learning, who fall short in their  
rewards to the guru ; the man who makes another's wife his  
38 own wife,—he becomes a eunuch, the foolish man, when  
escaped from the torments of *hell*.

“ He who makes the Homa oblation in unkindled fire is  
39 born afflicted with the pains of indigestion, and dyspeptic.

“ Abuse of others, the returning evil for good, hurting

\* Sárngika. I do not find this word in the dictionary.

† Jíva-jíva or jíva-jívaka. See note †† p. 28.

‡ Ghuṇa-kiṭaka : or, an armadillo.

§ Háríta : see note \*\* p. 28.

|| C'átaka : see note † p. 29.

40 the vitals of others, coarseness, and cruelty, paying court to  
 41 other men's wives, perfidy in taking other people's property,  
 42 and contempt of the gods, dishonesty, fraud towards men,  
 and avarice, manslaughter, and the continued performance  
 also of whatever things are forbidden;—one should know  
 these to be the after-characteristics of those who are released  
 from hell.

“Compassion towards *all* creatures, concord, aid to other  
 43 people, truth, speech directed towards the welfare of *all*  
 creatures, inculcation of the authority of the Veda, veneration  
 of gurus devarshis Siddhas and rishis, association with the  
 44 good, hospitality, study, friendship,—let the wise man under-  
 stand these and whatever other things constitute the deeds  
 45 of truth and righteousness, to be the marks of sinless men  
 who have quitted Svarga.

46 “This I have declared explicitly to thee, O king! con-  
 cerning men, holy and wicked, who eat the fruits of their  
 own actions. Come then, we go elsewhere. Thou hast now  
 seen everything, for thou hast seen hell. Come then, let  
 us go elsewhere.”

The son spoke.

47 Thereupon the king prepared to follow him; and then a  
 cry went up from all the men that abode in torment, ‘Be  
 48 gracious, O king! stay but a moment, for the air that clings  
 49 to thy body gladdens our mind, and entirely dispels the  
 burning and the sufferings and pains from *our* bodies, O  
 tiger-like man! Be gracious, O king!’

50 On hearing this their entreaty, the king asked that servant  
 51 of Yama—“How do I afford gladness to these men? Have  
 I done such a mighty deed of merit in the world of mortals,  
 wherefrom *falls* this gladdening shower? Declare *me* that.”

Yama's officer spoke.

52 “Inasmuch as thy body was nourished with the food that  
 remained, after the pitris the gods guests and servants *were*  
 53 *satisfied*, and since thy mind was attached to them, hence  
 the air that clings to thy body brings gladness; the torment, O

- 54 king! does not hurt the evil-doers. Whereas thou didst offer  
the horse-sacrifice and other sacrifices according to precept,  
hence from seeing thee Yama's engines weapons fires and  
55 crows, *which* cause intense suffering, such as crushing cutting  
burning and so forth, grow mild, O king! when counteracted  
by thy majesty."

The king spoke.

- 56 "Neither in Svarga nor in Brahma-loka do men experience  
such joy, methinks, as arises from conferring bliss on suffering  
57 creatures. If, while I am present, torment does not hurt  
these men, here then, fair Sir, I will remain firm as a moun-  
tain."

Yama's officer spoke.

- 58 "Come, O king; we proceed. Enjoy the delights won by  
thine own merit, casting aside here the torments of evil-  
doers."

The king spoke.

- 59 "For that reason\* I will not go as long as these are in sore  
suffering. From my near-presence the denizens of hell grow  
60 happy. Fie on the sickly protection-begging† life of that man,  
who shews no favour to one distressed, even though he be a  
61 resolute foe! Sacrifices, gifts, austerities do not work for the  
welfare of him, who has no thought for the succour of the  
62 distressed. Whoever bears a cruel mind towards children,  
the sick and such like, and towards the aged also, I do not  
63 hold him human; he is truly a Rákshasa. But if these men  
have pain originating in hell, whether produced by the heat  
from fire, or produced by overpowering smells, and *if they*  
64 *have* the intense pain arising from hunger and thirst that  
causes faintness, yet the grant of deliverance to them excels,  
65 I consider, the joy of Svarga. If many sufferers shall obtain  
happiness, while I undergo pain, should I not in truth  
embrace it? Go thou not therefore long."

\* For *tasmát* read *asmát*, (from hence) ?

† For *śaraṇārtham* read *śaraṇārthanam* (from *arthana*), since *jīvanam* is  
neuter ?



Yama's officer spoke.

- 66 "Here have both Dharma and Indra arrived to lead thee away. Thou must certainly depart from us: go therefore, O king!"

Dharma spoke.

- 67 "Fittingly worshipped by thee, I lead thee to Svarga; mount this heavenly chariot and linger not; let us go."

The king spoke.

- 68 "Men in thousands, O Dharma! suffer pain here in hell; and being in affliction they cry to me to save them; hence I depart not."

Indra spoke.

- 69 "These evil-doers have come to hell in consequence of *their* own deeds; thou also, O king, must go to Svarga in consequence of thy meritorious deed."

The king spoke.

- 70 "If thou dost know, thou, O Dharma, or thou, O Indra, S'ac'i's lord, how great indeed is my authority, then deign\* to speak aright."

Dharma spoke.

- 71 "Just as drops of water in the sea, or as stars in the sky,  
72 or as showers of rain, as the sands in the Ganges—just as these drops of water and other things are innumerable, O Mahá-rájá! even so thy merit is in truth beyond reckoning.  
73 In thy evincing now this compassion here in the hells, the reckoning of that *merit* of thine has verily amounted to a hundred thousand. Then go, O king! enjoy then the abode  
74 of the immortals; let these also consume away in hell the sin arising from their own actions!"

The king spoke.

- 75 "How shall men attain their desire in things connected with me, if in my presence these *people* gain no prosperity.  
76 Hence, whatever good deeds I possess, O lord of the thirty *gods*! by means thereof let the sinners who are undergoing torment be delivered from hell!"

\* For *arhathaḥ* read *arhatha*?

Indra spoke.

- 77 "Thus hast thou, O king! gained a more exalted station :  
see too these sinners delivered from hell!"

The son spoke.

- 78 Then fell there a shower of flowers upon that king, and  
Hari making him mount the heavenly chariot led him to the  
79 heaven-world. Both I and the others, who *were* there, were  
released from the torments; thereafter we entered the other  
earthly existences, as determined by the results of our own  
actions.  
80 Thus these hells have been reckoned up, O bráhmaṇ! And  
for what particular sin to what particular kind of creature a  
81 man descends, it has all been recounted to thee in detail,  
as I saw it of yore, having gained the accurate knowledge that  
springs from previous experience. What else do I tell thee  
next, noble sir?

## CANTO XVI.

### *Anasúyā's gain of a boon.*

*The father asks Jaḍa for instruction on yoga or religious devotion—Jaḍa begins a long exposition, which starts with a story of Anasúyā—A certain brahman was cursed by Māṇḍavya at night that he should die at sunrise, and his devoted wife restrained the sun from rising—All activity ceased, and the gods in alarm besought Atri's wife Anasúyā—At her exhortation the wife relents, the sun rises, and the bráhmaṇ dies, but is restored to life by Anasúyā—Anasúyā obtains from the gods the boon that Brahmá, Viṣṇu and Śiva should be born her sons, and that she should attain yoga.*

The father spoke.

- 1 Thou hast declared to me, O son, the established nature of  
mundane existence which should be shunned exceedingly, a  
nature which is immutable like the rope and bucket at a well.  
2 I have thus then learnt it in its entirety such as it is. Say,  
what must I do in this thus-ordained *mundane existence*?

## The son spoke.

- 3 If, O father, thou dost believe my word implicitly, then  
 4 abandoning thy condition as a house-holder become a dis-  
 tinguished hermit. Following that *vocation* according to  
 precept, forsaking thy fire and possessions, directing thy soul  
 towards the Supreme Soul, indifferent in regard to the various  
 5 opposites,\* relinquishing thy property, become a mendicant,  
 eating only every other meal, subdued in soul, unwearied,  
 grown intent on religious devotion,† withdrawn from contact  
 6 with external things. Thereafter thou shalt attain to that  
 religious devotion,—which is the cure for connexion with  
 pain, the cause of final emancipation from existence, incom-  
 parable, unutterable, devoid of *worldly* attachments; through  
 connexion with that *devotion* thou wilt never again have union  
 with living beings.

## The father spoke.

- 7 My son, tell me next of *yoga*, or religious devotion, the  
 cause of final emancipation from existence; by which I may  
 escape such suffering as this, when *I am* again born among  
 8 living beings. Since I am intent on attachments, and my soul  
 does not by reason of the bonds of mundane existence attain  
 to religious devotion, being itself even devoid of religious  
 9 devotion,‡ speak now of that religious devotion. Sprin-  
 kle with the water of thy words, which are cool with the  
 water of the knowledge of *Brahma*, me whose body and  
 mind are disordered with pain through the heat of the sun of  
 10 mundane existence. Re-vivify with the draught of the nectar  
 of thy words me, *who am* bitten by the black serpent of igno-  
 11 rance, who am in anguish from its venom, *and* dead. Hasting  
 with the keys of the knowledge of approved goodness, liberate  
 me, *who am* galled by the chains of selfishness in the matter  
 of son, wife, home and land.

\* Pleasure and pain, &c.

† Yoga.

‡ Or "devoid of means;" there seems to be a pun on the word *yoga*.

The son spoke.

- 12 Listen, dear father! how of yore the wise Dattátreya, when  
duly questioned. expounded *the system of* religious devotion  
at length to Alarka.\*

The father spoke.

- 13 Whose son was Dattátreya? Again, how did he discourse  
about religious meditation? And who was the distinguished  
Alarka, who enquired concerning religious meditation?

The son spoke.

- 14 There was a certain Kauśika bráhmaṇ in the town Prati-  
shthána; he by reason of sins committed in other births was  
15 diseased with leprosy. His wife used to honour him her hus-  
band, thus diseased, as a god, by anointing his feet, knead-  
16 ing his limbs, bathing, clothing, and feeding him, and by  
cleansing the flow of mucus, blood etcetera, and with atten-  
17 dance in private, and with affectionate conversation. Though  
always exceedingly venerated by that modest lady, he being  
harsh continually menaced her by reason of his excessively  
18 fiery temper. Nevertheless his wife, bowing *before him*, used  
to esteem him a divinity;† nevertheless she used to esteem  
him, who was extremely loathful, as superior to all.

- 19 Being also of a constantly roaming disposition, the bráhmaṇ  
ordered his wife—"Do thou bring me to her dwelling. Pro-  
20 cure for me that courtesan whom I saw living in her house  
in the high-way, O religious one; she indeed dwells in my  
21 heart. I saw the maiden at sunrise, and here is night  
come upon us. She does not depart from my heart, ever  
22 since I saw her. If she, lovely in every limb, with large  
hips and swelling breasts and slender body, does not embrace  
23 me, then thou wilt indeed behold me die. Beautiful is love  
among mankind; and she is courted by many; and I am  
unable to go; it appears perplexing to me."

- 24 Then having heard that speech of her husband who was  
sick with love, she his consort, sprung of a high family, very

\* For *Anarkúya* read *Alarkáya*, see Canto XXXVI.

† For *lavatam* read *laivatam*.

25 virtuous, faithful to her husband, gathered a compact retinue,  
and took abundance of money, and bearing her husband on  
26 her shoulder, moved on, slow in her gait, along the high  
road, in the cloud-covered night, while the sky was revealed  
by the fitful lightning; for the bráhmaṇ lady was desirous  
of doing her husband pleasure.

27 And on the road, the bráhmaṇ, while borne on his wife's  
shoulder, through fear of thieves in the darkness pushed  
28 away Māṇḍavya, who was no thief and who was afflicted with  
grievous pain, being impaled on a stake. Enraged at the  
29 brush with a foot, Māṇḍavya addressed him—"He, who  
has with his foot pushed me away who am thus exceedingly  
afflicted, he sinful in soul, base among men, has gotten a  
30 miserable condition. At sunrise, helpless, he shall be bereft  
of life assuredly: at the sight of the sun indeed he shall  
31 perish." Thereupon his wife hearing that most cruel curse,  
exclaimed distressed—"The sun verily shall not arise!"

32 Then the sun failed to rise, and there was continual night  
for many lengths of day. Thereupon the gods grew afraid,  
33 *fearing* "How indeed should not all this *universe* pass into  
dissolution, when the Vedas are not uttered, and when it is  
deprived of oblations with fire and of the Svadhá and Sváhá?  
34 Without the ordinance of day and night, there is an end of  
months and seasons: and again from the cessation of these  
south and north are not known in the sun's half yearly course.  
35 And without knowledge of the half yearly course where would  
be time, *such as* the year? Without the year no other know-  
36 ledge of time exists. By reason of the utterance of that  
devoted wife, the sun rises not: without the sun's rising,  
bathing giving of gifts and the other actions *can* not indeed  
37 *exist*; nor indeed does the fire spread, and sacrifices are seen  
to cease; nor indeed do we get satisfaction without the homa  
38 sacrifice. Mortals satisfy us with the appropriate shares of  
the sacrifices: we favour mortals with rain for the perfect-  
39 ing of their grain and other *crops*. When plants have  
ripened, mortals sacrifice to us with sacrifices; worshipped in  
40 their sacrifices &c., we bestow on them their desires. For

we pour rain downwards, and mortals make their rain ascend; for we rain with showers of water, men with showers  
 41 of clarified butter. And evil-minded men, who do not give us the periodical sacrifices,\* *being* greedy eat themselves our  
 42 share of the sacrifice. We defile the water, the sun, fire and the winds, and the earth for the destruction of those mis-  
 43 chievous sinners. Through partaking of bad water &c., very dire portents work towards the death of those doers of evil  
 44 deeds. But to those high-souled men, who after delighting us consume the remainder themselves, let us allot the blissful  
 45 worlds. Therefore all this *universe* of a truth does not exist, unless these things increase and endure. How indeed may the days be liberated?"—*so* conversed the gods with one another.

46 Having heard the speech of these assembled gods who were fearful of the destruction of the sacrifices, the god Brahmá  
 47 spoke, "Majesty is subdued by majesty indeed, and austerities also by austerities, O ye immortals! Hearken therefore  
 48 to my advice. Through the might of the faithful wife the sun does not rise, and from his not rising loss befalls mortals  
 49 and you. Hence do ye, through desire that the sun should rise, propitiate Atri's faithful wife Anasúyá who is rich in austerities."

The son spoke.

50 She, propitiated by them when they resorted to *her*, said "Let your wish be asked for." The gods petitioned for day, saying "Let it be as before!"

Anasúyá spoke.

51 "The might of a faithful wife may not be lost in any wise. Hence while honouring that good *lady*, I will liberate the day,  
 52 O ye gods! that day and night may again exist, and that that good *lady's* own husband shall not perish."

The son spoke.

53 Thus having addressed the gods, she the beautiful went to

\* Nitya-naimittiki; see Canto XXX.

her temple, and being asked by that lady regarding the welfare and righteousness of her husband, spoke.

Anasúyá spoke.

54     “Perchance thou rejoicest, O blessed *lady*, at the sight of  
thy husband’s countenance! Perchance too thou esteemest thy  
55 husband far above all the gods! Through obedience indeed  
to my husband I have gained a great reward; through the  
obtainment of the results of every wish obstacles have been  
56 removed. Five debts a man must ever discharge, O virtuous  
*lady*. Thus, he must amass wealth according to the duties  
57 of his own caste: and he must next apply the wealth gained  
to a fitting object according to the precepts: he should always  
live full of compassion, observing truth, candour, austerities  
58 and liberality: and he must daily perform the ceremonies  
prescribed by the S’ástras and free from anger and enmity,  
59 with faith preceding, according to his ability. A man with  
great pain gradually obtains the worlds specially allotted to  
his own caste, such as that of the Prajá-patis and other worlds,  
60 O virtuous *lady*. So women by obedience to their husbands  
obtain half of the entire merit painfully earned by their  
61 husbands. There is no separate sacrifice for women, nor  
śráldha, nor fasting: for by obedience to their husbands  
62 indeed they reach these desired worlds. Therefore, O vir-  
tuous and exalted *lady*, let thy mind ever be turned towards  
obedience to thy husband, since a husband is a *wife’s* supreme  
63 bliss. Whatever worship the husband may offer by right  
ceremonies to the gods, and whatever to the pitris and guests,  
even one half of that does the wife, whose mind is centred on  
him alone, enjoy by very obedience to her husband.”

The son spoke.

64     Having heard that her speech, the lady saluted Atri’s  
wife Anasúyá respectfully in return, and replied thus to her—  
65     “Happy am I, favoured am I, and regarded by the gods am  
I, since thou, O *lady* blessed by nature, again increasest my  
66 faith. I know this—none among women has a condition  
equal with her husband, and love for him *tends* to her benefit

- 67 in this world and the next; through her husband's favour  
 both here and after death, O illustrious *lady*, a woman gains  
 68 happiness; for a husband is a woman's deity. Do thou,  
 being such a *woman*, O exalted *lady*, tell me who have reached  
 thy temple, what I, a noble\* *woman*, must do, or what my  
 noble *husband* must do, O beauteous one!"

Anasúyá spoke.

- 69 "Indra and these gods in distress have approached me;  
 they are searching for the day and night, the virtuous acts  
*prescribed* for which have been discarded in consequence of  
 70 thy speech. They beg for the natural uninterrupted con-  
 tinuance of day and night: I am come for that object, and  
 71 do thou listen to this my speech. Through the absence of  
 day *there is* the absence of all sacrificial ceremonies; through  
 the absence of these the gods do not get their nourishment,  
 72 O ascetic *lady*. Through the destruction of day also all  
 work is cut short; from the destruction thereof the world  
 73 will perish through drought. Therefore if thou desirest to  
 deliver this world from calamity, be gracious, O virtuous  
*lady*, to the worlds; let the sun run his course as before."

The bráhmaṇ lady spoke.

- 74 "Māṇḍavya exceedingly furious, O illustrious lady, has  
 cursed my lord, saying 'at sunrise thou shalt meet thy  
 doom!'"

Anasúyá spoke.

- 75 "If, however, it pleases thee, O lady, then at thy word I  
 will make thee even a new husband, in form the same as before.  
 76 For I must in every way propitiate the majesty of faithful  
 wives, O high-born *lady*—thus I do thee honour."

The son spoke.

- 77 On her saying 'be it so!' the ascetic *lady* Anasúyá then  
 summoned the sun, raising up the arghya oblation, at mid-  
 78 night on the tenth night. Then the adorable sun, in ap-  
 pearance ruddy as the full-blown lotus flower, with wide  
 79 disc, rose aloft above the mighty mountain. Forthwith indeed

\* For *áryá* read *áryavá*?



her husband was bereft of life and fell on the ground ; and she caught him as he fell.

Anasúyá spoke.

- 80 "Be not dejected, O lady ; behold my power. Thou hast succeeded through thy obedience to thy husband.  
 81 What further need hast thou of austerities ? Since I have nowhere seen another man equal to thy husband, in form, in disposition, in intellect, with sweetness of speech and  
 82 other adornments, in very truth let this bráhmaṇ, freed from sickness, young again, obtain life in company with his  
 83 wife for a hundred autumns. Since I see no other deity the equal of thy husband, in very truth let this bráhmaṇ regain  
 84 his life in sound health. Since thy\* effort is constantly directed to propitiate thy husband by deed mind and word, let this dvija then come to life."

The son spoke.

- 85 Then the bráhmaṇ arose, free from illness, young again, with his own lustre illuminating the dwelling, as it were an  
 86 ever-youthful god. Then there fell a shower of flowers, accompanied with the strains of heavenly instruments and other musical instruments. And the gods were delighted and said to Anasúyá.

The gods spoke.

- 87 "Choose a boon, O blessed lady. Inasmuch as thou hast accomplished a great matter for the gods, therefore the gods will grant thee a boon, O ascetic lady."

Anasúyá spoke.

- 88 "If ye gods headed by Brahmá, being favourable, will grant  
 89 me a boon, and if ye deem me worthy of a boon, then let Brahmá, Vishnu, and Siva become sons to me, and let me in company with my husband attain religious devotion, to the end that I may be delivered from affliction."  
 90 "Be it so," exclaimed Brahmá, Vishnu, Siva and the other gods to her ; and they departed, duly honouring the ascetic lady.

\* For *mama* read *tava* ?

## CANTO XVII.

*The Birth of Dattátreya.*

*The Prajá-pati Atri begot three sons by his wife Anasúyá, namely, Soma, Dattátreya, and Durvásas, who were incarnations of portions of Brahmá, Vishṇu and Śiva respectively—Their offices are described—Dattatreya, assembling young Munis about himself, tested their loyalty, by living immersed in a lake and by revelling in sensual pleasures.*

The son spoke.

- 1 Then after many days' time the adorable Atri, the second
- 2 son of Brahmá, looked upon his wife Anasúyá. Her, bathed
- after menstruation, very lovely in body, seductive and perfect
- in form, free from blame, the love-possessed Muni enjoyed
- mentally.
- 3 But while he contemplated her, a powerful wind through
- and above brought the change that was produced in her.
- 4 The ten regions of the sky seized the white-lustred form of
- Brahmá, as it fell all around, in the form of Soma, charac-
- 5 terized by passion. That mental Soma was begotten in her
- as the son of the prajā-pati Atri, the life and possessor of
- 6 every excellence. Magnanimous Vishṇu being pleased begot
- of her Dattátreya, the bráhmaṇ, in whom goodness predomi-
- 7 nated, by production from his own body. Dattátreya was he
- called; he sucked Anasúyá's breast: he was Vishṇu indeed
- 8 incarnate; he was Atri's second son. He issued from his
- mother's womb seven days afterwards, being enraged on
- seeing that the haughty king of the Haihayas was near and
- 9 was offending Atri, being angry he at once desired to burn
- up the Haihaya. Filled with indignation at the long pains
- and toil of his residence in the womb, a portion of Śiva
- 10 was born as Durvásas, in whom darkness predominated.
- Thus three sons were born of her, being portions of Brahmá,
- Śiva and Vishṇu.
- 11 Brahmá became Soma, Vishṇu was born as Dattátreya,
- Śiva was born as Durvásas, through the boon granted by the
- 12 gods. The prajā-pati Soma, ever causing creepers and medi-

cinal plants and mankind to grow with his cool rays, abides  
 13 in Svarga. Dattátreya protects offspring from destruction  
 by the malignant Daityas : and Vishṇu's portion must also be  
 14 known as the benefactor of the docile. Durvásas, the ador-  
 able birthless god, destroys the scorner ; assuming a formidable  
 15 body, he is haughty in look mind and speech. The adorable  
 prajā-pati, the son of Atri again created the Soma plant.\*  
 Dattátreya also, *being* Vishṇu, enjoyed objects of sense while  
 16 engaged in profound meditation. Durvásas, deeming his  
 father and mother to be the chiefest object of devotion,  
 assuming *the form* known as 'frantic,' roamed about the earth.  
 17 Surrounded by the sons of Munis, the lordly yogi Dattátreya  
 also, desirous of obtaining exemption from *all* attachments,  
 18 long immersed himself in a lake. Nevertheless those youths,  
 resorting to the bank of the lake, did not forsake him, who  
 19 was magnanimous and exceedingly benign. When after a  
 hundred heavenly years were ended, all those youthful Munis,  
 through affection for him, still forsook not the bank of the  
 20 lake, the Muni, taking his noble wife clothed in heavenly  
 raiment, beautiful and plump in form, arose from the water,  
 21 thinking, "If these sons of Munis shall forsake me because  
 of the presence of a woman, then I will remain free from *all*  
 22 attachments." When nevertheless the sons of the Munis *did*  
 not forsake him, he next drank intoxicating liquors in com-  
 23 pany with his wife. Thereupon they did not forsake him,  
 though he was engrossed in drinking spirituous liquor in  
 company with his wife, and though he was rendered impure  
 by addiction to singing, musical instruments and such like,  
 24 and also by intercourse with his wife ; deeming that the high-  
 souled *Muni* when with her was detached from religious rites.  
 The lord of yogis, although drinking spirituous liquor, incurred  
 25 no fault. Dwelling like Mátariśvan within the abodes of  
 c'andálas, drinking strong drink he, skilled in yoga, the lord

\* The text appears to be corrupt. Another reading has been suggested by  
 Babu Hari Mohan Vidyábhushan, the pandit of the Bengal Asiatic Society,  
 from a MS., *utrek pulraś for atriś punaś* ; this is preferable and I have adopt-  
 ed it.

of yogis, attended by his wife, performed austerities, being meditated on by yogis who longed for deliverance from mundane existence.

---

CANTO XVIII.

*Garga's speech.*

*Arjuna the son of Kṛita-vīrya, on succeeding to his kingdom, resolves to rule worthily—His minister Garga advises him to propitiate the Muni Dattātreyā—And narrates how, when the Daityas and Dānavas had conquered the gods, the gods by Vṛikhaspati's counsel propitiated Dattātreyā, who, being an incarnation of Viṣṇu, was enjoying himself with Lakshmi; and how, when the demons penetrated to Dattātreyā's hermitage and seized Lakshmi, they were destroyed by Dattātreyā.*

The son spoke.

- 1 Once upon a time Arjuna, the son of Kṛita-vīrya, when
- 2 Kṛita-vīrya had departed to heaven, being invited by the
- 3 ministers and family priest and by the citizens to be in-
- 4 augurated as king, spoke thus—

- 5 “It is not I will wield regal sway, which surpasses hell, O
- 6 ministers, if I leave that foolishly unaccomplished, for the sake
- 7 of which taxes are levied. Merchants, giving the twelfth part
- 8 of their wares to the king, travel on the road protected from
- robbers by the watchmen. And the herdsmen and husbandmen
- giving the sixth part of the ghee, buttermilk and other *pro-*
- duce*, enjoy the rest. If the merchants gave a larger portion
- than that out of all their wares and other *property*, then
- that *would tend* to the destruction of the sacrifices and pious
- works of the extortionate king who took it. If people who
- follow that and other livelihoods are protected by others,
- hell is surely *the lot* of a king who takes the sixth part as his
- revenue. This has been decreed by men of old as the perma-
- nent income of a king. *When a king* fails to afford protection
- from thieves, that *is the same* as theft; and it would be sin in
- a king. Therefore if, by performing austerities, he has gained

- 9 the coveted position of a yogi, he is the only king who possesses power to protect the earth. Therefore I indeed will be a weapon-bearer in the earth, worthy of honour, endowed with prosperity ; I will not make myself a participator in sin."

The son spoke.

- 10 Understanding that his resolve, standing among the ministers spoke the leading Muni, Garga by name, mighty in intellect, advanced in age.
- 11 " If thus thou desirest to act, rightly to govern the kingdom, then hearken to my speech and act, O royal scion!
- 12 Propitiate, O king, Dattátreya, the illustrious, who made his abode once in a bucket, who protects the three worlds,
- 13 who is busied in religious devotion, who is illustrious, who looks impartially everywhere, who is a portion of Vishnu, the
- 14 upholder of the world, incarnate on earth. By propitiating him the thousand-eyed Indra gained his abode, which had been seized by the evil-minded Daityas, and slew the sons of Diti."

Arjuna spoke.

- 15 " How did the gods propitiate majestic Dattátreya ? And how did Indra regain his godhead, of which he had been deprived by the Daityas ?"

Garga spoke.

- 16 " There was a very fierce contest between the gods and Dánavas. The lord of the Daityas was Jambha, and the leader
- 17 of the gods was Sací's spouse. And while they fought a heavenly year elapsed. Then the gods were worsted, the
- 18 Daityas were victorious. The gods led by Vipra-c'itti were vanquished by the Dánavas : they strove to flee, being dis-
- 19 pirited at the victory of their enemies. Desirous of compassing the slaughter of the army of Daityas, accompanied by the Bálikhilyas\* and Rishis, they approached Vṛihaspati and
- 20 took counsel. Vṛihaspati said, ' Deign to gratify with your faith Dattátreya, Atri's high-souled son, the ascetic, who is
- 21 occupied in improper practices. He the boon-giver will grant

\* Read 'Bala-khilyas' ? These are divine personages of the size of the thumb.

you a boon for the destruction of the Daityas; then, O gods, shall ye and your friends slay the Daityas and Dánavas.'

- 22 "Thus exhorted the gods then went to Dattátreya's hermitage, and they beheld the high-souled Muni, attended by  
 23 Lakshmi, hymned by Gandharvas, and engrossed in quaffing spirituous liquor. Approaching they expressed in words their salutations to him, which were the means of accomplishing  
 24 their objects. And the heaven-dwellers lauded him; they offered him food, viands, garlands and other *presents*; when he stood, they stood near; when he moved, they moved; when  
 25 he reposed on his seat, they worshipped him with heads down-bent. Dattátreya addressed the prostrate gods, 'What desire ye of me, that ye do me this obeisance?'

"The gods spoke.

- 26 'The Dánavas, headed by Jambha, have attacked and seized upon the earth the atmosphere and the third world, O tiger-like Muni, and our shares of the sacrifices entirely. Employ  
 27 thou thy wit to their destruction and our deliverance, O sinless one! Through thy favour do we desire to regain the three worlds which *they now possess*.'

"Dattátreya spoke.

- 28 'I am drinking strong drink, I have remnants of food in my mouth, nor have I subdued my senses. How is it, O gods, ye seek for victory over your enemies even from me?'

"The gods spoke.

- 29 'Thou art sinless, O lord of the world; no stain hast thou, into whose heart, purified by the ablution of learning, has entered the light of knowledge.'

"Dattátreya spoke.

- 30 'True is this, O gods! all learning have I, who am impartial in view: but by reason of association with this woman I  
 31 am now impure after eating. For commerce with women when continually pursued tends to depravity.'

"Thus addressed, the gods then spoke again.

“ The gods spoke.

- 32     ‘This woman, O sinless bráhmaṇ ! is the mother of the world ; she is not depraved, even like the sun’s halo of rays, which touches the dvija and the c’andála alike.’

Garga spoke.

- 33     “ Thus accosted by the gods, Dattátreya then with a smile spoke thus to all the thirty *gods* ;—‘ If this be your opinion, 34 then summon all the Asuras to battle, O most virtuous gods, 35 and bring them here before my view—delay ye not—in order that the glory of their strength may be consumed by the fire of my glance, and that they may all perish from my sight.’

- 36     “ The valiant Daityas, summoned to battle by the gods in compliance with that his advice, advanced with fury against 37 the troops of the gods. The gods being slaughtered by the Daityas were quickly demoralised by fear ; they fled in a 38 body, seeking protection, to Dattátreya’s hermitage. Even there the Daityas penetrated, driving forward the heaven-dwellers, and saw the high-souled mighty Dattátreya ; and 39 seated at his left side his wife, Lakshmi, loved by all the worlds, beauteous, her shape most graceful, her countenance 40 like the moon, her eyes lustrous as the blue water-lily,\* her hips large and breasts full, uttering melodious speech, adorned 41 with every womanly virtue. Seeing her before them, the Daityas, seized with longing, could not bear the intense love 42 with fortitude ; and pined in mind to carry her off. Desisting from the gods, but desirous of seizing the lady, they were shattered in vigour, being bewitched by that sin. Then compact together they spoke—‘ If only this jewel of womankind 43 in the three worlds might be our prize, successful then *should* 44 we all be—this is our engrossing thought. We are resolved therefore, let us all, foes of the gods, raise her up, place her in the palki, and bear her to our abode.’

- 45     “ Thereupon possessed with longing and thus mutually exhorted, afflicted by love, the united Daityas and Dánavas 46 raised up his virtuous wife, mounted her in the palki, and

\* Nilotpala, the blue water-lily, see note ‡ page 29.

placing the palki on their heads set off for their own homes.

- 47 Thereon Dattátreya smiling spoke thus to the gods—‘ Bravo !  
ye prosper ! Here is Lakshmi borne on the heads of the  
Daityas. She has passed beyond the seven stations, she will  
reach another, a new one.’

“ The gods spoke.

- 48 ‘ Say, O lord of the world, in what stations has she her  
abode ; and what result of a man’s does she bestow or destroy ?’

“ Dattátreya spoke.

- 49 ‘ When stationed on the foot of men, Lakshmi bestows a  
habitation ; and when stationed on the thigh, clothing and  
50 manifold wealth ; and when taking her position in the  
pudenda, a wife ; when resting in the bosom, she grants  
offspring ; when stationed in the heart, she fulfils the thoughts  
51 of men. Lakshmi, is the best *fortune* of fortunate men.  
When resting on the neck, she adorns the neck with loved  
relatives and wives, and close contact with those who are  
52 absent. When abiding in the countenance, the sea-born *god-*  
*dess* bestows beauty fashioned according to her word, real  
53 command also, and poetic fire. When mounted on the head,  
she forsakes *the man* and thence resorts to another abode. And  
here, mounted on their head, she will now desert these *Dai-*  
54 *tyas*. Therefore seize your arms and slay these foes of the  
gods ; nor fear them greatly ; I have rendered them impotent ;  
and through touching another’s wife their merit is consumed,  
their might is broken.

Garga spoke.

- 55 “ Thereupon those enemies of the gods, being slain by divers  
weapons and their heads being assailed by Lakshmi, perished—  
56 thus have we heard. And Lakshmi, flying up, reached the  
great Muni Dattátreya, being hymned by all the gods who  
57 were filled with joy at the slaughter of the Daityas. There-  
upon the gods, prostrating themselves before the wise Dattá-  
treya, gained as before the uppermost heaven, being freed from  
58 affliction. Likewise do thou also, O king ! if thou wishest to  
obtain matchless sovereignty according to thy desire, straight-  
way propitiate him.”



## CANTO XIX.

*The Episode of Dattātreyā.*

*King Arjuna, taking Garga's advice, propitiates Dattātreyā, who grants him the boon that he should reign righteously, prosperously and gloriously—Arjuna is then installed in his kingdom, and his reign is described—The blessedness of worshipping Viṣṇu, who is Dattātreyā, expounded—The story of Alarka is then begun.*

The son spoke.

Having heard the Rishi speak thus, king *Arjuna*, Kṛitavīrya's son, proceeded to Dattātreyā's hermitage and worshipped him with faith; by kneading his feet and other services, and by offering honey and other *delicacies*, and by bringing garlands, sandal, and other perfumes, water, fruit &c.; also with preparations of rice, and by removing the Rishi's fragments of food. Pleased *therewith* the Muni addressed the king in the very same way, as he had formerly addressed the gods.

"Ever indeed am I an object of reproach for my enjoyment of spirituous liquor and other *bodily pleasures*, and an object of reproach for this enjoyment in that I have my wife here by my side.\* Deign thou not thus to obstruct me who am unable to benefit *thee*; O conciliate one who is able."

Thus the Muni addressed him; and Arjuna Kārtavīrya, recalling that speech of Garga's, replied then, bowing before him.

Arjuna spoke.

"Why dost thou beguile me, my lord, resorting to thy illusory devices. Sinless thou art, and this brāhman lady is the path of all existence."

Thus invoked, the benign brāhman answered him, the illustrious Kārtavīrya, the subduer of the earth.

"Choose thou a boon; since thou hast declared my secret, I have felt thereby intense gratification in thee to-day, O king. And the men who shall worship me with perfumes, garlands and such like, with offerings also of meat and strong

\* The text appears obscure.

- drink, and with sweetmeats accompanied with clarified butter,  
 11 —and *who shall worship* me and Lakshmi with songs also and  
 the worship of bráhmans, and with lute, flute, conchs and other  
 12 gladsome musical instruments ;—to them I will give supreme  
 gratification, children, wives, wealth and other *blessings*, and I  
 13 will ward off the violent blows of scorners. Do thou then  
 choose the choice boon that thy mind desires : my face is very  
 gracious to thee through thy declaration of my secret name.”

Kártavírya spoke.

- 14 “ If my lord thou art gracious, then grant me supreme pros-  
 perity, whereby I may protect my people and may not incur  
 15 iniquity. I desire to have knowledge in the customs of others,  
 irresistibility in fight, and the dexterity of a thousand arms.  
 16 May my paths be unimpeded on hill, in air, in water, and on  
 land, and in all the hells ! And may my death come from a  
 17 superior man ! And let me have moreover a guide to the  
 right path when I stray from the path : and may my guests\*  
 be worthy of praise in the imperishable bestowal of wealth !  
 18 And let there be freedom from impoverishment in my country  
 with repeated recollection of me ! May my faith in thee be  
 ever in truth unwavering !”

Dattátreya spoke.

- 19 “ Thou shalt receive all those boons in the matters that thou  
 hast specified ; and through my favour thou shalt become a  
 universal monarch.”

Jaḍa spoke.

- 20 Thereon Arjuna prostrated himself before Dattátreya. And  
 having convened his *subjects*, he duly received his inaugura-  
 21 tion. Then he the Haihaya, established in his kingdom,  
 having received supreme prosperity from Dattátreya, owning  
 22 exceeding power, made proclamation ;—‘ Henceforth whoever  
 besides me shall lay hold of a weapon, I shall put him to death  
 23 as a robber or as one bent on injuring others.’ After this  
 order had been issued, there was no man that bore arms in

\* For *títhayaḥ* read *tithayaḥ*, days ?

24 that country, except that valiant tiger-warrior. He it was  
 who was the guardian of the villages, and he the guar-  
 dian of the cattle. He it was who was the guardian of the  
 25 fields and the protector of the dvijas. He also was the  
 guardian of ascetics, and the guardian of caravans; *the guar-*  
*dian* of those who were sinking amid the fears of robbers,  
 26 rogues, fire, arms and so forth, *as* in the sea, and of those who  
 were involved in other calamities; he was the destroyer of  
 hostile warriors. He it was who was ever remembered as  
 27 the upholder of mankind. And there was exemption from im-  
 poverishment, while he ruled as king. He offered many  
 28 sacrifices, complete with gifts and fees. He also practised  
 austerities. He performed exploits in battles.

Having seen his prosperity and exceeding honour, the Muni  
 Angiras spoke.

29 “Assuredly kings will not follow in Kártavírya’s steps,  
*either* with sacrifices, alms-giving, or austerities, or with high  
 exploits in battle.”

30 On the very day when the king received prosperity from  
 31 Dattátreya, he performed sacrifice to Dattátreya. And there  
 all his subjects having seen the king’s supreme prosperity  
 that day offered up sacrifices with devout attention.

32 Such is this magnanimity of the wise Dattátreya, *who*  
*is* Vishṇu, the guru of all things movable and immov-  
 33 able, endless, high-souled. In the Puráṇas are narrated the  
 manifestations of the bearer of the bow Sárnga, who is endless,  
 34 inscrutable, the bearer of the conch discus and club. What-  
 ever man ponders on his highest form, happy is he, and he  
 35 may soon pass over mundane existence. ‘Ho! I am ever in  
 truth easy of reach by faith even to Vaishṇavas,’—how is it  
 that a man should not have recourse to him, whose are these  
 36 very words? For the destruction of unrighteousness, and for  
 the practice of righteousness, the god, who is without beginning  
 and without end, preserves the stability of *nature*.

37 Moreover I tell thee of Alarka\* also, the famous birth.

\* Read *Alarkam* for *Anarkam*.

And thus has been related the union between the high-souled Rájārshi Alarka, who was faithful to his father, and Dattá-treya.

## CANTO XX.

*The Story of Kuvalayásva.*

*King S'atru-jit's son Ríta-dhvaja receives into intimate friendship two Nága princes in the guise of bráhmans—They live with him by day, and spend the nights in Rasátala —They extol him to their father, and relate his story as follows—Ríta-dhvaja sets out to succour the bráhman Gdlava against a Daitya Pátála-ketu, with the aid of a wondrous horse named Kuvalaya.*

Jaḍa spoke.

- 1     There was formerly a valorous king named Satru-jit, in
- 2     whose sacrifices Indra was pleased by receiving the soma
- 3     juice. His son was a valiant destroyer of his foes ; the peer
- 4     of Vṛihaspati, Indra and the Aśvins in intellect, prowess and
- 5     beauty. The king's son was continually surrounded by young
- 6     princes, who were his equals in age, intellect, virtue, prowess
- 7     and behaviour. He was sometimes resolved on investigating
- 8     the whole Sāstra literature ; at other times engrossed\* with
- 9     poetry, dialogue, singing and the drama. Moreover *he enjoyed*
- 10    *himself* both with gambling pastimes, and in the discipline of
- 11    all kinds of weapons : he was intent on the study of elephants,
- 12    horses, and chariots suitable for war.† The king's son en-
- 13    joyed himself in company with the young princes, being
- 14    absorbed in pleasure by day and night alike. But while they
- 15    sporting there, numbers of young bráhmans, young princes
- 16    and young vaiśyas of the same age came to enjoy themselves
- 17    affectionately.
- 18    Now after a time two young Nágas, the sons of Aśvatara,‡

\* For -sambhavañ read -sambhavañ ?

† The text appears corrupt ; for *yogyáni yuddha-* read *yuddha-niyogya-* ?

‡ A Nága prince.

- 9 visited the surface of the earth from the Nága-world. Dis-  
 guised in form as bráhmans, youthful, handsome, those two,  
 in company with the young princes and the other dvijas,  
 10 remained there linked in friendship, *occupied* with various  
 amusements. And all those young princes and the young  
 11 bráhmans and váisýas, and those two young Nága princes  
 engaged in bathing, kneading the limbs &c., adorned them-  
 selves with garments and perfumes, and occupied themselves  
 12 with the business of kings.\* As day after day went by, the  
 two young Nágas enjoyed themselves, being bound by affection  
 13 for the king's son. And the king's son received the highest  
 pleasure from those two, by various amusements, and by jests,  
 14 conversation, &c. Apart from those two he neither ate, nor  
 bathed, nor drank sweet drinks; he did not disport himself,  
 nor take up his weapons to improve his accomplishments.  
 15 And those two, spending the night in Rasátala,† mainly oc-  
 cupied in sighing in the absence of that high-souled *prince*,  
 visited him day after day.
- 16 “With whom do ye both, my sons, find supreme affection  
 in the mortal-world?” thus inquired their father of both  
 17 those young Nágas. “Whilst I have seen you both many days  
 here in Pátála, I *ever* behold you both with kindly counte-  
 nances by day and night.”

Jaḍa spoke.

- 18 Thus questioned by their father himself, the two illustri-  
 ous sons of the Nága king falling prostrate, with hands reve-  
 rently joined, replied.

The sons spoke.

- 19 “*It is* the son of Satru-jit, dear father, famed by name as  
 Rita-dhvaja, shapely, upright in conduct, a hero, proud, kind  
 20 of speech, no sneaking tale-bearer,‡ eloquent, learned,  
 friendly, a mine of excellencies, an honourer of the honour-  
 21 worthy, intelligent, modest, adorned with courtesy. Our mind,

\* The text seems incorrect. For *-samyuktámi* read *-samyuktáí*?

† The lower world.

‡ Fer *anáprishṭa-katho* read *anáprishṭha-katho*.

being ravished by attendance on him, affection for him and pleasure with him, finds no delight in the Nága-world or the  
 22 air-world.\* By separation from him chill Pátála *does not*  
*tend* to warm us, dear father ; through union with him the sun  
 by day *tends* to gladden us."

The father spoke.

23 " He is the happy son of a holy *father*, whose excellencies  
 such accomplished persons as ye are thus celebrate even in his  
 24 absence. There are evil-dispositioned men learned in the  
 Śástras ; there are good-dispositioned men who are fools :  
 but I esteem him, my sons, the happier who equally possesses  
 25 knowledge of Śástras and a good disposition. A father has  
 indeed a son in that *son*, whose friends always declare his  
 friendly qualities, and whose enemies his valour, among the  
 26 good. Perchance ye have preferred a request to him as a  
 benefactor : he has done something to satisfy your mind, my  
 27 children. Happy is he ! The life of each high-born one has  
 been *well* lived, when petitioners to him turn not away, and the  
 28 petition of his friends is not powerless. In my house what-  
 ever gold and other *metals*, jewels, animals for riding, and seats  
 there are, and whatever else imparts delight ; that should be  
 29 given him without hesitation. Fie on the life of that man,  
 who, while failing to make a return to beneficent friends,  
 30 believes that he *really* lives ! The wise man who, cloud-like,  
 showers benefits on his circle of friends and injury on his  
 foes,—*men* wish him prosperity."

The sons spoke.

31 " What might any one do for that successful man, whose  
 petitioners are all always honoured in his house with the *grant*  
 32 of all their desires. The jewels that are in his house, whence  
 can we have them in Pátála ? And whence his animals for  
 33 riding, his seats, and carriages, ornaments and clothing ? The  
 knowledge that he has, is found nowhere else. Even for the  
 34 wise he is, dear father, the ablest remover of all doubts. One  
 thing he has done, and that in our opinion was impossible of

\* For *bhuvo loka* read *bhuvarlóke* ?

accomplishment, except by Brahmá, Vishnu,\* S'iva, and the other lords."†

The father spoke.

- 35 "Nevertheless I wish to hear what was his highest deed,  
whether it be impossible or possible of accomplishment. Is  
36 anything impossible to the wise? Men who have determination attain to the position of the gods, lordship over the  
immortals, and the position of being worshipped by them, or  
37 any other coveted arduous thing. There is nothing unknown, or inaccessible, or unobtainable, either in heaven or here,  
to strenuous men who have brought their mind, organs  
38 and soul under control. An ant by walking travels thousands of yojanas; even Garuḍa, if he does not move, does not move  
39 a single foot. Where is the surface of the earth, and where is the site of the polar star? Yet Dhruva the son of king  
40 Uttána-páda, a denizen of the earth, reached it. Relate *then* how the good young prince did his feat, that ye may discharge  
your indebtedness, my sons!"

The sons spoke.

- 41 "The high-souled *prince* has told us this feat he did before, dear father; that he spent his youth, being noted for his good conduct.
- 42 "But formerly, dear father, a certain bráhmaṇ, the wise Gálava, bringing a magnificent steed, approached Śatru-jit;  
43 and replied to the king—"A certain vile Daityà, an evil-doer, O king, springing up, is destroying my hermitage without  
44 cause day and night, assuming the several forms of a lion, an elephant, and forest-roving *beasts*, and of other small-bodied  
45 animals. When I am absorbed in profound meditation and deep contemplation, and intent on vows of silence, he raises  
46 obstacles so that my mind wavers. Thou art able instantly to burn him with the fire of thy anger, but not we. Do I desire that austerities arduously acquired should be squan-

\* Govinda.

† The text seems incorrect. For *tasyasti kartavyam* read *tasya kṛtām káryam*? And for *śúvarád* read *śúvarán*?

47 dered, O king ? But one day O king, having perceived the  
demon, I heaved a sigh, being distressed by him, and exced-  
48 ingly depressed in mind. Thereupon this horse fell forth-  
with from the sky itself, and a voice from no corporeal being  
49 exclaimed—hearken to it, O lord of men !—“ Unwearied the  
noble steed can traverse the whole circle of the earth with  
50 the sun. He has been produced for thee. Nor is his  
course stayed in Pátála, in the sky or in water ; nor does he  
succumb when moving in every direction, or even among the  
51 mountains. Since he will traverse the whole circle of the  
earth unwearied, he will become famed in the world under the  
52 name Kuvalaya. And the base sinful Dánava, who day and  
night torments thee, him shall slay, O bráhmaṇ, the king named  
53 Śatru-jit mounted on this horse ; and his son Rita-dhvaja get-  
ting this jewel of a steed shall attain to fame by means of him.”  
54 I now have met with thee : do thou, O king, ward off that  
obstructor of *my* austerities, for a king is interested *therein*.  
55 Therefore I have told thee, O king, of this gem of a horse : do  
thou command thy son, so that righteousness may not perish.’  
56 “ At his word the king, righteous in soul, mounting his son  
Rita-dhvaja, who had performed a solemn ceremony, on that  
57 gem of a horse, sent him away then with Gálava. And the  
Muni, taking him, departed to his own hermitage-home.”

---

CANTO XXI.

*Kuvalayásva's marriage with Maddásá.*

*Rita-dhvaja, called also Kuvalayásva, wounds and pursues the Daitya Pátála-ketu.—In the pursuit he falls through a chasm into Pátála and reaches the city Purandara-pura—There he meets Maddásá, (daughter of the Gandharva king Visvávasu,) whom Pátála-ketu had carried off—He marries her with the help of her companion Kuṇḍalá, who then admonishes them on the blessings of marriage—He kills the Daityas who oppose him, and brings her home to his father, who praises and blesses him.*

The father spoke.

1 “ Relate my sons what the king's son did after he departed  
in company with Gálava ; your story is a surprising one.”



The sons spoke.

- 2     “The king’s son, residing in Gálava’s pleasant hermitage,  
subdued every obstacle to the reciters of the Veda.
- 3     “The base Dánava, infected with frenzy and arrogance, did  
not know the prince Kuvalayásva who was dwelling in Gála-  
4     va’s hermitage. Then assuming the form of a hog, he ap-  
proached to outrage the bráhmaṇ Gálava, who was busied in  
5     the evening service. On an out-cry by the Muni’s disciples,  
the king’s son hastily mounting the horse pursued the boar,  
6     shooting arrows *at him*; and drawing his mighty bow, that  
was decorated with pretty designs, he struck *the boar* with an  
7     arrow shaped like the half-moon. Wounded by the iron  
arrow, the wild beast, intent on its own speedy escape, set off  
8     for the large forest dense with mountain trees. The horse  
followed him impetuously, swift as thought, being urged on  
by the king’s son who was obeying his father’s command.
- 9     After traversing thousands of yojanas with speed the quick-  
10    paced *boar* fell into an open chasm in the earth. Immediately  
after him, the king’s son also, on his horse, fell into the great  
11    chasm, which was enveloped in crass darkness. Then the  
beast was lost to the sight of the king’s son therein; and he  
saw Pátála clearly there, but not that *animal*.
- 12    “Next he saw the city called Purandara-pura filled with  
hundreds of golden palaces, embellished with ramparts.
- 13    Entering it, he beheld no man there in the city, and as he  
wandered about he next saw there a woman hastening along.
- 14    He questioned her, the slender-limbed, ‘Why or on whose  
account are you proceeding?’ The noble lady replied not a  
15    word and ascended into the palace. And the king’s son  
fastening up his horse on one side followed her indeed, being  
wide-eyed with amazement *but* fearless.
- 16    “Then he saw reclining on a very spacious couch, all made  
17    of gold, a solitary maiden, full of love, as it were Rati;—her  
face like the clear moon, her eye-brows beautiful, large-hipped  
and full-breasted, scarlet-lipped,\* slender-bodied, her eyes

\* Vimba-lipped. The Vimba, *Cephalandra indica* (*Momordica monadel-*

18 like the blue water-lily, her nails red-tipped, black-complexion-  
ed, *soft-skinned*, her hands and feet copper-coloured, her  
thighs round and tapering, her teeth beautiful, her locks  
dark-blue fine and strong.

19 “ On seeing her, lovely in every limb, as it were a creeper on  
the body of the god of Love, the king’s son thought her the  
20 deity of Rasátala. And the beauteous maiden immediately  
she saw him, with his dark blue wavy hair, and well-developed  
thighs shoulders and arms, deemed him the god of Love.  
21 And she rose up, the noble lady, feeling an agitation in her  
mind. The slender one was overcome at once by bashfulness,  
22 astonishment and dejection. ‘ Who is this that has come ?  
Is he a god, or a Yaksha, or a Gandharva, or a Nága, or a  
Vidyádharā, or a man accomplished in virtuous deeds and  
23 love ?’ Thinking thus, and sighing often, she seated herself  
on the ground and then the fascinating-eyed lady swooned  
24 away. The king’s son, being also smitten by the arrow of  
25 Love, revived her, saying ‘ Do not fear.’ And then that  
maiden, whom the high-souled *prince* saw before, being dis-  
26 tressed took a fan and fanned her. After reviving her, the  
maiden, on being questioned by him, somewhat bashfully made  
27 known the cause of her friend’s fainting. And the noble lady  
related to the king’s son in detail all the cause of the fainting,  
which occurred at the sight of him ; and also her story as the  
other lady had told it.

“ The lady spoke.

28 ‘ The king of the Gandharvas is named Visvávasu, and this  
29 is his beautiful-browed daughter called Madálasá. The son  
of Vajra-ketu, a fierce Dánava, the cleaver of his foes, was  
30 named Pátála-ketu, a dweller within Pátála. He, raising an  
illusion of darkness, carried off this maiden when she was in  
her garden, unattended by me, and brought her *here*, the  
31 villain. On the coming thirteenth day of the lunar fortnight,  
it was foretold, an Asura shall carry her off ; but he does not

*pha*, Roxb.) bears a bright scarlet berry, 2 inches long, and 1 in diameter.  
It is a climber, common everywhere (Hooker, vol. II, p. 621 ; Roxb. p. 696).

deserve the lovely-limbed *maiden*, any more than a sudra  
 32 deserves to hear the Veda. And when the day was over,  
 Surabhi said to the maiden who was ready to kill herself,  
 33 "This base Danava shall not get thee. He who shall pierce  
 him, when he\* reaches the world of mortals, with arrows,  
 34 that one, O noble lady, shall shortly be thy husband." And  
 I am her prudent companion, Kundalá by name, the daughter  
 of Vindhaván, and the wife of Pushkara-málin, O warrior.  
 35 My husband having been killed by Śumbha, I am wandering,  
 in fulfilment of a vow, from one place of pilgrimage to another  
 36 by a divine course, ready for another world. Patala-ketu,  
 evil-souled, when he had assumed a wild boar's form was  
 pierced by some one with an arrow, to secure the deliverance  
 37 of the Munis. And I having really followed him, have  
 returned in haste: *it is* indeed true, the base Dánava has  
 been smitten by some one.

38 'And this *lady* fell into a swoon: hear what is the cause.  
 The maiden is full of affection for thee even at *first* sight, O  
 39 pride-inspirer! who resemblest the sons of the Devas, distin-  
 guished for gracious speech and other virtues. And she is  
 allotted as wife to the other, who has wounded the Dánava.  
 40 For this reason she fell into the deep swoon, and all her life  
 the slender-limbed maiden will indeed experience suffering.  
 41 On thee *is fixed* her heart, O enamoured *hero*; and she will  
 have no other† husband all her life long. Hence is her suffer-  
 42 ing. Even so was Surabhi's prophecy. But I have come here,  
 my lord, through affection for her, experiencing grief; for  
 there is in truth no difference between one's friend's body and  
 43 one's own. If this lovely lady gets an approved hero for her  
 husband, then assuredly may I engage in austerities with a  
 44 mind at ease. But who art thou? and wherefore hast thou  
 come here, O high-minded *hero*? Art thou a Deva, or Daitya,  
 45 Gandharva, Nága, or Kinnara? For not here can men come,  
 nor is human body such *as thine*. Declare thou that, even as  
 I have spoken truthfully.'

\* The Danava.

† For *c'ányo* read *nányo*.

“ Kuvalayáśva spoke.

46 ‘ What thou askest me, O *lady* skilled in holy law, who I  
am and why I have come, hear that, O *lady* bright of under-  
47 standing! I tell it thee from the beginning. Son of king  
Satru-jit, I was despatched by my father, O beauteous one!  
I reached Gálava’s hermitage for the purpose of protecting  
48 the Muni. And while I was affording protection to the Munis  
who observe the holy law, there came one, disguised in hog-  
49 like form, to hamper them. Pierced by me with an arrow,  
shaped like the half-moon, he rushed away with great speed :  
50 mounted on horseback I pursued him. Suddenly I fell as in  
play into a chasm, and my horse also. Thus mounted on  
51 horseback, wandering alone in darkness, I met with light,  
and saw thee lady ; and when questioned, thou gavest me no  
52 answer whatever. And following thee I entered this splen-  
did palace. Thus I have related this truly. No Deva am I,  
53 or Dánava, nor Nága, nor Gandharva or Kinnara, O sweet-  
smiling one. The Devas and the rest are all objects of veneration  
to me, O Kuṇḍalá. I am a man ; thou must not be afraid  
of this at any time.’

The sons spoke.

54 “ Gladdened thereby, the noble maiden, gazing dully through  
bashfulness on the noble countenance of her friend, uttered  
55 no word. And again the friend, being gladdened, answered  
him, *after saying to her*, ‘ Truly has he related it, O maiden  
obedient to Surabhi’s word !’

“ Kuṇḍalá spoke.

56 ‘ O hero, unvarnished truth is the word thou hast spoken ;  
and her heart, perceiving it no otherwise, will gain com-  
57 posure. Surpassing beauty indeed clothes the moon, and  
light clothes the sun : prosperity attends the happy man,  
fortitude the resolute man, and patience the great man.  
58 Thou indeed hast assuredly slain that wicked base Dánava :  
how shall Surabhi, the mother of cattle, speak falsely ?  
59 Therefore happy verily is this *maiden* and blessed with good

fortune, in gaining union with thee. Perform, O hero, the needful ceremony, celebrated according to rule.'

The sons spoke.

60 " 'I am ready to comply,' thus spoke the king's son to her,  
O father. And she thought of him, the large-thighed\* *hero*,  
61 the chief of his race. And he taking fuel and kúsa grass,  
accepted her immediately, through affection for Madálasá and  
62 through respect for Kuṇḍalá. Kindling fire, he sacrificed,  
being conversant with the mantras, and caused the blessed  
maiden to take part in the marriage ceremony. And as he  
63 had come, he departed then, being a wise man, to his own  
hermitage-abode for the purpose of practising austerities.

" And the companion† said to the maiden 'My wishes are  
64 fulfilled, O lovely-faced one. Now that I have seen thee, re-  
splendent in beauty, wedded to this *husband*, I will perform  
65 matchless austerities, with a mind at ease; and, having my  
sins washed away in the waters of the sacred pilgrimage-  
places, I shall not *again* become such as I am *now*.'

" And then bending courteously she addressed the king's  
son, being desirous to go, *yet* shaken in her speech through  
love for her friend.

" Kuṇḍalá spoke.

66 'No counsel should be given even by men to such as thou  
art, O man of boundless understanding! and much less there-  
67 fore by women; hence I offer thee no counsel. But yet thou  
hast caused me also to confide *in thee* with a mind drawn by  
love towards this slender-waisted one: I will remind *thee*, O  
68 foe-queller. Verily a husband must ever cherish and protect  
his wife. A wife is her husband's help-meet unto the com-

\* For *tumbúrum* read *tumborum*, "whose thighs are like the tumba," a kind of long gourd, *Lagenaria vulgaris* (*Cucurbita lagenaria*, Roxb.) It appears to be a wild variety. The common plant is the Sanskrit *alávu*, the modern *kadu* or *láu*. It bears a large, thick, membranous or almost woody fruit, often 1½ foot long, usually bottle- or dumb-bell-shaped (Hooker, vol. II, p. 613; Roxb., p. 700).

† For *sakhám* read *sakhá*?

69 plete attainment of religion, wealth and love. When both  
 70 wife and husband are controlled by each other, then all the  
 71 three combine, religion, wealth and love. How without a wife  
 72 does a man attain to religion or wealth or love, my lord? In  
 73 her the three are set. So also without a husband a wife is  
 74 powerless to fulfil religion and the other *duties*. This three-  
 75 fold group resides in wedded life. Men cannot perform the  
 76 worship of the gods, pitris and dependants and of guests, with-  
 77 out a wife, O prince! And riches, although acquired by men,  
 although brought to their own home, waste away without a  
 wife, or even where a worthless wife dwells. But there is  
 indeed no love for him *without a wife*,—this is clearly evident.  
 By community of the wedded pair in their duties he may  
 attain to the three duties. A man satisfies the pitris with  
 children; and guests with preparations of food; likewise the  
 immortal *gods* with worship; as a man he satisfies a virtuous  
 wife. Moreover for a woman there is no religion, love,  
 wealth or offspring without a husband. Hence this three-  
 fold group rests upon wedded life. This have I spoken to  
 you both; and I go as I have wished. Prosper thou with her  
 in riches, children, happiness and long life.'

The sons spoke.

78 "Having spoken thus, she embraced her friend and bowed  
 to the prince; and she departed by a divine course according  
 to her own purpose.

79 "And Śatru-jit's son, being desirous to depart from Pátála,  
 80 mounted her on the horse but was perceived by Danu's off-  
 spring. Thereon they suddenly shouted out, 'She is being  
 carried off, she is being carried far away, the pearl among  
 81 maidens, whom Pátála-ketu brought from heaven. Besides  
 he has won the might of the Dánavas, the iron-staff, the sword,  
 the club, the spear, the bow, together with Pátála-ketu.'  
 82 'Stand, stand!' thus exclaiming, the Dánava chiefs then  
 83 rained\* a shower of arrows and spears on the king's son. And  
 Śatru-jit's son, excelling in valour, split their weapons with

\* For *vavarshur* read *vavriśur*?

84 a multitude of arrows, laughing as if in sport. In a moment  
the surface of Pátála was covered with the swords, lances,  
spears and arrows, which were split by the multitudes of  
85 Rita-dhvaja's arrows. Then taking up Tvashtṛi's weapon  
he hurled it against the Dánavas; thereby all those Dánavas  
86 together with Pátála-ketu were turned into heaps of bones  
bursting with the excessive heat from blazing rings of fire,  
just as the oceans were burnt up when the fire of Kapila fell  
on them.

87 "Then the prince, seated on horseback, after slaying the  
chiefs of the Asuras, came to his father's city with that pearl  
88 of women; and prostrating himself he recounted every-  
thing to his father, both the visit to Pátála, and the meeting  
89 with Kuṇḍalá, and the meeting with Madálasá, and the con-  
flict with the Dánavas, and their slaughter with the weapon,  
and the return.

90 "His father, having thus heard the exploits of *his* graceful-  
minded *son*, was both filled with affection and embracing his  
91 son spoke thus—'I have been delivered by thee, O son,  
worthy, magnanimous, who hast saved from their fears the  
92 Munis who follow true religion. The fame handed down  
by my ancestors has been further augmented by me: thou, O  
93 son, mighty in valour, hast multiplied it. Now he, who does  
not diminish the glory, wealth or heroism which his father  
94 has acquired, is known as an ordinary man. But whoever  
strikes out by his own might fresh *heroism* still, exceeding his  
95 father's heroism, the wise call him great among men. Who-  
ever lessens the wealth and heroism and glory acquired by  
96 his father, the wise call him base among men. I then had  
accomplished even as thou hast the bráhmaṇ's deliverance.  
And the visit to Pátála that *thou madest*, and the destruction  
97 of the Asuras that *thou didst effect*, even this, my child, is  
in excess, hence thou art great among men. Therefore thou  
98 art fortunate, my boy. I indeed in getting thee, such a son  
as this, excelling in virtues, am to be praised even by  
righteous men. That man does not, I hold, gain the affec-  
99 tion of adopted sons, who does not surpass his son in wis-

dom, liberality and valour. Fie on the birth of him who  
 100 is known in the world through his father! He who attains  
 fame through a son, his birth *is the birth* of a nobly born *man*.  
 The fortunate man is known by reason of himself; the  
 101 ordinary man by reason of his father and grandfather; the  
 base man attains distinction through his mother's relations and  
 his mother. Therefore, my son, prosper thou in riches and  
 102 heroism and in happiness. And never let this daughter of  
 the Gandharva be parted from thee.'

"Thus he was addressed by his father kindly again and  
 103 again in various sort; and after an embrace he was permitted  
 to depart with his wife to his own residence. He lived there  
 104 joyfully in the society of his wife in his father's city, and also  
 elsewhere in gardens, woods, and mountain-tops. And she,  
 the lovely, the beautiful-waisted, having prostrated herself  
 before the feet of her parents-in-law, thereafter morning by  
 morning enjoyed herself in companionship with him."

---

CANTO XXII.

*The story of Kuvalayáśva (continued): Madálasá's death.*

---

*Pátála-ketu's brother Tála-ketu, in the guise of a Muni dwelling on the bank of the Yamuná, induces Kuvalayáśva to guard his hermitage, on the pretext that he had certain ceremonies to perform in the water—Disappearing within the water he goes to the palace and reports that Kuvalayáśva had died in battle with the Daityas—Madálasá dies through grief, and the king and queen utter their lamentations, and perform the prince's obsequies—Tála-ketu then returns to the hermitage and releases the prince.*

The sons spoke.

1 "Many days afterwards the king again addressed his son,  
 'Mounting this horse go quickly to rescue the bráhmans,  
 2 and patrol the earth, morning by morning, day by day,  
 for the bráhmans' freedom from molestation must always be  
 3 sought after. There are evil-behaved Dánavas in hundreds,  
 born in wickedness; do thou so act that the Munis may ex-



4 perience no obstacle from them.' Then the king's son did as  
 he was directed by his father. After traversing the whole  
 5 earth, the king's son did obeisance to his father's feet in  
 the forenoon, as each day came round; and then during the  
 rest of the day he enjoyed himself with her, the slender-  
 waisted one.

6 "One day, however, while moving about, he saw Pátála-  
 ketu's younger brother Tála-ketu, who had fixed his hermitage  
 7 on the bank of the Yamuná. The wily Dánava had assumed a  
 Muni's shape. Bearing the previous enmity in mind, he  
 8 accosted the king's son-- 'O royal prince! I accost thee, do  
 thou then accomplish *my request* if thou art willing: nor must  
 thou refuse my petition, thou that art true to thy promise!  
 9 I will offer a sacrifice to Dharma, and the oblations also  
 must be made. The funeral piles must be put up there, since  
 10 they have not *yet* ascended into the air. Hence give me,  
 O hero! this thy own ornament that is about thy neck  
 11 for gold, and guard thou my hermitage, until I praise  
 within the water the god Varuna, the lord of marine animals  
 with the mantras prescribed by the Vedas for Varuna's  
 12 worship, which cause creatures to thrive, and in haste  
 return.' To him as he spoke thus the prince did obeisance  
 13 and then gave his neck-ornament, and replied to him, 'Go  
 sir! with a mind at ease; I will stay in this very spot near  
 thy hermitage according to thy command, Sir! until thy  
 14 coming again. No man shall cause thee molestation here  
 while I stay. And do thou in *perfect* confidence, without  
 hurry, O bráhmaṇ, accomplish thy purpose.'

15 "Being thus addressed by him, he then plunged into the  
 water in the river, while the prince guarded the other's magic-  
 16 raised hermitage. And Tála-ketu went from that river to  
 the prince's town, and spoke thus in the presence of Madálasá  
 and other *persons*.

"Tála-ketu spoke.

17 'The hero, Kuvalayásva, while guarding the ascetics close  
 to my hermitage, fighting with a certain wicked Daitya

18 and striking down the bráhmans' foes in the conflict with all  
 his might, was pierced in the breast with a spear by the  
 19 wicked *Daitya* who resorted to magic. While dying he  
 gave me this neck-ornament; and súdra ascetics gave him  
 20 to the fire in the wood. And the frightened horse which  
 uttered distressed neighings, with tearful eyes, was led off  
 21 by that cruel *Dánava*. This beheld I, malicious, evil-doer.  
 Whatever should forthwith be done in this *matter*, let it be  
 22 done without delay. And take this neck-ornament as a con-  
 solation to your hearts, for we ascetics may not have anything  
 to do with gold.'

The sons spoke.

23 "Having so spoken, he left it on the ground and departed  
 as he had come. And those people afflicted with grief, fell  
 24 down, ill with fainting. Immediately recovering conscious-  
 ness all those royal handmaids, and the queens and the king  
 25 lamented sorely distressed. But Madálasá seeing that his  
 neck-ornament, and hearing that her husband was slain,  
 quickly yielded up her dear life.

26 "Thereon a great cry arose in the houses of the citizens,  
 27 even as there was in the king's own house. And the king  
 beholding Madálasá bereft of her husband and dead, made  
 answer to all the people, having recovered his composure  
 28 after due reflection. 'Ye should not weep, nor I, I perceive,  
 when one considers the fleetingness of even all relations.  
 29 Why do I bewail my son? Why do I bewail my daughter-in-  
 law? I think after due reflection, that neither should be  
 30 bewailed, since events happen as they are fated. Why  
 should my son, who in obedience to me has met death when  
 engaged in guarding the *dvijas* according to my command,  
 31 be bewailed by the intelligent? Assuredly if my son has  
 quitted *his body* on account of those *dvijas*, will not that body,  
 32 to which he resorts, cause him to rise higher? And how is it  
 possible that this high-born *lady*, thus faithful to her husband,  
 should be bewailed? For women have no deity besides a hus-  
 33 band. For she would have to be thus bewailed by us, and her  
 relatives, and other compassionate persons, if she were

- 34 separated from her husband. But this noble *lady*, who on  
 hearing of the death of her husband has immediately followed  
 her husband, should not for this reason be bewailed by  
 35 the wise. Those women should be bewailed, who are separated  
 from *their husbands*; those should not be bewailed who  
 have died with them: but this grateful *wife* has not experienced  
 36 separation from her husband. Verily what woman  
 in both the worlds would think her husband human, who  
 gives *her* all happinesses both in this world and the next?  
 37 Neither should he be bewailed, nor yet this *lady*, nor I, nor  
 his mother. We were all rescued by him who resigns his life  
 38 for the sake of the bráhmans. For my high-souled son, by  
 relinquishing his body which was half consumed, has freed  
 himself from his debt to the bráhmans, to me, to religion.  
 39 Though losing his life in war, he did not surrender his  
 mother's honour, the spotless fame of my family, or his own  
 heroism.'
- 40 "Then Kuvalayásva's mother, having heard of her son's  
 death, looked upon her husband and, immediately after her  
 husband, spoke similarly.

" The mother spoke.

- 41 'Not such gratification did my mother or my sister get,  
 O king! as I have felt in hearing that my son has been slain  
 42 while protecting the Muni. Those who die, sighing, in  
 great distress, afflicted with illness, while their relatives  
 lament,—their mother has brought forth children in vain.  
 43 Those who, while fearlessly fighting in battle to guard cattle  
 and dvijas, perish crushed with arrows, they indeed are  
 44 *really* men in the world. He who turns not his back on sup-  
 pliants, friends, and enemies, in him his father has a *real*  
 45 son, and in *him* his mother has given birth to a hero. A  
 woman's pain of conception reacts, I think, its success at  
 the time when her son either vanquishes his foes or is slain  
 in battle.'

The sons spoke.

- 46 "Then the king bestowed the funeral obsequies on his son

and daughter: and having gone forth bathed and offered the water to his son.

- 47 "And Tāla-ketu also, having issued from the Yamuná's  
water, spoke this honied speech respectfully to the king's  
48 son. 'Depart, O prince; thou hast caused me to be success-  
ful. While thou hast remained stationary here, the long  
49 wished-for business, and the sacrificial acts to Varuṇa the  
high-souled lord of the ocean, all that I have completed, as  
I had desired.'  
50 "The king's son did him reverence and departed to his  
father's city, mounting on that steed which sped along like  
Garuḍa and the wind."

---

CANTO XXIII.

*Kuvalayáśva's visit to Pátála.*

*Kuvalayáśva, returning home, learnt what had happened—He mourns his loss, and shunning women lives a cheerful life—The Nága king Ásvatara, hearing this story, engages in austerities and extols Sarasvatí—Sarasvatí, propitiated by him, restores him his companion Kambala, and gives them both perfect skill in poetry and music—Both propitiate Ś'iva, who at their request gives Ásvatara Madálasá as his daughter, restored to life as before—At Ásvatara's suggestion, his sons invite Kuvalayáśva to their palace in Pátála and introduce him to their father—Ásvatara asks Kuvalayáśva to relate his story.*

The sons spoke.

- 1 The king's son reaching then his own city in haste, desirous  
to salute his parents' feet respectfully, and eager to see Madá-  
2 lasá, beheld some people of the city downcast, with joyless  
countenances, and then again astonished with joyful faces:  
3 and other people with wide-open eyes, exclaiming "Hurrah!  
hurrah!" embracing one another, filled with the utmost  
4 curious interest. "Long mayest thou live O most fortunate  
prince! Thy adversaries are slain; gladden thy parents' mind  
and ours also, which is relieved of anxiety.  
5 Surrounded before and behind by the citizens who were  
crying out thus, his joy forthwith aroused, he entered his

6 father's palace. And his father and mother and other relations embraced him, and then invoked on him auspicious blessings, saying "Long mayest thou live!" Thereupon having done obeisance, surprised at what this *might mean*, he questioned his father; and he duly explained it to him.

8 On hearing that his wife Madálasá, the darling of his heart, was dead, and seeing his parents before *him*, he fell into the midst of a sea of shame and grief. He thought, "The maiden, on hearing I was dead, gave up life, the virtuous one: fie on me harsh-minded *that I am!* Malignant am I, worthless am I, that I live most pitiless, when deprived of that deer-eyed one who encountered death for my sake!" Again he thought, having firmly composed his mind, banishing hastily the rising distraction, and breathing hard outwards and inwards, feeling undone.

12 "If I abandon life because she has died on my account, what benefit shall I confer on her? Yet this would be praiseworthy in women's opinion. Or if being downcast I weep, repeatedly exclaiming 'ah! my beloved,' still this would not be praiseworthy in us; for we are men assuredly. Frigid with grief, downcast, ungarlanded, uncleansed, I shall then become an object of contumely to my adversaries. I must cut off my enemies, and obey the king, my father. And how then can I resign my life which is dependant on him? But here, I consider, I must renounce pleasure with woman, and yet that *renunciation* does not tend to benefit the slender-limbed one. Nevertheless in every way I must practise harmlessness, which works neither benefit nor injury. This is little for me *to do* on her account who resigned her life on mine."

The sons spoke.

18 Having thus resolved, Rita-dhvaja then performed the ceremony of offering water, and immediately afterwards performed the obsequies; and he spoke again.

Rita-dhvaja spoke.

19 "If she, Madálasá, the slender-limbed, were not my wife, I would not have another companion in this life. Besides that fawn-eyed daughter of the Gandharva, I will not love

- 21 any woman—so have I spoken in truth. Having given up  
that wife, who observed true religion, whose gait was like the  
elephant's, I will not assent to any *woman*—this have I declared  
in truth."

The sons spoke.

- 22 And having renounced, dear father, all the delights of  
woman, bereft of her, he continued to sport in company with  
his peers, his equals in age, in the perfection of his good dis-  
23 position. This was his supreme deed, dear father. Who is  
able to do that which is exceedingly difficult of accomplishment  
by the gods, how much more so by others ?

Jaḍa spoke.

- 24 Having heard their speech, *their* father became dissatisfied ;  
and after reflecting the Nága king addressed his two sons, as  
if in ridicule.

The Nága king Ásvatara spoke.

- 25 "If men, deeming a thing impossible, will put forth no effort  
26 in the deed, from the loss of exertion there ensues loss. Let  
a man undertake a deed, without squandering his own man-  
hood ; the accomplishment of a deed depends on fate and on  
27 manhood. Therefore I will so strive, my sons, hence-  
forth—let me so practise austerities diligently,—that this  
may in time be accomplished."

Jaḍa spoke.

- 28 Having spoken thus, the Nága king went to Plakshávata-  
raṇa,\* the place of pilgrimage on the Himavat mountain, and  
29 practised most arduous austerities. And then he praised the  
goddess Sarasvatí there with his invocations, fixing his mind  
on her, restricting his food, performing the three prescribed  
ablutions.†

Ásvatara spoke.

- 30 "Desirous of propitiating the resplendent goddess Jagad-  
dhátrī Sarasvatí, who is sprung from Brahmá, I will praise  
31 her, bowing my head before her. Good and bad, O goddess,

\* Where the R. Sarasvatí takes its rise.

† At morning, noon, and evening.

whatever *there be*, the cause that confers alike final enancipation and riches,—all that, conjoint and separate, resides in thee, O goddess. Thou, O goddess, art the imperishable and the supreme, wherein everything is comprised; *thou art* the imperishable and the supreme, which are established like the Atom. The imperishable and the supreme is Brahma, and this universe is perishable by nature. Fire resides in wood, and the atoms are of earth. So in thee resides Brahma, and this world in its entirety; in thee is the abode of the sound Om, and whatever is immoveable and moveable, O goddess. In thee *reside* the three prosodial times,\* O goddess, all that exists and does not exist, the three worlds,† the three Vedas, the three sciences,‡ the three fires,§ the three lights,|| and the three colours,¶ and the law-book; the three qualities, the three sounds,\*\* the three Vedas, and the *three áśramas*,†† the three times, and the *three* states of life, the pitṛis, day, night and the rest. This trinity of standards is thy form, O goddess Sarasvatī! The seven soma-samsthá *sacrifices*, and the seven haviḥ-samsthá *sacrifices*, and the seven páka-samsthá‡‡ *sacrifices*, which are *deemed* the earliest by those

\* Mátrá ; short, long, and prolated.

† Loka ; earth, atmosphere and the sky.

‡ Vidyá ; metaphysics (with logic), the art of government, and the practical arts (?)

§ Pávaka ; gárhapatya, áhavaníya, and dakṣhiṇa.

|| Jyotis ; fire on the earth, ether in the atmosphere, and the sun in the sky.

¶ Varṇa ; or, the three castes.

\*\* Śabda.

†† Áśrama ; those of the griha-śtha, vana-praśtha, and bhikṣu.

‡‡ The names of these sacrifices are thus given me by the Pandit of the Bengal Asiatic Society. The Soma-samsthá are (1) agni-śtōma, (2) atyangi-śtōma, (3) ukthya, (4) shoḍaśin, (5) atirátra, (6) víjaheya, and (7) áptor-yáma. The haviḥ-samsthá are (1) agnyádheya, (2) agni-hotra, (3) darśa-púrnamáśan, (4) o'áturmáśyani, (5) paśu-bandha, (6) sautra-maṇi, and (7) agrajaṇeṣṭi. The páka-samsthá are given differently by different authors. According to Ápastamba they are (1) aupásana-homa, (2) vaiśva-deva, (3) párvana, (4) aśṭaká, (5) íráddha, (6) sarpa-bali, (7) isána-bali. According to Baudháyana, (1) huta, (2) prahuta, (3) áhuta, (4) súlagava, (5) bali-

who think differently, and which are as eternal as Brahma,\*  
 39 are performed by those, who assert that all things are Brahma,  
 with the utterance of thy *name*, O goddess. Undefinable,  
 40 composed of half a measure, supreme, unchanging, imperish-  
 able, celestial, devoid of alteration is this thy other supreme  
 41 form which I cannot express. And even the mouth does  
 not declare it, nor the tongue, the copper-coloured lip, or  
 other *organs*. Even Indra, the Vasus, Brahmá, the Moon and  
 42 Sun, and Light *cannot declare thy form*, whose dwelling is the  
 universe, which has the form of the universe; which is the  
 ruler of the universe, the Supreme Ruler; which is mention-  
 ed in the discussions of the Sāṅkhya and Vedānta philo-  
 sophies, and firmly established in many Sākhás; which is  
 43 without beginning middle or end; which is good, bad, and  
 neutral; which is but one, is many, and yet is not one; which  
 assumes *various* kinds of existence; which is without name,  
 44 and yet is named after the six guṇas, is named after the classes,  
 and resides in the three guṇas; which is one among many  
 powerful, possesses the majesty of the Śaktis, and is supreme.  
 45 Happiness and unhappiness, having the form of great happi-  
 ness, appear in thee. Thus, O goddess, that which has parts  
 is pervaded by thee, and so also that which has no parts; that  
 which resides in non-duality, and that which resides in duality  
 46 (O brāhman). Things that are permanent, and others that  
 perish; those again that are gross, or those that are subtler  
 than the subtle; those again that are on the earth, or those that  
 are in the atmosphere or elsewhere;—they all derive their  
 47 perceptibility from thee indeed. Everything—both that which  
 is destitute of visible shape, and that which has visible shape;  
 or whatever is severally single in the elements; that which is

haraṇa, (6) pratyavarohaṇa, and (7) asṭaká-homa. According to Gautama,  
 (1) asṭaká, (2) parvaṇa, (3) śráddha, (4) śravani, (5) ágrahányani, (6) c'aitrí,  
 and (7) ásvayují.

\* A MS. in the Sanskrit College reads *ádye* for *ádyá*, and *sanátane* for  
*sandtaná*; with this reading the first line of the verse would qualify *devi*  
*sarasvatí*, if *sanátane* be taken as an *ársha* form of *sanátani*. But these verses  
 seem obscure.



in heaven, on the surface of the earth, in the sky or elsewhere ;—is connected with thee by thy vowels and by thy consonants ! ”

Jaḍa spoke.

- 48 Thereupon, being praised thus, the goddess Sarasvatī, who is Vishnu's tongue, answered the high-souled Nāga Aśvatara.

Sarasvatī spoke:

- 49 “ I grant thee a boon, O Nāga king, brother of Kambala ; speak therefore : I will give thee what is revolving in thy mind.”

Aśvatara spoke.

- 50 “ Give thou me, O goddess, Kambala indeed my former companion, and bestow on us both a conversance with all sounds.”

Sarasvatī spoke.

- 51 “ The seven musical notes,\* the seven modes in the musical scale,† O most noble Nāga ! the seven songs also,‡ and the

\* Svāra, a “ musical note.” There are 7 *svāras*, viz., *śaḍja*, *riṣabha*, *gāndhāra*, *madhyama*, *pañcāma*, *dhaivata*, and *niṣāda* ; and they are designated by their initial sounds, *sa*, *ri*, *ga*, *ma*, *pa*, *dha*, and *ni* : but the arrangement varies, and Prof. Monier-Williams in his dictionary places *niṣāda* first, *śaḍja* fourth, and *pañcāma* seventh. Those 7 *svāras* compose the “ musical scale,” *grāma* (Beng. *saptak*). The interval between each consecutive pair of notes is divided into several ‘ lesser notes ’ called *śruti* ; thus there are 4 between *sa* and *ri*, 3 between *ri* and *ga*, 2 between *ga* and *ma*, 4 between *ma* and *pa*, 4 between *pa* and *dha*, 3 between *dha* and *ni*, and 2 between *ni* and *sa* in the higher octave—that is 22 *śruti*s in all. The *svāras* correspond to the ‘ natural notes,’ and the *śruti*s to the ‘ sharps and flats ’ in European music. (Raja Sourindro Mohun Tagore's *Sangita-sāra-saṅgraha*, pp. 22—24, where the names of the *śruti*s are given ; and his *Victoria-gīti-mālā* in Bengali, Introduction.)

† Grāma-rāga. I do not find this in the dictionary. Does it mean the “ series of musical scales ” that can be formed by taking each of the notes (*svāra*) as the ‘ key ’ note ? Thus there would be 7 scales, as there are 7 notes. But Raja S. M. Tagore calls this *svāra-grām* (Beng.), and he says that only 3 such scales were common in early times, viz., those with *śaḍja*, *gāndhāra* and *madhyama* as key notes (*Victoria-gīti-mālā*, Introduction, p. 2).

‡ Gītaka. I do not know what the seven songs are.

52 same number of modulations,\* so also the forty-nine musical  
 times,† and the three octaves‡—all these thou and also Kam-  
 53 bala shalt sing, O sinless one ! Thou shalt know more yet  
 through my favour, O Nāga king. I have given thee the four  
 kinds of quater-verse,§ 'the three sorts of musical tunes,|| the  
 54 three kinds of musical movoment,¶ also the three pauses in

\* *Mūrc'hanā*. This seems to be "running up or down the scale;" it is defined thus—

*Kramāt svarāṇāṃ saptaṇām ārohaḥ c'āvarohanam*

*Mūrc'hanetyuḥ yate grāma-traya tāḥ sapta sapta c'a.*

As there are 7 scales obtained by taking any of the 7 notes as the key note, there would be 7 *mūrc'hanās*; and this applies to the 3 octaves (*grāma-traya*), so that there are 21 *mūrc'hanās* altogether (*Sangita-sāra-sangraha*, p. 30, where their names are given). But in his Bengali Treatise Raja S. M. Tagore explains *mūrc'hanā* to be the "passing *uninterruptedly* from one note (*svara*) to another, and in the process sounding all the intermediate notes and lesser notes (*s'ruti*)." This corresponds to 'slurring.' With this meaning the number of possible *mūrc'hanās* is almost indefinite.

† *Tāla*, the "division of time in music." It consists of three things, *kāla*, the duration of time, *kriyā*, the clapping of the hands (accentuation), and *māna*, the interval between the clappings. It seems to correspond to the 'bar' and the 'kinds of time' in European music. European music has only 3 kinds of time, Common, Triple and Compound, each with a few subdivisions; but in Hindu music there is the utmost variety. I do not know what the 49 *tālas* here meant are; but Raja S. M. Tagore gives two lists of *des't-tālas*, one enumerating 120, and the other 72.

‡ *Grāma*, the "octave." Hindu music uses only three octaves, which are called *nīma* (Beng. *udārā*), *madhya* (*mudārā*) and *uc'c'a* (*tārā*).

§ *Pada*.

|| *Tāla*. This seems to refer to the classification of the *tālas*, viz., *buddha*, *śālan.ga* (or *śālan.ka* or *śāla.ga*, v. r.) and *san-kīrṇa*, (Raja S. M. Tagore's *Sangita-sāra-sangraha*, p. 201); but this classification is also applied to the *rāgas* (see his *Victoria-gīti-mālā*, Introduction, p. 9.). The *buddha* are explained to be the famous kinds complete in themselves; the *śālaṅga* are those produced by a mixture of two simple ones; and the *san-kīrṇa* those produced by a mixture of many simple ones.

¶ *Laya*, "musical speed." The 3 kinds are *druta*, quick, *madhya*, mean, and *vilambita*, slow; the *druta* being twice as fast as the *madhya*, and the *madhya* twice as fast as the *vilambita*. *Laya* does not take account of prosodial time. This corresponds to "the movement" in European music.

music,\* and the four-fold today.† This thou *shalt know* through  
 55 my favour O Nága king, and what lies further. What is  
 contained within this *and* dependant *thereon*, measured in  
 vowels and consonants—all that I have given to thee and  
 56 Kambala. *I have* not so *given* it to any other on the  
 earth or in Pátála, O Nága: and ye shall be the teachers  
 of all this in Pátála and in heaven and on earth also, ye  
 two Nágas!"

Jaḍa spoke.

57 Having spoken thus, the lotus-eyed goddess Sarasvatí, the  
 tongue of all, then disappeared at once from the Nága's view.  
 58 And then, as it all happened to those two Nágas, there was  
 begotten in both the fullest knowledge in versification,  
 musical time, musical notes, &c.

59 Then the two Nágas, observing musical time on the lute-  
 strings, being desirous of propitiating with seven songs the  
 60 lord who dwells on the peaks of Kailása and Himálaya,  
 the god Siva, who destroyed Káma's body, both exerted  
 61 themselves to the utmost, with voice and tone combined, being  
 assiduous morning, night, noon and the two twilights. The  
 bull-bannered god, being long praised by them both, was  
 62 gratified with their song, and said to both, "Choose ye a  
 boon." Thereon Ásvatara with his brother doing reverence  
 63 made request to Siva, the blue-throated, Umá's lord,—

"If thou, O adorable three-eyed god of the gods, art pleased  
 64 with us, then grant us this boon according to our desire;

\* Yati, "a break in the *laya*" (*laya-pravṛitti-niyama*), 'a rest' in music. The 3 kinds are *samá*, *sroto-gatá*, and *go-puc'c'há*. The *samá* may occur at the beginning, in the middle, or at the end of the *laya*, and in each of the 3 kinds of *laya*. The *sroto-gatá* occurs apparently when the time quickens (*accelerando*) after the rest, that is when the *laya* changes from *vilambita* to *madhya*, or from *madhya* to *druta*, or from *vilambita* or *madhya* to *druta*. The *go-puc'c'há* occurs apparently when the time becomes slower (*rallentando*, *ritardando*) after the rest, that is when the *laya* changes from *druta* to *madhya*, or from *madhya* to *vilambita*.

† Todaya. I do not find this word in the dictionary. Does it mean 'drum-music'?"

let Kuvalayāśva's deceased wife, Madālasā, O god, at once  
 65 become my daughter of the same age as *when she died*, remembering her life as before, endowed with the selfsame beauty, as a devotee, and the mother of Yoga ; let her be born in my house, O S'iva."

S'iva spoke.

66 "As thou hast spoken, most noble Nāga, it shall all happen through my favour, in very truth. Hearken also to this, O  
 67 Nāga. But when the śrāddha is reached, thou shouldst eat the middle piṇḍa by thyself, most noble Nāga, being pure, and  
 68 having thy mind subdued ; and then, when that is eaten, the happy *lady* shall rise out of thy middle hood, the same in  
 69 form as when she died. And having pondered on this thy desire, do thou perform the libation to the piṭris ; immediate-  
 70 ly she, the fine-browed, the auspicious, shall rise out of thy breathing middle hood, the same in form as when she died."

71 Having heard this, both then adored S'iva, and returned, full of contentment, to Rasātala. And so the Nāga, Kam-  
 72 bala's younger brother, performed the śrāddha, and also duly ate the middle piṇḍa ; and, while he pondered on that  
 73 his desire, the slender-waisted *lady* was produced\* at once, in the selfsame form, out of his breathing middle hood.  
 74 And the Nāga told that to no one : he kept her, the lovely-teethed one, concealed by his women in the inner apartments.

75 And the two sons of the Nāga king pursuing pleasure day by day, played† with Rīta-dhvaja like the immortals. But  
 76 one day the Nāga king, being intoxicated, spoke to his sons, "Why indeed do ye not do as I told you before ? The king's  
 77 son is your benefactor in my opinion ; why do ye not confer a benefit on him, the pride-inspirer ? Thereupon they both, being thus admonished by their kindly-affectioned father,  
 78 went to their friend's city, and enjoyed themselves with the wise *prince*. Then both, after having held some other  
 79 talk with Kuvalayāśva, invited him respectfully to come to their house. The king's son said to them, "Is not this your

\* For *yajne* read *jajne*.

† Read *cikriḍāte* for *ciktiḍāte*.

80 house? Whatever is mine, riches, carriages, garments, &c., that  
 is indeed yours. But whatever ye desire should be given you,  
 81 riches or jewels, let that be given you, O young dvijas, if ye have  
 friendly regard for me. Am I cheated by such a cruel fate as  
 82 this, that ye do not evince any sense of ownership in my  
 house? If ye must do me kindness, if I am to receive favour  
 83 from you, then consider my wealth and home as your own.  
 84 Whatever is yours is mine, mine is your own. Believe ye  
 this in truth. My life has gone out *into you*. Never again  
 must ye speak of separate propeity, O virtuous dvijas :  
 85 since ye are devoted to my favour, I have adjured you by my  
 heart affectionately."

Thereupon both the young Nágas, their faces beaming with  
 86 affection, replied to the king's son, somewhat feigning anger.  
 " Rita-dhvaja, without doubt, we must not think in our mind  
 87 in this matter otherwise than thou hast now spoken. But  
 our high-souled father has himself repeatedly said this—' I  
 88 wish to see that Kuvalayásva.'" Thereon Kuvalayásva  
 rising from his seat of honour, prostrated himself on the  
 ground, saying, " Be it as your dear father says."

Kuvalayásva spoke.

89 " Happy am I ! Most rich in merit am I ! Who else is there  
 like me, that your father shews an earnest mind to see me ?  
 90 Rise ye therefore, let us go : not even for a moment do I wish  
 to transgress his command here. I swear by his feet !"

Jaḍa spoke.

91 Having spoken thus the king's son went with them both,  
 and issuing from the city reached the holy river Gomatí.  
 92 They passed through it, the Nága princes and the king's son :  
 and the king's son thought their home *lay* on the other side  
 93 of the river. And drawing *him* thence, they led the prince  
 to Pátála ; and in Pátála he beheld them both as young  
 94 Nágas, lustrous\* with the gems in their hoods, displaying  
 the svastika marks. Gazing with eyes wide open with  
 amazement at them both, who were most handsomely formed,

\* Read *kritoddyotan* for *kṛitodyotan*.

95 and smiling he spoke kindly—"Bravo! most noble dvijas!"  
 96 And they told him of their father, the Nága king, Ásvatara  
 by name, peaceful, worthy of honour by the heaven-dwellers.  
 97 Then the king's son saw charming Pátála; which was  
 adorned with Nágas, young adult and old, and also with  
 98 Nága maidens, who were playing here and there, and who wore  
 beautiful ear-rings and necklaces, as the sky is *decked* with  
 stars; and elsewhere *resounding with* drums, small drums,  
 99 and musical instruments, *mingled* with the strains of singing,  
 which kept time with the sounds of lutes and pipes; filled  
 100 with hundreds of charming houses. Gazing about on Pátála  
 Śatru-jit's son the foe-queller, walked *about* accompanied by  
 those two Nágas his friends.  
 101 Then they all entered the Nága king's residence, and they  
 saw the high-souled Nága king seated, clad in heavenly  
 garlands and raiment, adorned with gems and ear-rings, re-  
 102 splendent with superb pearl-necklaces, *decorated* with armlets,  
*blessed* with good fortune, on a throne all of gold, the frame of  
 103 which was overlaid with a multitude of gems coral and lapis  
 lazuli.

They showed the king to him saying "That is our father;"  
 104 and they introduced him to their father, saying "This is the  
 hero Kunalayáśva." Then Rīta-dhvaja bowed at the feet of  
 105 the Nága king. Raising him up by force, the Nága king  
 embraced him warmly, and kissing him on the head he  
 106 said "Long mayest thou live, and destroying all thy foes, be  
 submissive to thy father. My son thy virtues have been  
 107 mentioned even in thy absence, happy *that thou art*; thy  
*rare virtues* have been reported to me by my two sons.  
 108 Mayest thou indeed prosper thereby in mind, speech, body  
 and behaviour: the life of a virtuous man is praise-worthy;  
 a worthless man although alive is dead. A virtuous man,  
 while accomplishing his own good, brings complete satisfac-  
 109 tion to his parents, anguish into the hearts of his enemies,  
 and confidence among the populace. The gods, the pitris,  
 110 bráhmans, friends, suppliants, the maimed and others, and  
 his relatives also desire a long life for the virtuous man.

The life of virtuous men, who eschew abuse, who are compassionate towards those in trouble, who are the refuge of those in calamity, abounds in *good fruit*."

Jada spoke.

- 111 Having spoken thus to that hero, the Nága next addressed  
his two sons thus, being desirous to do honour to Kuva-  
112 layášva. "When we have finished our ablutions and all the  
other proceedings in due order, *when we have drunk wine and*  
*enjoyed other pleasures, when we have feasted up to our*  
113 *desire*, we shall then with joyful minds spend a short  
time with Kuvalayášva in *hearing* the story of the success of  
114 his heart's festival." And atru-jit's son assented in silence  
to that speech. Accordingly the lofty-minded king of the  
Nágas did *as he had proposed*.
- 115 The great king of the Nágas, true to his word, assembling  
with his own sons and the king's son, filled with joy, feasted  
on foods and wines, up to fitting bounds, self-possessed and  
enjoying pleasure.

---

CANTO XXIV.

---

*The story of Kuvalayášva (continued).*

*The Recovery of Maddálasá.*

*The Nága king Ásvatara asks Kuvalayášva what gift he can confer on him—Kuvalayášva replies he needs nothing, and is sufficiently gratified by the king's favour—The king urges him and at his sons' suggestion the prince asks to see Maddálasá even in illusion—The king brings her in as an illusion, and afterwards restores her to Kuvalayášva.*

Jada spoke.

- 1 His two sons and the king's son respectfully attended the
- 2 high souled king of the Nágas, after he had banquetted. The  
high-souled Nága manifested kindly regard towards his sons'
- 3 friend with suitable conversation, and said, "Declare, Sir,  
what pleasure I must do thee who hast entered my house;

- cast away hesitation towards me as a son *would* towards his  
 4 father. Whether silver or gold, raiment, carriages, or seats,  
 or whatever thou dost highly appreciate that is hard to be  
 got—ask that of me.”

Kuvalayáśva spoke.

- 5 “Through thy favour, illustrious Sir! gold and other *wealth*  
 are in my father's house; I have no need of any such thing  
 6 at all now. While my father rules this earth for thousands  
 of years and thou also *rulest* Pátála, my mind is not expectant  
 7 in solicitation. They are both possessed of Svarga and are  
 very rich in merit, who from their youth possess, in their  
 father's lifetime, a mere particle\* of wealth amidst his  
 8 krores of wealth, friends equally-educated, and a body  
 free from sickness. My father† holds the wealth; have I  
 9 not youth? When wealth is wanting, men's minds become  
 prone to petitions. When I have it in full measure, how shall  
 10 my tongue make petition? Those who need not think  
 whether they have any riches at home or not, happy are they,  
 sheltered in the shadow of the tree of their father's arm.  
 11 But those, who even from childhood losing their father  
 have had the care of a family, they have in my opinion,  
 through the ruin of their taste for happiness, been tricked by  
 12 the Creator. We therefore through thy favour always give  
 willingly to supplicants the hoards of money, gems and other  
 13 *wealth* left by our fathers. I have everything then here,  
 since I have touched thy feet with my crest-jewel, since I have  
 touched thy body.”

Jaḍa spoke.

- 14 Being answered thus in a modest speech, the noble Nága  
 replied kindly to the young prince, the benefactor of his sons.

The Nága spoke.

- 15 “If it be not thy mind to receive of me gems, gold or other  
*gift*; whatever else may please thy mind, mention thou it. I  
 will give *it thee*.”

\* Wealth as small as the point of a blade of grass.

† Read *janitrá* for *janitá*.



## Kuvalayásva spoke.

- 16 "My lord, through thy favour, I whom thou dost ask have  
 17 everything at home: it has been gained especially through  
 18 sight of thee. And herein I am successful, and my life has  
 19 been rewarded, that I a mortal have embraced thy body who  
 20 art divine; that the dust of thy feet has found a seat on  
 21 my head. What indeed have I not gained thereby, O Nága  
 22 king? But if thou needs must give me the boon that I  
 desire, then let not the faculty of working righteousness  
 depart from my heart. Gold, gems, jewels and such like,  
 carriages, houses, seats, women, food and drink, and children,  
 and tasteful garlands and ointments,—both these various  
 objects of desire, and also vocal and instrumental music and  
 whatever other *music there be*—all this I hold to be the fruit  
 of the tree of good works. Therefore a man must start  
 from the root thereof; he must exert himself, while ruling  
 his spirit; nothing in the world is hard of attainment to those  
 who adhere to good works."

## Ásvatara spoke.

- 23 "So shall thy mind be, O wise man, relying on righteous-  
 24 ness; and truly all this is the fruit of righteousness as thou  
 hast said. Nevertheless thou must certainly take, now that  
 thou hast entered my house, what thou thinkest hard to be  
 gained in the human world."

## Jaḍa spoke.

- 25 Having heard this his speech, the young prince then  
 26 looked at the faces of the Nága king's sons. Thereupon both  
 those heroes prostrating themselves told their father clearly  
 all the young prince's thoughts.

## The sons spoke.

- 27 "When this *prince's* beloved wife heard that he was slain,  
 28 she forsook her dear life, being deceived by a certain cruel,  
 29 bad-minded Dánava, who shewed his enmity. *She was* the  
 daughter of the Gandharva king; she was named Madálasá.  
 Then he, mindful of the past, made this vow, dear father,  
 30 'No other shall be my wife save Madálasá.' This hero Rita-

dhvaja longs, dear father, to behold her, lovely-limbed : if this may be done, let it be done."

Aśvatara spoke.

- 31 "Such magical power as that belongs to one who is exempt from such gross elements. How can this be except as a dream or as an illusion proceeding from Śambara ?"\*

Jaḍa spoke.

- 32 Then S'atru-jit's son prostrated himself before the high-souled Nāga king and replied, being touched with affection and modesty. "If thou show† me now, dear father, Madālasā even in illusion, I hold that thou hast done me the greatest favour."

Aśvatara spoke.

- 34 "Look thou here then, my son, if thou wouldest see the illusion. I must show thee favour ; a visitor at one's house, though a child, is master."

Jaḍa spoke.

- 35 The Nāga king led in Madālasā who was concealed in the house, and next he uttered some gibberish distinctly in order to bewilder them. And then he showed the young prince the beauteous lady, saying, "Is she or is she not, O prince, thy wife Mādalasā ?"

Jaḍa spoke.

- 37 Then, seeing the slender one, he lost his reticence that very moment ; he moved towards her, uttering the word "Beloved !" And the Nāga Aśvatara hasting held him off.

Aśvatara spoke.

- 38 "It is illusion, my son ! touch her not ! I told thee so at first. The illusion quickly vanishes when touched or otherwise meddled with."
- 39 Thereupon he fell to the ground, overwhelmed by a faint ; and exclaiming "Ah Beloved !" he thought of his noble
- 40 wife. "Alas for the love of this king towards my steadfast mind, whereby I have been thus overthrown without the

\* A. Daitya.

† Read *darśayase* for *darśaya te* ?

- 41 weapons of foes. She was shown as an illusion, though it was clearly no illusion at all by reason of the action of air, water and fire, earth and ether."

Jaḍa spoke.

- 42 Then the Nága reviving Kuvalayáśva, related to him the whole story of her recovery from death and *all else that had*  
43 *happened*. Thereat rejoicing he took again his loved one, and after doing obeisance to the Nága departed in great splendour, mounted on the horse, to his own city, having attained\* the object of his thoughts.

---

## CANTO XXV.

---

*The story of Kuvalayáśva and Madálasá (continued).*

---

*Kuvalayáśva, returning home, lives in perfect happiness with Madálasá—He succeeds his father Satru-jit—A son is born to them, Vi-kránta—Madálasá prattles to the infant.*

Jaḍa spoke.

- 1 Reaching then his city he narrated the whole story fully to his parents, how he had regained his slender-limbed one who  
2 had died. And the beautiful, slender-limbed *lady* bowed at the feet of her father and mother-in-law, and did honour as  
3 before to her kindred with obeisance, embraces and such  
4 greetings, according to propriety, and their ages. Then the citizens held a great festival there in the city.

- And Rita-dhvaja long enjoyed himself with his beautiful-  
5 waisted *wife*, both among mountain torrents, and on river sand-banks, and amid pleasant woods, and in groves. She also, longing to consume her merit by the delights of love,  
6 enjoyed herself with him, her greatly-beloved, in pleasant places.

- 7 A long time afterwards the king Satru-jit, having ruled the earth worthily, underwent the law of Death. Then the citi-

\* Read *abhyupetaḥ* for *abhyupetaṃ* ?

8 zens inaugurated as king his high-souled son Rīta-dhvajḥ,  
noble in conduct and action.

While he duly protected his subjects as if they were his  
9 own sons, Madālasā gave birth to her first-born son. The  
10 father gave that clever *child* the name Vi-krānta. The retainers  
were pleased thereat and Madālasā laughed. Madālasā spoke to her infant boy in the way of prattle,\* as he lay  
on his back crying not unmelodiously.

11 "Perfect art thou, darling, nor has thy name been given  
thee now in mere fancy. This very body of thine is composed  
of the five elements, not indeed for this reason dost thou cry  
12 —wherefore then? Nor indeed does your highness (this title  
is thy birth-right) cry because thou art a king's son. Doubtful  
are the various good and bad qualities, that are connected  
13 with the elements, in all thy organs. Since in a man here the  
elements, extremely weak, increase by the means of the elements,  
namely, by means of the food and water and other  
*nutriments* given, of what hast thou no gain, of what hast  
14 thou no loss? Do not grow infatuated at this thy bodice  
which is already decaying, and in that thy body; thy body  
is given thee by good and bad deeds; the bodice is fastened  
on thee by persons infatuated with pride and other *pas-*  
15 *sions*. Do thou greatly esteem *each* aggregate of elements—  
some *one* aggregate as a dear father, some *other* as a child,  
some *other* as a mother, some *other* as a loved wife, some *other*  
16 as thy own *property*, some *other* as not thy own. A man  
beguiled in mind thinks that evils tend to assuage evils, that  
enjoyments tend to happiness. Again the unwise man, greatly  
beguiled in mind, thinks that these very evils are pleasures.  
17 Laughter, gazing at the bones,† a pair of excessively  
bright mocking eyes, firm plump flesh in the breasts and  
elsewhere, in a woman—that is Love's abode; is not woman

\* Ullāpana: not in the dictionary. Ullāpa is said to mean "calling out in a loud voice," "change of voice in grief, sickness, &c.;" but no such meaning is admissible here.

† Asthi-sandarśana; this seems meaningless. Akshi-sandarśana seems superfluous.

- 18 hell? The carriage *rests* on the earth; and the body is seated in the carriage; and even in the body there is another seated, the soul. There is not the same perception of ownership in one's body, as there is this excessive infatuation *with it*."

---

CANTO XXVI.

---

*The story of Kuvalayáśva (continued).  
The Education of his Sons.*

---

*Two other sons are born, Subáhu and Satru-mardana—A fourth son is born whom Madálasá names Alarka—She criticizes these names—The king objects to her way of educating them, and wishes them to be brought up as kshatriyas—She prattles to Alarka.*

Jada spoke.

- 1 Now the queen trained up that son, as he grew day by day,
- 2 to unselfish thought by talking and other *means*. As he
- 3 "regularly gained strength, as he gained his father's intelligence, even so he acquired knowledge of himself through his
- 4 mother's talk. So the youth, instructed by her from his
- 5 birth, having understanding and being unselfish, did not
- 6 turn his mind towards family life.
- 7 A second son was born to her. His father named him.
- 8 When he said "This is Su-báhu," Madálasá laughed. Him
- 9 also when a child she spoke to with prattle and other *talk*
- 10 the same as before, and thus he, having a good intellect, ac-
- 11 quired knowledge from his childhood.
- 12 When the king named the third-born son Satru-mardana,
- 13 she the beautiful-browed laughed again very long thereat.
- 14 The slender-limbed mother similarly instructed him also from
- 15 childhood. Devoid of desire he performed ceremonies, *but*
- 16 not anything beneficial.
- 17 Now the king, when desirous of naming the fourth son, saw
- 18 Madálasá, well-behaved as she was, laughing slightly: the

king, somewhat eagerly curious, spoke to her as she was laughing.

The king spoke.

- 9 "Tell me the cause of your laughter, at the very time when the name is being given. Vi-kránta, Su-báhu and the other  
10 Śatru-mardana,—the names given by me are I think fine, suited to the kshatriya kindred, and indicative of heroism  
11 and majesty. If these are not good, lady,—if you think *this* in your mind,—then do thou give a name to this my fourth son."

Madálasá spoke.

- 12 "I must obey thy command, Mahá-rájá, as thou tellest me ;  
13 so I will give a name to thy fourth son. 'Alarka' ! Learned in religion he shall acquire fame in the world, and this thy youngest son shall have understanding."  
14 On hearing that name given the son by the mother, the king, laughing at 'Alarka' as inappropriate, said—

The king spoke.

- 15 "This name that thou hast given to my son, beauteous lady,—why hast thou given such an inappropriate one ? What is its meaning, O Madálasá ?"

Madálasá spoke.

- 16 "This is my fancy, Mahá-rájá ; I have given it as being practical. So do thou listen, O king, to the meaninglessness  
17 of the names given by thee. Since wise men speak of a pervading soul ; and 'kránti' is described as the course which *passes*  
18 from one place to another place ; since the soul is *all*-pervading in that it is ubiquitous and does not move about ; therefore this appellation Vi-kránta, 'passed beyond,' appears  
19 to me meaningless. The appellation Su-báhu, 'fine-armed,' given to thy second son, that too is meaningless because the  
20 soul is incorporeal, O king. The name that thou hast given the third son, Ari-mardana, 'foe-crusher,' I think that too is  
21 inappropriate ; and listen to the reason as regards it. Since there is only one soul in all bodies, who then, O king, is regarded as its enemy in this world, or who as its friend ?

- 22 Creatures are crushed by creatures; how can the incorpo-  
 23 real be crushed? This fancy is meaningless because of the  
 24 separate existence of anger and the other *passions*. If a  
 25 bad name is fixed upon because of mutual dealing, why dost  
 26 thou think there is no meaning in the name Alarka? ”\*

Jaḍa spoke.

- 24 Being thus excellently addressed by the queen, the king,  
 25 having great understanding, assented to his loved wife who  
 26 spoke correctly. And the fine-browed lady spoke to that son,  
 27 just as to the elder sons, what would arouse the intellect.  
 28 The king said to her. “Why dost thou deal thus, O foolish  
 29 one, with the temperament of my child, by giving him a mis-  
 30 chievous education as *thon didst* before to my *other* sons. If  
 31 thou shouldest do what pleases me, if my word should be ac-  
 32 cepted, then restrain this son within the path of activity. So  
 33 the path of action will not lead to utter destruction, O lady;  
 34 and so the piṇḍa offering to the pitṛis will not cease, O virtuous  
 35 one. The pitṛis dwell in the Deva-loka, they are also born as  
 brutes, they become men likewise, and they reside within the  
 class of elements. By offering the piṇḍa and water a man,  
 busied in the ceremonies, ever nourishes them, O fine-browed  
 one, both the righteous and the unrighteous, those worn out  
 with hunger, those harassed by thirst; *he nourishes* the gods  
 likewise and guests. The gods, mankind, the pitṛis, departed  
 spirits, goblins, and guhyakas, birds, worms and insects live  
 upon man indeed. Therefore, O slender-limbed, cause my son  
 to acquire thoroughly the whole duty of kshatriyas, as re-  
 gards this life and life in the next world.”

- The queen Madālasá, being thus admonished by her hus-  
 34 band, apoke to her son Alarka, with prattling words.  
 “Thrive my son! rejoice my husband’s mind with *thy* deeds,  
 35 in order to benefit friends and destroy enemies. Happy art  
 thou, my son, who alone, with never an enemy, wilt long pro-  
 tect the earth: from protecting it mayest thou have full  
 enjoyment of happiness, and from righteousness thou shalt

\* Alarka, a furious dog, or a fabulous hog with eight legs.

- 36 obtain the fruit, immortality. Mayest thou delight the  
bráhmans at the holy festivals! Mayest thou fulfil the longing  
among thy kinsmen! Mayest thou think kindly in thy heart  
for another! Mayest thou restrain thy mind from the wives  
37 of others! Please continually the gods with numerous sa-  
crifices, and the dvijas who resort to thee with wealth. And  
thou shalt long satisfy women with unparalleled affections, and  
38 thy foes with battles, O hero! As a child gladden the mind  
of thy kinsmen; and as a boy the mind of thy teacher by  
observance of his commands; as a young man gladden the mind  
of women who are the ornament of high families; as an old  
39 man the mind of the hermits in the forest. Exercising thy  
sovereignty mayest thou gladden thy friends! Guarding the  
good, mayest thou offer up sacrifices, darling! Destroying  
the wicked and thy enemies in battle, mayest thou meet thy  
death, my child, on behalf of cattle and bráhmans!"

---

## CANTO XXVII.

---

### *The Education of the Sons (continued).*

---

*Madálasá instructs Alarka in a king's duties—Enforcing especially the necessity for self-control, prudence and maintenance of the laws.*

Jaḍa spoke.

- 1 Now being talked to in this way by his mother every day,  
2 the child Alarka grew in age and intelligence. Then this son  
of Rita-dhvaja, on reaching boyhood, received investiture  
with the sacred thread, and being intelligent did obeisance to  
3 his mother and said, "What I ought to do now for happiness  
in this world and the next world, tell all that to me who am  
bowing respectfully before thee?"

Madálasá spoke.

- 4 "My child, a king inaugurated in his kingdom must in the  
first place conciliate his subjects, without obstructing his own  
5 duty. Eschewing the seven vices, which are radically injuri-  
ous, he must guard himself from his adversaries without de-



- 6 parting from good counsel. Just as a man meets destruction in eight ways from a fine-wheeled chariot, so undoubtedly does even a king without departing from good counsel.
- 7 And let him recognise the bad and good ministers through his enemies' faults; and he must strenuously trace out his
- 8 enemy's spies by spies. But a king must not confide in friends, acquaintances, or relatives; let a king trust even in
- 9 an unfriendly person, if so obliged by his affairs. A king must himself be conversant with the stationary, prosperous and deteriorating conditions of *state policy*, be familiar with the merits of the six measures of *military policy*,\* and not be enslaved by desire.
- 10 "A king must first subdue himself, and his ministers, then his dependants, and afterwards his citizens; then let him,
- 11 fight against his enemies. But he who, without having indeed conquered these, desires to conquer his adversaries, he, with his own self unsubdued and with unsubdued ministers,†
- 12 is killed by his enemies' party. A king must therefore, my son, first conquer desire and the other *passions*; for when they are conquered, victory is his assuredly; vanquished by
- 13 them, a king perishes. Desire, and anger, and covetousness, intoxication and pride, joy also, and enemies—these in truth
- 14 tend to destroy kings. Let him restrain himself, recollecting how Pāṇḍu himself was killed when engrossed in love: and how Anuhrāda‡ killed his own son through anger; and how Aila§ was killed through covetousness; how Vena|| was killed by dvijas through intoxication: how Anáyus¶ son Bali
- 16 was killed through pride; Puranjaya through joy. Recollecting how, when these were conquered, high-souled Marutta vanquished all, let a king cast out these his own faults.

\* *Vis.*, sandhi, peace; *vigraha*, war; *yāna*, marching; *śasana*, encamping; *dvaiddhī-bhāva*, dividing his forces; and *samāyaya*, alliance.

† For 'jitatma jitamātyaḥ' read 'jitatmājitamātyaḥ'?

‡ Son of Hiranya-kaśipu.

§ Purúravas.

|| A son of Anga.

¶ She was his mother.

17 "A king should learn the ways of the crow, cuckoo and  
bee, of the deer, serpent and peacock, of the goose, cock and  
18 the red goat. A king should act like an insect against an  
opponent; and a king should carry out the ways of the ants at  
19 a fitting time. A king, who possesses the natural character  
of the moon and the sun, ought to know for the sake of good  
policy the behaviour of sparks of fire and of the seeds of the  
20 seemul tree.\* And a king ought to gather wisdom from  
a courtezan, the lotus flower,† and a grasshopper, a doe-hare,  
and the breast of pregnant women, and also from a woman of  
the cow-herd caste.

21 "A king should assume the five forms of Indra, the Sun,  
Yama and the Moon, and also of the Wind in the work of  
22 government. Just as Indra *nourishes* the people on the earth  
with showers of water for four months, so should a king  
23 nourish *them* with largesses. Just as the Sun draws up the  
water with his rays for eight months, so *should* a king *collect*  
24 the tolls and other *dues* by truly subtle means. Just as Yama  
restrains friend and foe when the time arrives, so a king  
should be impartial towards friend and foe, towards the  
25 vicious and the virtuous. Just as by gazing on the full  
Moon, a man grows affectionate, so, where the people are all  
peaceful, that is the practice *he should adopt* from the moon.  
26 Just as the Wind moves mysterious among all creatures, so  
should a king move among the citizens, ministers and others,  
and among his relatives by *the agency* of spies.

27 "The king, my child, goes to Svarga, whose mind is at-  
tracted neither by covetousness, nor by love, nor by riches, as  
28 by other *motives*. The king goes to Svarga, who keeps  
within their duty erring foolish men, who are swerving from  
29 their duty. He, in whose kingdom the duties of the *four*  
classes and the *four* periods of a brāhman's life do not fall  
into desuetude, has, my child, eternal happiness after death  
30 and in a future state. A king's highest duty, and that which

\* S'ālmali; see note \* p. 82. The pods contain a quantity of silky cotton which is blown about, when the pods burst.

† *Nelumbium speciosum*; see note § p. 29.

- brings supreme felicity for him, is the maintenance among men of their own laws,\* since it is disturbed by evil-minded  
 31 men. By protecting creatures indeed a king reaches success; he who duly protects gains by his efforts a portion of righteousness."

---

## CANTO XXVIII.

---

### *The Education of the Sons (continued). Maddālasā's Exhortation.*

---

*Madālasā enunciates to Alarka the special duties of the four castes—and of the four periods of a brāhman's life—and the duties common to those four castes and periods, which must be strenuously maintained.*

Jaḍa spoke.

- 1     Having listened to that his mother's exhortation, Alarka also further questioned his mother both about the duties of the four classes, and about the duties appertaining to the four periods of a brāhman's life.

Alarka spoke.

- 2     "Thou hast expounded, gracious lady, this *the duty* relating to the system of kingly government. I wish to hear that duty which concerns the four classes and the four periods of a brāhman's life."

Madālasā spoke.

- 3     "A brāhman's *duty* is held to be threefold—liberality, study, sacrifice. There is no other fourth duty. His duty is regardless of his position. Irreproachable sacrificial and educational occupations, and the acceptance of gifts from the purified—this is fitly proclaimed his threefold means of livelihood  
 4     —this is fitly proclaimed his threefold means of livelihood  
 5     Liberality, study, sacrifice—this is declared *to be* the threefold duty of a kshatriya also: protection of the earth, and subsistence by weapons are his means of livelihood. Liberality, study, sacrifice,—that indeed is the threefold *duty* of a vaiśya

\* Dharma.

also : merchandise, and the tending of cattle, and agriculture  
 7 are his means of livelihood. Liberality, and sacrifice, obedience to dvijas, I have declared to be the threefold duty of the súdra also ; and his means of livelihood are a handicraft,  
 8 obedience likewise to dvijas, nourishing them, buying and selling. These are said to be the duties of the *four classes*.

“ Hear also the connexions among the *four periods* of a bráhma-  
 9 man's life. A man who has not erred from the duty of his own class gains perfect felicity : he goes to hell after death,  
 10 if he has served what is forbidden. And as long indeed as a dvija is not invested with the sacred thread, so long, my son, he acts, speaks and eats unrestrainedly.

11 “ When duly invested with the sacred thread, *he becomes a* brahma-c'árin in his guru's house, and he should dwell there.  
 12 I relate his duty ; hear it of me. Private study, attendance on fire, bathing, and wandering about for alms, and always *eating* that food after informing his guru and obtaining permission from him. *He should be* diligent in the guru's  
 13 business ; there should be thorough evoking of his affection ; and when summoned by him, he should read intently, his mind  
 14 withdrawn from everything else. After acquiring one, two or all the Vedas from his guru's mouth, he is authorized to *give* the  
 15 guru his fee with words of eulogy. But let him enter on the griha-stha period when desirous of the period of family life ; or, by his own wish, on the vána-prastha period and on the  
 16 fourth *period*. Or let the dvija await his decease there in the guru's house, *obedient* to the guru's son if the guru be  
 17 dead, or to the guru's disciple, if there be no son. Obedient, free from self-conceit, let him pass through the period of a brahma-c'árin.

“ Next when he has desisted therefrom, through desire for  
 18 a griha-stha's status, let him then rightly marry a wife, sprung from the family of a different\* Rishi, his equal, free from sickness, not deformed, for the sake of a griha-stha's  
 19 status. And having gained money by his own toil, let him duly

\* *A-samāna*. His family and hers should not be descended from the same Rishi. This indicates exogamy.

please the pitris, gods and guests by faith ; and also nourish  
 20 those who resort to *him*, his dependants and children, and  
 his female relatives, and the afflicted, the blind, and the out-  
 cast, the birds and the cattle,\* to the utmost of his power  
 21 with gifts of food. This is the duty of a griha-stha ; sexual  
 intercourse also at the proper season : but he should not, to  
 the utmost of his power, neglect the performance of the five  
 22 sacrifices. And let the man himself, being zealous to the best  
 of his power, together with his dependants, eat the remains  
 of the food consumed by the pitris, the gods, the guests and  
 paternal kinsmen.

23 “ Now I have declared this griha-stha period distinctly. I  
 describe to thee the duty of the vána-prastha : be it heard.  
 24 Having seen the succession of his offspring, and the stoop of  
 his body, let the wise man enter upon the vána-prastha period,  
 25 for the purpose of purifying his soul. In it *there is* the  
 enjoyment of the forest, and attraction by penances, sleep-  
 ing on the ground, sacred study, ceremonies for the pitris  
 26 gods and guests, the homa oblation, the three daily ablu-  
 tions,† the wearing matted hair and a bark dress, and dili-  
 gence in meditation unceasingly, the use of forest unguents.  
 27 This is the vána-prastha period, for the purification of sin,  
 and beneficial to the soul. But after that *comes* another, the  
 last, *period* of the bhikshu.

28 “ But hear from me the nature of the fourth period, which  
 with its peculiar duties has been described, my darling, by  
 29 high-souled *men* conversant with its duties.‡ Renunciation  
 of every association, sacred study, abstinence from anger,  
 control over the senses, no long dwelling in one habitation,  
 30 abstaining from undertakings, and eating food obtained by  
 begging once a *day*, also desire for the awakening of know-  
 31 ledge of the soul, and gazing at the soul. Now I have  
 acquainted thee with this duty in the fourth period.

“ Hear from me the common *duty* of the other classes and of

\* For *pañavas* read *c'a pañava* ?

† At dawn, noon, and sunset.

‡ For *yah sva-dharmo 'sya* read *sva-dharmo yasya* !

- 32 the periods of life. Truthfulness, purity and harmlessness, freedom from envy, and patience, mercy, generosity,\* and contentment is the eighth virtue.
- 33 "These duties have been succinctly described to thee concerning the classes and the periods of life: and a man should
- 34 stand wholly within these his own peculiar duties. And the man, who, overstepping his own duty named according to his own class or period of life, should behave otherwise,
- 35 should be punished by the king. And the king who overlooks men, who after forsaking their own duties commit sin,
- 36 loses his pious acts. Therefore a king must vigorously punish all the classes that behave contrary to their special duties, and he must keep them within their own occupations."

---

### CANTO XXIX.

---

#### *Madālasā's Exhortation (continued).*

*Madālasā explains to Alarka the position of a griha-stha—and personifies as a cow, the Vedas, pious acts, the words of the good and the words svāhā, svadhā, vashaṭ and hanta—She describes the bali offering, and utsarga oblation—the duties of a griha-stha to guests—the śrāddha—and further duties to guests—She pronounces a blessing on the griha-stha state—and quotes a song by Atri on it.*

Alarka spoke.

- 1 "And what men must do who are engaged in the griha-stha period; and what becomes confined in the absence of action,
- 2 and what increases by action; and what is beneficial to men; and what a good man should avoid at home; and how things are done—declare that accurately to me who ask."

Madālasā spoke.

- 3 "My child, a man on assuming the griha-stha status, thereby nourishes all this earth and conquers the worlds he longs for.
- 4 The pitṛis, the Munis, the gods, living things, and mankind,

\* For *akārpyanyam* read *akārpanyam* ?

and worms, insects, and flying creatures, birds, cattle, and  
 5 Asuras subsist upon the *gṛiha-stha*, and derive satisfaction  
 from him; and gaze indeed at his countenance, *wondering*,  
 'Will he give us *anything*?'

- 6 "The support of everything is this cow, my child, which con-  
 sists of the three *Vedas*, in which the universe is established,  
 7 and which is believed to be the cause of the universe. Her  
 back is the *Rig-Veda*; her loins the *Yajur-Veda*; her face  
 and neck the *Sāma-Veda*; and her horns are pious acts; her  
 8 hair the excellent words of the good; her ordure and urine  
 are tranquillity and prosperity; she is supported on feet which  
 are the *four* classes; she is the sustenance of the worlds; being  
 9 imperishable she does not wane. The word *sváhá*,\* and the  
 word *svadhá*,† and the word *vashaṭ*, my son, and the other  
 10 word *hanta* are her‡ four teats. The gods *drink* of the  
 teat which is the word *sváhá*; and the *pitṛis* of that consist-  
 ing of *svadhá*; and the *Munis* of that which is the word  
 11 *vashaṭ*; the gods, living things and Asuras, and mankind  
 drink constantly of the teat which is the word *hanta*.  
 Thus this cow consisting of the three *Vedas*, my child, fattens  
 12 them. And the man, who grievously sinning causes their  
 destruction, sinks into the hell *Tamas*,§ the hell *Andha-*  
 13 *támisra*|| and the hell *Támisra*.¶ And the man, who gives  
 this cow drink with his own children and with the immortals  
 and other *objects of worship* at the proper time, attains *Svarga*.  
 14 "Therefore, my son, a man must nourish the gods, *ṛishis*,  
 and *pitṛis* and men and living things daily, even as his own  
 15 body. Therefore having bathed and become clean he should,  
 composed in mind, delight the gods, *ṛishis* and *pitṛis*, and the  
 16 *prajā-pati* also with water at the *proper* time. And a man\*\*  
 having worshipped the gods with the fragrant flowers of the  
 great-flowered *jasmine*, should next delight *Agni*; and the  
 17 *bali* offering should also be made. Let him cast the *bali*

\* The oblation to the gods.

† The oblation to the *pitṛis*.

‡ Read *tasyáḥ* for *tasyá*.

§ Darkness.

|| Complete darkness.

¶ Deep gloom.

\*\* Read *mánavaḥ* for *mánaváḥ*.

offering to Brahmá and the Viśva-devas inside the house, and  
 18 to Dhanvantari to the north-east; let him offer the bali  
 eastward to Indra, southwards to Yama, and the bali west-  
 19 wards to Varuṇa, and northwards to Soma. And let him also  
 give the bali to Dhātṛi and Vidhātṛi at the house-door, and  
 let him give it to Aryaman outside and all around the houses.  
 20 Let him offer the bali to night-walking goblins in the air, and  
 let him scatter it to the pitṛis, standing with his face south-  
 21 ward. Then the griha-stha, being intent *and* having his mind  
 well composed, should take the water and cast it, as a wise  
 22 man, into those places for those several deities, that they may  
 rinse out their mouths.

“Having thus performed in his house the family-bali, the  
 23 pure griha-stha should perform the utsarga oblation respect-  
 fully for the nourishment of living things. And let him  
 scatter it on the ground both for the dogs, and low-caste men  
 24 and the birds; for certainly this *offering* to the Viśva-devas  
 is declared *to be one* for evening and morning.

“And then he, as a wise man, having rinsed out his mouth,  
 25 should look towards the door the eighth part of a muhūrta,  
 whether a guest is to be seen. He should honour the guest,  
 who has arrived there, with rice and other *food* and with  
 26 water and with fragrant flowers and other *presents*, according  
 to his power. He should not treat as a guest a friend, nor a  
 27 fellow-villager, nor one who bears the name of an unknown  
 family, nor one who has arrived at that time. Men call  
 28 a bráhmaṇa who has arrived, hungry, wearied, supplicat-  
 ing, indigent, a guest; he should be honoured by the wise  
 according to their power. A learned man should not inquire  
 29 his lineage or conduct, nor his private study; he should esteem  
 him, whether handsome or unhandsome in appearance, as a  
 prajā-pati. For since he stays but a transitory time, he is  
 30 therefore called an a-tithi, ‘a guest.’ When he is satisfied, the  
 griha-stha is released from the debt which arises from hospita-  
 lity. The guilty man, who without giving to the guest him-  
 31 self eats, he incurs only sin and feeds on ordure in another life.  
 The guest transferring his misdeeds to that *man*, from whose



32 house he turns back with broken hopes, and taking *that man's*  
 merit, goes off. Moreover a man should honour a guest re-  
 33 spectfully according to his power with gifts of water and  
 vegetables, or with just what he is himself eating.

“And he should daily perform the śrāddha with rice and  
 34 other *food* and with water with regard to the pitṛis and brāh-  
 mans; or he should feed a brāhman. Taking up an agra\* of  
 35 the rice, he should present it to a brāhman: and he should  
 give an alms to wandering brāhmans who ask. The alms  
 should be the size of a mouthful, the agra four mouthfuls.  
 36 Brāhmans call the agra four times a hanta-kāra.† But  
 without giving food, or a hantakāra, an agra or an alms,  
 37 according to his substance, he must not himself eat. And  
 he should eat, after he has done reverence to guests, friends,  
 38 paternal kinsmen, relatives, and petitioners, the maimed, and  
 children and old men and the sick.

“If a man consumed with hunger, or another who is destitute  
 39 wants food, he should be fed by a householder who has ade-  
 quate‡ substance. Whatever kinsman is dispirited when he  
 40 reaches a prosperous kinsman, the latter gets the sin that has  
 been done by the dispirited man. And the precept must be  
 observed at evening, and he should do reverence to the guest  
 41 who has arrived there after sunset, accordingly to his ability,  
 with a bed, a seat and food.

“Thus a weight is placed on the shoulder of one who  
 42 undertakes family life. Vidhātṛi, and the gods, and the  
 pitṛis, the great Ṛishis, all shower bliss on him, and so also  
 43 do guests and relatives: and the herds of cattle and the flocks  
 of birds, and the minute insects that *exist* besides, are satisfied.

44 And Atri himself used to sing songs on this *subject*, noble one!  
 Hear those, O noble one! that appertain to the gṛiha-stha  
 period— ‘Having done reverence to the gods, and the pitṛis  
 45 and guests, relatives likewise, and female relations, and,  
 gurus also, the gṛiha-stha who has substance should scatter

\* A measure.

† A formula of salutation, or an offering to a guest.

‡ Read *samarthe* for *samartho*?

the fragments on the ground for both dogs and low caste men  
 46 and birds: for he should certainly perform this offering to the  
 Viśva-devas evening and day. And he should not himself  
 eat flesh, rice and vegetables and whatever may have been  
 prepared in the house, which he may not scatter according to  
 the precept.' ”

---

CANTO XXX.

---

*Madālasā's Exhortation (continued).*

*Madālasā explains to Alarka the ceremonies to be performed by a griha-stha, which are of three kinds, continual, occasional and periodical—She explains the occasional śrāddha, which is celebrated for men and women.*

Madālasā spoke.

- 1 “ Now what the griha-stha's ceremonies are, the continual,  
 and the occasional, and the periodical, listen thereto, my son.
- 2 “ The continual are comprised in the five sacrifices,\* these  
 that I have described to thee: and the occasional are the  
 others, such as the ceremony on the birth of a son, and so
- 3 forth. The periodical† are recognisable by the learned as  
 the sacrifices at the moon's changes, the śrāddha and others.
- “ Here‡ I will tell thee of the occasional śrāddha celebration,
- 4 of the birth-ceremony that should be performed similarly by  
 men on the birth of a son; and everything duly related in  
 order that should be done at marriages and on other occasions.
- 5 And in this the Nāndī-mukha pitṛis§ must be worshipped;  
 and he should give the piṇḍas mixed with curds and contain-
- 6 ing barley, facing northward or eastward, with composed  
 mind making the oblation. Some men like it with the offer-

\* Brahma (i. e. Veda)-yajña, deva-yajña, pitṛi-yajña, manuṣhya-yajña, and bhūta-yajña (all created beings.)

† Read *nitya-naimittikam* for *nitya-naimittika*.

‡ Read *atra* for *tatra*?

§ Nine pitṛis, viz., the six parents, grandparents and great-grandparents on the paternal side, and the grandfather, great-grandfather and great-great-grandfather on the maternal side.

7 ing to the *Viśva-devas* omitted. And in this *ceremony* the  
 dvijas must be arranged in pairs, and must be worshipped in  
 dextral circumambulation. This is the occasional *ceremony*  
 during growth, and the other is the funeral obsequies.

8 “And the *śrāddha* for a single deceased person should be  
 performed on the day of the death; listen to that. And it  
 should be performed omitting the offering to the gods, and  
 9 with a single vessel. And the oblations-with-fire\* should not  
 be made in the fire without the ceremonies. And he should  
 10 give one *piṇḍa* to the deceased person near the fragments of  
 food, and *sesamum*-seed and water on the right, accompanying  
 them with the recollection of that person’s name. ‘May he  
 11 be exempt from decay,’ let *the celebrant* say, and ‘may enjoy-  
 ment be his,’ let *the others* delighted say, at the place where  
 the *brāhmins* are dismissed. Men must do this every month  
 12 for a year. Now at the expiration of the year, or whenever  
*the ceremony* is performed by men, the *śrāddha* for deceased  
*sapiṇḍas* must be performed for him also: so the rule is  
 13 stated; and that *must be* without the offering to the gods,  
 and accompanied with a single *argha* offering in a single  
 vessel. And that ceremony *must not be performed* there in  
 14 the fire without offering the oblations-with-fire: and on the  
 right there, he should feed the single *dvijas*.

“And there is another distinction, consisting in an extra  
 15 ceremony every month; do thou listen attentive to me, as I  
 tell *thee* of it, while it is being described. He should fill  
 four vessels there with *sesamum*-seed, perfume and water,  
 16 three for the *pitṛis*, one for the deceased person, my son.  
 And he should scatter the *arghya*-oblation in the three ves-  
 sels, and in the deceased’s vessel,† uttering the words ‘Ye  
 17 *samáná*’ &c., he should perform the rest as before.

“This *śrāddha* for a single deceased person is ordained  
 18 precisely the same for women also. The *śrāddha* for deceased  
*sapiṇḍas* does not exist for them, if they have no son. The  
*śrāddha* for a single deceased person must be performed

\* *Kvāhana*.

† Read *preta-pātre* for *preta-pātram*?

19 every year for a woman by the men, duly on the day of her death, as has been here mentioned for men.

“ But if there are no sons, the *sapiṇḍas* ; if they are wanting, the *sahodakas*,\* and those who may be the mother’s *sapiṇḍas* and those who may be the mother’s *sahodakas*, should duly perform this ceremony for a man who has no son, and for one who has begotten only a daughter. The daughters and their children should in this way perform the ceremony for the maternal grandfather. But those who are designated as the sons of two such persons should worship their maternal and paternal grandfathers fittingly with the occasional *śrāddhas*.

“ When all these relatives are wanting, the women should perform the ceremony without the mantras for their husbands ; when they too are wanting, the king should cause the ceremony to be performed by a member of his own family, and the cremation and all the other ceremonies to be performed properly by men of that caste ; for the king indeed is kinsman to all the classes.

“ Thus these continual and occasional ceremonies have been described to thee, my child. Hear the other periodical ceremony appertaining to the *śrāddha*. The new moon is just the cause there, and the time is the moon’s waning : the fixed time indicates the constancy of that ceremony.”

---

## CANTO XXXI.

---

### *Description of the Párvana Śrāddha.*

*Madálasá* mentions the seven *sapiṇḍa* ancestors, and the *lepabhujas*, and the remoter ancestors—She explains how the celebrant of the *śrāddha* nourishes them all—She enumerates the times for the *śrāddha*, and the persons who should and who should not be invited to it—She describes how the *śrāddha* should be performed.

*Madálasá* spoke.

1 “ After the performance of the *śrāddha* to deceased *sapiṇḍas*, he who is the father’s great-grandfather passes to the class of

\* The *samánodakas*.

those who feed on the lepa,\* having lost *his share* in the piṇḍa  
 2 offered to the pitṛis. He, who is the fourth there-above  
 among those who feed on the lepa bestowed by the *deceased's*  
 son, ceases to eat *thereof* and obtains the satisfaction that is  
 freed from the relationship.

3 “The father, and grandfather, and also the great-grand-  
 father—these truly must be known as the three males who  
 4 are related by the piṇḍa.† And those who are related by  
 the lepa are said to be the three others reckoning upwards  
 from the grandfather's grandfather: and the celebrant is  
 5 the seventh among them. Such have Munis declared this  
 seven-ancestral relationship to be, reckoning from the celebrant  
 upwards. And there-above are those beyond participation in  
 the lepa.

6 “Next *are classed* all the other ancestors, both those who  
 dwell in Naraka, and those who have become animals, and  
 those who reside within living creatures and other things.

7 “By what several means the celebrant, while performing  
 the śrāddha rightly, nourishes all those *ancestors*, hear that,  
 my child.

8 “Now truly *those ancestors* who have become piśac'as obtain  
 satisfaction from the food that men scatter on the ground.  
 9 Those *ancestors*, my son, who have become trees, receive satis-  
 faction from the water that drips from the bathing garment  
 10 on the ground. But the drops of water, that fall from the  
 limbs on the ground, *minister* nourishment to those *ancestors* in  
 11 the family who have attained divinity. And when the  
 piṇḍas are taken up, the particles of food that *fall* on the  
 earth,—*those ancestors* in the family who have become animals  
 12 gain nourishment therefrom. The children moreover in  
 the family who, being capable of performing religious cere-  
 monies but not having undergone the purificatory rites, are  
 burnt *on their death*, they in their distress subsist on the  
 13 scattering of the food and the water *used* in scouring. And

\* The wipings of the hands after offering the funeral oblations to the three  
 sapinḍas.

† Sapinḍas.

the water, both *that which is used* by brāhmanas for rinsing out the mouth after meals, and *that which is used by them* for sprinkling the feet,—the other *ancestors* likewise gain satisfaction indeed therefrom. So whatever water and food is scattered by the celebrant and by those dvijas, *whether it be* unsullied or fragmentary, that, my child, in the family of those who duly perform the śrāddhas, nourishes the other *ancestors* who have been born among the several creations. With the śrāddhas, which men perform with ill-gotten wealth, are satisfied *those ancestors who have been born as* c'aṇḍālas, pukkaśas and other *men of degraded castes*.

“ Thus many here derive nourishment, my child, through their relations who perform the śrāddhas, by means of the casting away of food and drops of water. Therefore a man should perform the śrāddha in faith according to rule even with vegetables : no one perishes in the family of one who performs the śrāddha.

“ I will mention the periodic times for it ; and learn of me by what rule men perform it.

“ The śrāddha must necessarily be performed on the night of the new moon, at the moon's waning every month, and on the eighth days\* also.

“ Learn of me the voluntary seasons. On the arrival of a distinguished brāhman, on an eclipse of the sun or moon, at the solstice, at the equinox, at the sun's passage from one sign into another, and on the occasion of a portent,† my son, on acquiring property worthy of a śrāddha, and on seeing a bad dream, and at occultations of the constellation or planet under which one is born, one should perform the śrāddha according to one's inclination.

“ A distinguished brāhman learned in the Veda, a yogī, one who knows the Veda, one who has mastered the Jyeshtha-sāman, one who has thrice kindled the fire Nác'iketa, one who knows the three verses which begun with 'madhu,'‡ one

\* Of three months.

† For *vyatipáte* read *vyatipáte*. This word has several other meanings, which are admissible.

‡ Ríg-V. I. 90. 6—8.

- who knows the 'tri-suparna' hymns, one who knows the six  
 24 Vedāngas, a daughter's son, a R̥itvij priest, a daughter's husband, and a sister's son, and a father-in law also, and one who is skilled in the business of the five sacred fires, and one who  
 25 is eminent in austerities, a maternal uncle, and one who is anterior to one's parents, a disciple, a relative by marriage, and a kinsman—these brāhmans are all worthy of invitation to a śrāddha.
- 26 "A religious student who has been incontinent, and a sick man, and one who has a limb superfluous or deficient, the son of a widow remarried, and a one-eyed man, an adulterine son,  
 27 and a widow's bastard, my son, a traitor to his friends, one who has bad nails, an impotent man, a man with brown teeth, a brāhman negligent of his duties, a man cursed by his father,  
 28 a slanderer, a vendor of soma juice, one who has deflowered his daughter, a medical man, and one who has discarded his guru and father, a hired teacher, a friend,\* and  
 29 the husband of a previously-married woman, one who discards the Vedas, and one who abandons the sacred fire, a man who has been corrupted by the husband of a low caste woman,† and others who habitually practise improper acts, —all these persons are verily to be shunned in ceremonies to the pitṛis, (O brāhmans.)
- 30 "The celebrant should invite the above-mentioned brāhmans on the day before, to the function performed in honour of the gods and pitṛis, and should fetch them also.
- 31 "And both he, who shall perform a śrāddha that ought to be performed by those self-controlling men, and he, who indulges in sexual intercourse after having offered the śrāddha and eaten the food,—the ancestors of these two men verily  
 32 lie down in that semen a month. Moreover he who eats at a śrāddha and he who goes to a śrāddha after intercourse with  
 33 a woman,—the ancestors of those two men feed on semen and urine for that month. Therefore a wise man must first issue

\* Bhṛitakādhyāpako mitraḥ. This seems strange.

† For *vrishali-pati-dūshitaḥ* read *vrishali-dūshitā-patiḥ*, one who has married a low-caste woman or a deflowered girl?

34 an invitation; and men who have intercourse with women before the day arrives must be shunned.

“With his mind controlled he should feast those who  
 35 have come seeking for alms, or ascetics who control themselves at the proper times, after first propitiating them with prostrations and other *reverential acts*. Just as the time  
 36 of the waning moon is dearer to the pitṛis than that of the waxing moon, so the afternoon pleases the pitṛis more than the forenoon. One should do reverence to these dvijas, who  
 37 have arrived at his house, with a welcome; and with the pavitra in hand he should seat those, who have rinsed out their mouths, on seats. In the case of the pitṛis the number of brāhmanas should be uneven, and in the case of the Gods\*  
 38 even; or, according to the circumstances of the *celebrant*, there should be one brāhman for the pitṛis and one for the Gods. In like manner for the maternal ancestors *the number of brāhmanas should be uneven or only one*. The brāhmanas intended  
 39 for the Viśva-devas may be identical *on the side of the pitṛis and maternal ancestors*; but some other men desire that they should be distinct. He should place the brāhmanas intended for the Gods with their faces toward the east, and those for  
 40 the pitṛis toward the north.† The ceremony due to the maternal ancestors has been similarly expounded by the wise.

Let the intelligent man giving kuśa grass for a seat, and  
 41 worshipping with the arghya and other offerings, giving things pure and such like, and obtaining permission from them,—let the wise dvija perform the invocation to the gods  
 42 according to the mantras. And having also given the arghya offering to all the deities with barley and water, and having duly given perfume, garlands, water and incense accompanied  
 43 with a lamp, let him both perform the whole of the dextral circumambulation for the pitṛis; and having given a double quantity of darbha grass, and having obtained permission

\* For *devat* read *daiva*.

† The text is very obscure, and seems corrupt. For this translation I am indebted to Babu Harimohan Vidyābhushan, the Pandit of the Bengal Asiatic Society.



44 from them, let the intelligent man perform the invocation to  
 the pitṛis, prefacing it with the mantras. And let him also  
 45 perform the dextral circumambulation and give the arghya  
 offering and barley and money and sesamum seed, intent  
 on pleasing the pitṛis. Then permitted by the dvijas who  
 46 say, 'Perform the ceremonies in the fire!' let him offer rice  
 unmixed with condiments or salt according to rule. The first  
 rite consists in uttering 'Sváhá!' to fire, the bearer of  
 47 oblations to the pitṛis; and let the next be 'Sváhá!' to  
 Soma who is esteemed by the pitṛis; and the third offering is  
 48 'Sváhá!' to Yama, the lord of the departed. And let him  
 put the remains of the offering into the vessels of the dvijas;  
 and taking hold of the vessels let him give the rice according  
 49 to rule. He should say affably "Ho, do ye enjoy yourselves  
 happily!"\* and then they also should eat happily, with their  
 50 minds attentive thereon and observing silence. And a man  
 should leisurely give them whatever food they like best, dis-  
 51 playing no wrath and alluring them appropriately. And let  
 him utter the mantras which vanquish the Rákshasas, and let  
 him strew the ground with sesamum seed and with white  
 mustard: for the śráddha possesses abundant devices for  
 52 protection. And let the man, permitted by the *dvijas* who say  
 "Ye are satisfied and we are satisfied by those who are  
 nourished and satisfied," scatter food everywhere on the  
 53 ground. Similarly then having obtained permission, let him,  
 with voice body and mind controlled, give *the dvijas* severally  
 54 water† to rinse out their mouths. Then, my son, let him  
 with his left hand put the piṇḍas with rice and sesamum-seed  
 on the darbha grass, near the remains of the food, for the  
 55 pitṛis. Let him composedly also give them water with the  
 part of the hand‡ sacred to the pitṛis, since O prince! he  
 56 celebrates the sacrifice with faith for the pitṛis. Similarly  
 he should, after giving the piṇḍas on behalf of the maternal  
 grandfathers according to rule, then give water for rinsing

\* For *yathá sukham* read *yathá-sukham*?

† For *ápaḥ* read *apaḥ*.

‡ Pitṛi-tīrtha, the part between the forefinger and thumb.

out the mouth together with scent, garlands &c.; and having  
 57 given the bráhmans' fee according to his ability, address  
 them "May Svadhá be fortunate!" and let him cause them,  
 who being satisfied say "Be it so!" to pronounce the Vaiśva-  
 58 devika *mantras*. Let him say "May they be pleased!" "Hail  
 to you, O Viśve devas." And on those bráhmans, saying, "Be it  
 59 so!" he should request their benedictions. He should dismiss  
 them, addressing them pleasantly and prostrating himself in  
 faith; and he should attend them as far as the door, and he  
 60 should return, a gladdened man. Then he should perform  
 the continual ceremony, and should also feed guests. And  
 some very good men wish for a continual ceremony to the  
 61 pitṛis, and others *do not wish it* for the pitṛis. He should  
 perform the remainder as the first part: some think 'not  
 with a separate cooking vessel,' some *prefer it* repeated exactly  
 62 in the same order.\* Then the celebrant should eat that rice  
 in company with his servants and others.

Thus should the man skilled in religious law perform com-  
 63 posedly the śrāddha to the pitṛis, or so as satisfaction accrues  
 to the bráhmans. There are three pure things in a śrāddha,  
 64 sesamum-seed,† sacrificial grass, and the sesamum-plant;‡  
 and they say these, (O princely bráhman,) are to be avoided,  
 65 anger, journeying, haste. A silver vessel is also commended  
 at śrāddhas, my son. Now silver is for use, for looking at and  
 for giving away; for when the offering to the pitṛis is milked  
 out in a silver *vessel*, the pitṛis give ear to the earth;§ hence  
 the pitṛis desire silver, which increases their affection.

---

\* The text seems obscure.

† Dauhitram, see note †, p. 84.

‡ Tila.

§ The text seems incorrect.

## CANTO XXXII.

*The ordinance of the Śrāddha.*

*Madālasā explains what kinds of food please the pitris at śrāddhas and for what periods—what kinds are to be avoided—what sites should be avoided for the ceremony—what men and animals should be excluded—and what defilements must be avoided—Yogīs must have priority at the śrāddha—ancient songs are to be sung—and what benefits accrue from the performance.*

Madālasā spoke.

- 1      Next hear, my son, with faith this\* that I say,—what is to be avoided in order to please the pitris, or what conduces to their pleasure.
- 2      The pitris are satisfied with clarified butter and rice for a month. The paternal grandfathers receive satisfaction with
- 3      fish-meat for two months. Venison should be known to satisfy the pitris for three months; and the flesh of hares
- 4      nourishes the pitris for four months; birds' flesh *satisfies them* for five months; hog's flesh for six months; goat's flesh for
- 5      seven months; and flesh of the black antelope† for eight months; flesh of the ruru deer gives them satisfaction for nine months, without doubt; flesh of the gayal‡ gives them
- 6      satisfaction for ten months. Moreover sheep's flesh§ satisfies the pitris for eleven months; and milk of kine or anything
- 7      made of milk *satisfies them* a year. Flesh of the rhinoceros, flesh of the red-goat, the dark tulsi plant,|| and honey, and
- 8      flesh of the rhinoceros¶ and whatever else is *given* by members

\* For *imam* read *idam*.

† For *aineyam* read *aiṇeyam*.

‡ For *gavasyāmiṣam* read *gavayāmiṣam*.

§ For *urabhram* read *aurabhram*.

|| *Kāla-śāka*: *Ocimum sanctum*, Roxb. I do not find it in Hooker.

¶ *Dauhitra*; but the rhinoceros is already mentioned.

- of their own family, and turmeric and soma juice, and a śrāddha performed at Gayā without doubt yield the pitṛis end-  
 9 less satisfaction. Śyāmāka\* grain and rāja-śyāmāka† grain, and likewise small-grained rice,‡ wild rice,§ and paushkala grain, these among grain tend to satisfy the pitṛis.
- 10 Barley, vr̥hi rice||, and sesamum-seed, and wheat, green gram,¶ and mustard, priyangu\*\* seed, kovidāra†† seed, and  
 11 the finest pulse,‡‡ markāṭaka§§ seed, rāja-māsha|||| pulse, and aṇu¶¶ grain should be eschewed at a śrāddha. Viprāshika\*\*\*  
 12 seed and lentils††† are forbidden in a śrāddha. Garlic‡‡‡ and red garlic,§§§ onions,|||| carrots,¶¶¶ asparagus,\*\*\*\* and  
 13 whatever other vegetables are shunned on account of their taste

\* This according to Roxburgh is *Panicum frumentaceum*, the Beng. *śyāmā*; but he says the Beng. *śyāmā* also denotes *P. colonum*.

† Perhaps this may be *Panicum hispidulum*, which Roxburgh says is called Beng. *bara-śyāmā*.

‡ Prasātika.

§ Nivāra.

|| The *āus*, or rainy season crop?

¶ Mudga; see note §§, p. 84.

\*\* Priyangu, *Panicum italicum*, (Roxb.) p. 101.)

†† Kovidāra, *Bauhinia variegata*; see note ||, p. 27.

‡‡ Nishpāva; see note ||, p. 86.

§§ Markāṭaka; this does not seem to be known.

|||| Rāja-māsha. Prof. Monier-Williams says this is *Vigna cutiang* (*Dolichos catjang*, Linn. and Roxb.). (Hooker, vol. II, p. 205).

¶¶ *Panicum maliaceum*, Roxb., the modern *chindā*.

\*\*\* Viprāshika; not given in the Dictionary.

††† Masūra. Prof. Monier-Williams says this is either *Ervum hirsutum* or *Cicer lens* (Roxb. p. 567). The former is the modern *masūr chandā*, and the latter *masūr*. Hooker appears to combine both in *Vicia hirsuta*, which seems to be the common Lentil (Hooker, vol II, pp. 177 and 179).

‡‡‡ Laśuna.

§§§ Gṛīnjana.

|||| Palāṇḍa.

¶¶¶ Piṇḍa-mūlaka.

\*\*\*\* Karambha, *neut*. Prof. Monier-Williams does not give the *neut*, but says *karambhā, fem.*, is *Asparagus racemosus*, which is also called *śata-mūlī*. (Roxb. p. 291; not in Hooker).

and colour; gāndhārikā\* and kadus,† salts and salted things,  
 14 and reddish juices,‡ and things that are manifestly salt—these  
 should be indeed avoided in a śrāddha. And whatever has been  
 obtained by talk or through bribes or other *improper means* is  
 not commended, nor what has been acquired from an outcaste;  
 15 and wealth that has been obtained unlawfully as the pur-  
 chase-price of a bride is forbidden in this ceremony. And  
 water that is bad-smelling and frothy, and very scanty, and  
 16 water that cattle would disdain, and what has been taken  
 by night, and what has been left after every one has cooked,  
 and what is unfit for drinking in a tank—that water should  
 17 be avoided always in the ceremony to the pitris. All milk  
 from deer, sheep, camels, and from animals that have un-  
 cloven hoofs, from buffaloes, and from the yak, and cow's  
 18 milk that is not more than ten days old,§ and what has  
 been brought to a person who has asked for it on account of  
 19 the pitris,—such milk must be always avoided by the good  
 in the śrāddha ceremony.

And in this ceremony ground must be avoided that is  
 swarming with insects, that is rough, and that has been  
 20 scorched by fire, and that is hot with the words of enemies  
 and wicked men, and that is foul-smelling.

Men who disgrace their family or who injure their family by  
 21 separating themselves from the śrāddha, naked men and crimi-  
 nals may destroy the ceremony to the pitris with their glance;  
 a eunuch, and a man repudiated by *his relations*, a cock, and  
 22 the village hog, and a dog, *each* ruins śrāddhas by his look, and  
 so also do Rākshasas.

Hence let a man offer *the ceremony* being well secluded, and

\* Gāndhārikā; not in the Dictionary. Professor Monier-Williams says gāndhāri denotes *Hedysarum alhagi* (Roxb., p. 574), and the Prickly Nightshade (which appears to be *Solanum Jacquinii*, Roxb., p. 191); but neither seems appropriate. The text as it stands seems corrupt. For *gāndhārikām* read *gandholikam*, which might mean "dry ginger"?

† Alābu; see note \* page 118.

‡ Niryāsa; or 'gums.'

§ A-nirdāsa. This seems strange.

- 23 scattering the ground with sesamum seed. Thus may safety be secured in the śrāddha even for both, my child.

What has been touched by a corpse or by a recently-delivered woman,\* and by those who have been long ill, by outcastes, and by filthy persons, does not nourish the pitris.

And the celebrant must moreover avoid the sight of a woman who is in her courses; and he must shun sitting together with bald-pated men and drunken men at a śrāddha, out of respect.

And whatever is infested with hair-lice, and whatever has been gazed at by dogs, and whatever is putrid and stale, and the brinjal,† and ferments,‡ and whatever has been fanned by the wind from clothing, are indeed to be avoided at a śrāddha.

Whatever, in the shape of articles of food possessed by thee, is given with supreme faith to the pitris according to their name and family, that becomes food for them. Hence a man of faith, who desires the pitris' satisfaction, must place the best that he has in the vessel and according to rule at a ceremony to the pitris.

And the yogis must always be fed by a wise man at a śrāddha; for the pitris are patrons of religious devotion; hence one should ever worship them. Now if a yogi is fed first, he can save the person for whom the sacrifice is offered and those who feast, just as a boat saves in water, better than thousands of brāhmans.

At this ceremony also songs in honour of the pitris are sung by those who recite the Veda, songs which were§ formerly sung by the pitris to king Purúravas. "When will any one of us have a son, the chief among his race, who, eating the remains of food left by the yogis, will offer the piṇḍa on earth? Or will offer the piṇḍa, buffalo-beef, the clarified butter, or the vegeta-

\* For *śava-sútaka-saṃsprishṭam* read *sútaká-śava-saṃsprishṭam*?

† *Vártáki*, the brinjal, *Solanum melongena*, Roxb., the modern *begun*. Prof. Monier-Williams calls it the egg-plant. It is a well-known and favourite vegetable. I do not find it in Hooker.

‡ For *abhishaváms* read *abhishavás*?

§ For *ásín* read *ásan*.

- ble *kāla*\* mixed with sesamum-seed, or khichree at Gaya for  
 34 our monthly satisfaction? May we obtain† the offering to  
 the Viśva-devas and the soma juice, buffalo-beef, and the  
 finest clarified butter, and the divine *food*‡ by getting a young§  
 rhinoceros!"
- 35 Let him duly offer the śráddha on the thirteenth day and  
 when the moon is in the asterism Maghá, and milk mixed with  
 honey and clarified butter during the winter half of the year.
- 36 Let a man therefore, my son, worship his own pitris in faith,  
 hoping to gain all his wishes and his own deliverance from  
 37 evil. Men's pitris, when delighted with śráddhas, please the  
 Vasus, the Rudras and the Adityas, the constellations, the  
 38 planets and the stars. The pitris, when delighted with  
 śráddhas, bestow long life, wisdom, wealth, knowledge,  
 Svarga, final emancipation from existence, and joys and  
 sovereignty.
- 39 I have declared to thee, my son, the śráddha ceremony  
 as it has been expounded: hear, my child, the praise of  
 the Voluntary Śráddhas according to the *various days on which*  
*they are performed.*

---

### CANTO XXXIII.

---

*The benefits to be obtained from the Voluntary Śráddhas.*

---

*Madālasá explains the benefits to be obtained from performing the śráddha voluntarily with a view to the benefits—on the various days of the lunar fortnight—and when the moon is in the different asterisms.*

Madālasá spoke.

- 1 The first day of the lunar fortnight, if the śráddha be per-  
 formed on it, is *auspicious* for the acquisition of wealth; the

\* There are many plants of this name.

† For *ánuvémahs* read *ánuvémahai*?

‡ *Āsūryam*. in the text, but it seems incorrect. Read *āsuryam* or *dsuram* from *asura*? *Āsura* is in the dictionary, but not *dsurya*.

§ *Visháṇa-varjya*, hornless.

|| *Kāmya Śráddha*.

second bestows men; and the third seeks for boons; the  
 2 fourth destroys enemies; in the fifth a man acquires fortune; in the sixth he may become worthy of worship: in the seventh he acquires chieftainship; in the eighth the highest  
 3 prosperity; in the ninth he gains women; in the tenth perfect gratification of his wishes. So let him, assiduous in  
 4 the ceremonies, gain all the Vedas in the eleventh. And in the twelfth the worshipper of the pitṛis gains continual victories, offspring, mental vigour, cattle, prosperity, independence and perfect nourishment. The man of intense faith,  
 5 who performs the śrāddha on the thirteenth day, gains length of life and sovereignty undoubtedly. Since one is successful in  
 6 śrāddhas by means of choice food, he, whose ancestors died or were slain with weapons in their youth, should, if he wishes  
 7 for their pleasure, perform the ceremony on the fourteenth day. The pure man, who performs the śrāddha diligently on  
 8 the night of the new moon, obtains all his wishes and attains Svarga everlastingly.

By worshipping the pitṛis *when the moon is in the asterism*  
 9 Kṛittikā, a man obtains Svarga. A man who wishes for offspring may obtain it *when the moon is in the asterism* Rohiṇi; and he may gain vigour *when she is in the Saumya* signs of the Zodiac;\* and he may obtain valour *when she is in the asterism* Ārdrā; and lands and other possessions *when*  
 10 *she is in Punarvasu*; and nourishment by always worshipping *when she is in Pushya*; and noble sons *when she is in Aśleshā*; and pre-eminence among his relations *when she is in Maghā*;  
 11 and good fortune *when she is in Phalgunī*.† And the man of liberal disposition obtains offspring *when she is in Uttarā Phalgunī*. A man who offers śrāddhas *when she is in Hasta*  
 12 verily attains excellence. And so a man of goodly form may obtain offspring *when she is in Cītrā*. Svāti bestows success  
 13 in trade; Viśākhā gives philoprogenitiveness. Men who perform the śrāddha *when the moon is in Anurādhā* attain imperial rule; and *when she is in Jyeshthā* lordship; and *when she is*

\* They are Taurus, Cancer, Virgo, Scorpio, and Capricornus.

† For *phalgunī* read *phalgunī*.



- 14 Múla perfect health. Acquisition of fame *comes from performing the śráddha when she is in Āshāḍhā*; and freedom from grief in Uttarā Āshāḍhā. And one gains bright worlds by performing it *when she is in Śravaṇa*; and immense wealth  
 15 *when she is in Dhanishṭhā*. One may acquire intimate knowledge of the Vedas *when she is in Abhi-jit*; and success in medicine *when she is in Śata-bhishaj*; goats and sheep by performing the ceremony in Bhādra; and amorous dalliance  
 16 in the latter part of Bhādra. And one who performs the śráddha *when she is in Revatī* acquires the baser metals; and *when she is in Āśvinī* horses; and *when she is in Bharanī* full length of life.

Hence a man who is skilled in true knowledge should perform the voluntary śráddhas at these seasons.

---

#### CANTO XXXIV.

---

##### *Alarka's Education—The exposition of Virtuous Custom.\**

---

*Madālasā mentions the benefits of the observance of Virtuous Custom—which consists in the pursuit of righteousness, wealth and love—She mentions a large number of general rules regarding religious worship, eating, social behaviour, private actions, and marriage—She gives general rules regarding the sacrifices, and describes the portions of the hand to be used therein—and mentions how one's residence should be chosen.*

Madālasā spoke.

- 1 “Thus, my son, should the gods and pitris be worshipped by a householder with the oblations to the gods and the oblations to the pitris; and with food *should* guests and kinsmen,  
 2 living creatures, all dependants, cattle, birds and ants, beggars and other petitioners *be worshipped* by the dweller in a  
 3 house, who observes the good customs and performs the domestic sacrifices, my child. He incurs sin if he neglects the periodic ceremonies.”

\* Śaṅ-āc'āra.

Alarka spoke.

- 4 "Thou hast declared to me, mother, the threefold ceremonies  
to be observed by men, the perpetual, the occasional, and the  
5 periodic.\* I wish to hear, O lady who gladdenest thy family,  
about Virtuous Custom by practising which a man gains happiness  
in the next world and in this."

Madálasá spoke.

- 6 "A householder must ever maintain Virtuous Custom thoroughly: for one who has lost Virtuous custom has no happiness  
7 here or in the next world. Sacrifice, alms-giving and austerities do not tend to the welfare of a man here, who  
8 habitually transgresses Virtuous custom. For a man who follows bad custom does not find long life here. One must earnestly follow Virtuous custom; Virtuous custom destroys  
what is inauspicious.

- 9 "I will expound to thee my son, the nature of that virtuous custom. Hear it from me with single mind, and even so maintain it.

- 10 "A householder who performs the domestic sacrifices must strive to accomplish the three-fold objects of life:† in full success therein lies the householder's own success here and in the  
11 next world. With a quarter of his Wealth let him, master of himself, lay up a store for the next world; and with half let him support himself and perform the periodic śráddhas;  
12 and treating a quarter as his capital, he should increase it, by exerting himself on his own account. Thus, my son, Wealth  
13 ought to be fruitful according to Virtuous custom. Similarly a wise man must practise Righteousness in order to withstand sin; and so also the third, Love, yields fruit here indeed on account of the next world. And the third, Love, is not impeded  
14 through fear of diminution. Love also is said to be two-fold from its not being opposed by this three-fold class. Let a man  
15 consider all these successive correlations.

- "Hear from me those opposite correlations, such as Righteousness, &c. Righteousness aims at a succession of right-

\* Nitya, naimittika, and nitya-naimittika.

† Dharma, káma and artha.

eousness.\* Righteousness is not destructive to one's own Wealth. And Love is diverse from both ; and those two again are diverse from it.

17 " At the Bráhma moment a man should think of and ponder over Righteousness and Wealth, after rising up and rinsing out his mouth, standing towards the east, self-restrained,  
18 pure : let him worship the twilight with the constellations in the east, the twilight with the sun in the west, as is right : he should not neglect it even when free from adversity.

19 " He should eschew conversation with the wicked, falsehood, and harsh speech, evil books, evil words and the homage of evil, my son.

20 " Evening and morning, with soul restrained he should offer the homa oblation.

" He should not gaze up at the orb of the sun at sunrise or at sunset.

21 " He should look in a mirror in order to dress his hair ; he should wash his teeth ; and delight the gods in the very forenoon.

22 " He should not defecate or void urine in a path leading to the villages, to temples, to places of pilgrimage or to the fields, nor on cultivated ground, nor in a cattle-pen.

23 " He should not gaze at another's wife naked. He should not look at his own ordure. He should avoid seeing, touching and talking with a woman in-her-courses.

24 " He should not void urine, or defecate, or engage in sexual intercourse in water.

25 " He should not step on ordure, urine, hair, ashes or potsherds : and a wise man should not step on husks, charcoal, bones or decayed things, or on rope, clothing, &c., whether on a road, or on the earth.

26 " Moreover a householder should do reverence to the pitris, gods and mankind, and to living creatures, according to his  
27 capability, and afterwards eat himself. And a man should always eat his food, facing the east or the north, with his

\* Or, brings wealth as a consequence of righteousness.

mouth well rinsed out, restraining his speech, pure, with his mind intent on his food and *with his face* between his knees.

- 28 “An intelligent man should not divulge another’s fault except in the event of injury.

“Food should be avoided in which salt is visible, and which is very hot.

- 29 “A man of self-control should not defecate nor void urine while walking or standing.

- 30 “And he should not eat anything at all while rinsing out his mouth. While he has remains of food in his mouth, he should not carry on any conversation and he should cease his reading, and he should not touch a cow, a bráhmaṇ, fire, or his own head :

- 31 “Nor should he look at the sun or the moon or the constellations with passionate desire.\*

“And he should avoid a broken seat and bed and cup.

- 32 “He should offer a seat to gurus, accompanying *the offer* with rising up and other respectful acts ; and he should salute them respectfully and converse *with them* agreeably ; and he should follow them. He should not speak about them adversely.

“And when clad in a single garment he should not eat nor engage in the worship of the gods.

- 34 “An intelligent man should not carry dvijas, nor should he void urine in fire, nor should he ever bathe or sleep naked.

- 35 “And he should not scratch his head with both hands ; nor  
36 should men wash their heads frequently without cause. And when his head is washed he should not touch his body with oil at all.

“And he should cease his own reading, when every one is abstaining from reading.

- 37 “He should never void urine against a bráhmaṇ, the wind, cattle or the sun ; facing north by day, and facing south by  
38 night, he should do his voidance of urine and fæces during illness† whenever he desires.

\* Kámasútra.

† For *abádhdhāshu* read *ábádhdhāsu*.

“He should not talk of his guru’s evil-doing, and he should  
39 appease him when angry. He should not listen to abuse  
when others utter it.

“And he should yield the path to bráhmans, to the king, and  
40 to one who is ill with pain, to his superior in learning, to a  
pregnant woman, to a man labouring under a burden, to a  
younger man, to the dumb, blind and deaf, to a drunken man,  
41 and to a mad man, to a prostitute, to an enemy, to a child and  
to an outcaste.

“An intelligent man should respectfully circumambulate a  
42 temple, and a fig-tree standing on a sacred spot, and a place  
where four roads meet, his superior in learning, a guru and  
a god.

“He should not carry shoes, clothes, garlands &c. that  
others are carrying.

43 “He should avoid the sacred thread, an ornament, and the  
water-pot on the fourteenth, eighth and fifteenth days of the  
44 moon and at its four changes. He should also eschew rub-  
bing his body with oil, and sexual intercourse with his wife,  
on those days.

“And a wise man should never stand with his foot or his leg  
45 extended: nor should he throw out both his feet; nor should  
be press one foot on the other.

46 “He should eschew deadly attacks, abuse and calumny. A  
clever man should not display deceit, self-conceit, or sharp-  
ness. He should not disgrace with ridicule fools, insane per-  
47 sons, or those in calamity, the deformed, or magicians, or those  
who have limbs deficient or superfluous.

“He should not inflict punishment on another in order to in-  
struct a son or disciple.

48 “Likewise the wise man should not draw his seat towards  
him and sit down.

“He should not prepare a cake, khichree or flesh for himself.  
49 He must have his food evening and morning, after doing re-  
verence to his guests.

“Facing eastwards or northwards, restraining his voice, he  
50 should always wash his teeth, my child.

“He should eschew the prohibited vegetables.

- 51 “A man should certainly not sleep with his head to the north, nor with his head to the west; he should sleep, placing his head to the north east or east.

- “He should not bathe in perfumed water, nor at night; bathing except by day is declared to be most potent for calamity; nor when he has not bathed, should he wipe his limbs with a cloth or with his hands. Nor should he shake his hair, nor should he shake his clothes.\* Nor should an intelligent man, when he has not bathed, ever apply unguents.

- 54 “Nor should he wear red clothing, nor even variegated or black clothing: nor should he make a complete change of his  
55 clothing or in his ornaments. And transparent† raiment should be avoided, and also whatever is very much damaged, and *whatever* is infested with lice, or has been trampled on,  
56 or has been looked at by dogs, and has been licked or thrown down, or has been befouled by the extraction of pus.

- “He should never eat flesh from the back, or flesh unfit for  
57 the gods and pitris, or prohibited flesh, my son, or things which are visibly salt. Food that is long stale or that is not  
58 fresh must be avoided, my royal son, because of the changes that occur in flour, vegetables, sugarcane and milk; and meat long stale must be avoided, because of the change‡ that occurs in it.

- 59 “He should avoid lying down at sunrise and sunset.

- “Not when unbathed, nor when reposing, nor while thinking  
60 of other things, nor when sitting on his bed or on the earth, nor when making a sound,§ nor when clad in a single garment,  
61 nor when speaking, nor without giving to spectators, but when bathed a man should eat evening and morning according to rule.

- 62 “A wise man should not resort to other men’s wives. Adultery destroys the religious acts and the life of man. Nothing

\* For *vāsast* read *vāśamsi* ?

† For *vidāsam* read *viśadam* ? I do not find *vidāsa* in the dictionary.

‡ For *vikāramāc’a* read *vikārac’a* ?

§ For *śabdarat* read *śubdayan* ?

63 indeed is so short-lived in the world, as a man's intercourse  
with another's wife here.

“ Let him perform the worship of the gods, and the cere-  
64 monies to fire, and the respectful salutation to his guru, and  
also the ceremony of eating his food, after duly rinsing out his  
65 mouth. Facing eastwards or northwards he should reverent-  
ly rinse out his mouth, my son, with frothless, inodorous, pure  
66 and holy water. He should avoid the five earths from be-  
neath water, from a habitation, from an ant-hill, from ground  
infested with mice, and where purificatory actions &c. have  
been carried on. After washing his hands and feet and sprink-  
ling water on them he should, *with his face* between his knees,  
67 and composed mind, rinse out his mouth. He should drink  
water three or four times after twice wiping the sides of his  
68 mouth, the apertures of the body, and his head. After duly  
rinsing out his mouth with water, being pure, he should per-  
form the ceremony to the gods, the *ṛishis*, and the *pitṛis* di-  
69 ligently. A man should always perform *the ceremonies*, pre-  
serving a composed mind. A wise man should rinse out his  
mouth, after he has sneezed, or spitten out, or donned his  
70 raiment. After a sneeze, and licking, and a vomit, and spitting  
&c., he should rinse out his mouth, touch a cow's back, and  
71 look at the sun; and he should hold up his right ear, since  
this is in his power; in the absence of the former, he should  
72 do the latter; if the former be wanting, it is desirable to do  
the latter.

“ He should not gnash his teeth, nor beat his own body.

73 “ He should also avoid sleep, reading and food at both  
twilights; and sexual intercourse and setting out on a journey  
at the evening twilight.

74 “ In the fore noon, dear son, he should in faith perform his  
worship to the gods, and at noon to men, and in the afternoon  
75 to the *pitṛis*. And with head bathed, he should perform the  
ceremonies to the gods or the *pitṛis*. And he should trim his  
beard facing eastwards or northwards.

76 “ He should eschew a maiden although well-born, if she is de-  
formed, or sickly, or disfigured, or tawny-coloured, or talkative,

77 or contaminated by everybody. And one who is free from deformity, who has a beautiful nose, and is marked with all the auspicious marks—such a maiden as that should a man  
78 always marry who desires welfare. He should marry one who is in the seventh or fifth degree distant from his parents : he should guard his wife, and he should shun jealousy, by day, in sleep and in sexual intercourse.

79 “He should avoid a deed that causes pain\* to others, and the infliction of pain on living creatures.

“A woman, during menstruation, should be avoided by all  
80 the castes for four nights. He should avoid just the fifth night of the moon in order to avoid the birth of females : then let him approach his wife on the sixth night, that night is the  
81 best among the even nights, my son. Sons are begotten on the even nights, daughters on the odd nights : therefore a wise man who wishes for a son should always cohabit with his  
82 wife on the even nights. Lawless men cohabit with their wives in the morning, and eunuchs at evening.

“After shaving, and vomiting and sexual intercourse, my  
83 son, the wise man should resort to the place where bodies are burnt† and should bathe, keeping his clothes on.

“One should not revile or ridicule the gods, the Vedas,  
84 or dvijas, good, truthful or magnanimous men, a guru, or devoted and virtuous wives, or persons who are sacrificing or  
85 performing austerities my son. One should never listen to those unmannerly persons who do such things.

“One should not mount on a high bed or seat, nor on a low one.

86 “One should neither dress unbecomingly, nor speak unbecomingly. One should be clad in pure white raiment, and adorned with white flowers.

87 “Neither with the haughty, nor with the insane, nor with fools, nor yet with the unmannerly should a wise man form friendship ; nor yet with those of bad disposition, nor yet with  
88 those who are corrupted with thieving and other vices, nor yet

\* Upa-tápaka ; not in the dictionary.

† Kaṣṭha-bhūmi.



with spend-thrifts, nor with the covetous, nor yet with enemies,  
 nor with prostitutes, nor with inferiors, nor with the husbands  
 89 of prostitutes. He should never make *friendship* with the  
 mighty, nor with inferiors, nor with reprobates, nor with the  
 90 ever-timid, nor yet with fatalists. He should contract friend-  
 ship with good men, with those who always observe Virtuous  
 custom, with the wise, with the honest, with the powerful,  
 with those who are resolute in action.

91 "In company with one's friends, the initiated, the king,  
 Snátaka brahmans, and one's father-in-law, one should do re-  
 verence to the R̥itvij priest, and the five other venerable per-  
 92 sons and to guests. One should do reverence, my son, to  
 dvijas, who have dwe for a year, with an offering of honey  
 and milk according to one's ability and with alacrity at fitting  
 93 times. And the brahman who desires bliss should observe  
 their governance, and if intelligent he should not contradict  
 them even though always scolded by them.

94 "Having performed the household worship properly in the  
 fitting place and in due order, he should next worship the fire  
 95 and offer it the oblations in due order. He should make the  
 first offering to Brahmá, and then to the prajā-pati, and the  
 96 third to the Guhyas, and the next to Kaśyapa. Then having  
 offered to Anumati\* he should next offer the household bali  
 and the constant oblations, that I have already explained to  
 97 thee, according to the ritual. Next he should make the offer-  
 ing to the Viśva-devas, then the offerings to all creatures, and  
 separately to the gods according to place and apportionment.  
 98 And he should make the three oblations to Parjanya, the  
 Dharitrís, and to Mánaka,† and to Váyu in every direction,  
 99 to the east and other regions of the sky in due order; and to  
 Brahmá, to the Air and to the Sun in order, and to the Viśva-  
 100 devas and to all beings; and then he should offer to the  
 Dawn, and to Śiva northwards; and southwards to the pitris,  
 101 exclaiming 'Svadhá, reverence!' Having done it on the

\* The fifteenth day of the moon's age, personified.

† This is said to *Arum Indicum*, the Beng. *mún-ka-nu*, the stems and  
 tubers of which are generally eaten (Roxb., p. 625)

- right and to the north west, saying, 'O Yakshma,\* this is for thee!' he should, if he wishes, offer the remains of the food and the water from the vessel according to the rule. Then taking up the first part of the food, he should offer it with the benediction Hanta to the brahman according to the rule and justice.
- 103 "He should perform the ceremonies to the gods and other *objects of worship*, with each one's special portion of the hand according to rule; and he should perform the ceremony of rinsing out the mouth with the portion of the hand sacred to Brahmá.
- 104 This is called the portion of the hand sacred to Brahmá for the purpose of rinsing out the mouth, *viz.*, a line drawn to the
- 105 left of the thumb of the right hand. The pitris' portion of the hand is said to be the part between the forefinger and the thumb; by that he should offer the water and other obla-
- 106 tions to the pitris, except in the nándi-mukha śráddha. And the gods' portion of the hand is at the tips of the fingers; the ritual of ceremonies to the gods should be performed therewith. The prajā-pati's portion of the hand is at the root of the little finger, his ceremony must be performed† therewith.
- 107 Thus always with these portions of the hand sacred to the gods and pitris, he should always perform the ceremonies,
- 108 never with any other portion of the hand. It is proper always to rinse out the mouth with the *portion of the hand* sacred to Brahmá; and to *offer* the oblation to the pitris with the *portion of the hand* sacred to the pitris; and that to the gods with the portion of the hand sacred to the gods; and the offering to the prajā-pati with his own *portion of the hand*.
- 109 A wise man should perform the cake-and-water ceremony to the nándi-mukha ancestors, and whatever is *offered* to the prajā-pati, with the *portion of the hand* sacred to the prajā-pati.
- 110 "A sensible man should not carry water and fire at the same time; nor should he thrust out both his feet towards guru and the gods.

\* Pulmonary disease.

† Read káryam for káyam?

111 "He should not look at a neifer sucking.

"He should not drink water with the hands joined together.

"At all periods of personal purification whether important  
112 or unimportant, he should not delay for the sake of purification.

"He should not blow the fire with his mouth.

"One ought not to take up one's abode, my son, where  
113 four things do not exist, *viz.*, a person who pays debts, and a physician, a bráhmán learned in the Vedas, and a river full of water. Where there is a king who has vanquished his  
114 foes, who is powerful, and who is devoted to righteousness, there should a wise man always dwell: whence *can come* happiness, when the king is worthless? Where the king is  
115 unassailable, where the earth is prolific, where the citizens are well governed and always practise justice, where folk are  
116 charitable, there does residence bestow happiness. In a country where the husbandmen are not generally gluttonous, and where all medicinal herbs *are procurable*, there should a  
117 sensible man dwell. One ought not, my son, to dwell there, where these three things are constant, a person desirous of conquering, and a former enemy, and folk who are always  
118 holding festival. A wise man should always dwell among good-tempered neighbours.

"Thus, my son, have I, thy well-wisher, expounded this to thee."

---

## CANTO XXXV.

---

*The education of Alarka (continued).*

---

*An exposition of things permitted and forbidden.*

---

*Maddasá describes what food may be eaten and what not—how various things are to be cleansed when impure, and what things are always pure—how one who has contracted impurity should purify himself—what actions and conduct one should avoid—*

*She insists on the necessity of maintaining the daily sacrifice—She mentions what holidays are allowed the various castes—She describes certain post-funeral ceremonies—and purification after deaths and births.*

---

Madálasá spoke.

- 1 Next do thou hearken to the remedial measures for things forbidden and permitted. Rice should be eaten that has been
- 2 kept awhile, mixed with oil, and long stored; and wheat, barley, and butter-milk and preparations thereof unmixed with oil. The hare, the tortoise, the go-sámp,\* the porcupine,
- 3 and the rhinoceros, my son,—these indeed may be eaten; and the domestic pig and fowl should be eschewed. The remains of food at a *śráddha* after the *pitrís* and gods and other recipients have been satisfied may be eaten at the desire of the
- 4 *bráhmans*. A man who eats flesh that has been killed for the purpose of medicine is not defiled.
- 5 Shells, stones, gold, and silver, ropes, and garments, and vegetables, roots and fruits, and wicker-work vessels and leather, and gems, diamonds and coral, and pearls, and men's bodies are best cleansed with water; just as iron things with
- 6 water, and stone by scrubbing. Oily vessels are cleansed with warm water, and winnowing baskets, grain and antelope-skins;
- 7 and the pestle and mortar for husking rice, and thick cloths, and a *storo* by sprinkling; and all kinds of bark-made things
- 8 are best cleansed with water and earth. Grass, wood and medicinal herbs are best cleansed by sprinkling; and all
- 9 woollen things and hair have ceremonial purity. White mustard is cleansed with oily sediment or the sediment from
- 10 *sesamum* seed. Things that are injured are always cleansed
- 11 with water, my son. So also cotton things are cleaned with water and ashes. Timber, ivory, bone and horn are best
- 12 cleaned by scraping. Earthen pots are purified ceremonially by re-burning.

Pure are alms, a workman's hand, wares for sale, and a

\* *Godhá*, the *Go-sámp* a very large kind of lizard found in jungle.

13 woman's face, whatever passes along the high-road, what is  
 unknown, what is brought by slaves and other *menials*, what is  
 admirable for its sound, what is long past, what is screened by  
 14 many, what is light, what is extremely abundant, what is  
 young, and what is done by the old and the sickly, kitchens  
 when the business in them is ended, women who are suckling  
 15 children. Pure also are running water, and odourless bubbles.

The ground is cleansed through time, by the rubbing of  
 16 bodies, and the passage of cattle, by smearing, by digging,  
 by watering, by houses, by sweeping and by worship.

Things infested with hair-lice, or sniffed at by cattle, or  
 17 infested with flies should be sprinkled with earth water and  
 ashes to be cleansed, my son; things made of udumbara  
 18 wood\* with vinegar; tin and lead with salt. Brass things  
 are cleared with ashes and water; and the over-flows of fluids  
 are pure. A thing soiled by ordure is *cleaned* with earth and  
 19 water and by removing the smell; and other such-like things  
 by removing the colour and smell.

Water is pure that has satisfied cattle, that is in its natural  
 20 state, that is lying on the earth; and likewise flesh that has  
 been slain by C'andálas, Kravyádas and others. And clothes  
 and other things lying on the high-road are said to be made  
 21 pure by the wind. Dust, fire, a horse, a cow, the shade, the  
 rays of the sun and moon, the wind, the earth, drops of water,  
 and mosquitoes and other *insects* inflict no contamination  
 though they may have been in contact with what is corrupt.  
 22 A goat and a horse are pure as regards their face; but the face  
 of a cow or calf is not pure when the mother is in milk; a hawk  
 23 is pure when it knocks f uit down. A seat, a bed, a carriage,  
 boats, and grass on the road—they are purified by the rays of  
 the moon and sun and by the wind, in the same way as articles  
 of trade.

24 After walking along the high road, and after matters of  
 bathing, hunger, drinking, and weariness, one should change

\* Udumbara, *Ficus glomerata*, Roxb.; a large tree, common about villages  
 (Roxb. p. 646.)

- 25 one's clothes and duly rinse out one's mouth. Bad roads,\* mud, and water, when one comes into contact with them, are cleaned by leaving them alone; and things made of mud or brick† are cleansed by contact with the wind.
- 26 On taking up a morsel of rice-food that has been damaged through over-maturity, he should discard it, and should rinse out his mouth with water and earth, and should sprinkle the
- 27 remainder with water. One who has eaten bad food whether wittingly or unwittingly, should fast for three nights in order to assuage‡ that fault.
- 28 After touching a menstruous woman, a horse, a jackal, and other *animals*, or a woman recently delivered of a child, or people of low caste, one should bathe for the sake of purification; and so should those who have carried a corpse. After
- 29 touching an oily human bone a man becomes clean when he has bathed; *after touching a dry human bone* he becomes clean by rinsing out his mouth, *or, by touching a cow, or by gazing*
- 30 *at the sun.* Moreover one should not disregard blood, spittle, and unguents for the body.
- A wise man should never stand in gardens and other
- 31 places in the afternoons. Nor should one hold converse with a woman hated by the populace or with a widow.
- One should cast remnants of food, ordure, urine and the water used for washing the feet, outside the house.
- 32 Without taking up five piṇḍas one should not bathe in another man's water; one should bathe in holy ponds, and in the Ganges, in lakes and rivers.
- 33 After touching or holding converse with blasphemers of the gods, pitris, and holy śāstras, sacrifices, prayers and other *sacred objects*, one should purify one's self by gazing at the
- 34 *sun.* And after looking at a menstruous woman, a śúdra, an outcaste, or a dead body, the unrighteous, a woman recently delivered of a child, a eunuch, a naked person, and persons
- 35 of low caste, and on those who give away children, and

\* Vi-rathyá; not in the dictionary. ‡ For *vpaśumena* read *vpaśamāya*?

† Ishṭa, brick?

on the paramours of other men's wives, the wise must indeed perform this purification of themselves. One conversant with righteousness, after touching forbidden food, a woman recently delivered, a eunuch, a cat, a rat, a dog or a cock, and an outcaste, what is cast away, a C'andāla, and those who carry away corpses, is purified by bathing; and so also *one who has touched a woman in her courses, and the domestic hog, and even two men who have been contaminated by the impurity of a newly-delivered woman.*

The base man, both he who daily neglects the continual ceremony, and he who is abandoned by brāhmanas, is polluted. One should never allow the continual ceremony to cease; but if it is neglected, there is a stoppage to the re-birth of his deceased relatives.

A brāhman should spend ten days, exempt from alms-giving, the Homa sacrifice and other *pious acts*: and a kshatriya should spend twelve days: and a vaisya half a month; but a śūdra should remain a month, exempt from his peculiar occupation: thereafter all should pursue their own occupation, as already expounded.

Water ought to be presented to a departed person, after his body has been burnt outside by his relatives,\* on the first, and fourth, seventh and ninth days of the moon. His relatives should gather together the ashes and bones on the fourth day; it is prescribed that after gathering them together, they should touch their limbs with them. But the sahodakas should perform all the ceremonies, after the gathering together of the remains. If the sapinḍas are touched by them, then both the sapinḍas and the sahodakas lose their purity.†

If a person dies directly of his own free will, by the sword, by water, by hanging, or by fire, by poison, by a fall, or in any other *unnatural way*, or by religious fasting to death, or by fasting to death from vindictive motives;‡ or if he

\* Gotrika.

† For *mṛitāhani* read *mṛijā-hānis*.

‡ For verse 45 of the text read—

*Anvaksham ic'c'hayā fastra-toyodbandhana-vahnishu  
Visha-prapātādi-mṛite prāyanāsanayor api.*

46 dies as a child, or as a sojourner in a foreign country, or as a religious mendicant, purification will be effected at once; and others say the period of impurity\* is declared to be three days  
 47 for the *sapiṇḍas*; but if, after the other person is dead, the *sapiṇḍa* also dies, in this case the ceremonies must be performed during the days called the period of the first impurity.

48 This same ordinance is applied also to the impurity caused by the birth of *sapiṇḍas*, among *sapiṇḍas* and properly among  
 49 *sahodakas* also. When a son is born, the father must bathe with his clothes on. And if, after one *child* has been born  
 50 there, another should be born, the purification in that case also is prescribed according to the days of the elder-born *child*.

When ten or twelve months or half a month have elapsed,  
 51 all the castes should duly perform their respective rites and ceremonies. Next the *ekoddishṭa śrāddha* should be performed  
 52 for the departed person. And men of understanding must give gifts to the *brāhmanas*; whatever is most desired in the world, and whatever is prized at home, those very things  
 53 therefore must one who hopes for immortality give to a *brāhman* endowed with good qualities: but at the end of the days, after they have touched water, a chariot, a weapon, a goad  
 54 and a rod, and after they have performed the ceremonies, they should make the oblation† ordained by the laws of their  
 55 respective castes, and *perform* all pure acts that confer bliss in the next world and in this.

A wise man must study the three *Vedas*, and must be continually occupied therein; he must amass riches righteously, and strenuously perform sacrifices; and he must fearlessly do  
 56 whatever does not entail censure on the soul of him who does it, my son, and whatever ought not to be concealed in public. The good man that so does, my child, brings splendour to his home by acquiring righteousness wealth and love.

The text appears to be corrupt. This amended reading is taken from a private MS. consulted by the pandit of the Bengal Asiatic Society for me, but *práyānas'anayor* seems preferable.

\* *A-sauc'akam*; not in the dictionary.

† For *upādānam* read *upadānam*?



## CANTO XXXVI.

*The Story of Madālasā (concluded).*

*Rita-dhvaja Kuvalayāśva on reaching old age resigns his kingdom to his son Alarka, and Madālasā gives him a token-ring—Both depart to the forest to practise austerities.*

Jaḍa spoke.

1      Being thus instructed by his mother, Rita-dhvaja's son at-  
2      tained his youth and duly married a wife, and begat sons,  
3      and as a lord offered sacrifices, and always closely observed  
4      his father's commands. Then after a long time Rita-dhvaja,  
5      on reaching extreme old age, anointed his son in the sovereign-  
6      ty, and with righteous soul desirous to depart to the forest to  
7      practise austerities in company with his wife descended from  
8      his throne, a mighty protector, an illustrious king.

9      And Madālasā delivered this her last discourse to her son,  
10     in order that her son might abandon attachment to sensual  
11     pleasures.

Madālasā spoke.

12     "When intolerable pain, arising from separation from thy  
13     dear kinsmen, or caused by the opposition of thy enemies, or  
14     springing from the destruction of thy wealth or from thy own  
15     self, may befall thee as thou rulest thy kingdom, observing the  
16     laws of a householder—for the householder who depends on  
17     selfishness makes unhappiness his abode—then, my son, draw  
18     forth and read from this ring that I have given thee the  
19     writing that is inlaid in delicate letters on the plate."

Jaḍa spoke.

20     So saying, she gave him a golden ring, and the blessings  
21     appropriate for a man who lives the family life. Then  
22     Kuvalayāśva and his queen Madālasā, bestowing on their son  
23     the kingdom, departed to the forest to practise austerities.

## CANTO XXXVII.

*The conversation between the Father and Son (continued).*

*The discrimination of the Soul.*

*Alarka ruled righteously and prosperously, but was greatly addicted to pleasure—His brother Subáhu, wishing to correct him, formed an alliance with the king of Kási—Both attacked Alarka to wrest the kingdom from him, and reduced him to great straits—In his distress he looks at Madálasá's token-ring and seeks relief from Dattátreya—He explains to Dattátreya wherein lies his suffering, and launches into a metaphysical disquisition on the soul, the mind, the body, and pleasure and pain.*

Jada spoke.

1      And Alarka also, righteous in soul, protected justly and  
like children his glad people who practised each his own  
2      business. Inflicting punishment on the wicked, and worthily  
affording protection to the peaceable, he experienced intense  
delight; and he offered great sacrifices.

3      And there were born to him sons, mighty and valiant,  
righteous in soul, magnanimous, who were adversaries to evil  
4      conduct. And he amassed wealth by means of righteousness,  
and righteousness again by means of wealth; and since those  
5      two things are not antagonistic, he enjoyed even the pleasures  
of sense. Thus many years passed away as if but a single day,  
6      while he ruled the earth, devoted to righteousness, wealth  
and the gratification of his desires. No feelings of indifference  
occurred while he enjoyed his loved objects of sense; nor  
again did he grow satiated in amassing righteousness and  
wealth.

7      His brother Subáhu, who roamed the forests, heard that he  
was thus besotted in his attachment to pleasure, and uncon-  
8      trolled in his senses. The prince, being desirous of admon-  
ishing him, pondered long and concluded that an alliance on  
his part with the king's enemies would be beneficial to the

- 9 king. Then he cleverly made repeated visits to the king of  
Káśí, who had numerous armies and chariots, as his protector,  
in order to regain his kingdom.
- 10 That king collected together his army against Alarka, and  
despatched a messenger to demand that the kingdom should be  
11 gived up to Subáhu. Alarka refused, cognizant of his own  
justice, to give up the kingdom then in obedience to that com-  
mand, and returned answer to the messenger of the king of  
12 Káśí;—"Let my elder brother come to me with affection and  
ask for the kingdom for himself. I will not yield up the  
13 smallest bit of territory through fear on an attack." Even  
wise Subáhu made no request then. Supplication is not the  
duty of kshatriyas, for he was mighty in valour.
- 14 Then the king of Káśí accompanied by all his army  
15 marched to attack the country of king Alarka. And forthwith  
forming a close union with the contiguous kings he attacked  
with some of their many vassals, and reduced him to  
16 subjection. And without harassing Alarka's neighbouring  
kings by molesting their realms, he thus subjugated both the  
17 governors of the fortresses and the forest tribes. He re-  
duced into submission some kings by bribes, and some by  
creating dissension, and others who were well-affected towards  
Alarka by conciliation.
- 18 Then the king with his small army, harassed by the adver-  
sary's host, found his treasury depleted extremely by the foe  
19 that blockaded his city. And being thus straitened and with  
his treasury diminishing daily, he fell into intense dejection  
20 and perplexity of mind. After suffering the keenest pain, he  
then bethought him of the ring, about which his mother Ma-  
21 dālasá had formerly spoken to him. Then bathing and puri-  
fying himself, he addressed the bráhmans, and drawing out  
22 the ring saw the motto thereof in clear characters. The king  
pronounced what his mother had written thereon, while the  
hair of his body was visibly standing erect, and his eyes were  
23 expanded with joy:—"Association must be shunned by every  
† v soul; if to shun it be impossible, it should be formed with the  
24 good, for association with the good is a panacea. Love must

be shunned by every soul; if to eschew it be impossible, it should be displayed towards the desire for final emancipation from existence, for that desire is a cure therefor.'

- 25 Now having exclaimed repeatedly, 'How can men really  
 attain bliss?', and having decided that it was through the de-  
 sire for final emancipation since that desire is appropriate\*  
 26 thereto, the king next pondering upon association with the  
 good, and suffering the most poignant grief, visited illus-  
 27 trious Dattátreya. On meeting him, magnanimous, stainless  
 and devoid of attachments, he prostrated himself and wor-  
 28 shipped him and addressed him with propriety; "O bráh-  
 man! show me favour, thou who art the refuge of refuge-  
 seekers! Remove affliction from me, who am in affliction, and  
 over-addicted to desires."

Dattátreya spoke.

- 29 "At once indeed do I remove thy affliction, O king. Tell  
 me truly, wherefore hast thou that affliction, O king?"

Jaḍa spoke.

- 30 Being thus addressed by that wise *Muni*, the king pondered  
 31 over the seat and the nature of his three-fold affliction. The  
 king, being noble in intellect, held long and repeated delibera-  
 tion with his soul, being steadfast the while, and then laughing  
 spoke thus:—

- 32 "It is not myself, nor the earth, nor the sea, nor the stars,  
 nor the wind, nor the air; but I wish for happiness in bodily  
 33 concerns. Pleasure and pain pass to deficiency or excess in  
 this body composed of five elements: what welfare should  
 34 I not get, if such I might have, in another body wherein I  
 should possess a constant and perfect good-disposition and  
 should be raised and depressed through inequalities? Moreover a man of self-denial is perceived by his difference  
 35 from others. And so does bodily pleasure or pain generate a  
 good disposition in one who looks upon the subtle third por-  
 36 tion which exists merely a moment? Since pain dwells in  
 the mind,† and pleasure again is a mental thing; therefore

\* For *tatsangato* read *tatsangatá*?

† *Manas*.

neither pain nor pleasure belong to the Ego ; for the Mind is  
 37 not the Ego. Inasmuch as neither Self-consciousness,\* nor  
 Mind, nor Intellect† is the Ego, why then does the in-born  
 38 pain in something else affect me ? Since the Ego is not the  
 Body, nor the Mind, the Ego is distinct from the Body and  
 the Mind. Therefore let pleasures and pains dwell in the  
 39 Mind or in the Body ; how is the Ego concerned hereat ? If  
 my elder brother covets the sovereignty over this body, it is  
 an aggregate of five elements. How then is my Self concerned  
 with the action of the qualities therein ? He when seated  
 40 therein and I are distinct as regards the Body. He who alto-  
 gether lacks hands and other organs, flesh, bones and head,  
 what connexion, even a slight one, has that man here with  
 41 elephants, horses, chariots and other treasures ? Hence my  
 Self has no foe, it has no pain, it has no pleasure, nor city, nor  
 treasury, nor army composed of horses, elephants, &c., neither  
 has he, nor a third person, nor any one, nor have I *any of*  
 42 *these things*. For as the air that occupies the orb‡ of a small  
 water-jar and a pitcher, though one, is perceived in many  
 ways, so Subáhu and the king of Kási and I, methinks, are  
 perceived among bodies by bodily differences."

---

 CANTO XXXVIII.
 

---

*The conversation between the Father and Son (continued).*

*A series of questions.*

---

*Dattátraya moralizes on the consciousness of Self and its results, under the parable of a tree, and asserts the non-materiality of the Soul. Alarka asks for instruction about Yoga or religious devotion.*

Jada spoke.

1 Then the king prostrating himself before the magnanimous

\* Ahaakára.

† Buddhi.

‡ For *maṇḍalu* read *maṇḍala*.

bráhmaṇ Dattátreya, renewed his speech, bending respectfully before him.

- 2     “ No whit of affliction have I, O bráhmaṇ, when I look *on*  
*things* in a proper frame of mind : those who look on things  
 3     amiss are always sunk in a sea of unhappiness. In whatever  
 thing a man's intellect becomes self-engrossed, he receives  
 4     woes therefrom and pays them back. There is not so much  
 pain when a cat eats an unselfish sparrow or mouse, as when  
 5     it eats a domestic fowl. I then feel neither pain nor pleasure,  
 since I am beyond the material world.\* Whoever is subject  
 to created things by means of created things, is indeed sensitive  
 to pleasure and pain.”

Dattátreya spoke.

- 6     “ It is even so, O tiger-hero ! as thou hast just declared.  
 The thought ‘ it is mine ’ is the root of pain ; and the thought  
 7     ‘ it is naught of mine ’ is the root of calmness. From my  
 question indeed has this sublime knowledge sprung up in  
 thee, who hast cast off the conviction ‘ It is mine ’, as if it  
 were the cotton of the seemul tree.”†
- 8     “ With the thought ‘ it is I ’ the germ has sprung up ; with  
 the thought ‘ it is mine,’ the germ has grown shoulder-high :  
 and home and lands are its topmost boughs ; children and  
 9     wife and other relations are its young shoots ; wealth and  
 corn are its great leaves ; it has developed not once only ; and  
 merit and demerit are its outmost flowers ; pleasure and pain  
 10    are its full-grown fruit. There it fills the path of final  
 emancipation ; it oozes out at the commingling of fools ; it is  
 rich with festoons of bees which are the desire to be doing ;  
 11    knowledge of what ought to be done is the full-grown tree.  
 Those who, wearied with the road of worldly existence, betake  
 themselves to its shade are dominated by error, knowledge  
 12    and happiness ; where is their superiority ? But those, who

\* Prakṛiti.

† The capsules when ripe burst, and the silky cotton inside is scattered over the ground for many yards around.

- hew down the tree of selfishness with the axe of learning,  
 which is sharpened on the whet-stone of association with the  
 13 good, travel along that path. Reaching the cool, dustless,  
 thornless grove of religious knowledge, the wise, ceasing from  
 action, attain supreme emancipation from existence.
- 14 “Neither art thou, O king, nor am I a gross object consist-  
 ing of the elements and of organs : neither must I declare *we*  
*are* an elementary rudiment, nor that we both have a soul as  
 15 an eternal organ. Or, whom O king do I see the chief of us two,  
 since the conscious soul\* is sublime, and the *personal* aggre-  
 16 gate consists of qualities. Just as mosquitoes, the dumbur  
 trees,† reeds, munja grass,‡ fish and water have separate  
 existences though they dwell together, so is it with the body  
 and the soul, O king.”

Alarka spoke.

- 17 “Adorable Sir! through thy favour has sublime knowledge  
 of this kind been revealed to me, which causes one to discern  
 18 the power of the Supreme Intellect ; but no stability remains  
 here in my mind which is assailed by objects of sense ; nor  
 moreover do I see how I may be delivered from the bonds of  
 19 Nature, or how I may cease to exist again, or how I may  
 attain in perpetuity to this state of being devoid of qualities and  
 20 to one-ness with Brahma. Therefore, O bráhmaṇ, mighty in  
 knowledge ! expound religious devotion§ properly to me, who  
 thus beseech thee, prostrate before thee, for association with  
 the good is beneficial to men.”

\* Kshetrājña.

† Udumbara, *Ficus glomerata*, Roxb, the modern *dumbur*, (p. 646) not in Hooker.

‡ *Saccharum munja*, Roxb. (p. 82).

§ Yoga.

## CANTO XXXIX.

*Yoga, or Religious Devotion.*

*Dattatreya continues his exhortation—Final emancipation from existence is attained through yoga or religious devotion,—and the means are restraint of the breath, mental abstraction, restraint of the senses, and deep meditation. These means are analyzed and explained at length. What circumstances are inimical to yoga. The improper performance of yoga entails bodily ailments. How such bodily ailments may be cured. The signs of the proper performance of yoga.*

Dattātreyā spoke.

- 1 A yogi's removal of ignorance by the attainment of knowledge is 'mukti'; *this is* union with Brahma, and separation
- 2 from the *three* qualities of Nature. 'Mukti,' or final emancipation from existence, *comes from* religious devotion; and religious devotion *comes* rightly from knowledge, O king; knowledge comes through suffering; suffering *is the lot* of those
- 3 whose minds are engrossed with self. Hence the man who desires final emancipation should strenuously discard *every* association; when associations drop, the designation 'it is
- 4 mine' disappears. Freedom from selfishness tends indeed to happiness; the perception of faults *comes* from passionlessness; and passionlessness *comes* indeed from knowledge; knowledge
- 5 is preceded by passionlessness. That is one's house, where one resides; that is food, by which one lives; that which tends to final emancipation is described as knowledge or ignorance.
- 6 By consuming merits and demerits, O king, and through not
- 7 doing voluntarily constant acts that ought to be done, through not amassing subsequent *acts*, and through diminishing *acts* that have been previously amassed, the body never again falls into the bonds of action.
- 8 This I have declared to thee, O king! Listen also to this religious devotion from me, by adopting which the religious devotee may attain to an eternal identity with Brahma.



9 First indeed the soul must be conquered by soul; it is  
indeed a hard victory for religious devotees. He should put  
10 forth effort in that victory. Hear from me the means thereto.  
He should burn up his faults by restraining his breath,\* and  
his stains by steady mental abstraction,† his sensual enjoy-  
ments by restraining his senses,‡ and his unbridled qualities by  
11 deep meditation.§ Just as impurities are burnt out of metals  
when they are melted, so the faults wrought by the organs of  
12 sense are burnt out by restraining the breath. The religious  
devotee should first accomplish the regulation of his breath.

Now stopping the inhalation|| is designated prāṇāyāma,  
13 'restraining the breath.' Prāṇāyāma is of three kinds, which  
are named the 'slight,' the 'medium' and the 'intense.'¶  
14 I will describe its measure; hear it of me, O Alarka! The  
'slight' extends during twelve mātṛás or prosodial instants,  
and the 'medium' is double that, and the 'intense' is well-  
15 known as containing thrice that number of instants. The  
time of a mātṛá is that of the winking and opening the eye-  
lids once. The measure of twelve mātṛás is fixed for the  
16 reckoning of the prāṇāyāma. With the first he should overcome  
perspiration, and with the second agitation, and with the third  
17 dejection; he should gradually overcome his faults. Now as  
lions, tigers and elephants, when kindly treated become mild,  
so the breath falls within the control of the religious devotee.  
18 As an elephant-driver brings a rutting elephant under control  
according to his wish, even so a religious devotee who has the  
19 wish brings his breath to perfect control. For as the proud  
lion when tamed does not attack deer, so the obstructed wind  
20 destroys men's guilt but not their body. Therefore the reli-  
gious devotee while engaged in devotion should pay good heed  
to the restraining of his breath.

Hear its four conditions that bestow the result of final  
21 emancipation. They are cessation\*\* of the consequences of action,

\* Prāṇāyāma.

|| K-pāna, a meaning not in the dictionary.

† Dhāraṇá.

¶ Uttariya, a meaning not in the dictionary.

‡ Pratyáhára.

\*\* Dhvasti.

§ Dhyána.

- and the power of obtaining everything,\* harmony† and serenity,‡ O king! Hear also their nature as I describe it in order. Where the fruits of good and bad actions die away, and the mind attains pellucidity,§ that is called 'dhvasti.'
- When the religious devotee himself always continuously resists the desires of this world and of the next world, such as covetousness and infatuation, that is 'prápti' everlasting. When the religious devotee possessed of equal power perceives, by the advantage of his knowledge, the past and future remotely concealed meanings of the moon, sun, stars and planets, and gains success, then occurs the condition of pránáyāma called 'samvid.' *The state* by which his mind, and his five vital airs, his organs of sense and the objects of those organs become serene, is called 'prasáda.'
- Hear also, O king, the characteristics of pránáyāma, and what kind of seat is enjoined for one who always practises yoga.
- Adopting the padma half seat, and the svastika sitting posture, he should utter the syllable Om! in his heart and practise his religious devotion. Sitting evenly on an even seat, drawing in both his feet, and firmly fixing his thighs rightly in front, he should cover his mouth; he should sit without touching his private parts with his heels, with his senses under control; he should raise his head slightly; he should not close his teeth together. Gazing at the tip of his own nose and not looking around, the religious devotee should conceal the activity of darkness with passion, and that of passion with goodness, and taking his stand in unsullied goodness should practise devotion. He should hold in his organs of sense from their objects of sense, and his breath and other faculties and his mind, he should advance to abstraction with a steadfast cohesion. But he who should draw in his desires, as a tortoise draws in all its limbs, always delighting in soul and self-collected, sees soul in soul. The wise man after purifying himself externally and internally,

\* Prápti.

† Prasáda.

‡ Samvid.

§ Apa-kasháya-tva; not in the dictionary.

and filling out his body from the navel to the neck, should advance to abstraction. A 'dhāraṇā,' or steady mental  
 36 abstraction, is called twelve prāṇāyāmas. Two kinds of dhāraṇā are known in religious devotion by devotees who are conversant with the truth. Moreover when a religious  
 37 devotee is steeped in devotion and controls his soul, all his faults perish, and he becomes whole; and he sees supreme  
 38 Brahma and the qualities of Nature separately, the sky and the primordial atoms and the unsullied soul.

Thus a religious devotee, who restricts his food and who is  
 39 intent on restraining his breath, should occupy ground, which has been thoroughly and gradually reclaimed, as it were his house. Unreclaimed ground when it is taken possession of  
 40 increases faults, diseases and foolishness, therefore he should not occupy unreclaimed ground.

'Prāṇāyāma' or restraining the breath is so called from the  
 41 restriction\* placed on the breath; and this is called 'dhāraṇā' or mental abstraction, by which the mind is abstracted; since  
 42 the organs, which are occupied with words and other actions, are restrained by religious devotees by means of devotion, that is called 'pratyāhāra,' or restraining the senses.

And the means for this is declared by paramarshis who  
 43 were religious devotees, so that diseases and other faults may not spring up in a religious devotee. Just as the thirsty may  
 44 drink water gradually by vessels, pipes and other means, so a religious devotee who has overcome his distress may drink air. First in the navel, and next in the heart, and thirdly in the  
 45 breast, then in the neck, the mouth, the tip of the nose, in the eye, eye-brows, and the middle of the head, and in what is  
 46 there-beyond, is known the highest mental abstraction. By attaining to these ten mental abstractions he reaches equality with the imperishable. Not puffed up, nor hungry, nor  
 47 wearied, and undisturbed in mind, the yegī should practice his yoga respectfully in order to attain final occupation, O king!

\* Upa-sam-rodha; not in the dictionary.

When it is neither very cold nor warm, when there is no  
 48 strife, when it is not windy, at these times the *ascetic* who is  
 deep in meditation should not\* practice yoga. In a place  
 where there is a noise, or fire, or water, or where study is going  
 49 on, in a decayed cow-shed, at a place where four roads meet,  
 amid a collection of dry leaves, in a river, in a burning-ground,  
 in a place infested by snakes, in a place of fear, or on the edge  
 50 of a well, amid a number of funeral piles or ant-hills—in these  
 places a learned man should avoid practising yoga. And if  
 there is no appearance of goodness, he should avoid the place  
 51 and time. *There should be* no sight of evil during the practice  
 of yoga; hence he should avoid that. Whoever disregards  
 these places and in his infatuation practises yoga, verily his  
 52 faults tend to his hindrance. Harken to me in this. Deafness,  
 stupidity, failure of memory, dumbness, blindness and fever—  
 53 those several *evils* straightway befall him who practises yoga in  
 ignorance.

If a yogī should have these faults through inadvertence,  
 54 yogīs should attend to their cure in order to destroy them.  
 Harken to me in this. He should engage in mental abstraction,  
 after eating rice-gruel, mingled with oil and very warm.  
 55 In the diseases of rheumatism, flatulence, and enlargement of  
 the abdomen, circulation of the internal or obstructed wind of  
 56 the body should be regulated by a diet of rice-gruel.† In  
 tremor‡ a yogi should fix his mind on a mountain as it is  
 steady, in dumbness on the faculty of speech, and in deafness  
 57 on the ear; just as one whose tongue is parched with thirst  
 should meditate on a mango fruit. In whatever respect the  
 body is disordered, in that very respect he should think  
 58 steadily of whatever thought may remedy the disorder, *such*  
*as, a cooling thought amidst heat, and a heating thought*  
*amidst cold.* He should place a stake on his head and beat  
 wood with wood.

\* For *na yogam* read *sa yogam*, he should practice yoga?

† This is the translation of the Pandit of the Bengal Asiatic Society: the text seems obscure.

‡ For *kalpe* read *kampe*; so a MS. in the Sanskrit College.

59 In that way memory immediately recurs to a yogí who has  
lost his memory. He should think steadily of the wind and  
60 fire which indeed pervade the heaven and the earth. These  
injuries are cured through what is non-human or what springs  
61 from goodness. If goodness that is non-human should enter  
within a yogí, he should utterly burn out the sin that dwells  
in his body by steady thought of the wind and fire.

Thus must every soul that is wise in yoga compass its  
62 preservation, O king, since the body is the means of attain-  
ing righteousness, wealth, love and final emancipation from  
existence. The yogí's knowledge perishes through perplexity  
at the narration of the marks of the activities, therefore the  
63 activities must be hidden. Tranquillity,\* perfect health,  
gentleness, a pleasant odour, scanty excretions, a fine com-  
plexion, benignity, and softness of voice, are indeed the first  
64 indications of the activity of yoga. A loving person proclaims  
one's virtues in one's absence. That creatures do not fear him  
is the chiefest sign of complete perfection. He who is not  
injured by excessive cold, heat, or other *natural agents*, and does  
not fear other persons, has attained complete perfection.

---

## CANTO XL.

---

### *The Yogí's bliss.*

*Dattátreya explains to Alarka the ailments that beset a yogí's soul and mentions their five varieties. He describes the yogí's duties, the stages by which final emancipation is attained, the eight premonitory marks of final emancipation, and the results of union with the Supreme Spirit.*

### Dattátreya spoke.

- 1 I will succinctly declare to thee the ailments† that prevail  
in the soul of a yogí when it is viewed : hearken to me.
- 2 He longs for rites performed with a view to future fruition,  
and the objects of human desire, for women, the fruits of

\* A-lolya ; not in the dictionary.

† Upa-sarga.

3 alms-giving, for science, for supernatural power, for the baser  
 4 metals and riches, for heaven, god-head, and supreme god-  
 5 head, for actions that yield copious supplies of elixir vitæ,\*  
 6 for flying on the storm-winds, for sacrifice, and the power of  
 7 inhabiting water and fire, for the fruits of śrāddhas that con-  
 8 tain every gift, and religious mortifications. Thus he longs  
 9 when mentally ailing by reason of fasting, meritorious acts,  
 10 and worship of the gods, and by reason of those several  
 11 actions.

12 A yogī should strenuously restrain his mind when beset  
 13 with such thoughts. By making his mind cling to Brahma he  
 14 is liberated from ailments. When these ailments are overcome  
 15 other ailments still beset a yogī, arising out of goodness, pas-  
 16 sion and ignorance.

17 Ailments arising from illusive vision,† from hearing, and.  
 18 from the deity,‡ and mental aberration,§ and enthusiasm||—  
 19 these five are roots of bitterness which tend to embarrass the  
 20 religious meditations of yogis. The ailment arising from  
 21 illusive vision is such to a yogi because in it appear Vedic  
 22 matters, poetic matters, science and the mechanical arts with-  
 23 out end. The ailment connected with hearing is so-called  
 24 because he perceives the meanings of sounds in all their com-  
 25 pleteness, and he receives sound from thousands of yojanas.  
 26 The wise call that ailment one from the deity, as in the case of  
 27 a madman, when like a god he sees all around and in the eight  
 28 directions. When the yogī's mind wanders without support  
 29 through his own fault by reason of his fall from all the rules of  
 30 good custom¶—that is well known as mental aberration. When  
 31 the seething whirl-pool\*\* of knowledge like a whirl-pool of

\* Read *rasdyana-c'ayāḥ* for *rasdyana-c'ayaḥ*?

† *Prātibha*. Prof. Monier-Williams gives the meaning "relating to divination," but in this place it seems to relate to vision, as the context shows.

‡ *Daiva*.

§ *Bhrama*.

|| *Avarta*. Deliberation, revolving (in the mind), so Prof. Monier-Williams; but it seems a much stronger word.

¶ *Kośara*.

\*\* *Avarta*.

water engulphs the mind—that ailment is called enthusiasm.

- 14 All beings of divine origin, when their religious meditation is destroyed by these great and terrible ailments, revolve again and again.
- 15 Therefore the yogi, having clad himself with a mental white blanket, should cast his mind prone on supreme Brahma, and meditate on him. A yogi should always be intent on religious meditation, he should eat sparingly, he should subdue
- 16 his senses. The yogi should contemplate in his head the subtle conditions of the seven objects, viz., earth &c.; he should contemplate the subtle earth, until he comprehends its
- 17 subtlety.\* He deems the earth to be his soul, and he quits its bonds. Moreover he quits the subtle taste in water,\* and
- 18 also the form in the fire; and he likewise quits touch in the wind, as he bears the subtle form in mind; and he quits the
- 19 subtle activity of the sky, and likewise its sound. When he enters with his mind into the mind of all created things, his mind bearing a mental subtle condition of them becomes
- 20 subtle also. Likewise the man, conversant with religious devotion, on attaining to the intellect of all creatures, gains and relinquishes the most perfect subtlety of intellect. For
- 21 the man conversant with religious devotion, who relinquishes these seven subtle things after having thoroughly compre-
- 22 hended them, there is no retrogression, O Alarka! The soul-cognisant man, after fully seeing the subtlety of these subtle conditions of the seven objects, then utterly abandoning it
- 23 may proceed to supreme bliss. And towards whatever created thing he evinces feeling, O king! to that very thing he be-
- 24 comes attached, and he perishes. Therefore the corporeal being, who after perceiving the mutually-associated subtle things
- 25 abandons them, may gain supreme bliss. Having conjoined these very seven subtle things, O king! passionlessness towards created and other things tends to the final emancipation from existence of the man cognisant of the entities.†

\* For *tat-saukhyam* read *tat-saukshmanam*; so a MS. in the Sanskrit College.

† For *atsu* read *apsu*?

‡ *Sad-b.āva.*

26 When he becomes attached to perfumes and other *delights*, he  
 27 perishes; he again reverts to human nature apart from  
 28 Brahma. Whatever subtle created thing the yogi desires,  
 after transcending the subtle conditions of these seven objects,  
 in that very thing he meets his extinction, O king! He  
 meets his extinction in the bodies of gods or Asuras, or of  
 Gandarvas, Nágas, or Rákshasas; nowhere does he gain any  
 attachment.

29 Where minuteness, and lightness,\* greatness and the power  
 of obtaining every thing, freedom of will,† and lordship, and  
 30 magical domination and again self-mortification are—one finds  
 these eight sovereign-like qualities fully indicate union with  
 31 the Supreme Spirit,‡ O king. The quality of minuteness is far  
 subtler than the subtle; lightness means swiftness; greatness  
*consists* in being universally revered; the power of obtain-  
 32 ing everything, inasmuch as nothing is impossible of obtain-  
 ment by him; freedom of will *consists* in his power of pervading  
 all things; and lordship inasmuch as he is lord; magical  
 33 domination indeed, the yogi's seventh quality *consists* in his  
 subjugating *things*; where the wishes are said to remain  
 stationary,§ there|| is self-mortification. By these causes of  
 34 sovereignty I have declared O king! in eight points the  
 indicatory marks¶ of the yogi's final emancipation from  
 existence, and of his sublime union with the Supreme Spirit.

Thenceforth for him there is no birth, nor growth, nor  
 35 death; he neither decays nor does he alter; neither from  
 Bhúr and the other worlds, nor from the family of created  
 beings, does he experience severance, or moisture, or burning  
 36 or dryness; nor is he captivated by sounds or other *sensual*  
*impressions*; nor do sounds and other *impressions* exist for

\* Laghimá.

† Prákámya.

‡ Nir-vápa.

§ But better, for *apyuktam* read *santyaktam*? "Where the objects of the wishes are renounced."

|| For *yatra* read *tatra*?

¶ *Saṃsúc'aka* : a word not in the dictionary.



- him; one who experiences them is not united with them.  
 37 For as an impure lump of gold, when its impurities are purged  
 away by fire, unites with another lump into one, and  
 38 undergoes no difference; even so the ascetic, when his faults  
 are burnt out by the fire of religious devotion, unites with  
 39 Brahma. As fire when thrown into fire may attain sameness;  
 and, bearing the same name and having the same substance  
 40 may not be perceived by any distinction; even so the yogí,  
 when his stains are burnt away, attains to union with supreme  
 Brahma, and never acquires a separate existence, O king!  
 41 As water when thrown into water unites, so the yogí's soul  
 attains to sameness in the Supreme Soul.

---

 CANTO XLI.
 

---



---

*The Yogí's religious course.*


---

*Dattatreya expounds to Alarka how a yogí should live;—from whom he should gather his alms;—what his alms should be;—how he should eat after worshipping the five vital airs;—what his religious obligations are;—and how he attains to final emancipation from existence.*

Alarka spoke.

- 1 Adorable Sir! I desire to hear thoroughly about a yogí's  
 religious course, since the yogí while pursuing the way to  
 Brahma does not sink into despondency.

Dattatreya spoke.

- 2 Respect and disrespect, which two things cause men plea-  
 sure and distress, these are opposites and effect the yogí's final  
 3 bliss. Respect and disrespect, these two things men indeed  
 describe as poison and ambrosia; of them disrespect is am-  
 brosia, but respect is a dire poison.  
 4 He should plant his foot after it is purified by his eye; he  
 should drink water that has been purified through cloth; he

should use speech that is purified with truth ; and he should meditate on what is purified by the intellect.

- 5 The yogí should nowhere become a guest, nor attend  
 6 *śráddhas*, or sacrifices, pilgrimages to the gods, or festivals,  
 nor visit the banker for the sake of any advantage. The yogí  
 should roam about for alms among what is flung away, among  
 what is smokeless, where the charcoal is extinguished, among  
 all people who have eaten, but not constantly among all the  
 7 three. The yogí should not move about occupied in religious  
 meditation and spoiling the path of the good, so as that folk  
 8 should despise him or treat him with disrespect. He should  
 seek his alms among house-holders, and at the houses of  
 vagrant mendicants :\* his livelihood is declared to be the best  
 9 and first one. Also the ascetic should ever resort to modest,  
 faithful, tranquil and high-souled brahman householders who  
 10 are learned in the Vedas ; above and after them, to uncorrupt  
 and non-outcasted men. The practice of seeking alms among  
 men of no caste is the last livelihood he should wish for.
- 11 Alms consists of rice-gruel,† or dilute butter-milk,‡ milk or  
 barley-gruel,§ fruit, roots, or panic seed,|| grain, oil-cake, and  
 12 meal. And these are fine articles of food, and cause a yogí  
 to obtain felicity. A muni should employ them with faith  
 and with the most perfect meditation.
- 13 Having first taken one sip of water, let him remain silent  
 with mind composed ; and then is prescribed the first oblation  
 to the vital air called *Prána*,¶ and the second should be to the  
 14 vital air *Apána* ;\*\* and the next to that called *Sam-ána* ;††

\* *Yáyávāra*.

† For *yavágúm* read *yavágús* ? The dictionary gives this word as fem., and *yavágúm* seems an impossible neuter.

‡ *Takram*.

§ *Yávaka*.

|| *Priyangu*, *Panicum italicum*, (Roxb. p. 101.)

¶ *Prána* ; this has its seat in the lungs, and expresses pre-eminently life and vitality.

\*\* *Apána* ; the vital air that goes downwards, and out at the anus.

†† *Sam-ána* ; the vital air that circulates about the navel, and is essential to digestion.

- the fourth to that called Ud-ána ;\* and the fifth to that called
- 15 Vy-ána.† Having performed *these oblations* separately, while restraining his breath, he should at length eat according to his inclination. He should drink water once again, and after rinsing out his mouth, he should touch his heart.
- 16 Honesty and sanctity, self-sacrifice, and uncovetousness, and harmlessness are the five principal religious obligations
- 17 of mendicants. Freedom from anger, reverence towards gurus, purity, abstemiousness in food, and constant study of the
- 18 Vedas—these are the five well-known observances. He should devote himself to essential knowledge, which can effect his objects ; for the multiplicity of knowledge that exists here is
- 19 a hindrance to religious meditation. He who acts with the thirst, that he ought to know this and he ought to know that, may perhaps never gain that knowledge in thousands of ages.
- 20 Discarding associations, subduing anger, eating sparingly, and controlling his organs, he should regulate the gates of *his body* by the intellect, and apply the understanding to
- 21 profound contemplation. The yogí who is constantly occupied with religious meditation should always have due recourse to profound contemplation, in empty places and in
- 22 caves and in forests. Control over the speech, control over the actions, and control over the mind, are the three *controls* : he who invariably possesses these controls is a great ‘three-
- 23 control’ ascetic. Who, O king, is agreeable, and who is disagreeable to him to whom all this universe, both real and unreal, and composed of good qualities and bad qualities, is composed of the Supreme Soul ?
- 24 When he whose intellect is purified, to whom clods and gold are alike, and whose mind is thus composed towards all created things, comprehends the supreme eternal and immutable to be the supreme condition he ceases to be born
- 25 again. The Vedas and all sacrifices and ceremonies are very good ; prayer is better than sacrifice ; and the path of know

\* Ud-ána ; the vital air that rises up the throat and passes into the head.

† Vy-ána ; the vital air that circulates or is diffused through the body.

ledge than prayer; and profound contemplation cut off from associations and feelings *is better* than knowledge; when that  
 26 is attained, the eternal is gained. He who is composed in mind, who is intent on Brahma, who is attentive, and pure, whose delight is concentrated on one object, and who controls his organs—that high-souled man may compass this yoga or religious meditation; thereupon he gains final emancipation from existence through his own religious meditation.

---

CANTO XLII.

---

*Exposition of the word "Om" with regard to the  
 Law of Religious Devotion.*

---

*Dattatreya expounds the composition, meaning and efficacy of the sacred word "Om"—It designates the Supreme Soul Brahma; and thorough comprehension of it and meditation on it bring final absorption into Brahma.*

Dattatreya spoke.

- 1 The yogí who lives thus, rightly busied in religious devotion, cannot be turned away even by hundreds of other lives.
- 2 And when he has beheld the Supreme Soul, visible, existing in all forms, whose feet and head and neck the universe
- 3 composes, the lord and creator of the universe, let him in order to attain thereto utter the one mighty and holy syllable Om! Let it be his study as he listens to its true form.
- 4 A ánd U and M are its three letters; these are its three instants; they are characterized by goodness, passion and
- 5 ignorance. And another, a half instant,\* which has its seat on the top of *the syllable*, is without quality and can be understood by yogís only. It is called gándhári,† as it is to
- 6 be uttered in the gándhára note.‡ Being pronounced it

\* Anusvára, into which the M may be converted?

† A meaning not in the dictionary.

‡ See note \* page 130.

reaches the head, and it conveys the feeling of ants moving over the body.

- 7 As the syllable Om being pronounced reaches the head, the  
yogí who is lost in meditation of Om should become united  
with Brahma, the Supreme Soul. Life is his bow, the soul is  
8 his arrow, Brahma is the target sublime. It is to be pierced  
by the heedful man; he should be united with Brahma, as  
the arrow becomes embedded in the target.

- The syllable Om, consisting of three and a half instants,  
9 should be known in its true sense as the three Vedas—the  
Ríç', Sáma and Yajus—the three worlds, the three fires, and  
10 the three deities Vishnu, Brahmá and S'iva. And the yogí,  
who is absorbed in religious meditation thereon, may obtain  
extinction therein.

- Moreover the letter A is designated the bhúr-loka, or terres-  
trial world; and the letter U the bhuvar-loka, or atmospheric  
11 world; and the letter M with its nasal mark is decided to be  
the svar-loka, or celestial world. Now the first instant is  
called the discrete,\* and the second the indiscrete, and the  
12 third instant is the intellectual faculty;† the half instant is  
the highest abode.‡ In this very order must these stages of  
13 religious meditation be known. By uttering the word Om,  
everything both existent and non-existent may be grasped.  
Now the first instant is short, the second is long, and the  
14 third is prolated, and the half instant is not cognisant to  
speech.

- Such is this word. Brahma is designated the Supreme  
15 "Om." The man who truly understands it and further  
meditates on it, escaping the circle of mundane existence  
16 casts off the three-fold bonds, and gains sublime extinction  
in Brahma, the Supreme Soul. And he who is bound with  
the unconsumed results of his actions, after experiencing death  
17 through ill omens,§ and recollecting it at the time of his

\* Vyaktá.

† C'ic'-c'hakti.

‡ Final emancipation from existence.

§ Arishṭatas.

departure, attains to a yogi's condition again. Hence by means of imperfect religious devotion, or again by perfected religious devotion, are always to be known the ill omens, so that he does not sink into despondency at the time of his departure.

---

### CANTO XLIII.

---

#### *An account of Ill Omens.*

---

*Dattátreya mentions the signs of approaching and impending death, which are partly natural phenomena and partly dreams—also the appropriate seasons for religious devotion—and by various similes and apophthegms indicates how final emancipation from existence is to be attained—Alarka thanks Dattátreya for all the instruction and, going to the king of Káśi and Subáhu, relinquishes his kingdom in their favour.*

Dattátreya spoke.

- 1 "Listen Maharája; I will declare those ill omens to thee, by considering which the yogi knows his own death.
- 2 "The man who does not see the path of the gods,\* the pole-
- 3 star, the planet Venus, the moon's shadow and the morning
- 4 star,† may not live more than a year. The man, who sees the
- 5 sun's orb devoid of rays and fire encircled with rays, does
- 6 not live more than eleven months. He, who in his dreams
- 7 clearly perceives gold and silver in his vomit and in his urine
- and fæces, may live ten months. He who sees departed
- persons, Pis'ác'as and other demons and the cities of the
- Gandharvas and golden-coloured bulls, lives nine months.
- He who when stout becomes thin, and when thin becomes
- stout quite unaccountably, and loses his natural functions,
- lives for eight months. He, whose foot becomes cracked at
- the heel or at the toe in dust and in mud, lives seven months.

\* Deva-márga; said to mean the penis or anus.

† Arundhati.

8 If a vulture, a pigeon, a raven, or a crow, or a hawk, or a  
 9 blue bird alights on one's head, that indicates a life of six  
 10 months. When a man is assailed by flocks of crows or a  
 11 shower of dust, or when he sees his shadow unnatural, he  
 12 lives four or five months. When he sees lightning flashing  
 13 in the south in a cloudless sky, or sees a rainbow at night,  
 14 his life will last two or three months. He who cannot see his  
 own body in clarified butter, in oil, in a mirror, or in water,  
 or who sees it head-less, does not live more than a month.  
 12 When the smell from a yogi's body resembles that of a goat  
 or the smell from a corpse, know O king that his life will be  
 13 half a month. When one's breast and foot dry up imme-  
 14 diately after he has bathed, and when water does not  
 quench his thirst as he drinks, he lives ten days.

"When the wind as it strikes one cuts one's vitals, and  
 when one feels no delight from the touch of drops of water,  
 15 his death has arrived. Whoever sits on a bear, a monkey or  
 a carriage, and goes singing towards the south in his sleep,  
 16 for him death brooks no delay. He whom a woman clad in  
 red or black raiment, and singing and laughing, carries off to  
 17 the south in his sleep, he will live no longer. He who sees  
 a single powerful naked mendicant laughing and leaping in  
 18 his sleep may find death impending. The man, who sees him-  
 self sunk to the crown of his head in a sea of mud in his  
 19 sleep, dies at once. And he, who sees charcoal amidst the  
 hair of the head, or ashes or a waterless river issuing from a  
 serpent, in his sleep, will after ten days die on the eleventh  
 20 day. He, who in his sleep is beaten with stones by formi-  
 dable and hideous black men who raise their weapons aloft,  
 21 may die at once. He, in front of whom a she-jackal runs  
 howling at sun-rise, whether meeting him or passing him,  
 22 dies at once. He, whose heart is possessed with hunger  
 immediately after he has eaten, and whose teeth chatter, has  
 23 without doubt\* reached the end of his life. He who does not  
 perceive the smell of a lamp, and who is terrified in the day

\* For *samāyāṃ* read *samāyāṇ* ?

- as well as at night, and who does not see himself reflected in  
 24 another's eyes, lives no longer. He, who has seen both a rain-  
 bow at midnight and all the planets in the day-time, should  
 25 as a sensible man deem his life consumed away. He, whose  
 nose becomes crooked, and whose ears bend down or stick up,  
 26 and whose left eye waters, has lost his life. When his face  
 becomes reddish, or his tongue black, a wise man should  
 27 know that his death is impending. And one should know  
 that he, who in his sleep journeys to the south on a camel, or  
 28 an ass, or a carriage, will die outright. He, who cannot  
 hear his own murmuring when he shuts his ears, and who  
 cannot see the light with his eyes, lives indeed no longer.  
 29 He over whom a door is closed after he has fallen into a pit,  
 and who cannot rise up from the hole, in his sleep, his life  
 30 ends thereat. Sight directed upwards and unsteady,\* and  
 blood-shot and rolling around, and warmth in the mouth, and  
 31 dryness at the navel prognosticate a new body for men. He  
 who in his sleep may enter the fire, and not come out there-  
 from, or if he *similarly* enters water, his life ends thereat.  
 32 The man who is attacked by evil spirits at night or by day,  
 without doubt meets death at the end of the seventh night.  
 33 One should pronounce that death is impending over the  
 man who sees his own clean white clothing red or black.  
 34 "A revolution in men's natural disposition and a reversal  
 in their nature proclaim always that Yama and Death are at  
 35 hand; as when a man despises and reviles those very persons  
 to whom he has always been well-behaved, and whom he has  
 36 considered most deserving of his reverence; when he does  
 not worship the gods; when he abuses the aged, the gurus  
 and brahmins; and when he shows no kind treatment to his  
 37 mother, father, or sons-in-law, or to yogis skilled in learning  
 or to other high-souled men. But when the time arrives,  
 wise men† must understand that.  
 38 "And yogis must always diligently understand at the close

\* Sampratishṭha; not in the dictionary.

† For *purushas* read *purushais* ?



of the year that ill omens produce their results day and night,  
39 O king. And the obvious very formidable series of results  
therefrom must be considered ; and having ascertained them,  
40 he should fix that time in his mind, O king. And having  
ascertained that time accurately, the yogí should resort to a  
safe place and apply himself to religious devotion, so that  
41 that time may not be fruitless to him. And the yogí having  
beheld the ill omen and abandoning the fear of death, and  
having regarded then its nature, as it has come after a long  
42 time, should apply himself to religious devotion as an  
adept therein in just that part of the day, both in the fore-  
43 noon, and in the after-noon and at mid-day on that day. Or  
where he has seen that ill omen during a part of the night,  
there he should engage in religious devotion until that  
44 day arrives. Then abandoning all fear, and mastering that  
time self-controlled, he should stay in that habitation or  
45 wherever he feels his soul firm, and engage in religious medita-  
tion on the Supreme Soul after overcoming the three qualities :  
and when his soul grows composed of the Supreme Soul, he  
46 should cease even from the use of his mind. Thereupon he  
attains to that sublime absorption into the Supreme Soul,  
which is beyond the senses, which transcends the intellect  
and which is unspeakable.

47 “ All this I have declared to thee, Alarka, in its real meaning.  
Hearken to me briefly how thou mayest attain to that  
Brahma.

48 “ The moon-stone does not emit water, if untouched by the  
rays of the moon ; that is a well known simile for a yogí.  
49 That the sun-stone as long as it remains untouched by the  
rays of the sun does not emit fire, is also a simile for a yogí.  
50 Ants, rats, ichneumons, house-lizards, and sparrows inhabit a  
house like the owner of it, and when it is broken down they  
51 go elsewhere ; but since they feel no such pain at the destruc-  
tion of that house as the owner *feels*, O king ; that simile  
52 points to the yogí's perfect bliss. *An ant*, though it is compos-  
ed of earth and has but a small body, constructs a heavy heap  
of earth with the still minuter point of its mouth : that is a

53 lesson for a yogí. When yogís see a tree, clothed with leaves  
 flowers and fruit, being destroyed by cattle, birds, men and  
 54 other *creatures*, they become perfected. When a yogí sees the  
 tender horns of the young ruru deer, which look merely like  
 the forehead-mark, grówing together with him, he may attain  
 55 final beatitude. When a yogí takes a vessel full of liquid  
 from a mound on the earth, and when he sees the human  
 56 body towering up high, what has he not learnt? When a  
 yogí has truly understood the effort that a man makes, when  
 all his wealth sufficient for his living has been dug up, he  
 57 has attained success. That is one's house where one dwells;  
 that is food on which one lives; and that is wealth by  
 which one prospers; that is happiness *when one thinks* 'what  
 58 self-interest have I in this matter.' Just as a man, although  
 he is importuned by his organs, accomplishes his object by  
 their means, so a yogí may accomplish his highest *aim* by  
 means of the intellect and other *faculties* of other persons."

Jada spoke.

59 Then king Alarka prostrated himself before Atri's son, and  
 bowing courteously and filled with intense joy, spoke thus:—

Alarka spoke.

60 "O joy! that this most sore dread, which has sprung from  
 my defeat by my foes, and which has rendered me anxious  
 about my life, has been caused by the gods, O bráhmaṇ!  
 61 O joy, that the victorious attack from the immense hosts of  
 the king of Káśí (routed by which I have come here) has  
 62 brought about for me this meeting with thee! O joy, that  
 my army was weak! O joy, that my dependants were slain!  
 63 O joy, that my treasury became exhausted! O joy that I  
 grew terrified! O joy, that thy feet came to my recollec-  
 tion! O joy, that all thy words have found an abode in my  
 64 mind! O joy, that I have both gained knowledge from  
 meeting with thee, Sir! O joy, that thou hast also shown  
 compassion to me, O bráhmaṇ!  
 65 "Although destitute a man attains success at the auspi-  
 cious rise of the Soul, just as this calamity tends to my benefit

- 66 through my meeting with thee. Subáhu is my benefactor,  
and so also is Kási's lord, through both of whom I have come  
67 to thy presence, O noble lord of the yogís. Now I have had  
the stains of ignorance burnt out by the fire of thy favour.  
I will so strive that I may not become such a vessel of misery.  
68 I will quit my position as a householder, which is a forest of  
trees of pain, on receiving permission from thee, my high-  
souled instructor in wisdom."

Dattátreya spoke.

- 69 "Depart O king! fare thee well! As I have declared unto  
thee, so do thou practise, free from egotism, free from pride,  
in order to attain to final emancipation from existence."

Jaḍa spoke.

- 70 Thus addressed he prostrated himself before that *Muni*,  
and hastened to where the king of Kási and his elder brother  
71 Subáhu were. Alarka hastening near smilingly addressed  
the king of Kási, that valiant hero, in the presence of  
72 Subáhu :—"O king of Kási, who desirest my kingdom, enjoy  
thou the mighty kingdom even as it pleases thee, or give it  
to Subáhu!"

The king of Kási spoke.

- 73 "Why, O Alarka! hast thou relinquished the kingdom  
without a contest? This is not right for a kshatriya; and  
74 thou, Sir, knowest the law of the kshatriyas. When his  
counsellors are vanquished, a king should abandon the fear  
of death, and fix his arrow aiming at his enemy as his target.  
75 Having conquered him, a king should certainly enjoy the  
choice delights of his desire, and should sacrifice with large  
sacrifices in order to gain final bliss."

Alarka spoke.

- 76 "Even of this very nature was my mind before, O hero!  
77 Now my object is changed, and do thou hear the cause. As  
this *body* is an aggregate formed of the elements, so is the  
heart of men, and so are all the qualities likewise even among  
78 all animals. Since this intellectual faculty is single indeed,  
and there is no other, how then does knowledge create the

- 79 condition of friend and enemy, of lord and servant? I fell  
 into that dire misery which was produced by fear of thee,  
 and I have gained knowledge from Dattatreya's favour, O  
 80 king. When one subdues all the senses, and abandons utterly  
 every association, and fixes one's mind on Brahma, in that  
 81 victory is the sublimest victory. And since there is nothing  
 else to be accomplished in order to attain that final beatitude,  
 82 therefore restraining his senses he attains final beatitude. I  
 then am not thy foe; nor art thou my enemy; Subáhu here  
 is not my injurer. I have seen all this as my own soul; seek  
 then another adversary, O king!"
- 83 Thus he addressed the king. Then uprose Subáhu delighted,  
 and saluting his brother with the word 'O joy!' spoke  
 thus to the king of Káśi.

---

CANTO XLIV.

---

*Jaḍa's exposition in his conversation with his father (concluded).*

---

*Subáhu explains to the king of Káśi that it was to reclaim his brother Alarka to a proper frame of mind, that he had induced the king to conquer Alarka—Subáhu expounds to the king the conditions of attaining final emancipation from existence, and both depart—Alarka resigns his kingdom to his son, and betaking himself to the forest attains final bliss.*

*Here ends Jaḍa's exposition to his father.*

*The Birds then conclude by saying that Jaḍa and his father attained final bliss.*

Subáhu spoke.

- 1 "In that I have resorted to thee for refuge, O tiger-king,  
 I have secured every object. I will depart. Rest thou happy!"
- The king of Káśi spoke.
- 2 "What object hast thou secured, Sir? And what aim  
 hast thou attained? Declare that to me, O Subáhu, for I  
 3 feel a keen curiosity. Thou didst stir me up, saying 'Conquer

- and give me the great kingdom, that belonged to my great-grandfather and is dominated by Alarka.' Thereupon I attacked the kingdom of this thy younger brother, and brought this army for thee. Therefore enjoy it as befits thy race."\*

Subáhu spoke.

- "O king of Kási, hearken, why I made this endeavour, and stirred thee up, Sir, to an unwonted endeavour. This my brother, who understands truth is addicted† to unrefined pleasures. My two elder brothers are wise and unbeguiled, because our mother dropped admonition into the ears of both of them and into mine, just as she dropped milk in their mouths and mine during our infancy, O king. Our mother taught those subjects, that men consider should be known, to both of them and to me, but not to him, *Alarka*, who wished to be illustrious, O king. As merchants, who are travelling for gain, feel a common grief, if one of them perishes, so is it with us, O king. Since he, *Alarkā*, has caught the infatuation of domestic life, and is perishing, O king; since he is related to this *my* body, and bears the idea of a brother; hence I, concluding that he would obtain the perception of passionlessness through suffering, resorted to thee, Sir, to carry out the undertaking. Therefore he has been brought through distress to passionlessness through instruction, O king; the work has been accomplished; mayest thou fare well. I depart. 'Having dwelt in Madálasá's womb, and having drank of her breast, may he not follow the path that is travelled by the sons of other women, O king!' So I deliberated and I did it all by resorting to thee; and it has been accomplished. I will again depart to seek final beatitude.
- "I do not approve of those, O king! who neglect their own family, a kinsman, or a friend, when these are in difficulties; for, though possessed of organs, they are maimed indeed.

\* For *bhunkshvasva kuloc'itam* read *bhunkshva svakuloc'itam* ?

† For *s'akto* read *sakto* ?

- 16 He who falls into difficulties when he has an able friend, or member of his own family, or kinsman, they should be denied righteousness, wealth, love and final emancipation, but he  
 17 *should not be denied* them. Through association with thee, O king, I have accomplished this great undertaking. Well mayest thou fare! I will depart. Mayest thou participate in knowledge, most noble *king!*"

The king of Kási spoke.

- 18 "Thou hast done a great benefit to good Alarka; how is it  
 19 thou dost not turn thy mind to benefit me? Since association of good men with good men yields fruit and is not barren, therefore I have attained the prosperity that is bound up with thy patronage."

Subáhu spoke.

- 20 "The four-fold aims of men are known as righteousness, wealth, pleasure, and final emancipation from existence. There thou hast righteousness, wealth and pleasure, all of  
 21 them,—the last is wanting. I will succinctly expound it to thee; listen now with singleness of mind thereto; and having heard and rightly deliberated strive after bliss, O king!  
 22 Thou must have no dealings, O king, with the notion "Mine," nor the notion "I"; for when one considers rightly, righteousness has no correlation in the absence of righteousness.  
 23 When thou hast thought in thy soul, 'I must comprehend of what I am'; when thou hast thought in after nights 'I must  
 24 consider the external and the internal'; thou must discern him whose beginning, attributes and ending are imperceptible, who is changeless, devoid of intelligence, both perceptible and imperceptible; and thou shalt discern 'Who am I?'  
 25 When this indeed is discerned thou hast discerned everything. To discern the soul in what is not soul, and one's own property in what is not one's own—this is folly. I as such have  
 26 passed everywhere, O king, according to the intercourse of the world. I have declared all this that thou hast asked: now I depart."  
 27 Having spoken thus to the king of Kási, the wise Subáhu

departed. And the king of Kási having done obeisance to Alarka departed to his own city.

- 28 Alarka, also, enthroned his eldest son as king, and abandoning every tie resorted to the forest, for his own perfection.
- 29 After a long time becoming purged of the contrary qualities and free from all worldly possessions, he attained an unparalleled pitch of religious devotion and gained supreme and final
- 30 bliss. Perceiving all this universe with its gods, demons and human beings perpetually bound and being bound in the
- 31 meshes woven of the qualities; being drawn by the causes brought into existence by sons and other *children*, by nephews and other *relations*, and by one's own and other people's pro-
- 32 perty, and so forth; oppressed with woe, wearing diverse appearances, wholly enclosed within the mud of ignorance, possessing no deliverer; and *perceiving* himself wholly passed
- 33 beyond, the large-minded *king* sang this song—"Alas, woe is it that I occupied the kingdom formerly! So have I since learnt. There is no happiness superior to religious devotion."

Jaḍa spoke.

- 34 Dear father, do thou practise this sublime religious devotion to attain final emancipation from existence; whereby thou shalt attain to that Supreme Soul, in reaching which
- 35 thou shalt not grieve. Then I also will go. What need have I of sacrifices? what need of prayers? Action in one who has attained success works towards re-absorption into the
- 36 Supreme Soul. Obtaining permission from thee, I also, free from the contrary qualities, free from worldly possessions, will so strive after final emancipation that I may attain to supreme bliss.

The birds spoke.

- 37 Having thus addressed his father, and having obtained permission from him, the wise *Jaḍa*, abandoning all worldly
- 38 possessions, departed, O bráhmaṇ. His father also, who was most large-minded, in like course after becoming a *vána-prastha* entered on the fourth stage of life. There having
- 39 met with his son, and having forsaken the bonds formed of

the qualities &c., he attained supreme perfection, being wise and having acquired self-knowledge at the same time.

- 40 All this has been declared to thee, O bráhmaṇ, which thou, Sir, did ask of us—at full length and with truth. What else dost thou desire to hear ?

---

CANTO XLV.

---

*The Birth of Brahmá.*

---

*Jaimini thanks the Birds for all the information they have given him, and asks about creation, the world, mankind &c.,—In reply they relate what Márkaṇḍeya had taught Krauśtuki regarding all those matters, as follows.*

*Márkaṇḍeya extols this Purāṇa as having emanated from Brahmá and having been handed down by eminent ṛishis—Adoration is paid to Brahmá.*

*The identity of Pradhána and Prakṛiti is asserted—Brahmá alone existed at first—From him emanated' Pradhána, which is called the Imperceptible—Out of it issued Mahat (the Intellectual principle)—And out of Mahat issued Ahankára (the principle of Individuality) with its three characters, the Evolving, the Modifying, and the Energizing—The Evolving Ahankára created sound, touch, form, taste and smell, and their corresponding elements, ether, air, light, water and earth—The Modifying Ahankára produced the eleven human organs—The characters of the elements are expounded.*

*Mahat and the other principles produced an egg, the composition of which is described—It was animated by Brahmá as the Soul and it contained the universe, the gods, demons and mankind.*

Jaimini spoke.

- 1 Ye have well related this to me, O noble bráhmaṇs, both  
activity and inactivity, the two-fold deeds enjoined by the  
2 Veda. Ah, through your father's favour, ye have such  
knowledge as this, by which ye have overcome folly although  
3 ye have descended to this animal state. Happy are ye in



that your mind, steadfast in your pristine state towards *the attainment of final emancipation*, is not swayed by the bewilderingments that spring from objects of sense. O joy that the wise lord Márkaṇḍeya made you known to me as the dissipators of every doubt! For men who wander in this closely-thronged mundane existence there is available association with such as your honours; not for ascetics. If I after gaining association with you who have perspicacity in knowledge should not succeed in my object, then assuredly\* there can be no success for me elsewhere. Both in activity and in inactivity, in knowledge and deed, no one else has, I think, a mind so unsullied as your honours have.

If then your mind, O noble bráhmans, is favourable towards me, then deign to expound this completely;—How did this universe, both moveable and immoveable, come into existence? And how will it fall into dissolution at the proper time, most excellent *bráhmans*? And how came the families† that sprang from the gods, the řishis, the pitřis, created things &c.? And how did the Manvantaras occur? And what was the history of the families of *old*; and whatever creations and whatever dissolutions of the universe have occurred; and how the ages have been divided; and what the duration of the Manvantaras has been; and how the earth remains stable; and what is the size of the world; and *what are* the oceans, mountains and rivers and forests according to their situation; *what is* the number of the worlds, the bhúr-loka, svar-loka &c., including the lower regions; and *what is* the course of the sun, moon, and other planets, of the stars and heavenly bodies also. I wish to hear of all this which is destined to subversion;‡ and what will be the end when this universe is dissolved.

The Birds spoke.

Unparalleled is this load of questions which thou hast

\* For *nyúnam* read *núnam*.

† *Akhúta-samplava*.

‡ For *vamśádd* read *vamśá*?

asked, O bráhmaṇ: we will declare it to thee; listen to it  
 16 here, O Jaimini, as Márkaṇḍeya expounded it formerly to the  
 calm and wise Kraushṭuki, a young bráhmaṇ, who had com-  
 17 pleted his term of studentship. Kraushṭuki asked the high-  
 souled Márkaṇḍeya, whom the bráhmaṇs were waiting upon,  
 18 what you have asked, my lord; and we will tell thee what  
 19 the Muni, Bhrigu's son, told him with affection; listen, O  
 bráhmaṇ, after having paid adoration to the Forefather Brah-  
 má, the lord of the universe, the origin of the universe, who  
 presided over creation, who in the form of Viṣṇu *presides*  
 over its maintenance, and who in the form of the terrible  
 Śiva destroys it at the dissolution.

Márkaṇḍeya spoke.

20 Formerly as soon as Brahmá, whose origin is inscrutable,  
 came into being, this Purāṇa and the Vedas issued\* from his  
 21 mouths; and many paramarshis composed the collections of  
 the Purāṇas; and the Vedas were divided by them in a  
 22 thousand ways. Righteousness and knowledge, passionless-  
 ness, and sovereignty—these four indeed were not perfected  
 23 without instruction from him, the high-souled. His seven  
 mind-born† rishis took the Vedas from him, and his mind-born  
 24 ancient munis took the Purāṇa. C'yavana took it from  
 Bhrigu, and he declared it to the bráhmaṇs, and this *purāṇa*  
 25 was repeated by the high-souled rishis to Daksha; and then  
 Daksha repeated it to me. I will now tell it to thee: it de-  
 26 stroys strife and sin. Hear all this from me with composure,  
 illustrious Muni, as I formerly heard it when Daksha related  
 it.

27 Having paid adoration to the origin of the universe, un-  
 born, changeless, the asylum, the upholder of the moveable  
 28 and immoveable universe, the supreme object, Brahmá, the  
 first male,—the cause which. itself unbegotten,‡ *works* in pro-

\* Anuviniṣṛita, not in the dictionary.

† Mánasa.

‡ Anaurasya; not in the dictionary.

duction, maintenance and dissolution, wherein everything is  
 29 established—having paid adoration to him, Hiranya-garbha,  
 the framework of the world, the wise, I will duly tell of the  
 30 multitude of created things, matchless, great, primeval, formed  
 for special ends, various in shape, possessing characteristics, as-  
 certainable by the five standards of measure, possessing the  
 31 five streams of life, governed by the soul, existent as if per-  
 petual and temporary—listen thereto with sublime composure,  
 illustrious Sir!

32 Pradhána is the cause, which is designated the Imperceptible,  
 and which the great rishis call the subtle, permanent Prakṛiti,  
 33 composed of good and evil. Brahmá at first existed certain,  
 imperishable, undecaying, immeasurable, self-dependent, des-  
 34 titute of odour, form, and taste, devoid of sound and touch,  
 without beginning or end, the origin of the universe, un-  
 changed\* by the power of the three qualities, not modern,†  
 35 unknowable. Subsequent to the dissolution, all this *universe*  
 was pervaded by him completely.

Then from him, in whom the *three* qualities existed in  
 equipoise, and in whom the Soul‡ became prevalent, O Muni;  
 36 and next from the coming into existence of the qualities  
 which were being created, at the time of creation the first  
 37 principle Pradhána came into existence. It enveloped  
 Mahat;§ as the seed is enveloped by its rind, even so Mahat  
 was enveloped by the Imperceptible. It is three-fold, that  
 characterized by goodness, that by passion, and that by  
 38 ignorance. Then from it was evolved Ahankára,|| which is  
 three-fold, the Modifying,¶ the Energizing,\*\* and the Evol-  
 39 ving†† which is characterized by darkness. And it was en-  
 veloped by Mahat, just as Mahat was by the Imperceptible.

Now the Evolving *Ahankára*, modifying itself, created the  
 40 subtle element‡‡ of sound§§ next. From the subtle element

\* For *-prabhavápyayam* read *-prabhavúvyayam* ?

† A-sámprata.

‡ Kshetra-jña.

§ The great Intellectual principle.

|| The principle of Individuality.

¶ Vaikárika.

\*\* Taijasa.

†† Bhútádi.

‡‡ Tan-mátra.

§§ For *śabdaś tanmátrakam* read *śabda-tanmátrakam* ?

of sound *came* the Ether, which has the property of sound ;  
 now ether is the sound-element, and the evolving *Ahankára*  
 41 enveloped it then. The subtle element of touch is indeed  
 born next without doubt; the mighty Air is born, its pro-  
 42 perty of touch is well known. And the air, modifying itself,  
 created the *subtle* element of form ; Light was produced from  
 43 the air ; it is said to have the property of form ; the air which  
 is the element of touch enveloped the element of form. And  
 light, modifying itself created the *subtle* element of taste ;  
 44 therefrom indeed water also was produced ; it has the pro-  
 perty of taste ; now the element of form enveloped the water\*  
 45 which is the element of taste. And the water, modifying  
 itself, created the *subtle* element of smell ; therefrom Solid  
 46 Matter† is produced ; smell is well known to be its property.  
 Now in each *element* resides its *peculiar* subtle element ; there-  
 by its possession of that subtle element is a well-established  
 fact. And hence those *elements* are uniform, inasmuch as no  
 47 difference can be predicated. They are all neither calm, nor  
 terrible, nor crass.‡ This is the creation of the elements and  
 the subtle elements from *Ahankára* when it is characterized  
 by darkness.

48 From *Ahankára* in its Modifying character, which is distin-  
 guished by goodness and possesses goodness in excess, the  
 modificatory creation began at once.

49 The five organs of the intellect,§ and the five organs of  
 action, men call *these* the energetic|| organs ; they are the ten  
 50 *Vaikárika* deities. The mind¶ is the eleventh *organ* among  
 them. *Such* are the *Vaikárika* deities known to be. The  
 51 ear, the skin, the pair of eyes, the tongue, and fifthly the  
 nose ; men say\*\* *these* are the *organs* connected with the in-  
 tellect for the purpose of perceiving sound and the other  
*impressions*. The pair of feet, the anus, the organ of genera-  
 tion, the pair of hands, and the voice may rank as fifth *with*

\* For *ápo* read *apo* ; for the water was enveloped by the light which preceded it ; but the change spoils the metre.

† *Sangháta*.

‡ *Múḍha*.

§ *Ruddhi*.

|| *Taijasa*.

¶ *Manas*.

\*\* For *vakshyate* read *c'akshate* ?

52 *them*; walking, evacuation, *sexual* delight, manual work and speech—that is the work *for each of these organs respectively*.

Ether has the element\* of sound only. When the element  
53 of touch accrued, Air comes into existence with two properties†; touch is known *to be its peculiar* property. Moreover, when to form accrued both the properties, sound and touch,  
54 then Fire also *came into existence* with its three‡ properties; it has sound and touch and form. Sound, and touch and  
55 form,—when the element of taste accrued *to them*, then Water with its four properties *came into existence*; it is to be known as being characterized by taste. Sound and touch and form  
56 *and* taste, *when* smell accrued, they consolidated with the element of smell enclosed this Earth; hence earth has five properties; it is seen to be the gross one among created things.

57 Calm and terrible and crass§ are their distinguishing marks; thereby they are known: they contain one another  
58 through their mutual interpenetration. Within the earth *is contained* all this|| visible and invisible world firmly enclosed. And those distinguishing marks are perceptible by  
59 the organs of sense, and are recollected by reason of their permanency. They take each successive one the property of its preceding one. These seven *principles* when un-combined  
60 are distinct and have various energies: they could not have created mankind, unless they had united. And meeting in  
61 mutual combination, they become mutually dependent; and when they all unite into one, they have the marks of a single complex body.

By reason of their being governed by the Soul¶ and also  
62 through the favour of the Imperceptible, Mahat and the other *principles*, which have different limits, cause an egg to come into existence. There like a bubble on water, the egg gra-  
63 dually increased by means of the things that existed, O Sage most intelligent! In its enlarged state it lay on the water.

\* Mátra.

† Guna.

‡ For *dei-guṇas* read *ri-guṇas*?

§ Mūḍha.

|| For *inam* read *ulam*?

¶ Puruṣha.

The Soul,\* having increased inside the egg sprung from Prakṛiti, took the name Brahmá; it indeed was the first corporeal being, it indeed is called Purusha. And Brahmá existed first, the original maker of created beings. That egg enclosed all these three worlds with all that they contain moveable and immoveable. Meru was born from it, and as the after-birth *were born* the mountains; the oceans were the fluid contained within that egg which held the great Soul. Within that egg was all this world, with the gods and demons and mankind, and the continents and other lands, the mountains and oceans, *and* the throng of luminous worlds.

Then the egg was enveloped by water, air, fire and ether and by the evolving Ahankára externally, ten times over by each of them. It was then surrounded† by Mahat which I have mentioned, which had the same magnitude. Mahat together with them all was enveloped by the Imperceptible. With these seven coverings formed from Prakṛiti was the egg enveloped. Enveloping one another the eight Prakṛitis existed. This very Prakṛiti is permanent; and that Purusha is limited by it.

Hear thou, moreover, briefly of him who is spoken of by the name Brahmá. Just as one sunk in water, on emerging from it, seems to be born from water‡ and flings the water away, so Brahmá is *both* Prakṛiti and the Soul.§ The Imperceptible is declared to be his sphere of action;|| *hence* Brahmá is called Kshetra-jña, the Soul. A man should know all these characteristics of the Soul and its sphere of action.

Such was this creation from Prakṛiti; and it is governed by the Soul; the first *stage of creation* was preceded by non-intelligence, it became manifest like the lightning.

\* Kshetra-jña.

† For *veshṭitah* read *veshṭitam*?

‡ For *jala-sambhavam* read *jala-sambhavaḥ*?

§ Vibhu

|| Kshetra.

## CANTO XLVI.

*The computation of Brahmá's life.*

*Márkaṇḍeya moralizes on Brahmá and Prakṛiti—and describes Viṣṇu and Ś'iva as special forms of Brahmá—He explains how human and divine years are reckoned, the duration of the four ages, the Kṛita, the Tretá, the Dvúpára and the Kali, and of a Manvantara, and the length of Brahmá's day and life.*

Kraushṭuki spoke.

- 1 Adorable Sir! thou hast related to me correctly the genesis of the egg, and thou hast told me of the birth of the mighty
- 2 Soul Brahmá within the egg of Brahmá. I wish to hear this from thee, O scion of Bhṛigu's race, when things are not created, and nothing exists, everything having been destroyed by Time at the end of the dissolution of the Universe.

Márkaṇḍeya spoke.

- 3 When all this universe becomes dissolved in Nature,\* this
- 4 dissolution is designated 'natural'† by the wise. When the Imperceptible subsists within itself, and when all modification is suspended, Nature and the Soul‡ subsist with sameness of character. Then both darkness and goodness subsist in equipoise, neither being in excess or in deficiency, and
- 6 permeated by each other. Just as oil exists in sesamum seeds, or as ghee in milk, so passion also exists permeant within darkness and goodness.
- 7 The day of the Supreme Lord§ lasts from the birth of Brahmá, as long as the two half paras which compose his life;|| and his night during the dissolution is of the same
- 8 duration.¶ Now at the dawn of day he awakes, he who is

\* Prakṛiti.

† Prákṛita.

‡ Puruṣa.

§ Pareśa.

|| The text seems incorrect; a better reading obtained from a MS. belonging to Babu Nagendra Chandra Basu of Calcutta is *utpatter* for *utpattir*, and *áyur vai* for *áyusho*. See verse 42.

¶ The same MS. reads *tat-samāḥ samayo* instead of *tat-samā samyame*; with practically the same meaning.

the origin of the universe, who is without beginning, who is the cause of all things, whose soul transcends thought; every one else works in an inferior way.

- 9 The Supreme God, quickly enters into Nature and the Soul, as the lord of the universe, and agitates them with his intense  
 10 supernatural power. Just as love, or a breeze of Spring, entering into young women tends to produce agitation, so does he, who is the embodiment of supernatural power.  
 11 When Pradhána is agitated, the god Brahmá is born and is contained within the cavity of the egg, as I have *already*  
 12 told thee. At first he is the agitator; as the husband of Nature, he is *the thing* to be agitated; and he exists with  
 13 contraction and expansion even in the state of Pradhána. He is born, *though* he is the birth-place of the universe; though devoid of qualities, he possesses the quality of passion; when he assumes the character of Brahmá, he engages in creation.  
 14 In the character of Brahmá he creates mankind; then possessing an excess of goodness, he becomes Vishṇu and  
 15 protects them righteously; then, with darkness preponderating in him, he ~~has~~ Rudra dissolves the whole universe with its three worlds, and sleeps. He possesses the three qualities,  
 16 *and yet* he is destitute of qualities. Just as he is at first the pervading Soul, *then* the preserver, and *lastly* the destroyer,\* so he takes appellations which designate him as Brahmá,  
 17 Vishṇu or Śiva. As Brahmá he creates the world; and as Rudra he destroys them; and as Vishṇu he holds a neutral position. These are the three conditions of the Self-existent.  
 18 Passion *and* Brahmá; darkness *and* Rudra; goodness *and* Vishṇu the lord of the world: these indeed are the three  
 19 doities; these indeed are the three qualities. These verily are mutually paired, and are mutually dependant: they are not separated for a moment; they do not forsake one another.  
 20 Thus Brahmá, the four-faced god of gods, is anterior to the universe: assuming the quality of passion, he engages in creation.

\* *Lávaka* (from *lú*), one who cuts to pieces, one who destroys. Would not *láyaka* (from *l'*) be better, one who brings on the dissolution?



- 21     Brahmá who is adored as Hiranya-garbha, the first of the  
 gods, and without beginning, who sits in the middle of the  
 22     lotus-like earth, was born in the beginning. One hundred  
 years is the full length of life for him, the high-souled, accord-  
 ing to the true Bráhma computation. Hear from me how it  
 is reckoned.
- 23     A káshthá is said *to be composed* of fifteen winks of the  
 eyelids; and thirty káshthás *make* a kalá; and thirty such  
 24     kalás *make* a muhúrta. A day and night among men contain,  
 it has been settled, thirty muhúrtas; and with thirty days  
 25     are reckoned the two lunar fortnights and the month; of  
 six months consists the sun's half-yearly course; the two  
 half-yearly courses on the south and north *of the equator com-*  
*pose* the year. Such a year is a day and night of the gods;\*  
 the day thereof is the sun's northern half-yearly course.
- 26     Now of twelve thousand divine years consist the four ages  
 named the Kṛita, the Tretá, &c. Hear from me how they  
 are divided.
- 27     Now the Kṛita age is said *to have contained* four thousand  
 years; its commencing twilight was four hundred years, and  
 28     the closing twilight was of the same *duration*. The Tretá  
 age was three thousand divine years; and three hundred  
*years* was its commencing twilight, which was indeed of that  
 duration, and its closing twilight was of the same *duration*.
- 29     The Dvápára age was two thousand years; and its commen-  
 cing twilight is declared to have been two hundred *years*, and  
 30     its closing twilight was two hundred years. The Kali age  
 is a thousand divine years, O brahman; two hundreds of  
 years are called its commencing and closing twilights.
- 31     This period of twelve thousand *divine years* is called a yuga;  
 it has been laid down by the poets; a thousand times this  
*period* are called one of Brahmá's days.
- 32     In one of Brahmá's days, O brahman, there may be four-  
 teen Manus. They live according to their portions; that  
 33     thousand is divided among them. The gods, the seven

\* Thus one divine year = 360 human years.

- rishis, and Indra, Manu, and the kings his sons, are created with Manu and pass to dissolution with him in regular order.
- 34 Seventy-one repetitions of the four ages, with a fraction in excess, constitute a manvantara; hear from me its computation in
- 35 human years. Thirty full crores reckoned duly, O brahman,
- 36 and sixty-seven lakhs more by reckoning, and twenty thousands—this is the period of *seventy-one times the four ages* without the excess fraction; this is called a manvantara.
- 37 Hear it from me in divine years; eight hundred thousands of years by divine reckoning,\* and fifty-two thousands of
- 38 years more in addition. A day of Brahmá is declared to be this period multiplied fourteen times.† At its termination the dissolution is declared by the wise to be the necessary result, O brahman.
- 39 The Bhúr-loka, the Bhuvar-loka and the Svar-loka are perishable and pass‡ to dissolution; and the Mahar-loka
- 40 stands, yet the dwellers therein by reason of the heat go to the Jana-loka. And Brahmá sleeps indeed during the night in the three worlds which have been dissolved into one ocean.
- 41 That night is of exactly the same duration. At its termina-

\* This line as it stands in the text seems incorrect. The four ages contain 12,000 divine years or 4,320,000 human years, and 71 times this period contain 8,52,000 divine years, or 306,720,000 human years. This latter period agrees with the enumeration in verse 36 (*viz.*, 30,67,20,000 years), but instead of the former the text gives 8,000 + 52,000, i. e., 60,000 divine years, unless we read *śata-sahasráṇi* for *varsha-sahasráṇi*. *Yutam*, however, seems wrong as regards both grammar and meaning.

† This does not agree with verse 31, if we take the words "this period" to refer to verses 35, 36 and 37. In verse 31 one of Brahmá's days is said to be 12,000,000 divine years or 4,320,000,000 human years, but 14 times the period mentioned in the latter verses contain 11,928,000 divine years, or 4,294,080,000 human years. We must bring in here the excess fraction referred to in verse 34, which by calculation is found to be  $\frac{1}{7}$ ; thus  $71\frac{1}{7}$  times the yuga of 12,000 divine years = 857,142 $\frac{1}{7}$  divine years of the manvantara and 14 times this last period exactly = 12,000,000 divine years of Brahmá's day. Similarly with regard to human years.

‡ For *ádyāti* read *dyānti*?

- tion creation begins again. And so *passes* one of Brahmá's  
 42 years, and a hundred years is the whole. For a hundred of  
 his years is denominated a Para; and a Parárdha or half a  
 43 Para is well-known to be composed of fifty years. So then a  
 Parárdha of his *life* has elapsed, O brahman; at the close of  
 which occurred the Mahá-kalpa, *which* is famed as the Pádma.  
 44 Of the second Parárdha which is now passing, O brahman,  
 the first kalpa (or cycle) ordained is this one called the  
 Váráha.

---

CANTO XLVII.

---

*The Creation from Prakṛiti and the Vikāras.\**

Márkaṇḍeya continues—After the Pádma Mahá-kalpa Brahmá awoke, and as Náráyaṇa raised the earth out of the sea of dissolution and fashioned it in its present shape—Then he created, first, the vegetable world—secondly, the animal world—thirdly, the gods—fourthly, mankind—fifthly, Anugraha—and sixthly, the bhútas—Markaṇḍeya summarizes the nine creations, viz., these six, and the three described in Canto XLV.

Kraushṭuki spoke

- 1 Tell me fully how Brahmá, the adorable, the creator, the lord of all creatures, the master, the divine, created *all* creatures.

Márkaṇḍeya spoke.

- 2 Here I tell thee, O brahman, how the adorable eternal framer of the worlds created *all* the universe moveable and immoveable.
- 3 At the dissolution which followed the Pádma† *Mahá-kalpa*, the lord Brahmá awoke after having slept through the night.

\* The products evolved from Prakṛiti.

† For *padmāvasāne* read *pádmāvasāne* ?

Then with goodness predominating in him he gazed on the  
 4 empty world. And here men utter this verse to Náráyana,  
 who has Brahmá's own form, god of the universe, changeless  
 5 in might. "Nárá means water and bodies"\*—we have thus  
 heard it is a name for water; and in it he lies, hence he is  
 called Náráyana.

6 On awaking he knew that the earth had disappeared with-  
 in that water, and then became desirous through reflection to  
 7 deliver† the earth therefrom. He assumed as of old in the  
 kalpas and other *times*, other bodies such as those of a fish, a  
 tortoise and other *animals*, and likewise he took the body of  
 8 a boar. The lord who is composed of the Vedas and sacri-  
 fices assumed a heavenly form composed of the Vedas and  
 sacrifices, and entered the water; he reached everywhere and  
 9 existed everywhere. And the lord of the world raised the  
 earth out of the lower regions, and set it free in the water,  
 while the Siddhas who abode in Jana-loka bent their thoughts  
 10 on him. The earth floated like an immense boat on that  
 ocean, but does not sink by reason of the amplitude of its size.  
 11 Then he made the earth level and created the mountains on  
 the earth. Formerly when creation was burnt up by the  
 12 then world-destroying fire, those mountains on the earth were  
 totally consumed by that fire. The rocks were engulfed in  
 that one ocean, and the water was driven together by the  
 13 wind; wherever they adhered and remained, there the moun-  
 tains grew into being. Then he divided the earth, adorned  
 14 with seven dvípas; and he fashioned the four worlds, the  
 Bhur-loka and the others, as before.

While he pondered on creation, as of old in the kalpas and  
 15 other *times*, he next became manifested as devoid of intelli-  
 gence, as enveloped in darkness. Darkness, folly, infatuation,  
 16 gloominess, and blind consciousness—ignorance,‡ composed of  
 these five, became manifested out of the Supreme Soul.  
 Creation irrational became established in five ways while he  
 17 was meditating. Externally and internally it was destitute of

\* Tanavaḥ.

† Sam-ud-dhára; not in the dictionary.

‡ A-vidyá.

light,\* its soul was concealed, it consisted of vegetation;† and since vegetation is declared to be, “primary,”‡ hence this is indeed the Mukhya creation.

- 18 He considered that creation incapable of causation,§ and thought of *creating* another yet. While he was meditating on its creation, the animal world, in which the stream of life||
- 19 is horizontal,¶ came next into existence. Since its activities are *displayed* horizontally, hence it\*\* is known as the “tiryak-srotas.” Cattle and other *quadrupeds* are well-known as being of that kind; they are indeed characterized chiefly by ignorance and are unintelligent; and they stray in wrong courses, and in their ignorance are subservient to knowledge; they are self-swayed, and devoted to self; they comprise twenty-
- 20 eight classes. They all possess light\* internally, but they are mutually circumscribed.††

- He thought even that *creation* was incapable of causation, and while he meditated, another came into existence; now *this*, the third, was the group of beings in which the stream of life passed upwards;‡‡ it was characterized chiefly by goodness. Those beings abound in pleasure and affection; they
- 23 are uncircumscribed outwardly and inwardly; and possess light\* externally and internally; they originated from an upward stream of life. Now that third *creation* of the *Supreme Being who was* satisfied in soul *thereat* is known as the creation of the gods. When that creation came into being,
- 24 Brahmá was pleased.

\* Prakáśa. This is defined by S’rí-dhara Svámí to mean “clear knowledge” (prakṛiṣṭaṃ jñānam). It had no clear external perception of sound &c., or clear internal feeling of happiness, &c.

† Naga.

‡ Mukhya.

§ For *drīṣṭvā sádhakam* read *drīṣṭvāsádhakam*; see the second line of verse 21.

|| Srotas; or the current of nutriment.

¶ Tiryak.

\*\* For *sá* read *saḥ*?

†† A-vṛita. S’rí-dhara explains this as, “mutually ignorant of their birth, nature, &c.”

‡‡ Urdhva-srotas.

- Then he meditated further on another creation *which should*  
 25 *be* capable of causation and be the highest. While he meditated so, and meditated on truth, the group of beings in which the stream of life passes downwards,\* and which is capable of causation,† next became manifest out of the Imperceptible. Since *the streams of life in them* moved downwards, hence they‡ are “arvák-srotas;” and they possess light§ copiously; they are characterized chiefly by ignorance and passion. Hence they have abundance of suffering, and are continuously engaged in action; and they possess light externally and internally. They are mankind and are capable of causation.
- 28 Anugraha|| was the fifth creation; it is disposed in four ways, by contrariety,¶ and by perfection,\*\* by tranquillity,†† and by satisfaction‡‡ likewise. The objects of this creation moreover have knowledge of the past and of the present.
- 30 The creation of the origins of the gross elements§§ and the gross elements||| is called the sixth; they all possess comprehensiveness,¶¶ and are prone to mutual division;\*\*\* and the origins of the gross elements are to be known as both impulsive and devoid of propensities.
- 31 Now the creation of “mahat” is to be known as the first by Brahmá; and the second of the “tan-mátras” is called
- 32 the creation of the “bhútas;” and the third creation is that of the “vikáras,”††† and it is perceptible by the senses. So was produced the creation from Prakṛiti wherein Intelligence pre-

\* Arvák-srotas.

† For *sádhakaḥ* read *sádhakam* f‡ For *ta* read *ts* ?

§ Prakáśa, see note \* p. 230.

|| This is the Pratyaya-sarga or intellectual creation of the Sánkhya philosophy. But S'ri-dhara explains it as an inferior creation of gods (deva-sarga), who are characterized by both goodness and ignorance. It is characterized by ignorance because it is nourished by the ignorance among immoveable objects and the animal creation; it is characterized by goodness, because it harmonizes with and thrives upon the perfection and satisfaction among mankind and the gods; and it is called Anugraha, because it favours (anugrahaka) the several natural dispositions of those objects.

¶ Viparyaya.

\*\* Siddhi.

†† S'ánti.

‡‡ Tushti.

§§ Bhútádika.

||| Bhúta.

¶¶ Pari-graha.

\*\*\* Sam-vi-bhága.

††† The products evolved from Prakṛiti.

- 33 ceded. The “mukhya” creation was the fourth, the mukhya  
things are known as immoveable. The fifth was that called  
34 “tiryak-srotas”\* and “tairyag-yonya.” Next was the sixth  
creation, that of the “úrdhva-srotas”;† it is known as the  
creation of the gods. Then the creation of the “arvák-srotas”  
35 is the seventh; it is that of mankind. The eighth creation  
is “anugraha”; it is characterized by goodness and ignorance.  
These last five creations are known as those which were  
evolved from the Vikáras,‡ and the first three as those  
36 evolved from Prakṛiti.§ The ninth creation was Prákṛita  
and also Vaikṛita; it is known as “Kaumára.”|| Thus these  
nine creations of the Prajá-pati have been declared.

---

### CANTO XLVIII.

---

#### *The Course of Creation.*

---

*Márkaṇḍeya relates how Brahmá created the Asuras, the gods, the pitris and mankind, and the night and day and the two twilights—He mentions the times when those beings are powerful—He relates the creation of the Rákshasas, Yakshas, Serpents, Pisác'as, and Gandharvas—Next of all beasts, birds and other animals—Then of various sacred hymns and metres—Then of the lightning, thunder, and other phenomena—And lastly Brahmá assigned all things their shapes, pursuits and names.*

Kraushṭuki spoke.

- 1 O adorable Sir, right well hast thou related the creation briefly to me; tell me, O bráhmaṇ, fully of the origin of the gods.

\* For *tiryak-srotas* read *tiryak-srotás* ?

† For *tato 'rddha-srotasám* read *tathorddhva-srotasám* ?

‡ Vaikṛita.

§ Prákṛita.

|| This is the creation of Níla-lohita Rudra (see Canto LII) and of Sanat-kumára and the other mind-born sons of Brahmá, the Kumáras. This creation is called *prákṛita* because Rudra sprang into existence by himself, as mentioned in that canto, verse 3. It is also called *vaikṛita*, because the Kumáras were created by Brahmá in the form he assumed of a *vikára* (*vikṛiti-bhúta*).

Márkaṇḍeya spoke.

- 2      *Creation* is impregnated with the good and bad\* actions of previous existence, O bráhmaṇ; and because of this well-known law†, created beings, though they are destroyed in the dissolution, are not delivered, *from the consequences of their actions.*
- 3      The gods and other *divine beings*, and stationary things, and the four classes of mankind, O bráhmaṇ, were produced in his mind when Bráhmá was engaged in creation.
- 4      Then being desirous of creating the four classes of beings, namely, the gods, the Asuras and the pīṭris, and mankind, he
- 5      infused‡ himself in the waters. The particle of darkness grew up in excess as the Prajá-pati was rapt in meditation. First then out of his buttocks, as he was desirous
- 6      of creating, were produced the Asuras. And then he cast aside that body which was composed of the particle of darkness; that body cast aside by him forthwith became Night.
- 7      Being desirous of creating, he assumed another body and experienced delight; then were produced from his mouth the
- 8      Gods in whom goodness predominates. And the mighty lord of created beings abandoned that body also, and when cast aside it became Day wherein goodness predominates.
- 9      Then he took another body which was indeed characterized by the particle of goodness; the Pīṭris were produced from
- 10     him while he deemed himself to be a pīṭri. The lord, after creating the pīṭris, abandoned that body also, and when abandoned it became the Twilight that intervenes between
- 11     day and night. Next the lord assumed another body characterized by the particle of passion, and then were produced
- 12     Mankind who spring from the particle of passion. After creating mankind, the lord abandoned that body, and it became the Twilight that ends the night and begins the day.
- 13     Thus these bodies of the wise God of gods have become famed as the night and day, and the evening twilight and

\* For *kuśalā kuśalair* read *kuśalākūśalair*.

† For *khyātā* read *khyātyā* ?

‡ Or, united himself with.



- 14 the morning twilight, O bráhmaṇ. Three are characterized by the particle of goodness, namely, the morning twilight, the evening twilight and the day; the night is characterized by
- 15 the particle of darkness, hence it is called Tri-yámiká.\* Hence the gods are powerful by day, but the Asuras by night, and mankind at the coming of the morning twilight, and the pitṛis
- 16 at the evening twilight. At these times these classes of beings are undoubtedly powerful and unassailable by their foes; and when they light upon the adverse times they lose their power.
- 17 The morning twilight, the night, the day, and the evening twilight, these four are indeed the bodies of the lord Brahmá, and they are invested with the three qualities.
- 18 Now after creating these four, the Prajá-pati, feeling hunger and thirst, took another body composed of passion and dark-
- 19 ness during the night; during its darkness the adorable unborn god created bearded monsters wasted with hunger;
- 20 and they endeavoured to eat up that body. Some of those monsters, who said "let us preserve† it from them," were called Rákshasas in consequence; and those who said "let us devour‡ it" were called Yakshas, from yakshana, 'eating,' § O bráhmaṇ.
- 21 When the creator Brahmá saw them, the hair of his head through his displeasure grew withered|| and lost its erectibi-
- 22 lity ¶ Through its downward gliding\*\* it became the Serpents,†† and from its loss‡‡ of erectibility they are known as the Ahis or Snakes. Thereupon in anger at having seen the
- 23 Serpents, he fashioned beings possessed with anger;§§ they were born as the flesh-eating demons, tawny-hued and fierce.

\* That is, "having its course with the three others," from tri and yáma (from root yá); or, "keeping the three others in check," from tri and yáma (from root yam). The meaning "having three watches" from tri and yáma (from root yá) is discarded here.

† Raksháma. ‡ Khádáma.

§ Yakshana seems a mistake for jakshana.

|| For s'ṛyanta read śrṇas ty?

¶ Samárohana-hína.

\*\* Sarpapa.

†† Sarpa.

‡‡ Hinatva.

§§ For krodhátmano read krodhátmano?

Next while he meditated on the earth,\* the Gandharvas  
24 were born as his offspring. They were born from him as he  
drank speech in,† hence they are known as the Gandharvas.

When these eight classes of divine beings were created, the  
25 lord next created other things, birds and cattle.‡ He created  
goats§ from his mouth; and he created sheep from his  
26 breast; and Brahmá fashioned kine|| from his belly and from  
his loins; and from his feet swift¶ horses and asses, and hares  
27 and deer, camels and mules and other *animals* of various  
kinds; plants and fruit-trees were produced from the hair of  
28 his body. When he had thus created the cattle and plants,  
the lord performed a sacrifice

From him at the beginning of the kalpa, at the commence-  
29 ment of the Tretá Age issued the cow, the goat, mankind, the  
sheep, the horse, the mule, and the ass (these animals men  
call domestic cattle), and *others* (*which they call* wild animals,  
30 hearken to me), *namely* the beast of prey, the cloven-hoofed  
beast, the elephant, monkeys, fifthly birds, sixthly aquatic  
beasts, and seventhly creeping animals.

And for the sacrifices he fashioned from his front mouth  
the gáyatrí, and the tric'astrophe, the tri-vrit hymn of praise,\*\*  
32 the rathantara sáman, and the agni-shtoma verses. And he  
created from his right mouth the yajur hymns, the tri-shṭubh  
metre, sacred hymns,†† and the fifteen hymns of praise,‡‡ and  
33 the bṛihat-sáman and the uktha verses.§§ He fashioned from  
his hindmost mouth the sáman hymns, the metre jagatí, and

\* Dhyáyato gám. † Pivato rác'am; the derivation is not apparent.

‡ *Paśavo*; by ancient use for *patán*.

§ *Ajáh* for *aján*, by ancient use; so also *avayo* for *aván* 'sheep.'

|| *Gdvas* for *gás*, by ancient use. But the MS. in the Sanskrit College  
Library, Calcutta, reads instead—

*Tataḥ svac'c'handato 'nyáni vayámsi vayaso 'srijat.*

"Then he created other winged animals from his bodily energy according  
to his wish."

¶ *Samátanga*; not in the dictionary: from the root *sam-á-tang*?

\*\* The eleventh hymn of the ninth Maṇḍala of the R̥g-Veda sung in a  
special way. †† C'handas. ‡‡ Stoma.

§§ For *uktam* read *uktham*.

the fifteen hymns of praise,\* the vairúpa sáman, and the atirátra verse.† He created from his left mouth the twenty-first Atharva hymn, and the aptor-yáman sacrificial verse,‡ the anu-shṭubh metre and the viráj metre.

The mighty adorable god created at the beginning of the kalpa the lightning, the thunderbolts and the clouds, and the ruddy rainbows, and the periods of life.‡ And created things great and small were produced from his limbs.

Having created the first four classes of beings, the gods, the Asuras, the pitṛis and mankind, he next created the things that exist both immoveable and moveable, the Yakshas, the Piśác'as, the Gandharvas and the bevvies of Apsarases, men and Kinnaras and Rákshasas, birds, cattle, wild animals and snakes, and whatever is changeless and changeful, stationary and moveable.

Whatever actions they were severally endowed with originally at their creation, those very actions they are endowed with when they are created again and again. Noxiousness and harmlessness, gentleness and cruelty, righteousness and unrighteousness, truth and falsehood,—animated thereby they have their being; therefore they severally take delight in those characteristics. The lord, the creator, himself ordained diversity and specialization§ among created things in their organs and pursuits and bodies. And he assigned the names and shapes of created things, and propounded the duties of the gods and other beings, even by the words of the Veda at the beginning. He gives names to the Rishis, and to the several created classes|| among the gods, and to the other things that were brought forth at the close of the night.¶ As the signs of the seasons appear at their appropriate season,\*\* and various forms appear amid alteration, so those very signs and forms appear as actual facts†† in the ages and other periods.

\* Stoma; but another reading is *seventeen*.

† A part of the seven soma-samstha sacrifices.

‡ Vayámsi; or, birds.

§ Viniyoga.

|| Śṛiṣṭi.

¶ For *sarvaryante* read *s'urvaryante*?

\*\* For *yathárttau* read *yatharttau*?

†† Bháva.

- 45 Such then\* were the creations of Brahmá whose origin is undiscernible; they occur from kalpa to kalpa as he awakes at the close of his night.†

---

CANTO XLIX.

---

*The Course of Creation.*

*Márkaṇḍeya describes the creation of the primeval human race, and their simple condition and happy life—When they ultimately died out, modern men fell from the sky, and lived in kalpa trees—Passionate affection sprung up among them—and covetousness next, which destroyed the trees, and drove them to form communities—Their measures of length are explained—and fortresses, towns, villages and houses described—The Tretá Age began—with the existing rivers and vegetation—and the people lived on the vegetation—They then took private possession of property according to might, and the vegetation perished—Then they supplicated Brahmá, and he created all existing cereals and plants—The seventeen cereals and the fourteen sacrificial plants are specified—Brahmá ordained their means of livelihood, which could be gained only through labour, and their laws, castes, &c.—The spheres assigned to various classes after death are mentioned.*

Kraushṭuki spoke.

- 1 Thou hast told me, Sir, of the group of beings in which the stream of life‡ passes downwards; tell me fully, O  
2 bráhmaṇ, how Brahmá created the human creation, and how he created the classes of men, and how their qualities, O wise Sir; and tell me what business has been assigned to the bráhmaṇs and those other classes severally.

Márkaṇḍeya spoke.

- 3 While Brahmá was first creating and was meditating on truth, he created a thousand pairs of human beings from his  
4 mouth, O Muni; when born, they come into being, characterized chiefly by goodness, and self-glorious. He created

\* For *ta* read *tu*?

† For *sarvaryante* read *s'arvaryante*?

‡ Or, current of nutriment.

5 another thousand pairs from his breast; they were all characterized chiefly by passion, and were fiery and impatient. And he created again another thousand miserable  
 6 pairs from his thighs;\* they were known as characterized chiefly by passion and ignorance, and as enviously disposed.  
 7 And he created another thousand pairs from his feet; they were all characterized chiefly by ignorance, and were unfortunate and little of understanding.

Then those living beings, produced in pairs, were rejoicing  
 8 together; urged by their mutual distress they hastened to sexual intercourse. Thenceforward pairing originated in  
 8 this kalpa. Women did not have their courses month by month; hence they did not then bring forth offspring, although  
 10 they engaged in sexual intercourse. They bring forth just pairs of children once at the close of life. Thenceforward  
 11 pairing originated in this kalpa. By meditation and thought those human beings give birth to *offspring* once. Sound and the other objects of sense were pure severally in their five marks.

12 This was this creation of the human race which the Prajapati formerly *produced*. Sprung of his lineage they worshipped this world, and they pay homage to rivers, lakes, and seas and the mountains also. During that age those *human*  
 13 *beings* lived indeed feeling little cold or heat. They received delight according to their natural dispositions from the objects of sense, O wise *Sir*; no opposition, nor enmity, nor envy  
 15 existed among them. They paid homage to the mountains and the seas; they lived wholly without habitations; their actions were unswayed by love; their minds were always  
 16 joyful. Neither Pisác'as, nor Nágas, nor Rákshasas, nor envious men, nor cattle, nor birds, nor crocodiles, nor fish, nor  
 17 creeping insects, nor egg-born animals hindered *them*, (for those *animals* are the offspring of iniquity,) nor roots, nor  
 18 fruits, nor flowers, nor the seasons, nor the years. Time was always happy; there was neither heat nor cold in excess; as  
 19 time passed by, they attained wonderful perfection. More-

\* For *marutaḥ* read *śrutaḥ*.

over they enjoyed satisfaction in the fore-noon and at noon ;  
 and again satisfaction came without exertion to those who  
 20 wished for it, and exertion also sprang up in the mind of  
 those who wished for it. The water was exquisite. Perfec-  
 21 tion was merry with many a delight for them ;\* and another  
 was produced that conferred every wish. And with bodies  
 22 uncared for, those human beings had lasting youth. Without  
 resolve they produce offspring in pairs ; alike is their birth  
 23 and form, and together also they die. Devoid of desire and  
 hatred they lived to each other. All were equal in form and  
 24 length of life, without inferiority or superiority. They live  
 their measure of life, four thousand human years ; nor have  
 25 they misfortunes through affliction. Everywhere moreover  
 the earth was entirely blessed with good fortune.

26 As the people died in the course of time, so their prosperity  
 gradually perished everywhere ; and when it had altogether  
 27 perished, men fell down from the sky. Those kalpa trees  
 were commonly produced which are called houses ; and they  
 28 brought forth every kind of enjoyment to those *people*. At the  
 beginning of the Tretá age the *people* got their subsistence  
 from those *trees*. Afterwards in the course of time passionate  
 29 affection† sprung up suddenly among them. By reason of  
 the occurrence of passionate affection menstruation occurred  
 month by month, and conception frequently took place.  
 30 Then those trees were called houses‡ by them. But branches  
 certainly fall from other trees, O bráhmaṇ ; and they yield  
 31 clothing and ornaments out of their fruits. In the separate  
 cavities of the same *fruit* of those *trees* was produced very  
 strong honey, which excelled in smell, colour and taste, and  
 32 which no bee had made ; on that they subsisted at the begin-  
 ning of the Tretá age.

Afterwards in course of time those *people* grew covetous  
 33 besides ; their minds being filled with selfishness they fenced

\* The text *siddhir námnávayo na sá* seems incorrect ; instead of it, another MS. reads *siddhir nándrasollasá*, which I have adopted.

† Rága.

‡ Does this mean the trees were called houses (*gríha*) from the offspring (*garbha*) begotten there ?

the trees\* round ; and those trees perished by reason of that  
 34 wrong conduct on their part. Strife sprang up in consequence ; their faces felt cold and heat and hunger. Then for the sake of combination and resistance they made towns  
 35 at first ; and they resort to fortresses in inaccessible deserts and wastes, in mountains and caves ; also they industriously  
 36 constructed with their own fingers an artificial fort on trees, on mountains and in water, and they first made measures intended for measurement.

37 A minute atom, a para sūkshma, the mote in a sunbeam,† the dust of the earth, and the point of a hair, and a young louse,‡ and a louse,§ and the body of a barley-corn ;|| men  
 38 say each of those things is eight times the size of the preceding thing.¶ Eight barley-corns equal an angula or finger-breadth ;\*\* six finger-breadths are a pada,†† and twice that is known as a span ;‡‡ and two spans make a cubit measured with the fingers closed in at the root of the thumb ;§§ four cubits make a bow, a polṛ,||| and equal two nádikās ; two  
 40 thousand bows make a gavyúti ;¶¶ and four times that are declared by the wise to be a yojana ;\*\*\* this is the utmost measure for purposes of calculation.

41 Now of the four kinds of fortresses three occur naturally ; the fourth kind of fortress is artificial. Now those men  
 42 constructed it laboriously ;††† and they also constructed, O

\* For *vrikshás* read *vriksháms* ? † For *trasha-reṇur* read *trasa-reṇur*.

‡ For *nishkám* read *likshá*. § For *yúkam* read *yúká*. || Yavodara.

¶ For *ekádāśa-guṇam* *teshám* another MS. reads *kramád āśṭa-guṇányáhyr*, which is much better.

\*\* For *yava-madhyam* another MS. reads *yaványashṭru*.

†† A foot's breadth ? ‡‡ For *vitasti-dviguṇam* read *vitastir dviguṇam* ?

§§ For *-veshṭanam* read *-veshṭanah* ? This relation indicates a long arm, or small hands and feet. An average cubit so measured would be equal to about 15 inches. ||| Daṇḍa.

¶¶ A stretch of pasture-ground. Taking the cubit at 15 inches, this length would be 10,000 feet, or about  $1\frac{1}{10}$  mile.

\*\*\* Taking the cubit at 15 inches, the yojana equals 40,000 feet, or about  $7\frac{1}{2}$  miles.

††† The text *tac' c'a kuryát satastu te* appears corrupt. A better reading is *tac' c'akrur yatnatas tu te* from a MS. in the Sanskrit College Library.

bráhmaṇ,\* the pura,† and the khetaka, the droṇi-mukhaḥ  
likewise,§ and sákhá-nagarakas and the three kinds of kar-  
43 vaṭakas,|| and the grámas together with the arrangement of  
the ghoshas,¶ and the separate habitations therein ; and *they*  
44 *built* lofty ramparts surrounded on all sides with fosses. *They*  
*made* the pura, or town, extend for a quarter of a yojana in  
every direction, and slope down to water on the east ; *they*  
*made* it auspicious and *peopled* it with colonies from noble  
families.\*\* And with a half of it they laid out the khetā,††  
and with a quarter of it the karvaṭa ;‡‡ and then the inferior  
portion *which is made* with the remaining quarter is called the  
46 droṇi-mukha.§§ A town destitute of ramparts and fosses||| is

\* For *dvijaḥ* read *dvija* ? The vocative seems preferable as Márkaṇḍeya is relating what happened in a previous age, and the work described would not fall to a bráhmaṇ's duty. If *dvijaḥ* be retained, the word *kuryát* must be understood.

† This is explained in verse 44.

‡ These two words are explained in verse 45.

§ For *tadva* read *tadvad*.

|| These two words are not in the dictionary ; they are explained in verses 45 and 46. For *karvaṭakam trayá* read *karvaṭaka-trayám* ?

¶ Sanghosha is not in the dictionary. For *gramá-sanghosha-vinyásam* read *grámaṁ sa-ghosha-vinyásam* ? Gráma is explained in verse 47, and ghosha in verse 50.

\*\* S'uddha-vamśa-vahirgamam.

†† Prof. Sir M. Monier-Williams explains khetā, "a village, the residence of peasants and farmers ; a small town, half a pura" ; but here it apparently means a particular portion of the pura ; does it mean the "inhabited or residential area" ?

‡‡ This word is said to mean "a village, market-town, the capital of a district," but here it denotes a particular portion of the pura ; does it mean the bazár or the "area occupied with the market and shops" ?

§§ This word said to mean "the capital of a district, the chief of 400 villages," but here it evidently refers to the lowest part of the pura ; does it mean the "area inhabited by the labouring population or the lowest classes" ?

||| For *prákāram parikhá-hīnam* read *prákāra-parikhá-hīnam* ? Or, is the verse intended to say that a town surrounded with a rampart but without a fosse is a *varma-vat* ? This would agree better with the meaning of *varma-vat*. Prof. Sir M. Monier-Williams explains it as "an unfortified (?) town."



- called a varma-vat ; and a śákhá-nagaraka\* is another kind of  
 47 town which possesses ministers and feudatory princes. More-  
 over, a dwelling placet which abounds with súdras and water,†  
 where the cultivators are independently prosperous,§ and  
 which is situated on land that can be used for fields, is called  
 48 a gráma.|| The dwelling-place, which men make, different  
 from cities and other abodes, for the sake of their business,  
 49 is to be known as a vasati by modern men.¶ The gráma  
 which springs up on the land of another gráma, and thrives,  
 which has no fields of its own, which is for the most part  
 vicious, and which is the resort of a king's favourites, is  
 50 called an ákrimí.\*\* And a collection of cattle and herdsmen,  
 who have brought their utensils there on carts, where there  
 is no barter, is called a ghosha;†† its situation on the land  
 may be wherever they please.
- 51 Those people thus made towns and other abodes for them-  
 selves to dwell in ; they made houses for the several couples

\* This word is said to mean, " a ' branch-town,' a suburb," but here it seem<sup>s</sup>  
 to mean a ' town with branches,' a " capital town " or " metropolis."

† Vasati ; see verse 48.

‡ For *súdra-jala-práyáḥ* read *súdra-jala-práyá ?*

§ For *-kṛshibáláḥ* read *-kṛshíbálá ?*

|| The village. The word thus denotes a local area, and includes both the  
 dwellings and the fields. It seems to designate specially the large and pros-  
 perous villages.

¶ The word is explained in the dictionary as " a dwelling-place, dwelling-  
 house, abode, residence," but here it is explained to be a " mart," apparently  
 either permanent or temporary. It corresponds to the modern (Persian)  
 word *ganj*, or the vernacular word *háf* (Sanskrit *haṭṭa*), in Bengal. The word  
*vasati* appears as *basti* in the modern vernaculars, and means in Bengal  
 " the populated part of a village," and " the part of a town occupied by the  
 common bamboo-built houses." The verse seems to indicate that the  
 word *vasati* was either newly-coined, or had recently acquired (or the author  
 wished it to acquire) a special meaning. The complete change from this  
 meaning to that of the modern *basti*, which rather excludes any notion of  
 trade, is note-worthy.

\*\* Or *akrimí*. These words are not in the dictionary. If we might read  
*á-kramí* instead, the word would be rather appropriate.

†† This word is said to mean " a station of herdsmen." It appears to de-  
 note a temporary dwelling only, resorted to for purposes of pasturage.

52 to dwell in. As trees were their first kind of houses, so, with  
 a remembrance of all that, those people built their houses.  
 53 As *some* branches of a tree go in one direction, and others go  
 in another direction, and *some* rise upwards and some bend  
 54 downwards, even so they fashioned the branches *in their*  
*houses*. Those branches, which were the branches of the  
 kalpa trees at first, O bráhmaṇ, became rooms in the houses  
 in consequence among those *people*.

55 Those *people* ruined *the trees* by their strife, and afterwards  
 pondered\* on their means of livelihood. When the kalpa  
 56 trees had utterly perished along with the honey, those people  
 were distressed by their afflictions, and suffered from thirst  
 and hunger. Then became manifest their perfection at the  
 57 beginning of the Tretá age. For their other business was  
 spontaneously accomplished;† they had rain according to  
 their desire. The waters of their rain are the rivers‡ which  
 58 flow here. By the obstruction of the rain§ the rivers, which||  
 existed on the earth scanty of water before that, became¶  
 deep flowing channels.

59 And then by their union with the earth plants came into  
 existence, of fourteen kinds, both those which grow on un-  
 cultivated soil, and those which grow unsown, both culti-  
 60 vated and wild. And trees and shrubs bearing flowers and  
 fruit in their seasons were produced. This manifestation of  
 61 vegetation appeared first in the Tretá age. On that vegeta-  
 tion the people subsist in the Tretá age, O Muni. And then  
 62 lapsing into novel passion and covetousness those people next  
 took possession of rivers and fields, mountains, and trees,  
 shrubs and plants in their own right even according to might.

\* For *ac'intayat* read *ac'intayan* ?

† For *várttā-sva-sádhitā* read *várttā-sva-sádhitā* ?

‡ *Nimna-gata neut* = *nimna-gá* ? This meaning is not in the dictionary.

§ For *ṛiṣṭyávaruddhair* read *ṛiṣṭyavarodhair* ?

|| *Nimnagáḥ ye*. If this is correct, we must take *nimna-ga* *masc.* as "a river," a meaning not given in the dictionary; if we read *nimna-gáḥ fem* as usual, we must read *ydh* for *ye*.

¶ For *abhavat* read *abhavan* ?

63 Through that *their* sin those plants perished before their very  
 eyes, and the earth then devoured those plants at once, O  
 64 most wise bráhmaṇ.\* Moreover when that *vegetation* had  
 perished, those people fell into still further confusion.

Suffering from hunger, they resorted to Brahmá, the most  
 65 high, as their preserver. And he, the mighty lord, knowing  
 full well then that the earth had swallowed it up,† milked  
 66 her treating mount Meru as her calf.‡ This earth-cow was  
 then milked by him, the cereals came into existence on the  
 67 face of the earth, the seeds, the cultivated and wild plants  
 besides, which are annuals,§ known as comprising seventeen  
 classes according to tradition. The various kinds of both  
 68 rice. and barley, wheat, and grain,|| sesamum, priyangu,¶  
 udára,\*\* koradúsha,†† and c'ínaka,‡‡ másha,§§ green gram,|||  
 69 and masúra,¶¶ the finest pulse,\*\*\* and kulatthaka,††† áḍhaka

\* For *dvijaḥ* read *dvija* ?

† Grasta. The context seems to require this word to be taken in an active sense.

‡ The calf is tied near the cow, while she is being milked, as otherwise, it is said, she will not let her milk flow.

§ Phala-pákánta.

|| *Panicum miliaceum*, the modern *chind*, Roxb. p. 104. It is a cultivated cereal, grown on an elevated, light, rich soil, immediately after the rains.

¶ See note \*\* p. 165.

\*\* The Dictionary says this is a kind of grain with long stalks, but I cannot trace it out in Roxburgh.

†† *Paspalum scrobiculatum*, the modern *kodo*, Roxb. p. 93. He says "The seed is an article of diet with the Hindoos, particularly with those who inhabit the mountains and most barren parts of the country, for it is in such countries only where it is cultivated, it being an unprofitable crop, and not sown where others more beneficial will thrive. I have eaten of the boiled grain, and think it as palatable as rice."

‡‡ This is said to be *Panicum miliaceum* which is already mentioned; the word means fennel also, but that is inappropriate. I do not find any other grain of this name.

§§ See note § p. 84.

||| *Mudga*; See note §§ p. 84.

¶¶ See note ††† p. 165.

\*\*\* Nishpáva; see note || p. 86.

††† See note || p. 84.

pulse,\* and chick-pea† and hemp‡ are known as the seven teen *classes*. These are the olden kinds of cultivated plants.

- 70 And there are fourteen kinds of plants for use in sacrifices,  
both cultivated and wild, *viz.*, the various kinds of both rice  
71 and barley, wheat, *añu* grain, sesamum, and seventh§ among  
them *priyangu*, and eighth *kulatthaka*, and *śyámáka*|| grain,  
72 wild rice, wild sesamum,¶ and *gavedhuka*\*\* grass, *kuruvinda*††  
grass, *markāṭaka*,‡‡ and *veṇu-gradhā*;§§ and these indeed are  
traditionally known as the fourteen cultivated and wild plants  
73 *for use in sacrifices*. When *these* plants are abandoned,||| they  
do not spring forth again.

- Thereupon the adorable self-existent Brahmá devised  
74 means of livelihood for the advancement of those *people*, and  
the perfection of the hands which results from work. Thence-  
forward plants were produced, which must ripen after plough-  
75 ing. But when their livelihood was thoroughly ordained, the

\* The dictionary does not give *śdhaka*, *masc.* or *fem.*, as the name of any plant; but *śdhakī*, *fem.*, is said to mean a kind of pulse, *Cajanus indicus*, Spreng. I do not find it in Roxb., but Oliver calls the Pigeon Pea *Cajanus*.

† For *c'anakás* read *c'ānakás*. See note \*\* p. 84.

‡ *S'āṇa*. For *gaṇāḥ* read *śaṇāḥ*, as in several MSS.

§ The reckoning seems wrong; *priyangu* is the sixth and *kulatthaka* the seventh.

|| See note \* p. 165.

¶ *Yattila* is not in the dictionary. For *yattilā* read *jartildā*.

\*\* *Cois barbata*, Roxb. p. 649; it is a coarse grass, and cattle do not eat it. It is also said to mean *Hedysarum lagopodioides*, which is mentioned by Roxburgh (p. 573), but of which I find no description in his work.

†† *Cyperus rotundus*, Roxb. p. 66; a common grass, the roots of which dried and powdered are used as a perfume.

‡‡ This has been mentioned in Canto XXXII, verse 11, and is described in the dictionary as "a kind of wild panic; a species of grain." I find that *Carpopogon pruriens* is assigned by Roxburgh to the Sanskrit word *markatī* (p. 553). That is a common legume, but he says no use seems to be made of it, except that the hairs of the legumes are used as a vermifuge and are believed to be poisonous.

§§ This is not in the dictionary, and I do not know what it is.

||| *Prasriatā*. Does this mean that these plants grow only in a cultivated state?

- lord himself next established bounds for them according to  
 76 justice and according to their qualities; also the laws of  
 the castes and of the four periods of a bráhma's life, and  
 of the worlds\* with all their castes which duly maintain  
 righteousness and wealth, O most righteous *Muni*.  
 77 Prájápatya† is traditionally declared to be the sphere  
*assigned after death* to bráhmans who perform the ceremonies.  
 Aindra‡ is the sphere of kshatriyas who flee not in battle.  
 78 Máruta§ is the sphere of vaiśyas who observe their own  
 proper laws. Gándharva|| is the sphere of the various classes  
 79 of súdras who perform menial service. The sphere of those  
 eighty-eight thousand ṛishis who live in perpetual chastity  
 has been traditionally declared to be that of the inhabitants  
 80 of Jupiter. The sphere of the Seven Ṛishis¶ has been tradi-  
 tionally declared to be that of hermits. Prájápatya\*\* is the  
 sphere of householders; the abode of Brahmá is for those  
 men who have abandoned all worldly concerns; the world  
 of immortality is for yogis—such is the ordinance of the  
 various spheres assigned after death.

---

CANTO L.

---

*The mandate to the Yaksha Duṣṣaha.*

---

*Brahmá next created the nine Sages, Bhṛigu, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu, Angiras, Maric'i, Daksha, Atri and Vasishṭha—and also Rudra, Sankalpa and Dharma—All these were all-wise and devoid of passions—Brahmá in anger created a being half male, half female, who at his order divided himself into many male and female beings.*

\* Loka.

† The heaven of the pitṛis ?

‡ The 18th lunar mansion ?

§ The constellation Svāti.

|| Gándharva is the name of one of the nine portions of Bhárata-varsha ; but this seems inappropriate.

¶ The constellation Ursa Major.

\*\* See verse 77.

*Brahmá then created the Manu Sváyambhuva and his wife S'atarúpá—They had two sons Priya-vrata and Uttána-páda, and also two daughters. Ruci married one daughter Riddhi and begat Yajna and Dakshiná.*

*Daksha married the other daughter Prasúti and begot 24 daughters, whose names are mentioned, and who became Dharma's wives, and also 11 other daughters whose names are mentioned, and who became the wives of the other sages and of Agni and the Pitris—The children of these daughters are mentioned.*

*A-dharma and his offspring are mentioned, Naraka, Bhaya, Mrityu &c.—The actions of Mrityu's sons are explained—Chief among them is Duhsaha—to him Brahmá assigned a dwelling and raiment, a long catalogue of bad deeds as nourishment, and certain places and times for his success, but excluded a list of other persons and places from his influence.*

Márkaṇḍeya spoke.

- 1 Then while he was meditating, mankind were begotten
- 2 in his mind, together with their occupations, and implements
- 3 which were produced from his body. Spirits in bodily form\* were produced from the limbs of him, the wise god. All those whom I have already mentioned came into existence.
- 4 All created beings from the gods down to those whose condition is stationary are known to be subject to the three qualities:† such was the constitution of created things, immoveable and moveable.
- 5 When all that offspring of him, the wise one, did not increase, he created other mind-born sons like unto himself, viz.,
- 6 Bhrigu, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu, and Angiras, Maric'i, Daksha, and Atri, and the mind-born Vasishṭha ‡—these were the nine sons of Brahmá, they are positively mentioned in the Puráṇas.

Next Brahmá further created Rudra, whose birth was from his soul when it was angry, and Sankalpa, and Dharma who was begotten before all the preceding sons.

\* Kshetra-jña.

† Goodness, passion, and ignorance.

‡ For *Vaśiṣṭham* read *Vaśiṣṭhām*.

8 And those who with their sons and other *relatives* were first created by the Self-existent, felt no attachment for the worlds, *but* showed disregard and were composed in mind. They all knew the future, they were free from passion, free from envy.

9 When they thus showed disregard at the creation of the worlds, the high-souled Brahmá grew very wrathful; *then*  
10 was produced there a male\* like to the sun, possessed of an immense body, the body being half man's and half woman's.  
11 "Divide thyself" said the god, and then disappeared. And he being thus accosted separated the female and male natures; and he divided the male nature into eleven parts.  
12 Then the divine lord divided the male and female natures into many parts with men, gentle and cruel, calm, black and white.

13 Next the lord Brahmá *became* the guardian of his offspring by creating the first Manu Sváyambhuva,† begotten  
14 from and like unto himself, O bráhmaṇ,‡ and the woman Sata-rúpá, who was cleansed from blemishes through austerities. The divine and mighty Manu Sváyambhuva took her  
15 for his wife. And through him her husband Sata-rúpá brought forth two sons, Priya-vrata and Uttána-páda, famed  
16 through their own actions, and two daughters also, Riddhi and Prasúti. Then their father gave Prasúti *in marriage* to  
17 Daksha and Riddhi to Ruc'í§ of yore. The Prajá-pati Rúc'í took *his wife*, and from them both a son Yajña was born and *a daughter* Dakshiṇá,|| O illustrious Sir; *these two* then  
18 *became* husband and wife, and Yajña begat of Dakshiṇá twelve sons; the glorious sons of Yajña and Dakshiṇá were  
19 the gods well known as the Yámas in the epoch of Manu Sváyambhuva.

\* Pnrusha.

† The son of Svayam-bhú (the Self-existent Brahmá).

‡ For *dvijaḥ* read *dvija*?

§ He is one of the Prajá-patis.

|| This verse must refer to Ruc'í, as Daksha's progeny is mentioned in verse 19.

And Daksha moreover begat twenty and four daughters of  
 20 Prasúti; hear also from me their names in order—Śraddhá  
 (Faith), Lakshmí (Good Fortune), Dhṛiti (Constancy), Tushtí  
 (Satisfaction), Puṣṭi (Nourishment), Medhá (Mental Vigour),  
 21 and Kriyá (Action), Buddhi (Intelligence), Lajjá (Modesty),  
 Vapus (Bodily Beauty), Śánti (Tranquillity), Siddhi (Per-  
 fection), and Kírti (Fame) the thirteenth. The lord Dharma  
 took these daughters of Daksha for his wives.

22 Besides them and younger were the eleven lovely-eyed  
*daughters*—Khyáti (Celebrity), and Satí (Truth), Sambhúti  
 (Fitness), Smṛiti (Memory), Príti (Affection), and Kshamá  
 23 (Patience), and Sannati (Humility),\* and Anasúyá (Sin-  
 cerity), Ūrjá (Strength), Sváhá (the oblation to the gods),  
 and Svadhá (the oblation to the pitris). The Rishis Bhṛigu,  
 24 Bhava† and Maríci, and the Muni Angiras also, Pulastya  
 and Pulaha, and Kratu,‡ Vasishṭha, and Atri, Vahni and the  
 25 Pitris in order—*these* Munis, the most illustrious among Munis,  
 took *these* daughters, Khyáti and the others, *in marriage*.§

Śraddhá gave birth to Káma (Love); and Srí|| to Darpa  
 26 (Pride); Dhṛiti to Niyama (Restraint) her son; and Tushtí  
 also to Santosha (Contentment); Puṣṭi to Lobha (Covetous-  
 ness); Medhá to Sruta (Revelation); Kriyá to Daṇḍa  
 (Punishment), Naya (Prudence), and Vinaya (Decorum);  
 27 Buddhi gave birth to Bodha (Wisdom); and Lajjá to Vinaya  
 (Decorum); Vapus to Vyavasáya (Industry) her son; and  
 28 Śánti gave birth to Kshema (Ease); Siddhi to Sukha  
 (Happiness); Kírti to Yaśas (Renown). These were the off-  
 spring of Dharma.

She¶ bare by Káma a grandson to Dharma, *namely*, Har-  
 sha (Joy) who brims over with joyousness.

\* For *Santatis* in the text read *Sannatis* see Canto LII, v. 24.

† That is, Ś'iva; and he married Satí. She put an end to herself in  
 consequence of her father Daksha's curse, and was re-born as the daughter of  
 Himavat, when Śiva married her again. See Canto LII, vv. 12-14.

‡ For *Krituś* read *Kratuś*.

§ See Canto LII, vv. 14, &c.

|| I. e. Lakshmí.

¶ This seems obscure.



- 29 Now Himsá (Injury) was the wife of A-dharma (Unrighteousness); and Anṛita (Falsehood) was born of her, and a daughter Nirṛiti (Destruction) *was born* of her, and two sons
- 30 Naraka (Hell) and Bhaya (Fear), and Máya (Illusion) and Vedaná (Pain). And with these two *females the two sons formed* two married pairs; and of those two, Máya gave birth to Mrityu (Death) who carries created beings away, and
- 31 Vedaná gave birth by Raurava\* to her son Duḥkha (Misery). And Vyádhi (Sickness), Jará (Old Age), Śoka (Grief), Tṛishná (Thirst) and Krodha (Anger) were begotten by
- 32 Mrityu; or all these, who have the characteristics of A-dharma, are traditionally declared to have sprung from Duḥkha. No wife have they, nor son; they all live in perpetual chastity.
- 33 Nirṛiti also was the *wife of Mrityu*, and Mrityu had another wife called A-lakshmí (Ill Fortune); and by the latter Mrityu
- 34 had fourteen sons. These are his sons by A-lakshmí; they carry out Mrityu's commands; they visit men at the
- 35 times of dissolution; hear about them. They dwell in the ten organs of sense and in the mind; for they influence man or
- 36 woman each towards his own object of sense; and assailing the organs of sense they influence men by means of passion, anger and other *feelings*, so that men suffer injury through unrighteousness and other *evil ways*, O bráhmaṇ.
- 37 And one of them takes possession of self-consciousness, and another resides in the intellect; *hence* bewildered by folly, men strive to destroy women.
- 38 And another† famed by his name Duḥsaha‡ *resides* in men's houses; he is wasted with hunger, his face is downwards bent; he is naked, clothed in rags, and his voice is as hoarse
- 39 as a crow's. He was created by Brahmá to eat all *beings*. Him, exceedingly terrific by reason of his long teeth, open-mouthed, very terrible, and ravenous in mind, him thus ad-

\* Raurava is the name of a particular hell, but here it seems to be equivalent to Naraka.

† For *any* read *anyo*?

‡ The "Unendurable," "Intolerable."

- 40 dressed Brahmá, the store-house of austerities,\* the fore-  
father of the worlds, he who is entirely consubstantial with  
Brahma, the pure, the cause of the universe, the changeless.

Brahmá spoke.

- 41 "Thou must not devour this universe; quit thy anger,  
keep thee calm; cast off the atom of passion and forsake this  
career of ignorance."

Duḥsaha spoke.

- 42 "I am wasted with hunger, O ruler of the world, I am  
thirsty also and my strength is gone. How may I be satisfied,  
O master? How may I grow strong? And tell me, who  
will be my refuge where I may abide tranquil?"

Brahmá spoke.

- 43 "Thy refuge *shall be* men's houses, and unrighteous men  
*shall be thy* strength. Thou shalt be satisfied, my child, with  
44 their neglect to perform the constant sacrifices. And spon-  
taneous boils *shall be* thy raiment; and for food† I give to  
thee whatever is injured, and what is infested with vermin,  
45 and what has been gazed into by dogs, likewise what is con-  
tained in broken pots, what has been made still by the breath  
from a man's mouth, the fragments that remain from a meal,  
what is unripe, that on which perspiration has fallen,‡ what  
46 has been licked, what has not been cooked properly, what  
has been eaten of by people sitting on broken seats, and food  
that has fallen on the seat,§ and what turns away from the  
sky|| at the two twilights, what is distinguished by the  
47 sound 'of dancing and musical instruments, what a woman in  
her courses has polluted, what such a woman has eaten of  
and has gazed at, and whatever food or drink has been  
48 damaged¶ at all—these *shall be* for thy nourishment, and  
whatever else I give to thee; whatever persons, who have

\* Or, for *tapaso nidhiḥ* read *tapaso nidhe*, vocative ?

† For *áharam* read *áharam* ?

‡ For *a-svinnam* read *á-svinnam* ?

§ For *ásannágutam* another reading is *ásandá-gatam* which is preferable.

|| Vi-din-mukha; not in the dictionary.

¶ Upa-gháta-vat; not in the dictionary.

- not performed their ablutions, have sacrificed or given in  
 49 alms, without faith or in contempt; what has been cast away  
 without the previous use of water, and what has been rendered  
 valueless, and what has been exhibited in order to be discarded,  
 50 and what has been given away through utter amazement; what is corrupt, and what has been given away by a  
 person in anger or in pain, that O goblin,\* thou shalt obtain†  
 as thy reward; and whatever the son of a re-married widow  
 51 does as an undertaking for the next world, and whatever the daughter of a re-married widow *so does*; that, O goblin,  
 shall be for thy satisfaction. The wealth-procuring ceremonies *in which* a maiden engages along with her lover for  
 52 the sake of the obligation of dower, and the ceremonies also *which are performed* according to wicked books, *shall be* for  
 thy nourishment, O goblin; and whatever has been studied  
 53 for the sake of enjoying wealth‡ and whatever has not been read truly—all that I give thee, and *these* periods also for thy  
 perfection. Thou shalt ever have conquering power, O  
 54 Duhśaha, among men, if they approach a pregnant woman carnally, or if they transgress the evening rites and the  
 constant ceremonies, and among men who have been corrupted  
 by wicked books, deeds or conversation.  
 55 “Thy business lies in creating social dissensions, in rendering  
 cookery useless, and in interrupting cookery; and thy  
 56 dwelling shall perpetually be in household wrangling. And  
 men shall dread thee§ in what pines away,|| and in bullock-  
 carts and other *conveyances* which are shut up, in rooms which  
 57 are not sprinkled at twilight, and at death. On the occasions  
 of eclipses of the stars¶ and planets, and at the appearance

\* Yaksha.

† *Tad-bhāgi* in the text seems incorrect. Another reading is *tad-gāmi*; but *tvad-bhāgi* and *tvad-gāmi* seem preferable. Another reading is *prāpsyasi*, and this I have adopted.

‡ For *artham nirvṛitam* another and better reading is *artha-nirvṛitau* which I have adopted. A third reading is *dāu vikṛitam*.

§ For *tvattvo* read *tvatto* ?

|| A-poshyamāṇe.

¶ Nakshatra.

- of the three kinds of portents, thou shalt, O goblin, overcome men who disregard propitiatory ceremonies. Men who fast vainly, who always delight in gambling and women, who confer benefits according to thy word, and who are religious hypocrites, *shall be thy prey.*
- “Study by one who is not a brahma-c’árí, and sacrifice performed by an unlearned man; austerities practised in a forest\* by men who indulge in worldly pleasures† and by men of unsubdued soul; the action which is done according to their respective occupations by bráhmans, kshatriyas, vaiśyas and súdras, who have fallen *from their castes*, and who desire to gain the objects of the next world, and whatever the results of that *action*—all that shall be thine, O goblin. And more yet I give thee for thy nourishment; hearken thereto. *Men* shall give thee a plenteous bali offering at the close of the Vaiśvadeva ceremony, first uttering thy name and then saying “this is for thee.”
- “Abandon the house of him, who eats only properly cooked food according to rule, who is pure within and without, who is free from covetousness, who governs his wife.‡ Abandon that house, O goblin, *where* the gods and the pitṛis are worshipped with their respective oblations, and where the female relatives and guests are honoured. And abandon that house also, where concord§ dwells at home among the children, the aged, the women and men, and among the various classes of kinsmen. Abandon that house, O goblin, where the women-folk are delighted, are not eager to go outside, and are always modest. Abandon that house, O goblin, at my command, where the bedding and viands are suited to the ages and relations *of the inmates*. Abandon that house, O goblin, where the inmates are always kind, and busied in good deeds, and possess the common household utensils. And thou must also ever abandon that house, O goblin, where *the inmates* do not

\* For *tapo-vane* read *tapo vane* ?

Grámya-bhuj.

† For *‘jita-strīkas* read *jita-strīkas* ?

§ For *maitrī-grihe* read *maitrī grihe* ?

70 keep their seats while the religious preceptors, the aged, and  
 dvijas are standing and where they do not stand. That will  
 not be an excellent abode for thee, where the house-door is  
 not penetrated by trees, shrubs or other *vegetation*, nor by a  
 71 man who pierces one's vitals. Abandon the house of the  
 man who supports the gods, the pitris, mankind and guests  
 72 with the remnants of his food. Abandon, O goblin, such  
 men as these, the true in word, the forbearing in disposition,  
 the harmless, and those free from remorse, and also the un-  
 73 envious. Abandon the woman, who is devoted to her husband's  
 service, who keeps aloof from associating with bad women, and  
 who feeds on the food which has been left by her family and  
 74 husband. Abandon the *bráhma*n dvija always, whose mind is  
 engrossed with sacrifice, study, discipline and alms-giving, and  
 who has made his livelihood by means of the performance of  
 75 sacrifices, teaching, and receiving alms.\* And abandon, O Duḥ-  
 saha, the kshatriya who is always energetic in alms-giving,  
 study, and sacrifice, and who earns his livelihood from good  
 76 taxes and by the occupation of arms. Abandon the stainless  
 vaiśya, who is endowed with the three previous virtues,† and  
 who gains his livelihood from the keeping of cattle and trade  
 77 and cultivation. Abandon also the súdra, who is diligent in  
 alms-giving, sacrifice and the service of dvijas, and who sup-  
 ports himself by menial service under bráhmans and other  
*dvijas*, O goblin.

78 "In whatever house the master of the house earns his  
 livelihood without contravening śruti and smṛiti, and where  
 79 his wife is obedient to him from her very soul, and where the  
 son shows reverence to his spiritual preceptor and the gods  
 and his father, and where the wife shows reverence to her  
 husband—whence should there be fear of misfortune in that  
 80 house? When a house is smeared over in the evenings, and  
 thoroughly sprinkled with water, and the bali of flowers is  
 81 made in it, thou canst not gaze thereat, O goblin. The  
 houses where the sun sees not the beds, and where fire and

\* K-dána.

† Gṇa, viz., alms-giving, study and sacrifice.

water are constantly kept, and where the lamps behold the  
 82 sun, are places patronized by Lakṣmī. That house is not  
 a resort for thee, where *are kept* a bull, sandal-wood perfume,  
 a lute, a mirror, honey and ghee, and where copper vessels  
 are used both for poisons and for the clarified butter of holy  
 oblations.

83 "That *house* is thy temple, O goblin, where thorny trees  
*grow*, and where leguminous plants creep about, *and where* the  
 84 wife is a re-married widow, and ant-hills are found. That  
 house is thy dwelling, wherein live five men, and three  
 women, and as many cows, and where the fire from the fuel  
 85 is mere darkness. Thou shalt quickly, O goblin, parch up  
 the house, which contains one goat, two asses, three cattle,  
 86 five buffaloes,\* six horses, and seven elephants. Wherever a  
 spade, a dá,† a basket, and also a caldron and other utensils are  
 87 scattered about, they may give thee shelter. Sitting by  
 women on the wooden pestle and mortar, and also upon  
 udumbara wood,‡ and the utterance of sacred verses at the  
 88 privy, this shall be advantageous for thee, O goblin. Roam,  
 O Duḥsaha, to thy heart's content, in that house where *all*  
 kinds of corn whether cooked or uncooked, and where the  
 89 scriptures also are disdained. Endless misfortunes take up  
 their abode in that house, where fire *lies* upon the lid of the  
 90 caldron or is offered with the point of a spoon. Thou, O  
 goblin, and other Rákshasas also shall have a dwelling in the  
 house, where human bones lie and where a corpse remains a  
 91 whole day and night. Resort at once to those men who feed  
 on a kinsman's piṇḍa and water, without giving any to the  
 sapīṇḍas and sahodakas.

92 "Abandon the house where the lotus and the white lotus  
 are found, *where* a maiden *dwells* who feeds on sweetmeats.§

\* Māhisha (m ?) ; in this sense, not in the dictionary.

† Dātra, a large heavy knife with a curved-in point, used for all purposes  
 of cutting, chopping and splitting.

‡ This is forbidden because the tree is holy.

§ Modakāśinī ; āśin, from aś, to eat, not in the dictionary.

- 93 and where a bull and a fine elephant\* are kept.† Abandon  
 the habitation where the unarmed, the deities, and those who  
 bear arms without engaging in battle, are esteemed worthy  
 94 of honour by men. Roam not in that house, where are cele-  
 brated as of yore the great urban and rural festivals which  
 95 were famous of old. Visit those unlucky men who fan them-  
 selves with winnowing fans,‡ and who bathe with the water  
 poured from jars§ or with the drops of water from cloths,  
 96 and with water *splashed up* by the tips of their nails. Join not  
 thyself with the man who establishes the country customs,  
 the conventional ordinances, the laws regarding kinsmen,  
 who performs the victorious homa oblation and the auspicious  
 sacrifice to the gods, who maintains perfect personal purifi-  
 cation according to the precepts, and who fashions the pub-  
 lic talk."

Mārkaṇḍeya spoke.

- 97 Having spoken thus to Duṣṣaha, Brahmá disappeared from  
 sight there, and the other followed the command of the lotus-  
 born god.

---

\* For *vrishabhairāvato* read *vrishabhairāvatuu*?

† For *kalpyate* read *kalpyete* or *kalpyante*?

‡ This seems to be the best meaning; but if so *śūrpa-vātān* would be more intelligible.

§ *Ye kurvanti* must be understood.

## CANTO LI.

*The Offspring of Duṣṣaha.*

*Duṣṣaha had eight sons and eight daughters—their names are mentioned—The evil functions of the several sons and daughters are described, and the remedies against them—Their offspring are mentioned, and their evil actions described.*

*These beings are almost all personifications of physical injuries, moral vices and social offences.*

Mārkaṇḍeya spoke.

- 1 Duṣṣaha had a wife named Nirmāśṭī\* ; now she was be-
- 2 gotten in Kali's wife when she saw a c'aṇḍāla at the time of
- 3 her menstruation. They had sixteen children, who pervade
- 4 the world, eight sons and eight daughters, *all* very terrible.
- 5 Dantákrishṭi and Ukti, and Parivarta the next, Anga-dhrish
- 6 and Sakuni and Gaṇḍa-pránta-rati, Garbha-han and the last
- 7 Sasya-han were their male children. And they had eight
- 8 daughters besides ; hear their names from me. The first was
- Niyojiká, and the second Virodhiní, and Svayaṃ-hára-karí,
- Bhrámaṇí, Ritu-háriká, and two other very terrible daughters
- Smṛiti-hará and Víja-hará ; and the eighth daughter was
- named Vidveshaṇí who causes terror to mankind.
- 1 I will describe what the *several* functions of the eight sons
- are, and what are the remedies against the evils *which they*
- work ; hearken to me, O bráhmaṇ.
- 2 Dantákrishṭi† taking his station in the teeth of newly born
- children produces intense wind,‡ with the desire of effecting

\* Prof. Sir M. Monier-Williams gives the name as Nir-máśṭi (Uncleaned) which seems preferable.

† Teeth-attractor, Look-jaw ?

‡ Saṃ-harsha ; or bristling of the hair of the body.



- 9 an attack from Duḥsaha. The remedy against him is to be applied by men by means of white mustard cast upon the bed
- 10 and upon the teeth of the sleeping *child*; and by bathing it with medicinal herbs of great splendour, by reciting good scriptures,\* and by supporting† it on a camel, a thorn, a sword, a bone, or a linen cloth.
- 11 Now the second son assigns good and bad fortune to men, while he says repeatedly, "let it be so!"; hence *he is called*
- 12 Ukti,‡ and that is his precise function. Hence wise men must always say, "May fate be auspicious!" And when any-
- 13 thing bad is heard or spoken, let praise be offered to Śiva, and to Brahmá, the spiritual preceptor of all that exists both moveable and immoveable, and to each person's own particular family-deity.
- 14 The son who finds delight in always interchanging the foetus between one womb and another, and in interchanging the words *in the mouth* of a speaker, is called Parivartaka§;
- 15 a wise man should preserve himself against him by means of white mustard and the prayers and spells that destroy Rákshasas.
- 16 And another son|| like the wind announces good and bad fortune as indicated by throbbings in men's bodies; and the remedy against him is to strike the side of the body with kúsa grass.
- 17 Another son Śakuni¶ stationed on a crow or some other bird, announces weal or woe by means of food or birds.\*\* With regard thereto, however, the Prajá-pati has said, "In
- 18 an evil matter delay and the abandonment of the undertaking are best; in a good matter one should act very speedily."

\* For *sac'c'hvāstra* read *sac'c'hāstra*.

† Vidhāraṇa; not in the dictionary.

‡ The Word of Fate.

§ The Interchanger.

|| Anga-dhṛish, the Assailer of the body.

¶ Śakuni, a Bird (in general). The word *kuś'alaiḥ* in the text is not supported by the MSS. and seems wrong. They read *Śakuniḥ* (which I have adopted) or *śakunam*, "an omen."

\*\* *Khaga-tas*, this seems the best meaning; but it might also be read *kha-gatas* as an adjective to *Śakuniḥ*

Another son\* stationed in the borders of the cheeks for  
 19 half a muhūrta, O brāhman, consumes every undertaking, and  
 eulogium, and sincerity. By addresses to brāhmanas, by  
 20 praise to the gods, and by extracting roots, O brāhman, by  
 ablutions with cows' urine and mustard seed, so also by  
 worship paid to the constellations and planets, and also by  
 the observance of righteousness and the Upanishads, by  
 21 repeatedly looking at weapons, and by contempt for birth  
 Gaṇḍa-prānta-rati succumbs.

Another most terrible son,† moreover, destroys the fruit  
 22 of pregnant women. Women should always secure protection  
 against him by constant personal purification, by writing out  
 famous spells, by wearing auspicious garlands and other  
 23 decorations, by dwelling in well-cleaned houses, and by abstain-  
 ing from over-exertion, O brāhman

The other son Sasya-han‡ moreover is he who destroys the  
 24 growth of the crops. Against him indeed one should secure  
 protection by wearing worn-out shoes, and by walking on the  
 25 left side, and by causing a c'aṇḍāla to enter *the field*, and by  
 offering the bali outside, and by eulogizing the soma juice.

And Niyojikā§ is the daughter who incites some men to  
 26 seize and otherwise molest other men's wives and other men's  
 goods. Immunity from her comes by reciting purifying  
 prayers, by refraining from anger, covetousness and other  
 27 passions, and by resistance *with the thought* 'She is inciting me  
 to these acts.' When one is railed against or beaten by  
 28 another, one should wisely think 'she is inciting him,' and  
 should not fall into subjection to her. In *this* mundane exis-  
 tence, where there are other men's wives and other alluring  
 29 objects, the wise man should consider, 'She is inciting my  
 mind and my soul here.'

And the next daughter who causes opposition between a  
 30 loving married couple, among relatives and friends, between  
 parents and children, and among fellow-caste-people||—

\* Gaṇḍa-prānta-rati, the Reveller in the borders of the cheeks.

† Garbha-han, the Foetus-destroyer.

‡ The Crop-destroyer.

§ The Inciter.

|| Sāvārṇika; in this sense not in the dictionary

she is Virodhini.\* One should secure protection from her  
 31 by offering the bali, by enduring outrageous language, and  
 by observing the śāstras and Virtuous Custom.

Another daughter destroys grain from granaries and houses,  
 32 the milk from cows, and ghee, and the produce from prolific  
 things. She is called Svayam-hárikát; she is ever addicted  
 33 to concealment. She consumes the half-cooked food out of  
 the kitchen, and whatever is kept in the store-house; and she  
 always consumes whatever food is being served up†, along  
 34 with the person who eats it. She takes the remains of food  
 from men and also their food. She is hard to be restrained.§  
 She takes the success which men have accomplished from  
 35 their business offices and from their abodes, O bráhmaṇ. She  
 is constantly taking the fluid and the milk out of cows' ud-  
 ders and women's breasts, the ghee out of curdled milk, the  
 oil out of sesamum seed, and the spirituous liquor out of the  
 36 liquor-stores, the colour out of saffron|| and other coloured  
 objects, and the thread out of cotton clothes. She is rightly  
 named Svayam-háriká, for she is perpetually taking things  
 37 away, O bráhmaṇ. For the sake of protection against her one  
 should make a pair of peacocks and an artificial woman;  
 and prophylactic marks¶ should be drawn\*\* on the house,  
 and allowing the house to be littered with fragments of food††  
 38 should be avoided, and vessels in which milk and other things  
 have been kept should certainly be cleaned with the ashes of  
 the incense offered to the gods in the sacrificial fire. All that  
 is well-known to be a preservative.  
 39 Now the other daughter, who produces perturbation in a

\* The Strife-maker.

† The Voluntary thief.

‡ For *pari-vis'yamāṣaṃ* read *pari-vishyamāṣaṃ*. This half-line has nine syllables by poetic license

§ The MSS. read *dur-dhará* instead of the text *dur-hard*. I have adopted the former; the latter might mean "a confirmed thief."

|| For *kusambhūta* read *kusumbhaka*? This would be the same as *kusumbha*, but is not in the dictionary.

¶ Rakebhás.

\*\* For *lakhyá* read *lekhyá*.

†† For *c'a zoshmatá* another reading is *c'oc'c'hishfatá* which I have adopted, preferable.

- 40 man who dwells in one place, is called Bhrámaṇi.\* Now a  
man should secure protection *against her* by scattering white  
mustard seed or his seat, on his bed, and on the ground  
41 where he sits; and a man should reflect, 'This wicked,  
evil-minded *creature* causes me to go astray'; he should  
mutter the 'Bhuvās' hymn repeatedly, with composed mind.  
42 Another daughter robs women of their monthly courses,  
when they have begun and before they have begun; she is  
43 known as Ritu-háriká,† the daughter of Duḥsaha. One  
should cause *one's women-folk* to bathe at places of pilgrimage,  
at temples, beside sacred public objects,§ on mountain tops,  
at the confluence of rivers, and in excavated places in order  
44 to subdue her. And one who knows the spells and knows  
the principles of action *should cause them to bathe* at the four  
changes of the moon and at dawn,|| O bráhmaṇ; and a  
physician¶ who is skilled in medicine *should cause them to*  
*bathe* with choice herbs combined together.  
45 And Smṛiti-háriká\*\* is another *daughter* who deprives  
women of their memory. And she may be overcome by  
observing places distinguished separately.  
46 And Vijápahárinī†† is another *daughter* very terrible,  
*who robs* man and woman of their seed. And she may be  
overcome by eating clean food and by bathing.  
47 And the eighth daughter named Dveshaṇi,‡‡ who causes  
terror among mankind, is she who renders a man, or even  
48 a woman, newly hated. Now in order to vanquish her,  
one should offer an oblation§§ of sesamum seed moistened  
with honey, milk and ghee; and one should also perform  
a sacrifice which will procure friends in order to van-  
quish her.

\* The Bewilderer.

† For *athe pravṛittam* another reading is *tathápravṛittam* which I have adopted as preferable. A third reading is *athápravṛittiḥ*.

‡ The Stealer of the Menses.

§ O'aitya; the primary meaning, "a funeral pile," seems inappropriate here.

|| For *purvamúshasi* read *parvasúshasi*.

¶ For *vedvāḥ* read *vidyāḥ*.

\*\* The Stealer of the Memory.

†† The Stealer of seed.

‡‡ The Hater

§§ Homayet; verb from *homa*? Not in the dictionary.

- 49 Now these sons and daughters have thirty-eight children,  
O bráhmaṇ; hear from me their names.
- 50 Vijalpá (Chatterer) was Dantákṛiṣṭi's daughter, and Kalahá (Quarreller) also. Vijalpá indulges in contemptuous,  
51 false and corrupt talk. In order to vanquish her, let the wise house-holder ponder on her and preserve his self-control.
- 52 Kalahá is always creating disturbances in men's houses; she is the cause why families perish. Hearken how she may be subdued. One should throw blades of durbá grass smeared  
53 with honey, ghee, and milk in the bali ceremony, and offer a sacrifice to fire, and extol one's friends, for the performance of a propitiatory rite to avert evil from all living beings, and boys along with their mothers, and the sciences, and pen-  
54 nances,\* religious vows and the great moral duties.† In the cultivation of land and in the profits of trade let *men* always pacify me. And let the Kushmánḍas and the Yátu-dhānaṣṭ  
55 and whatever other *beings* are named according to their classes, let *these*, when duly adored, always become pacified.
- 56 By the favour of Maha-deva,§ and by the counsel of Maheśvara|| let all these soon become satisfied with regard to men.
- 57 When pleased let them cast aside every evil deed and evil work, and every result that springs from the great sins, and  
58 whatever else causes obstacles. By their favour indeed let obstacles wholly perish. And in all marriages and in cere-  
59 monies performed for increase of *prosperity*, in meritorious undertakings and in religious devotion, and in the worship of spiritual teachers and the gods, in the rites of prayer and  
60 sacrifice, and in the fourteen pilgrimages, in the pleasures enjoyable in bodily health, and in happiness, liberality and wealth, and among the aged, children and the sick, let them always pacify me.
- 61 Ukti *had* sons Soma-pá, Ambu-pá, and Ambho-dhi, and Savitṛi, Anila and Anala¶; and he had also a son Kála-

\* For *tapasās'* read *tapasām* ?

† *Samyamasya yamasya c'a.*

‡ Two classes of evil-spirits.

§ S'iva.

|| S'iva.

¶ That is, Soma-drinker, Water-drinker, Ocean, Sun, Wind and Fire. This line, however, seems incongruous.

62 *jihva*\* who resides in the palms.† He torments those bad men in whose mothers he abides.

Now Parivarta had two sons, Virúpa‡ and Vikṛiti,§ O 63 bráhmaṇ; and they both inhabit the tops of trees, ditches, ramparts•and the sea. They both interchange the foetus 64 from one pregnant woman to another, if she walks about among trees and the other *places which they frequent*, O Krauśtuki. In truth, a pregnant woman should not ap- 65 proach a tree, nor a mountain, nor a rampart, nor the sea, nor a ditch.

66 Anga-dhṛish begat a son, by name Pis'una. If he enters the marrow inside men's bones, he consumes the energy of *even* invincible men.

S'akuni begat five sons, Śyena (Hawk), Káka (Crow), and 67 Kapot• (Pigeon) Gridhra (Vulture) and Ulúka (Owl).|| The gods and the demons took them. And Mṛityu (Death) took 68 Śyena; Kála (Destiny) took Káka; and Nirṛiti (Destruction) took Ulúka who causes great terror; Vyádhi (Sickness) took Gridhra *and was* his lord; and Yama himself took Kapota. 69 And the evil beings which sprang from them are indeed said to produce sin. Hence he, on whose head a hawk and the 70 other birds should alight, should take effectual pacificatory measures for his safety, O bráhmaṇ. *If* they are born inside 71 a house *or if* likewise water should settle in a house, a man should abandon that house *and also a house* on the top of which pigeons alight. *When* a hawk, a pigeon, and a vul- 72 ture, a crow, and an owl have entered a house, O bráhmaṇ, one should prophesy the end of the residents in that dwelling. A wise man should abandon such a house and should employ 73 pacificatory measures. Even in sleep indeed it is unlucky to see a pigeon.

And the offspring of Gaṇḍa-pránta-rati are said to be six 74 *in number*. They dwell in women's menses. Hear from me

\* Black-tongue.

† For *tāla-niketanaḥ* read *tālu-niketanaḥ*, who resides in the palate ?

‡ Deformed.

§ Ill-health.

|| For *gridhrolúkais'* read *gridhrolúkáu ?*

also their peculiar periods. Of his offspring one *takes possession* of the first four days *after menstruation* and the thirteenth day; and another is powerful on the eleventh day; another at dawn; and two others on occasions of *śráddhas* and almsgiving; and another at festivals; hence these *days* should be shunned by the wise *in sexual intercourse*.

Garbha-hantṛi had a son Nighna\* and a daughter Mohanī.† The former enters within and eats the foetus; and after he has eaten it, the latter beguiles‡ it. Through her beguiling, the *offspring* are born *as* snakes, frogs, tortoises, and reptiles also, or yet again as ordure. The son may enter into the six-months pregnant woman who in waywardness eats flesh§; or into the woman, who seeks the shade of a tree by night or at a place where three or four roads meet, who stands in a burning-ground or any place pervaded by strong smells, who leaves off her upper garment, or who weeps at midnight.

And Sasya-hantṛi had one son named Kshudraka (Puny). He is constantly injuring the growth of the crops, when he has gained a weak place. Listen thereto. And he, who sows highly pleased at the beginning of an inauspicious day, provides an entrance behind *him for this sprite* into the fields which touch other fields along their boundaries.|| Hence it is the proper practice that a man should worship the moon, and then carry out his undertaking and sow his seed in gladness and contentment, with a companion.

Niyojiká, who was Duhsaha's daughter as I have said, gave birth to four daughters who bear the names Prac'odiká (Instigator), Mattá (Intoxicated), Unmattá (Frantic) and Prammattá (Wanton). Now they are always entering into young women in order to destroy them, *and* incite them here vehemently towards unrighteousness with the appearance of righteousness, and to love which bears no appearance of love, and to that which is not wealth with the appearance of

\* Nighna means "dependant"; but here it rather seems to mean "slayer."

† Beguiler.

‡ Mohayate.

§ For *gurviní-māṃsam* read *gurvinīm māṃsam*.

|| Antopasangishu. Upa-sangin, a word not in the dictionary.

wealth, and to a final emancipation from existence which bears no appearance of final emancipation. Evilily disposed without purity they lead *young women* to gaze at strange men ;  
 87 those angry sprites\* cause strange men to wander *near women* for the sake of philandering. Those female *sprites* enter into a house and into clothing when they are reddened by sunset,†  
 88 and wherever the bali is not offered to Dhātṛi and Vidhātṛi at the proper time. They make a sudden‡ attack upon men  
 89 and women§ among those people who eat or drink with drops of water clinging to them.

Virodhini had three sons, C'odaka (Instigator)|| and Gráhaka (Seizer) and the other Tamaḥ-prac'c'hádaka (Gloom-enveloper). Hear their characters from me. Where the pestle and mortar, and where a woman's shoes and her *upper*  
 91 *and lower* garments are befouled by contact with burning oil, and are disdained ; and where *people use* a seat, after first drawing it *to them* with a winnowing basket or a hatchet or  
 92 other *implement* or with their foot ; and where pastime is held in a house without respecting the *place* which has been smeared *and cleaned* ; where fire is taken up and carried elsewhere in  
 93 the bowl of a spoon—there Virodhini's sons are impelled and display their activity. One dwells in men's and women's  
 94 tongues and utters falsehood as truth ; he is called C'odaka ; he works calumny in the house. And another who acts with  
 95 care dwells in the ears and is exceedingly evil-minded ; he takes hold of people's words ; so he *is called* Gráhaka. The third is he who, with evil mind, attacks men's minds and  
 96 enveloping them with darkness arouses anger ; so he *is called* Tamaḥ-prac'c'hádaka.

Now Svayam-hári gave birth to three *sons* by C'aurya  
 97 (Theft), Sarva-hári,¶ Arddha-hári,\*\* and also Virya-hári.††

\* For *tábhīr ashṭd̥bhīḥ* read *tábhī rūṣṭábhīḥ*.

† The text violates sandhi and seems obscure. I have adopted a different reading, *sandhyá-rakṣe hy-athámbarē* instead of *sandhyarkṣeshu udumbare*.

‡ For *śv* read *ś'v* ?

§ For *nava-nārīshu* read *nara-nārīshu*.

|| For *C'odaka-gráhakas* read *c'odaḥ gráhakas* ?

¶ He who steals the whole.

\*\* He who steals half

†† He who steals one's vigour



In the houses of those who do not rinse their mouths out after meals, and in the houses of those who observe bad customs,  
 98 and among those who enter the kitchen with unwashed feet, and in granaries and cattle-pens and houses where perfidy  
 99 prevails—in such *places* all these *sprites* fittingly sport and have their pleasure.

Now Bhrámaṇi *had* one son; he is known as Káka-jangha  
 100 (Crow-leg). No one possessed by him can get pleasure in the town. He enters into the man, who while eating sings to a friend, and who sings and laughs *at the same time*, and  
 101 who indulges in sexual intercourse during the twilight, O bráhmaṇ.

The daughter Ritu-háriṇi gave birth to three daughters;  
 102 the first daughter was Kuc'a-hará,\* the next Vyanjana-hári.  
 103 ká,† and the third daughter was called Játa-háriṇi.‡ The first robs of both breasts the maiden, all whose marriage rites are not performed duly, or are performed after the prescribed  
 104 time. And *the second* robs of her signs of puberty the married maiden, who has been married without duly offering the śráddha, and without paying due reverence to her mother.  
 105 When the lying-in chamber is destitute of fire and water, and is devoid of incense, when it has no lamp or weapon or pestle,  
 106 when it is destitute of ashes§ and mustard-seed, the *third* daughter enters in, and bringing about immediate delivery snatches away the new-born child, and casts the child away  
 107 in that very place, O bráhmaṇ; she is called Játa-háriṇi; very terrible is she, she feeds on flesh. Hence one should strenuously guard *against her* in the lying-in chamber.

108 And she, *who* destroys the memory of men destitute of self-control through inhabiting empty abodes, *had* a son, by name  
 109 Pra-c'āṇḍa (Impetuous). From his son's sons were born the Líkas|| in hundreds and thousands and eight tribes of C'an-  
 110 dālas, very terrible with staves and nooses. Then the Líkas and those tribes of C'āṇḍālas were possessed by hunger, and ran at

\* She who steals the breasts.

† She who steals the signs of puberty

‡ She who steals new-born children.

§ Bhūti.

|| A class of evil spirits.

- 111 one another, desirous of eating one another. But Pra-c'anda  
restrained the several tribes of C'andālas, and established  
them with such and such ordinances: hear what those are.  
112 Hereafter from to-day whoever shall give a dwelling to the  
Līkas, I will assuredly cause an unparalleled punishment to  
113 fall on him. The female Līka who shall give birth to off-  
spring in the dwelling of a C'andāla,\* her child shall die first  
and she also shall perish at once.  
114 Now Vīja-hārinī, who robs man and woman of their seed,  
gives birth to two daughters, Vāta-rúpā† and A-rúpā.‡ I  
115 will tell thee of her method of attack. The man or the wife,  
to whom Vāta-rúpā casts a son at the end of the impregnation,  
suffers from the seminal secretion becoming dried up through  
116 disorder of the wind within the body.§ Similarly both the  
man who eats without first bathing, and *the man* who eats  
flesh,|| are deprived of their seed at once by A-rúpā. A man  
or a woman, if *he or she* neglects personal cleanliness, lapses  
into sterility.¶  
117 Now the daughter called Vi-dveshañī has a countenance  
rugged with frowns. She had two sons, Apa-kāra\*\* and Pra-  
118 kāsaka.†† These two sons come to a man, who delights  
in calumny, who is inconstant, and who uses impure water,  
119 and who hates mankind, and stay *with him permanently*.  
Hated by mother, by brother, by beloved friends, by kinsmen,  
120 by strangers, a man perishes from righteousness or wealth.  
Now one *son*, working sin, divulges‡‡ *men's* peculiar qualities  
121 in the world; and the second plucks away§§ one's good  
qualities and the friendship that exists among people.

\* C'andāla-yonyo 'vasathe seem wrong; read c'andāla-yony-avasathe instead P

† She who has the form of wind.

‡ Form-less.

§ Vāta-śukra-tvam; such is said to be the meaning of this word.

|| *Viyoginañ* in the text seems wrong. I have adopted another reading,  
*yo vai tathaiva pīṭhāśanañ* for *yo 'sau tathā c'āpi viyoginañ*.

¶ This sentence is made the first line of verse 118 in the text, and is  
clearly out of place there. I have placed it after verse 116 which is the na-  
tural context.

\*\* Apa-karsha, which must be the real name of the son (see verse 121) is  
preferable to Apa-kāra, for neither son has anything to do with *injuries*; but  
all the MSS. read *apakāra*, and I have not ventured to alter it.

†† That is, Divulger.

‡‡ Pra-kāśayati.

§§ Apa-karshati.

All these are the offspring of Duhsaha, in the pedigree of *that* goblin\*; they are notorious as observers of wicked customs; it is *they* who have overspread the whole world.

---

CANTO LII.

---

*The Creation and Appellations of the Rudras.*

*Márkaṇḍeya narrates the creation of Rudra in his eight personalities—and mentions their names, stations, wives and sons—He mentions briefly the wives and offspring of the ṛishis, Bhṛigu (from whom he himself was descended), Maríci, Angiras, Atri, Pulastya, Pulaha, Vasishṭha, and Agni, and also of the Pitris.*

Márkaṇḍeya spoke.

- 1     Such was the creation, which Brahmá of inscrutable origin made, characterized by darkness. I will tell thee of the creation of the Rudras. Hearken to me while I narrate it.
- 2     Now they were eight sons indeed of *Brahmá*, and *they* had wives and children.

- 3     At the beginning of the kalpa, while the Lord was meditating about a son who should be his equal, there appeared in his lap a youth blue and red in colour; and running about
- 4     he cried with a sweet voice, O bráhmaṇ. "Why criest thou?" answered Brahmá to him as he cried. "Give me a
- 5     name," then replied he to the lord of the world. "Thou art named 'Rudra,'† O divine one; cry not, assume some fortitude," thus was he addressed. Then he cried seven times more,
- 6     and the Lord gave him seven other names, and stations for these eight *personalities*, and wives and sons, O bráhmaṇ. The
- 7     Lord, the forefather, called him Bhava, Sarva, and Íśána,
- 8     and Pasu-pati, Bhíma, Ugra, and Mahá-deva. He gave these names, and assigned stations for these—the sun, water, the
- 9     earth, fire, the wind, and the ether, an initiated bráhmaṇ,

\* For *yakshasah* read *yakshasya*?

† Bv a pun on the root *rud*, to cry, to weep; *rudra* would thus mean *crier*, "weeper."

and the moon. These were the wives\* in order,—Su-varc'a-ná, and Umá, and Vi-keśi, and the next Svadhá, Sváhiá, the  
 10 Disas† and Díkshá, and Rohiṇi in due order—of the sun and the other *stations*, O bráhmaṇ, together with Rudra and the  
 11 other names. And there were born to him gradually C'ara, and S'ukra, Lohitáṅga, Mano-java, Skanda, and Sarga, Santána and Budha successively.

12 Such was Rudra himself. He found Satí for his wife‡; and through Daksha's curse Satí quitted her body. She  
 13 was the daughter of Himavat by Mená, O bráhmaṇ; her brother was Maináka, the chiefest friend of Ambho-dhi (the  
 14 Ocean.) And the lord Bhava married her again as his only wife.

Khyáti the wife of Bhṛigu§ gave birth to the two gods  
 15 Dhátṛi and Vidhátṛi, and to S'rí who was the wife of the supreme god Náráyaṇa. Kyati and Niyati were the two  
 16 daughters of high-souled Meru; they became the wives of Dhátṛi and Vidhátṛi. A son was born from each of them, both Práṇa and Mṛikaṇḍa.

17 The latter was my illustrious father. I am his son by Manasviní; Veda-śiras is my son, he was born of Dhúmṛavatí.

18 Hear also from me of the offspring of Práṇa. Dyutimán was the son begotten by Práṇa, and A-jaras was his son also; from them both issued many sons and grandsons.

19 Sambhúti was the wife of Maric'i ||; she brought forth Purna-mása; he high-souled man had two sons Vi-rajās and  
 20 Parvata; but I will defer mentioning their sons till I detail the genealogies, O bráhmaṇ

And Smṛiti was the wife of Angiras,¶ and daughters were  
 21 born of her, S'iníbalí, and Kuhu, Ráká and Bhánumatí.

Moreover, An-asúyá gave birth by Atri\*\* to sons without  
 22 blemish, Soma, and Durvásas and the yogí Dattátreya.

Dattoli was born the son of Pulastya†† by his wife Príti :

\* Tanavaḥ.

† The eight regions of the sky.

‡ See Canto L, verses 22-25.

§ See Canto L, verses 22-25.

|| See Canto L, verses 22-25.

¶ See Canto L, verses 22-25.

\*\* For *anasyá* read *anasúyá*; see canto L, verses 23-25.

†† See Canto L, verses 22-25.

23 he was known as Agastya in a previous life during the Sváyambhuva Manv-antara.

Now Kshamá, the wife of the Prajá-pati Pulaha\* brought  
24 forth three sons, *who were* Kardama, and Arva-víra and Sahishṇu.

Now Sannati was the wife of Kratu†; she gave birth to  
25 the Bálikhilyas, the sixty thousands, which they are, of ṛishis who live in perpetual chastity.‡

26 Now seven sons were born of Urjá by Vasishṭha,§ Rajas, Gátra and Urdhva-báhu, and Sa-bala, and An-agma, Su-tapas, Sukta; all these are well-known as seven Ṛishis.

27 Agni, who is arrogant, was the eldest son of Brahmá; by him Sváh|| begat three sons of exalted vigour, O bráhmaṇ, Pávaka, and Pavamána, and Śuo'i who pervades¶ water;  
29 but in descent from them were forty and five others. These and the father and his three sons are often spoken of as the invincible and illustrious forty and nine.

30 Brahmá created the Pitṛis\*\* whom I have mentioned to thee, who are the Agni-shvátas,†† the Barhi-shads,‡‡ those who *did* not maintain the sacred fire *on earth* and those who  
31 *did* maintain the fire.§§ By them Svadhá||| gave birth to two daughters, Mená and Dháriṇi; they both were teachers of the Veda, and they both were female yogís.

\* See canto L, verses 22-25.

† See canto L, verses 22-25.

‡ For *úrdhva-ratasám* read *úrdhva-retasám*.

§ See canto L, verses 23-25.

|| For *kháhá* read *sváhá*; see canto L, verses 23-25.

¶ Jalásinam.

\*\* This account differs from what Manu says (III, 193-199).

†† The Manes, especially of those who on earth neglected the sacrificial fire.

‡‡ A particular class of the Pitṛis.

§§ *An-agnayas* and *ságnayas*; these appear to be the same as Manu's *Agni-dagdhas* and *An-agni-dagdhas*, (III. 109).

||| See canto L, 23-25.

## CANTO LIII.

*The Story of the Sváyambhuva Manv-antara.*

*Márkaṇḍeya states the duration of the Manv-antarās, and mentions the names of the Manus past, present and future—He mentions the descendants of Manu Sváyambhuva and his son Priya-vrata, and explains how the whole world with its seven continents was peopled by them and divided among them—Jambu-dvīpa was assigned to Priya-vrata's son Agnīdhra, and was portioned out among Agnīdhra's sons—His eldest son Nābhi begot Rishabha, and Rishabha begot Bharata, to whom India was assigned.*

Kraushṭuki spoke.

- 1 Adorable Sir! I wish to hear fully of this Sváyambhuva Manv-antara also which thou hast mentioned. Tell me of it,
- 2 and also of the duration of this Manv-antara, and *its* gods and rishis, and the kings who ruled during it, and also who was the lord of the gods during it, adorable Sir!

Márkaṇḍeya spoke.

- 3 *The duration of the Manv-antarās has been declared to be the four yugas multiplied by seventy-one and a fraction.\**
- 4 Hear the duration of a Manv-antara from me in human reckoning. Thirty times ten millions are announced, and twenty thousands, and sixty-seven lakhs† more by computation—this is the length of the Manv-antara in human years, omitting the fraction: it is known to be eight hundreds of
- 5 thousands and fifty two thousands more besides of years by the divine reckoning.

- 6 At first was the Manu Sváyambhuva, then the Mann
- 7 Svároc'isha, Auttama,‡ and Tāmāsa, Raivata, and C'ákshusha; these six Manus have passed, and Vaivasvata is the Manu now.
- 8 These are to come, the five Sāvāṇas and Ruuc'ya, and Bhautya.§ Of these I will tell thee fully afterwards in con-

\* See Canto XLVI, verses 34—38.

† Niyuta. Verses 4, 5 and 6 agree with Canto XLVI, verses 35—37.

‡ For auttamas read auttamis.

§ The text appears to be wrong. For Sāvāṇiṣ pañc'a rauc'yāśc'a bhautyās read Sāvāṇāḥ pañc'a rauc'yāśc'a bhautyas. The five Sāvāṇa or Sāvāṇi Manus

- 9 nexion with *their respective* Manv-antaras; and of their gods and rishis, *and* the lords of the Yakshas and the Pitris who *lived during* each, of their commencement and end, O bráhmaṇ.
- 10 Hear who were his offspring, and who were the wives of those their high-souled sons.
- 11 Now Manu Sváyambhuva had ten sons equal to himself, by whom all this tributary earth with its seven continents, with its mountains, and with its oceans was peopled according to its countries. It was first *peopled* in the Sváyambhuva period in the Kṛita and Tretá ages by the sons of Priya-vrata and the grandsons of Sváyambhuva.
- 13 A daughter was begotten of Prajá-vatí by the hero Priya-vrata. Now that illustrious daughter *gave birth* through the
- 14 Prajá-pati Kardama to two daughters and ten\* sons; those two *daughters* were Saṃráj† and Kukshi; their ten brothers
- 15 were warriors equal to the Prajá-pati *their father*. Agnídhra, and Medhá-tithi, and Vapush-mat‡ the next, Jyotish-mat, Dyuti-mat. Bhavya, Savana, they were seven *of them* indeed.
- 16 Priya-vrata anointed those seven as kings over the seven continents. According to that his statute, hear *their* continents also from me.
- 17 Their father made Agnídhra thus king over Jambu-dvīpa;
- 18 and he made Medhá-tithi lord over Plaksha-dvīpa; and he made Vapush-mat lord of Sālmali, Jyotish-mat lord over Kuśa-dvīpa, Dyuti-mat lord over Kraunc'a-dvīpa, Bhavya
- 19 lord over Saka-dvīpa, and his son Savana ruler over Pushkara-dvīpa.
- Mahá-vīta and Dhātaki were the two sons of Savana, the
- 20 ruler over Pushkara-dvīpa; he divided the Pushkaraṣṭ land into two parts, and assigned to them *one part each*.

are n°. 8 Sávarṇi, n°. 9 Dakṣha-sávarṇi, n°. 10 Brahma-sávarṇi, n°. 11 Dharma-sávarṇi and n°. 12 Rudra-sávarṇi.

\* Only seven are mentioned in verse 15.

† This name as a feminine is not in the Dictionary.

‡ Vapushyat in the text seems incorrect. Vapush-mat is given correctly in verses 18 and 26.

§ For pushkaraṣṭ read pushkaraṇ ?

Bhavya had seven sons, hear them by name from me ;  
 21 both Jala-da, and Kumára, Su-kumára, Manívaka, and Kuśo-  
 22 tara, Medhávin, and Mahá-druma the seventh. He portioned  
 out for *them* countries in Śáka-dvīpa, which were named after  
 them.

Moreover Dyuti-mat had seven sons ; hear them also from  
 23 me ; Kuśala, and Mann-ga, Ushpa, and Prákara, Artha-káraka,  
 and Muni, and Dundubhi who was famed as the seventh.  
 24 And they had *countries* in Krauñc'a-dvīpa, which were named  
 after them.

In Kuśa-dvīpa itself also there were seven countries called  
 25 by the names of the sons of Jyotish-mat ; hear their names  
 from me—Ud-bhida, and Vainava, Su-ratha, and Lambana,  
 26 Dhṛitimat, and Prákara, and Kápila the seventh.

And Vapush-mat the lord of Śálmali had seven sons, both  
 27 Sveta, and Harita, Jímúta, and Rohita, Vaidyuta, and Mána-  
 28 sa, and Ketu-mat the seventh. And they had seven *countries*  
 in Śálmali, which bore the same names.

Medhá-tithi, the lord of Plaksha-dvīpa had seven sons, and  
 Plaksha-dvīpa *was divided* into seven *parts* by the countries  
 which were named after them, first the Śáka-bhava country.  
 30 then Śísira, Sukhodaya, and Ananda, and Śiva, and Kshe-  
 maka, and Dhruva.

In the five *continents*, which begin with Plaksha-dvīpa and  
 31 end with Śáka-dvīpa, righteousness also must be known as  
 arising from the divisions of the castes and the *several* stages  
 of a bráhmaṇ's life. *The righteousness* which is settled,\* and  
 springs from one's natural disposition, and is exempt from  
 32 the rules of harmlessness is well-known to be universal in  
 these five continents.

His father *Priya-vrata* gave Jambu-dvīpa to Agnídhra at  
 33 the first, O bráhmaṇ. He had nine sons indeed, who were  
 equal to the Prajá-pati *Priya-vrata*. The eldest was named  
 34 Nábhī ; his younger brother was Kim-purusha ; the third *son*  
 was Havir-varsha ; the fourth was Ilávrīta ; and the fifth  
 35 son was Váśya ; the sixth was called Hiraṇya ; the seventh

\* Nitya.



of them was Kuru ; the eighth was known as Bhadrásva ; and the ninth was Ketu-mála. *Designated* by their names was the arrangement of *their* countries.

- 36 Perfection *exists* naturally in Kim-purusha, and the other continents,\* with the exception of that named from the mountain Hima† ; and *the perfection* is almost complete happiness *which comes* without exertion. There is no adversity there, nor old age, death or fear ; neither righteousness nor unrighteousness existed there, nor *had the people differences of*
- 37 position, *such as* high, low or middling ; nor have the four ages existed *there*, nor periodic times, nor the seasons of the year.

- Now Agnídhra's son Nábhi had a son Rishabha, O bráhmaṇ.
- 39 Rishabha begot Bharata, a hero, the best among his hundred sons. Rishabha having anointed his son *in his stead* betook himself to the strictest life of a wandering religious mendicant, and devoted himself to austerities, an illustrious *hermit*, dwelling in Pulaha's hermitage. His father gave Bharata the southern country named after the mountain Hima‡ ;
- 41 hence the country is called Bhárata after the name of that high-souled *king*. Bharata also had a righteous son called
- 42 Su-mati ; and Bharata transferred the kingdom to him and departed to the forest.

- Now during the Sváyambhuva period Priya-vrata's sons,
- 43 and their sons and grandsons enjoyed§ the earth with its seven continents. This was the Sváyambhuva creation ; I
- 44 have narrated it to thee, O bráhmaṇ. What else shall I fully tell thee of in the first Manv-antara ?

\* For *kimpurushdḥyáni* read *kimpurushdāyáni* ?

† Himáhvasya. See also verses 40 and 41 where this is said to be a name for India. This meaning is not in the dictionary.

‡ Himáhva ; this meaning, ' India,' is not in the dictionary.

§ For *bhuktá* read *bhuktá*.

## CANTO LIV.

*The description of Jambu-dvīpa.*

*Mārkaṇḍeya tells Krauṣṭuki further the size of the earth, and the order and dimensions of the seven continents and their oceans—He describes Jambu-dvīpa, the countries in it, and Meru and the other mountains; and mentions various local facts.*

Krauṣṭuki spoke.

How many are the continents, and how many the oceans, and how many are the mountains, O brāhman? And how many are the countries, and what are their rivers, O Muni? And the size of the great objects of nature,\* and the Loká-loka mountain-range; the circumference, and the size and the course of the moon and the sun also—tell me all this at length, O great Muni.

Mārkaṇḍeya spoke.

The earth is fifty times ten million *yojanas*† broad in every direction,‡ O brāhman. I tell thee of its entire constitution, hearken thereto. The dvīpas which I have mentioned to thee, began with Jambu-dvīpa and ended with Pushkara-dvīpa, O illustrious brāhman; listen further to their dimensions. Now *each* dvīpa is twice the size of the dvīpa *which precedes it in this order*, Jambu, and Plaksha, Sālmala, Kuśa, Krauñcā and Sāka, and the Pushkara-dvīpa. They are completely surrounded by oceans of salt water, sugar-cane juice, wine, ghee, curdled milk, and milk, which increase double and double, *compared with each preceding one*.

I will tell thee of the constitution of Jambu-dvīpa; hearken to me. It is a hundred thousand *yojanas* in breadth and length, it being of a circular shape.§ Himavat, and Hema-kúṭa, Nishadha,|| and Meru, Nīla, Sveta and Śringin are the seven

\* Mahá-bhúta. † This word must obviously be supplied; see verse 8.

‡ Taking the *yojana* as 40,000 feet (see Canto xlix, 40), this diameter of the earth equals 3,787,878,788 miles.

§ *Vṛttau*. This distance cannot apply to the circumference (*vṛtti*) as well, the circumference, length and breadth cannot all be the same.

|| The text reads *Ṛishabha*, which disagrees with other *Purāṇas* and verses and 23.

10 great mountain-systems\* in it Two of these great mountain-ranges† are a hundred thousand *yojanas* in extent, *and are situated* in the middle of *Jambu-dvīpa* ; *there are two more* mountain-ranges which are south of those two, and *two more*  
 11 which are north. They are severally less by ten and ten thousand *yojanas* in length‡; they are all two thousand *yojanas*  
 12 in height, and they have the same breadth. And six of the mountain-ranges in it extend into the sea. The earth is low on the south and north, it is highly elevated in the middle.

13 On the southern half of the elevated ground§ are three countries, and on the north are three. *Ilāvṛita* is situated between those halves, *and* is shaped like the half-moon.  
 14 East of it is *Bhadrāsva*, and west is *Ketu-māla*.||

Now in the middle of *Ilāvṛita* is *Meru*, the mountain of  
 15 gold. The height of that immense mountain is eighty-four¶ thousand *yojanas* ; it penetrates downwards sixteen thousand  
 16 *yojanas*, and it is just sixteen thousand *yojanas* broad ; and since it is fashioned like a cup,\*\* it is thirty-two thousand *yojanas* broad at the summit. It is white, yellow, black and  
 17 red on the east and other *sides* consecutively ; and a *brāhman*, a *vaiśya*, a *śūdra*, and a *kshatriya* are stationed there according to the castes. Moreover, upon it on the east and the seven  
 18 other directions of the sky consecutively†† are the Courts of *Indra*

\* *Varsha-parvata*.

† *Nishadha* on the south of *Meru*, and *Nīla* on the north, according to the *Vishṇu-Purāṇa*, Bk. II, ch. ii.

‡ The text of the first line of verse 11 seems wrong : read instead, as in the MS.—*Dakṣhiṇ dākṣhiṇ nyēndāḥ sahasraś te parasparam*. *Hema-kūṭa* (south of *Nishadha*) and *S'veta* (north of *Nīla*) are 90,000 *yojanas* long. *Himavat* (south of *Hema-kūṭa*) and *S'ringin* (north of *S'veta*) are 80,000 *yojanas* long. The decrease is due to their position in the circle of the earth. See *Vishṇu-Purāṇa*, Bk. II., ch. ii.

§ *Vedi*.

|| These are the nine countries mentioned in canto lili, verses 32-35.

¶ For *c'atur-asṭi* read *c'atur-astī* ?

\*\* *S'arāva* ; other authorities compare it to the inverted seed vessel of a lotus, which is somewhat like an inverted cone.

†† The MS. reads *purya dīkṣu* for *pāreddīkṣu*, with practically the same meaning.

and the other Loka-pálas; and in the centre is Brahmá's Court, which is fourteen thousand yojanas high.

- 19 Moreover below it are the subjacent hills\* with a height  
of ten thousand yojanas. On the east and other sides con-  
20 secutively are *the mountains* Mandara, Gandha-mádana, and  
Vipula, and Su-pársva†; they are decorated with trees as  
standards. The kadam tree‡ is the standard on Mandara,  
21 the jambu tree§ on Gandha-mádana, and the aśvattha tree|| on  
Vipula, and the great banyan¶ on Su-pársva. These mountains  
22 are eleven hundred yojanas in extent. Jaṭnara and Deva-  
kúṭa are two mountains on the east side; they stretch up to  
Níla and Nishadha without any space intervening between  
23 them. Nishadha\*\* and Páripáttra are on the west side of Meru;  
these two mountains, like the two former, extend to Níla  
24 and Nishadha. Kailása and Himavat are two great mountains  
on the south; they stretch east and west; they extend into  
25 the ocean. Śringávat and Járudhi, moreover, are two moun-  
tains on the north; they, like *the two* on the south, extend  
26 into the ocean.†† These eight are called the boundary moun-  
tains, O bráhmaṇ. Hima-vat, Hema-kúṭa and the other  
27 mountains comprise, one with another, nine thousand yojanas,  
eastward, westward, southward and northward. Similarly  
Meru stretches to the four quarters in the middle in Ilávyita.  
28 The fruits which the jambu‡‡ tree produces on the mountain

\* Vishkambha-parvata.

† Mandara is on the East; Gandhá-mádana on the South; Vipula on the West; and Su-pársva on the North. See Canto lvi, verses 7, 13 and 16.

‡ See note \*\*, page 25.

§ Eugenia Jambolana, Hooker, vol. II, p. 499; Roxb. p. 398. A large tree, common everywhere, with a rather crooked trunk, shining leaves, and edible fruit. The bark yields brown dyes.

|| Called also *pippala*; *Ficus religiosa* (Oliver, p. 272; Roxb. p. 642); the modern *peepul*; a large spreading tree with a grateful shade, common every where. See also note \*, p. 33.

¶ Vata, *Ficus benghalensis* (Oliver, p. 272; *F. indica*, Roxb. p. 639), the large, common, well-known tree.

\*\* Read *Rishabha*?

†† For *antarvántar* read *arṇavántar*?

‡‡ For *jambá* read *jambú*?

- Gandha-mádana, are as large as an elephant's body; they  
 29 fall on the top of the mountain. From their juice springs  
 the famous Jambú river, in which is found the gold called  
 30 Jám-bú-nada. That river passes around Meru and then  
 enters Jambú-múla, O bráhmaṇ; and those people drink of it.  
 31 In Bhadrásva Vishṇu is *figured* with a horse's head; in  
 Bhárata\* he has the shape of a tortoise; and he is *like* a  
 boar in Ketu-mála; and he has a fish's form in the north.  
 32 In all those four *countries*, worldly affairs are governed  
 by the arrangement of the constellations, O bráhmaṇ; *the*  
*people there* study the influence of the planets.

---

 CANTO LV.
 

---

*The Geography of Jambu-dvīpa.*

Márkaṇḍeya *mentions* the forests and lakes and mountains around Meru—All the heavenly beings dwell in that region where there is the most charming scenery—Bhárata alone is the land of action, which entails merit and sin.

Márkaṇḍeya spoke.

- 1 Hear from me of the four forests and lakes which exist on
- 2 Mandara and the three other mountains,† O bráhmaṇ. On  
 the east is *the forest* named C'aitra-ratha, on the southern  
 mountain the forest Nandana, on the western mountain *the*  
 forest Vaibhrāja, and on the northern mountain *the forest*
- 3 Sávitra. On the east is the lake Aruṇoda,‡ and on the south  
 Mánasa, on the west of Meru is Sítoda, and Mahá-bhadra on  
 the north.
- 4 On the east of Mandara are the mountains Sítártta,§ and  
 C'akra-munja, and Kulíra, Su-kanka-vat, and Maṇi-śaila,
- 5 Vṛisha-vat, Mahi-níla, Bhavác'ala, Sa-bindu. Mandara, Veṇu,  
 Támasa, and Nishadha, and Deva-śaila.

\* For *bhárta* read *bhárata* ?

† For *śailashu* read *śaileshu*.

‡ Or Varuṇoda, see Canto lvi, verse 6.

§ *S'árttaś* read *Sítantaś* ? See verse 17, and Canto lvi, verse 6.

6 The mountain S'ikhara with its three peaks,\* and Kalinga,  
 Patangaka, Ruc'aka, and the mountain S'ānu-mat, and Tām-  
 7 raka, Viśákha-vat, Svetodara, and Sa-múla, and Vasu-dhāra,  
 Ratna-vat, Eka-śringa, Mahá-śaila, Rāja-śaila, Pipáthaka, and  
 8 Pañc'a-śaila, Kailāsa, and Hima-vat the loftiest of mountains ;  
 these mountains are said to lie on the south side of Meru.

9 Su-raksha,† and Śiśiraksha, Vaidurya, and Kapila,‡ and  
 10 Pinjara, Mahá-bhadra, Su-rasa, Kapila, Madhu, Anjana,  
 Kukkuṭa, Kṛishṇa, and Pāṇḍura the loftiest of mountains,  
 and the mountain Sahasra-sikhara, Páripátra, and Śringa-  
 11 vat ; these mountains are well-known as lying on the west of  
 Meru beyond the subjacent hills§ which are on the west side.

12 Hear yet the other *mountains* on the north. Sankha-kúṭa,  
 Vṛishabha, and the mountain Hamsa-nábha, and the moun-  
 13 tain Kapilendra, S'ānu-mat, and Níla, Svarṇa-śringin, S'áta-  
 śringin, Pushpaka, Megha-parvata, Virajáksha, Varáhádri,  
 14 Mayúra, and Járudhi ; these are said to be the mountains on  
 the north of Meru, O bráhmaṇ.

The valleys among these mountains are exceedingly charm-  
 15 ing ; they are decorated with forests *and* lakes of the clearest  
 water. In them men are born who practise meritorious deeds,  
 16 O bráhmaṇ. These are terrestrial Svargas, O bráhmaṇ ; they  
 surpass Svarga with their excellences. In them no fresh  
 17 merit or sin accrues. Even the gods are said to enjoy merit  
 in them. And on these mountains, Sítánta|| and the rest, O  
 18 bráhmaṇ, are the great and resplendent abodes of the Vidyá-  
 dharas, the Yakshas, the Kin-naras, the Nágas, and the  
 19 Rákshasas, and the gods, and the Gandharvas, which possess  
 great merit and are studded with charming groves which the  
 gods frequent. And the lakes are charming ; the breeze is

\* See Canto lvi, verse 9. S'ikhara must be first mountain on the south, and *tri-kúṭa* must be an adjective qualifying it.

† See Canto lvi, verse 14.

‡ The text " Kapila " seems erroneous, as it mentions Kapila again in the next line. Another reading is Pingala.

§ For *vishkambhát* read *vishkambhát* ; see Canto liv, verse 19.

|| See verse 4.

- 20 pleasant at every season. Nor anywhere on these mountains  
do men have any kind of mental agitation.
- 21 Thus have I told thee of that four-leaved lotus-flower  
which is the earth; its leaves are Bhadrásva, Bhárata and  
the other countries on the four sides. The country named  
22 Bhárata, which I have told thee of on the south, is the land  
of action; nowhere else is merit and sin acquired; this must  
be known to be the chief *country*, wherein everything is  
23 fixedly established.\* And from it a man gains Svarga and  
final emancipation from existence, or the human world and  
hell, or yet again the brute-condition, O bráhmaṇ.

---

### CANTO LVI.

---

#### *The Descent of the Ganges.*

*Márkaṇḍeya describes the course of the River Ganges from the moon on to mount Meru, then in four streams flowing east, south, west and north, of which the southern stream was allowed by S'iva to flow through India at the entreaties of King Bhagírátha.*

*He describes briefly the happy condition of all the other countries (except India) in Jambu-dvīpa.*

Márkaṇḍeya spoke.

- 1 The foot of Náráyaṇa, moreover, who is the origin of the  
universe,† supports the earth. The divine river Ganges  
2 which issued thence flows in three courses. She enters the  
moon, which is the womb of the nectar and the receptacle of  
the waters, and thence, having purified with her contact the  
rays of the sun‡ which is indissolubly connected *with the moon*,  
3 she fell on the summit of Meru, and then divided into four  
*streams*. As she fell from the summit and the sides and the  
outer bounds of Meru, she turned around, and finding no  
4 support fell scattering her waters widely. Dividing her  
waters equally at the foot of Mandara and the three other  
5 *mountains*, she fell, piling high the rocks broken off from their  
bases by her waters.

\* Prati-śhṭhita.

† Jagad-yonim in the text seems impossible. Read jagad-yoneṣ ?

‡ Or, being purified by contact with the rays of the sun.

The eastern stream, which is celebrated by its name Sítá,\*  
 6 flowed to the forest C'aitra-ratha,† and overflowing it, passed  
 on to the lake Varuṇoda,‡ and thence to the mountain  
 Sítánta,§ and thence to the other mountains *on the east* in  
 7 order. Descending to the earth in her course, she flowed  
 from Bhadrásva into the ocean.

Moreover the *second stream* called Alaka-nandá flowed  
 8 south towards Gandha-mádana into the *forest* Nandana that  
 delights the gods and that lies at the foot of Meru, and over-  
 9 flowed the lake Mánasa with great force, and reached the de-  
 lightful kingly mountain Sikhara,|| and thence overflowed all  
 10 the mountains which I have mentioned in order on the south,  
 and reached the lofty mountain Hima-vat. There the bull-  
 11 bannered Siva held her and would not let her go. The  
 lord was propitiated by *king* Bhagíratha with fastings and  
 hymns, and Siva released her there. She entered the south-  
 12 ern ocean in seven *streams*, and in three *streams* on the east;  
 inundating as a great river the south with the overflow from  
 her stream, behind Bhagíratha's chariot.

Moreover the great river famed as Sva-rakshu fell on  
 13 Mount Vipula on the west side, and went towards the forest¶  
 14 Vaibhrája; and thence the great river overflowing the lake  
 Sítoda reached the mountain Sva-rakshu,\*\* and thence she  
 15 went to the mountain Tri-śikha;†† and thence falling on the

\* The text appears incorrect. For *púrváśīte 'tīvikhyáta* read *púrvá śīte*  
*vīkhyáta*?

† See canto lv, verse 2.

‡ Or Aruṇoda, see canto lv, verse 3.

§ See canto lv, verse 4.

|| See canto lv, verse 6.

¶ For *sáśalam* read *sá vanam*? See canto lv, verse 2.

\*\* There seems to be a confusion in the text between the names of the  
 river and the mountain, which latter is called *Su-raksha* in canto lv, verse 9;  
 for *Sva-rakshuḥ* then read *Su-raksham*?

†† This name seems erroneous. See canto lv, verse 9, where *Sīśiráksha* is  
 mentioned as the second mountain. No mountain of the name *Tri-śikha* is  
 mentioned in that and the following verses among the western mountains.  
 The two should agree; compare *Vṛishabha* in verse 18, and canto lv, verse 12



summits of the other mountains *on the west* in order, she reached Ketumála and entered the salt ocean.

16 Now she flowed on to mount Su-párva also, which is at  
the foot of Meru; there she is famed as Somá. She flowed  
17 to the wood of Savitri.\* Overflowing† it, she reached lake  
Mahá-bhadra;‡ and thence she passed as a great river to  
18 mount Sankha-kúṭa;§ and thence reaching in succession  
Vṛishabha and the other mountains *on the north*, and over-  
flowing the Northern Kurus she entered the great ocean.

19 Thus I have appropriately described to thee, O bráhmaṇ,  
this *river*, the Ganges, and the countries according to their  
20 arrangement in Jambu-dvīpa. In Kim-purusha and all the  
other *countries* dwell people, who have almost unalloyed  
happiness, who are free from sickness, and who are exempt  
21 from low and high diversities of condition. In each of the  
nine countries in it are seven mountain ranges. And then  
in each country there are rivers flowing down from the  
22 mountains. In Kim-purusha and the seven other countries,  
O bráhmaṇ, waters bubble up *from the ground*; here in Bhá-  
23 rata *we have* rain. And in these eight countries|| men enjoy  
a perfection which comes from the trees, from their own  
natural dispositions, from the localities, from the water, from  
24 their mental condition and from their actions.¶ The tree-  
bestowed perfection is obtained from the trees that grant  
them every wish; the natural is well-known as that which  
springs from the natural disposition; and the local delight  
25 is that which is connected with the land itself; and the  
water-given\*\* *perfection comes* from the delicacy of the water;  
and the mental is derived from meditation; and the *perfec-  
tion which comes* from reverential service and the performance  
of other duties is denominated righteousness-produced.††

\* Sávitra; see canto lv, verse 2.

† For pávayanti read plávayanti.

‡ See canto lv, verse 3.

§ See canto lv, verse 12.

|| For vaashershv read varsheshv.

¶ Karma-já, this seems preferable to dharma-já in verse 25.

\*\* For toyátthá read toyotthá.

†† Dharma-já; verse 23 reads karma-já instead, which seems preferable.

- 26 And in these countries the ages do not exist, nor bodily nor mental sicknesses; nor is there any undertaking involving merit or demerit there, O bráhmaṇ.

---

CANTO LVII.

---

*Márkaṇḍeya mentions the nine divisions of Bhárata, one of which is India—He mentions the seven mountain ranges in India (exclusive of the Himálaya Mountains) and names twenty-two separate hills—He mentions the chief rivers in India, grouping them according to the mountain ranges out of which they rise—He mentions the chief peoples in India and on its borders, arranging them according to the main natural divisions of the country—and he concludes with general descriptive remarks and an encomium on India as the sole land of action.*

Kraushtuki spoke.

- 1 Adorable Sir! thou hast fully described this Jambu-dvípa.  
Just as thou hast declared it, merit-producing action *exists*  
2 nowhere else, nor *action that tends* to sin, except in Bhárata,  
O illustrious Sir! And from this *land* both Svarga is at-  
tained, and final emancipation from existence, and the me-  
3 dium end also. Verily nowhere else on earth is action  
ordained for mortals. Therefore tell me, O bráhmaṇ, about  
4 this Bhárata in detail, and what are its divisions, and how  
many they are, and *what is its* constitution accurately; it is  
the country,\* and what are the provinces and the mountains  
in it, O bráhmaṇ?

Márkaṇḍeya spoke

- 5 Hear from me the nine divisions of this country Bhárata;  
6 they must be known as extending to the ocean, but as being  
mutually inaccessible. *They† are* Indra-dvípa, Káserúmat.‡

\* Varsha.

† This and the three following verses agree closely with the Kúrma Puráṇa canto xlvii, verses 22—25.

‡ The dictionary gives the word as *káseru-mat*; the Kúrma Puráṇa as *kaseruk-mat* (canto xlvii, verse 22), in preference. Another form is said to be *Kasetu*.

- 7 *Támra-varṇa*,\* *Gabhasti-mat*, and *Nāga-dvīpa*, *Saumya*,  
*Gándharva*,† and *Várṇa*; and this is the ninth *dvīpa*  
8 is a thousand *yojanas* from south to north.§ At its east end  
are the *Kirátas*,|| and at the west the *Yavanas*.¶ Within  
9 it dwell *bráhmans*, *kshatriyas*, *vaiśyas* and *súdras*, O *bráh-*  
man. They accomplish their purification with the occupa-  
tions of sacrifice, meditation, trade, &c.; and they seek their  
10 mutual business through these occupations, and they gain  
*Svarga* or final emancipation from existence, merit and sin  
then.

The seven mountain ranges\*\* in it are *Mahendra*,††

\* The *Kúrma Purána* gives the word as *támra-parṇa* in preference (canto xlvii, verse 22). It is Ceylon.

† Or, *gándharva*, *Kúrma Purána*, canto xlvii, verse 23.

‡ This is understood to mean India, as the following verses show; see Wilson's *Vishṇu Purána*, Edn. FitzEdward Hall, Book II, chap. iii, note on the similar passage. But this *Purána* states clearly enough (see verse 59 below) that India is not surrounded by the sea, but bounded by it only on the east, south, and west, and only partially so on the east and west, for verse 8 places the *Kirátas* and *Yavanas* there respectively.

§ The *yojana* is defined in canto xlix, verse 40, to be about 40,000 feet; this length therefore is 7,576 miles.

|| The *Kirátas* are the uncivilized tribes of the forests and mountains; here the word appears to denote all the races with the Burmese type of features along the eastern limits of India.

¶ The Greeks originally, and afterwards the Mohammedans.

\*\* For the notes in this Canto I have consulted, Wilson's *Vishṇu Purána* (Edn. FitzEdward Hall), General Cunningham's *Ancient Geography of India* (1871), his *Archæological Survey of India Reports*, besides other works and maps.

†† "Mahendra is the chain of hills that extends from Orissa and the northern Circars to Gondwana, part of which near Ganjam is still called Mahindra Malei or hills of Mahindra." Wilson's *Vishṇu Purána*, Book II, chap. iii, note. The rivers which flow from these hills are named in verses 28 and 29, but only a few of them have been identified. This range then appears to be the portion of the Eastern Ghats between the Godaveri and Mahánadi rivers, and the hills in the south of Berar. See, however, note on the *Sukti-mat* range on the next page.

## 11 Malaya,\* Sahya,† Sukti-mat,‡ the Riksha moun-

\* This is the southern portion of the Western Ghats. Only four rivers are mentioned in verses 27 and 28 as rising in these hills, and none of them appear to have been identified; but as the River Kaveri is said in verses 26 and 27 to rise in the Sahya mountains, the Malaya mountains can be only the portion of the Western Ghats from the Nil-giris to Cape Comorin.

† The Sahya mountains are the Northern portion of the Western Ghats, and, as appears from the rivers which rise in them (see verses 26 and 27), extend from the River Tapti down to the Nil-giris.

‡ This range is not definitely identified, nor the rivers which are said in verses 29 and 30 to rise in it

General Cunningham says the R. Suktimati "derived its name from the Suktimāl (sic) mountains, in which it had its source"; asserts that the river must be the same as the Mahánadí; and infers that the Sukti-mat mountains must "correspond with the high range of mountains to the south of Sehoa and Kánker, which gives rise to the Mahanadi, the Pairi and the Seonath rivers, and which forms the boundary between Chattisgarh and the feudatory state of Bastar." (Arch. Survey Reports, vol. XVII, pp. 24 and 69; and map at end.) His premises seem to me unsafe; and his conclusion confounds the Sukti-mat range with the Mahendra range, and must be incorrect, for the latter range appears to be identified beyond doubt.

Mr. Beglar proposes to identify the R. Sukti-matí with the Sakri (which is a tributary of the Ganges, and flows northwards about 35 miles east of Gaya), to connect the river with the Sukti-mat range, and apparently to identify the range with the hills in the north of the Hazaribagh district. He proposes to strengthen this position by identifying the rivers Kiyul (another tributary of the Ganges, east of the Sakri) and Kaorhari (which I do not find, but which seems to be another small tributary) with the Rishi-kulyá and Kumári, which rise in the Sukti-mat mountains; see verses 29 and 30. (Arch. Survey Reports, vol. VIII, pp. 124 and 125). But the Sukti-mat range and Sukti-matí river do not seem necessarily connected; neither this nor the Váyu Puráṇa makes the river rise in the Sukti-mat range, (see verse 23); Sakri does not appear the natural equivalent for Sukti-matí, (there is besides another river Sakri, a tributary of the Seonath,) nor Kiyul and Kaorhari of Rishi-kulyá and Kumári; Sakri corresponds better with Sakulí (see verse 23); and the hills in the north of the Hazaribagh district are not remarkable, and are rather the termination of the Vindhya range than a separate mountain system.

The only mountains, which have not been appropriated to the Sanskrit names, are the Aravalli mountains and the southern portion of the Eastern Ghats, so that this range might be one of these two; and if the former are rightly included in the Páripátra Range, (see note †, next page) the S'ukti-mat range might be the southern portion of the Eastern Ghats and

tains,\* and Vindhya,† and Páripátra.‡ And there are other hills besides them in thousands, which are situated near them. Their summits are broad and lofty, and are delightful and spacious;—Koláhala,§ and Vaibhrája,||

the hills of Mysore. If, however, the Sukti-mat range must be placed in Berar, the Mahendra range will be restricted to the Eastern Ghats.

\* These are said to be the mountains of Gondwana, see Wilson's *Vishṇu Purāṇa*, Book II, chap. iii, note. Judging from the rivers which are said in verses 21 to 25 to rise in the Vindhya and Riksha Ranges, it appears this range consists of the hills which form the water-shed between the Narbudda, Sone and Mahanadi on one side, and the Tapti and northern tributaries of the Godavari on the other side; that is, it comprises the Satpura Hills, and the hills extending through the middle of Berar and the south of Chutia Nagpur nearly into West Bengal.

† For *vindhak* read *vindhya*. This does not denote the whole of the modern Vindhya Range, but only the portion of it east of Bhopal, and also the water-shed hills which extend from it into Behar, as will appear from a comparison of the rivers which rise in it according to verses 21—23.

‡ Called also Páriyátra. This is the western portion of the modern Vindhya Range, west of Bhopal, as appears from the rivers which rise in it according to verses 19 and 20. Prof. Wilson says (*Vishṇu Purāṇa*, Book II, chap. iii, note) "the name, indeed, is still given to a range of mountains in Guzerat (see Colonel Tod's Map of Rajasthan)," and that may be considered an offshoot of the main range. If the *Váyu Purāṇa* is right in reading *Varpásá* instead of *Venvá* in verse 19, this range would also probably include the Aravalli mountains in Rajputana. If this be so, the configuration of this range, a curve around the west and south of Malwa, would suggest a derivation for both the names, *viz.*, Páripátra, from *pari* + *pátra*, "the mountains shaped like an enclosing receptacle", or "the mountains which form a protection around;" or Páriyátra, from *pari* + *yá*, "the mountains which curve around" The name may thus still survive in the Pathar range, which lies between the rivers Chambal and Banás (Arch. Survey Reports, vol. VI, p. 1 and map; and vol. XIV, p. 151).

§ Mr. Beglar proposes to identify this hill with the Kawa Kol range, which is east of the R. Sakri (a tributary of the Ganges about 35 miles east of Gaya); but there does not appear to be anything about the range agreeing with the description in the text. (Arch. Survey Reports, vol. VIII, pp. 123 to 125, and map at end).

|| This as a mountain is not mentioned in the dictionary, and I do not find any such mountain. The *Váyu Purāṇa* reads *Vaihdra* instead (xlv 90), which is a synonym for a famous hill called *Vaibhára* or *Baibhára*, near Raju-griha.

13 Mandara\*, the hill Durdurāt, Vāta-svana†, and Vaidyuta§, Maināka||, and Sva-rasa¶, Tunga-prastha\*\*,  
 14 Nāga-giri††, Roc'ana‡‡, the hill Pāṇḍara§§, the hill  
 and about 28 miles north-east of Gaya. (Cunningham's *Anc. Geog. of India*, vol. I, p. 452, map and p. 463; *Arch. Survey Reports*, vol. I, p. 21 and plates III and XIV; vol. III, p. 140).

\* Mandara, the famous mountain, is situated about 35 miles, south of Bhāgalpur in Behar (*Arch. Survey Reports*, vol. VIII, p. 130).

† I do not find this in the dictionary. There is a hill called Turturiya, which stands a little south of the junction of the R. Mahānadi with its tributary the Seonath, and which was a place of pilgrimage. (*Arch. Survey Reports*, vol. VII, p. 202; vol. XIII, pp. 146—152).

‡ This as a mountain is not mentioned in the dictionary. The Vāyu Purāṇa reads Pātandhama instead (xlv. 91). I do not find either. But Mr. Beglar found a hill Bathān or Bathani in South Behar, and mentions a hill called Banthawa or Pandhawa in Buddhist records. These names might be easy corruptions of Pātandhama. (*Arch. Survey Reports*, vol. VIII, p. 46).

§ This as a mountain is not mentioned in the dictionary, and I do not find it. Is it to be connected with Baijnath or Vaidya-nath, the famous place of pilgrimage, near the R. Karma-nāsā, south of Ghazipur? There does not seem, however, to be any prominent hill there. (*Arch. Survey Reports*, vol. VIII, p. 137; and vol. XIX, p. 27). Or, should the reading be Vipula? Vipula is a well-known hill near Raja-griha (*Anc. Geog. of India*, vol. I, p. 452, map, and p. 464; *Arch. Survey Reports*, Vol. I, p. 21 and plates III and XIV).

|| This appears to be the mountain in which the R. Sone takes its rise, the river being thence called Maināka-prabhā (*Arch. Survey Reports*, vol. VIII, p. 124); but some placed it between the southern point of the Indian peninsula and Ceylon (Prof. Sir M. Monier-Williams' Dictionary), and in this connexion see canto lii. verse 13.

¶ This as a mountain is not mentioned in the dictionary; and I do not find it. The Vāyu Purāṇa reads Sasurasa or Su-sarasa instead (xlv. 90); I do not find any such hill.

\*\* I do not find this. The Vāyu Purāṇa reads Gantu-prastha instead (xlv. 91), which seems a mistake.

†† I do not find this.

‡‡ I do not find this.

§§ The Vāyu Purāṇa reads Pāṇḍura (xlv. 90); neither is mentioned in the dictionary as a mountain. Should we read Pāṇḍava instead? There are two hills now which are called Pāṇḍua hill or the Pāṇḍus' hill, one found by Mr. Carlleyle north west of Bairāt (or Vairāta) in Aīwar (*Arch. Survey Reports*, vol. VI, pp. 95—101); and the other by Mr. Beglar north of Hattā and near the R. Ken in Bandelkhand, where pilgrimages are still made (*id.* vol. VII, p. 56).

- Pushpa\*, Dur-jayanta†, Raivata‡, and Arbuda§, Rishya-múka||, and Go-manta¶, Kúṭa-śaila\*\*, Kṛita-smara††, and  
 15 Śrī-parvata‡‡, and Kora§§, and other mountains in hundreds.  
 By them the people, both Mlec'c'has and Aryas, are mingled  
 together according to their divisions.  
 16 The chief rivers of which those people drink, hear  
 them from me duly. Gangá, Sarasvatí|||, Sindhu,¶¶ and  
 17 C'andra-bhágá\*\*\* also, and Yamuná, and Sata-dru,†††

\* I do not find this.

† I do not find this. The Váyu Puráṇa reads Uj-jayanta instead (xlv. 92), which Gen. Cunningham identifies with Girinar hill in the peninsula of Gujarat (Anct. Geog. vol. I, p. 325). There are also the Ajanta hills, north east of Aurangabad (Arch. Survey Reports, vol. IX, p. 121) which seem to be the same as the Ajayanti hill (Anc. Geog. of India, vol. I, p. 555).

‡ This is near Dwaraká or Kúśa-sthalí, the capital of the country Anarta in the peninsula of Gujarat; and the Girinar hill mentioned in the last preceding note is sometimes identified with this hill.

§ The modern Mount Abu, at the south end of the Aravalli range.

|| Rishya-múka is in the Dekhan; but I do not find its exact site.

¶ This appears to be the hill of Gwalior. Gen. Cunningham says it was originally called *Gopáś'ala* and *Gopa-giri*, *Gopáhvaya*, and later *Go-manta* (Arch. Survey Reports, vol. II, pp. 372, 373). The Váyu Puráṇa mentions *Go-dhana* instead (xlv. 91), which suggests *Go-varadhana*, but *Go-varadhana* does not suit the metre. It is strange, however, so famous a hill should be omitted.

\*\* I do not find this.

†† I do not find this. Is this to be connected with the Káramár hill, in Gándhára? (Arch. Survey Reports, vol. II, pp. 92 and 106, and map at p. 87; vol. XIX, p. 126).

‡‡ Mr. Beglar, in a list of tirthas where portions of Párvatí's body are fabled to have fallen when she was destroyed at Dakṣha's sacrifice, mentions "Śrī Parvat, near the Karatoya River." This must be the river mentioned in verse 25, for I do not think there is any such hill near the other Karatoya in North East Bengal.

§§ The Vayu Puráṇa reads Káru or Ketu (xlv. 92); none are mentioned as mountains in the dictionary. There is a hill called Kolla in Mewat (Arch. Survey Reports, vol. XX, p. 133).

||| The modern Sursooty, between the Jumna and the Sutlej. For a clear description, see Arch. Survey Reports, vol. XIV, pp. 87—90, and Plate XXVI.

¶¶ The Indus.

\*\*\* The R. Chenab in the Panjab, the Greek Acesines.

††† The R. Sutlej; the Greek Hyphasis.

Raivata,\* and Arbuda,† Rishyamúka,‡ and Gomanta,§

p. 121) which seem to be the same as the Ajayanti Hill (Anc. Geog. of India. vol. I. p. 555).

\* Raivata, or Raivatāka, was near Dváraká or Kusá-sthalí, which was near the extreme western promontory, and was the capital of the country Anarta, in the peninsula of Gujarat; for in the M.-Bh., a festival on this mountain is described, in which the citizens of Dváraká went out there with their families, in thousands, on foot or in carriages (Ádi-P. ccix. 7906-17); and it is called the ornament of the gate of that city in the Hari-V. (cxiii. 6361-70; and cxiv. 6410-15.). The Girnar hill mentioned in the last preceding note is sometimes identified with this hill, but Mt. Girnar is about 110 miles from Dváraká, and this distance is incompatible with either of the passages quoted. There does not appear to be any mountain close to that city, but the Baradá group of hills is not far from it, and they are the only hills that comply with the conditions (see Arch. Surv. of W. India, by J. Burgess, Káthiáwád, pp. 12, 15, 84 and 154). Raivata is not necessarily a single mountain, for the Hima-vat, Vindhya and other ranges are often spoken of in the singular. I would therefore propose to identify Raivata with the Baradá Hills in Hálár, the western corner of the peninsula.

† The modern Mount Abu, at the south end of the Aravalli range. Vasishtha is said to have had his hermitage there (M.-Bh., Vana-P. lxxxii. 4097-8). The country around Arbuda was noted for its breed of horses (id. Sabhá-P. l. 1851.)

‡ Rishyamúka is in the Dekhan. It was the scene of Ráma's meeting with Sugriva and Hanúmán. I have proposed to identify it with the range of hills which stretches from Ahmadnagar to beyond Naldurg and Kalyani, dividing the Manjira and Bhima rivers (*Journal*, R. A. S., April, 1894, p. 253).

§ There are two hills of this name. One is mentioned in the Hari-Vaṛṇsa as situated in a gap or opening (*vivara*) of the Sahya Mts. (xcvi. 5331-40). It was three or four days' journey by swift chariot from Karavira-pura (xcvi. 5325-40; and c. 5650-52), i.e., probably 100 or 120 miles in a hilly country: and that city, which was the capital of the country Padmāvata, was on the Sahya Mts. on (and therefore near the source of) the R. Veṇvā, and presumably near Súrparaka (xcv. 5212, 5228-31; and xcvi. 5283-5322). This R. Veṇvā would therefore appear to be the river Purna (or one of the other small rivers south of Surat), flowing into the Gulf of Cambay, south of the R. Tapti; Karavira-pura would have been near its source on the Western Ghats, and Gomanta would probably be the hills S. or S.-E. of Nasik. The other Gomanta is the hill of Gwalior. Gen. Cunningham says it was originally called *Gopdā'ala* and *Gopa-giri*, *Gopāhvaya*, and later, *Go-manta*



- 15 Kúṭa-śaila,\* Kṛita-smara,† and Śrī-parvata,‡ and Kora,§ and other mountains in hundreds. By them the people, both Mlecchéhas and Aryas, are mingled together according to their divisions.
- 16 The chief rivers of which those people drink, hear them from me duly. Gangá, Saras-vatī,|| Sin-

(Arch. Survey Reports, vol. II. pp. 372, 373). The Váyu Purāṇa mentions *Go-dhana* instead (xlv. 91); but I have met with no hill of this name elsewhere; it suggests *Go-varadhana*, but *Go-varadhana* does not suit the metre.

\* I do not find this.

† I do not find this. Is this to be connected with the Káramár hill, in Gándhára? (Arch. Survey Reports, vol. II. pp. 92 and 106, and map at p. 87; vol. XIX. p. 126).

‡ Śrī-parvata, or Śrī-śaila, is the name of a lofty rock which overhangs the R. Kṛishṇá in the Kurnool District; it is the site of a famous temple called Mallikárjuna, one of the twelve great Linga shrines (Arch. Surv. of S. India, by R. Sewell, Vol. I. 90; Arch. Surv. of W India, by J. Burgess, p. 223). The Agni Purāṇa places Śrī-parvata on the R. Káverí, and says it was dedicated to the goddess Śrī by Viṣṇu, because she had once performed some austerities (cxiii. 3, 4). But Mr. Beglar, in a list of tīrthas where portions of Párvatī's body are fabled to have fallen when she was destroyed at Dakṣha's sacrifice, mentions "Śrī Parvat, near the Karatoya River." This may perhaps be the river mentioned in verse 25, for I do not think there is any such hill near the other Karatoyá in North-East Bengal.

§ The Váyu Purāṇa reads *Káru*, or *Ketu* (xlv. 92) and a mountain *Koṇva* is mentioned in the Bhāgavata-P. (V. xix. 16); none are mentioned as mountains in the dictionary. There is a hill called Kolla in Mewat (Arch. Survey Reports, vol. XX. p. 133).

|| The modern Sursooty, between the Jumna and Sutlej. For a clear description, see Arch. Survey Reports, vol. II. 214, &c; and XIV. pp. 87-90 and Plate XXVI. There can be little doubt that in ancient times it was a very much larger river than it is now; see an interesting paper in the *Journal*, Beng. Asiat. Socy. 1886, Part II. p. 340; but in later times it perished, as it does now, in the sands of the desert, and *Vinaśana* was the name of the place where it disappeared (M.-Bh. Vana-P. lxxxii. 5052-5; and Śalya-P. xxxviii. 2119-20.). South and East of it was the *Drishadvatī*, and between them lay the sacred region called *Brahmāvarta* (Manu II. 17, 18) and *Tri-piṣṭapa* (M.-Bh. Vana-P. lxxxiii. 5074 and 7075) and also apparently *Brahma-kshetra* (*ibid.*, 5076). The name *Saras-vatī*, however, was given to the seven rivers *Su-prabhá*, *Káñc'andkshá*, *Viśáld*, *Manoramá*, *Ogha-vatī*, *Su-rasū* and *Vimalodaká* (*id.*, Śalya-P. xxxix. 2188-2216.)

17 dhu,\* and C'andra-bhágá † also, ‡ and  
 Yamuná, and Sata-dru, § Vitastá, || Irávatí, ¶  
 Kuhu.\*\* Go-matí, †† and Dhúta-pápá, ‡‡ Báhudá, §§

\* The Indus. As to its ancient course through Sindh, see *Journal*, Beng. Asiat. Socy., 1886, Part II. p. 323.

† The R. Chenab, in the Punjab. It was also called the *Asikni*, the Greek *Akesines*.

‡ Or, "and another *C'andra-bhágá*." There were two rivers of this name (M.-Bh., Bhishma-P. ix. 322 and 327), but I have found no data to identify the second.

§ The R. Sutlej; the Greek *Hyphasis*. In ancient times this river probably did not join the Beas, as it does now, but pursued an independent course to the confines of Sindh. It flowed South-West from where it issues from the Himalayas, into the channel called the Naiwal and then along the dry bed called the Hakra or Ghaggar, at a distance of 30 to 50 miles south of, and more or less parallel to, its present course. See *Journal*, Beng. Asiat. Socy., 1886, Part II. p. 332.

|| The modern R. Jhelam, in the Panjab; the Greek *Hydaspes*.

¶ The modern R. Ravi, in the Panjab; the Greek *Hydraotes*.

\*\* This, does not appear to be known, though it is also mentioned by the Váyu (xl. 95) and Kúrma Purāṇas (xlvii. 27), both of which read *Kuhá*. As it is mentioned in conjunction with rivers in the Panjab, is it to be identified with the *Kubhá* (Rig-V. x., 75. 6.), the Greek *Kōphēn*, the modern Kabul river? (Cunningham, *Anc. Geog. of India*, I. 37).

†† The modern Goomti, which joins the Ganges on the left bank below Benares. There was, however, another and older Go-matí (Rig-V. x. 75. 6), which is probably the modern R. Gomai, a western tributary of the Indus (Muir, *Sansk. Texts*, II. 357).

‡‡ Gen. Sir A. Cunningham says this is a name of the Go-matí (Arch. Surv. Repts, I. 315). The text is *Go-matí Dhúta-pápá c'a*; and the Váyu (xl. 95), Kúrma (xlvii. 27), Varáha (lxxxv.) and Vishṇu Purāṇas all read the same. The two words are also linked together in the Mahá-Bhárata (Bhishma-P. ix. 325), but not, I believe, in the Rámáyana, where the Go-matí is generally called "crowded with cattle." *Dhúta-pápá* then either means the Go-matí, and the translation would be, "and the sin-cleansing Go-matí;" or it denotes some tributary of that river.

§§ There were two rivers of this name, this one (see M.-Bh., Bhishma-P. ix. 337), and another in the Dekhan (*ibid.*, 322; Anuśás.-P. clxv. 7653: and Rámáyana, Kishk. K. xli. 13). This river is mentioned in various passages (M.-Bh., Vana-P. lxxxiv. 8045-6; lxxxvii. 8323; xcv. 8513; Sánti-P. xxiii. 668, &c.; Anuśás.-P. xix. 1408-11; and Hari-Vaṃśa xii. 710), and from these

18 and *Dṛiśad-vatī*,\* *Vi-pásá*,† *Deviká*,‡ *Rankshu*,§  
*Niśc'irá*,|| and *Gaṇḍakí*,¶ and *Kauśiká*\*\* are the rivers††

it appears to have been a considerable river between the Go-matí and Ganges, in or near the territory of Ayodhyá, and having its source well up in the Himálayas. The only river which satisfies these conditions is the modern Ramgangá, which joins the Ganges on the left, near Kanauj; and this river therefore is probably the Báhudá.

\* Or, better, *Dṛiśad-vatī*; the famous river between the Saras-vatí and Jumna. It was the southern and eastern boundary of Brahmávarṭa (Manu ii. 17). For a full description, see Cunningham, Arch. Surv. Repts., II. 214, &c.; and XIV 87-90, and plate xxvi. See also note under *Saras-vatí* in verse 16.

† Read *Vi-pásá*, for *Vi-pásá*. It is the modern R. Bias, in the Panjab, the Greek Hyphasis. It is now a tributary of the Sutlej, but was probably altogether separate in olden times, for the Sutlej then had an independent course considerably to the south-east.

‡ There are two *Devikás*, one in the Dekhan (*Rámáy.* Kishk. K. xli. 13), and this river (M-Bh., Bhishma-P. ix. 324; Anuśás-P. xxv. 1696-7; and Vana-P. cxxi. 14229). From the second of these passages it appears that the northern *Deviká* was near Kashmir, and it may probably be identified with the modern river *Deeg*, a tributary of the Ravi on its right bank. The *Deviká*, which is mentioned in Vana-P. lxxxii. 5044-9, seems to be a lake, and may be the same as *Deviká Sundariká hrada* in Anuśás.-P. xxv. 707-8.

§ I do not find any river of this name mentioned elsewhere. The *Váyu Purāṇa* reads *Ikshu* (xlv. 96), and this occurs in the M-Bh. (Bhishma-P. ix. 324); but I have found no data to identify it. Probably, however, we should read *Vakshu* or *Vankshu*, which is the Oxus.

|| This is not in the dictionary. The *Váyu Purāṇa* gives the same name (xlv. 96), and the *Varáha* reads *Nisv'rá* (lxxxv); while other readings are *Niśc'itá*, *Nirv'rá*, and *Mic'itá*. The *Niśc'itá* and two other rivers, the *Nic'itá* and *Niv'rá*, are mentioned in the Bhishma-Parva list (ix. 326, 328), and the *Nirv'rá* in M-Bh., Vana-P. lxxxiv. 8116-9, but there appears to be nothing to identify them beyond that the *Nirv'rá* is connected with the *Kauśikí* (see note \*\* below) in the last passage and its context.

¶ The R. Gandak, which flows into the Ganges on its north bank near Patna. It has shifted its course considerably; and formerly it flowed east of its present course, through the middle of the districts of Champaran, Muzaffarpur and Darbhanga.

\*\* Or, generally, *Kauśikí*; the modern R. Kosi, which flows into the Ganges on its north bank, through the district of Purnea. It has shifted its course very remarkably. Formerly it flowed east of its present position.

†† Or, as the text may be read, "and the Apagá flow," &c. There is a river

- 1 which flow from the slopes of Hima-vat, O bráhmaṇ.
- 19 The Veda-smṛiti,\* Veda-vatí, †  
Vritra-ghní, ‡ and Sindhu, §

called the *Apagá* in Kuru-kshetra (M-Bh. Vana-P. lxxxiii, 6038-40; Cunningham's Arch. Surv. Repts., XIV. 88, and plate xxvi). The Kúrma Purāṇa reads *Lohint' c'eti* instead (xlvii. 28); and the Váyu (xlv. 96) and Varáha Purāṇas (lxxxv) mention the *Lohita*. The *Lohita* is the Brahma-putra, which till last century flowed round the south side of the Garo Hills, and then southward through the districts of Maimansingh and Daoca. *Lohint'*, though fem., no doubt means the same. The Váyu Purāṇa reads *Kaufikí c'a tritítá tu* instead (xlv. 96), which may mean the "third *Kaufikí*," for there seem to be three rivers of this name (see M-Bh., Vana-P. cxxi. 14231); or may refer to a river *Tritítá* which is mentioned in the M-Bh. (Sabhá-P. ix. 373); but I would suggest as preferable, *Kaufikí Karatoyá tu*, or *Kaufikí c'a tri-srotás tu*. The *Karatoyá* is the modern Kuratee in the Bogra District in North Bengal; and *Tri-srotas* or *Triḥ-srotast* (see M-Bh., Sabhá-P., ix. 375) is, I believe, the ancient name of the modern Teesta, which is east of that; both now flow into the Brahmaputra; but the first formerly flowed into the delta, before the Ganges and Brahmaputra shifted their courses. (Cunningham, Arch. Surv. Repts., XV. 127 and 131, and plates i. and xxxiii. The Varáha Purāṇa adds the *C'akshush-matí* (lxxxv), an unknown name.

\* Or *Veda-smṛitá*. Both names are mentioned in the M-Bh., the former in Anuśás-P. clxv. 7651, and the latter in Bhishma-P. ix. 324; and the *Veda-smṛiti* is also mentioned in the Bhágavata-P. (V. xix. 17); but I have found nothing to identify it.

† Or *Vedasintí*, or *Vetasintí*. I have not met with these two names elsewhere; the *Veda-vatí* is mentioned in the M-Bh., (Bhishma-P. ix. 324; Anuśás-P. clxv. 7651), but there appears to be nothing to identify it.

‡ Or *Vrata-ghní*, as the Kúrma Purāṇa reads (xlvii. 28). I have not met with either name elsewhere, and the river is not known apparently.

§ This is most probably the modern *Kali Sindh*, a tributary of the R. Chambal, though it may also be the *Sindh*, which is a tributary of the Jumna, between the Chambal and Betwa. The former is the more probable, because it is a large river and rises well up in the Páripátra range, and suits the following incident better. This *Sindhu* was a river of much note, and on it was a great tirtha, where Agastya met Lopá-mudrá, daughter of the King of Vidarbha, and she chose him for her husband (M-Bh., Vana-P. xcvi, xcvi; and cxxx. 10541). The name of this tirtha may have been *Sindhúttama*, (id. lxxxii, 4082-4095; and Anuśás-P. clxv. 7650); but if so, it must be distinguished from the great tirtha *Sindhúttama*, which was on the Indus (Vana-P. lxxxii. 5021).

Veṇvā,\* and Anandini† also, Sadá-nirá,‡ and Mahí,§

\* This name is not in the dictionary, but it occurs several times, and is a variation of *Veṇá*. There is a river of this name in the Dekhan (see verse 24, note to *Veṇyá*), and one in Western India (see verse 26, note to *Veṇyá*), but I have not met with any river of this name in North India. Both the *Váyu* (xlv. 97), and the *Kúrma* (xlvii. 29) *Puráṇas* read *Varṇásá* instead; the *Varáha* reads *Parṇá* instead (lxxxv), and the *Kúrma* offers *Parṇá* and *Parṇásá* in a note, (*loc. cit.*) The *Varṇásá* or *Parṇásá* is the modern *Bandá*, and there are two rivers of this name; one a tributary of the Chambal, rising near Udaypur (Cunningham, Arch. Surv. Repts., VI., plate i.), and the other, a stream rising near Mt. Ábu and flowing into the Rann of Kachh; the former is the larger, and is probably the river meant in the text. Cunningham writes the name *Parṇásá* (*id.* VI 157) and *Parṇa-násá* (*id.* XV. 132), but the latter form seems doubtful. Deváṛidha is said to have married one of these rivers (Hari V. xxxviii. 1999, and 2004-10), probably the second.

† Or, *Sánandini*. The *Váyu* (xlv. 97) and *Kúrma* (xlvii. 29) *Puráṇas* read *C'andaná* instead, and the latter proposes *Bandhaná* and *Sábandhaná* in a note. The *Varáha* reads *C'andanábhá náśádác'úra* (lxxxv.) for this and the next river, but not very intelligibly. None of these names appear to be identified.

‡ The river "that is always filled with water." The inclusion of this name among the rivers that rise in the Páripátra Mountains is strange yet the *Kúrma Puráṇa* places it in the same group (xlvii. 29, note). I have met with no river *Sadá-nirá* except that in North India. A river *Sadá-nirá-mayá* is mentioned in *Bhíshma-P* ix. 340, but there is nothing to identify it. The *Váyu Puráṇa* reads *Satírá* and *Sadátírá* instead (xlv. 97), but I have not found these names elsewhere.

A few remarks may be offered about the *Sadá-nirá* in North India. *Sá-yana* says it is the *Karatoyá*, the modern *Kuratte* (see verse 18, note††), but it is stated in the *Sata-patha Bráhmaṇa* (I iv. 1), that the *Sadá-nirá* was the boundary between *Kosala* and *Videha*. It is therefore identified with the *R. Gandak* by Dr. Eggeling (*loc. cit.*, note) and Muir (*Sansk. Texts*, II. 419-422). But the old stream of the *Gandak* flowed through the districts of *Champaran*, *Muzaffarpur* and *Darbhanga*, i. e., through the middle of the *Videha* country; and the *Gaṇḍakí* and *Sadá-nirá* are mentioned as distinct rivers in *M-Bh.*, *Sabhá-P* xix, 794. The *Sadá-nirá* can hardly, therefore, be the same as the *Gandak*, and is more probably the modern *Rapti*, a tributary of the *Sarayú*, and the midway position of the *Rapti* eminently satisfies the position of a boundary.

The *R. Mahí*, which rises in *Malwa* and falls into the *Bay of Cambay*. The *Váyu Puráṇa* has a variant, *Mahatí* (xlv. 97), and the *Varáha* reads *Rohí*

20 *Pará*, \* *C'arman-vatí*, † *Núpí*, ‡ *Vidiśá*, § and *Vetra-vatí*, ||  
*Síprá*, ¶ and *Avarṇí* \*\* also are known †† as those connected  
 with the *Páripáttra* mountains.

21 The *Sōṇa*, ‡‡ and *Mahá-nada*, §§

(lxxxv.); both seem incorrect. The *Mahitá* mentioned in M-Bh., Bhishma-P. ix. 328, appears to be this river.

\* Or *Pará*, according to the *Váyu Purāṇa* (xlv. 98). This is said to be the modern R. *Parbatí*, which rises in Bhopal and falls into the *Chambal* (Cunningham, Arch. Surv. Repts., II 308 and Rennell's Atlas of 1781).

† For *C'arman-vatí*, read *C'arman-vatí*. The R. *Chambal*, the largest tributary of the *Jumna*.

‡ This is not in the dictionary. The *Kúrma Purāṇa* mentions the *Surá* and the *Sáryá* (xlvii. 29), but I have found no other mention of them, and they do not appear to be known.

§ This must, no doubt, be connected with the town *Vidiśá*, which was on the R. *Vetra-vatí* (Megha D. i. 25) the modern R. *Betwa* (see next note). *Vidiśá* appears to be the modern town *Bhilsa*. The R. *Vidiśá* therefore was probably the small tributary which joins the *Betwa* on its left bank at *Bhilsa*.

|| The modern R. *Betwa*, which rises near Bhopal and flows into the *Jumna*. There was another river of this name in Western India (*Hari-V. clxviii*, 9514-6). The *Varáha Purāṇa* reads *Veda-trayí* wrongly (lxxxv).

¶ This is the river on which *Ujjayintí*, the modern *Ujjain*, stands (Megha D. i. 31, 32). Another *Síprá* is mentioned in verse 24.

\*\* This is not in the dictionary, and I have not found it elsewhere. The *Váyu Purāṇa* reads *Avantí* instead (xlv. 98), which is preferable, and would be the river of the *Avantí* country (see notes to verses 52 and 55, below). The R. *Avantí* therefore is probably the river which rises near *Mhow* and flows into the *Chambal*. The *Varáha Purāṇa* reads *Vapantí* (lxxxv.) erroneously.

†† For *smatáh*, read *smritáh*.

‡‡ The R. *Sone* which rises near the source of the *Narbada* and flows into the *Ganges* above *Patna*. It was also called *Hiranya-báhu* and *Hiranya-váha*; the Greek *Erannoboas*. For changes in its course, see Cuning. Arch. Surv. Repts., VIII. 4-24.

§§ Or, *Mahá-nadí*. It flows through *Orissa* into the *Bay of Bengal*. The main stream is now considered to be the river which rises near *Kanker*, but that cannot be the source meant in the text, for it would belong to quite a different water-shed. The *Mahá-nada* here must designate the branch now called the *Hasdu* or *Hestho*, which rises near the source of the *Sone* (Cunning. Arch. Surv. Repts., XVII. plate i.). The *Varáha Purāṇa* omits the *Mahá-nadi* altogether, and reads *Jyotí-rathá* instead (lxxxv). This river, which is also

Narmadá, \*      Su-rathá, †      Adri-já, ‡      Mandákiní, §  
 and      Daśárṇá, ||      and      C'itra-kúṭá ¶      also,  
 22 C'itrotpalá, \*\*      and      Tamasá, ††      Karamodá, †‡

called *Jyoti-rathyá* (M-Bh., Vana-P. lxxxv. 8150) and *Jyoti-rathá* (Hari-V. clxviii 9510-12) is said to be a tributary of the S'ona in the former passage, and is placed in the Dekhan in the latter. It is, therefore, probably the modern *Johila*, the southern of the two sources of the R. Sone.

\* The modern Narbada or Nerbudda, which rises near the Sone and flows into the Gulf of Cambay.

† This is not in the dictionary, and I have not met the name elsewhere; it is a synonym of *Jyoti-rathá*? (See last page, note §§). The *Kúrma Puráṇa* mentions the *Su-rasá* (xlvi. 30), and so also the *Varáha* (lxxxv); instead of this and the next river the *Váyu Puráṇa* reads *Su-mahá-drumá* or, *Surahádrumá* (xlv. 99); but I have not met with any of these names elsewhere, except *Su-rasá* in the *Bhágavata-P.* (V. xix. 17)

‡ This is not in the dictionary, but is mentioned in M-Bh., *Annás-P.* clxv. 7648. I have found nothing to identify it.

§ The R. Mandakin, which flows near Mt. Chitrakut into the R. Paisuni, a tributary of the Jumna between the Ken and the Tons (Cunning., Arch. Surv. Repts., XXI. 11). Mr. Beglar's proposal to identify it with the R. Reur, a southern tributary of the Sone (*Ibid.* XIII. 42-54) depends upon his identification of Mt. C'itra-kúṭa with Ramgarh hill in Chhattisgarh, and is untenable (see Journal, R. A. S., April, 1894, page 240). The river Reur, or Rer, is also called Arand, and all these forms appear to point to *Eraṇḍá* as the original name.

|| The river of the country Daśárṇa, the modern R. Dasán, between the Betwa and the Ken.

¶ This is not in the dictionary. It is no doubt to be connected with Mt. C'itra-kúṭa, the modern Chitrakut (see Journal, R. A. S. April, 1894, page 239), and is probably the stream which flows round the south and east of the modern Mt. Chitrakut, past Karwi into the Jumna.

\*\* This is not in the dictionary, but a *C'itrotpalá* is mentioned in M-Bh., *Bhishma-P.* ix. 341. Cunningham says C'itrotpalá is the name of the modern main-stream of the Mahá-nadí below its junction with the Pairi (Arch. Surv. Repts., VII. 155, and XVII. 70); but that river as mentioned already (page 295, note §§) would belong to a different water-shed.

†† Or *Támasí*, as the *Kúrma Puráṇa* reads (xlvi. 30). It is the R. Tons which flows into the Ganges on the right bank below Allahabad.

‡‡ This is not in the dictionary, and I have not found the name elsewhere. The *Váyu Puráṇa* (xlv. 100) and the *Varáha* (lxxxv.) read *Karatoyá* instead. Should we read *Karma-nodá*, as a synonym of *Karma-nádá*? The river

Písác'iká,\* and Pippali-śroṇi † also, Vi-pásá, ‡  
 23 the river Vañjulá, § Sumerujá, || Śukti-matī, ¶

meant is no doubt the modern Karamnasa, which flows into the Ganges on the right bank just above the Sone.

\* I have not met with this river elsewhere. Písác'a was a name given to various races, chiefly barbarous hill tribes (Muir, Sansk. Texts, II. 59). In this place it would, no doubt, mean the tribes inhabiting Rewah and Chuta Nagpore, and the Písác'iká is probably one of the southern tributaries of the Sone, such as the Ber (see page 296, note §), or Kanhar.

† Or *Pippyalá śroṇi*, as the Váyu Purāṇa reads (xlv. 100); or *Pippalá*, as the Varáha reads (lxxxv). I have not found any data to identify it, but have seen the name assigned to the modern river *Paisuni* or *Parsaroni*, a tributary of the Jumna between the Ken and the Tons (Arch. Surv. Repts., XXI. 11), and these words may well be corruptions of *Pippali-śroṇi*.

‡ This appears to be the river mentioned in M.-Bh., Anuśás-P. xxv. 1793 and perhaps 1710-11 also. It is probably the modern Bias which flows past Saugor and joins the R. Ken, a tributary on the right bank of the Jumna. (Cunning., Arch. Surv. Repts., XXI. 157, and plate xxxiv). The Ken or Kiyán, an important stream, does not appear to be mentioned; it is said to be a corruption of *Karṇa-vatī* (*Ibid.* 156; and II. 446), though Lassen gives *Káyana* as its ancient form (Ind. Alt., Map). Was *Vi-pásá* the ancient name of this whole river? The *Vi-pásá* in the Panjab is mentioned in verse 18. The Varáha Purāṇa reads *Vísálá* (lxxxv), and the Kúrma mentions this name as a variant (xlvii. 31). There are several rivers of this name, and the river here meant is no doubt the *Saras-vatī Vísálá* at Gaya (M.-Bh., S'alya-P. xxxix. 2188-9, and 2205-6), probably the modern Lilajan which flows past Bodh Gaya.

§ I have not found this name elsewhere. The Varáha Purāṇa reads *Vañjuká* (lxxxv), the Kúrma *Mañjulá* (xlvii. 31), and the Váyu *Jambulá* (xlv. 100). Of these names I have met only with *Mañjulá* elsewhere (M.-Bh., Bhishma-P. ix. 311), but with no data to identify it. The river meant is probably that on which Gaya stands; its eastern source is called the *Mohana*, its middle portion the *Phalgu*, and the eastern branch, into which it divides, the *Jumna*.

|| The Váyu Purāṇa reads *Siterajá* (xlv. 101), and the Varáha *Virajá* (lxxxv). I have not met with any of these names elsewhere, but the M.-Bh. mentions three rivers *Virá* (Bhishma-P., ix. 329), *Vira-vatī* (*ibid.*, 332) and *Virankarā* (*ibid.*, 333), which are all distinct. The Matsya Purāṇa reads two names instead, the *Suní* and *Lajjá* (oxiii. 26), probably erroneous.

¶ This river has been much written about but does not seem to be identified safely yet. See p. 285, note †; and also Cunning., Arch. Surv. Repts.,



Sakulí,\* Tridivá in regular order,† Vega-váhini‡ also § flow from the slopes of the Vindhya|| Mountains.

IX. 55. It is mentioned in the Hari-Vaṛṇsa (clxviii. 9509-13) and is said there to be in the Dekhan; it seems to be meant by the name *Mukti-matí* in M.-Bh., Bhishma-P. ix. 342; and perhaps it is referred to in Hari-V. xxxvii. 1980-7. These passages, however, may allude to two rivers of this name. It was the river on which stood Sukti-matí, the capital of C'edi; see note to C'edi in canto lviii, verse 16.

\* The Váyu Purāṇa reads *Makruṇá* or *Makshaṇá* (xlv. 101), and the Varāha Pankiní (lxxxv), but I have not met with any of these names elsewhere. The Sakulí, however, may probably be identified with the R. Sakri, which flows into the Ganges on the south, about half-way between Patna and Monghyr (Cunning., Arch. Surv. Repts., VIII. plate i; and XV. plate iv). There is also another Sakri which is a tributary of the R. Seonath, a tributary of the Mahánadí (*id.* XVII. plate i), but that rises rather in the Riksha Mts. The Bhishma-P. list mentions a river called *Makarí* (ix. 331); and the Matsya Purāṇa reads *Mukuṇá* instead (cxiii. 26).

† The text *Tridivá-kramu* seems wrong, and I have adopted the reading of the Váyu Purāṇa *Tridivá kramát*, which is preferable. The word *kramát*, if right, would indicate that the rivers are mentioned in regular order from west to east. The Tridivá is also mentioned in the M.-Bh., (Bhishma-P. ix. 324; and Anuśás.-P. clxv. 7654), but no data are given to identify it. It may be noticed there is a river called the *Krumu* (Rig.-V, X. 75.6), which is probably the modern R. Kuram, a tributary of the Indus, south of the Kabul R. (Muir's Sansk. Texts, II. 357); but it cannot be intended here. Another Tridivá is mentioned in verse 28.

‡ This is not in the dictionary, but it occurs in M.-Bh., Sabhā-P. ix. 371. The Váyu (xlv. 100) and Varāha (lxxxv) and Kúrma Purāṇas (xlvii. 31) read *Bálu-váhini* instead, and the last gives *Ratna-váhini* as a variant. I have not met with either of these names elsewhere.

§ The Varāha Purāṇa adds another river *Rátrí* (lxxxv), but I have not met with it elsewhere.

|| The text reads *Skandha*, which is clearly wrong. The Váyu (xlv. 101) Kúrma (xlvii. 31) and Varāha Purāṇas (lxxxv) read *Riksha*. There is certainly some confusion in this group of rivers, for the Mandākiní, Daśárṇá, and Tamasá rise in the Vindhya watershed, while the Soṇa, Mahá-nada, and Narmadá rise rather in the Riksha Mts; but the rivers mentioned in verse 24 rise in the Riksha Mts, so that the proper reading here should no doubt be *Vindhya*. The Agni Purāṇa says the Narmadá rises in the Vindhya Mts. (cxviii. 7); so that perhaps this river and also the Sone and the Hasdu branch of the Mahánadí, which all rise close together near Amara-kaptaka,

## 24 The Siprá, \* Payoshní, † Nir-bindhyá, ‡ Tápí, § and

may have been considered to belong to the Vindhya watershed. There seems to have been some vagueness in this matter, for the Utkalas and (Dakshipa) Kosalas are classed among the races who inhabited the Vindhya Mts. in verses 53 and 54.

\* One Siprá has been mentioned already in verse 20, and the Hari-Vaṁśa says there is a Siprá in the southern region (clxviii. 9509). The Váyu Purāṇa reads *Madrá* instead (xlv. 102); and the Kúrma (xlvi. 32) and Varāha (lxxxv) *Śighroddá*. I have not found either of these names elsewhere, but a river *Śighrá* is mentioned (M.-Bh., Bhishma-P. ix. 336) and another called *Sivá* (*ibid.*, 332). The Matsya Purāṇa reads *Kṣhiprá* (cxiii. 27).

† The Payoshní was in the southern region (M.-Bh., Vana-P. lxxxviii. 8329-35); it was the river of Vidarbha (*ibid.* cx. 10289-90), and was separated from the Narmadā by the Vaidúrya Mts. (*ibid.* cxxi. 10306-7). It was the modern river Purna (the tributary of the Tapti) together with the lower part of the Tapti into which the Purna continues. A careful consideration of King Nala's remarks (*ibid.* lxi. 2317-9) with a map will show that the view described could only have been obtained from a position on the Satpura Mts. about longitude 75°; hence the Payoshní visible from there could be only the lower part of the Tapti. Such was considered the main stream in old times, and it was a famous and sacred river. Gen. Cunningham's proposal to identify the Payoshní with the Pahoj, a tributary of the Jumna between the Sindh and Betwa, (Arch. Surv. Reports, VII. plate xxii.) is untenable as regards this famous river; but there were two rivers of this name (M.-Bh., Bhishma-P. ix. 324 and 327), and the Pahoj may be the other Payoshní. The Varāha Purāṇa reads *Payollá* (lxxxv), which seems a mistake.

‡ Or *Nir-vindhyá*; or according to the Váyu Purāṇa, *Nir-bandhyá* (xlv. 102). One river *Nir-vindhyá* is mentioned in the Megha-D. (I. 28 and 29, commentary) as lying between the R. Vetravatí (or Betwa) and Ujjayiní (Ujjain), and (if the Pará is rightly identified with the modern Parbati, see note to verse 20) must be the modern Parwan which is west of the Parbati; but that river rises in the Vindhya Range according to the Megha-Dúta, and belongs to the Páripátra watershed according to verses 19 and 20 above; on either view it is out of place here. There was, however, another large river of this name in the Dekhan, for it is mentioned along with the Payoshní, the Tápí and the Godávarí and its tributaries in the Bhágavata-Purāṇa (V. xix. 17), and judged by its position there, it may be the Pen-ganga a tributary of the Warda.

§ See note to Payoshní above. This is the upper part of the modern Tapti before it joins the Purna. This branch was hardly known in early times; it does not appear to be named in the Mahá-Bhárata or Rámáyana, nor

## Nishadhá-vatí,\* Venyá,† and Vaitarāṇi,‡ Siníbálí,§ Kumud-

is it mentioned in the copious list in the Bhíshma-P. (ix). The reason was, no doubt, it was hidden amid hills and forests.

\* Or *Nishadhá*, as the Váyu Purāṇa reads (xlv. 102). I have not met with this name elsewhere, but it naturally suggests a connexion with *Nishadha*, the realm of Nala. As regards *Nishadha*, see the note to verse 54 below. This river then may be one of the small tributaries of the Narmadá or Tapti, which rise in the middle part of the Satpura Range. The Kúrma Purāṇa reads *Mahánadī* instead (xlvii. 32), which may mean the *Mahánadí* in Chhattisgarh and Orissa, but is unsatisfactory, as it has mentioned that river before (*ibid.*, 30). The Matsya Purāṇa reads *Ṛishabhá* instead (cxiii. 27), which I have not met elsewhere.

† This form is not in the dictionary. The Váyu Purāṇa reads *Veṇvā* (xlv. 102); the Kúrma reads *Vinná* and gives *Venyá* and *C'intá* as variants (xlvii. 32). *C'intá* is no doubt an error. The other names are merely different forms of the same word. The river is called *Veṇvā* in the Hari-V. (clxviii. 9509-10) and also in the M.-Bh. (Sabhá-P. xxx. 1118), but in the latter poem it is generally called *Veṇá*, and this seems the proper term (Bhíshma-P. ix. 335; Anuśás-P. clxv. 7648; Vana-P. lxxxviii. 8328, clxxxix. 12909, and lxxxv. 8176-7; whether the same river is also meant in line 8175 is not clear). From the passage last cited it appears the *Veṇá* is the river which joins the Godávarí and Varadá (the modern Warda), that is, the modern Wain-ganga and its continuation the Pranrita. The Varáha Purāṇa reads *Veshṇápádá* (lxxxv) which seems a mistake. This river appears to be also called *Su-veṇá* (M.-Bh., Vana-P. clxxxix. 12909) in contra-distinction to the *Krishṇa-veṇá* (*ibid.*; and also *id.* Vana-P. lxxxv. 8180-1; Bhíshma-P. ix. 335, and Anuśás-P. clxv. 7648; and Hari-V. clxviii. 9509-11) which appears from the second passage to be a tributary of the *Veṇá*, and which I have proposed to identify with the western tributary rising near Deoghar and Seoni (Journal, R. A. S., 1894, p. 244). Another river of this name is mentioned in verse 26, and a *Veṇvā* in verse 19.

‡ This is no doubt the modern Bytarni, which flows through the north of Orissa; and if it is rightly classed here, the Riksha Range must include the hills which stretch along the south of Chuta Nagpore.

§ The Váyu Purāṇa reads *Sitibáhu* (xlv. 102), the Kúrma *Baláka* (xlvii. 32) and the Varáha *Vedipáda* (lxxxv). None of these rivers are mentioned in the dictionary, but the name *Sitibáhu* is given. I have not found any of these names elsewhere, except *Baláka* in M.-Bh., Anuśás-P. xxv. 1706-7, which may be a river, but appears from the context to be in Northern India. Perhaps the reading should be *Silávattí* or *Silávattí*, which seems to have been the ancient name of the modern river Selye; this after uniting with the Ráp-

25 vati,\* Karatoyá,† Mahá-gauri,‡ and Durgá,§ and Antaḥ-sirá ; ||

*narain* is the river on which *Tamluk*, the ancient *Támra-liptaka* (see verse 44 below), is situated; and which may well find mention here. Perhaps the name *Balákd* may be connected with the modern river *Barákar*, a tributary of the *Damudá*; these two combined form the largest river in Western Bengal, and flow close to *Tamluk*. *Tamluk* was a famous port, and it would be strange if the rivers near it were overlooked. The *M.-Bh.* mentions a river *Sata-bald* (*Bhishma-P.* ix. 328). The *Matsya Puráṇa* reads *Viśva-mald* instead (cxiii. 37). I have not met either name elsewhere.

\* I have not met with this name elsewhere. It may be the *Subarna-rekha* or one of the small rivers in the north of Orissa; or may we conjecture *Damud-vatí*, and identify it with the *R. Damudá* in West Bengal? See the last note.

† One river of this name in North Bengal has been mentioned in verse 18 notett; and there was another of the same name in the north of India (*M.-Bh.*, *Anuśás.-P.* xxv. 1699); neither can be meant here. I have not found any *Karatoyá* elsewhere, which rises in the *Riksha* range. The *Váyu Puráṇa* reads *Toyá* instead (xlv. 103), and so also the *Varáha* (lxxxv); but I have not found this name elsewhere. Perhaps the reading should be *Karabhdá'a*. *Karabhdá* or *Kapíśá* is the name of a river on the confines of *Utkala* and *Kalinga* (*Raghu-V.* iv. 38, commentary), but no details are given to identify it. The name *Kapíśá* suggests identification with the modern *Cossye* or *Kansai* (the chief river in the *Midnapur* district) which is said to be modified from *Kamsavatí*, but may well be a corruption of *Kapíśá-vatí*.

‡ This is also mentioned in *M.-Bh.*, *Bhishma-P.* ix. 341. It is no doubt a synonym of *Brahmání* and *Bráhmaṇí*, all being names of *Durgá*; it would then be the modern *R. Brahmani* in Orissa.

§ There are two rivers of this name mentioned in the *Bhishma-P.* list (ix. 337 and 341) in the *M.-Bh.*, and the second is that intended here, as it is placed with the *Maná-gaurí*; but I have not met with the name elsewhere. It may be a synonym of the small river *Bráhmaṇi* which flows through the *Moorshedabad* district into the right bank of the *Bhágirathí* branch of the *Ganges*.

|| This is not in the dictionary. The *Váyu* (xlv. 103) and *Kúrma* (xlvii. 33) *Puráṇas* read *Antaḥ-sirá*. The *Varáha* reads *Antydgirá* (lxxxv), which is no doubt an intended synonym. I have not met with any of these name (V. 2-) where, but *Antra-sirá* is mentioned (*M.-Bh.*, *Bhishma-P.* ix. 337). *Antaḥ-sy* seems to be the correct form; and if the name is descriptive, the river is probably one of the northern tributaries of the *Mahánadi*; all of which are encompassed with hills. See however a people called *Antar-giryas* in verse 24 below.

those rivers\* flow from the slopes of the Riksha† Mountains,  
have holy waters and are bright.

26 The Godávarí,‡ Bhíma-rathá,§ Kṛishná,|| and another¶

\* The Varáha Purāṇa mentions also *Mañjirdá Subhá* (lxxxv); I have not found the former name elsewhere; but the *Subhá* is mentioned in the Hari-Vaṁśa (clxviii. 9509-10), and a river *Maningá* is mentioned in the Bhishma-P. list (ix. 342). There are no data to identify them, except that the passage in the Hari-Vaṁśa places the Subhá in the Dekhan.

† The text reads *Bindhya* or *Vindhya*, and yet makes the next group of rivers also rise in the same range. The Váyu (xlv. 103) and Kúrma (xlvii. 33) and Varáha (lxxxv) Purāṇas read the same; but the proper reading must be *Riksha* as the Vishṇu Purāṇa says (Bk. II. Chap. iii), for the Tápi, Venyá and Vaitaraṇí certainly do not rise in the former mountains but in the latter. The Agni Purāṇa wrongly groups the Tápi and Payoshṇí with the Godavari and other rivers as rising in the Sahya Mts.

‡ The modern Godaverí. This river was famous from the earliest times. Jana-sthána, the scene of Ráma's first conflict with the Rákshasas was the country on both its banks between its tributaries the Manjira and Pranhita (see Journal, R. A. S., 1894, p. 247).

§ Or *Bhíma-rathá* as the Váyu (xlv. 104) and Varáha (lxxxv) Purāṇas read: *Bhíma-rakshá* which the Kúrma gives (xlvii. 34) seems incorrect. The former is the name as given in the M.-Bh. (Vana-P. lxxxviii. 8328; Bhishma-P. ix. 327; and Anuśás.-P. clxv. 7653). This is the modern Bhima, the tributary of the Kṛishná, rising near Poṇa. The Varáha Purāṇa adds immediately *Marathá* (lxxxv); is it a mistaken repetition of the last three syllables of the preceding river? I have found no such river.

|| The modern Kistna. This river received very little notice in ancient times, and was almost unknown compared with the Godávarí and Káverí. Besides its inclusion in the Bhishma-P. list (ix. 340), it is doubtful if it is so mentioned in the M.-Bh., or Rámáyana. It is omitted from the lengthy account of Sahadeva's conquests in the south (Sabhá-P. xxx), and the detailed pilgrimage itineraries (Vana-P., Tirtha-yátrá-P.) and other geographical discourses. It does not occur in the story of Raghu's conquests even in the late poem, the Raghu-Vaṁśa. The reason seems to be that the country through which it flows was nearly all forest in ancient times.

¶ For *tátháśatá* of the text the Váyu Purāṇa reads *c'a vañjuld* (xlv. 104) and the Kúrma *c'a vañyatá* or *c'a vatsarí* (xlvii. 34). I have not found these names elsewhere. Perhaps we should read some name like *Mañjirdá*, as the large southern tributary of the Godávarí is now called, though its earliest name was apparently *Mandakíní* (Rámáy., Yuddha K. cx. 38, 39; Journal, R. A. S., 1894, p. 250).

Venṇá,\* Tunga-bhadrá,† Suprayogá,‡ Váhyá,§ and the  
 27 river Káverí; || these noble rivers¶ issue from the slopes  
 of the Sahya\*\* Mountains.

The Kṛita-málá,†† Támra-parṇí,‡‡ Pushpa-

\* This form is not in the dictionary. The Varáha Purāṇa reads *Veṇḍ* (lxxxv); the Kúrma *Veṇḍ* or *Varṇḍ* (xlvii. 34); and the Váyu *Vaiṇḍ* (xlv. 104)—all mere variations, the proper name no doubt being *Veṇḍ*. This is the third river of this name mentioned here, see verses 19 and 24. It is probably the same as the *Vīṇḍ* in the Bhíshma-P. list (ix. 328), and the *Veṇḍ* in the Bhágavata Purāṇa (V. xix. 17). Is it to be identified with the R. Penner which is between the Kistna and Kaveri; though the Sanskrit name of the Penner is said to be *Pináká* (Arch. Surv. of S. India, by R. Sewell, I. 123 and 129)?

† The modern Tumbhundra, the large southern tributary of the Kistna, consisting of the combined streams of the Tunga and Bhadra.

‡ This is not in the dictionary, but it is also mentioned in the Bhíshma-P. list (ix. 328) and in the Vana-P. (ccxxi. 14232), and was a large and known river. Though not apparently identified, it is probably one of the large western tributaries of the Kistna.

§ This is not in the dictionary, but the Varáha Purāṇa agrees (lxxxv) and the Matsya (cxiii. 29). I have not found the name elsewhere and it does not appear to be identified. The Agni P. reads *Váraddá* (cix. 22), the large southern tributary of the Kistna called Varada or Vedavati.

|| The modern Caverry or Coleroon in south India. It was better known than the Kistna in ancient times. It is mentioned in the M.-Bh., (Vana-P. lxxxv. 8164-5; clxxxix. 12910; and Bhíshma-P. ix. 328) and Rámáy. (Kishk. K. xli. 21 and 25). King Jahnu is said in the Hari-Vaṁśa to have married this river, and made the Ganges his daughter (xxvii. 1416-22; and xxxii. 1757-61).

¶ The Matsya (cxiii. 29) and Varáha (lxxxv) Purāṇas add the *Vaiṇḍ*; as to which see verse 26 note ¶.

\*\* The text reads *Bindhya* or *Vindhya* here, after having read it already in verse 25; and offers *Sahya* as a variant in a note. The latter is manifestly the proper reading, and agrees with the Kúrma (xlvii. 34) and Váyu (xlv. 104) Purāṇas.

†† This is not in the dictionary. The Agni Purāṇa agrees with it (cxviii. 8); the Kúrma reads *Ritu-málá* (xlvii. 35), the Varáha *S'ata-málá* (lxxxv), and the Bhágavata *Kata-málá* (V. xix. 17). Is it to be identified with the *Vedá-mali* which flows out north of Cochin? The people of *Kac'c'hu* or Cochin are mentioned in canto lviii. verse 28.

‡‡ This is mentioned as a place of pilgrimage in the M.-Bh. (Vana-P.

28 já,\* Sútpalá-vatí;† these are rivers‡ which rise in the Malaya Mountains, and have cool water.

And the Pitṛi-somá, § and Ṛishi-kulyá, || Ikshuká, ¶ and

lxxxviii. 8340), and the Raghu-V. says (iv. 49 and 50), that the vanquished Páṇḍya kings gave Raghu the choicest pearls from the sea at the mouth of the R. Tāmra-parṇī, where (the commentator adds, it is well-known) pearls were produced. This river then was in the Páṇḍya country and flowed into the G. of Manaar. It is the modern Chittar, the river of Tinnevely (Arch. Surv. of S. India, by R. Sewell, I. 303).

\* The Váyu Puráṇa reads *Pushpa-játi* (xlv. 105), the Kúrma *Pushpa-vatí* (xlvii. 35), and the Varáha *Pushpá-vatí* (lxxxv). I do not find any of these names elsewhere. A tirtha *Pushpa-vatí* is mentioned (M.-Bh., Vana-P. lxxxv. 8154-5), but it was situated between Dakṣhiṇa Kosala (Chhattisgarh) and C'ampá (Bhazalpur). A river *Pushpa-veṇí* is mentioned (*id.*, Bhīshma-P. ix. 342), which is joined with a river *Utpalá-vatí* and therefore is probably the same as the river in the text. A *Pushpa-váhiní* is mentioned as situated in the south in the Hari-Vaṁśa (clxviii. 9510-2).

† This is the same as the *Utpalá-vatí* mentioned in the last note (M.-Bh. Bhīshma-P. ix. 342) and the *Utpalá* (Hari-V., clxviii. 9510-2); and the Váyu (xlv. 105) and Kúrma (xlvii. 35), Matsya (cxiii. 30) and Varáha (lxxxv) Puráṇas read *Utpalá-vatí*.

‡ There are only six noteworthy rivers rising in the Malaya Mts., viz., the Vaigai, Vaippar and Chittar on the east, the Amaravati (a tributary of the Kaveri) on the north, and the Ponani and Peri or Veda-mali on the west. The Chittar is the Tāmra-parṇī, hence the three others named in the text must be found among the five remaining modern rivers.

§ Not in the dictionary. The Váyu Puráṇa reads *Tri-sámd* (xlv. 106), and the Agni P. also (cxviii. 8); while the Varáha reads *Tri-yámd* (lxxxv). I have met only with the *Tri-sámd* elsewhere (Bhāgavata Puráṇa, V. xix. 17). It is probably one of the small rivers on the Eastern coast, for the interior behind these mountains was not well known. The Matsya Puráṇa reads *Tri-bhāgd* (cxiii. 31) which I have not met elsewhere.

|| This is the river on which Ganjam stands, and it bears the same name still. It is mentioned in the Bhīshma-P. list (ix. 343). The Váyu Puráṇa reads *Ṛiṣi-kulyá* (xlv. 106), by mistake. Another *Ṛishi-kulyá* is mentioned in verse 23

¶ This is not in the dictionary. The Váyu (xlv. 106) and Varáha Puráṇas (lxxxv) read *Ikshuká*; and *Ikshudá* which the Matsya Puráṇa reads (cxiii. 31) is a variant. I have not found any of these names elsewhere, but the R. *Ikshu* is mentioned (M.-Bh., Bhīshma-P. ix. 324). It is probably one of the small streams on the Eastern coast.

29 Tridivá,\* Lángulini,† and Vamśa-kará‡ are known to spring from the Mahendra § Mountains.

The Rishi-kulýá,|| and Kumári,¶ Manda-gá,\*\* Manda-

\* This is the second *Tridivá*, see verse 23; but I have not found two rivers of this name mentioned anywhere else. Instead of *Tridivá c'a yá* as in the text, the *Matsya Purāṇa* reads *Tridivá c'ald* (cxiii. 31).

† This is the modern *Languliya*, on which Chicacole stands, between Vizianagram and Calingapatam. The *Varāha Purāṇa* reads *Múlini* or *Lámúlini* (lxxxv) and the *Matsya Múli* (cxiii. 31); I have not found these names elsewhere and they seem incorrect. The *Lángali* mentioned in the *M.-Bh.* (*Sabbá-P.* ix 374), is probably this river.

‡ The *Varāha Purāṇa* reads *Vamśa-vard* (lxxxv), and the *Váyu Vamśa-dhárđ* (xlv. 106); the latter is the correct name. It is the modern *Bans-dhárđ*, the river on which Calingapatam stands.

§ The *Kúrma Purāṇa* omits this group of rivers altogether, and puts three of them *Tri-sámd*, *Rishiká* and *Vamśa-dháriṇi* into the next group (xlvii. 36). The *Matsya Purāṇa* mentions three more rivers, the *Támraparśi*, *Saravá* and *Vimalá* (cxiii. 31), but all these seem doubtful. A *Támraparśi* has been mentioned in verse 28. A *Saravati* is named in the *Bhishma-P.* list (ix. 327), and a *Vimalá* or *Vimalodđ* in various passages (*e. g.* *Salya-P.* xxxix. 2214-5; *Hari-V.*, clxviii. 9517-8); but they are in Northern and Western India.

In note †† on page 284, the Mahendra mountains are said to be "the portion of the Eastern Ghats between the Godavari and Mahanadi rivers and the hills in the south of Berar," but this proposition must be modified on a full consideration of all the foregoing identifications. Gondwana as used by Wilson was applied to a very wide tract in Central India. The Mahendra Mts. cannot extend as far west as Berar nor beyond the Wain-ganga; and must be limited to the hills between the Mahanadi, Godavari and Wain-ganga, and may perhaps comprise only the portion of the Eastern Ghats north of the Godavari. It is in this last tract only that the name has survived. See *Raghu Vamśa*, iv. 43.

|| This is the second *Rishi-kulýá*, see verse 28. The *Váyu Purāṇa* reads *Rishiká* (xlv. 107), and the *Varāha Rishiká* (lxxxv), and the *Matsya Káfiká* (cxiii. 32). I have not met with these names elsewhere.

¶ The *Váyu Purāṇa* reads *Su-kumári* (xlv. 107), and the *Varāha Lúsatí* I have not found these names elsewhere, but the *Kumári* is mentioned in the *Bhishma-P.* list (ix. 313).

\*\* This is mentioned in the *Bhishma-P.* list (ix. 340). The *Varāha Purāṇa* reads *Manda-gámini* (lxxxv); and for this and the next river the *Kúrma* reads *Gandha-mádana-gámini* (xlvii. 36), which is probably erroneous.



30 váhiní,\* Kṛipá,† and Palásinī‡ are known to spring in the  
Sukti-mat § Mountains.

All the rivers || possess holy merit; all are rivers flowing  
31 into the ocean; all are mothers of the world; ¶ they are  
well-known to cleanse from all sin

\* This is mentioned in the Bhīshma-P. list (ix. 340), but hardly in the same connexion.

† The Vāyu Purāṇa reads *Kūpā* (xlv. 107), and the Kūrma *Kshiprā* or *Rūpā* (xlvii. 36). I do not find any of these names elsewhere. A river *Kṛityā* is mentioned in the Bhīshma-P. list (ix. 326), but that appears from its context to be in north India.

‡ This is mentioned in the Bhīshma-P. list (ix. 330), but in so different a connexion that the references appear to be to two separate rivers. The Matsya Purāṇa reads *Pāsinī* (cxiii. 32), which however I have not met elsewhere.

§ These Mts. are but very rarely mentioned, and in page 285 note † I have noticed what has been written about them. They were in the Eastern region, for Bhīma in his conquests in that quarter marched from Hima-vat towards Bhallāta and conquered the Sukti-mat Mountain (M.-Bh., Sabhā-P. xxix. 1079). Though Bhallāta does not appear to have been identified, the only noteworthy hills in the east which have not been assigned to the other great ranges are the Garo, Khāsi and Tipperah Hills which bound Bengal in that direction. Can these be the Sukti-mat Mts.? There seems to be no improbability in this, for the river Lohita or Brahma-putra and the country Kāma-rūpa, which is in the Assam Valley, were known. If this identification is satisfactory, the R. *Kumārī* may be the modern *Someshwarī* which flows southward between the Garo and Khasi Hills (both being names of Durgā); and the *Kṛipā* may perhaps be the *Kapilī* which flows into the Brahma-putra a little above Gauhati, the ancient Kāma-rūpa; the other streams are not recognizable.

|| Saras-vatyaḥ. Or should this mean only the rivers called *Saras-vatī*? There were seven rivers specially distinguished by this name (M.-Bh., Salya-P. xxxix. 2188-9), namely, 1. the *Su-prabhā* among the Pushkaras (*ibid.* 2198-2200), that is, near Ajmir; 2. the *Kāñc'andakshī* in Naimisha forest (*ibid.* 2201-4), which was on the Co-matī; 3. the *Viśālā* at Gaya (*ibid.* 2205-6); 4. the *Mano-ramā*, the swift stream flowing from Himavat in the north part of Kosala (*ibid.* 2207-10); 5. the *Ogha-vatī*, which seems to be in Kuru-kshetra (*ibid.* 2212-3); 6. the *Su-reṇu*, which seems to be in Kuru-kshetra or near Gangā-dvāra (*ibid.* 2211-4); and 7. the *Vimalodā* or *Vimalodakī* at Haimanta-giri (*ibid.* 2214-5).

¶ Visvasya mātaraḥ; compare M.-Bh., Bhīshma-P. ix. 344.

And others, small streams, are mentioned in thousands,  
 32 O bráhmaṇ, those which flow only during the rainy season, and  
 those which flow at all seasons.

The Matsyas,\* and Áśvakúṭas,† and Kulyas,‡

\* The people and their country both went by the name *Matsya*. This country was part of the region called Brahmarshi (Manu ii. 19). It was south or south-west of Indra-prastha, the modern Delhi (M-Bh., Sabhā P., xxx. 1105-6; the mention in *ibid.* xxix. 1083 may be a mistake; but the Matsyas are named twice in the Bhīshma-P. list, ix. 347 and 348, unless one name be a mistake for Vatsa); and it was west of Sūrasena, which was the country round Mathurā, the modern Muttra (Virāṭa-P., v. 141-5; see note in canto lviii. verse 7): hence Matsya comprised the modern Alwar State and the land around that. It appears to have extended up to Kuru-kshetra, because no other country which could intervene is mentioned in Manu ii. 19. Its capital was Upaplavya or Upaplava (Salya-P., xxxvi. 1973-6) which was 1½ or 2 days' journey by chariot from Hāstinapura (Udyoga-P., lxxxiii. 3010-17; lxxxv. 3040; and lxxxviii. 3101). Cunningham says *Matsya* was the country west of Agra and north of the R. Chambal, i. e., the whole of Alwar with portions of Jaypur and Bharatpur; and its capital was Vairāṭa, the modern Bairat (Arch. Surv. Repts., II. 242; and XX. 2, and plate i).

The Vāyu Purāṇa reads *Vatsas* instead (xlv. 110). *Vatsa* or *Vātsya* was in the region east of Delhi (Sabhā-P., xxix. 1084), and king Vatsa who is said to have given his name to the country was grandson of Divodāsa, king of Benares (Hari-V., xxix. 1587, 1597; and xxxii. 1753). *Kauśāmbī* was the capital, and it has been identified by Cunningham with the modern Kosam which is on the north bank of the Jumna about 31 miles above Allahabad. Hence the country was also called *Kauśāmba* (Arch. Surv. Repts., I. 301-310). *Vatsa* or *Kauśāmba* therefore comprised the lower part of the Ganges and Jumna Doab and also probably the tract south of that, on the other side of the Jumna.

† The Vāyu Purāṇa reads *Kisashṇas*, *Kisashṭas* or *Kisadyas* instead (xlv. 110); but none of these names are in the dictionary. The Matsya reads *Kvāṭas* (cxiii. 35) but they are out of place here. The text reads *Matsyāśrukūṭāḥ kulyāśc'a*, but I would suggest instead *Matsyāśc'a Kanyākubjāśc'a*, thus reading *Kanyā-kubjas* or *Kānya-kubjas* instead of *Áśvakúṭas* and *Kulyas*. *Kanyā-kubja* or *Kānya-kubja* is the modern Kanauj, on the Ganges about 50 miles above Cawnpore; it was a famous city all through Indian history. People called *Sukufyas* are mentioned (Bhīshma-P. ix 347), *Ávakas* (*ibid.* 351), and *Ávātakas* (*ibid.* li 2105)

‡ This is not in the dictionary as a people; the word occurs in Vana-P., (cxyv. 10408), but does not appear to mean a people there. See the last note.

33 the Kuntalas,\* the people of Kási,† and the Kosálas,‡ and the Atharvas, and Arka-lingas,§ and the Malakas,||

\* This country is said by Muir to be one of the Piśác'a countries (Sansk. Texts, II. 59), but there were three people of this name, one in the Dekhan (Bhishma-P., ix. 367), who are mentioned in verse 48 below; and two others elsewhere (*ibid.* 347 and 359). Those mentioned in verse 347 are the people meant here, for they are grouped with the people of Kási and Kosala; and they probably occupied the country near Chunár (south of Benares), which Cunningham calls Kuntala (Arch. Surv. Repts., XI. 123). The third people were probably in the West.

† Benares, the ancient *Vārāṇasī*. It was the capital of an ancient and famous kingdom. According to the *Rāmāyaṇa* Kási was a kingdom (*Ādi-K.*, xii. 20) while Prayāga and the country all around it was still forest (Journal, R. A. S., 1894, pp. 237-239). Its sacred character dates from comparatively late times, for it was one of the exploits for which Kṛishṇa was extolled that he burnt it for a succession of years and devastated it (*Udyoga-P.*, xlvii. 1883; and *Hari-V.*, cxi. 9142-3). For some vicissitudes in its early history, see *Hari-V.*, xxix. and xxxii.

‡ Kosála, Kosala or Uttara Kosala, with its capital Ayodhyá, is the modern Oudh. Gen. Cunningham says it meant more particularly the country north and east of the R. Rapti (Arch. Surv. Repts., I. 327; and XVII. 68); but it seems rather to have denoted the country stretching from the Rapti on the east (see page 294 note †) to the confines of the Kuru and Páñc'ála kingdoms on the west. Northward it was bounded by the tribes that inhabited the slopes of the Himalayas, and southward by the kingdom of Benares. It was distinguished from another Kosala, which was called Dakṣhiṇa or Mahá Kosala and which is mentioned in verse 54.

§ These two names are not in the dictionary, and I have not found them elsewhere; they seem to be mistakes. The *Váyu Purāṇa* reads instead of them *atha pāṛive tilangáś'c'a* (xlv. 111); but this is doubtful and unsatisfactory, for the Tilangas are mentioned as a southern people in canto lviii. verse 28. The *Matsya* reads *and Āvantis and Kalingas* (cxiii. 36), but these are hardly satisfactory; the former are mentioned in verses 52 and 55, and the latter in verses 37 and 46 below. Perhaps Arka-lingas may be meant as a synonym of *Súrya-varṇásas*, the Solar Race, yet this again is hardly satisfactory, for that race reigned in Kosala, which has just been mentioned separately. There is a low group of Bráhmans in Behar called Atharvas (*Risley's Tribes and Castes of Bengal*, I. 26).

|| This is not in the dictionary and seems erroneous. The *Váyu Purāṇa* reads *Magadhas* instead (xlv. 111), the people of Magadha or South Behar; but this is unsatisfactory for the Magadhas are mentioned in verse 44. The

and Vṛikas\*; these † are well known generally as the peoples who inhabit the Central Region.‡

Matsya reads *Mūkas* (cxiii. 36), which I have not met elsewhere. The reading should be *Malajas* probably. They are mentioned in the M.-Bh. (Bhishma-P. ix. 357), and Rāmāyaṇa (Adi-K. xxvii. 16-23), and from the course described in the latter poem as taken by Viśvā-mitra and Rāma it appears they were neighbours of the Karūshas, (see note to verse 53), and occupied the district of Shāhābād, west of the Sone, for Viśvā-mitra and Rāma crossing from the Sarayū to the south of the Ganges entered that district, which had been inhabited by the Malajas (*ibid.*, 8-16.)

\* The Vṛikas are named in Bhishma-P., li. 2106, and a king Vṛika is alluded to in the Hari-Vaṁśa (xiii. 760-61); but there is nothing to identify them. The Matsya Purāṇa reads *Andhakas* (cxiii. 36). The Andhakas were a subordinate family of the Yādava race, and are often mentioned in the M.-Bh. (e.g. Udyoga-P. lxxxv. 304), and Hari-Vaṁśa (xxxv. 1907-8; and xxxix. 2044; and xciv. 5190-5204), but they dwelt in Su-rāshṭra in the West and appear to be out of place here. The most probable reading seems to be the *Vrajas*, the people of *Vraja* (or *Vrijī*, as it was also called), the modern Braj, the country north-west of Mathurā or Muttra.

† This is a short list. Besides these the Vāyu Purāṇa has two lines at the beginning of this group, viz., "the Kurus, the Pāñcālas, and the Śālvas, and the Jāngalas, the Śūrasenas, the Bhadrakāras, the Bodhas and the lords of Sata-patha" (xlv. 109 and 110); much like a passage in the M.-Bh. (Bhishma-P., ix. 346-7). The Matsya has the same lines, but gives the last two names as *Bāhyas* and *Paṭac'c'aras* (cxiii. 35, 36). For the Kurus, see canto lviii. verse 9; for the Pāñcālas, canto lviii. verse 8; for the Śālvas, canto lviii. verse 6; the Jāngalas are no doubt the people of Kuru-jāngala, see note to Kuru, canto lviii. verse 9; for the Śūrasenas, see canto lviii. verse 7. The Bhadrakāras are mentioned in the M.-Bh. (Sabhā-P., xiii. 590) and may perhaps be the same as the Bhadras mentioned in Vana-P. ccliii. 15256; they appear from these passages to have been situated on the west bank of the Jumna, somewhere between Delhi and Muttra. The Bodhas are mentioned in the M.-Bh. (Sabhā-P., xiii. 590; Bhishma-P., ix. 347) and are probably the same as the Bodhis (Rānāy., Ayodh-K. lxx. 15), who appear to have been situated on the eastern confines of the Panjab. I have not met Bāhyas elsewhere; it seems erroneous. Sata-patha seems to be erroneous, and Paṭac'c'ara is much better. The Paṭac'c'aras are mentioned in the M.-Bh. (Sabhā-P. xiii. 590-1; xxx. 1108; Virāṭa-P., i 11-12; &c.) and appear from the second of these passages to have occupied the tract south of the Aparā-matsyas, that is, probably the country south-west of Gwalior.

‡ Madhya-teśa, the whole of the Ganges basin from the Panjab as far

- 34 Now along the northern half of the Sahya mountains \* that  
 region, in which the river Godávarí flows, is a delightful  
 35 one compared even with the whole earth; Go-vardhana  
 is the charming city of the high-souled Bhárgava race. †

east as the confines of Behar; but Manu restricts it and defines its limits thus (ii. 21)—north, the Himalayas; south, the Vindhya Range; west, Vinasana which is where the R. Saras-vatí perishes in the desert (M-Bh., Salya-P. xxxviii. 2119-20); and east, Prayága or Allahabad.

\* The text *Sahyasya c'ottare yás tu* seems incorrect; these words cannot well go with the preceding verse, for no people north of the Sahya Mts. and south of the Páripátra Mts. could be within Madhya-deśa; and they do not agree with the following words. The Váyu Purāṇa reads *sahyasya c'ottarārdhe tu*, which I have adopted. That Purāṇa agrees and is a little fuller—"Now along the northern half of the Sahya Mts., where the river Godávarí flows, that region is a delightful one within the whole of this earth. This paradise named Go-vardhana was built there by Sura-rāja for the sake of Rāma's spouse; the trees and herbs there were brought down from above by the Muni Bharadvāja for the sake of Rāma's spouse. He made a delightful wooded tract the private part of the palace (antaḥ-pura)" (xlv. 112-114). The Matsya Purāṇa reads *Sahasyānantare c'aite* and is similar, but varies at the second sentence, thus—"Where for the sake of Rāma's spouse the hill named Go-vardhana, Mandara, Gandha-mādana, trees from Svarga and heavenly plants (*oshadhīḥ*, acc.) were brought down by the Muni Bharadvāja for the sake of the spouse; hence that region excels in flowers, therefore it has become delightful." (cxiii. 37-39). The Rāma alluded to here must be Ramá Jámadagnya or Paraśu-Rāma, who dwelt in this region; see the next note.

† These people are here placed on the east side of the Sahya Mts. among the sources of the Godávarí. This region and the country west of it on the other side of these mountains and the tract northwards to the Narmadā are connected in many a story with Bhṛigu, his son C'yavana and his descendants Rīc'ika, Jamadagni and Paraśu-Rāma (e. g. M-Bh., Adi-P. clxxviii. 6802-10; Vana-P. cxxi and cxxii with Sata-patha Bráhmaṇa IV. i. 5; Vana-P. lxxxix. 8364-5; cxv. 10150-2; Śānti-P. xlix. 1778-82; Vana-P. xcix. 8681-2 with Śānti-P. ii). The Bhárgavas were however a numerous race and spread into other regions; they are also mentioned as one of the eastern peoples in verse 43 below. They held a high position and appear to have been numerous in king Kṛita-vírya's kingdom at Māhish-matí, and after his death their wealth, it is said, brought down on them the hostility of the Kshattriyas (Ādi-P. clxxviii. 6802-15). Go-vardhana (*man.*) as a city is not in the dictionary. I have not found it alluded to elsewhere.

*The North-western peoples are these—The Váhlīkas\**

\* *Váhlīka* or *Báhlīka* or *Báhlīka* is said in the dictionary to be the modern Balkh, and in Lassen's map to be the ancient Bactriane; but there was another country, if not two tribes of this name, in the Panjab. The name is written *Váhlīka* or *Váhlīka* and there may have been a distinction between the two words, for both are mentioned in the Bhíshma-P. list (ix. 354 and 361). These were not uncommon names, and there were two princes called *Váhlīka* between Paríksht and Bhíshma in the Lunar Dynasty, and the later prince is styled a king (M.-Bh., Ádi-P., xciv. 3745, and 3750-51; and xcv. 3798-3800). The *Váhlīkas* are mentioned twice in the *Rámáyana* and are placed in the western region (Kishk. K. xliii. 5), and also in the northern region (*ibid.*, xlv. 13). A distinction as between two people of this name is also indicated by the mention of two independent kings of the *Váhlīkas* reigning contemporaneously in the M.-Bh. (Ádi-P. clxxxvi. 6992; Sabhá-P. xxxiii. 1266 and 1272; Udyoga-P. iii. 74 and 77). One of these two peoples was closely connected with the Madras, for Salya, king of Madra, is also called lord of the *Váhlīkas* (Ádi-P. cxiii. 4425-40; and lxvii. 2642), and his sister Mádrí is called *Váhlīkí* also (*ibid.*, cxv. 4886); and an ancient eponymous king *Váhlīka* is placed in the same *Krodha-vása gaṇa* with the eponymous kings Madraka and Suvíra (*ibid.*, lxvii. 2695-6). The other people of this name appear to have been closely connected with the Daradas who were a mountain-tribe in the north of the Panjab (see note to verse 38), and are the modern Dards of Dardistan; for an ancient king Darada the *Váhlīka* is mentioned who did not belong to the *Krodha-vása* group (Ádi-P. lxvii. 2694), and the *Váhlīkas* are linked with the Daradas (Bhíshma-P. cxviii. 5484) and are mentioned with the Kámbojas and Yavanas and other ultra-Panjab tribes (Droṇa-P. cxi. 4818; see also Sabhá-P. xxvi. 1031-2). If these inferences may be trusted, one *Váhlīka* or *Váhlīka* was situated in the plains of the Panjab alongside Madra-deśa and very possibly south of it (see *Rámáy.*, Ayodh-K. lxx. 16-19, with note to Madrakas in verse 36, and note to Kaikeyas in verse 37) i. e., between the rivers Chenab and Sutloj; and the other among the lower slopes of the Himalayas, very possibly between the Chenab and Bias. The name *Váhlīka* appears to have been altered in later times to *Báhlīka* seemingly by a punning resemblance to *vahis*, "outside," because they were shut out by the Saras-vatí, Kuru-kshetra and other natural features from the central country which remained true to Brahmanism. The people of the Panjab were then collectively called *Araṭṭas* or *Báhlīkas*, and they and all the tribes beyond were stigmatized as impure and contemptible by the arrogant and intolerant brahmins of Madhya-deśa (Muir's Sansk. Texts. II. 482, and M.-Bh., Karna-P. xlv. 2026 &c; see also Cunningham's Arch. Surv. Repts., I. i, 14, 17, 195, &c.).

and the Vátadhánas,\* and the Abhíras,† the Kála-

\* This people is mentioned in several passages in the M-Bh. (Sabhá-P. l. 1826; Udyoga-P. iii. 86; Bhíshma-P. ix. 354; and Droṇa-P. xi. 398), and their name appears to be derived from an eponymous king *Vátadhána*, who was of the same *Krodha-vaśa* group as the eponymous kings of the Váhlíkas, Madras and Sauvīras (Adi-P. lxvii. 2695-9). No doubt therefore they dwelt alongside those tribes. Their country Vátadhána was part of the territory stretching from Pañc'a-nada to the Ganges, over which the hosts assembled on the Kauravas' side spread at the beginning of the great war (Udyoga-P. xviii. 596-601), and it was in the western region (Sabhá-P. xxxi. 1190-1). From these data it may be inferred that the Vátadhánas inhabited the country on the east side of the Sutlej, southward from Ferozpur. Manu declares a Vátadhána to be the offspring of an outcaste brahman and a brahman woman (x. 21), but that is no doubt an expression of the same arrogance which in later times stigmatized all the Panjab races as outcastes (as mentioned in the last note), for Vátadhána *dvijas* were among the people whom Nakula conquered (Sabhá-P. xxxi. 1190-1). The Váyu Purāṇa reads Vátadhánas (xlv. 115) erroneously.

† They were an aboriginal tribe and are called mlec'c'has and dasyus. (M-Bh. Vana-P. clxxviii. 12838-40; and Mausala-P. vii. 222, &c.) They were scattered over various tracts and gained their livelihood in various ways. Three divisions of them are mentioned in the M-Bh. (Sabhá-P. xxxi. 1192), those who dwelt along the river Saras-vatī, those who lived by fishing, and those who inhabited the mountains. The first group occupied the north portion of the desert as far east as Vinasana on that river, for it is said the river perished there because of her hatred of them (Salya-P. xxxviii. 2119-20), and as far west as Pañc'a-nada (Mausala-P. vii. 220-242; and viii. 270; where Pañc'a-jana is probably a mistake for Pañc'a-nada); this group is probably the tribe of Abhíras mentioned in Bhíshma-P. ix. 354, and Rámáy., Kishk. K. xliii. 19. The second group must no doubt mean those who lived by the sea and not simply on rivers, hence it would have inhabited the coast along the Rann of Kachh and the delta of the Indus; and it is no doubt the tribe of Abhíras mentioned in Kishk. K. xliii. 5. The context indicates that the third group were the mountaineers of the Aravalli Range and the hills of Malwa; but there was another section of this group which appears to have occupied the hilly tracts in the north or west of the Panjab, for it is classed with the Daradas and Káśmíras (Bhíshma-P. ix. 375; and see note to verse 38), and with the Páradas (Sabhá-P. l. 1832; and see note to verse 137). The Abhíras were closely connected with the Súdras in these three groupings (Sabhá-P. xxxi. 1192; and see note to next verse). The descendants of all these Abhíras are the modern Ahírs who are scattered widely over Hindustan.

36 *toyakas*,\* and the *Aparántas*,† and the *Súdras*,‡ the

proper. Another body of *Abhíras* was found in the *Dokhan* (see verse 47). The *Abhíras* are said in the *Hari-Vaṁśa* to have been dominated by the *Daityas* and *Dánavas* in ancient times, and to have been the chief inhabitants of the country from the *Jumna* to the peninsula of *Gujarat* (xciv. 5142-80).

\* So also in the *Matsya Purāṇa* (cxiii. 40). This word is written *Kálajoshaka* in the *M.-Bh.* (*Bhishma-P.*, ix. 354), but I have not found either name elsewhere. Possible readings might be *Bála-jartikāḥ* or *Bála-káthikāḥ*. The former, however, seems inappropriate; the *Jartikas* are the same as the *Báhiikas* (*Karna-P.* xliv. 2033; *Arch. Surv. Repts.*, II. 13 and 195) who are noticed in the note to "*Váhiikas*" (page 311). The "*Bálas* and *Káthis*" would be a preferable reading. The *Bálas*, according to *Cunningham*, occupied the northern portion of *Sindh* and were ousted from there about the middle of the seventh century A.D. and moved south-east. The *Káthis* (the *Kathæi* of the Greek writers), according to the same authority occupied the *Rechna Doab* between the *Chenab* and *Ravi* rivers and also probably the northern portion of *Sindh*; they have retained the former territory, but those who held the latter were driven from it about the middle of the seventh century A.D. and settled in the peninsula of *Gujarat* where they have given the name *Káthiáwár* to a district (*Arch. Surv. Repts.*, II. 33-37).

† *Aparánta* means "living at the western border." A people of this name is mentioned in the *M.-Bh.* (*Bhishma-P.*, ix. 355), and allusion is often made to *Aparánta* and the *Aparántas* (e.g., *Vana-P.*, ccxvii. 7885-6; and *Sánti-P.*, xlix. 1780-2); but the word, though it no doubt designates a people living in the extreme west, yet seems to have a general meaning, in most passages (see verse 52 below), and those passages which use it in a restricted sense do not agree—thus *Aparánta* is stated to be a country in the middle of the sea (*Raghu-V.*, iv. 58, commentary), yet the *Aparántikas* in canto lviii., verse 34 are placed in the tortoise's tail, that is, north of *Sindhua* and *Sauvira* which are placed by verse 30 in the right hind foot. *Cunningham*, judging from the spots where coins have been found, was inclined to locate them in Northern *Sindh* and parts of West *Rajputana* (*Arch. Surv. Repts.*, XIV. 136, 137) which will satisfy canto lviii., verse 34. The *Váyu Purāṇa* reads *Aparítas* instead (xlv. 115) which seems erroneous. The *Rámáyana* mentions simply the *Aparas* (*Kishk.-K.*, xliii. 23). The *Matsya Purāṇa* reads *Purandhras* (cxiii. 40) erroneously.

‡ The *Súdras* are often linked together with the *Abhíras* (*M.-Bh.*, *Sabhá-P.*, xxxi. 112; *Bhishma-P.*, ix. 375; *Droṇa-P.*, xx. 798; *Salya-P.*, xxxviii. 2119-20). They appear to have been considered *dasyns* (*Sánti-P.*, clxxi. 6372, and clxxiii. 6446) and *mlec'chas* (*Vana-P.*, clxxxviii. 12838-40 where *Súra* seems a mistake for *Súdra*); yet their women are alluded to in rather favorable terms (*Sabhá-P.*, l. 1829). They were divided into the same



**Pallavas,\* C'arma-khaṇḍikas,† Gándhāras,‡ and Gabalas,§**

three groups as the *Abhīras*, viz., men of the plains, men of the sea-coast, and men of the hills (*Sabhā-P.*, xxxi. 1192), inhabiting much the same regions (see note to *Abhīras* in verse 35; for *Sūras* in *Rāmāy.*, *Kishk.-K.*, xliii. 19 read probably *Sūdras*), hence it would seem these two people were considerably intermixed and were probably closely connected aboriginal races. One group of the *Sūdras* was known to the Greeks as *Sudrakæ*, and is placed by Cunningham in the middle of the triangle of the Panjab (*Anc. Geog.*, I. 214-218; and *Arch. Surv. Repts.*, II.).

\* This is no doubt a mistake for *Pahlavas*, which the *Vāyu Purāṇa* reads (xl. 115) and which occurs in canto lviii., verse 30; though *Pallavas* are mentioned in the *M.-Bh.* (*Vana-P.*, li. 1990). The *Pahlavas* are understood to be the *Pehlavi* or ancient *Persians*. Two people of this name are mentioned in the *Bhīṣhma-P.* list (ix. 355 and 375), but there appear to be no data to make a distinction as the allusions to the *Pahlavas* are generally vague, unless it be supposed there was a *Pahlava* colony in the Panjab; and this supposition would suit this verse, for the *Persians* were altogether outside India. The *Hari-Vaṁśa* says King *Sagara* defeated a great confederation of *Pahlavas* and other people, abrogated their laws, degraded them and made them wear beards (xiii. 763-4; and xiv. 775-783); but this seems a late fable, on a par with their being called *dasyus* (*id.*, cxv. 6440-3). The *Rāmāyaṇa* has an absurd fable about the creation of the *Pahlavas* and other foreign races by *Vasmiṇḍhu* (*Adi-K.*, lv. 18-20; and lvi. 2-3); when contending with *Viśvā-mitra* he made his cow create *Pahlavas*, *Sakas*, *Yavanas*, &c., and *Viśvā-mitra* destroyed them all in succession.

† Or *C'arma-maṇḍalas* as in the *Bhīṣhma-P.* list (ix. 355) which this *Purāṇa* has followed closely in enumerating; this group of races. The *Vāyu*, however, reads the same as in the text (x lv. 115). I have not found any of these names elsewhere; but the name suggests identification with *Samarkand*. The *Matsya Purāṇa* reads *Atta-khaṇḍikas* or *C'atta-khaṇḍikas* (cxiii. 40) which appear to be erroneous.

‡ *Gándhāra* was the whole of the lower basin of the *Kabul river* (*Arch. Surv. Repts.*, II. 15, and map to p. 87). It was a famous country in ancient times, its kings ranked with the highest Indian Sovereigns, and its princesses married into the noblest royal families. The passages in which the *Gándhāras* are pronounced bad and impure (*e.g.*, *Sānti-P.*, lxv. 2429-31; and ccvii. 7560-1; and *Karṇa-P.* xlv. 2070) betray the interpolated sentiments of a later age (*Muir's Sansk. Texts*, II. 482).

§ This is not in the dictionary. The *Vāyu Purāṇa* reads *Yavanas* instead (xl. 116), and so also the *Matsya* (cxiii. 41); this word is supposed to have denoted the Greeks originally, but the *Yavanas* appear to have been known

37 the Sindhus,\* Sauvīras,† and Madrakas,‡ and the

in India long before Alexander's time. The Bhīshma-P. list mentions the *Giri-gahvaras* in this region (ix. 375).

\* Primarily *Sindhu* meant the country along the Indus, but it has generally denoted the lower portion of that country, that is, the modern *Sindh* more or less closely. It is placed by canto lviii., verse 30 in the Tortoise's right hind foot, and it stretched down to the peninsula of Kāthiāwār which is called the territory of Sindhu-Rāja in the Hari-Vaṁśa (cxiv. 6407-12). The Sindhus are mentioned frequently in the M.-Bh., and are named twice in the Bhīshma-P. list, first in connexion with the Pulindas (ix. 343), and again in conjunction with the Sauvīras (ix. 361), but there do not appear to be any other passages which tend to shew a division. Sindhu had a well-known breed of horses (Drona-P., xxiii. 973).

† The Sauvīras claimed descent from an eponymous king *Suvīra* of the same Krodha-vaśa group as the Madras and Vāhlīkas (M.-Bh., Adi-P., lrvii. 2695-6); but the genealogy of *Suvīra* in the Hari-Vaṁśa (xxi. 1679) is fanciful. *Sauvīra* was closely connected with *Sindhu*, for the two are often coupled together, and Jayad-ratha king of *Sindhu* was also lord of *Sauvīra* and the *Sauvīras*, and is styled *Saindhava* and *Suvīra* indifferently (Vana-P., colxiii. 15576-81; cclxvi. 15618 and 15635-7; and cclxvii. 15639-51). Cunningham identifies *Sauvīra* with the country between the Indus and Jhelam, that is, the *Sindh-Sagar Doab* (Arch. Surv. Repts., II. 4-6, 14 and 23); that hardly agrees with the position assigned to it in the Tortoise's right hind foot, but the collocation of races in that region is rather confused. May we suppose that *Sauvīra* was rather the name of the people while *Sindhu* more properly denoted the territory? The *Sauvīras* might then have inhabited the northern part of *Sindhu*, and *Sauvīra* would have been that portion only of the larger area. This theory seems to satisfy the conditions generally.

Along with the *Sauvīras* and *Saindhavas* the Kūrma Purāṇa mentions (xlvi. 40) "the Hūṇas (or Kūṇas), the Mālyas (or Sālvas), the inhabitants of Bālyā (or Kalpa)." For the *Hūṇas*, see note to canto lviii., verse 45; *Kūṇa* seems erroneous; for the *Sālvas*, see canto lviii. verse 6; *Mālyas* seems erroneous; *Bālyā* and *Kalpa* seem unidentifiable.

‡ The *Madras* or *Mūdras* claimed descent from an eponymous king *Madraka* of the same Krodha-vaśa group as the *Sauvīras* and *Vāhlīkas* (M.-Bh., Adi-P., lrvii. 2695-6; and see note on page 311); but his genealogy in the Hari-Vaṁśa (xxi. 1679) seems fanciful. Cunningham places *Madra* between the Jhelam and Ravi rivers, that is, in the Chej and Rechna Doabs (Arch. Surv. Repts., II. 4, 8, 14 and 39), yet he also says it is the country between the Jhelam and Bias, or between the Chenab and Bias (*ibid.*, 196);

people who dwell along the *Satādru*,\* the *Kalingas*,†

but it could hardly have comprised much of the Chej Doab for the *Kaikēyas* occupied the greater part of that (see note to next verse). The capital of Madra was *Sākala* (*Sabhā-P.*, xxi. 1197) which Cunningham has identified with the modern Sangala, on the R. *Apagā* which is the modern *Ayak* (*Arch-Surv. Repts.*, II. 195-6 and *Karṇa-P.*, xlv. 2033). The R. *Irāvati* flowed through Madra-deśa, but near the eastern border (*ibid.*, 2038-41; and *Matsya Purāṇa* cxiv. 7 and 15-18.) Madra then was the country around Sangala, with the tracts on either side watered by the Chenab and Ravi. It was a famous kingdom. The weird story told about king *Vyushitāsva's* queen (*Ādi-P.*, cxxi. 4695-4714) no doubt means her sons became Madras and did not originate the Madras. In later times the brahmins of Hindustan pronounced the Madras, like the *Gāndhāras*, base and impure (*Sānti-P.*, cviii. 7559-61; and *Hari-V.*, xiv. 784); see especially *Karṇa-P.*, xlv. 2033-53, where the Madras are abused in good set terms. The *Vāyu Purāṇa* reads *Bhadrakas* erroneously (xlv. 116).

\* That is, the *Sutlej*, *Satādru-ja*. But this seems mistaken, for the *Vāyu Purāṇa* reads *Sakas* and *Hradas* (xlv. 116); and the *Matsya Sakas* and *Druhyas* (cxiii. 41). The *Sakas*, therefore, are no doubt one of the people meant (see note to canto lviii., verse 6). *Hrada* seems erroneous. The *Druhyas* may be connected with *Yayāti's* son *Druhyu* who was king of the West, (*Hari-V.* xxx. 1604 and 1618), but I have not met with them elsewhere.

† This seems erroneous. These people are mentioned in verse 46, and there seems to be no ground for thinking any *Kalingas* lived in North India; yet *Kalingas* are mentioned in such a connexion (*Bhīshma-P.*, ix. 376; and *lxix.* 3132; and see note to *Arkalings* in verse 33), and a town *Kalinga-nagara* is mentioned in the *Rāmāy.* on the west of the *Go-matī* and not far from it (*Ayodh. K.*, lxxiii. 14, 15). A tribe called *Kulīngas* is alluded to (*Droṇa-P.*, cxxi. 4819). The *Vāyu Purāṇa* reads *Kulīndas* instead (xlv. 116), which is no doubt right. Cunningham says the *Kulīndas* or *Kunīndas* are the modern *Kunets* who occupy *Kullu* and the *Simla* hills and the slopes below, along both sides of the *Sutlej* (*Arch. Surv. Repts.*, XIV. 116 and 125-130). The *Kulīndas* extended further east along the southern slopes of the *Himalayas* as far as *Nepal*, for they were the first nation which *Arjuna* conquered in his Northward march from *Indra-prastha* (*Sabhā-P.*, xxv. 996), and they also occupied the hills north of *Mundara*, that is, the *Almora* hills (*id.*, li. 1858-9; and note\* to page 287 above); indeed the name appears to have comprised a considerable body of hill tribes, for "all the countries of *Kulīnda*" are spoken of (*Vana-P.*, cixxvii. 12350).

The *Matsya Purāṇa* reads *Pulīndas* (cxiii. 41). The *Pulīndas* were a rude tribe inhabiting the *Himalayas* and intermixed with *Kirātas* and *Tangayās*

the Páradas,\* the Hára-bhúshikas,† the Mátharas,‡  
and the Bahu-bhadras,§ the Kaikeyas,|| the Daśa-máli-

(Vana-P., cxi. 10863-5; and Droṇa-P., cxi. 4846-7; and see notes to verses 40 and 41); they were considered mleç'c'has (Vana-P., clxxxviii. 12838-40), and are declared to have become degraded because of the extinction of sacred rites, &c. (Anuśās-P., lvii. 2103, &c.). There was another body of Pulindas in Central India (Sabhá-P., xxviii. 1068; and xxx. 1120; and Śánti-P., ccvii. 7559).

\* The Páradas are generally mentioned with hill tribes (Sabhá-P., l. 1832; li. 1869; and Droṇa-P., cxi. 4819). They appear to have been a hill tribe like the Kulindas and Tangaṇas (see note to verse 41 below) and to have dwelt in the western portion of the Himalayas (Sabhá-P., li. 1858-9), though they are placed in the tortoise's right hind foot by canto lviii., verse 31; the races placed there, however, are strangely confused. Manu says they were Kshattriyas and became degraded because of the extinction of sacred rites, &c. (x. 43-44); and the Hari-Vaṁśa says king Sagara degraded them and ordered them to wear long hair (xiii. 763-4; and xiv. 775-83), and they were mleç'c'has and dasyus (*id.*, cxv. 6440-42). The Váyu Purāṇa reads *Paritās* instead (xlv. 116).

† This is not in the dictionary. The Váyu Purāṇa reads *Hára-púrikas* instead (xlv. 116), and the Matsya *Hára-múrtikas* (cxiii. 41); but I have not found any of these names elsewhere. Should the reading be *Hára-húṇakas*? The Hára-húṇas are mentioned in the M.-Bh., as a people outside India on the west (Sabhá-P., xxxi. 1194; l. 1844; and Vana-P., li. 1991).

‡ The Váyu Purāṇa reads *Ramaṭas* instead (xlv. 117), and the Matsya *Rámaṭhas* (cxiii. 42), and the Kúrma mentions a people called *Rámas* (xlvii. 41). The reading should, no doubt, be *Ramaṭas*, *Ramaṭhas* or *Rámaṭhas*; they were a western people mentioned in the M.-Bh. (Sabhá-P., xxxi. 1195; Vana-P., li. 1991; and Śánti-P., lxv. 2430). The *Ramaṇas* (Bhishma-P., ix. 374) may be the same people. There are, however, no sufficient data to identify any of them.

§ The Váyu Purāṇa reads *Rudāha-kaṭakas* instead (xlv. 117); the M.-Bh. mentions the *Báhu-bádhas* (Bhishma-P., ix. 362) and the *Bátabhadrās* (Karna-P. vi. 153); and the Matsya Purāṇa reads *Kaṇṭakáras* (cxiii. 42); but none of these seems satisfactory and I have not met any of them elsewhere.

|| These people were called *Kekayas*, *Kaikayas* and *Kaikeyas*. An eponymous ancestor Kaikeya is assigned to them by the Hari-Vaṁśa (xxxi. 1679), but his genealogy seems fanciful. They were a powerful and famous nation, and were noted bowmen (Sabhá-P., iv. 126; and Vana-P., cclxvii. 15654). They inhabited the Panjab and appear to have joined the Madras, for the two are sometimes coupled together (Sabhá-P., li. 1870; and Droṇa-P., xx. 799); and

38 kas,\* and the settlements† of Kshattriyas, and the families of Vaiśyas and Śúdras.‡

The Kámbojas,§ and the Daradas,|| and the

canto lviii. places them both in the tortoise's left side (verses 42 and 45). Their capital was *Rája-griha* (Rámáy., *Ádi-K.*, lxxix. 35-44) or *Giri-vraja* (*id.*, *Ayodh. K.*, lxxi. 1; and lxxii. 1). Lassen places the Kaikeyas between the Ravi and Bias rivers. Cunningham, however, dissents and places them on the line of the Jhelam, west of the Báhikas, and proposes to identify *Giri-vraja* with *Girják*, which was the ancient name of Jalandpur on that river (*Arch. Surv. Repts.*, II. 14); and this agrees with the Rámáy. (*Ayodh. K.*, lxx. 16-19).

\* These people are mentioned in the M.-Bh. (*Bhíshma-P.*, ix. 374). The *Váyu Purána* reads *Daśa-mánikas* (xlv. 117). Does the word mean "the ten tribes of Málíkas"? The *Málíkas* may perhaps be identified with the *Mallí* (*Arch. Surv. Repts.*, II. 37). The *Matsya Purána* reads *Daśa-námakas* (cxiii. 42), which seems mistaken.

† *Upa-ni-veśa*, a word not in the dictionary. It seems to be synonymous with *ni-veśa* which appears to be the word meant in the corresponding passage in the *Bhíshma-P.* list (ix. 374, *kshattriyá yoniveśáś c'a*; but *kshattriyopaniveśáś c'a* would be preferable). *Ni-ves'a* is used elsewhere in the M.-Bh. (*e.g.*, *Sabdhá-P.*, xiii. 615; and xix. 798), and in the Rámáy. (*Kishk.-K.*, xliii. 24), and appears to denote a military colony or settlement in a foreign country.

‡ That is, Śúdras as a caste, and not as a race; as a race they have been mentioned in verse 36.

§ The Kámbojas were in the extreme north of the Panjab beyond the Indus, and were classed with the Daradas (*Sabdhá-P.*, xxvi. 1031), with Yavanas and Sakas (*Udyoga-P.*, xviii. 590), and with C'inas (*Bhíshma-P.*, ix. 373). Their country was famous for its large and fleet breed of horses which are often mentioned (*Sabdhá-P.*, l. 1824; *Bhíshma-P.*, lxxvi. 3131; *Drona-P.*, xxiii. 972; cxxi. 4831-2;—also Rámáy., *Ádi-K.*, vi. 24; and *Sundar.-K.*, xii. 36;—and *Raghu.-V.*, iv. 70). Lassen places Kámboja doubtfully south of Kashgar and east of the modern Kafiristan (*Ind. Alt.*, map). They were Aryans by language (*Muir's Sansk. Texts*, II. 368-9). *Manu* says (x. 43-44) they were Kshattriyas and became degraded through the extinction of sacred rites, &c.; they are called *nleo'o'has* (*Vana-P.*, clxxxviii. 12838-40) and said to have evil customs (*Sánti-P.*, ccvii. 7660-61). The *Hari-Vaṁśa* says they were degraded by King Sagara and ordered to shave the whole of the head like the Yavanas (xiii. 763-4; and xiv. 775-83). The Rámáy. has an absurd fable about their origin (*Ádi K.* lvi. 2; see page 314 note \*).

|| Darada is the modern Dardistan, the country north of Gándhára and north-west of Kásmir. This region satisfies all the allusions to the Daradas. They were a hill people (*Drona-P.*, cxxi. 4835-7 and 4846-7; neighbours

## 39 Varvaras,\* the Harshavardhanas,† and the C'inas,‡ the

of the Káśmíras (*id.*, lxx. 2435), of the Kámbojas (Sabhá-P., xxvi. 1031), and of the C'inas and Tusháras (Vana-P., clxxvii. 12350); they fought largely with stones and were skilled in slinging stones (Droṇa-P., cxxi. 4835-47). Manu says they were Kshattriyas and became degraded because of the extinction of sacred rites, &c. (x. 43 and 44); and like the Páradas and others they were considered mlec'c'has and dasyus (Hari-V., cxv. 6440-6442).

\* This word is also written *Barvara* and *Barbara*, and often means any barbarous race. The Varvaras are generally mentioned in conjunction with the Sakas or Yavanas (Sabhá-P., xxxi. 1199; Vana-P., ccliii. 15254; Sánti-P., cvii. 7560-61; &c.); and from these allusions it appears they were mainly a western or north-western race; but Varvaras were also to be found in the east or north-east of India (Sabhá-P., xxix. 1088), and seemingly also in the south (Vana-P., li. 1989) like the Savaras (Sánti-P., lxx. 2429). The name no doubt represents the rolling of the letter *r* or rough and unknown speech; hence it would be applied to various rude tribes.

† This is not in the dictionary. The Váyu Purāṇa reads *Priya-laukikas* instead (xlv. 118), but I have not found either word elsewhere. Canto lviii mentions certain *Bhoga-prasthas* (verse 42) in the north. All these names seem suggestive, and may perhaps be equivalents of *Utsava-sanketa* (people who have no marriage and practise promiscuous intercourse, *utsava* meaning affection, and *sanketa*, a gesture of invitation) a people mentioned in the M-Bh. in the north among the hills (Sabhá-P., xxvi. 1025) and west (*id.*, xxxi. 1191); though also in the south (Bhishma-P., ix. 363); and the Raghu-V., places them in the Himalayas (iv. 78). This derivation of *Utsava-sanketa* is given in a note to the commentary on Raghu-V., iv. 77.

‡ The Chinese; but *C'ina* comprised the country of Thibet along the whole range of the Himalayas, for the C'inas are linked with the Kámbojas in the north-west (Bhishma-P., ix. 373), they are frequently mentioned among the retinue of Bhaga-datta king of Prág-lyotisha, in the east (*e.g.*, Udyoga-P., xviii. 584-5; see note to verse 44 below), and they were near the sources of the Ganges in the country midway between those regions (Vana-P., clxxvii. 12350; Sánti-P., cccxxvii. 12226-9). The country had a valuable breed of horses (Udyoga-P., lxxxv. 3040). In the M-Bh. the C'inas are always spoken of with respect and even admiration (Udyoga-P., xviii. 584-5), and one of their kings called Dhautamúla is classed among eighteen famous ancient kings who extirpated their kinsmen (*id.*, lxxiii. 2730); hence Manu's remark that the C'inas were Kshattriyas and became degraded because of the extinction of sacred rites, &c. (x. 43 and 44) betrays the sentiments of a later age. The Váyu Purāṇa reads *Pínas* (xlv. 118) erroneously. The Rámáy. mentions also *Apara-c'inas* (Kishk.-K., xlv. 15), "the further C'inas."

Tukháras\* are the populoust† *races of men outside.*‡

. And the Atreyas,§ the Bharadvájas,|| and Pushkalas,¶ the

\* For *tu khárás* read *tukhárás*. The Tukháras are mentioned in the M.-Bh. (Sabhá-P., l. 1850) and Rámáy. (Kishk.-K., xlv. 15). The Váyu Puráṇa reads *Tushdras* (xlv. 118), and they are mentioned in the M.-Bh. (Vana-P., li. 1991; Sánti-P., lxv. 2429; &c.). The two names seem to mean the same people. They were an outside northern race bordering on the Himalayas (Vana-P., clxxvii. 12350). In the Hari-Vaṁśa they are classed along with Śakas, Daradas, Pahlavas, &c., and considered to be *mlec'c'has* and *dasyus* (cxv. 6440-42), they are ranked with wild hill-tribes as originating from king Vena's sins (v. 310-11), and are said to have been repressed by king Sagara (xiv. 784). Lassen identifies them with the *Tochari*, and places them on the north side of the Hindu Kush (Ind. Alt., map). The Rámáy. has an absurd fable about their origin (Ādi.-K., lvi. 3; see page 314, note \*).

† *Bahulá*. The Váyu Puráṇa reads *Pahlavas* or *Ratna-dháras* instead (xlv. 118), probably erroneously; the former have been mentioned in verse 36. I have not met with the latter word elsewhere, but it may be noticed that great quantities of precious stones were found among the Tukháras and other northern nations (Sabhá-P., l. 1849-50).

‡ *Váhyato-naráḥ*. The Váyu Puráṇa reads *Váhyatodaráḥ* or *kshatodaráḥ* instead (xlv. 118) erroneously.

§ This tribe is mentioned in the Bhīshma-P. list (ix. 376). The Hari-V. says that king Raudrásva's ten daughters all married the *ṛishi* Prabhá-kara of Atri's race and gave rise to the Atreyas (xxxi. 1660-68); and Atreyas are mentioned as a family of brahmins dwelling in Dvaita-vana (M.-Bh., Vana-P., xxvi. 971) which was a forest and lake near the Saras-vatī (*ibid.*, clxxvii. 12354-62). The Matsya Puráṇa reads "the Atris" (cxiii. 43), which is the same. Are they to be identified with the Atreya gotra of brahmins (Risley's Tribes and Castes of Bengal, I. 27) formerly living perhaps in Sirmour or Garhwál; or to be connected with R. Atreyī (Sabhá-P., ix. 374) the modern Atrai in North Bengal? The former seems more probable.

|| Or Bháradvájas; they are named in the Bhīshma-P. list (ix. 376). Bharadvāja is often mentioned in the M.-Bh. in connexion with the upper part of the Ganges near the hills (*e.g.*, Ādi-P., cxxx. 5102-6; clxvi. 6323-32; Vana-P., cxxxv. 10700-728; and Śalya-P., xlix. 2762-2824). These were no doubt his descendants, living in Garhwál or Kumaon. The name Bharadvāja is given to various caste divisions (Risley's Tribes and Castes of Bengal, I. 96.)

¶ The Váyu (xlv. 119) and Matsya (cxiii. 43) Puráṇas read *Prasthalas* and they are no doubt the same as the *Proshakas* (Bhīshma-P., ix. 376)

40 Kuśerukas,\* the Lampákas,† the Súlakáras,‡ the

all being placed in the same connexion. If Cunningham is right in identifying Lampáka with Lamghan (see second note below), Pushkala suggests *Pushkaldavatí* or *Pushkardavatí* (Rāmáy., Kishk.-K., xliii. 23), the ancient capital of Gándhára (Anc. Geog., I. 49), but the Gándháras have been mentioned in their proper place in verse 36 above. I have not met the name Proshakas any where else.

Prasthala was a country closely connected with Trigarta, for Su-śarman king of Trigarta is also called lord of Prasthala (Virāṭa-P., xxx. 971; Bhīshma-P., lxxv. 3296; lxxxviii. 3856; and Droṇa-P., xvii. 691), and Trigarta comprised the territory from Amballa and Pattiala to the R. Bias (see note to verse 57). Prasthala was also near the Panjab (Droṇa-P., xvii. 691; and Karṇa-P., xlv. 2063-70), and in the second of these passages its people are classed along with the Panjab nations, and all according to the ideas of a later age were pronounced degraded (Muir, Sansk. Texts. II. 482). From these data it seems Prasthala must have been the district between Ferozpur, Pattiala and Sirsa. If this position be right, the Prasthalas do not fall into the group of northern peoples named in the text, and the correct reading cannot be *Prasthalas*.

\* The Váyu Purāṇa reads *Kaserukas* (xlv. 119); and the Matsya *Dasarakas* (cxiii. 43). I have not met the first form of name elsewhere; but the *Daśarakas*, or *Dāśarakas*, or *Dāserakas* are mentioned as joining in the great war in the M.-Bh. (e.g., Bhīshma-P., I. 2080; cxviii. 5483; Droṇa-P., xi. 397; and xx. 798); and they appear to have comprised several bands, as the word *gaṇa* is nearly always added to the name; but there are no data to identify them.

† This name occurs in the M.-Bh. (Droṇa-P., cxxi. 4846-7) and there the Lampákas are described as a mountain tribe, like the Daradas and Pulindas, who fought largely with stones and were skilled in slinging stones; but otherwise there are very few references to them in the M.-Bh. Lassen identifies Lampáka with the Lambagæ and places them south of the Hindu-Kush, in modern Kafiristan. Cunningham says Lampáka is the modern Lamghan, north-east of Kabul (Anc. Geog., I. 17 and 27), which agrees with Lassen. The Matsya Purāṇa reads *Lampakas* (cxiii. 43), no doubt by a mistake.

‡ The Váyu Purāṇa reads *Stanapas* or *Tanapas* (xlv. 119). I have not met any of these names elsewhere, but the latter words resemble the *Stana-yoshikas* (Bhīshma-P., ix. 376), and also *Tanayas* (*ibid.*, 371), whose grouping however is different. The Matsya Purāṇa reads *Talagánas* (cxiii. 43), which seems erroneous. Perhaps the Súlakáras may be identified with the Sunuwáras, a cultivating tribe of Nepal, forming part of the highest class (Risley's Castes and Tribes of Bengal, II. 281).



C'úlikas,\* and the Jáguḍas,† and the Aupadhas,‡ and the Animadras,§ and the races of Kirátas,|| the

\* The Váyu Purāṇa reads *Plṛṇikas* instead (xlv. 119). Canto lviii. verse 37 places the C'úlikas in the Tortoise's tail at the westernmost part of India. I have not met with either name elsewhere. The Matsya Purāṇa reads *Sainikas* (cxiii. 43), "Soldiers."

† Or *Jaguḍas* according to the Váyu Purāṇa (xlv. 119). The Jáguḍas are mentioned in the M.-Bh. (Vana-P., li. 1991). The Matsya Purāṇa reads *Jāngalas* (cxiii. 43), which is of no help, for it cannot refer to Kuru-jāngala (see note to Kurus, canto lviii, verse 9), and I have not met with any other Jāngala; but the same Purāṇa mentions the Jaguḍas as a people through whose country the Indus flows, so that they appear to be north or east of Kashmir (cxx. 46-48).

‡ The Váyu Purāṇa reads *Apagas* instead (xlv. 120). I have not met with either name elsewhere. Should the reading be *Apavas*, the descendants of Vasishṭha? Atreyas and Bharadvájas have been mentioned, and Gúlavas are named in verse 57.

§ Or *Animadras* or *C'ánimadras*. The Váyu Purāṇa reads *C'álimadrás c'a* (xlv. 120). None of these names are in the dictionary, and I have not met any of them elsewhere.

|| The word *Kiráta* is no doubt the same as the modern names *Kiráti* and *Kiránti*, which mean "a native of the Kiránt-des or mountainous country lying between the Dud-Kosi and the Karki rivers in Nepal. The term includes the Khambu, Limbu and Yákhá tribes; and the Danuár, Hayr and Thámi also claim to be Kiránti," but their claim is disputed by the first three tribes which are superior (Risley's *Castes and Tribes of Bengal*, I. 490). But formerly they had a much larger range and were spread along the greater part of the southern side of the Himalayas, for Arjuna encountered them in his northern expedition (Sabhá-P., xxv. 1002), Bhíma in his eastern (*id.*, xxix. 1089), and Nakula in his western expedition (*id.*, xxxi. 1199). They formed a group of closely allied yet distinct tribes or clans, for two separate Kiráta kings are named (Sabhá-P., iv. 119 and 120), seven kings are alluded to (*id.*, xxix. 1089), "all the Kirátas" are spoken of (Vana-P., li. 1990), and they are mentioned thrice in the Bhíšhma-P. list (ix. 358, 364 and 376). Their chief territory was among the mountains Kailása, Mandara (see page 287 note \*) and Haima (Anuśás.-P., xix. 1434), that is, the region around Lake Mánasa. They were allied to the Tangaṇas (see next verse) and Pulindas (see page 316 note †) for the three people inhabited one large kingdom ruled by Su-báhu, who was king of the Pulindas (Vana-P., cxl. 10863-6) and is also styled a Kiráta (*id.*, clxxvii. 12349). The tribes differed much in material condition, for some were civilized and

41 Tāmasas,\* and the Hāmśa-mārgas,† the Kāśmīras,‡  
and the Tunganas,§ the Sūlikas,|| and the

open to friendly intercourse (Vana-P., cxl. 10865-6; and Udyoga-P., lxiii. 2470), and others were clad in skins, lived on fruit and roots and were cruel (Sabhā-P., li. 1865). Their women were used as slaves (*ibid*, 1867). The Rāmāy. describes them as wearing thick top-knots (Kishk.-K., xl. 30). Manu's remark that the Kirātas were kshattriyas and became degraded because of the extinction of sacred rites, &c. (x. 43 and 44) reflects the opinions of a later age.

\* The same people are mentioned again in verse 57, but I have not found the name elsewhere, and it is not in the dictionary. The Vāyu Purāṇa reads *Tomaras* (xlv. 120), and the Bhīshma-P. agrees (ix. 377). The Matsya Purāṇa mentions the Tomaras and the Hāmśa-mārgas as two tribes through whose countries flows the R. Pāvanī, one of the three large rivers which rise in the middle of the Himalaya mountain system and flow eastward (cxx. 57-59). The river is doubtful, but the passage places the Tomaras and the Hāmśa-mārgas in the east of Thibet.

† "The duck-fowlers" They are mentioned again in verse 56, and also in the Bhīshma-P. list (ix. 377); and seem to be the same as the *Hāmśa-pūdas* (Droṇa-P., xx. 798) and perhaps *Hāmśa-kāyanas* (Sabhā-P., li. 1870); but there appear to be no data to identify them, except that they were a people in eastern Thibet as explained in the last note.

‡ The people of Kashmir. They are named twice in the Bhīshma-P. list (ix. 361 and 375).

§ Or better, as the Vāyu Purāṇa reads, *Tangaṇas* (xlv. 120) the Rāmāy. calls them *Tankaṇas* (Kishk.-K., xlv. 20). They were a mountain tribe and are mentioned rather often in the M.-Bh., where two sections are spoken of, the *Tangaṇas* and *Para-tangaṇas* (Sabhā-P., li. 1859; Bhīshma-P., ix. 372; and l. 2083), that is, "the nearer" and "the further" Tangaṇas. They were intermixed with the Kirātas and Pulindas (or Kuliindas), for they all inhabited a large kingdom ruled over by Su-bāhu, which was in the middle portion of the Himalayas (Vana-P., cxl. 10863-5; Sabhā-P., li. 1858-9); and they are also linked with the Ambashthas (Droṇa-P., cxxi. 4819). They are said to have occupied the upper part of the valley of the R. Sarayú (dict.). Like other hill tribes they fought largely with stones and were skilled in slinging stones (Droṇa-P., cxxi. 4835-47).

|| This resembles Sūlakāras in the last verse. The Vāyu Purāṇa reads *C'ūlikas* (xlv. 121), which has also been mentioned in that verse. The Sūlikas are mentioned in the Matsya Purāṇa as a people through whose country flows the R. C'akshu, one of the three large rivers which rise in the middle of the Himalaya mountain-system and flow westward (cxx. 45, 46).

42 Kuhakas,\* the Uṛṇas,† and Dárvas;‡ these are the peoples of the Northern countries.

Hear from me the peoples who inhabit the Eastern countries. The Adhrárakas,§ the Mudakaras,|| the Antar-

C'akshu may perhaps be meant for Vakshu, which is the Oxus; if so, the Sálukas would be a people on the Oxus in Turkestan.

\* *Kuhaka* means a juggler. The Váyu Purāṇa reads *C'dhukas* or *Ahukas* or *A'hukas* (xlv. 121); *Ahuka* was the name of a family of the Andhakas (e.g., M.-Bh., Udyoga-P., lxxxv. 3041; and Hari-V., xxxviii. 2017-24), but they were in the west and cannot be meant here. I have not met with any of these words elsewhere as the name of a people in the north. The proper reading may be *Kuhukas*. *Kuhuka* would be the same as *Kuhu*, and the *Kuhus* are mentioned in the Matsya Purāṇa as a people on the line of the Indus (cxx. 46-48).

† These people are mentioned again in verse 57. A country *Uṛṇa-desa* is placed by Lassen on the Sutlej north of Garhwal (Ind. Alt., map). The whole of the upper Sutlej valley is now called Nari-khorsum or Hun-des. The Váyu Purāṇa reads *Púrṇas* here (xlv. 121), which seems erroneous.

‡ These appear to be the same as the *Dárvas* in verse 57. They were a northern people and are generally associated with the Trigartas and Daradas (Sabhá-P., xxvi. 1026; and li. 1869) and other tribes in the north of the Panjab (Bhishma-P., ix. 362). A river or town called *Darvī* is mentioned (*ibid.*), and a tirtha *Darvī-sankramaṇa* is placed between the sources of the Jumna and Indus (Vana-P., lxxxiv. 8022-4); and this tract perhaps was their territory. But Lassen places the *Dárvas* between the Indus and Jhelam in the north-west of Kashmir (Ind. Alt., map).

§ This seems incorrect. The Váyu Purāṇa reads *Andhravákas* (xlv. 122), which is hardly acceptable, the *Andhras* being properly in the South, rather than in the East, and being presumably intended in verse 48 (see note to *Andhas*). The Matsya Purāṇa reads *Angá vana* instead (cxiii. 44), which is preferable, but these nations are mentioned below (see page 325 note ‡ and page 326 note \*).

|| The Matsya Purāṇa reads *Madgurakas* (cxiii. 44), and the Váyu *Sujarakas* (xlv. 122). I have not found any of these names elsewhere, except that *Madguras*, "divers," are mentioned in a totally different connexion in the Hari-Vaṁśa (xv. 5233-9). Seemingly the word should be connected with *Modá-giri* in the Eastern region where a kingdom once existed (M.-Bh., Sabhá-P., xxix. 1095); is it to be identified with the modern Mungir (commonly Monghyr) on the Ganges in Behar, where there is a small outcrop of hills. Cunningham says *Mudgala-puri*, *Mudgalágrama* (to which the Matsya Purāṇa reading approximates) and *Mudga-giri* were the old names of

43 giryas,\* the Vahir-giras,† and the Pravangas‡ also,

Mungir; and an earlier name was *Kashṭa-haraṇa-parvata* (XV. 15 and 18), but this last is open to the objection that no name can well be older than that preserved in the M.-Bh. The *Mudgalas* are mentioned in Droṇa-P., xi. 397.

\* Or *Antar-giri* as the *Matsya Purāṇa* reads (cxiii. 44). They are mentioned in the Bhīṣma-P. list (ix. 357). The name, no doubt, means "those who dwell amid the hills," and as the people are placed in all these passages in proximity to the Angas, it seems reasonable to identify *Antar-giri* with the Rajmahall hills (in the modern district of the Santhal Parganas) which form a marked natural division between Anga and Vanga. In the only other passage where I have found this name (Sabhā-P., xxvi. 1012) *Antar-giri*, *Vahir-giri* (see next note) and *Upa-giri* are mentioned in obvious contradistinction and are placed in the Northern region; it is doubtful, therefore, whether they denote the tracts mentioned here; and they may perhaps refer to some portion of the slopes of the Himalayas.

† Or *Vahir-giri* as the *Matsya Purāṇa* reads (cxiii. 44). The name, no doubt, means "those who dwell outside the hills," and these people are mentioned along with the Angas and Malajas in the Bhīṣma-P. list (ix. 357). If we may identify *Antar-giri* with the Rajmahall hills (see the last note), *Vahir-giri* might well designate the outskirts of those hills bordering on Anga, that is, the southern portions of the Bhagalpur and Monghyr districts and the lands bordering thereon to the south in the Santhal Parganas and Hazaribagh.

‡ I have not met this name elsewhere, though it is stated in the dictionary to be the name of a people and analysed thus, *Pravam-ga* = *Plavam-ga*; I would suggest, however, that it should be read here as *Pra-vangas*, "those who are in front of the Vangas," i. e., the Angas. The *Matsya Purāṇa* reads *Angas* and *Vangas* (cxiii. 44). The Angas are clearly meant. Anga was a distinct and settled country in early times, and its princes were allied with Aryan royal families (M.-Bh., Ādi-P., xcv. 3772 and 3777; and Rāmāy., Ādi-K., x. 1-10). This people are said to have been so called after an eponymous king Anga; he, Vanga, Kalinga, Puṇḍra and Suhma are described with considerable circumstantial detail as the five sons of king Bali's queen (Bali being king of the Eastern region) by the ṛishi Dīrgha-tamas (M.-Bh., Ādi-P., civ. 4217-21; and Hari-V., lxxi. 1684-93). Anga comprised the modern districts of Bhagalpur and Monghyr, excluding the extreme north and south portions. The ancient name Anga dropped out of use and *Bihar* (of Buddhist origin) has usurped its place; is the word *Pra-vanga* here significant of the change? The capital was first called *Mālinī*, and that name is said to have been superseded by the name *Cāmpā* in honour of a king Cāmpa, Loma-pāda's great grandson (Hari-V., xxxi. 1699 and 1700; and M.-Bh., Śānti-P., v. 134-5), but the

the Rangayas,\* the manadas,† the Māna-vartikas,‡

Rāmāy makes a punning connexion between this name and the groves of c'ampaka trees around the town (Ādi-K., xvii. 23); it is the modern Bhagalpur on the south bank of the Ganges (Vana-P., lxxxv. 8156). The tract near C'ampā was called *Sūta-vishaya* (Vana-P., cccvii. 17150-51), that is, "the land of bards or charioteers." The Angas are mentioned twice in the Bhīshma-P. list (ix. 353 and 357); it does not appear why.

\* This is, no doubt, a mistake for *Vangeyas* which the Vāyu Purāṇa reads (xlv. 122), and *Vangas* which the Matsya mentions (cxiii. 44). The Vangas or Vangeyas were the people of *Vanga* or *Banga*, the original of the modern Bengal. Vanga was a distinct country in early times and is frequently mentioned, though the references to it very rarely convey any definite information. It lay beyond Anga, to the south-east; and was connected with Kalinga, for the Angas, Vangas and Kalingas are constantly linked together as people closely allied by race and position, (e. g., Droṇa-P., lxx. 2436). And the Vangas are said to have been so called after an eponymous king Vanga who was Anga's and Kalinga's brother (see last note). Vanga comprised the northern portion of Western and Central Bengal, i. e., the modern districts of Birbhum, Moorshedabad, Bardwan and Nuddea. Its capital in early times does not appear to be mentioned. In later times the name was extended over the whole of Central Bengal, for the Raghu Vaṁśa describes the Vangas as dwelling in the islands of the Ganges delta, warring chiefly in boats, and transplanting their rice seedlings into the fields just as at the present day (iv. 36, 37). In those early times the upper part of the delta consisted of numerous islands separated by large rivers, and the southern part could not have been formed.

† The Vāyu Purāṇa reads *Māladās* (xlv. 122) which appears preferable, and this may mean the people of the modern district of Maldah, in which the old cities of Gauṛ and Paṇḍua are situated, while the town Maldah itself is old (Cunningham, Arch. Surv. Repts., XV. 77). The *Māladās* are mentioned as an eastern people in the M.-Bh. (Śābhā-P., xxix. 1081-2; and also Droṇa-P., vii. 183), but without data enough to say where they were.

‡ The Vāyu Purāṇa reads *Māna-vartinaḥ* (xlv. 122). The M.-Bh. mentions the *Māna-varjakas* (Bhīshma-P., ix. 357) and they appear from the context to be the people meant here. The name seems intended to carry a meaning, either "people who live decorously" according to the text, or "people who are devoid of decorum" according to the last word. Does it refer to a wild tribe in a state of nature? Or does *Māna-vartika* (*Māna-vartin*) mean *Mānābhūm* (*Māna-bhūmi*) a district in West Bengal? The *Mālavānukas* mentioned in the Bhīshma-P. list (ix. 367) belong to a different group altogether.

the *Brahmottaras*,\* the *Pravijayas*,† the *Bhārgavas*,‡

\* The *Matsya Purāṇa* reads *Suhmottaras* (cxiii. 44), which is preferable. This means the "people north of Suhma." *Sūhma* was a well-known country. It was generally classed with *Puṇḍra* (e. g., *M.-Bh.*, *Adi-P.*, cxiii. 4453) and both of them are declared to be closely allied to *Anga*, *Vaṅga* and *Kalinga* by being derived from five eponymous kings of those names who were brothers (*M.-Bh.*, *Adi-P.*, civ. 4217-21; *Hari-Vaṁśa*, xxxi. 1684-93). *Suhma* was near the sea (*Sabhā-P.*, xxix. 1090; and *Raghu-V.*, iv. 34 and 35) and *Dāma-lipta* (*Tāmra-lipta*, the modern *Tamluk*, see next verse) is said to be within its borders in the *Dasa-kumāra-c'arita* (*Story of Mitra-gupta*). *Suhma* therefore corresponded with the modern districts of *Midnapur* and *Bankura* and perhaps also *Purulia* and *Manbhum* in *West Bengal*. *Suhmottara* would be the tract north of that, and was probably the same as *Pra-suhma* (*Sabhā-P.*, xxix. 1090). The *Mahyuttaras* of the *Bhishma-P.* list (ix. 358) seem to be the same people under an error in the spelling.

The reading *Suhmottaráh*, however, is hardly satisfactory in omitting the *Suhmas* and referring indefinitely to the people north of them, and I would suggest that the proper reading should be *Suhmotkaláh*, "the *Suhmas* and *Utkalas*." The *Utkalas* were well-known (though not I believe mentioned often in the *M.-Bh.*), and were a rude tribe of very early origin, for they do not appear to have had any close affinities with the races around them, and the *Hari-Vaṁśa* throws their origin back to the fabulous time of *Ilá* (x. 631-2). Their territory reached on the east the *R. Kapiśá* (*Raghu-V.*, iv. 38), which *Lassen* identifies with the modern *Subarna-rekhá* near the northern boundary of *Orissa* (*Ind. Alt.*, Map), but which I propose to identify with the *R. Cossye* in *Midnapore* (see page 301 note †); and on the west they touched the *Mekalas*, for the two people are coupled together in the *M.-Bh.* (*Bhishma-P.*, ix. 318; see also *Droṇa-P.*, iv. 122, and *Karṇa-P.*, xxii. 882) and *Rámáy.* (*Kishk.-K.*, xli. 14), and the *Mekalas* were the inhabitants of the *Mekala hills*, i. e., the hills bounding *Chhattisgarh* on the west and north. Northward dwelt the *Puṇḍras* and southward the *Kalingas*. Hence *Utkala* comprised the southern portion of *Chuta Nagpur*, the northern *Tributary States of Orissa* and the *Balasore district*. Various derivations have been suggested of the name *Utkala*, but I would only draw attention to some of the above passages where *Utkala* and *Mekala* are placed together as if their names possessed something in common. See also in verse 53.

† The *Matsya Purāṇa* reads the same (cxiii. 44), but I have not found them mentioned elsewhere. They appear from the context to be the same as the *Prádrisheyas* of the *Bhishma-P.* list (ix. 358).

‡ These are mentioned in the *Bhishma-P.* list (ix. 358), and were perhaps an off-lying branch of the *Bhārgava* race in the East; see note to verse 35.

## 44 the Jñeya-mallakas,\* and the Prág-jyotishas,† and

The Hari-Vaṁśa mentions a prince called *Bhārga* or *Bhārgava*, who founded Bhṛigu-bhūmi or Bhārga-bhūmi; and as he was a grandson of Divodāsa king of Benares, his country may perhaps have been in the Eastern region (xxix. 1587 and 1597; and xxxii. 1753). The Bhīṣma-P. list names also *Bhārgas* here (*loc. cit.*).

\* The Vāyu Purāṇa reads *Geyamarthakas* (xlv. 123), and the Matsya *Geyamālavas* (cxiii. 44), and the Bhīṣma-P. list omits the corresponding name (see ix. 358). None of these names are in the dictionary, and I have not met any of them elsewhere.

† Prág-jyotisha was a famous kingdom in early times and is often mentioned in the M.-Bh. The references to it, however, are rather perplexing, for in some passages it is called a Mlec'c'ha kingdom ruled over by king Bhagadatta, who is always spoken of in respectful and even eulogistic terms (*e. g.*, Sabhā-P., xxv. 1000-1; and l. 1834; Udyoga-P., clxvi. 5804; and Kārṇa-P., v. 104-5), and in other passages it is called a Dānava or Asura kingdom ruled over by the demons Naraka and Muru (Vana-P., xii. 488; Udyoga-P., xlvi. 1887-92; Hari-V., cxxi. 6791-9; cxxii. 6873, etc.; and clxxiv. 9790; and Annotations to Kishk.-K., xliii. in Gorresio's Rāmāyaṇa); while in some other passages the allusions seem mixed (*e. g.*, Sabhā-P., xiii. 578-80, which seems to call Bhagadatta a Yavana; and as to this, see *id. l.* 1834-6). The second class of passages occur, I believe, only in descriptions of Kṛishṇa's exploits; they are spoilt by hyperbolic laudation and are probably later than the first class. Prág-jyotisha was placed in the North region (Sabhā-P., xxv. 1000; and Vana-P., ccliii. 15240-2), but was also considered to be in the East as in the text here. North of it seemingly lay tracts called Antar-giri, Vahir-giri and Upa-giri (Sabhā-P., xxv. 1000—xxvi. 1012) which appear to be the lower slopes of the Himalayas and the Terai; and it was close to the mountains for Bhagadatta is called Sailālaya (Strī-P., xxiii. 644). It bordered on the Kirātas and C'inas for they formed his retinue (Sabhā-P., xxv. 1002; Udyoga-P., xviii. 584-5). He also drew his troops from among the people who dwelt in the marshy regions near the sea, *Sāgarānūpa* (Sabhā-P., xxv. 1002; xxxiii. 1268-9; and Kārṇa-P., v. 104-5), and it is even said he dwelt at the Eastern Ocean (Udyoga-P., iii. 74); these marshy regions can only be the alluvial tracts and islands near the mouths of the Ganges and Brahma-putra as they existed anciently. These data indicate that Prág-jyotisha comprised the whole of North Bengal proper. The Rāghu Vaṁśa places it seemingly beyond the Brahma-putra (iv. 81); but Kālidāsa was a little uncertain in distant geography. Its capital was called Prág-jyotisha also. Although the people were mlec'c'has, the Rāmāyaṇa ascribes the founding of this kingdom to Amūrta-rajās, one of the four sons of a great king Kuśa (Adi-K.,

the Madras,\* and the Videhas,† and the Tāmra-

xxxv. 1-6). Amúrta-rayas, as the name is generally written in the M.-Bh., is mentioned there simply as father of the famous king Gaya (e. g., Vana-P., xc. 8528-39; and Droṇa-P., lxvi. 2334, &c).

\* This seems an impossible name here (see verse 36). The Váyu Purāṇa reads *Muṇḍas* instead (xlv. 123) which is permissible. The Muṇḍas are a large Dráviḍian tribe in Chuta Nagpur (Risley's Tribes and Castes of Bengal, II. 101), and are named in the M.-Bh (Bhīshma-P., lvi. 2410).

The Matsya Purāṇa however reads *Puṇḍras* instead (cxiii. 45) and the Bhīshma-P. list also mentions them in this region (ix. 358). This is the best reading, for the Puṇḍras were held to be closely allied to the Angas, Vangas and Suhmas (see page 325 note †, page 326 note \* and page 327 note \*), and should rightly be placed here along with those races, rather than in the South according to verse 45. The name occurs in various forms, *Puṇḍraka* (Sabhá-P., iv. 119), *Paṇḍra*, (Ādi-P., clxxxvii. 7030), *Paṇḍraka* (Ādi-P., clxxxvi. 6992; Sabhá-P., xxxiii. 1270) and *Paṇḍrika* (Sabhá-P., li. 1872). They appear to be used often as if equivalent (e. g., Sabhá-P., xiii. 584), and yet a distinction seems to be made between Puṇḍras and Paṇḍras for they are separately mentioned in the Bhīshma-P. list (ix. 358 and 365); and Puṇḍras, Puṇḍrakas and Paṇḍrikas are all mentioned in one passage (Sabhá-P., li. 1872-4). All, however, appear to have composed one people, and they were not a barbarous nation. From the arrangements of names and descriptions given in various passages (Ādi-P., cxiii. 4453; Sabhá-P., xiii. 584; xxix. 1091-7; Vana-P., li. 1938; Āśvamedh.-P., lxxxii. 2464-5) it appears the Puṇḍras had the Kásis on their north, the Angas, Vangas and Suhmas on their north-east and east; and the Oḍras on their south-east; hence their territory corresponded to the modern Chuta Nagpur with the exception of its southern portions. Their bounds on the south were no doubt the land of the Utkalas (see page 327 note \*). In one passage (Ādi-P., lxvii. 2679) it is stated an ancient king Balína reigned over both Paṇḍra and Matsya; this suggests that their territory extended to near the R. Chumbal anciently (see page 307 note \*), and tends to part them from the Angas, Vangas, &c.

† Videha was a famous country in early times. Cunningham says it appears to have comprised the northern portion of North Behar from the R. Gaṇḍak to the R. Kauśikí or Kosi (Arch. Surv. Repts., XVI. 34 and map); but its western boundary was the Sadá-nira (see page 294 note †), and it seems Videha extended from the Rapti to the Kosi. Northwards it extended close to the Himalayas, and on the south it was bounded by a kingdom, the capital of which was Vaiśálí (Rámáy., Ādi-K., xlvi. 10-11; and xlviii. 21-25), or the modern Besarh which is about 27 miles north of Patna (Arch. Surv. Repts., I. 55; and XVI. 6 and 34). The capital was Mithilá (Rámáy., Ādi-K.,



liptakas,\* the Mallas,† the Magadhas,‡ the Go-

xlix. 9-16; and M.-Bh., Śānti-P., ccxxvii. 12233-8), and this name often designated the country itself, especially in the Rāmāyaṇa. The people were called Videhas (or Videgha, as the earlier form was, see Śata-P. Brāh. I. iv. 14), and also Mithilas (Vana-P., ccliii. 15243). Its kings, who were often highly educated (Śānti-P., ccxxvii. 12215-25), are generally called Janaka, which seems to have been the ordinary royal title (Vana-P., cxxxiii. 10637). Cunningham says the capital was Janakpur, which is now a small town just within the Nepal border, north of where the Mozufferpur and Darbhanga districts meet (Arch. Surv. Repts., XVI. 34 and map), but I have not met this name in Sanskrit works.

\* Or *Tāmra-liptas*. The country and people are often mentioned in the M.-Bh., and both forms of the name are used (Ādi-P., clxxvi. 6993; Sabhā-P., xxix. 1098; and Droṇa-P., lxx. 2436). The name was modified into Tāma-liptaka which the Vāyu Purāṇa reads (xlv. 123), and Tāma-lipta (which occurs in canto lviii. verse 14), and Dāma-lipta (see Story of Mitra-gupta in the Daśa-kumāra-c'arita), and corrupted into the modern *Tamluk*. The town Tamluk is in the Midnapur district near the mouth of the Rupnarayan River. It used to be a famous port during the middle ages of Indian history. The country Tāmra-liptaka corresponded therefore to the eastern part of the present district of Midnapur.

† The Vāyu Purāṇa reads *Mālas* (xlv. 123). This people appear to be the *Mālés* (properly *Māls*) and *Māl Pahāriyas*, two Drāviḍian tribes which now inhabit the Rājmahall and Rāmgarh hills in Western Bengal (Risley's Tribes and Castes of Bengal, II. 51 and 66). The Matsya Purāṇa reads *Sālvās* (cxiii. 45) erroneously.

‡ Or *Māgadhas*. Magadha comprised the present districts of Gaya and Patna. It was a famous kingdom from the earliest times. The Rāmāyaṇa says it was founded by Vasu one of the four sons of a great king Kuśa (Ādi-K., xxxv. 1-9); and the M.-Bh. says it was established by Vṛihad-ratha, who was son of Vasu king of C'edi (Ādi-P., lxiii. 2361-5; and Hari-V., xxxii. 1805), but who is also called an Anga (Śānti-P., xxix. 921-31.) One appears to be an eastern account and the other a western account, but there may be truth in both accounts for there was an interval of eight or twelve generations between the two periods spoken of. Both agree that Giri-vraja was made the capital by the founder of the kingdom, the former says by Vasu (*loc. cit.*), and the latter says by Vṛihad-ratha (Hari-V., cxvii. 6598; Sabhā-P., xx. 798-800). Cunningham has identified Giri-vraja with the modern Giriyok on the Panchana river about 36 miles north-east of Gaya (Arch. Surv. Repts., I. 16 and plate iii). Rāja-griha appears to have been another name of the capital (Ādi-P., cxiii. 4451-2; and Āśvamedh-P., lxxii. 2435-63), but Cun-

mantas, \* are known as the peoples in the East. †

45 Now the other peoples who dwell in the Southern Region ‡ are the Puṇḍras, § and Kevalas, || and Go-lāngulas ¶ also,

ningham identifies it with the modern Raj-gir about 6 miles west of Giryeek (Arch. Surv. Repts., I. 20 and plate iii). The oldest name of this country is said to have been *Kīkaṭa*, which occurs in Rig-Veda III. 53.14 (Muir's Sansk. Texts, II. 362, 363).

\* The *Vāyu Purāṇa* reads *Govindas* (xlv. 123); and the *Matsya Gonarddhas* (cxiii. 45); and the latter people are mentioned in canto lviii. verse 23, but are placed in the South. I have not met with an Eastern people of any of these names elsewhere.

† The *Kūrma Purāṇa* adds *Kāma-rūpa* (xlvii. 38), the modern Kamrup or Gauhati in Assam. It is mentioned in the *Raghu-Vaṁśa* (iv. 84), but not, I believe, in the *Rāmāyaṇa* nor *Mahā-Bhārata*.

‡ *Dakṣiṇāpatha*; this generally means South India below the Vindhya Range, and a line from Anara-kantaka to the north of Orissa.

§ This seems to be erroneous, for the Puṇḍras were not properly in the South, and they have been noticed in their appropriate place in the East (see page 329 note \*). The *Vāyu Purāṇa* reads *Pāṇḍyas* instead (xlv. 124) and so also the *Matsya* (cxiii. 46), and this is, no doubt, the proper reading, for otherwise this nation, which was the most famous and best known in the South, would be omitted from this list. *Pāṇḍya* is often mentioned in the *M.-Bh.*; but not in the *Rāmāy.*, except in the geographical canto (*Kishk. K.*, xli. 15 and 25) which is probably an addition to the original poem. It comprised the modern districts of Madura and Tinnevely. The capital was Mathurā, the modern Madura. The *Pāṇḍyas* belong to the Drāviḍian family, but the *Hari-Vaṁśa* makes them, or more probably the royal house, descendants of the Paurava race; it says *Pāṇḍya*, Kerala, Kola and C'ola were four brothers and gave origin to the four peoples of those names (xxxii. 1832-6).

|| This is, no doubt, a mistake for *Keralas*, which the *Vāyu* (xlv. 124) and *Matsya* (cxiii. 46) *Purāṇas* read; and the *Bhīṣma-P.* list twice (ix. 352 and 365; though the first mention is probably a mistake). They were a forest-tribe (*Sabhā-P.*, xxx. 1174-5) and are placed on the west side by the *Raghu-Vaṁśa* (iv. 53-54). They are said to be descended from an eponymous king Kerala, and to be closely allied to the *Pāṇḍyas*, *C'olas*, &c. in the *Hari-Vaṁśa* (xxxii. 1836). They appear to have occupied the whole of the west coast from Calicut to Cape Comorin.

¶ "The Cow-tails;" a pure fancy, stories of tailed races being common all over the world. It may correspond to *Gonarddhas* in canto lviii, verse 23; but the *Matsya Purāṇa* reads *C'olas and Kūlyas* (cxiii. 46), and the *Vāyu*

46 the *Sailúshas*,\* and *Múshikas*,† the *Kusumas*,‡ the

*C'aulyas* and *Kulyas* (xlv. 124); and the proper reading should, no doubt, be *C'olas* and *Kolas*. The *Hari-Vaṁśa* makes these two tribes closely allied to the *Páṇḍyas* and *Keralas* (see the last two notes).

*C'ola* was a kingdom in early times (*Sabhá-P.*, li. 1891-8) and is often mentioned in the *M.-Bh.* (e. g., *Vana-P.*, li. 1988; and *Sabhá-P.*, xxx. 1174, where *C'odra* is, no doubt, a mistake for *C'ola*; also *Bhíshma-P.*, ix. 367; and *Droṇa-P.* xi. 398). The *Hari-Vaṁśa* says king *Sagara* degraded them (xiv. 784). *C'ola* comprised the modern districts of Tanjore, Trichinopoly, Pudukota and South Arcot.

The *Kolas* are scarcely ever mentioned; yet they appear to be referred to in *Sabhá-P.*, xxx. 1171, and *Áśvamedh.-P.*, lxxiii. 2476-7. Their position is uncertain. Are they to be identified with the *Koravas* or *Kurruas*, who are a vagrant tribe in Madras (Madras Census of 1891, Report, p. 304).

\* Canto lviii, verse 20 mentions the *Sailikas*; and the *Váyu Puráṇa* (xlv. 125) and *Matsya* (cxiii. 47) read *Setukas*. I have not found any of these names elsewhere, but *Saila* occurs in *Vana-P.*, coliii. 15250, perhaps as the name of a country near *Páṇḍya* in the extreme south, so that *Sailikas* might mean its people. Does *Setuka* refer to *Ráma's setu* or Adam's bridge and mean the people who live close to it?

† The *Bhíshma-P.* list mentions these people in the same connexion (ix. 366), and another Southern people called *Múshakas* twice (ix. 366 and 371). Canto lviii mentions instead of them the *Rishikas* in the South (verse 27), and the *Mrishikas* in the South-east (verse 16). I have not found the latter name elsewhere, but the *Rishikas* appear to have been well-known, there being one people of that name in the North (*Sabhá-P.*, xxvi. 1033-6; *Rámáy.*, *Kishk-K.*, xlv. 13; and *Matsya Puráṇa* cxx. 53) and another in the South (*Kishk-K.*, xli. 16; and *Hari-V.*, cxix. 6724-6). The *Matsya Puráṇa* reads *Sútikas* (cxiii. 47) which appears to be erroneous.

‡ Canto lviii omits this people and names *Kumuda* hill (verse 26). The *Váyu Puráṇa* reads *Kumanas* (xlv. 125), and the *Matsya Puráṇa* (cxiii. 47). I have not found any of these names elsewhere. Probably the reading should be *Kurumbas* or *Kurubas*. The ancient *Kurumbas* or *Pallavas* occupied a territory which comprised the modern districts of Madras, Chingleput, North and South Arcot, Salem and the south-east portion of Mysore, with *Kaṇicó*, the modern *Conjeveram*, for their capital, and their power attained its zenith about the 7th cent. A. D., or perhaps a century or two later. After their overthrow they were scattered far and wide and are numerous now in most of the districts south of the R. Kistna in the middle and eastern parts of the Madras Presidency and in Mysore (Madras Census of 1891, Report, pp. 259 and 289).

**Nāma-vāsakas,\* the Mahā-rāshṭras,† Māhishakas‡ and Ka-**

\* This is, no doubt, the same as the *Vana-vāsakas* of the Bhīshma-P. list (ix. 366), with which the Vāyu Purāṇa agrees in reading *Vana-vāsikas* (xlv. 125). As this name simply means "Forest-dwellers," it may include several races, who inhabited the great Southern forests; or it may denote the people of the kingdom called Vana-vāsin, which was founded by Śārāsa in the Dekhan (Hari-V., xcv. 5213 and 5231-3). Perhaps they may be identified with the Banjāris or Lambādis, who are the great travelling traders of South India, and who are supposed to be descendants of Bālin and Sugrīva the Vānara kings in the Rāmāyaṇa (Madras Census of 1891, Report, pp. 186 and 279). The Matsya Purāṇa reads *Vāji-vāsikas* (cxiii. 47), which seems erroneous.

† The people of Mahā-rāshṭra, the modern Mahārāṭas, whom canto lvi also considers to be in the South (verse 23). The name is a late one as I have not found it in the Mahā-Bhārata or Rāmāyaṇa. It was a large kingdom in Hiuen Tshang's time in the 7th cent. A. D., and Cunningham makes it comprise nearly the western half of the Dekhan between the 16th and 20th parallels of latitude, with its capital at Kalyāni (Anc. Geog. of India, I. 553).

The Matsya Purāṇa reads *Nava-rāshṭras* (cxiii. 47), but not well, for this country and people are mentioned in the M-Bh. as one of the kingdoms near the Kurus, and as situated in the south-west of Madhya-deśa or on the borders of Rajputana (Sabhā-P., xxx. 1110; and Virāṭa-P., i. 11-12); and the Hari-Vaṁśa derives them from an eponymous king Nava, making him and the progenitors of the Yaudheyas, Ambashṭhas and Siviś (which were tribes in or near the Panjab) all sons of king Uśinara (xxxi. 1674-8). Nava-rāshṭra is therefore out of place here.

‡ So also in the Bhīshma-P. list (ix. 366), or *Māhishikas* as the Matsya Purāṇa reads (cxiii. 47). These people are, no doubt, the same as the *Māhish-makas* (Āśvamedh.-P., lxxxiii. 2475-7), that is, the people of *Māhish-matī*. *Māhish-matī* was an ancient and famous city (Sabhā-P., xxx. 1125-63) and was situated on the R. Narmadā, at a place where the Vindhya and the Riksha Mts. (the Satpura range) contract the valley (Hari-V., xcv. 5218, &c). Muçukunda was its founder according to that passage, and Mahish-mat according to another (*id.*, lxxxiii. 1846-7). Their descendant was the great Arjuna Kārtavīrya (*ibid.*, 1850-xxxiv. 1890). *Māhish-matī* is identified with the modern Maheswar on the Narmadā in the Imp. Gaz. of India (Vol. X, p. 329), but this hardly agrees with the notices in Sanskrit writings; for Maheswar must have lain within the ancient Avanti (see verse 52), and Avanti was held to be sometimes in the South and sometimes in the West, whereas *Māhish-matī* is never, I believe, placed anywhere but in the South.

47 *lingas*\* on all sides,† *Abhíras*,‡ and *Vaiśikyas*,§ *Aḍhakyas*,||

A more easterly position, such as *Mandhátá* or near there, seems better. At the time of the great war its king was *Nila* and his people were called *Liláyudhas* (*Udyoga*-P., xviii. 592-3) or *Niláyudhas* (*Bhishma*-P., lvi. 2414). Its people were afterwards declared to have become degraded because of the extinction of sacred rites, &c. (*Anuśás*.-P., xxxiii. 2103-4; *Muir's Sanskrit Texts*, I. 177). A *Máhishikī*, which seems to be a river, is mentioned in the *Rámáy.* in this region (*Kishk*.-K., xli. 16.)

\* Or *Kálingas*. *Kalinga* was an ancient kingdom, its kings were famous (*Ādi*-P., lxvii. 2701), and its princesses married into the Aryan royal families (e. g., *Ādi*-P., xcv. 3774-5, & 3780; and *Sánti*-P., iv). Its people were closely allied to the *Angas* and *Vangas*, and the three nations are often linked together (e. g., *Ādi*-P., ccxv. 7820; and *Droṇa*-P., lxx. 2436), and this connexion is emphasized by the allegation that these three and also the *Suhmas* and *Puṇḍras* were descended from five eponymous brothers (see page 325 note †). *Kalinga* comprised all the Eastern coast between the *Utkalas* on the north (*Raghu*-V., iv. 38) and the *Telingas* or *Telugus* on the south. The *R. Vaitaraṇi* (the modern *Byturni*) flowed through it, and the *Mahendra Mts.* (the Eastern *Ghats*) were within its southern limits (*Ādi*-P., ccxv. 7820-24; and *Raghu*-V., iv. 38-43). *Kalinga* therefore comprised the modern province of *Orissa* and the district of *Ganjam* and probably also that of *Vizagapatam*. The *Matsya Purāṇa* makes *Kalinga* extend as far west as the *Amara-kaṇṭaka* hills (clxxxv. 12), but *Kalinga* there is, no doubt, an error for *Kosala*. Certain *Kalingas* have been mentioned in verse 37 above.

† *Sarvaśaḥ*. This seems to be rather a stereotyped phrase. The *Matsya Purāṇa* also reads the same (cxiii. 47). *Púrvaśaḥ* would be a preferable reading, for the *Kalingas* occupied a large part of the Eastern coast and do not appear to have inhabited any other part of the *Dekhan*.

‡ These may have been an off-lying branch of this aboriginal race (see note to verse 35). The *Váyu Purāṇa* reads *Abhíras* here (xlv. 126). The *Matsya Purāṇa* reads *Kárúshas* (cxiii. 48); they are the same as the *Karúshas* mentioned in verse 53; they come in their proper position there and are out of place here.

§ This is not in the dictionary. For *saha vaiśikyá* read either one word or *saha vaiśikyair*. The *Váyu* (xlv. 126) and *Matsya* (cxiii. 48) *Purāṇas* read *Eśhikas* or *Aishikas*; but I have not found any of these names elsewhere.

|| I have not met this name elsewhere and it is not in the dictionary. The *Váyu Purāṇa* (xlv. 126) and the *Matsya* (cxiii. 48) read *Aṭaryas*, and this may mean either "forest-dwellers," or more probably "the people of *Aṭaví*," which is mentioned as a city in the *Dekhan*, but without any data to identify it (*Sabha*-P., xxx. 1176).

and the Savaras,\* the Pulindas,† the Vindhya-mauléyas,‡ the people of Vidarbha§ and the Daṇḍa-

\* The Savaras are an aboriginal tribe, according to some Drávidian, and according to others Kolarian. They are mentioned rarely in the M.-Bh. (Śánti-P., lxv. 2429; clxviii. 6294-6303; clxxiii. 6445; and covii. 7559-61) and Rámáy. (Ādi-K., i. 59; Araṇya-K., lxxvii. 6-32; &c). They are represented in these passages as dwelling in Central India and the Dekhan, as being wicked Dasyus, and as practising evil customs. They are still found scattered about in those parts and also towards Orissa, under the names Sabar, Saur, Suir, &c. In the Madras Presidency they are found chiefly in the Ganjam and Vizagapatam districts (Madras Census of 1891, Report, p. 254.) "The Savars believe their original condition to have been that of a wandering tribe, roaming through the hills of Orissa and Chota Nagpur, living on the fruits of the forest and acknowledging the rule of no recognized chief." (Risley's Castes and Tribes of Bengal, II. 241-246); and this belief agrees, if we extend their range, with the earliest notices of them. See also Cunningham, Arch. Surv. Repts., XVII and XX.

† These people are mentioned again in verse 50 as being also in the West, and there appears to have been a Northern branch of them in the Himalayas (see page 316 note †). This Southern branch seems from the M.-Bh. to have occupied the middle portion of the Dekhan (Sabhá-P., xxx. 1120; and Bhíṣma-P., ix. 369; and Rámáy., Kishk.-K., xli. 17), and extended eastward where they had a great city (Sabhá-P., xxviii. 1068). They were an aboriginal tribe, for they were mleo'o'has (Vana-P., clxxxviii. 12838-40); they became out-castes from not seeing bráhmans (Anuśás.-P., xxxiii. 2104-5); they are called wicked and are said to have practised evil customs (Śánti-P., covii. 7559-61). The Váyu Puráṇa reads *Pulindras* (xlv. 126) erroneously.

‡ The Váyu Puráṇa reads *Vindhya-múlikas* (xlv. 126), which is synonymous, "those who dwell at the foot of the Vindhya mountains," or "the aborigines of the Vindhya mountains." I have not met this name as describing any particular people, and taken in its general meaning it would include the races mentioned in verses 53-55 below: but perhaps it may be read as an adjective to "Pulindas." The Matsya Puráṇa reads *Vindhya-pushikas* (cxiii. 48), which seems erroneous.

§ Vidarbha was one of the most ancient and renowned kingdoms in the Dekhan (Vana-P., xvi and xvii). It comprised the valley of the Payoṣṇi, the modern Purna and the middle portion of the Tapti (see page 299 note † and Vana-P., oxx. 10289-90), and corresponded to the western part of the modern *Berar* and the valley-country west of that. It is said to have been founded by a king Vidarbha who built a city called Vidarbhá (Hari-V., cxvii. 6598 and 6606-8; and Vana-P., lxxii), which seems to have been the same

48 kas,\* the Paurikas,† and the Maulikas,‡ the Āsmakas,§

as Kuṇḍina the capital (Vana-P. lxxii. and Hari-V., civ. 5800-7; cxviii. 6661-2). Its most famous king was Bhīshmaka, who held the title "king of the Dekhan" (*id.*, cxvii. 6590-1). The people were *Bhojas* (Udyoga-P., xlvii. 1881) or perhaps only the royal family was so called (*id.*, clvii. 5350-1; Sabhā-P., xiii. 535-8), and so also in the Raghu-Vaṁśa with reference to a period many generations anterior (vi. 59 and 69; and vii.). The name *Bhoja* seems to have more than one application, for the *Bhojas* together with the *Andhakas* and *Vṛishnis* belonged to the *Yādava* race (Hari-V., xciv. 5181-5204), and the name appears to have been applied also in a much wider sense to *Kshattriyas* descended from *Yayāti* (Sabhā-P., xiii. 566-71).

\* The *Daṇḍakas* are mentioned in the M.-Bh. (Sabhā-P., xxx. 1169) and were the inhabitants of the forest region called *Daṇḍakāranya*. *Daṇḍaka* originally was the name of the immense forest, where *Rāma* went in banishment, and which is described in the *Rāmāy.* as covering the whole of Central India from Bundelkhand on the north to southward of the Godaveri (*Journal*, R. A. S., 1894, p. 211); but as this forest was gradually cleared away by the spread of the *Aryan* colonies, its limits diminished till at last *Daṇḍaka* denoted only the country around the sources of the Godaveri and lower part of the *Tapti* (M.-Bh., Sabhā-P., xxx. 1169; Vana-P., lxxxv. 8183-4). It could only have been at this stage that its inhabitants could well have been described by the name *Daṇḍakas*, and it is no doubt the people of that moderate area who are meant here. To account for the name the *Hari-Vaṁśa* has provided an eponymous king *Daṇḍaka* who made *Daṇḍakāranya* (x. 637-9).

† The people of *Purikā*. This may be either the famous town *Puri* in Orissa, or the town *Purikā* which *Muc'ukunda* is said to have built on the northern slope of the *Riksha* Mts. in the kingdom of *Māhish-matī* (Hari-V., xov. 5220-8); but the latter seems more probable, judging from the context. For *Māhish-matī*, see page 333 note †. The *Vāyu Purāṇa* reads *Paunikas*, (xlv. 127); is this to be connected with *Poonah*, south-east of *Bombay*? I have not met it elsewhere.

‡ The *Vāyu Purāṇa* reads *Maunikas* (xlv. 127); and *Mauleyas* are mentioned in Sabhā-P., li. 1871; but I have not found any of these names elsewhere.

§ This as a people is not in the dictionary. The *Vāyu Purāṇa* reads *Āsmakas* (xlv. 127), but *Āsmaka* seems to be the proper form. These people are mentioned in the *Rāmāy.* (*Kishk.-K.*, xli. 17) and M.-Bh. (*Droṇa-P.*, xxxvii. 1605-8); and are placed in the middle of India by canto lviii. verse 7. They may have been the descendants of *Āsmaka*, who was the son of king *Kalmāsha-pēda* *Saudāsa's* queen *Madayanti* by *Vasishtha* (*Ādi-P.*, cxxii.

Bhoga-vardhanas, \* Naishikas, † Kuntalas, ‡ Andhas, § Udbhi-  
 49 das, || Vana-dárakas¶; these \*\* are the peoples of the countries  
 of the Southern region. ††

4736-7; and clxxvii. 6777-91), and who founded the town Paudanya (*ibid.*, 6791). A queen Ásmakī is mentioned in the Lunar line (*id.*, xc. 3766).

\* I have not found this name elsewhere. Perhaps it may be connected with the Southern Utsava-sanketas (Bhishma-P., ix. 368; and see page 319 note †).

† This is not in the dictionary. It much resembles the *Násikyās* of canto lviii. verse 24, who are, no doubt, the people of Nasik, north-east of Bombay; but they seem to be intended by *Násikyāvas* in verse 51. Naishadhas can hardly be meant, for they are named in verse 54 and were not in South India. The *Váyu Purāna* reads *Nairṇikas* (xlv. 127) which somewhat resembles the *Nairritas* of the Bhishma-P. list (ix. 359).

‡ A people of this name have been mentioned in verse 32, as dwelling in Madhya-desa. The Kuntalas here were in the Dekhan and are the same as those mentioned in Bhishma-P., ix. 367, and Karna-P., xx. 779. It appears Kuntala lay in the region between Belgaum and Bellary (Arch. Surv. of W. India, No. 5 by J. F. Fleet, p. 6; and No. 10 by J. Burgess, p. 72 note).

§ The *Váyu Purāna* reads *Andhras* (xlv. 127), which is, no doubt, right. Andhas are mentioned in the M.-Bh. (Udyoga-P., xviii. 586; and Bhishma-P. x. 357), but mistakenly for Andhakas and Andhras respectively. The Andhras or Andhras were a rude race in early times (Sabhá-P., iv. 119; xxx. 1175; xxxiii. 1270; and Vana-P., li. 1989); but they established a kingdom during the third and second centuries B. C. Andhra was a kingdom also in Huen Thsang's time in the 7th century A.D., and comprised the eastern portion of the Nizam's territories, with its capital at Warangal, according to Cunningham (Anc. Geog. of India). Another capital was Dhenukákāṭa, which is Dharaṇikōṭa near Amaravati on the Kistna (Arch. Surv. of W. India, No. 10 by J. Burgess, p. 32). Andhra is said to be probably the same as Telinga (*ibid.*, p. 72 note; and dictionary), and is taken to be the Sanskrit name for Telugu in the Madras Census Report. Telugu is the speech of the region extending from a parallel of latitude a little north of Madras northward as far as Ichapur in Ganjam; it does not penetrate into Mysore nor the western limits of Anantapur and Bellary, but is spoken by many of the inhabitants of the Nizam's Dominions and the Central Provinces (Report, p. 188).

|| This is not in the dictionary and I have not met with it elsewhere.

¶ "Wood-splitters." The *Váyu Purāna* reads *Nalakálukas* (xlv. 127), other forms of which are *Nalakánanas* and *Nabhakánanas* (dict.).

\*\* The *Kúrma Purāna* adds *Magadhas* (xlvii. 38) mistakenly; they are mentioned in their proper place in verse 44.

†† For *Dakshidtyás* read *Dakshináyás*? The *Matsya Purāna* keeps pace



Hear from me *the names of the Western peoples*. The  
 Súrýarakas,\* the Kálíbalas,† and the Durgas,‡ and the  
 50 Anákaṭas,§ and the Pulindas,|| and the Sumínas,¶ the

with the text as far as the "Daṇḍakas" and then jumps at once, without any intimation, to the Western peoples beginning with the "Kulíyas" who correspond to the "Pulindas" of verse 50.

\* This is obviously a mistake for *Súrpárakas*, which the *Váyu Puráṇa* reads (xlv. 128). *Súrpáraka* or *Súrparaka* (both forms seem correct, though the dictionary gives only the latter) was the country in the West where *Ráma Jámadagnya* dwelt (*Vana-P.*, lxxv. 8185); though it is also placed in the South (*Sabhá-P.*, xxx. 1169; and *Vana-P.*, lxxxviii. 8337), because it was near the Southern sea in the Western region (*Sánti-P.*, xlix. 1778-82). It bordered on the sea near *Prabhása* (*Vana-P.*, cxviii. 10221-7), which is the modern *Somnath* in the peninsula of *Káthiáwár*; it included the country around the mouth of the *Narmadá* (*Anuśás-P.*, xxv. 1736), and the mouth of that river was so specially connected with *Ráma* that it was called *Jámadagnya* (*Matsya Puráṇa*, cxiii. 33-34). He built the city *Súrpáraka* there (*Hari-V.*, xvi. 5300), and Dr. Burgess has identified it with the small modern town *Supara* near *Bassein*, north of *Bombay*. The country *Súrpáraka* therefore comprised the littoral tract from about *Bassein* to about the *R. Narmadá*. (*Arch. Surv. of W. India*, No. 10 p. 81). The proper reading in *Rámáy. Kishk.-K.*, xliii. 5, should, no doubt, be "the *Súrpárakas* also" instead of "the extensive towns" (*Gorresio's Edition, Annotations*).

† This is not in the dictionary. The *Váyu Puráṇa* reads *Kolavanas* (xlv. 128), but I have not found either name elsewhere. Perhaps this is to be connected with *Kalwan*, a town about 37 miles north of *Nasik* (which is mentioned in page 339, note ||).

‡ This is not in the dictionary and I have not found the name elsewhere; but the *Durgas* are mentioned in the *Bhishma-P.* list (ix. 359). Perhaps this is to be connected with *Dúngar-pur*, a town and state about 90 miles north-east of *Ahmedabad*.

§ Or *Anikaṭas*, or *O'ánikaṭas*; neither is in the dictionary. The *Váyu Puráṇa* reads *Kálítakas* (xlv. 128); but I have not found these words elsewhere. These names suggest *Calicut*, but that is too far south to be admissible here in the Western region.

|| See note to verse 47 above. This branch would be among the hills south-west of *Malwa* or the southern portion of the *Aravalli* hills probably. The *Váyu Puráṇa* reads *Puleyas* (xlv. 129), and the *Matsya Kulíyas* (cxiii. 49); but I have not met with either name elsewhere.

¶ This is not in the dictionary. The *Váyu Puráṇa* reads *Surdás* (xlv. 129), and the *Matsya Sirdás* (cxiii. 49); but I have not found any of these words

Rúpapas,\* and the Svápadas,† and the Kurumins,‡ and  
 51 all the Kāṭhāksharas,§ and the others *who are called* Ná-  
 sikyávas,|| and the others *who live* on the north bank of the  
 Narmadá,¶ the Bhíru-kaśóhas,\*\* and the Máheyas,†† and

elsewhere. Are these two names to be identified with *Israel*? There was an ancient Jewish colony, the modern Beni-Israel, on the Bombay coast before the 2nd cent. A. D. (Hunter's Indian Empire, p. 234).

\* The Váyu (xlv. 129), and the Matsya (cxiii. 49) Purāṇas read *Rúpasas*. I have not met either name elsewhere. The Bhishma-P. list mentions *Rúpa-vdhikas* (ix. 351).

† This as the name of a people is not in the dictionary; but *Sva-pac'a* "dog-cooking," (= *Sva-páka*, which would not suit the metre) occurs, as the name of a degraded tribe (Manu, x. 19 and 51). Tri-sanku is said to have associated with the *Sva-pákas*, when discarded by his father (Hari-V., xii. 721-3). The Váyu Purāṇa (xlv. 129) and the Matsya (cxiii. 49) read *Tápa-sas*, which resembles the *Tápasáśramas* placed in the south region by canto lviii. verse 27, which might mean the descendants of ascetics.

‡ This is not in the dictionary. The Váyu Purāṇa reads *Turasitas* (xlv. 129), but I have not met either name elsewhere. The Matsya reads *Tuttirikas* (cxiii. 49), which resembles the *Tittiras* mentioned in Bhishma-P., l. 2084 but there are no data to identify them.

§ This is not in the dictionary. The Váyu Purāṇa reads *Paraksharas* (xlv. 129), and the Matsya *Kāraskaras* (cxiii. 49). The *Párasávas* of canto lviii verse 31 appear to be the same people. I have not met with any of these names elsewhere, except *Kāraskaras* in Sabhá-P., xlix. 1804, but the *Párasa-vas* might mean a tribe which claimed descent from Paraśu-Ráma.

|| This is not in the dictionary. The Váyu Purāṇa reads "*Násikyās* and others" (xlv. 130); this agrees with the *Násikyās* of canto lviii, verse 24 except that the latter are placed in the South. The *Násikyās* are, no doubt, the people of Nasik, which is an ancient and sacred city north-east of Bombay. The Matsya Purāṇa reads "and others *who are called* *Vásikas*" (cxiii. 50), but I have not met this name elsewhere.

¶ The Váyu Purāṇa (xlv. 130) and the Matsya (cxiii. 50) say "within the Narmadá."

\*\* Or *Bhāru-kaś'has* as the Matsya Purāṇa reads (cxiii. 50). These are, no doubt, the same as the *Bhrigu-kaś'has* of canto lviii. verse 21. The word is the Greek Barugaza and survives in the modern Bharuch or Broach, a large town near the mouth of the Narmadá (Anc. Geog. of India). The Váyu Purāṇa reads *Bhānu-kaś'has* (xlv. 130) erroneously. None of these names occur I believe in the Rámáyana or Mahá-Bhárata.

†† These are, no doubt, the people who dwelt along the R. Mahi (see page

52 the *Sárasvatas*\* also, and the *Káśmíras*,† and the *Su-rásh-  
tras*,‡ and the *Avantyas*,§ and the *Arbudas*|| also. These  
are the Western peoples.

53 Hear the inhabitants of the *Vindhya Mountains*.¶ The

294, note §) north of Baroda. The *Mdhikas* of the *Bhishma-P.* list (ix. 354) are no doubt the same.

\* So also the *Matsya Purāṇa* (cxiii. 50). "The people who dwell along the R. *Saras-vatī*," which is, no doubt, the small river of that name that flows into the sea at *Prabhāsa*, the modern *Somnath*, in the peninsula of *Káthiáwār* (*Vana-P.*, lxxxii. 5002-4; and *Salya-P.*, xxxvi. 2048-51). They are not the same as the *Sárasvatas* of canto lviii. verse 7, who were in *Madhya-deśa*. The *Váya Purāṇa* reads instead "*Sahasas* and *Sáśvatas*" (xlv. 130); I have not found either name elsewhere, but the *Sáśikas* of the *Bhishma-P.* list (ix. 354) are, no doubt, the same as the second of these.

† This name is altogether out of place here, and the *Káśmíras* have been mentioned in their proper position in verse 41. The *Váyu Purāṇa* reads *Kac'c'hvīyas* instead (xlv. 131) and the *Matsya Kac'c'hikas* (cxiii. 51), which indicate the correct reading. They are the people of *Kac'c'ha* (see canto lviii. verse 28) the modern *Kachh* or *Kutch*.

‡ *Su-ráshtra* is a country frequently mentioned in the *M.-Bh.*, but the references seldom convey any definite information. It included the peninsula of *Káthiáwār* and the country around the *G. of Cambay*—that is, not quite all the modern territory called *Gujarat* (*Vana-P.*, lxxxviii. 8344-9). It is very rarely alluded to in the *Rámáy.* (see once in *Adi-K.*, xii. 23). The old name survives in the town *Surat* near the mouth of the *Tapti*.

§ This form is not given in the dictionary; read *Avantýás* for *Avantýás*? They are the people of *Avanti*; see note to verse 55 where the *Avantis* are mentioned again, and more appropriately, for canto lviii. verse 22 places them in the *Tortoise's* right side, i.e., the South: but they were considered to be in both regions.

The *Váyu Purāṇa* (xlv. 131) and the *Matsya* (cxiii. 51) read *Anartas*, which is perhaps better, as they are placed by canto lviii. verse 30 in the *Tortoise's* right hind-foot. *Anarta* was the country which had for its capital *Dváraká* or *Dvára-vatī* or *Kuśa-sthali*, the modern *Dwarka* on the sea-shore at the extreme west of the peninsula of *Kathiáwar* (*Sánti-P.*, cccxli. 12955; *Hari-V.*, cxlii. 6265-6). It was *Krishna's* special kingdom, but it was founded long before (*Hari-V.*, x. 642-9; and *xciv.* 5163-9).

|| The people of *Arbuda*, the modern *Mt. Abu* near the south end of the *Aravalli* hills.

¶ For *Vindha-nivásināḥ* read *Vindhya-nivásināḥ*; see verse 55. *Vindhya* is used here in its general and wider meaning, as denoting the whole mountain-

Sārajas,\* and Karúshas,† and the Keralas,‡ and Utkalas,§

chain from Gujarat eastwards, and not in the precise sense given it in verses 21-23, because the Naishadhas, Avantis and other western people are included in this group.

\* I have not met with this name elsewhere, and it is not in the dictionary. The Vāyu Purāṇa (xlv. 132) and the Matsya (cxiii. 52) read *Málava*s, which is no doubt correct. *Málava* is the modern *Málwa*; and the people are generally mentioned in the M.-Bh. as a tribe rather than as a settled nation (e.g., *Sabhā-P.*, xxxiii. 1270; li. 1871; and *Vana-P.*, ccliii. 15256). *Málava* does not appear to have been so extensive however as *Málwa* and, as this passage indicates, denoted rather the upper portion of that region bordering on the *Vindhyas*; west of *Avanti*.

† The name is also written *Kārusha*, *Kārúsha* and *Kārushaka*. This people constituted a powerful nation under king *Danta-vakra* in the *Pāṇḍavas'* time (*Sabhā-P.*, xiii. 575-7; and *Hari-V.*, xci. 4963); but they seem to have consisted of several tribes (*Udyoga-P.*, iii. 81) and were not looked upon as closely allied to the races around them, for their origin is carried directly back to an eponymous ancestor *Karúsha*, a son of *Manu Vaivasvata*, in the *Hari-Vaṁśa* (x. 614; and xi. 658). The position of *Karúsha* is indicated by the following allusions. It is linked with *C'edi* and with *Káśi* (*Ādi-P.*, cxxiii. 4796; *Bhishma-P.*, ix. 348; liv. 2242; lvi. 2415; cxvii. 5446; and *Karṇa-P.*, xxx. 1231), and with the *Vátsyas* or *Vatsas* (*Dropa-P.*, xi. 396; see page 307, note\*); it was not a very accessible country (*Sabhā-P.*, li. 1864); and here it is said to rest on the *Vindhyas*. Moreover *Danta-vakra* acknowledged *Jarásandha*, king of *Magadha* (see page 330 note †) as his suzerain (*Sabhā-P.*, xiii. 575-7; and *Hari-V.*, xci. 4963). *Karúsha* therefore was a hilly country, south of *Káśi* and *Vatsa*, between *C'edi* and *Magadha*; that is, it comprised the hilly country of which *Rewa* is the centre, from about the *R. Ken* on the west as far as the confines of *Behar* on the east. I have discussed *Karúsha* in a paper on "Ancient *Oṣḍi*, *Matsya* and *Karúṣa*" in the *Bengal Asiatic Society's Journal*, 1895, Part I. p. 249.

‡ This must be incorrect, for the *Keralas* were a well-known people in the South; see note to *Kevalas* in verse 45. The *Vāyu Purāṇa* (xlv. 132) and *Matsya* (cxiii. 52) read *Mekalas*, which is no doubt right. They are mentioned in the M.-Bh. (*Bhishma-P.*, ix. 348; and li. 2103) and occupied the *Mekala* hills and the hilly country around. The *Mekala* hills are the hills in which the *R. Sone* rises (*Rámáy.*, *Kishk.-K.*, xl. 20), and which bound *Ohhattigarh* on the west and north. These people are often coupled, as here, with the *Utkalas*.

§ See page 327, note \*. *Utkala* had a wide extension and falls within this group as well as within the Eastern group.

the Uttamarṇas,\* and the Daśārṇas,† the Bhojyas,‡ and  
54 the Kishkindhakas,§ the Tośālas,|| and the Kośālas,¶

\* The Uttamas are mentioned in the Bhīshma-P. list (ix. 348) and are no doubt the same people. The Matsya Purāṇa reads *Auṇḍrāmdśhas* (cxiii. 52). A people called *Urddhva-karṇas* are mentioned in canto lviii. verse 16. I have not, however, found any of these names elsewhere.

† This people formed a well-known kingdom in early times (Ādi-P., cxiii. 4449; Vana-P., lxix. 2707-8; and Udyoga-P., cxc.-cxciii), and inhabited the country watered by the R. Daśārṇā, the modern Dasan, a tributary of the Jumna. They are named thrice in the Bhīshma-P. list (ix. 348, 350 and 363), which seems inexplicable. They are mentioned both in the Eastern and in the Western regions in the accounts of Bhīma's and Nakula's campaigns (Sabhā-P., xxviii. 1068-5; and xxxi. 1189); the former of these allusions is correct, but the latter seems to be an error. The capital was Vidiśā, see page 343, note †.

‡ Or better, *Bhojas*, as the Vāyu (xlv. 182) and Matsya (cxiii. 52) Purāṇas read. This name, as mentioned in page 335, note §, seems to have had more than one application. Bhojas as a Yādava tribe dwelt in Kṛishṇa's kingdom in Su-rāshṭra; and Bhojas inhabited Mrīttikāvatī, which seems from the various references to it to have been situated somewhere on the north-eastern limits of the modern Gujarat (Vana-P., xiv. 629; xx. 791; cxvi. 10172-6; ccliii. 15245; Mausala-P., vii. 244-5; and Hari-V., xxxvii. 1980-7; and xxxviii. 2014). These may be the Bhojas mentioned in the text, inhabiting the extreme western end of the Vindhya range.

§ Or better, *Kishkindhakas*, as the Matsya Purāṇa reads (cxiii. 52). They are no doubt the same as the *Kaishkindhyas* of canto lviii. verse 18; but they cannot have any reference to Kishkindhyā in the Rāmāy., for that country lay far to the south of the Godavari (see *Journal*, R. A. S., 1894, pp. 255, &c.), and is referred to in M.-Bh., Sabhā-P., xxx. 1122. The Kishkindhakas mentioned in the Hari-Vaṁśa (xiv. 784) may be the people intended here, but there appear to be no data to identify them.

|| The Matsya Purāṇa reads *Tośālas* (cxiii. 53). They are not in the dictionary, but *Toshala* and *Tosala* are given doubtfully. I have not however found any of these names elsewhere.

¶ These are the people of Dakṣiṇa Kosala or Mahā-Kosala, the modern Chhattisgarh. In the *Journal*, R. A. S., 1894, p. 246, some reasons have been given for placing the Pañc'āpsaras lake, where Rāma spent ten years of his exile, in this region. May one hazard the conjecture that it was in consequence of his long residence here, that a colony from North Kosala invaded this region, established a kingdom here and gave their name to this country? The connexion was ancient (Āśvamedh.-P., lxxxii. 2464-5).

the Traipuras,\* and the Vaidísas,† the Tumburas,‡ and the Tumbulas,§ the Paṭus,|| and the Naishadhas,¶

\* The people of Tripurá, the modern Tewar, on the R. Narmadá. It was a famous city (Sabhá-P., xxx. 1164; Vana-P., ccliii. 15246) deriving its name from a legend that the demons had a triple city *Tri-pura* here, made of gold, silver and iron, and Śiva destroyed it at the intercession of the gods; this is a favourite subject with the poets (Kārṇa-P., xxxiii and xxxiv; and see Aitareya-Brahm., I. iv. 23 and 24, for the story in an older form); see also Cunningham's Arch. Surv. Repts., VIII. 124; IX. 54-55; and, XXI. 23; but his connexion of Tripurá with C'edi in early times is mistaken, see paper on "Ancient Cēdi, Matsya and Karūṣa" in *Journal*, Bengal Asiatic Society, 1895, Part I. p. 249.

† For *Vaidísas* read *Vaidiśás*. These are the people of *Vidiśá*. It was a famous town, the capital of the country Daśárṇa, and situated on the R. Vetrá-vatí, the modern Betwa, a little way east of Ujjain (Megha-D., i. 24, 25 and 28). It is probably to be identified with the modern Bhilsa, or rather with Bes-nagar the ancient capital which is close to Bhilsa (Cunningham's Stupa of Bharhut, 132, &c). The Váyu Purāṇa reads *Vaidikas* (xlv. 133), which seems erroneous, though the Vaidísas are really included among the Daśárṇas in the last verse.

‡ These are mentioned as a wild aboriginal tribe who inhabited the slopes of the Vindhya Mountains in the Hari-Vaṁśa (v. 310-11). The Matsya Purāṇa reads *Tumuras* (cxiii. 53), and the *Tumbumas* (Bhishma-P., I. 2084) may be the same.

§ The Váyu Purāṇa reads *Tumuras* (xlv. 133); see the last note. The Matsya reads *Tumbaras* (cxiii. 53). This is no doubt a tribe closely allied to the last.

|| This people seems to be the same as the *Paṭac'aras*, who are mentioned several times in the M.-Bh.; see page 309, note \*. The Váyu Purāṇa reads *Shatśuras* (xlv. 133), and the Matsya *Paṭgamas* (cxiii. 53); but I have not met either of these names elsewhere.

¶ The people of Nishadha; the *Nishadhas*, as the Váyu Purāṇa reads (xlv. 133). This country is chiefly known from the story of its king Nala (Vana-P., liii.-lxxix); otherwise it is rarely mentioned. The chief data for fixing its position are Nala's remarks to his wife when he is banished from his kingdom (*id.*, lxi. 2317-9); and, as stated in note † to page 299, it seems to me the view which he describes could only be obtained completely from a position on the Satpura Mountains about longitude 75° E. The text says also Nishadha rested on the Vindhya Mountains. Hence it may be inferred that Nishadha comprised the country south of the Vindhyas between long. 74° and 75°, with Avanti to the north-east and Vidarbha to the south-east. Its

§ 5. Annajas,\* and the Tushṭi-káras,† the Vírāhotras,‡ and the Avantia.§ All these peoples dwell on the slopes of the Vindhya Mountains.

capital was probably in the Tapti valley; Damayantí in wandering from it found her way north-eastward to C'edi (see note to C'edi in canto lviii. verse 16).

\* I have not met this name elsewhere and it is not in the dictionary. The Matsya Purāṇa reads *Arūpas* (cxiii. 54) which seems erroneous. The Váyu Purāṇa reads *Anūpas* (xlv. 134) which is no doubt correct. Anūpa means "a country situated near water," or "a marshy country." It was applied to various tracts near the sea, generally in the combination *sāgaránūpa*, e.g., in Bengal (Sabhā-P., xxv. 1002; xxix. 1101; and xxxiii. 1268-9); in or near the Pāṇḍya kingdom in the South (Udyoga-P., xviii. 578); in the north and west of the peninsula of Kathiawar (Hari-V., cxiii. 6361-9; and cxiv. 6410-11); and on the western coast generally (Udyoga-P., iii. 81); but the name was more specially applied to a tract on the west coast which constituted a kingdom in the Pāṇḍavas' time (Sabhā-P., iv. 123). The only country which rests on the Vindhya and borders on the sea is the tract on the east of the G. of Cambay, north of the Narmadā, and this no doubt was Anūpa. It is also indicated that Su-rāshṭra, Anūpa and Anarta were contiguous countries, and that Anūpa lay beyond and south of Su-rāshṭra (Hari-V., xiv. 5142-80). When the kings of Máhiś-matí (see page 338, note †) were powerful, the valley of the lower Narmadā and Anūpa would naturally fall under their sway, and this no doubt explains why Kārtavírya is called "lord of Anūpa" (Vana-P., cxvi. 10189-90), and king Níla also (Bhishma-P., xcv. 4210).

† I have not found this name elsewhere, and it is not in the dictionary. The reading should no doubt be *Tuṇḍikeras* as the Váyu Purāṇa reads (xlv. 134). A Tuṇḍikera king is mentioned in the M.-Bh. (Droṇa-P., xvii. 691), and the Tuṇḍikeras (Karṇa-P., v. 138); and the Tuṇḍikeras are said in the Hari-Vaṁśa to be a branch of the Haihaya race (xxxiv. 1895). There is a town called Tendukhera a little north of the Narmadā at nearly long. 79° E.; and as this site suits the text, it may be presumed these people occupied that position in the Narmadā valley. The Matsya Purāṇa reads *Sauṇḍikeras* (cxiii. 54), not quite correctly.

‡ The Váyu Purāṇa (xlv. 134) and the Matsya (cxiii. 54) read *Vítihotras* which is no doubt correct. Vítihotra was a famous Haihaya king, and the Vítihotras were a branch of that race (Hari-V., xxxiv. 1895). They are called *Vítihotras* in the M.-Bh. (Droṇa-P., ix. 2436). Being Haihayas, they probably occupied a part of the upper Narmadā valley.

§ They have been mentioned already in verse 52. Avanti had the Narmadā flowing through it (Sabhā-P., xxx. 1114; and Vana-P., lxxix. 8354-8).

56 Next I will tell thee also *the names of the countries which rest against the Mountains.\** The Niháras,† and the Hamsa-márgas,‡ the Kurus,§ the Gurganas,||

and was on the lower portion of that river, for it is placed in the South in the first of these passages, and in the West in the second passage and in verse 52. It appears to have been bounded by the Riksha Mountains (Satpura range) on the south (Vana-P., lxi. 2317), but its limits on the north are not clear. Its capital, though not mentioned in the M.-Bh., was Ujjayinī or Viśálā, the modern Ujjain, in later times (Megha-D., i. 31). Avanti therefore comprised the region of the sources of the Chambal and the country south-westward as far as the Satpura range. Two brothers Vinda and Anuvinda are often named as the kings of Avanti in the M.-Bh. (Udyoga-P., clxv. 5753; Droṇa-P., xcix. 3682-92; and Karṇa-P., xiii. 498-9), but they were also Kaikeyas and led Kaikeya troops (*ibid.*, 492-524). May it be inferred a branch of the Kaikeyas had invaded and conquered Avanti?

\* *Parvatāśrayin.* These mountains are it seems only the Himalaya range. This group repeats many of the tribes mentioned in verses 40-42.

† I have not met this name elsewhere. Are these the modern Newárs, who inhabit the great valley of Nepal and its vicinity, and who were the owners of the country prior to the Gurkhá invasion (*Journal*, Beng. As. Socy., Vol. LXIII, Part I, 213, 214 and 217). The Váyu Purāṇa reads *Nigarharas* (xlv. 135); but I have not found it elsewhere. The Matsya reads *Nirāhāras* (cxiii. 55) which seems erroneous.

‡ See page 323 note †. The Matsya Purāṇa reads *Sarvagās* (cxiii. 55) which seems erroneous.

§ These are probably the Uttara or Northern Kurus, for the Kurus of Madhya-deśa could not properly be described as dwelling among mountains. They seem to have been the stock from which the Kurus of Madhya-deśa separated off, for the period when Dhṛita-rāshṭra and Pāṇḍu were born is described as a golden age, in which both branches of the Kurus engaged in happy rivalry (Ādi-P., cix. 4337-46); but the wistful recollections of their ancient home idealized it afterwards into a blissful land, where fancy gave itself free scope (Rāmāy., Kiśk.-K., xlv. 82-115). They seem to have occupied the uppermost valleys of the Indus near its sources, with Kailāsa lying beyond (Vana-P., cxlv. 11035-35); and fervid imagination also placed them close to Mount Meru on its north side (Bhīshma-P., vi. 207-8; and vii. 254), or in the region Hari-varsha, and declared men could not enter their sacred land (Sabhā-P., xvii. 1054-8). They are described as living in primitive happiness, and women had the utmost freedom there (cxvii. 4719-23; and Rāmāy., *loc. cit.*).

|| This is not in the dictionary and I have not met it elsewhere. Are these



57 the Khasas,\* and the Kunta-právaranas,† the  
 Ur̥nas,‡ the Dárvas,§ the Sakṣitrakas,|| the Tri-

people the modern Gurungs, an important tribe of Tatar race, who dwell now throughout Nepal, but whose territory was formerly the country about Lamzung, Ghandrung and Siklis, west of the great valley of Nepal (*Journal*, Bengal Asiatic Society, Vol. LXIII. Part I. 213, 217 and 223-229; Risley's *Castes and Tribes of Bengal*, I. 304)? The *Váyu Purāṇa* reads *Tanganas* here (xlv. 135), after having named them previously (*ibid.*, 120); see verse 41. The *Matsya* reads *A-pathas* (cxiii. 55), which seems erroneous.

\* The Khasas or Khasās are generally mentioned as a half-civilized tribe outside India, along with Śakas, Daradas, &c. (Sabhá-P., li. 1859; Droṇa-P., xi. 399; and cxi. 4846-7) They are said to have been defeated and degraded by Sagara (Hari-V., xiv. 784), and were considered mleç'c'has (*id.*, xc. 6440-1; see also Muir's *Sansk. Texts*, II. 482). The Khasas in the text, however, may perhaps be identified with the Khas, who were formerly a small clan but have developed into the predominant military order of the kingdom of Nepal through intermarriages with bráhmans (*Journal*, Bengal Asiatic Society, Vol. LXIII. Part I. 217-223). See canto lviii. verse 6.

† I have not found this name elsewhere. The *Váyu Purāṇa* reads *Kuśa* instead of Kunta (xlv. 136), which does not seem satisfactory. The proper reading should no doubt be *Karṇa-právaranas*, "those who cover themselves with their ears," a people mentioned several times in the M.-Bh. (Sabhá-P., li. 1875; and Bhishma-P., li. 2103). They are placed in the South in the story of Sahadeva's conquests (Sabhá-P., xxx. 1170) and among the Kirátas in the Eastern region in the *Rámáy.* (Kishk.-K. xl. 29); but it seems permissible to identify them with the *Ulúkas*, for a story is told about an *Ulúka* named *Právdru-karṇa* (Vana-P., cxviii. 13334). The *Ulúkas* dwelt in the Himalayas (*ibid.*), and formed a kingdom in the Pāṇḍavas' time (Udyoga-P., clix. and clx), but it seems impossible to fix their position more definitely than somewhere in Nepal (Sabhá-P., xxvi. 1014-20). The word *Karṇa-právarana* is also used as an adjective, for Hanúmán saw female Rákshasas in Lanká "three-eared and pin-eared, long-eared, ear-less, and one-eyed and one-eared, and having their ears as a covering" (*Rámáy.*, Sund.-K., xvii. 24); and it was an ancient belief that there were people with immense ears which covered their bodies (Plin., iv. 13; and vii. 2; Mandeville's *Travels*, chap. xix). The *Matsya* P. mentions *Kutha-právaranas* and *Karṇa-právaranas* (cix. 56 and 58).

‡ This people have been already mentioned in verse 42.

§ These appear to be the same as the *Darvas* mentioned in verse 42; see Cunningham's *Arch. Surv. Repts.*, II. 15; and XIV. 145.

|| This is not in the dictionary; but it seems to be the same as *Sakṣid-gráhas* or *Sakṣid-gráhas*, who are said to be a terrible mleç'c'ha tribe in the North

gartas,\* and the Gálavas,† the Kirátas,‡ and the Tamasas.§  
 58 And in this *Bhárata* is established the law of the four ages,  
 the Kṛita, Tretá and the two others. Such is this country  
 59 Bhárata, constituted with a four-fold conformation. || On its  
 south and west and east is the great ocean; the Himavat  
 range stretches along on its north, like the string of a bow. ¶  
 60 Then this country Bhárata is filled with every kind of seed,  
 O bráhmaṇ. It has the supremacy of Brahmá, the lordship  
 of the Ruler of the Immortals, the divinity of the gods, and

(Bhishma-P., ix. 373). There appear to be no data to fix their position unless they may be connected with the *Sakrin-nandá*, which seems to be a river in the east of Nepal (Vana-P., lxxxiv. 8137). The text might also be read "and the Kṛitrakas," but I have found no such name elsewhere.

\* Or Traigartas. Trigarta was considered to be in the Northern region (Sabhá-P., xxvi. 1026) and also in the Western (*id.*, xxxi. 1189). It is generally mentioned in connexion with the Sindhus, Madras and other Panjab nations (*id.*, li. 1870; Vana-P., cclxiv. 15593-9; cclxx. 15743; Bhishma-P., xviii. 688; cxviii. 5495; cxx. 5649; Droṇa-P., vii. 183; and also Hari-V., xci. 4965-70). It was near the Kurus, for the Páṇḍavas when burnt out of Várāṇasvata visited the Trigartas and other contiguous nations (Ádi-P., clvi. 6084-7); and also near Matsya and Sálva, for these two kingdoms had often raided into Trigarta (Viráta-P., xxx). From these indications it appears that Trigarta must have touched the Panjab on the west, and the Kurus on the south-east, and been close to Matsya (see page 307 note \*) and Sálva (see note to canto lviii. verse 6) on the south; hence it must have comprised the country from Amballa and Pattiala to the R. Bias, i.e., the Jalandhar doab and the country south-east of that. Cunningham includes Kangra also (Arch. Surv. Repts., II. 16; and XIV. 116 and 117; and Buddh. Cave Temples, p. 93). At the time of the great war Prasthala belonged to Trigarta (see note on page 321), and so brought the Trigarta territories close to Matsya and Sálva.

† These people, no doubt, claimed to be the descendants of the ṛishi Gálava (Hari-V., xvii. 1463-7; and xxxii. 1767-76), who was a famous son of Viśvámitra (Anusás.-P., iv. 249-259; Udyoga-P., cv-cxviii; and see cantos XX and XXI above), or took their name from him; see similarly the Átreyas and Bharadvájas of verse 39.

‡ See note to verse 40.

§ These have been already mentioned in verse 41.

|| *C'atuh-saṁsthána-saṁsthitam.*

¶ This implies that the Himavat range included also the Sulaiman Mountains along the west of the Panjab. The simile must refer to a drawn bow, with the string angular in the middle.

- 61 the mortal nature of men.\* *It has various kinds of wild*  
 animals, cattle and aquatic animals;† and all creeping things  
 likewise. And from it are produced‡ all immovable things,  
 62 together with things good or bad. No other land of action  
 exists among the worlds, O bráhmaṇ. Even among the gods,  
 63 O saintly bráhmaṇ, this is ever in truth§ the wish—"Oh,  
 that we shall become men on the earth, when we fall from  
 our divine condition! A man indeed does actions that the  
 64 gods and demons cannot do!" Those who are involved in the  
 fetters of such action, who are eager to proclaim their own  
 actions, || and who are possessed of a small portion of happi-  
 ness perform no action at all.

---

 CANTO LVIII.
 

---

*Márkaṇḍeya continuing represents India as resting upon Viṣṇu in the form of a tortoise looking eastward, and distributes the various countries and peoples accordingly over the several parts of his body, together with the corresponding lunar constellations. He gives an astrological application to this arrangement and enjoins the performance of religious rites to avoid calamity. He also distributes the constellations of the Zodiac over the Tortoise's body.*

Kraushṭuki¶ spoke

- 1 Adorable Sir! Thou hast duly declared Bhárata to me, its  
 2 rivers, mountains, countries, and the people who inhabit it.

\* *Marutas tathá* seems incorrect. Read instead *martyatá tathá*?

† *Mṛga-paśu-apsaro-yonís*. The meaning of "aquatic animal" is given to *ap-sara* but not to *ap-saras* in the dictionary.

‡ For *pra-yáti* read *pra-játiḥ*?

§ For *sadé esha* read *sadaivaisha*?

|| This seems rather meaningless. For *sua-karma-khyápanotsukaiḥ* the MS. reads *sua-karma-kshapanonmukhaiḥ*, "who are averse to diminishing the stock of their actions;" but *kshapanotsukaiḥ* seems preferable, "who are eager to diminish the stock of their actions."

¶ For *Kraushṭukir* read *Kraushṭukir*.

But thou didst previously make mention of the Tortoise, *who is the adorable Vishṇu, in Bhārata*; I desire to hear fully about his position.

- 3 What position does he, the god Janārdana, occupy in his form of the Tortoise? And how are weal and woe indicated thereby to mankind according to *the position of his face and of his feet*? Expound all that about him.

Mārkaṇḍeya spoke

- 4 With his face looking eastwards the adorable Tortoise-formed god takes his position, when he approaches this nine-portioned  
5 country Bhārata, O brāhman. The constellations are arranged all about him in nine divisions, and the countries \* also, O brāhman. Hear duly from me which they are.  
6 The Veda-mantras,† the Vimāṇḍavyas,‡ the Sálvas,§

\* The arrangement of the countries is very far from correct; and this canto cannot be compared with the last canto for accuracy. To make the shape of India conform to that of a Tortoise lying outspread and facing eastwards is an absurd fancy and a difficult problem.

† This is not in the dictionary and I have not found the name elsewhere. Does it mean "those who observe the Vedas and the Mantras especially" or has it any reference to Brahmāvarta?

‡ I have not found this elsewhere and it is not in the dictionary. *Māṇḍavyas* are mentioned in verse 38.

§ Or *Sálveyas* as they were also called (Vana-P. colxiii. 15576-82). The Sálvas are often mentioned in the M.-Bh. They were near the Kurus (Virāṭa-P. i. 11-12) and the Trigartas (*id.*, xxx); and in the beautiful story of Satya-vat and Sāvitrī, he was a Sálva prince and she a Madra princess (Vana-P. cxcii, &c.). Other indications of Sálva are given in the allusions to Kṛishṇa's conquest of it, but the story is marred because the people are called Daityas and Dánavas, and *Saubha* which seems to have been the capital is described as a city and as situated in the air, and also as able to move about freely (Vana-P. xiv-xxii; Udyoga-P. xlvii 1886; and Droṇa-P. xi. 395). The Sálva king attacked Dvára-vatī, and Kṛishṇa in retaliation killed him and destroyed Saubha at the gulf of the sea (*ibid.*), which can be none other than the Rann of Kachh. From these indications it appears Sálva was the country along the western side of the Aravalli hills. Saubha is incapable of being determined. Sálva seems to have contained another city called *Mārttikādvata* (or *Mṛittikā-vatī*?), which is probably the same as the *Mṛittikā-vatī* mentioned in page 342, note ‡ (Vana-P. xiv. 629; and

and the Nípas,\* and the Śakas,† and the Ujji-

xx. 791). The Hari-Vaṁśa says king Sagara degraded the Śálvas (xiv. 784), but this is a late fable for the Śálva king was one of the leading monarchs in Kṛishṇa's time (*id.*, cviii. 6029) and was brother of Śíśu-pála king of C'edi (Vana-P. xiv. 620-7); and other allusions shew that Śálva was a famous kingdom before that (Udyoga-P. clxxiii and clxxiv; and Anuśás.-P. cxxxvii. 6267); besides which, Satya-vat and Sávitrí rank with the noblest characters in ancient Indian story. The weird legend of Vyushitáśva's queen no doubt means her sons became Śálvas and did not originate the race (Adi-P. cxxi. 4695-4714), as in the case of the Madras (page 315, note †).

\* The Nípas began with king Nípa of the Paurava race, who established his dynasty in Kámpilya, the capital of Southern Páñc'ála, about 12 or 15 generations anterior to the Pándavas; the dynasty flourished in king Brahma-datta who was contemporary with their fifth ancestor Pratípa, and it was destroyed in Bhíshma's time (Hari-V., xx. 1060-73; M-Bh., Adi-P. cxxxviii. 5512-3; and Matsya-P. xlix. 52 and 53) in the person of Janamejaya, nicknamed Durbuddhi, who after exterminating his kinsmen was himself killed by Ugráyudha (Udyoga-P. lxxiii. 2729; Hari-V., xx. 1071-2; and Matsya-P. xlix. 59). Kámpilya is the modern Kampil on the old Ganges between Budaon and Farokhabad (Cunningham, Arch. Surv. Repts., I. 255). Pṛishata, who is said to have been the last king's grandson but was a Páñc'ála with a different ancestry, obtained the kingdom and handed down a new dynasty to his son Drupada (Hari-V., xx. 1082-1115; and xxxii. 1778-93). The Nípas who survived are mentioned in the M.-Bh. as an inferior people (Sabhá-P. xlix. 1804; and l. 1844).

† The Śakas were originally an outside race and are mentioned often in the M-Bh. They were considered to be mleç'c'has (Vana-P. clxxxviii. 12838-9), and were classed generally with Yavanas, but also with Kámbojas, Pahlavas, Tukháras and Khasas (Sabhá-P. xxxi. 1199; l. 1850; Udyoga-P. iii. 78; xviii. 590; Droṇa-P. xi. 399; xx. 798; cxxi. 4818; Ś'anti-P. lxxv. 2429; and Vana-P. li. 1990; and also Rámáy., Kishk. K. xlv. 13). Their home therefore lay to the north-west, and they are generally identified with the Scythians (Lat. Sacæ). They penetrated into India by invasions, and a branch is mentioned in the M-Bh. as in the Eastern region, apparently in Behar (Sabhá-P. xxix. 1088; and li. 1872; see also Rámáy., Kishk. K. xl. 21). Buddha Śákya-muni is considered to have been of Śaka race. Their inroads continued through many centuries, and were resisted by various kings; and they are mentioned in the text as having established themselves in Madhyadeśa. The Hari-Vaṁśa makes them the descendants of Narishya one of Manu Vaivasvata's sons (x. 614 and 641); another account says they were Kahattriyas and became degraded from having no brahmans (M-Bh., Anuśás.-

*hānas*,\* my child,† the Ghosha-sankhyas,‡ and the  
7 *Khaśas*,§ the *Sārasvatas*,|| the *Matsyas*,¶ the *Sūrasenas*,\*\*

P. xxxiii. 2103; and Manu x. 43-44). The *Rāmāy.* has an absurd fable about their creation (*Ādi-K.* lvi. 3; see page 314 note \*).

\* *Ujjihāna* is given in the dictionary as the name of a region, but have not met it anywhere. Perhaps it is to be identified with the town *Ujjihāna*, which was situated south-east of *Vārana-sthala*, which is the same as *Hāstī-napura*, or near it (*Rāmāy.*, Ayodh. K. lxxiii. 8-10); and in that direction there is now a town called *Ujham* about 11 miles south-west of Budaon.

† *Vatsa*; but it would be better to read *Vatsā*, "the Vatsas;" see page 307, note.\*

‡ This is not in the dictionary and I have not found the name elsewhere. It may mean "those who are reckoned among Ghoshas or herdsmen," and be an adjective to *Khaśas*.

§ Or *Khaśas*. They were an outside people on the north, as mentioned in page 346 note.\* In one passage they are placed between Meru and Mandara near the R. *Sailodā* (*Sabha-P.* li. 1858-9), that is somewhere in Western Tibet; according to the *Matsya Purāṇa* the R. *Sailodakā* rises at Mt. *Aruṇa* which is west of *Kailāsa* and flows into the Western Sea (cx. 19-23). *Khaśa* has been connected with Kashgar. The *Khaśas* also made inroads into India, for they are classed among the Panjab nations in a passage in the *M-Bh.*, which shews its later age by its tone (*Kaṛṇa-P.* xlv. 2070), and they are mentioned in the text here as settled in *Madhya-deśa*. *Mānu* says they were *Kshattriyas* and became degraded by the loss of sacred rites and the absence of brahmans (x. 43-44).

|| "Those who live along the *Saras-vatī*," that is, the sacred river north of *Kuru-kshetra*. They are not the same as the people named in canto lviii. verse 51.

¶ See page 307 note\*.

\*\* *Sūrasena* lay immediately south of *Indra-prastha* or *Dolhi* (*Sabha-P.*, xxx. 1105-6), and comprised the country around *Mathurā*, the modern *Muttra* (*Hari-V.*, lv. 3093-3102; and xci. 4973) to the east of *Matsya* (*Virāṭa-P.*, v. 144-5); and it extended apparently from the *Chambal* to about 50 miles north of *Muttra* (see Cunningham, *Arch. Surv. Repts.*, XX. 2). The *Sūrasenas* belonged to the *Yādava* and *Haihaya* race, for *Mathurā* the capital is specially called the capital of the *Yādavas*, and the kings who reigned there belonged to that race (*Hari-V.*, lvii. 3180-83; lxxix. 4124-34; xc. 4904; cxiv. 6387; and xxxviii. 2024 and 2027). A king named *Sūrasena*, a son of *Arjuna Kārtavīrya*, is mentioned (*id.*, xxxiv. 1892), who is, no doubt, intended as the eponymous ancestor of this people, for *Arjuna* who vanquished *Rāvana* was slightly anterior to *Rāma*, and the *Hari-Vamśa* says *Sūrasena* occupied this

and the people of Mathurá,\* the Dharmáranayas,† the Jyotishikas,‡ the Gaura-grívas,§ the Guḍas|| and 8 the Ásmakas,¶ the Vaidehakas,\*\* and the Pañ-

country after Śatru-ghna's time (*id.*, lv. 3102); see next note. The Śúrasenas constituted a powerful kingdom shortly before the Páṇḍavas' time, and Kṛishṇa killed Kaṁsa, who was one of the chief monarchs of that age, broke up the sovereignty and betook himself to Ānarta. In later times Śúrasena presumably regained importance, for it gave its name to Sauraseni one of the chief Prákrīts.

\* Mathurá was the capital of Śúrasena as mentioned in the last note, and is the modern Muttra on the R. Jumna (Hari-V., lv. 3060-61). The Hari-Vaṁśa says that Madhu, king of the Daityas and Dánavas, and his son Lavaṇa reigned at 'Madhu-pura and Madhu-vana (lv. 3061-3); and during Ráma's reign Śatru-ghna killed Lavaṇa, cut down Madhu-vana and built Mathurá on its site (lv. 3083-96; and xcv. 5243-7); and after the death of Ráma and his brothers Bhíma of the Yádava race according to one passage (*id.*, xcv. 5243-7) took the city and established it in his own family; and Śúrasena (see the last note) according to another passage occupied the country around (*id.*, lv. 3102). It is said Bhíma's son Andhaka was reigning in Mathurá while Kuśa and Lava reigned in Ayodhyá (*id.*, xcv. 5247-8). These passages seem to make a marked distinction between the population in the country and the dynasty in the city.

† Dharmáranaya was the name of a wood near Gayá (Vana-P. lxxxiv. 8063-4; Anusás.-P. xxv. 1744; and clxv. 7655; with Vana-P. lxxxvii. 8304-8).

‡ This is not in the dictionary and I have not found the name elsewhere; but Buchanan Hamilton says there was a class of brahmins in Behar, called *Jausi*, the vulgar pronunciation of Jyotish (Vol. I. p. 156).

§ These are stated in the dictionary as in the text to be a people in Madhya-deśa; but I have not met the name elsewhere. The word may however be an adjective, "yellow-necked," and qualify Guḍas and Ásmakas which are joined together in a compound.

|| These are stated in the dictionary as in the text to be a people in Madhya-deśa, but I have not found the name elsewhere. Probably it is to be connected with the country Gauda which Cunningham says was formerly the southern part of North Kosala, *i.e.* the southern portion of the tract between the Ghogra and Rapti rivers (Arch. Surv. Repts. I. 327). The town Gauṛ in the Maldah district in Behar, which was once the capital of the Bengal kingdom, is too far east to be admissible here.

¶ See page 336, note §.

\*\* The people of Videha, see page 329, note †.

c'álas,\* the Sanketas,† the Kankas‡ and Márutas,§ the

\* Pañc'ála or Páñc'ála was a large country, comprising the territory on both banks of the Ganges, and bounded on the north by Sub-Himalayan tribes, on the east by the same tribes and Kosala, on the south by Súrasona, the junction of the Jumna and Chambal, and Kánya-kubja (Adi-P., cxxxviii. 5512-3 and Viráta-P., v. 144), and on the west by the Kurus and Súrāsenas (Sabhá-P., xxviii. 1061; and Bhishma-P., ix. 346). The Páñc'álas originated in the descendants of Ajamidha by his wife Nili, though the M.-Bh. (Adi-P., xciv. 3722-3) and Hari-Vaṁśa (xxxii. 1776-80, with which agrees the Matsya Purāṇa, xlix. 43-4 and l. 1-4) differ in the number and names of the descendants. These passages from the Hari-Vaṁśa and Matsya Purāṇa date their rise about eight or nine generations prior to the Pāṇḍavas, and the passage from the M.-Bh. seems to point to a much earlier kingdom. The country being large was divided into two kingdoms, the Ganges being the dividing line (Adi-P., cxxxviii. 5509-16); to the north was North Pañc'ála or Ahi-c'chatra, with its capital at Ahi-c'chatrā, the modern Alichhatr, 18 miles west of Bareilly and 7 north of Aonla (Cunningham, Arch. Surv. Repts., I. 255-7); and to the south was South Pañc'ála, with its capital at Kámpilya, the modern Kampil, on the old Ganges between Budaon and Faizhabad (*ibid.* 255). The Srinjayas, or descendants of Srinjaya, who are often mentioned in the M.-Bh. (e.g., Adi-P., cxxxviii. 5476; and Drona-P., xxi. 883, 895 and 915) appear to have reigned in North Pañc'ála, and the Nipas in South Pañc'ála (see page 350 note \*); on the destruction of the latter, Prishata of the former dynasty united the two kingdoms, but Droṇa conquered his son Drupada and re-established the two kingdoms, keeping North Pañc'ála himself, and restoring the South to Drupada who then reigned in Kámpilya and Mākandī (Adi-P. cxxxviii; Hari-V., xx. 1060-1115).

† Putting aside the Utsava-sanketas (see page 319 note †), the only instance where I have met this name is in the M.-Bh. (Śānti-P., clxiv. 6514) where it is introduced apparently as the name of a town; but there is nothing to indicate where it was, and it is not so given in the dictionary. Probably however the reading here and there should be *Sáketa*, that is, Ayodhyá and its people. Otherwise they are not mentioned in this group where they should be, and they can hardly be intended by the Kośalas in verse 14.

‡ These are mentioned in the M.-Bh. only as an outside race, along with the Tukhāras, Śakas, Pahlavas, &c. (Sabhá-P., l. 1850; and Śānti-P., lxv. 2429) Their being mentioned here in the middle of India suggests that they must have invaded and settled there. It may be noticed also that Yudhisṭhira took the name Kanka during his disguised residence at Viráta's Court (Viráta-P. vii. 224).

§ I have met no people of this name elsewhere. Perhaps the reading



**Kāla-koṭṭis,\* and Páshaṇḍas,† and the inhabitants of  
9 the Páripátra mountains,‡ the Kápingalas,§ Kururváhyas,||**

should be *Málavas*, the people of Malwa (see page 341 note \*); they are mentioned in verse 45 below, but their more appropriate position is here.

\* I have not met this name elsewhere, but it may mean the people of *Kāla-koṭṭi*, which is mentioned in the M.-Bh. as a place of pilgrimage (Vana-P., xcv. 8513), and which appears from the context to be between the Ganges and the Bálhudá (the Ram-ganga or perhaps the Gurra east of it; see page 291 note § §). *Koṭṭi-tírtha* mentioned in the Matsya Purāṇa (cv. 44) seems to be the same. Moreover Kāla-koṭṭi may be the same as *Kāla-kúṭa*, which is alluded to occasionally (Sabhá-P., xxv. 997; Udyoga-P., xviii. 596-601; and perhaps *Ādi-P.*, cxix. 4637), and for which the second passage indicates a similar position.

† "Heretics;" applied to Jains and Buddhists. I have met with no people of this name.

‡ See page 286 note †.

§ I have not met this name elsewhere. A river called *Kapiñjalá* is mentioned in the Bhishma-P. list (ix. 334), but without any data to identify it. Two other readings may be suggested *Kálingakas*, i.e., Kalingas (see page 316, note †); or better perhaps *Kālañjaras*, the inhabitants of Kalinjar, an ancient and celebrated hill and fort 33 miles south of Banda in Bundelkhand; it is mentioned only as a *tírtha* in the M.-Bh. (Vana-P., lxxxv. 8198-8200; lxxxvii. 8317; and Anuśás.-P., xxv. 1721-2).

|| This reading appears to be wrong, but it is not easy to suggest another entirely satisfactory. It is clear, however, that the *Kurus* are one of the races meant. *Váhyas* are said to be a people in the dictionary.

The Kurus occupied the country from the Sívis and Sub-Himalayan tribes on the north to Matsya, Súrāsena and South Pañc'ála on the south, and between North Pañc'ála on the east and Maru-bhúmi (the Rajputana desert) on the west. Their territory appears to have been divided into three parts, Kuru-kshetra, the Kurus and Kuru-jángala (*Ādi-P.*, cix. 4337-40). Kuru-kshetra, 'the cultivated land of the Kurus,' comprised the whole tract on the west of the Jumna and included the sacred region between the Saras-vatí and Drishad-vatí (Vana-P., lxxxiii 5071-8 and 7073-6; *Rámáy.*, Ayodh.-K., lxx. 12; and Megha-D., i. 49-50); it is said to have obtained this name because it was raised to honour, *pra-kriṣṭa*, by Kuru (*Salya-P.*, liv. 3009); the Hari-V., in xxxii. 1800, inverts the course of history, and this explanation was afterwards confused and altered into that of his *ploughing it* (e.g., *Matsya-P.*, i. 20-22). Kuru-jángala, 'the waste land of the Kurus,' was the eastern part of their territory and appears to have comprised the tract between the Ganges and North Pañc'ála (*Rámáy.*, Ayodh.-K., lxxxi. 1; and M.-Bh., Sabhá-P., xix. 793-4). The

and the Uḍumbara people,\* and the Gajāhvayas†—these are in the middle‡ of the Tortoise as he lies within the water.

- 10 To these *people*, who dwell in his middle, the three constellations, Kṛittikā, Rohiṇī and Saumyā,§ reveal|| weal and woe, O brāhman.

middle region between the Ganges and Jumna seems to have been called simply the Kurus' country. The capital was Hāstina-pura (see note† below), and Khāṇḍava-prastha or Indra-prastha, the modern Delhi, was a second capital founded by the Pāṇḍavas (Ādi-P., ccvii. 7568-94). Kuru was the eleventh ancestor of the Pāṇḍavas (*id.*, xciv. 3738-51; and xcv. 3791-3820; and Hari-V., xxxii. 1799-1800).

\* Uḍumbara is Kac'hh or Kutch according to Lassen (*Ind. Alt. Map*) and Cunningham (*Arch. Surv. Repts.*, XIV. 115 and 135), and their identification may apply to the *Audumbaras* mentioned in Sabhā-P., li. 1869; but the Uḍumbaras here are placed in Madhya-de I have not met with the name elsewhere and it is not in the dictionary. Certain descendants of Viśvā-mitra were called *Audumbaras* (Hari-V., xxvii. 1466); and there was a river *Uḍumbarā-vatī* in the South (*id.*, clxviii. 9511).

† The people of Hāstina-pura or Hastinā-pura, the capital of the Kurus (see page 354 note ||), which is situated on the old bed of the Ganges, 22 miles north-east of Meerut; lat 29° 9' N., long. 78° 3' E. It is said to have been founded by king Hastin who was the fourth ancestor of Kuru (Ādi-P., xcv. 3787-92; and Hari-V., xx. 1053-4); but he is omitted from the genealogy in Ādi-P., xciv. 3714-39 and Hari-V., xxxii. 1754-6 and 1795-9. By a play on the meaning of the word *hastin*, 'elephant,' the city was also called Hastina-pura (Āśrama-vās.-P., xvii. 508 and xxxvi. 1010), Gaja-pura (*dict.*), Gajāhvayā (Udyoga-P., clxxvi. 6071), Gaja-sāhvaya (Ādi-P., cxiii. 4441 and 4460), Nāga-pura (*ibid.*, 4461-2), Nágāhva (*dict.*). Nāga-sāhvaya (Ādi-P., cxxxi. 5146) Vāraṇāhvaya (Āśrama-vās.-P., xxxix. 1098), and Vāraṇa-sāhvaya (*dict.*). It seems probable, however, that the derivation from 'elephant' is the real one, because of the numerous freely-coined synonyms with that meaning, and because there was another town Vāraṇāvata among the Kurus not far from Hāstina-pura (Ādi-P., cxlii, with the description of the Pāṇḍavas' subsequent movements, cxlix-clii, and clvi. 6084-7), and also a place called Vāraṇa-sṭhala among the Kurus or North Pāñc'ālas (Rāmāy., Ayodh.-K., lxixiii. 8) which was perhaps the same as Hāstina-pura (see page 351, note \*).

‡ *Madhye* in verse 7.

§ This does not appear to be the name of any nakshatra, but seems to mean Mṛiga-śiras or Aḡraśāyaṇī, which follows Rohiṇī and precedes Ārdrā (verse 15 and note).

|| *Vi-pāṭaka*; not in the dictionary.

- 11 *The hills\** Vṛisha-dhvaja,† and Añjana,‡ Jambv  
 ākhya,§ and Mánavác'ala,|| Súrpa-karṇa,¶ Vyághra-mukha,\*\*  
 12 Kharmaka,†† and Karvaṭásana;‡‡ *these hills*,§§ the  
 people of Mithilá,||| the Subhras,¶¶ and the Vadana-

\* *Girayo* in verse 12; see note §§ below.

† I have not met with this name anywhere else, and it is not in the dictionary as the name of a hill. Is it to be identified with Baidyanath, near Deogarh in the Santal Parganas, where there is said to be one of the twelve oldest lingas of Śiva (Imp. Gaz. of India, Art. Deogarh)?

‡ This may be the mountain from which Sugriva summoned his vassal monkeys (Rámáy., Kishk.-K., xxxvii. 5), and also the mountain called *Añjaná-sha*, mentioned in the M.-Bh. (Anuśás.-P., clxv. 7658); but there are no data to identify it.

§ *Jambu-mat* is given in the dictionary as the name of a mountain, but I have not met with either name elsewhere.

|| This is mentioned in the dictionary, but I have not found it anywhere else.

¶ Or, no doubt, *Súrpa-karṇa*, but I have not met with either as the name of a mountain, nor is it given in the dictionary.

\*\* I have not met with this as the name of a mountain elsewhere, nor is it in the dictionary. On hill Udaya-giri near Bhubaneswar, about 20 miles south of Cuttack, are a number of rock-cut caves, and one is sculptured in the form of a tiger's open mouth, and is known by the name *Vyághra-mukha*; can this be the hill intended here? It would be somewhat out of place here, but the grouping in this canto is far from perfect.

†† I have not found this name elsewhere, nor is it in the dictionary. Is it to be connected with the *Kharak-pur* hills in the south of the Monghyr district in Behar? A people called *Karbukas* are mentioned in the East in the Rámáy. (Kishk. K. xl. 29).

‡‡ This is not in the dictionary, and I have not met with it elsewhere; but it is no doubt to be connected with the country or town *Karvaṭá*, which is mentioned in conjunction with Tāmra-lipta and Suhma in the west of Bengal M.-Bh., Sabhā-P., xxix. 1098-9). See *Karbukas* in the last note.

§§ The two lines of verse 12 must, it seems, be inverted, so as to bring the word *girayo* next to the mountains named in verse 11: otherwise the word is meaningless.

||| For Mithilá, see page 329 note †; but the people of Videha have been mentioned already in verse 8 as situated in Madhya-deśa.

¶¶ I have not met this name elsewhere, nor is it in the dictionary as the name of a people. Probably the reading should be *Suhmas*; see p. 327 note \*. The Sumbhas (Rámáy., Kishk.-K., xl. 25) are no doubt the same.

danturas,\* and the C'andresvaras † also, and the Khasas, ‡  
 13 and the Magadhas, § the Prág-jyotishas, || and the Lauhityas, ¶  
 the cannibals who dwell on the sea-coast; \*\* the hills  
 Púrnotkata, †† Bhadra-gaura, ‡‡ and Udaya-giri, §§  
 14 and the Kasáyas, ||| the Mekhalámushtas, ¶¶ the Táma-

\* This is in the dictionary as the name of a people, but I have not met with it elsewhere. It may mean "showing their long teeth when speaking;" but here it is no doubt the name of a people as stated in the dictionary.

† I have not found this elsewhere nor is it in the dictionary as the name of a people. A people called *C'andra-vatsas* are mentioned in the M.-Bh. (Udyoga-P., lxxiii. 2732).

§ See page 346 note \* and page 351 note §. Here a branch of these people is placed in the East of India.

‡ See page 330 note ‡.

|| See page 328 note †.

¶ The people of *Lauhitya* (M.-Bh., Sabhá-P., xxix. 1100; and li. 1864) which was the country on the banks of the R. Lohita, or Lauhitya (Sabhá-P., ix. 374; Rámáy., Kishk.-K., xl. 26; and Raghu-V., iv. 81 or Lohitrá (Bhishma-P., ix. 343), and probably also Lohita-gangā (Hari-V., cxvii 6873-6), the modern Brahma-putra. The mention of Lohita in Sabhá-P., xxvi 1025 and Lauhitya in Anuśás.-P., xxv. 1732 appears to have a different application; and a place Lohitya is mentioned in Rámáy., Ayodh.-K., lxxiii. 13, as situated between the Ganges and Go-matí. Viśvá-mitra had certain descendants called Lohitas (Hari-V., xxvii. 1465) or Lauhitas (id., xxxii. 1771) who may have been the children of his grandson Lauhi (id., xxvii. 1474).

\*\* *Sámudráḥ purusháḍakāḥ*; that is, on the coast of the Bay of Bengal which was the Eastern Ocean. They are mentioned in the Rámáy. (Kishk.-K., xl. 30).

†† This is mentioned in the dictionary, but I have not found it elsewhere.

‡‡ This is in the dictionary, but I have not found it elsewhere.

§§ There are several hills of this name; that intended here is no doubt the hill near Rája-grīha, or Rajgir. Its ancient name Cunningham says was Rishi-giri (Arch. Surv. Repts., I. 21 and plate iii), which is mentioned in the M.-Bh. (Sabhá-P., xx. 798-800).

||| This is not in the dictionary and I have not found it elsewhere. The proper reading is probably *Kásayo*, "the Kásis," the people of Benares (see page 308 note †). They are a little out of place here, and should fall within the former group (verses 6-9), but are not mentioned there, and therefore come in here probably, for the grouping in this canto is far from perfect.

¶¶ This is not in the dictionary, and I have not found it elsewhere. The first part of the word is no doubt a mistake for *Mekala* or *Mekulá*, for the

liptas,\* the Eka-pádapas,† the Vardhamánas,‡ and the Kosalas§ are situated in the Tortoise's face.

- 15 The three constellations Raudra,|| Punar-vasu, and Pushya are situated in its face.

Now *these* are the countries which are *situated* in  
16 the Tortoise's right fore foot: listen while I mention them,  
O Kraushṭuki.|| The Kalingas,\*\* the Bangas,†† and the

Mekalas and Mekala hills are not mentioned in any other group in this canto and may be intended here, though considerably out of their proper position (see page 341 note †). There was also a town or river called *Mekalá*, which (if a river) was distinct from the Narmadá; but it appears to have been more on the western side (Hari-V., xxxvii. 1983) and therefore less admissible in this passage. I would suggest that the second part of the word should be *Punḍrás*, "the Punḍras" (see page 329 note \*). The text *Mekhalá-mushṭás* however might mean "those who have been robbed of the triple zone" worn by the first three classes (see Manu, ii. 42) and might then be an adjective qualifying *Kaśáyas*.

\* Or *Támru-liptakas*; see page 330 note \*.

† "People who have only one tree;" but perhaps the reading should be *Eka-páḍakás*, "people who have only one foot"? It was a common belief that such people existed, see M.-Bh., Sabhā-P, l. 1838 (where they are placed in the South) and Pliny, vii. 2; and it lasted down to modern times, see Mandeville's Travels, chap. XIV. See *Eka-páḍas* in verse 51.

‡ The people of Vardhamána, the modern Bardhwan (commonly Burdwan) in West Bengal. It is not mentioned in the *Rámáy.*, nor M.-Bh., but is a comparatively old town.

§ This can hardly refer to Kosala, or Oudh (see page 308 note †) for, if so, this people would have been placed along with the people of Mithilá and Magadha in verse 12; whereas here the Kosalas are separated off from those nations by the insertion of three hills in verse 13, and are grouped with the *Mekhalámushṭas*, *Támra-liptas* and *Vardhamánas*. Kosala here must therefore mean Dakṣiṇa Kosala which is mentioned in canto lvii, verse 54, as lying on the slope of the Vindhya mountains (see page 342 note ¶), and especially the north and east portions of it, for the southern part is placed appropriately in the right fore foot in verse 16.

|| This appears incorrect. Read *Raudrí (fem)*, a name for the constellation *Ārdrá*.

¶ For *Kraushṭuke* read *Kraushṭuke*.

\*\* See page 334 note\*.

†† See page 326 note\*.

Jāṭharas,\* the Kosalas,† and the Mṛishikas,‡ and the C'edis,§

\* They are mentioned in the Bhīṣma-P. list (ix. 350) but with no data to identify their territory. Here they are joined in one compound with Kalingas and Bangas.

† The people of Dakṣiṇa or Southern Kosala; see page 342 note ¶; the south portion is especially meant, see verse 14.

‡ See page 332 note †.

§ There is no mention of a people called C'edi in the Eastern region in the older poems; but Cunningham repeatedly places a C'edi race in Cihhattigarh (Arch. Surv. Repts., IX. 54-57; and XVII. 24), yet in ancient times it was not so. C'edi was then one of the countries near the Kurus (M.-Bh., Virāṭa-P., i. 11-12; Udyoga-P., lxxi. 2594-5). It is placed in the Eastern region in the account of Bhīma's conquests there (Sabhā-P., xxviii. 1069-74) and also in the South region in the description of Arjuna's following the sacrificial horse (Āśva-medh.-P., lxxxiii. 2466-9); and it is also mentioned along with the Daśārṇas (see page 342 note †) and Pulindas (see page 335 note †) in the former passage. C'edi bordered on the Jumna, for king Vasu when hunting in a forest sent a message home to his queen across that river, and the forest could not have been far from his territory (Ādi-P., lxiii. 2373-87). C'edi, moreover, is often linked with Matsya and Karūṣha (e.g., Bhīṣma-P., ix. 348; liv. 2242; and Karṇa-P., xxx. 1231; see page 307 note \* and page 341 note †), and with Kāśi and Karūṣha (e.g., Ādi-P., cxxiii. 4796; and Bhīṣma-P., cxvii. 5446). It was closely associated with Matsya and must have touched it, for an ancient king Sahaja reigned over both (Udyoga-P., lxxxiii. 2732); and it seems probable that king Vasu's son Matsya became king of Matsya (Ādi-P., lxiii. 2371-93; and Hari-V., xxxii. 1804-6). From these indications it appears C'edi comprised the country south of the Jumna, from the R. Chambal on the north-west to near C'ittrakūta on the south-east; and on the south it was bounded by the plateau of Malwa and the hills of Bundelkhand.

Its capital was *Sukti-matī* or *Sukti-sāhanyā*, (Vana-P., xxii. 898; and Āśva-medh.-P., lxxxiii. 2466-7) and was situated on the R. *Sukti-matī*, which is said to break through the Kolāhala hills (Ādi-P., lxiii. 2367-70; see page 286 note §). This river rises in the Vindhya Range, and must be east of the R. Daśārṇā, which is the most westerly river that rises in that range (compare notes † and ‡ on page 286); it is probably the modern R. Ken, for which I have found no Sanskrit name. Hence the Kolāhala hills were probably those between Panna and Bijawar in Bundelkhand, and the capital *Sukti-matī* was probably near the modern town Banda. The kingdom of C'edi seems to have been founded as an offshoot by the Yādavas of Vidurbha (Matsya-Purāṇa, xliii. 4-7; and xlv. 14 and 28-38); and after it had lasted through some 20 or 25 reigns, Vasu Upari-

and the Urdhva-karṇas,\* the Matsyas† and others who  
 17 dwell on the Vindhya mountains,‡ the Vidarbhas,§ and  
 the Nárikelas||, the Dharma-dvīpas¶, and the Elikas,\*\*  
 the Vyághra-grīvas,†† the Mahá-grīvas,‡‡ the bearded  
 18 Traipuras,§§ the Kaiskindhyas,|||| and the Haima-kúṭas¶¶,  
 the Nishádhās,\*\*\* the Kaṭaka-sthalas†††, the Daśárṇas,‡‡‡  
 the naked Hárīkas,§§§ the Nishádas,||||| the Kákulá-

c'ara, who was a Kaurava of the Paurava race, invaded it from the north some nine generations anterior to the Paṇḍavas, and conquering it established his own dynasty in it (*id.*, l. 20-50), which lasted till after their time. For a full discussion see *Journal*, Bengal As. Socy., 1895, Part 1., p. 249.

\* "Those who have erect ears;" but I have not met this name elsewhere, and it is not, probably, the name of any people.

† This seems wholly out of place here: see page 307 note\*.

‡ These mountains are also out of place here; they die away in Behar, that is, in the region occupied by the Tortoise's head.

§ These are absolutely out of place here; see page 335 note §.

|| Nárikela is given in the dictionary as the name of an island, but I have not met with any people of any such name elsewhere.

¶ I have not met with this name any where else.

\*\* Or Ailikas. Neither name is in the dictionary, and I have not found them elsewhere. A river *Elá* is mentioned as situated in the Dekhan (*Hari-V.*, clxviii. 9512), but without data to identify it.

†† "Having necks like tigers"; perhaps an epithet to Traipuras.

‡‡ "Large-necked"; perhaps also an epithet to Traipuras.

§§ The people of Tripura, see page 343 note\*; but they are quite out of place here.

|||| These seem to be the same as the Kiskindhakas; see page 342 note §.

¶¶ The people of Hema-kúṭa. I have found mention of only one Hema-kúṭa: it was a mountain or group of mountains in the Himalayas in the western part of Nepal (*M.-Bh.*, *Vana.-P.*, cx. 9968-87); but that does not seem appropriate here.

\*\*\* See page 343 note ¶. These people are altogether out of place here.

††† The people of Kaṭaka, the modern Cuttack in Orissa. This is a modern name and is mentioned in the *Daśa-kumára-c'arita* (Story of Soma-datta). The name given to it by the Brahmans was *Várāṇasī* in emulation with Benares.

‡‡‡ See page 342 note †. These people are altogether out of place here.

§§§ This name is not in the dictionary and I have not found it elsewhere.

||||| The Nishádas were an aboriginal race and are described as very black, dwarfish and short-limbed, with large mouth, jaws and ears, with pendent

19 lakas,\* and the Parṇa-savaras,†—these all are in the right fore foot.

The three constellations A-śleshā, and Paitrya‡  
20 and the First Phālgunis have their station in the right fore foot.

nose, red eyes and copper coloured hair, and with a protuberant belly. Their name is fancifully derived from the command *nishīda*, "sit down," given to the first of them who was created. (Hari-V., v. 306-10; and Muir's Sansk. Texts, II. 428.) They were specially a forest people, and were scattered all over Northern and Central India. The earliest references shew, they occupied the forest tracts throughout North India. In Rāma's time they held the country all around Prayāga and apparently southwards also (*Journal*, R. A. S., 1895, page 237); but in the Pāṇḍavas' time they occupied the high lands of Mālwa and Central India (M.-Bh., Sabhā-P., xxix. 1085; xxx. 1109 and 1170; and Kṣvamedh.-P., lxxxiii. 2472-5) and still formed a kingdom (Udyoga-P., iii. 84; and xlvii. 1884). It would seem that, as the Aryans extended their conquests, the Nishādas were partly driven back into the hills and forests of Central India, and were partly subjugated and absorbed among the lowest classes of the population as appears from casual allusions (Rāmāy., A'di-K., ii. 12; and M.-Bh., A'di-P., cxlviii; and Vana-P., cxxx. 10538-9). They are also mentioned as being pearl-divers and seamen in an island which seems to be on the west coast (Hari-V., xcv. 5214 and 5233-9). They were looked upon as very degraded in later times, but at first their position was not despicable, for Rāma and Guha king of the Nishādas met as friends on equal terms (Ayodh.-K., xlvii. 9-12; and xcii. 3); and it seems Kṛishṇa's annt S'ruta-dovā married the king of the Nishādas (Hari-V., xxxv. 1930 and 1937-8).

\* I have not found this name elsewhere, nor is it in the dictionary. Perhaps it is to be connected with Śrī-lākula, the modern Sreevacolum, a town 19 miles west of Masulipatam. It was founded by king Sumati of the Śāta-vāhanas or Andhras, and was their first capital (Arch. Surv. of S. India by R. Sewell, I. 55; and Report on Amarāvati, pp. 3 and 4).

† These were a tribe of Savaras (see page 335 note\*) who lived upon leaves; hence their name according to the dictionary; but a forest tribe would hardly live solely on leaves. Might it not more properly mean "the Savaras who wear leaves"? A girdle of leaves was the ordinary clothing of most of the aboriginal tribes; see Dalton's *Ethnology*, *passim*. They appear to be the modern Pās, a very low aboriginal caste, common in Orissa and the Eastern Circars.

‡ This must mean *Maghā*, which comes between A-śleshā and Pūrva-Phalgunī—a meaning not in the dictionary.



Lanká,\* and the Kálásjinas,† the Śailikas‡ and the  
 21 Nikṭas,§ and those who inhabit the Mahendra|| and  
 Malaya¶ Mountains and the hill Durdura,\*\* and those  
 who dwell in the Karkoṭaka forest,†† the Bhrigu-  
 22 kac'c'has,‡‡ and the Konkanas,§§ and the Sarvas,||| and the  
 Abhíras¶¶ who dwell on the banks of the river Vení,\*\*\*

\* Rávana's capital in Ceylon.

† This is given in the dictionary as the name of a people and analysed thus—*kála-njina*, "those who wear black antelope skins;" but I have not found the name elsewhere.

‡ Perhaps the same as the *S'ailúshas* in canto lvii, verse 46.

§ This name is not in the dictionary, and I have not met it elsewhere.

|| See page 284, note †† and page 305, note §; yet these may be the mountains at C. Comorin, see *Journal*, R. A. S. 1894, p. 261.

¶ See page 285 note\*.

\*\* See page 287 note†.

†† Karkoṭaka was the name of the Nága king whom Nala saved from a forest fire (M.-Bh., Vana-P., lxvi); where that happened is not clear, but probably it was somewhere in the middle or eastern part of the Satpura range (see page 343 note ¶); can that region be intended here? Karkoṭaka is also stated in the dictionary to be the name of a barbarous tribe of low origin, but I have not met with them elsewhere. Perhaps this word, however, may be connected with the modern Karád, a town in the Satara District, near which are many Buddhist caves. Its ancient name was *Karahákāḍa* or *Karahákafa* according to inscriptions (Arch. Surv. of W. India by J. Burgess, Memo. No. 10, page 16, and Cunningham's *Stupa of Bharhut* pp. 131, 135 and 136), and it seems to be the same as *Karahátaka* mentioned in the M.-Bh. (Sabhá-P., xxx. 1173) and spoken of there as heretical, *páshanda*, no doubt because it was a Buddhist sanctuary as evidenced by its caves. See also Matsya P. xliii. 20 about Karkoṭaka.

‡‡ See page 339 note\*\*

§§ Or, more correctly, *Konkanas*. They are the inhabitants of the modern Konkan, the Maráthi-speaking lowland strip between the Western Ghats and the sea, from about Dombay southward to Goa. The Hari-Vamśa says king Sngara degraded these people (xiv. 784).

||| These people are not mentioned in the dictionary and I have not met with them elsewhere. Perhaps the reading should be the *Sarpas*, i.e., "the Nágas," or the *S'araras* who are named in M.-Bh. (Bhishma-P., l. 2084, unless this be a mistake for *Savaras*.)

¶¶ See page 312 note†.

\*\*\* This is no doubt the same as *Venýá*, the name of two rivers in the

the Avantis,\* the Dása-puras,† and the Akanin‡ people,  
 23 the Mahá-ráshtras§, and Karṇáṭas||, the Gonarddhas¶,  
 C'itra-kúṭakas\*\*, the C'olas††, and the Kolagiras‡‡,

Dekhan; see canto lvii, verses 24 and 26. Either river is admissible in this passage, but the Wain-ganga is meant more probably, because it flows through territory occupied by aboriginal tribes.

\* See page 340 note § and page 344 note §.

† Or, better, *Dása-puras*, the people of Dása-pura. This was the capital of king Ranti-deva (Megha-D., I. 46-48), and seems from the context there to have been situated on or near the R. Chambal in its lower portion. But the two accounts of Ranti-deva (M.-Bh., Droṇa-P., lxvii; and Sánti-P., xxix. 1013-22) describe him as exercising boundless hospitality chiefly with animal food, and fancifully explain the origin of the river, C'armaṇ-vatṣ, as the juices from the piles of the hides of the slaughtered animals; this suggests that he reigned along the upper portion of the river.

‡ Or *A'kanin*. Neither is in the dictionary, and I have not found them elsewhere.

§ See page 333 note †.

|| The Canarese. Karṇáṭa properly comprises the south-west portion of the Nizam's Dominions, and all the country west of that as far as the Western Ghats, and south of that as far as the Nilgiris. It did not include any part of the country below the Ghats, but its application has been greatly distorted by the Mohammedans and English. The name is probably derived from two Dravidian words meaning "black country," because of the "black cotton-soil" of the plateau of the Southern Dekhan (Caldwell, Grammar of the Dravidian Languages, 34 and 35; and Hunter's Imp. Gaz. of India, Art. Karnátik). The Karṇáṭakas are mentioned in the Bhishma-P. list (ix. 366).

¶ *Go-narda* is given in the dictionary as the name of a people in the Dekhan, but I have not found either form elsewhere. Goa is said to have had a large number of names in ancient times; but this does not appear to have been one of them (Imp. Gaz. of India, Art. Goa).

\*\* The people of C'itra-kúṭa; it appears to have been the range of hills (comprising the modern mount Chitrakut) extending from south of Allahabad to about Panna near the R. Ken (see *Journal*, R. A. S., 1894, p. 239); but these people are very much out of place here.

†† See page 331 note ¶.

‡‡ This name does not seem to be connected with the Kolas who are mentioned in verse 25. The Kolagiras are no doubt the same as the *Kolvagvayas*, who are placed in South India in the description of Arjuna's following the sacrificial horse (Áśva-medh.-P., lxxiii. 2475-7); and they would presum-

the people who wear matted hair\* in *Krauñc'a-dvīpa*,†  
 24 the people who dwell by the *Káverī* and on mount

ably be the inhabitants of *Kolagiri*, which is placed in South India in the account of Sahadeva's conquests there, and which appears to have been an extensive region for the whole of it is spoken of (*Sabhā-P.*, xxx. 1171). *Kolagiri* may mean "the hills belonging to the Kols," but the Kols seem to be intended by the Kolas in verse 25. *Kolagira* may be compared with *Kodagu*, the ancient name of Coorg, which means 'steep mountains' (*Imp. Gaz. of India*, Art. Coorg), and might therefore have led to the modification of the final part of the name to agree with the Sanskrit *giri* but see page 366 note †. The name *Kolagira* somewhat resembles the *Golāngulas* of canto lvii, verse 45; and *Golāngula* might be a corruption of *Kodungalūr*, which is the modern town Cranganore, 18 miles north of Cochin. It had a good harbour in early times, and was a capital town in the 4th century A.D. Syrian Christians were established there before the 9th century, and the Jews had a settlement there which was probably still earlier. It is considered of great sanctity by both Christians and Hindus (*Imp. Gaz. of India*, Art. *Kodungalūr*).

\* *Jaṭā-dhara*; the dictionary gives it as a proper name. *Jaṭā* also means "long tresses of hair twisted or braided together, and coiled in a knot over the head so as to project like a horn from the forehead, or at other times allowed to fall carelessly over the back and shoulders."

† This was no doubt the county of which *Krauñc'a-pura* was the capital, for *dvīpa* appears to have had the meaning of "land enclosed between two rivers," the modern *doab*; cf. *Sākala-dvīpa*, the *doab* in which *Sākala* (see page 315 note †) was situated, and the *Seven dvīpas* all in North India (*Sabhā-P.*, xxv. 998-9). The *Hari-Vaṁśa* says *Sārasa*, one of *Yadu's* sons, founded *Krauñc'a-pura* in the South region in a district where the soil was copper-coloured and *champakā* and *aśoka* trees abounded, and his country was known as *Vana-vāsi* or *Vana-vāsin* (xcv. 5213 and 5231-3); and also that that town was near the *Sahya Mts.*, and was situated apparently south of a river *Khaṭvāngī* and north of *Gomanta* hill (xcvi. 5325-40). If *Gomanta* was the modern *Goa*, these indications agree fairly well with the *Krauñc'ālaya* forest mentioned in the *Rāmāy.* (*Araṇ.-K.*, lxxiv. 7), which appears to have been situated between the *Godavari* and *Bhima* rivers (*Journal*, R. A. S., 1894, page 250). But the town *Bana-vāsi* or *Banavāsi*, which was a city of note in early times, is in the North Kanara district, on the *R. Warda* (tributary of the *Tungabhadra*), 14 miles from *Sirsi*, in lat. 14° 33' N., long. 75° 5' E. (*Imp. Gaz. of India*, Art. *Banavasi*; *Arch. Surv. of W. India*, No. 10, pp. 60 note and 100); and this is south of *Goa*. This was the country of the *Vana-vāsakas* (see page 338 note \*).

Rishyamúka,\* and those who are called Násikyas,† and those who wander by the borders of the Sankha and Sukti‡ and other hills and of the Vaidúrya mountains, §  
 25 and the Váric'aras, || the Kolas, ¶ those who inhabit C'armapaṭṭa, \*\* the Gaṇa-váhyas, †† the Paras, ‡‡ those who  
 26 have their dwellings in Kṛishṇá-dvīpa, §§ and the peoples who live by the Súrya hill ||| and the Kumuda hill, ¶¶

\* See page 289 note †.

† These are, no doubt, the people of Nasik; see page 339 note ||.

‡ The text is *Sankha-sukty-ádi-vaidúrya-śaila*, which may be so rendered as to make Sankha and Sukti two of the hills which compose the Vaidúrya chain. I have not met with them elsewhere, and neither is in the dictionary as the name of a hill. Sukti can hardly be an error for the Sukti-mat range (see page 306 note §).

§ This is the Satpura range, for the Páṇḍavas in their pilgrimage went from Vidarbha and the R. Payoshṇi (the Purna and Tapti, see page 299 note †), across these mountains, to the R. Narmadá (Vana-P, cxx. and cxxi). This range was placed in the Southern region (*ibid.*, lxxxviii 8343), and also apparently, as *Vaidúrya-śikhara*, in the Western region (*ibid.*, lxxxix. 8359-61); and in the former of these two passages it is called *maṇi-maya*.

|| I have not found this name elsewhere, nor is it in the dictionary.

¶ See page 331 note ¶, but the passages cited there with reference to this people appear to refer to the Kolagiras; see page 363 note ‡‡. The Kols are a collection of aboriginal tribes, who are said to have dwelt in Behar in ancient times, but who now inhabit the mountainous districts and plateaux of Chutia Nagpur and are to be found to a smaller extent in the Tributary States of Orissa and in some districts of the Central Provinces (Imp. Gaz. of India, Art. Kol).

\*\* This is not in the dictionary and I have not met it elsewhere. Is it to be identified with Salem in Madras?

†† I have not met this elsewhere. Does it refer to the Ganapati dynasty which flourished on the eastern coast during the 13th cent. A.D.?

‡‡ This is not in the dictionary and I have not found it elsewhere.

§§ I have not met this name elsewhere, but it obviously refers to the R. Kṛishṇá or Kistna, and probably means one of the doabs (see page 364 note †) beside that river, either between the Kistna and Bhíma or between the Kistna and Tungabhadra.

||| I have not met this name elsewhere.

¶¶ I have not found this name elsewhere. Comparing the various readings,

the Ankhávanas,\* and the Piśíkas,† and those who are called  
 27 Karma-náyakas,‡ and those who are called the Southern  
 Kaurushas,§ the Řishikas,|| the Tápasáramas,¶ the  
 Řishabhas,\*\* and the Simhalas,†† and those who inhabit

it seems to have some connexion with the *Kusumas* of canto lvii verso 46; see page 332 note ‡.

\* This is not in the dictionary, and I have not found it elsewhere. Perhaps it is to be connected with the *Okhalakiyas* mentioned in Arch. Surv. of W. India, no. 10, pp. 34-35.

† Or as the text may be read, *Sapífikas*. Piśíka is in the dictionary, but I have not met with either name elsewhere.

‡ I have not found this name elsewhere and it is not in the dictionary. Perhaps the reading should be *Kambu-náyakas* or *Kombu-náyakas*, and mean the people of Coorg. "According to tradition, Coorg was at this period (16th century A.D. ?) divided into 12 *kombus* or districts, each ruled by an independent chieftain, called a *náyak*" (Imp. Gaz. of India, Art. Coorg). The similarity of the names is very remarkable.

§ This name is not in the dictionary and I have not met with it elsewhere. Perhaps it should be *Kárushas* (see page 341 note †), and the people intended are a southern branch of that nation.

|| These are the people mentioned in the *Rámáy.* (Kishk.-K., xli. 16) and M.-Bh. (Karna-P., viii. 237) and *Hari-Vaṃśa* (cxix. 6724-6). There was also a river called the *Řishiká* (M.-Bh., Vana-P., xii. 493) which may be connected with the same people. I have found no further data for fixing their position. See page 332 note †; the *Máshikas* mentioned there may perhaps be the people dwelling on the R. *Musi*, the tributary of the Kistna on which Haidarabad stands (Imp. Gaz. of India, Art. Kistna).

¶ I have not met this name elsewhere nor is it in the dictionary. Perhaps it refers to the descendants of ascetics, see page 339 note †.

\*\* These are, no doubt, the inhabitants of *Řishabha-parvata* mentioned in the M.-Bh. (Vana-P., lxxv. 8163-4) and placed there between *Sṛí-parvata* and the *Káveri*. *Sṛí-parvata* is on the Kistna in the Karnul district (see page 290, note †). The *Řishabha* hills are therefore probably the southern portion of the Eastern Ghats, but none of the ranges there appears to have any name resembling this.

†† The people of Ceylon. They are named in the M.-Bh.; it is said the *Simhala* king attended *Yudhishtíra's* *Rája-súya* sacrifice (*Sabhá-P.*, xxxiii. 1271; and *Vana-P.*, li. 1989); and the *Simhalas* brought to him presents of lapis lazuli, which is the essence of the sea (*samudra-sára*), and abundance of pearls and elephants' housings (*Sabhá-P.*, li. 1893-4). They are also named as fighting on the *Kauravas'* side in the great war (*Droṇa-P.*, xx. 798).

- 28 *Kāñc'ī\**, the Tilangas,† and the peoples who dwell in Kuñjara-darī‡ and Kac'c'ha,§ and Tāmra-parṇī,||—such is the Tortoise's right flank.
- 29 And the constellations, the Last Phālgupis, Hastá and C'itrá are in the Tortoise's right flank.

This name is not I believe given to Ceylon in the *Rámáy.*, but the name *Sīm'hiká* is given to a terrible female Rákshasa who dwelt in the middle of the sea between India and Ceylon, and whom Hanúmán killed as he leapt across to the island (Kishk.-K., xli. 38; and Sund.-K., viii. 5-13).

\* This is *Kāñc'ī-puram* or *Kāñc'ī-varam*, the modern Conjevaram, about 37 miles south-west of Madras. It is not, I believe, mentioned in the *Rámáy.* or M.-Bh., unless the *Kāñc'īyas* who are named as fighting in the great war (Karna-P., xii. 459) are the people of this town, but the proper reading there should probably be *Kāśyas*, the people of Káśi or Benares. Conjevaram, nevertheless, is a place of special sanctity, and is one of the seven holy cities of India. Hwen Tshang speaks of it in the 7th century A.D. as the capital of Dráviḍa. It was then a great Buddhist centre, but about the 8th century began a Jain epoch, and that was succeeded by a period of Hindu predominance (Imp. Gaz. of India, Art. Conjevaram).

† This form is not in the dictionary; but it is no doubt the same as *Tailāṅga* or *Tri-linga*, that is Telīṅga, the modern Telugu country. It coincided more or less with the ancient kingdom of Andhra (see page 337 note §). I have not found this name in any shape in the *Rámáy.* or M.-Bh.; Andhra is the name which occurs in those books.

‡ This probably means "the valleys of the Kuñjara hills," and the reference may be to mount Kuñjara, which is mentioned in the *Rámáy.* as situated in the South, but not in a clear manner (Kishk.-K., xli. 50). I have not met the name elsewhere, but as this place is joined with Kac'c'ha in one compound (see next note) it may mean part of the Travancore hills. Kuñjara-darī is given in the dictionary as the name of a place.

§ This is *Kochchi*, the modern Cochin, in Travancore. It is not I believe mentioned in the *Rámáy.* or M.-Bh., except once in the latter book in the account of Sahadeva's conquests in the South (Sabhá-P., xxx. 1176). Both Christians and Jews are said to have settled here early in the Christian era, and they were firmly established here by the 8th century.

|| This is the name of the modern river Chittar in the extreme South (see page 303, note ††), and also of the district near it. It appears, moreover, to be the name of a hill in the extreme South (Bhīshma-P., vi. 252). It is also the name of a town in Ceylon, after which the name was extended to the whole island (dictionary). The island seems to be meant by the words *Támraḍvaya dvīpa* in the M.-Bh. (Sabhá-P., xxx. 1172).

- 30 And next is the outer foot.\* The Kámbojas,† and Pahlavas,‡ and the Badavá-mukhas, § and the Sindhus || and Savíras,¶ the Anartas,\*\* the Vanitá-mukhas,†† the Drávaṇas,‡‡ the Sárḡigas, §§ the Súdras, ||| the Karṇa-prádheyas ¶¶

\* *Yáhya-pádas*; the right hind foot is meant as is stated expressly in verse 33, but (because perhaps this word is vague) the names that follow are sadly confused and belong to all regions in the west and north-west.

† See page 318, note §; they are out of place here.

‡ See page 314, note \*; these also are out of place.

§ This should perhaps be connected with *Baḍavá*, a tirtha apparently in Kashmir (M.-Bh., Vana-P., lxxxii. 5034-42). A river of the same name is mentioned (*id.*, cxxi. 14232), but that seems from its context to be rather in South India. Badavá-mukha (which means 'submarine fire') may also mean "having faces like mares"; and a people called *Aśva-mukhas* are mentioned in Matsya Purāṇa, cxx. 58, as dwelling north of the Himalayas: see also verse 43 below.

|| See page 315, note \*; they are hardly in place here.

¶ See page 315, note †; these are out of place here.

\*\* See page 340 note §. The name is derived from an eponymous king Anarta, who was the son of Saryāti one of the sons of Manu Vaivasvata (Hari-V., x. 613 and 642-9).

†† "Those who have faces like women." I have not met this name elsewhere. It seems, however, to be a proper name and not an adjective.

‡‡ This as a name is not in the dictionary, and I have not found it elsewhere.

§§ Or "and the Argigas or Argigas," as the text may be read. These names are not in the dictionary and I have not met with them elsewhere. Perhaps the correct reading should be *Sáryátas*. They were a tribe, so-called from their chief Saryáta the Mánava, who settled down near where the ṛishi C'yavana dwelt, and gave his daughter Su-kanyá to the ṛishi to appease his wrath (Sata-P. Bráh., IV. i. 5). He is called Saryāti in the M.-Bh. (Vana-P., cxxi. 10312; and cxxii.) where the same story is told rather differently; and also in the Hari-Vaiṇśa, where he is said to be a son of Manu and progenitor of Anarta and the kings of Anarta (x. 613, and 642-9). From all these passages it appears the *Sáryátas* were in the West, in Gujarat; and C'yavana as a Bhárgava is always placed in the West, near the mouths of the Narbada and Tapti. But perhaps the most probable reading is *Bhárgavas*; they were in the West (see page 310, note †).

||| See page 313 note ‡.

¶¶ This name is not in the dictionary and I have not found it elsewhere. It can have nothing to do with *Karṇa* one of the heroes of the M.-Bh., for he

and Varvaras,\* the Kirátas,† the Páradas,‡ the  
 32 Pándyas§ and the Páraśavas,|| the Kalas,¶ the  
 Dhúrtakas,\*\* the Haimagirikas,†† the Sindhu-kálaka-

reigned in Anga in the East. *Prádheya* means a descendant of *Prádhá*, one of Daksha's daughters, and that also is inadmissible. It suggests *Rádheya*, which was a metronymic of *Karṇa*, but that is equally unsuitable. It seems therefore the words must be taken as a whole forming one name, and then it suggests comparison with *Karṇa-právára* which would be the same as *Karṇa-právaraṇa* (see page 346, note †).

\* See page 319, note \*. This word is compounded with the preceding name; it hardly seems to be in place here.

† See page 322, note ||; they seem to be out of place here, unless any *Kirátas* inhabited the southern part of the Aravalli hills or the extreme western part of the Vindhya mountains, and that seems improbable. See also *Adhama-kairátas* in verse 44 below, and *Kirátas* are mentioned again in verse 50.

‡ See page 317, note \*; they seem to be out of place here.

§ These people are out of place here; see page 331, note §; they should be properly in the right flank.

|| I have not met this name elsewhere; but, no doubt, it denotes some people, who claimed descent from *Paraśu-Rāma* and who would therefore be somewhere on the western coast between Bombay and the Narmadā; see page 310, note †. It is said there was a dynasty of *Páraśava* kings after the great *Paurava* line came to an end (*Matsya Purāṇa*, l 73-76) but it does not appear where.

¶ This is not in the dictionary, and I have not met it elsewhere. It suggests a connexion with the *Kálíbalas* of canto lvii, verse 49; but *Kala* also means, "emitting a low or inarticulate sound," and it was an old fable that a people existed, who could not speak articulately, but hissed like serpents, see Mandeville's *Travels*, chap. xviii. and xix. *Kala* occurs again in verse 36.

\*\* I have not found this elsewhere as the name of a people. The word however means "a rogue" and may be an adjective to *Haima-girikas*.

†† The people of *Hema-giri*. This is not given as the name of a place in the dictionary, but it may be a synonym for *Hema-kúta* or *Hema-śringa*. It is said in the M.-Bh. the latter is the portion of Himavat from which the Ganges issued formerly (*Ādi-P*, clxx. 645-5), and *Hiranya-śringa* is probably the same (*Bhīshma-P.*, vi. 237). *Hema-kúta* was near the rivers *Nandá* and *Āpara-nandá* and between the sources of the Ganges and *Kauśikí* (*Vana-P.*, cx. 9968-87); and it is alluded to in other passages but they are not clear (*e.g.*, *id.*, clxxxix. 12917; *Bhīshma-P.*, vi. 198, 202, 236 and 246). The last of



vairatas,\* the Sauráshtras,† and the Daradas,‡ and the  
33 Drávidas,§ the Mahárnavas || —these peoples are situated in  
the right hind foot.

And the Svátis,¶ Visákhá and Maitra\*\* are the three  
corresponding constellations.

34 The hills Mañi-megha,†† and Kshurádri,‡‡ and Khañjana,§§

these passages says the Guhyakas dwell on Homa-kúta. The Matsya Puráṇa  
says Hema-śringa is south-east of Kailása, and the R. Lauhitya, or Brahma-  
putra, rises at its foot (cxx. 10-12); and that two rivers rise in Hema-kúta  
which flow into the eastern and western seas (*ibid.*, 61-5).

\* This seems to be erroneous, yet it is not easy to suggest an amendment.  
The first part, no doubt, refers to the R. Sindhu and the Sindhu people but the  
latter part appears unintelligible. Perhaps the reading should be *Sindhu-  
kúla-suvrákáḥ* or *Sindhavád c'a suvtrakáḥ* meaning the Sindhus and the  
Suvíras (see page 315, notes \* and †); but these two people have been men-  
tioned already in verse 30.

† The people of Suráshtra; see page 340, note †.

‡ See page 318, note ||. They are quite out of place here.

§ The Drávidas are often alluded to in the M.-Bh. (*e.g.*, Sabhá-P., xxxiii.  
1271; Vana-P., li. 1988; Karna-P., xii. 454; &c.), but are not mentioned in the  
Rámáy., I believe, except in the geographical canto (xli. 18). They are  
sometimes closely connected with the Pándyas (Sabhá-P., xxx. 1174), but the  
name was applied in a general way to denote the southern branches of the races  
now classed as Dravidian, and it is the same as *Tamíl* (Caldwell's Grammar of  
the Dravidian Languages, pp. 12-15). Their territory included the sea coast  
in early times (Vana-P., cxviii. 10217). It is also said they were kshattriyas  
and became degraded from the absence of brahmins and the extinction of  
sacred rites (Anuśás.-P., xxxiii. 2104-5; Manu, x. 42-44).

|| I have not met this name elsewhere. It means "dwelling by the  
ocean," and is probably an epithet of Drávidas, for they bordered on the sea  
as mentioned in the last note.

¶ The plural seems peculiar.

\*\* Or Anu-rádhá.

†† I have not met this elsewhere. It may be the same as Mt. Mañi-mat  
(Drona-P., lxxx. 2843); which appears to be also intended in Vana-P., lxxxii.  
1043, and if so would denote the range of hills enclosing Kashmir on the  
south, according to the context. It may also be the same as the "jewelled  
mountain *Su-megha*" mentioned in the Rámáy. (Kishk.-K., xliii. 40).

‡‡ This is not in the dictionary, and I have not found it elsewhere.

§§ This is not in dictionary as the name of a mountain, and I have  
not found it elsewhere.

and Asta-giri;\* the Aparántika people,† and Haihayas,‡

\* This does not appear to be the name of any particular mountains, but rather denoted in a vague way mountains in the west behind which the sun sets. It is mentioned in the *Rámáy.* as Asta-giri (*Kishk.-K.*, xxxvii. 22), and as Asta-parvata (*id.*, xliii. 54).

† See note to Aparántas, page 313, note †. This half line *Aparántiká Haihayáś'c'a* is a syllable too long; it would be better to read either *Aparántá* or omit the *c'a*.

‡ The Haihayas were a famous race, the descendants of an eponymous king Haihaya, who is said to have been a grandson or great-grandson of Yadu, the eldest son of Yayāti (*Hari-V.*, xxxiii. 1843-4; and *Matsya Purāṇa*, xliii. 4-9. Yadu is said to have been king of the north-east region (*Hari-V.*, xxx. 1604, 1618), but the references to the earliest movements of the Haihayas are hardly consistent. Mahish-mat, who was fourth in descent from Haihaya, is said to have founded the city Māhish-matī on the Narmadā (see page 333, note †; and *id.*, xxxiii. 1846-7), and his son Bhadra-śreṇya is said to have reigned in Kāśī or Benares, which the Vítahavya branch of the Haihayas had previously conquered from its king Haryaśva, but Haryaśva's grandson Divodāsa defeated them and regained his capital (*M.-Bh.*, Anuśās.-P., xxx. 1949-62; *Hari-V.*, xxix. 1541-6; and xxxii. 1736-40). The great king Arjuna Kártavīrya, who was ninth in descent (*Hari-V.*, xxxiii. 1850-90; and *Matsya P.*, xliii. 13-45), reigned in Anúpa and on the Narmadā and had the great conflict with Rāma Jāmadagnya, which ended in the overthrow of the Haihayas (*M.-Bh.*, Vana-P., cxvi. 10189—cxvii. 10204; and *Sánti-P.*, xlix. 1750-70; and pages 333 note \*, and 344 note \*). The Haihayas and Tálajāṅghas in alliance with Sakas, Yavanas, Kāmbojas and Pahlavas are said to have driven Bihu king of Ayodhyá out of his realm, but his son Sagara drove them out and recovered the kingdom (*Vana-P.*, cvi. 8831-2; and *Hari-V.*, xiii. 760—xiv. 783).

The Haihaya race comprised the following tribes, Vítihotras (or Vítahavyas?), Sāryátas, Bhojas, Avantis, Taundikeras (or Kuṇḍikeras), and Tálajāṅghas; the Bharatas, Sujátayas and Yádavas are added, and the Súrāsenas, Anartas and C'edis also appear to have sprung from them (*Hari-V.*, xxxiv. 1892-6; and *Matsya-P.*, xliii. 46-49). Comparing the territories occupied by these tribes, it appears the Haihaya race dominated nearly all the region south of the Jumna and Aravalli hills as far as the valley of the Tapti inclusive of Gujarat in ancient times (see pages 333 note †, 335 note §, 340 note §, 342 note †, 344 all the notes, 351 note \*\*, 352 note \*, and 368 note §§); and Cunningham says that two great Haihaya States in later times had their capitals at Manipur in Mahá Kosala (or Chhattisgarh) and at Tripura (or Tewar) on the Narbada (*Arch. Surv. Repts.*, IX. 54-57).

35 the *Sántikas*, \* *Viprasastakas*, † the *Kokankanas*, ‡ *Pañc'a-dakas*, § the *Vamanas*, || and the *Avaras*, ¶ the *Táarakshuras*, \*\*

\* I have not met this elsewhere, and it is not in the dictionary as the name of a people. It may be the same as the *Sántikas* (M.-Bh., Bhishma-P., ix. 354; perhaps the *Satakas* in Vana-P., ccliii. 15257 are the same); or the reading may be *Sákalas*, the people of *Sákala*, the capital of Madra (see page 315, note, †).

† This is not in the dictionary and I have not met it elsewhere. It appears to be a proper name and not an adjective.

‡ This is not in the dictionary and I have not found it elsewhere. Perhaps the reading should be *Kokanadas*, a people in the north-west classed with the Trigartas and Darvas (M.-Bh., Sabhá-P., xxvi. 1026), or *Kokarakas* who seem to be the same (Bhishma-P., ix. 369).

§ This is given in the dictionary as the name of a people, but I have not met it elsewhere. Perhaps a better reading would be *Pañc'odakas* or *Pañc'anadas*, "the people living beside the R. *Pañc'anada*," which appears to be the single stream formed by the confluence of the five rivers of the Panjab (M.-Bh., Vana-P., lxxxii. 5025; Bhishma-P., lvi. 2406; and dictionary); but this name seems to be also applied to the five rivers collectively (Vana-P., ccxxi. 14229), and to the country watered by those five rivers (Sabhá-P., xxxi. 1193; Udyoga-P., iii. 83; and xviii. 596-601; Karṇa-P., xlv. 2100 and 2110; &c.; Hari-V., xcii. 5018; and Rámáy., Kishk.-K., xliii. 21), and to the inhabitants of it (Bhishma-P., lvi. 2406; and Karṇa-P., xlv. 2086): see also Lassen's map (Ind Alt).

|| This is given in the dictionary as the name of a people, but I have not found it elsewhere. Perhaps a better reading would be *Vánavas*, who are mentioned in the M.-Bh. (Vana-P., ix. 362), or *Vandavyavas*. There was a district called *Vandyu* or *Vandá,u*, which appears to have been situated in the north-west, and which was famous for its breed of horses (M.-Bh., Bhishma-P., xci. 3974; Droṇa-P., cxi. 4831; Karṇa-P., vii. 200; and Rámáy., Ádi-K., vi. 24). It appears to be the modern Bunn in the north-west of the Panjab.

¶ This is not given as the name of a people, and the word means, "low," and "western." This name may be compared with *Aparas*, a people mentioned in the Rámáy. (Kishk.-K., xliii. 23); and see page 313, note † and *Aparántikas* in verse 34. But a better reading for the text *hy-avaras* is perhaps *Varvaras*; see page 319, note \* and page 369, note \*.

\*\* This is not in the dictionary, and I have not met with it elsewhere; but *Táarakshatj* and *Táarakshiti* are given as the name of a district to the west of Madhya-desa. There was also a kingdom called *Turushka* in later times (Arch. Surv. of W. India, Memo. No 10, p. 7). The *Turushkas* are the Turks, and their country *Turkestan*. A people called *Tárkshyas* are mentioned in M.-Bh., Sabhá-P., li. 1871.

the Angatakas,\* the Sarkaras,† the Sálma-veśmakas,‡  
 36 the Guru-svaras,§ the Phalgunakas,|| and the people who  
 dwell by the river Venu-mati,¶ and the Phalgulakas,\*\* the Ghoras,†† and the Gurukhas,‡‡ and the

\* I have not found this elsewhere, and it is not in the dictionary. A place called *Anga-loka* is assigned to the west in the *Rámáy.* (Kishk.-K., xliii. 8). and *Angas* and *Anga-lokyas* are mentioned to the north of India in the *Matsya Purāṇa* (cxx. 44 and 45).

† This is not in the dictionary, and I have not found it elsewhere. A river *Sárkarávarṭa* is mentioned (*Bhāgavata Purāṇa*-V. xix. 17), but appears to be in the south. A great house-holder and theologian *Jana Sárkarakshya* is alluded to (*O'hándogya*-Up.-V., xi. 1). Perhaps the reading may be *Sákala*, the people of *Sákala* the capital of *Madra* (see page 315, note †).

‡ This is not in the dictionary, and I have not found it elsewhere. It suggests *śāla-veśmakas*, "those who live in houses with spacious rooms," and it may be an adjective to *Sarkaras*. Perhaps we should read *Sálvas* as the first part of the word (see page 349, note §) but, if so, the latter part seems unrecognizable.

§ I have not met with this elsewhere, and it is not in the dictionary. It may be an adjective, "deep-voiced," describing the *Phalgunakas*. Perhaps the reading should be *Gurjaras*. They appear to have been settled in the Panjab or Upper Sindh, and to have been driven out by the *Bálas* about 500 A.D., and pushed gradually southward, till at length they occupied the country around the peninsula of Kathiawar, thence called *Gujarat* after them (Cunningham, Arch. Surv. Repts., II 64-72). Or perhaps the reading might be *Gurusthala*; a river *Guru-nadī* is mentioned in the west region, but without data to identify it (*Hari*-V., olxviii. 9516-8).

|| Or better, *Phalgunakas*. I have not met with it elsewhere. A similar name *Phalgulukas* occurs just below.

¶ This is not in the dictionary, and I have not met with it elsewhere. It occurs again in verse 39. A people called *Veṇikas* are mentioned in the *M.-Bh.* (*Bhīshma*-P., li. 2097).

\*\* This resembles *Phalgunakas* above. I have not found it elsewhere. A mountain called *Phena-giri* or *Phala-giri* is mentioned in the *Rámáy.* as situated in the west near the mouth of the *Indus* (Kishk.-K., xliii. 13-17, and Annotations).

†† These are no doubt the same as the *Ghorakas* mentioned in the *M.-Bh.*, *Sabhā*-P., li 1870; but I have not found any data to fix their position.

‡‡ I have not met this elsewhere, but it is stated in the dictionary to be the name of a people in *Madhya-deśa*, and the word is also written *Guduha*, *Gulaha* and *Guluha*.

Kalas,\* the Ekek-haṇas,† the Váji-keśas,‡ the Dīrgha-  
 37 grīvas,§ and the C'úlikas,|| and the Áśva-keśas,¶ these  
 peoples are situated in the Tortoise's tail.

38 And so situated also are the three constellations Aindra,\*\*  
 Múla, and Púrvá Āshádhá.

The Māṇḍavyas,†† and C'aṇḍakháras,‡‡ and Áśvakálanatas,§§

\* This has occurred before in verse 31.

† "The one-eyed." It was an old belief that such people existed. "Men with only one eye in their forehead" are mentioned in the M.-Bh. (Sabhá-P., l. 1837); the Cyclopes are famous in Greek and Latin literature; and a one-eyed race is spoken of as dwelling somewhere in the Indian Ocean by Mandeville (Travels, Chap XIX).

‡ "Those who have hair or manes, like horses." I have met no such name elsewhere, except that the synonymous name *Áśva-keśas* occurs in the next line of this verse. Neither is it in the dictionary.

§ "The long-necks." I have met no such name elsewhere.

|| This name is the same as the *C'úlikas* mentioned in canto lvii verse 40, but the position does not quite agree; these are in the west and the others in the north. A people *Vindha-c'ulakas* are named in the Bhishma-P. list (ix. 369) and appear to be in the north. A dynasty of kings called *C'úlikas* is said to have reigned after the great Paurava line came to an end (Mataya Purāṇa, l. 73-76).

¶ "Those who have hair, or manes, like horses." It is the same as *Váji-keśas* mentioned above.

\*\* For *Aindra-múlam* read *Aindram múlam*. 'Aindra is the same as *Jyeshthá*.

†† They are mentioned again in verse 46. They may be a tribe which claimed descent from the ṛishi *Māṇḍarya*, to whom Janaka king of Videha is said to have sung a song (M.-Bh., Śānti-P., colxxvii), and whose hermitage is alluded to, as situated somewhere perhaps between Oudh and North Behar (Udyoga-P., clxxvii. 7355); but *Māṇḍavya-pura* is said in the dictionary to be situated on the R. Godavari. A people called *Maṇḍikas* are mentioned in the M.-Bh. (Vana-P., coliii. 15243). The *Vimāṇḍavyas* are named in verse 6 above.

‡‡ I have not met this name elsewhere, nor is it in the dictionary; but it suggests *Kandahar*, and the position agrees. A people *C'arma-khaṇḍikas* are mentioned in canto lvii. verse 36.

§§ This seems a compound. The first part appears to be the *Áśvakas*; they are mentioned in the M.-Bh. (Bhishma-P., ix. 351), and are placed in the north-west and identified with the *Aspasii* and *Assakani* by Lassen (Ind. Alt., Map). The latter part however is very doubtful. A people *Lalitthas* are mentioned in the M.-Bh. (Droṇa-P., xvii. 692) and appear from the context to have been a north-western race.

39 and the Kunyatalāḍahas,\* the Strī-vāhyas,† and the Bā-  
likas,‡ and the Nṛi-simhas§ who dwell on the Veṇu-  
40 matī||, and the other people who dwell in Valāva¶, and the  
Dharma-baddhas,\*\* the Alúkas,†† the people who occupy

\* This appears to mean the same people as the *Kunyakāṇas* of the Bhīṣma-P. list (ix. 360). It seems to be a compound, but the component names are very uncertain. The latter part may be *Laḍakas*; they are mentioned in the M.-Bh. (Bhīṣma-P., l. 2083), though there are no data to identify them; but *Laḍaha* is given in the dictionary as the name of a people. As regards the first part *Kunapa* and *Kunaha* are given in the dictionary as the name of a people; and *Kulatthas* are mentioned in the M.-Bh. (Bhīṣma-P., ix. 373) and *Mataya Purāṇa* (cxx. 44) as a people to the north of India. A country *Kolūka* is placed in the west in the *Rāmāy.*, and *Kolūta* seems to be another name for it (*Kishk.-K.*, xliii. 8, and Annotations). A country *Kulūta* is also mentioned in the M.-Bh. (*Karna-P.*, xii. 475 and 485).

† I have not met this elsewhere, and it is not in the dictionary. It may perhaps mean "those who live apart from women;" but the reading is more probably *Strī-rājya*. This was the name of a country and people, mentioned in the M.-Bh. and situated apparently north of the Himalayas, near the Hūṇas and Tāṇas (*Vana-P.*, li. 1991; and *Śānti-P.*, iv. 114). *Strī-loka* is mentioned apparently as a place north-west of India in an alternative reading to *Rāmāy.*, *Kishk.-K.*, xliii. 20 (*Gorresio's Edition, Annotations*).

‡ This is not in the dictionary, and I have not found it elsewhere. The reading should probably be *Bāhlikas* or *Vāhlikas*, see page 311, note \*.

§ "The men-lions." I have not met this elsewhere, and it is not in the dictionary as the name of a people.

|| This is not in the dictionary and I have not found any river of this name in the north-west. It has been mentioned in verse 38 above.

¶ *Valāva-stha*; this might also be read as *Vala + avasthā*. I have not met either word elsewhere. A town or river *Bulākā* is mentioned in the M.-Bh. as situated in North India (*Anuśās.-P.*, xxv. 1706).

\*\* "Those who are firmly attached to the Law"; or perhaps *Dharma-buddha*, "those who are enlightened in the law." It seems to be an adjective rather than a proper name, and may qualify *Alúkas*. I have not met with it elsewhere as a proper name, and the nearest resemblance to it is *Bāhu-bādhā* of the Bhīṣma-P. list (ix. 362); see page 317, note §. The *Madhumattas* of the same list (ix. 360) are probably the same people.

†† This is not in the dictionary, and I have not found it elsewhere. The people intended are no doubt the *Ulúkas*, and the text should read *tathalúká* instead of *tathálúká*. For the *Ulúkas* see page 346, note †.

Uru-karma \*—*these* peoples are in the Tortoise's left hind † foot. ‡

- 41 Where also Āśhādhā and Śravaṇā and Dhanishṭhā are situated.

The mountains Kailāsa, § and Hima-vat, Dhanush-mat, || and  
42 Vasu-mat, ¶ the Krauñčas, \*\* and the Kurus †† and Vakas, ‡‡

\* I have not met this elsewhere and it is not in the dictionary. It is perhaps to be connected with the *Urṇas*; see page 324, note †. A people called *Urdamarus* are placed in the north in the *Matsya Purāṇa* (cxx. 48).

† For *pārīte* read *paśc'e*?

‡ This verse closes with the word *bhāgure*; it is not in the dictionary and seems to be erroneous. Should the reading be *bhāsura*, "brilliant," an epithet to Āśhādhā and Śravaṇā?

§ This mountain is of course constantly mentioned throughout Sanskrit literature, and the references indicate that it was on the north of the middle portion of the Himalaya range. The name is given in modern maps to the range of mountains which is situated immediately north of the Mánasa lakes, and in which the Indus rises.

|| This is given in the dictionary, but I have not met with it elsewhere. It may perhaps refer to Himavat; see canto lvii verse 59, where the range is compared to a bow in shape.

¶ I have not found this elsewhere and it is not in the dictionary as the name of a hill. It may perhaps mean "abounding in wealth" and qualify Himavat.

\*\* These are no doubt the people who dwell near the Krauñc'a group of mountains. This group is called the son of Maināka, which is called the son of Himavat, and therefore appears to have been a portion of the Maināka mountains in the great Himavat mountain system (Hari-V., xviii. 941-2). It is mentioned in the *Rāmāy.* as having lake Mánasa on its summit with Maināka lying beyond (Kishk.-K., xliv. 32-37); but in the *Megha-Dūta* Krauñc'a is placed south of that lake, and there is said to be a pass through it leading to the lake (I. 58 and 59 with commentary). The pass must apparently be the valley of the source of the Saru or Ghogra, and the Krauñc'a mountains would therefore be the portion of the Himalaya chain bounding Nepal at the extreme north-west.

†† These must be the Uttara Kurus, see page 345, note §. The Kurus in Madhya-deśa have been mentioned in verse 9 above.

‡‡ These are mentioned in the dictionary, but I have not found them elsewhere. A people called *Varvas* are alluded to in the *Matsya Purāṇa* (cxx. 47).

and the people who are called *Kshudra-vīnas*,\* the *Rasálayas*,† and the *Kaikeyas*,‡ the *Bhoga-prasthas*,§ and the *Yámunas*,||

\* "Those who have small lutes." This is not in the dictionary and I have not met with it elsewhere. A people called *Kshudrakas* are mentioned in the M.-Bh. (Karṇa-P., v. 137); they lived in north India and are generally named in conjunction with the *Málavas* (Sabhá-P., li. 1871; Bhíshma-P., li. 2106; lxxxviii. 3853; Droṇa-P., lxx. 2435), and are said to be the Greek *Osydraci*.

† I have not found this elsewhere. It may mean "those who dwell near the river *Rasá*" which is mentioned in the *R̥ig-V.* (x 75, 6). I have met with no other allusion to it, but Dr. Muir thinks it is probably an affluent of the *Indus* (Sansk. Texts, II. 356 and 357).

‡ See page 317 note ||.

§ I have not met with this word elsewhere, though it is given in the dictionary as the name of a people. Perhaps the reading should be *Bhoja-prastha*, as a synonym of *Bhoja-nagara*, which is mentioned in the M.-Bh. as the capital of king *Uśínara* or *Ushínara*, father of king *Sivi* (*Udyoga-P.*, cxvii), both of whom were famous monarchs and are often alluded to in the M.-Bh. (e.g., *Vana-P.*, cxxxi. 10582-94; cxvii. 13274; *Droṇa-P.*, lviii; and *Sánti-P.*, xix. 932-7). According to the genealogies given (*Hari-V.*, xxxi. 1674-9; and *Matsya Purāṇa*, xlviii. 15-21) various *Panjab* races claimed descent from *Uśínara*, but the name *Uśínaras* was especially appropriated to the descendants of *Sivi* (*Vana-P.*, cxxxi. 10582). The *Uśínaras* are alluded to occasionally (e.g., *Karṇa-P.*, v. 137; *Aitar. Bráh*, viii. 3, 14; and *Kaushít-Up.*, iv. 1), but *Sivi* or *Sibi* is the name which is generally used in the M.-Bh. From these passages and others (e.g., *Sabhá-P.*, xxxi. 1189; li. 1870; *Vana-P.*, cxv. 13249-55; cclxv; cclxx. 15718 and 15743; *Bhíshma-P.*, xviii. 688-90; and li. 2104) it appears the *Sivis* were grouped with the *Trigartas*, *Madras*, and other *Panjab* nations on one side and with the *Kurus*, *Súrasenas* and *Matsyas* on the other side, that is, with all the nations which surrounded *Brahmávarṭa*; and that their territory was near the *Jumna* and close to *Tri-vishtāpa* or *Tri-pishtāpa* which was part of *Brahmávarṭa* (*Vana-P.*, cxxx. 10556—cxxxi. 10595; with lxxxiii. 6054-5 and 7073-8; and page 290, note ||). The *Sivis* or *Uśínaras* therefore appear to have possessed the country at the upper part of the *Sarasvatí*, *Driśhad-vatí* and *Jumna*, from *Saharanpur* to *Pattiala*; with the *Ambashthas* to the north-west (see page 379 note †). In later times they shared the degradation which the brahmins pronounced on the nations of the north-west because of the absence of brahmins among them (*Anuśās.-P.*, xxxiii. 2103).

|| These are mentioned in the *Bhíshma-P.* list (ix. 358) and were the people who inhabited the *Yámuṇa* hills. The *Pándavas* in returning from their visit beyond the *Himalayas* came to the *Yámuṇa* hills, and then to



- 43 the Antar-dvīpas,\* and the Trigartas,† the Agnījyas,‡ the  
 Sārdana peoples,§ the Aśva-mukhas|| also, the Prāptas,¶  
 44 the long-haired C'ivīḍas,\*\* the Dāserakas,†† the Vāṭa-  
 dhānas,‡‡ and the Śava-dhānas,§§ the Pushkalas,|||

the Sarasvatī (Vana-P., clxxvii. 12346-62). The hosts collected on the Kauravas' side before the great war overspread all the country from Pañcānada (the Panjab) to Ahic'hatra (see page 353, note \*) including the Yāmuna hills (Udyoga-P., xviii. 596-601). Hence it appears these hills were the portion of the Himalayas, in which the Jumna has its sources, and which separate it from the Sutlej.

\* Dvīpa in this connexion cannot mean any island, and must mean a *dodh* (see page 364, note †). The Antar-dvīpas then would mean "those who dwell within the doabs." I have not met with this word elsewhere, and here it is probably an adjective to the Trigartas, to whom it is very appropriate.

† See page 374, note \*.

‡ I have not found this elsewhere, and it is not in the dictionary. The proper reading should no doubt be *Agneyas*. They are mentioned in the M.-Bh. (Vana-P., ccliii. 15256). A rishi or man called Agneya Sa-darśana is spoken of who dwelt in Kuru-kshetra (Anuśās.-P., ii. 102-172); and the Agneya Salya-kīrtana is alluded to in the same region (Rāmāy., Ayodh.-K., lxxiii. 3). It seems probable therefore that the Agneyas were a small tribe inhabiting the northern part of Kuru-kshetra.

§ Or perhaps "and the Ardana peoples." I have not met with either name elsewhere, nor are they in the dictionary.

|| These are mentioned in the Matsya Purāṇa (cxx. 58). The synonymous name *Badavā-mukhas* occurs in verse 30 above. It may be noted here that it was an old belief there were people who had heads like dogs, Cynocephali (Pliny, vi 30; Mandeville's Travels, chap. xviii).

¶ I have not found this elsewhere. It may perhaps mean the people called *Vadhras* or *Badhnas* in the Bhīshma-P. list (ix. 363).

\*\* This is not in the dictionary, but *C'ivuka* or *C'ibuka* is given. I have not however met any of these names elsewhere. The word *c'ipīṭa* means "flat-nosed."

†† See page 321, note \*.

‡‡ See page 312, note \*.

§§ This is not in the dictionary, and I have not found it elsewhere. It seems to be formed on the same plan as *Vāṭa-dhāna* and *Yātu-dhāna*. It may perhaps mean "those who place their dead in receptacles," yet it seems rather to be a name.

||| See page 320, note ¶.

and Adhama Kairátas,\* and those who are settled  
 45 in Taksha-sílá,† the Ambálas,‡ the Málavas,§ the  
 Madras,|| the Venukas,¶ and the Vadantikas,\*\* the  
 46 Píngalas,†† the Mána-kalahas,‡‡ the Húpas,§§ and the

\* The basest or rudest races of Kirátas; see page 322, note ||.

† The Greek Taxila. It is mentioned in the M.-Bh. The name is generally connected with Takshaka king of the Nāgas; it is said he killed Arjuna's grandson king Parikshit according to a curse; and that king's son Janamejaya invaded Taksha-sílá and conquered it (Adi-P., iii 682-3 and 832-4; xl-xliv; and xlix. 1954; l. 1991). It appears however to have been named from the Takkas, whose capital it was, and Cunningham has identified it near the modern Shah-dheri or Dheri Shahan in the Panjab. It was a large and famous city and the Takkas held all the country around (Arch. Surv. Repts., II. 6, 111, 112; XIV. 8). It appears to have contained a great Buddhist university also.

‡ These would be the people of Ambála. This name is a late one. It may probably be derived from the old *Ambashtha*, the name of a people often mentioned in the M.-Bh. They are said to have been descendants of king Uśinara and to have been closely related to the Sivas; see page 377, note § (Hari-V., xxxi. 1674-9; Matsya Purāṇa, xlviii. 15-21). They were in the north-west and are generally mentioned along with north-western nations especially the Sivas and Trigartas (M.-Bh., Sabhā-P., xxxi. 1189; Bhīshma-P., xviii. 688-90; cxviii. 5486; oxx. 5649; and Droṇa-P., vii. 183). It seems, very probable therefore that they occupied the country between Ambála, and the Sutlej with the Sivas on their east and south and the Trigartas on their north-west.

§ See page 341, note \*; but they are quite out of place here.

|| See page 329, note \*.

¶ This is not in the dictionary, and I have not found it elsewhere. A people called *Venikas* are mentioned in M.-Bh., Bhīshma-P., li. 2097.

\*\* I have not met with this elsewhere.

†† These people are mentioned in the Rāmāy., as situated in the West (Kishk.-K., xliii. 23, alternative reading; Gorresio's Edition, Annotations). A river *Piñjalá* is included in the Bhīshma-P. list (ix. 325). But perhaps *Pingala* is an adjective here, "light brown," and qualifies *Húpas*; for the Huns appear to have been a light-complexioned people; see note §§ below.

‡‡ I have not met this as a name elsewhere. It may be an adjective, "quarrelsome through pride," and qualify the *Húpas*.

§§ The Huns. They are mentioned as an outside people to the north along with C'inas, &c., (Vana-P., li. 1991; Bhīshma-P., ix. 373; and Sánti-P., cccxxvii. 12229), but are not often alluded to at first. In the *Raghu-Vamśa*

Kohalakas,\* the Māṇḍavyas,† the Bhūti-yuvakas,‡ the  
 Sātakas,§ the Hema-tarakas,|| the Yaśo-matyas,¶ and the  
 47 Gāndhāras,\*\* the Khara-sāgara-rāsīs,†† the Yaudheyas,‡‡  
 and the Dāsameyas,§§ the Rājanyas,|||| and the Śyāmakas,¶¶

they are placed on the northernmost part of the Indus, and the commentator calls them *Mujjanapaddākhyaḥ kṣhattriyaḥ* (iv. 67-68). They appear to have been of a light complexion, for their women are pictured as having made their cheeks pale red (*pāṇḍula*) by beating them in grief (*ibid.*). For the Ephthalites or White Huns, see Cunningham's Arch. Surv. Repts., II. 75-79. All the valley of the Upper Sutlej is called Hundes. A people called *Hāra-hūṇas* are also alluded to in the M.-Bh. as an outside people to the north-west (Sabhā-P., xxxi. 1194; and l. 1844).

\* I have not found this elsewhere, but it seems to be the same as the *Kokarakas* (Bhishma-P., ix. 369) and *Kokanadas* (Sabhā-P., xxvi. 1026), both of whom appear to have been a tribe to the north of the Panjab.

† See page 374, note ††.

‡ I have not met this elsewhere. Perhaps it should be connected with *Bhūti-laya*, which was a place in the north of the Panjab (Karma-P., xlv. 2062-3).

§ I have not found this elsewhere.

|| This is not in the dictionary and I have not met with it elsewhere.

¶ I have not found this elsewhere; it seems to mean a people who live on a river Yaśo-matī.

\*\* See page 314, note ‡.

†† I have not met this elsewhere and it is not in the dictionary. Certain *Khara-patha* countries are alluded to in the Matsya Purāṇa (cxx. 56); but the name in the text should probably be split up into two names.

‡‡ These people are generally mentioned along with the Trigartas, Madras and other Panjab nations (Sabhā-P., li. 1870; and Karma-P., v. 137), and the epithet *adri-ja*, "mountaineer," seems to be applied to them (Droṇa-P., clxi. 7208). They are said to have been descended from king Uśīnara, like the Śivis and Ambaśthas (Hari-V., xxxi. 1674-8). I have not found any thing more to indicate their position, but judging from the portions of the Panjab occupied by other nations the Yaudheyas may perhaps be placed north of the Madras near Lahore.

§§ Or *Dāsamīyas*, as they were also called (Sabhā-P., l. 1825). They were a people in the Panjab; they are called out-castes and are denounced in the Karma-P. of the M.-Bh. like the other Panjab nations (xlv. 2054-6, and 2069; and xlv. 2090), but I have found no data to fix their position.

|||| *Rājanya* means a "kṣhattriya" or "noble," but here it seems to be the name of a people. I have not found it as such elsewhere.

¶¶ I have not met with this elsewhere and it is not in the dictionary.

and the Kshema-dhúrta\* have taken up their position in the Tortoise's left flank.

48 And there is the constellation Váruṇa,† there the two constellations of Praushṭha-padā‡.

And the kingdom of the Yenas§ and Kinnaras,|| the country Praśupāla,¶ and the country Kic'aka,\*\*

\* I have not found this elsewhere. A king of Kulúta named Kshema-dhúrta is mentioned in the M.-Bh. (Kārṇa-P., xii. 475, &c.).

† Or Sata-bhishaj.

‡ They are Púrva-bhádra-padā and Uttara-bhádra-padā.

§ The word *Yena* must be a mistake, and the name meant should, no doubt, be joined with *Kinnara-rájyam*. The proper reading may be either *Yauna-kinnara-rájyam*, or better perhaps, *C'ína-kinnara rájyam*. For C'ínas, see page 319, note ‡. Yanna appears to be an abbreviated form of Yavana and is rarely met with (see M.-Bh., Sánti-P., cvii. 7560); the Yavanas were in the north-west; see page 314, note §, yet they are mentioned again in verse 52.

|| The Kinnaras are said in the dictionary to be mythical beings with a human figure and the head of a horse; such creatures have been already alluded to, see Baḍavá-mukhas in verse 30, and Áśva-mukhas in verse 43. They were placed on Mount Gandha-mádana (Vana-P., cxliii. 10964-8), on Mount Mandara (Droṇa-P., lxxx. 2848-52), and generally in the central region of the Himalayas (Raghu-V., iv. 78); and they are probably meant by the *Kinkaras* in Rámáy., Kishk.-K., xlv. 13. The Kinnaras were to some extent identified with the *Kimpurushas*, though both are mentioned separately in the Matsya-Purana, cxx. 48-49. It is stated in the dictionary that this occurred in later times, but the chief of the Kimpurushas is said in the M.-Bh. to have dwelt at Gandha-mádana (Udyoga-P., clvii. 5352) which was the Kinnaras' territory. The Kimpurushas are described as forming a kingdom in the Páṇḍavas' time and owning the country beyond Sveta-parvata (Sabhá-P., xxvii. 1038-9; Hari-V., xcii. 5013-5; and xcix. 5493-5). They are alluded to as being men of an inferior type (Aitar. Brah., II. i. 8), and as being forest-men (Sánti-P., clxix), and also as skilled in the use of the bow (Udyoga-P., clvii. 5352).

¶ This is, no doubt, a mistake for *Páśu-pála* which is stated to be the name of a country and people to the north-east of Madhya-deśa (dict.). They are mentioned along with Kirátas and Tangaṇas and are placed among the lower Himalayan ranges in the Rámáy. (Kishk.-K., xlv. 20). Another reading in that passage is *Pámśapálas* (see Annotations).

\*\* The text is *sa-kíc'akam*. This seems to be the region of the reeds or bamboos called *kíc'akas*; they are said to line the banks of the R. Sailodá in the North (Rámáy., Kishk.-K., xlv. 76-79; M.-Bh., Sabhá-P., li. 1858-9;

49 and the country of Kásmíra,\* and the people of Abhisára,† the Davadas,‡ and the Tvaṅṅanas,§ the Kulaṭas,||  
50 the Vana-ráshṭrakas,¶ the Sairishṭhas,\*\* the Brahma-

and Raghu-V., iv. 73). It is not clear where this country was. The R. Sailodá is placed between Mera and Mandara in the passage from the M.-Bh., and the Kḥasas, Páradas and Tangaṇas dwelt near it. The R. Sailodaká is said to rise at the foot of Mount Arṇa, west of Kailása, in the Matsya Purāṇa (cxx. 22-23).

A people called *Kic'akas* are mentioned in the M.-Bh., as being near the Matsyas, Trigartas and Pañc'álas, i.e., in Madhya-deśa (Kdi-P., clvi. 6084-7), and Kic'aka was the name of the general of Virāṭa king of Matsya (Virāṭa-P., xiv. 376-7). The dictionary states that they were a tribe of the Kekayas (see page 317, note ||) and that Eka-c'akrá was one of their towns; but Eka-c'akrá seems rather to have been in Madhya-deśa (Kdi-P., clvii. 6104-9; clx. 6207; clxiv. 6306; and Van-P., xi. 388-415), and Arrah in Behar claims to be that town. Perhaps there may be some confusion with Kikaṭa, the old name of Behar, in this.

\* *Kásmírakam ráshṭram*; it is called *Kásmíra-ka-mandala* (M.-Bh., Vana-P., cxxx. 10545-6; and Anusás.-P., xxv. 1695); see page 323, note ‡. It is quite out of place here.

† This was a country in the north of the Panjab and its capital was *Abhisári* (M.-Bh., Sabhá-P., xxvi. 1027; and Bhíshma-P., ix. 361). It is not often mentioned (Karna-P., xiv. 540-1; and see also perhaps Droṇa-P., xciii. 3379-80), unless the *Abhisháhas* or *Abhisháhas* are the same people (Bhíshma-P., xviii. 688; cxviii. 5485; Droṇa-P., clxi. 7207). But Abhisára is quite out of place here in the north-eastern region.

‡ This is not in the dictionary. I have met with it elsewhere only in Hari-Vaṁśa, xcix. 5503-4, but there it is a mistake for *Darada*; compare xcii. 5022-3, and xci. 4966-70. The Daradas are out of place here; see page 318, note, ||. They are mentioned in verse 32 also.

§ No doubt a mistake for Tangaṇas, see page 323, note §.

|| This is not in the dictionary, but a people called *Kulati* are mentioned there. I have not found it elsewhere. The word resembles *Kulúta* (Karna-P., xii. 475 and 485) and *Kolúta* and *Kolúka* (Rámáy., Kishk.-K., xliii. 8, and Annotations) which seem to be the modern Kulu near the source of the R. Bias, but it is out of place here. A similar name *Kuruṭas* is mentioned in verse 51.

¶ This is mentioned in the dictionary, but I have not found it elsewhere. Vana-ráshṭra as "the country of forests" would apply well to the densely wooded tracts of Assam.

\*\* I have not met with this elsewhere and it is not in the dictionary. A

purakas,\* and the Vana-váhyakas,† the Kirátas‡ and Kausíkas§ and Anandas,|| the Pahlava¶ and Lolana\*\* peoples, the Dárvádas,†† and the Marakas,‡‡ and the Kurñtas,§§ the Anna-darakas,||| the Eka-pádas,¶¶ the Khaśas,\*\*\* the Ghoshas,††† the Svarga-bhaumánavadyakas, ‡‡‡

place called *Sairishaka* is mentioned, but it was west of Delhi (M.-Bh., *Sabhá-P.*, xxxi. 1187-8).

\* This is mentioned in the dictionary, and *Brahma-pura* is said to be the name of a peak in the Himálayas, but I have not met either name elsewhere.

† This is in the dictionary but I have not found it elsewhere.

‡ See page 322, note ||; and canto lvii, verse 8

§ These would be the people dwelling on the banks of the R. Kausíkí or Kosi (see page 292, note \*\*).

|| This is not in the dictionary and I have not found it elsewhere. The text should no doubt read *Nandá* separate from *Kiráta-kausíká*, and the people are the *Nandus*, those who live on the banks of the rivers *Nandá* and *Apara-naudá*, which are often mentioned as situated in the North between the Ganges and Kausíkí or Kosi, and near the R. Báhudá and Mt. Hemakúṭa (M.-Bh., *Adi-P.*, cxcv. 7818-9; *Vana-P.*, lxxxvii. 8323; cx. 9968-87; and *Droṇa-P.*, liv. 2092).

¶ See page 314, note \*. They are altogether out of place here

\*\* This is given in the dictionary, but I have not met with it elsewhere.

†† This seems to be a mistake; it seems the reading should be either *Dárvadyá*, "the Dárvas and others," or *Dárvá dámarakáś*. For the Dárvás see page 324, note ‡

‡‡ Or perhaps *Dámarakas* as suggested in the last note. *Maraka* is given in the dictionary but I have not found it elsewhere. It suggests *Muru* and *Naraka*, the names of two Dánava or Asura chiefs in *Prág-jyotisha* whom *Krishṇa* conquered (M.-Bh., *Sabhá-P.*, xiii. 578; *Vana-P.*, xii. 488; *Udyoga-P.*, xlvii. 1897-92, cxxix. 4403-9; clvii. 5353-8; *Sánti-P.*, cccxli. 12954-6, and *Hari-V.*, cxxi. 6791—cxviii. 6321). *Prág-jyotisha* was the North of Bengal, see page 328, note †

§§ This is not in the dictionary and I have not found it elsewhere. Is it to be connected with the R. *Karatoyá*, the modern *Kuratee* (see page 292, note ††)?

||| This is not in the dictionary and I have not found it elsewhere.

¶¶ "The men with only one foot," see page 358, note †.

\*\*\* They are mentioned above in verse 6; see also page 346 note \*.

††† I have not met with these elsewhere. The *Ghoshas-saṅkhyas* are mentioned in verse 6 above.

‡‡‡ This seems to be a compound name, but it is not in the dictionary and

52 and the Hingas,\* and the Yavanas,† and *those who are*  
*called C'ira-právarāṇas,*‡ the Tri-netras,§ and the Pauravas,||  
 53 and the Gandharvas,¶ O bráhmaṇ. These people are  
 situated in the Tortoise's north-east foot.

And the three constellations, the Revatis,\*\* Áśvi-daivatya††  
 54 and Yámya,‡‡ are declared *to be situated* in that foot *and tend*  
 to the complete development of actions,§§ O best of munis.

And these very constellations *are situated* in these places,|||

I have not found any thing like it elsewhere. As an adjective it might mean,  
 "faultless as Svarga and the planet Mars," but that seems inappropriate.

\* I have not met with this elsewhere and it is not in the dictionary.

† The Yavanas were in the North-west, see page 314, note §, and also  
 canto lvii, verse 8; but they seem to have spread widely and here they are  
 mentioned in the North-east.

‡ "Those who wear bark-clothing." I have not met with it elsewhere  
 as the name of a people.

§ "The three-eyed people." It was believed there were such people, see  
 M.-Bh., Sabhā-P., l. 1837.

|| The Paurava race was descended from Púru, one of Yayāti's sons (M.-Bh.,  
 Ādi-P., lxxxv. 3533-4; and xcv. 3762-4) who is said to have got Madhya-deśa  
 (Hari-V., xxx. 1604 and 1619); and the Pauravas spread in various direc-  
 tions. A Paurava kingdom is placed in the North region, in the account of  
 Arjuna's conquests there (Sabhā-P., xxvi. 1022-5) and that may be the nation  
 intended here. There were also Pauravas elsewhere (*e.g.*, Śānti-P., xlix.  
 1790-2; and Ādi-P., clxxxvi. 6995; but Sabhā-P., xxx. 1164 is probably a  
 mistake).

¶ The Gandharvas were fabled to be heavenly musicians, but they are also  
 spoken of as a people dwelling beyond lake Mánasa, and it is said Arjuna  
 conquered them and brought back a tribute of fine roan horses (*tittiri-  
 kulmāsha*) from their country (Sabhā-P., xxvii. 1041-3). It is said the Gan-  
 dharvas are more powerful by night (Ādi-P., clxx. 6504). It is also fabled  
 that the gods obtained Soma from them because they lust after women  
 (Aitar. Brah., I. v. 27); and they were said to possess or inspire people (*id.*  
 V. v. 29; and Bṛih. Araṇ. Up., III. iii. 1 and vii. 1).

\*\* For *Revatyāś* read *Revatyāś*; the plural is sometimes used.

†† Or Áśvinī.

‡‡ Or Bharanī.

§§ *Pákāya*.

||| There do not appear to be any particular reasons why the lunar con-  
 stellations are assigned to the respective portions of the Tortoise's body.

- 55 O bráhmaṇ. These places, which have been mentioned in order, undergo calamity\* when the *their constellations* are occulted,† and gain ascendancy,‡ O bráhmaṇ,§ along with  
 56 the planets which are favourably situated. Of whichever constellation whichever planet is lord, both *the constellation and the corresponding country* are dominated by it;|| at its ascendancy¶ good fortune accrues to that country, O best of munis-  
 57 Singly *all* countries are alike; fear or prosperity\*\* comes to people according as *either* arises out of the *particular*  
 58 constellation and planet, O bráhmaṇ. *The thought*, that mankind are in a common predicament with their own particular constellations when these are unfavourable, inspires fear. Along with the *particular* planets there arises from *their* occultations an unfavourable *influence* which discourages exertion. Likewise the development of the conditions *may be* favourable; and so when the planets are badly situated *it tends* to produce slight benefit to men and to themselves with the  
 59 wise who are learned in geography.†† When the *particular* planet is badly situated,‡‡ men *even* of sacred merit have fear for their goods or cattle-pen, their dependants, friends or  
 60 children or wife. Now men of little merit feel fear in their souls, very sinful men feel it everywhere indeed, but the  
 61 sinless never in a single place. Man experiences good or evil, which may arise from community of region, place and people, or which may arise from having a common king, or which may arise peculiarly from himself,§§ or which may arise  
 62 from community of constellation and planet. And mutual preservation is produced by the non-malignity||| of the pla-

\* *Pidyante.*† *Pídā.*‡ *Abhy-udaya.*§ For *vipram* read *vipra*.|| The text is *tad-bhāvito bhayam*; but it seems better to take the whole as one word.¶ *Utkarsha.*\*\* *Sobhana*, "brightening up."

†† These verses seem rather obscure.

‡‡ For *du-sthe* read *duḥ-sthe*.§§ For *ātsajam* read *ātma-jam*.||| For *grahādausthyena* read *grahādausthyena*.



nets; and loss of good *is produced* by the evil *results which spring* from these very *planets*, O lordly bráhmaṇ.

- 64 I have described to thee what is the position of the Tortoise  
among the constellations. But this community of countries  
65 is inauspicious and also auspicious. Therefore a wise man,  
knowing the constellation of *his particular* country and the  
occultation of the planets, should perform a propitiatory rite  
for himself and observe the popular rumours, O best of *men*.  
66 Bad impulses\* both of the gods and of the Daityas and other  
*demons* descend from the sky upon the earth; they have been  
called by sacred writings "popular rumours"† in the world.  
67 So a wise man should perform that *propitiatory rite*; he  
should not discard the popular rumours. By reason of them  
68 the decay of corrupt traditional doctrine‡ befits men. Those  
*rumours* may effect the rise of good and the casting off of sins,  
*also* the forsaking of wisdom,§ O bráhmaṇ; they cause *the*  
69 *loss* of goods and other *property*. Therefore a wise man, being  
devoted to propitiatory rites and taking an interest in the  
popular rumours, should have the popular rumours *proclaimed*  
70 and the propitiatory rites performed at the occultations of  
planets; and *he should practise* fastings devoid of malice, the  
praise-worthy laudation of funeral monuments and other  
*objects of veneration*, prayer, the homa oblation, and liberality  
71 and ablution; *he should* eschew anger and other *passions*. And  
a learned man should be devoid of malice and shew bene-  
volence towards all created things; he should discard evil  
72 speech and also outrageous words. And a man should perform  
the worship of the planets at all occultations. Thus all terri-  
ble things which result from the planets and constellations  
73 are without exception pacified with regard to self-subdued  
men.

This Tortoise described by me in India is in truth the  
74 adorable lord Náráyana, whose soul is inconceivable, *and* in  
whom everything is established. In it all the gods have their

\* *Daurhṛiddh*; the dictionary gives this word only as neuter.

† *Loka-váda*.

‡ *Duṣhṭágama*.

§ *Prajñá-háni*.

75 station, each resorting to his own constellation. Thus, in its  
 middle are Agni, the Earth, and the Moon, O bráhmaṇ. In  
 its middle are Aries and the next two constellations;\* in its  
 76 mouth are Gemini and the next constellation; and in the  
 south-east foot Cancer and Leo are situated; and in its  
 side are placed the three signs of the zodiac, Leo, Virgo  
 77 and Libra: and both Libra and Scorpio are in its south-  
 west foot; and at its hinder part† is stationed Sagittarius  
 78 along with Scorpio; and in its north-west foot are the  
 three *signs* Sagittarius and the next *two*; and Aquarius and  
 79 Pisces have resorted to its northern side; Pisces and Aries  
 are placed in its north-east foot, O bráhmaṇ.

The countries are placed in the Tortoise, and the constella-  
 80 tions in these countries, O bráhmaṇ, and the signs of the zodiac  
 in the constellations, the planets in the signs of the zodiac.‡  
 Therefore one should indicate calamity to a country when  
 81 *its particular* planets and constellations are occulted. In that  
*event* one should bathe and give alms and perform the homa  
 oblation and the rest of the ritual.

This very foot of Viṣṇu, which is in the midst of the  
 planets, is Brahmá.

---

## CANTO LIX.

---

### *Description of the Earth continued.*

*Márkaṇḍeya tells of the continents Bhadrásva and Ketumála,  
 and the country of the Northern Kurus, and describes their  
 mountains, rivers and people.*

Márkaṇḍeya spoke

- 1 Thus then have I declared this continent Bhárata accurately,  
 O muni, and the Kṛita, Tretá, and Dvápára, and Kali *ages*  
 2 which are the four ages.§ And now indeed there is a fourfold

\* Taurus and Gemini; the signs of the Zodiac overlap in the different  
 stations. † *Prishṭhe*; but *puc'he* would be better.

‡ For *graha-rátishv* read *grahá ráátishv*?

§ For *taihd-tishya-c'atushhayam* read *taihd tishya-c'atushayam*.

classification\* in these ages, O bráhmaṇ. Four, three and  
 3 two *hundreds* and one hundred of autumns men live here in  
 the Kṛita, Tretá and two other ages respectively, O bráhmaṇ.

Hear from me of the continent Bhadrásva, which is situated  
 4 east of the magnificent eastern mountain Deva-kúṭa.

Both Sveta-parṇa, and Nila, and the lofty mountain Saivála,  
 5 Kaurañja, Parṇa-śálágra—these indeed are the five mountain  
 ranges. There are many small mountains besides, which are  
 6 offshoots of those *ranges*; the countries *there* are distinguished  
 by them, they are of various shapes *and occur* in thousands.  
 Moreover they are like white water-lilies and are auspicious  
 7 with their pure summits. Such-like and diverse also are  
 other *hills* by hundreds and thousands. The Sítá, the  
 8 Saṅkhávatí, the Bhadrá, and the C'akrávartá and many other  
 rivers spread abroad there, bearing down volumes of cold  
 water. In this country mankind are lustrous as shells and  
 9 like pure gold;† they associate with the celestials; they are  
 holy; their lives last a thousand years; neither inferior nor  
 10 superior exists among them; they are all of equal appear-  
 ance; they are endowed naturally with patience and the  
 seven other good qualities.

And there the god Janárdana has a horse's head and four  
 11 arms; with head, chest, penis, feet and forearms *resembling a*  
*horse's*, and he has three eyes. And thus the objects of sense  
 are perceptible by him, the lord of the world.

12 Now hear from me about the continent Ketumála which  
 is on the west.

13 Viśála, Kambala, Kṛishṇa, Jayanta, Hari-parvata, Viśoka,  
 and Vardhamána—these seven are the mountain ranges.  
 There are other hills by thousands, among which a multitude  
 14 of people dwell. Those people dwell *there* in hundreds, the  
 Maulis‡ huge in stature, the Sákas, Potas and Karambhakas,§

\* C'atur-varṇyo, a masc. abstract noun.

† Saṅkha-buddha-hema-sama-prabháḥ.

‡ This and the following words seem to be the names of people; moun-  
 tains and rivers in these continents are named, and it seems most natural  
 and reasonable to take these words as names.

§ Sákapotakarambhakáh; or perhaps "Sákas, Potakas and Rambhakas."

15 and those who are distinguished by their thumbs,\* who drink  
of the great rivers, the Vaṅkshu, the Śyámá, the Svakambalá,  
the Amoghá, the Káminí, the Śyámá, and of others in  
16 thousands. And here life is equal to the above-mentioned  
*lives in Bhadrásva*. And here the adorable Hari wears a  
boar's shape and *resembles a boar* in feet, face, chest, back and  
17 flanks. And the lunar constellations are beautiful in *that*  
country which enjoys three constellations *only*. Such is this  
*continent of Ketumála*, which I have described to thee, O best  
of munis.

18 Next I will tell *thee* of the Northern Kuru; hearken to  
me now.

There the trees yield sweet fruit, they bear blossoms and  
19 fruit in constant succession; and they produce garments and  
ornaments inside their fruits; verily they bestow all one's  
20 desire; they yield fruit according to all one's desire. The  
ground abounds with precious stones; the air is fragrant and  
always delightful. Mankind are born there, when they quit,  
21 the world of the gods. They are born in pairs; *the pairs* abide  
an equal time, and are as fond of each other as cākṛavákas.<sup>†</sup>  
22 Their stay there is fourteen and a half thousands of *years*  
indeed. And C'andra-kánta is the chief of the mountains,  
23 and Súrya-kánta is the next; they are the two mountain  
ranges in that continent. And in the midst thereof the great  
river Bhadra-somá flows through the earth with a volume of  
24 sacred and pure water. And there are other rivers by thou-  
sands in that northern continent; and some flow with milk  
25 and others flow with ghee. And there are lakes of curdled  
milk there, and others lie among the various hills. And fruits  
26 of various kinds, which taste rather like amṛita, *are produced*  
by hundreds and thousands in the woods in those continents.  
And there the adorable Viṣṇu has his head turned to the  
27 east and wears a fish's shape. And the lunar constellations  
are divided† into nine parts, three and three, and the regions  
of the sky are divided into nine parts, O best of munis.

\* *Āṅgula-pramukháśi*.

† For *vibhakto* read *vibhaktir*?

- 28 And in the ocean are *the islands* O'andra-dvīpa, and next Bhadra-dvīpa; and there also within the ocean is the famous island Puṇya, O great muni.
- 29 Thus I have described this northern continent of Kuru, O brāhman. Hearken while I tell *thee* of Kim-purusha and the other continents.

---

CANTO LX.

---

*The description of the Earth concluded.*

Mārkaṇḍeya briefly describes the continents, Kim-purusha Hari-varsha, Ilāvṛita, Rāmyaka and Hiraṇ-maya, and their inhabitants.

Mārkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 1 I will tell *thee*, O brāhman, what the continent Kim-purusha is; where men with *real* bodies live ten thousand
- 2 *years*; where men and women are indeed free from sickness and free from sorrow, and there the fig-tree\* is called śaṇḍa;
- 3 it grows very high, it is like a grove.† Those men are always drinking the juice of its fruit; and the women are born with lasting youthfulness and are fragrant as the lotus.‡
- 4 Next to Kim-purusha is mentioned Hari-varsha. There
- 5 mankind are born of the appearance of gold; they all descend there from the world of the gods, and are shaped like the gods in all respects. In Hari-varsha all the men quaff
- 6 fine sugar-cane juice; neither old age afflicts them there, nor do they suffer from decay at all; and they live in truth for the whole of their time free from sickness.
- 7 I have mentioned Ilāvṛita, which is in the middle, the continent of Meru. The sun does not burn there, nor do men
- 8 suffer from decay; and they do not grasp at selfish gains.§

\* *Plaksha*.

† *Nandanopamaḥ*.

‡ *Utpala-gandhikāḥ*; this word, *neuter*, also means a species of sandal of the colour of brass and very fragrant.

§ *Labhante nātma-lābhaṃ c'a*; it seems impossible to take these words with *raṁmayat c'andra-sūryayoḥ*.

The rays of the moon and the sun, of the constellations and  
 9 planets there are the sublime lustre of Meru. Mankind are  
 born there bright as the lotus flower, fragrant as the lotus  
 flower; they feed on the juice of the jambu fruit; and  
 10 their eyes are as wide as the lotus leaf. And their life  
 there lasts for thirteen thousand years. There is a saucer-  
 11 shaped expanse in the middle of Meru\* in Ilāvṛita; therein  
 is the great mountain Meru; thus is made known Ilāvṛita.

Next I will tell of the continent Ramyaka; hearken thereto.  
 12 And there the green-leaved Indian fig-tree† is the lofty tree.  
 And the people there pass their time drinking the juice of its  
 13 fruit. There the men who eat its fruit live for ten thousand  
 years; they are pre-eminent for sexual pleasures and are  
 pure; they are free from old age and ill odours.  
 14 And north of that is the continent famed by name as  
 Hiraṇ-maya; where the river Hiraṇ-vatī gleams with abun-  
 15 dant lotuses. Mankind there are born with great strength,  
 full of vigour, with large bodies, eminently good, wealthy and  
 benign of look.

---

### CANTO LXI.

---

#### *The Story of the Brāhman in the Svároç'isha Manvantara.*

*Mārkaṇḍeya begins the relation of the Svároç'isha Manvan-  
 tara—A young brāhman, by virtue of a magic ointment applied  
 to his feet, visits the Himālaya mountains in half a day—The  
 scenery there described—He wishes to return home, but the magic  
 ointment has been dissolved by the snow, and he loses his way—  
 The Apsaras Varúthint meets him, and falling in love with him  
 begs him for his love—He refuses all her entreaties, and at  
 length appeals to the gárhapatya fire to help him homeward.*

Kraushṭuki spoke :

Thou hast duly related what thou wast asked, O great muni,

\* For *meru-madhya* read *meru-madhya*.

† *Nyag-rodha*, *Ficus indica*.

namely, the constitution of the earth, ocean, &c., their dimensions, also the planets and their dimensions, and the constitution of the constellations, and the bhúr-loka and the other worlds, and all the Lower Regions. And thou hast declared the Sváyambhuva Manvantara to me, O muni. Next I wish to hear about the Manvantaras which succeeded that, the deities who ruled over the Manvantaras, the rishis, and the kings who were their sons.

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

I have made known to thee the Manvantara which is called Sváyambhuva. Now next to that hear about another which is named after Svároóisha.\*

There lived a certain bráhmaṇ eminent among the dvijas in the town Aruṇáspada on the bank of the Varuṇá; and he surpassed the Asvins† in beauty of form. He was gentle in disposition, upright in conduct, he had studied all the Vedas and Vedáṅgas; always gracious to guests, he was the refuge of all persons who arrived at night. Now he had this intention, "I will see the earth which has most charming forests and gardens, and is embellished with many a town."

Now a certain guest once arrived at his abode, who was acquainted with the powers of various medicinal herbs, and skilled in the magic art. Now being requested by the former, whose mind was purified by faith, he described to him both countries and charming towns, forests, rivers,‡ and mountains, and holy sanctuaries. Then the former filled with astonishment said to that best of bráhmaṇs, "In that thou hast seen many countries thou art not worn with excessive toil, thou art not very old in life, nor hast thou long passed thy youth; how dost thou roam the earth in a short time, O bráhmaṇ?"

\* For svaroc'ishákhyam read svárooc'ishákhyam?

† *Aty-ásvinau*, "one who surpasses the two Ásvins;" see Prof. Sir M. Monier-Williams' Grammar, rule 126 í.

‡ For nadyaḥ read nadítḥ.

The bráhmaṇ spoke :

- 12 By the power of spells and medicinal herbs my course is rendered free, O bráhmaṇ; verily I travel a thousand yojanas in half a day.

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 13 Then the bráhmaṇ made him this answer in return with due  
14 respect, believing \* the word of that wise bráhmaṇ, "Adorable Sir, give me the favour that comes from the power of  
15 spells; I have an intense desire to see this earth." And that bráhmaṇ of exalted intellect gave him an ointment for the feet; and offered careful counsel † regarding the region which the other mentioned.
- 16 Now the bráhmaṇ, with his feet anointed by the other, went to see the Hima-vat range, where many a cascade  
17 pours down, O best of dvijas, for he thought, "Since I can indeed travel a thousand yojanas in half a day, ‡ I will certainly return in the other half of it." He reached the top of Hima-vat, not much fatigued in body, O bráhmaṇ. Then he roamed about there over the surface of the snowy mountain. Now the ointment on his feet, which was extracted from the choicest medicinal herbs, became washed off by the  
19 melting snow which accumulated on his feet. Thereupon he grew slack in his walk, as he wandered about hither and thither. He saw the peaks of the snowy range which most  
21 fascinate the mind. Gazing at *those peaks* which are loved of the Siddhas and Gandharvas, and where the Kin-naras disport themselves, which are delightful here and there for  
22 play and pastime among the gods and other *heavenly beings*, and which were thronged with hundreds of bevvies of heavenly Apsarases, the bráhmaṇ, whose hair stood erect with delight,  
23 was not satiated, O muni. Filled with rapture he gazed at the mighty mountain range Hima-vat, which in one place captivated him with the fall of the broken water from a

\* For *śrad-dhadhāno* read *śrad-dadhāno*.

† *Abhi-mantrayāmsa*; this meaning is not given to the verb in the dictionary.

‡ For *dināddhana* read *dinārdhana*.



torrent, and which in another place was made resonant with  
 24 the cries of peacocks as they danced, and which was thronged  
 here and there with pied-crested cuckoos,\* lapwings and  
 other pretty birds, and with cock-kails and humming bees,  
 25 which captivated the ear, and which was fanned by breezes  
 perfumed with scents from trees that were in full blossom.

26 And after viewing the mighty mountain Hima-vat as it  
 thus was, the young bráhmaṇ resolved to go homewards,  
 27 intending to see it *again* the next day. Now he had lost the  
 ointment from his feet, his step was slow by reason of his  
 28 long *walking*, he pondered "What is this? I have acted  
 unwisely, if the ointment is destroyed, having dissolved off  
 me by the melted snow; and this mountain is very difficult  
 29 of access, and it is a long distance that I have come here. I  
 shall suffer loss in my rites. How shall I kindle a fire and do  
 my dutiful homage and all else *that is needful*? I have fallen  
 30 into a terrible strait. 'This is charming! that is charming!'—  
 with my sight so engrossed on this fine mountain, I shall not  
 31 be satiated even in hundreds of years. The melodious talk of  
 the Kin-naras ravishes my ears all around, and my nose eagerly  
 32 seeks the scents from the trees that are in full blossom, and  
 the breeze is delightful to the touch, and the fruits are full of  
 juice, and the charming lakes forcibly captivate the mind.  
 33 In these circumstances then if I may chance to see some  
 ascetic, he may point out the road for me to go homeward."

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

34 The bráhmaṇ, reflecting so, wandered yet on the snowy  
 mountain; having lost the efficacy of the medicinal herbs  
 35 from his feet, he sank into intense fatigue. And Varúthini  
 saw him, that goodly muni, as he was wandering; she a  
 choice Apsaras, of high station, the daughter of Múli,† and  
 36 beauteous in shape. As soon as she saw him Varúthini

\* *C'daka* ; see page 29 note †.

† *Mauleyá*. The dictionary gives *Mauleya* as the name of a people, but that meaning seems inappropriate here. As a patronymic *Mauleyá* would appear more correct. See verse 46 below.

felt her heart drawn towards that noble bráhman by love,  
 37 in truth she was immediately filled with affection. She  
 thought, "Who then is this, of most fascinating appearance?  
 38 My birth may reach its reward if he do not despise me. How  
 handsome his shape! How graceful his gait! How deep his  
 39 gaze! Where is there his equal on the earth? I have seen  
 the gods and the Daityas, the Siddhas, the Gandharvas and  
 the Nágas; how is it there is not even one who rivals this  
 40 high-souled man in figure? If he should fall in love with  
 me as I *have fallen in love* with him, the store of merit  
 41 which he has acquired may be attainable by me here. If he  
 should cast a really loving glance on me to-day, then there  
 would be no other woman in the three worlds, who has  
 gained more merit than I."

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

42 So reflecting the heavenly maiden, who was sick for love,  
 43 showed herself in very lovely form. Now on seeing her,  
 gracefully-formed Varúthini, the young bráhman approached  
 44 with deference and spoke this word—"Who art thou, O  
*maiden* bright as the lotus-cup? Or on whom dost thou  
 attend? I am a bráhman, I have come here from the city  
 45 Aruṇáspada. The ointment on my feet, by the power of  
 which I came here, has perished being dissolved by the  
 melting snow here, O maiden of fascinating glance!"

Varúthini spoke :

46 I am the daughter of Múli, of high station; I am well-  
 known by name as Varúthini. I roam here at all times  
 47 indeed on this charming mountain. Being such I am com-  
 pelled by the sight of thee, O bráhman, to declare my love.  
 Do thou enjoin me what I must do, I am now submissive  
 to thee."

The bráhman spoke :

48 O benign sweet-smiler, tell me the means whereby I may  
 go to my own home. Loss *is befalling* us in all our actions,  
 49 and grievous loss befalls a bráhman in the perpetual and

occasional ceremonies. Therefore, O lady, do thou deliver me  
 50 from the Himálaya mountains. Absence from home is never  
 commended in bráhmans. I have not sinned, O timid one ;  
 51 it was my curiosity to see other countries. All actions and  
 the perpetual and occasional ceremonies are accomplished by  
 a bráhman when he stays at home ; so they are lost if he  
 52 dwells away from home. Such as thou art, why should  
 I say much. Do then, O illustrious lady, so that I may see  
 my own abode ere the sun sets.

Varúthiní spoke :

53 Speak not so, illustrious Sir ; let not that day come for me,  
 in which abandoning me thou shalt resort to thy own abode !  
 54 Ah ! since heaven is not more charming, O young bráhman,  
 55 then abandoning the gods' abode we will stay here. Sport-  
 ing with me on this beloved snowy mountain, thou thyself,  
 56 O my beloved, wilt not remember thy mortal kinsmen. Seized  
 and rendered submissive by love, I too will give thee here  
 garlands, garments, ornaments, loving joys,\* and dainty food  
 57 and unguents. Charming is the song of the Kin-naras,  
 accompanied with the strains of the lute and flute ; the  
 58 breeze brings gladness to the body ; there is warm food, the  
 water is pure. Longed for by the mind is the bed, fragrant is  
 the ointment. While thou remainest here, illustrious Sir,  
 59 what more wilt thou have in thine own house ? While thou  
 remainest here, never will old age light on thee. This is the  
 60 land of the thirty gods ; it gives fullness to youth !” Having  
 spoken thus, the lotus-eyed maiden, full of affection, exclaim-  
 ing sweetly “ Be thou gracious !” suddenly embraced him  
 in the eagerness of her mind.

The bráhman spoke :

61 Touch me not ; go to some other man who is like thyself,  
 O worthless one ! I have been wooed in one way, thou indeed  
 62 approachest me in a very different way. The oblation to  
 the gods, offered evening and morning, sustains the eternal

\* Bhoksha, not in the dictionary ; read bhoga ?

worlds ; the whole of these three worlds is established on the oblation to the gods, O foolish one !

Varúthini spoke :

- 63 Am I not dear to thee, O bráhman ? Is not the mountain charming ? Leaving aside the Gandharvas, the Kin-  
 64 naras and the others, whom dost thou desire ? Surely, Sir, thou shalt go away from here to thy own abode without doubt ; enjoy with me for a very little while the delights that are hard to be won.

The bráhman spoke :

- 65 I continually desire the gárhapatya and the two other fires ; the fire-place is charming to me ; my dear wife is the goddess who diffuses *herself about me*.\*

Varúthini spoke :

- 66 Compassion, O bráhman, is the foremost of the eight good qualities of the soul ; why dost thou not display it towards  
 67 me, O cherisher of truth and righteousness ? Forsaken by thee, I do not live ; and I am full of affection for thee ; I say not this falsely ; be gracious, O gladdener of thy family !

The bráhman spoke :

- 68 If thou art in truth full of affection, and dost not speak to me out of mere politeness, then tell me the means by which I may go to my own home.

Varúthini spoke :

- 69 Surely, Sir, thou shalt go away from here to thy own abode without doubt ; enjoy with me for a very little while the delights that are hard to be won !

The bráhman spoke :

- 70 *Striving* after delights is not at all commended in bráhmans, O Varúthini ; † *such* striving in bráhmans tends to weariness in this world, and yields no fruit after death.

\* *Vistarapt*, not in the dictionary.

† For *Varúthini* read *Varúthini*.

Varúthini spoke :

- 71 If thou savest me who am at the point of death, thou wilt  
 have the fruit of merit itself in the next world, and delights  
 72 in another life ; and thus the two things will procure thee  
 prosperity in this world ; if thou dost refuse, I shall die and  
 thou wilt incur sin.

The bráhmaṇ spoke :

- 73 My spiritual preceptors have told me that one should not  
 covet another's wife ; therefore I long not for thee ; bewail  
 thy love or be thou withered !

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 74 Having spoken thus, the illustrious *bráhmaṇ*, self-controlled  
 and pure, touched water and prostrating himself addressed  
 75 the *gárhapatya* fire with this muttered prayer,—“O adorable  
*Gárhapatya* fire ! thou art the source of all rites ; from thee  
 and thee alone come the *áhavaniya* fire and the *dakṣiṇa*  
 76 fire ! By the nourishment given by thee the gods subsist  
 who cause the rain, the crops and other *benefits* ; by the crops,  
 77 and them alone, the whole world subsists. Thus this world  
 subsists through thee—by this truth *I adjure thee* that I may  
 78 see my home to-day, ere sets the sun ! By this truth *I adjure*  
*thee* that I may behold the sun to-day while I sit in my  
 house, so that I may not neglect the Vedic rites at the proper  
 79 time ! And that, as the thought of and the longing for  
 another's goods and another's wife have never occurred to  
 me, so this *virtue* may be perfected in me ! ”

---

## CANTO LXII.

---

*About the Svárociśha Manvantara.*

*The young bráhmaṇ is succoured by Agni and returns home—  
 A Gandharva Kali sees Varúthini disconsolate and in the guise  
 of the bráhmaṇ gains her love.*

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 1 Now as the young bráhmaṇ thus spoke, the *Gárhapatya*  
 2 Fire in sooth appeared at hand upon his body ; and with it

surmounting him, he stood amid a circle of light, and illumined that place as if he were Agni in bodily form. Now vehement love seized upon the heavenly maiden as she beheld the bráhmaṇ, who stood there in so glorious a form. Then the young bráhmaṇ,\* surmounted by that Fire, immediately started to go as before; and he departed in haste while the slender-shaped heavenly maiden gazed after him as far as her eye could reach, her throat quivering with sighs. Then in one moment from that time the bráhmaṇ reached his own abode and performed all the rites as he had mentioned.

Now she, the beauteous in every limb, remained with soul and mind clinging fast to him, and passed the remainder of the day and also the night in almost ceaseless sighing. And the faultlessly-shaped maiden sighing and crying "Ah! Ah!" continually, reproached herself, "O luckless one that I am!" though her eyes were fascinating. Neither in sport, nor in food, nor yet on delightsome forest, nor on the charming glens did she then fix her joy. She turned her desire towards a pair of billing éakravákas. Forsaken by him the finely-shaped maiden reproached her own youthful womanhood, "How happened it † that I came to this mountain, forcibly attracted by evil fate? And how happened it that he, such a man as that, crossed the range of my eye? If that grand man shall not come to me to-day, verily the intolerable fire of my love for him will consume me away. The song of the cock-koil which was so delightful, this self same song when disunited ‡ from him is burning enough, as it were, to me to-day."

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

Thus she poured forth her words, O bráhmaṇ, § absorbed in love, and her passion for him grew every moment then.

\* For *dija-nandanaḥ* read *dvija-nandanaḥ*.

† Kva.

‡ Read in preference *hínám* for *hinaṁ*, to agree with *mám*?

§ The text reads, *Jagáma muni-sattamam*; but these words seem meaningless from the context. *Jagáda muni-sattama* seem preferable, and I have ventured to adopt them in the translation.

15 Now a Gandharva named Kali was enamoured of her, and  
 16 had been rejected by her before. He beheld her in that  
 condition. Then he pondered, "Why now is this Varúthiní,  
 who moves as gracefully as an elephant, faded by the *hot*  
 17 blast of sighing on this mountain? Has she been wounded  
 by some muni's curse, or has any one treated her with dis-  
 honour, since she keeps on bedewing her face copiously with  
 18 tears?" Then Kali through curiosity meditated on that  
 matter full long, and perceived the truth by the power of  
 19 concentrated thought. Comprehending that *matter* of the  
 muni,\* Kali pondered again, "I have well accomplished this,  
 20 by reason of fortunate actions done before. Though often  
 entreated by me who love her, she, this very *maiden*, rejected  
 21 *me*; to-day I shall gain *her*. She is in love with a human  
 being; by virtue of that *fact* she shall all-unsuspectingly  
 bestow her love on me while I assume his shape. Why  
 then do I delay?"

Márkaṇḍeya spoke:

22 Thereupon he assumed that bráhmaṇ's shape by his inherent  
 power, and moved to where sits Varúthiní disconsolate.  
 23 Seeing him, a little wide grew the eyes of the finely-shaped  
 maiden. In her slender form she approached him and ex-  
 24 claimed "Be kind!" again and again; "Bereft of thee I  
 shall assuredly abandon my life; thereby *thou wilt incur*  
 very sore unrighteousness, and thy sacred ceremonies will  
 25 come to ruin. Joining with me in this charming glen  
 among the great glens, thou wilt certainly acquire right-  
 26 eousness by saving me. Life verily has some remnant† for  
 me, O wise bráhmaṇ! Surely thou hast returned for that  
 reason, and bringest gladness to my heart."

Kali spoke:

27 What am I doing? My ceremonies suffer harm while I  
 linger here. Dost thou tell me such a tale as this, O slender-

\* Or better perhaps, for *Muneḥ* read *Mune*, "O Muni."

† For *sávaśesham* read *c'ávaśesham*? Avaśeśha may apparently be neuter  
 sometimes.

- 28 waisted maiden ? Therefore I am fallen into a strait. Thou must do \* what I say, and not otherwise, if there is to be union between me and thee, lady, to-day.

Varúthini spoke :

- 29 Be kind ! What thou sayest, that I *will* do for thee without falsehood—I say this without fear—whatever I must do now for thy sake.

Kali spoke :

- 30 Thou must not gaze on me while we meet in union in the wood to-day ; thou must close thine eyes, O lady with beautiful brows, the while thou dost unite with me.

Varúthini spoke :

- 31 So be it as 't is good to thee ! As thou wishest, so let it be ! Truly I must remain submissive to thee now in every way.

---

### CANTO LXIII.

---

*About the Svároç'isha Manvantara.*

*The Apsaras Varúthini had by the Gandharva Kali a son who was named Sva-roç'is—He delivered a maiden Mano-ramá and her father the Vidyá-dhara Indivara from a curse—and married her.*

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 1 Then with her he sported on mountain tops, which charmed the heart with their blossoming forests, and midst
- 2 charming lakes, and in pleasant glens, and on sand-banks in the rivers, and in other delightful places, with merry
- 3 heart, O bráhmaṇ. With eyes closed fast during their embraces, she thought by reason of his ardour that his form was
- 4 that of the young bráhmaṇ surmounted with fire. Then after a time she conceived a child, O best of munis ; it took its form from the Gandharva's energy and her dwelling in thought on

\* For *karoshi* read *kurushva* ?



- 5 the bráhmaṇ. Then he having soothed Varúthini in her pregnant condition departed, *still* assuming the bráhmaṇ's shape; she gave him a loving dismissal.
- 6 The *child* was born a boy, with a splendour like the blazing orb of light, illuminating all the regions of the sky with his
- 7 own lustre like the sun. Because he shines with his own lustre,\* like the sun, the boy became therefore famed by the
- 8 appropriate name Sva-roóṣis. And the noble boy grew day by day in age and with a multitude of good qualities, just
- 9 as the new moon increases with its daily increments; he acquired skill in archery, and learnt the Vedas in due order and the sciences; then the noble *boy* entered on the period of early manhood.
- 10 Once upon a time, while he who was fascinating in his ways was roaming on Mount Mandara, he saw a lonely
- 11 maiden helpless with fear on the mountain's slope. Seeing him, at once she uttered the words "Save me!" "Fear not!" he exclaimed to her whose eyes were flooded with fear;
- 12 "Why is this?" said the high-souled *youth* in heroic speech. Thereupon she gave *him this* account, in words broken by her palpitating breath.

The maiden spoke :

- 13 I am indeed the daughter of the Vidyá-dhara Indívara, Mano-ramá by name; I was born of Maru-dhanvan's daughter.
- 14 Vibhá-varí daughter of the Vidyá-dhara Mandára was my friend, and Kalá-vatí, the muni Pára's daughter, was my other
- 15 *friend*. With them I went to Kailása's lofty † slope. There I saw a certain muni; exceedingly thin was his face through
- 16 his austerities, wasted was his neck through hunger, vigourless was he, deep sunk were the pupils of his eyes. I laughed
- 17 *at him*, and then he grew enraged and cursed me, in a very infirm voice and with his shoot-like lower lip somewhat quivering‡—"Since thou hast laughed *at me*, O ignoble and
- 18 bad ascetic maiden, a Rákshasa shall therefore overcome thee

\* Sva-roo'ṣhir.

† For attamam read uttamam.

‡ For kiñc'it-kalpítádhara-pallavaḥ read kiñc'it-kampítádhara-pallavaḥ ?

in no long time indeed." But when the curse was pronounced, my two friends upbraided the muni—"Fie! through thy want of forbearance, done is thy brāhman-hood, done all thine austerities! Thou art violated through thy wrathfulness, thou art not greatly worn out\* through austerities. The dwelling-place of forbearance is verily brāhman-hood; the controlling of wrath is the performance of austerities." Hearing this the *sage* of measureless glory cursed both of them also,—“Leprosy in the limbs shall light on one of you, and consumption on the other.” Exactly as he said, it befell them both immediately.

So on my track also a mighty Rākshasa is approaching. Dost thou not hear his loud roar, as he thunders forth, even close at hand? To-day is the third day that he quits not my back. Now out of all the multitude of weapons I give thee the *weapon* which strikes to the heart; save me from this Rākshasa, O high-minded youth! Rudra, who wields the bow Pināka, himself gave it to Sváyambhuva originally; Sváyambhuva gave it to Vasiṣṭha the chief of the Siddhas; he moreover gave it to Citrāyudha, my mother's father; he again, as father-in-law, himself gave it to my father as a wedding gift. I, though a maiden, learnt, O hero! from my father *how to use this* Heart of all weapons, which destroys every foe. This is it, take it quickly, the essence of all weapons, then slay this vile-souled Rākshasa who has come into conflict with sacred spell.†

Mārkaṇḍeya spoke :

“Yea!” then quoth he, and she sprinkling water on it gave him the Heart of weapons together with the spell for stopping its secret virtue.

In this interval appeared that Rākshasa. Then with appalling aspect, and roaring with a loud roar, he came hastily on. He looked at that demon who was exclaiming—“Overpowered by me, to what dost thou resort for deliverance? Come

\* *Ati-karṣitaḥ* ; or, “thou art not greatly attracted by austerities”

† *Brahma-saṃdgatam*.

- speedily to me ! What *good is it* to delay thy being devoured ?”
- 32 Seeing him at hand, Sva-roóis thought, “Let him seize *her*,  
so *will* the great muni’s word *become* true with regard to her.”
- 33 The Rákshasa approaching with haste seized the maiden of  
beauteous waist, as she was piteously bewailing, “Save me,  
34 Save me !” Then Sva-roóis enraged looked at the active and  
most terrible weapon, and plunging it into that Rákshasa  
35 looked on it with unwinking eyes. Vanquished thereby \* the  
night-stalking *demon* then quitted her and said—“Be gracious !  
36 let the weapon be kept in peace, and hearken ! I have been  
delivered by thee, O most glorious *hero* ! from a very grievous  
curse, which was inflicted by wise and exceedingly fierce  
37 Brahma-mitra. *It is* a benefit (none other greater can I  
receive from thee, O illustrious *hero* !), whereby I have been  
delivered from a great and most sore curse.”

Sva-roóis spoke :

- 38 Why wert thou cursed formerly by the high-souled muni  
Brahma-mitra, and what kind of curse was imprecated *on thee* ?

The Rákshasa spoke :

- 39 The bráhmaṇ Brahma-mitra had mastered the thirteen  
sections of the Atharva Veda, and had just studied the *Āyur-*  
40 *veda* which is divided into eight parts. And I was well  
known by the name Indívara ; I was the father of this *maiden*.  
I was the son of the swordsman Nala-nábha king of the  
41 Vidya-dharas. And at first I besought the muni Brahma-  
mitra, “Deign, adorable Sir ! † to communicate to me the  
42 whole of the *Āyur-veda*.” But though entreated often by me  
who remained bent with respect, he did not bestow on me the  
43 science of the *Āyur-veda*, O *hero* : then indeed I gained the  
science of the *Āyur-veda*, as he was communicating it to his  
disciples, by rendering myself invisible ‡, O sinless man. §  
44 Now when the science was gained after a space of eight

\* For *taddbhíbhátaḥ* read *tadabhíbhátaḥ* ?

† For *bhagaván* read *bhagavan* ? Or, for *arhasi* read *arhuti* ?

‡ For *antardháya-gena* read *antardhána-gena* ?

§ For *anadha* read *anagha*.

months, I gave way to excessive and repeated fits of laughter  
 45 out of my great delight. Recognizing me by the laughter,  
 the muni, enraged and with quivering neck spoke thus to  
 46 me in harsh words—"Since thou in invisible *form*, like a  
 Rákshasa, \* hast snatched the science from me, O evil-minded  
 47 one, and despising me hast indulged in laughter; therefore  
 thou shalt be assuredly cast out as a terrible Rákshasa by  
 48 my curse, O wicked one, after seven nights." On his utter-  
 ing this, I propitiated him by prostrating myself before him  
 and by other acts of deference; the bráhmaṇ with his mind  
 49 immediately softened, said to me again—"What I have  
 uttered will assuredly come to pass, O Gandharva; it *can* not  
*happen* otherwise; but after becoming a Rákshasa, thou  
 50 shalt regain thy own form, when with memory dead and in  
 anger thou shalt wish to devour thy own child. Thou shalt  
 be turned into a night-stalking demon; when smarting with  
 51 the fire of thy child's weapon, thou shalt again obtain thy  
 own consciousness, and recover thy own body, and likewise thy  
 52 own station in the Gandharva world." Since such I am and  
 since I have been delivered by thee, O illustrious hero, from  
 this most fearful demon-condition, therefore perform my re-  
 53 quest. This maiden give I thee as wife, accept her; and  
 take, O high-minded man, the whole of the Ayur-veda with  
 its eight parts, which I acquired from beside that muni.

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

54 Having so spoken he, gleaming in heavenly raiment, be-  
 decked with garlands and ornaments, and bearing his pris-  
 55 tine heavenly body, bestowed the science. After bestowing  
 the science, he next proceeded to give his daughter. Then  
 the maiden spoke to her father who had regained his own form,  
 56 "Although love † has sprung up exceedingly with me, even at  
 first sight, for this high-souled man, who is especially my  
 57 benefactor, O father; yet this *maiden* is my friend and that one al-  
 so, they are afflicted with pain for my sake; hence I do not desire

\* For *rákshasenaiva* read *rákshasenera* ? He was a Gandharva then.

† For *anarāgo* read *anurāgo* ?

- 58 to gratify myself in delights with this man. Such baseness  
cannot be displayed even by men ; how shall a woman like me  
59 behave so with things pleasing to her disposition. Since such  
I am and since those two maidens are afflicted with pain for  
my sake, O father, I will likewise remain in their pain, burnt  
with the fire of their grief."

Sva-roḥis spoke:

- 60 By the favour of the *Ayur-veda* I will make thy two friends  
fresh again, removing thy great grief, O maiden with beautiful  
waist.

Mārkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 61 Then Sva-roḥis married that beauteous-eyed maiden, whom  
her father himself gave, according to the rites on that moun-  
62 tain. And having comforted \* the proud maiden then given  
away, the Gandharva departed then to his own city by a  
heavenly course.  
63 And then *Sva-roḥis* also, accompanied by the slender maiden,  
went to that garden, where the pair of maidens dwelt speech-  
64 less and diseased † through that curse. Then unconquered  
Sva-roḥis, knowing their condition accurately, brought them  
both back to a healthy body by means of medicines and po-  
65 tions which cure disease. Then the two maidens, most re-  
splendent, freed from disease, beautiful, rendered that moun-  
tain more luminous ‡ than the regions of the sky by their own  
beauty.

---

## CANTO LXIV

---

*About the Svāroḥiśha Manvantara.*

*Vibhā-varī and Kālā-vatī then tell Sva-roḥis their story,—and  
he marries them both.*

\* For *abhi-śāntya* read *abhi-śāntya* ?

† *Agaddhura* ; a compound adjective from *a-gada* and *ātura*.

‡ *Uj-jyoti* ; not in the dictionary.

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 1 Now the maiden, being thus freed from her disease and  
filled with joy, spoke thus \* to Sva-ročis—"Hear my word,  
2 O lord. I am the daughter of the Vidyá-dhara Mandára,  
famed by name as Vibhá-vari.† O my benefactor, I offer *thee*  
3 my very self, do thou accept me. And I will give thee  
knowledge, by which the utterances of all created things shall  
become manifest to thee. Be thou favourably inclined !"

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 4 "So be it !" said Sva-ročis, wise in righteousness. And then  
the second maiden spoke these words—  
5 "A youthful brahma-śárin was my father, by name Pára,  
a brahmarshi, exceedingly illustrious, thoroughly learned in  
6 the Vedas and Vedáṅgas. Formerly in a spring-time, which  
was charming by reason of the songs of the male koils,  
an Apsaras known as Puñjiká-staná approached near him,  
7 Then the noble muni was moved so that he could not but  
speak of love. By their union I was born of her on this great  
8 mountain. My mother abandoned me, a girl, all alone, in this  
desolate forest on the earth's surface, which swarms with  
9 snakes and wild beasts, and went away. Since then being  
nourished daily by the moon's increasing phases, which cause  
10 wane to wax again‡, I have grown up, O best of men. Hence  
Kalá-vatí§ is the name which my high-souled father gave me  
11 when he took me. My high-souled father, when solicited by a  
Gandharva, did not give me who am beautiful of face || in  
marriage to him then, hence he was cursed ¶ by Ali\*\* the foe of

\* For *uvác'eda* read *uvác'edam* ?

† "The resplendent."

‡ *Kaládbhir varddhantibhir ava-kshayam*. The allusion appears to be to the waxing of the moon after its waning.

§ "Possessing the digits of the moon."

|| For *subhánand* read *subhánanā* ?

¶ For *saptas* read *śaptas*.

\*\* Or, *Alí*, as the text may be read. This name is not in the dictionary, and I have not met with it elsewhere. *Al'i* may however be taken as an

- 12 the gods and perished\*. I was about to destroy myself then  
 from excessive despair. Sambhu's wife Sati who is true to  
 13 her promises prevented me, *by saying*, 'Grieve not, beauteous-  
 browed maiden; thou shalt have an illustrious husband by  
 14 name Sva-rocis, and *thy* son by him shall be a Manu. And  
 all the Nidhist† shall submissively obey thy command, and  
 shall give thee wealth according to thy desire, O beauteous  
 15 one! Take, my child, the knowledge by the power of which  
*thou shalt succeed*; this knowledge is called Padmini, it is  
 16 greatly worshipped by Mahá-padma.' So spake to me  
 Daksha's daughter Sati, who is devoted to truth. Thou art  
 17 Sva-rocis in sooth—the goddess will not speak amiss. I now  
 offer that knowledge and myself in my true form to *thee* who  
 hast given me life; do thou receive them with favour  
 beaming from thy face on me."

Márkaṇḍeya spoke.

- 18 "So be it!" said he to the maiden Kalá-vatī. The loving  
 glances of Vibhá-varī and Kalá-vatī urged him on to joy;  
 19 and he, lustrous as the immortals, then took the hands of both  
 in marriage, while heavenly musical instruments sounded  
 out and the Apsarases danced.

---

## CANTO LXV.

---

*About the Svárociśha Manvantara.*

*Sva-rociś lived in pleasure with his wives till aroused by a  
 conversation between two birds, and by a deer's remarks.*

Márkaṇḍeya spoke:

- 1 Then he, lustrous as the immortals, accompanied by his  
 wives, lived in pleasure on that high mountain where were

adjective meaning "idle, worthless", and the text rendered "by a worthless  
 foe of the gods", but this cannot refer to the Gandharva.

\* This passage seems erroneous. *Gandharva* cannot be taken with  
*pitṛ* (see verse 5) nor with *devāṇāṃ*.

† See canto lxviii.

2 charming woods and cascades. The Nidhis,\* being subject  
 3 through the *knowledge* Padmini, brought gems for every kind  
 4 of enjoyment, sweets and melodies, garlands, raiment,  
 5 ornaments, richly scented unguent, most brilliant golden  
 6 seats according to his desire, golden things (illustrious Sir!),  
 7 pots and vessels, and also beds of divers kinds arrayed with  
 8 heavenly coverings. Thus accompanied by them, he lived in  
 9 pleasure at his own liking on that fine mountain, perfumed  
 10 with heavenly odours and other *fragrance*, and illuminated  
 11 with *his* lustre. And they enjoyed supreme delight, for that  
 12 *they were* with him, sporting on that high mountain even as  
 13 in Svarga.

7 A grey lag-goose† said to a hen-śakra-vāka who was in  
 8 some water, being moved to desire at the dalliance and union  
 9 between him and those two *wives*—"Happy is this *man*,  
 10 exceeding merit has he, who in the heyday of youth enjoys  
 11 eagerly-desired delights with these darling wives. Young  
 12 men are worthy of praise, their wives are not of exceeding  
 13 beauty; few are the wives and husbands of exceeding beauty  
 14 in the world! A man dearly longs for the women he loves;  
 15 a woman desires to obtain a lover; most rare is it to find a  
 16 wedded pair rich in mutual affection. Happy is this *man*  
 17 whom his darlings long for; these *women* are indeed very  
 18 dear to him; verily, it is among the happy that mutual  
 19 affection exists!" Hearing this speech uttered by the grey  
 20 lag-goose, the hen-śakra-vāka scarcely surprised in mind  
 21 spoke to her—"This *man* is not happy, because modesty  
 22 *springs* not from proximity with other women; he is enjoy-  
 23 ing one or other of the women, his mind does not *dwell* on  
 24 all of *them*. Since the heart's affection has only one basis,  
 25 my friend, how then will this man be affectionate to *several*  
 26 wives? These *women* are not beloved by their husband, nor  
 27 is *this* husband beloved by them; these *women* are only just  
 28 an amusement as any other attendant *might be*. And if he  
 29 is desired by these *women*, why then does he not quit his

\* See canto lxviii.

† *Kala-hamṣī*; see page 30 note §.



life? He embraces some loved woman, the while he is in the  
 17 thoughts of some other loving woman. He is bartered at  
 the price of the bestowal of knowledge, as if he were a ser-  
 vant. Because of the excitements,\* affection verily exists not  
 18 equally towards many women. O grey lag-goose! my hus-  
 band is happy, and I indeed am happy; he, for his mind is  
 fixed steadfastly on me alone, and I, for mine is on him  
 alone."

Mārkaṇḍeya spoke :

19 Sva-roḍis the unconquered, understanding the speech of  
 all living creatures, on hearing *this* was ashamed and pon-  
 dered, "it is indeed true, without any falsehood."  
 20 After a hundred years had passed from that time, while  
 sporting on the great mountain, while sporting with *his wives*  
 21 around him, he saw a buck in front of him, with very glossy  
 and plump limbs, playing among a herd of does, and surrounded  
 with does shaped like he was, which were in the rutting time.†  
 22 The buck then said to the does who were sniffing with out-  
 stretched nostrils, "O ye charming *does*, one should behave with-  
 23 out bashfulness; *but* I am not Sva-roḍis, nor am I like him in  
 disposition, O pretty-eyed does! Many have no modesty; do  
 24 ye, who are such, go to him. Now as one female who follows  
 after many males is a laughing-stock among mankind, just  
 so is one male, who is gazed on by many females with lustful  
 25 glances. He suffers loss from day to day in his deeds of  
 righteousness; and he is always attached to some other wife,  
 26 and addicted to other loves. Do ye love some other, who is  
 like that, who has that disposition, who turns away from the  
 future world; *it will be well for you*; I am not a rival of  
 Sva-roḍis."

\* *Pravartato*.

† *Vāsitabhā*; this appears to refer to the rutting season.

## CANTO LXVI.

*About the Svároç'isha Manvantara.*

*Sva-roc'is had three sons whom he settled in separate kingdoms, Vijaya in a city Vijaya in Káma-rúpa, Meru-nanda in Nanda-vatí in the North, and Prabháva in Tála in the South.—One day he met the goddess of a forest, and had by her a son Dyuti-mat Svároç'isha, who became a Manu.—Sva-roc'is, being again admonished by a conversation between two ducks, gives himself up to a religious life and dies.*

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

1 Thus were those does discarded by the buck. Sva-roçis,  
2 hearing it, thought how he must have fallen ; and he set  
his mind on quitting those *his wives*, O best of munis, spoken  
of as he had been by the hen-Śakra-váka and the buck, and  
3 despised as he was for his animal behaviour.\* Yet on again  
meeting with them, his love increased. Casting aside those  
4 disparaging speeches he sported for six hundred years. But  
while performing the works of righteousness without hind-  
rance to righteousness, wise Sva-roçis continues to enjoy  
the pleasures of sense with those *wives*.

5 And then three sons were born to Sva-roçis, Vijaya, and  
6 Meru-nanda, and mighty Prabháva ; and Indivara's daughter  
Mano-ramá gave birth to Vijaya, Vibhá-varí to Meru-nanda,  
7 and Kalá-vatí to Prabháva. And by the power of the  
knowledge named Padminí,† which accomplishes all pleasures,  
8 he their father built three cities for them. Now he gave a  
noble city named Vijaya on a hill in Káma-rúpa‡ in the  
9 Eastern region to his son Vijaya at first ; and he made  
Meru-nanda's city the famous one in the north, called Nanda-

\* *Mriga-c'aryá.*

† See canto lxviii.

‡ The western portion of Assam. A town on a hill there can only be in the Himalayas in the North, or in the Garo and Khasia hills on the South ; neither seems a likely situation for an ancient Hindu capital.

- 10 vati,\* which is begirt with lofty ramparts and walls ; and he  
made Kalá-vatí's son Prabháva to dwell in the famous city  
Tála† which is situated in the Southern region. Having  
11 thus settled his sons in their cities, he, the manly hero, sported  
with those his wives in charming highlands.  
12 Now once upon a time he went to the forest for sport with  
bow in hand. Seeing a boar a long distance off, he drew  
13 his bow ; and then a certain doe approached him and said,  
" At me let the arrow be shot ; show *me this* favour," again  
14 and again ; " What need hast thou to slay him now ? lay me  
low quickly ; an arrow discharged by thee will free me from  
suffering."

Sva-rocis spoke :

- 15 I do not perceive thy body to be diseased. What then is the  
reason that thou wouldst quit thy life ?

The doe spoke :

- 16 Without him on whom, though his heart is devoted to  
other females, my mind has fixed her seat, I *must* die ; what  
other remedy is there in this life ?

Sva-rocis spoke :

- 17 Who would not love thee, timid one ? Or with whom art  
thou in love, that failing to gain him thou resolvest to quit  
thy life ?

The doe spoke :

- 18 It is thee I desire ; be welfare thine ! Thou hast captivated  
my heart. Hence I choose death, let the arrow be dis-  
charged at me.

Sva-rocis spoke :

- 19 Thou art a doe with eyes always in motion ; I bear a

\* This is not in the dictionary and I have not found it elsewhere. Perhaps it may be connected with the river *Nandá*, and the people *Nandas*, see page 383 note ||.

† Or *Purantála* ; neither seems to be in the dictionary, nor have I found any reference to them elsewhere.

human form; how shall there be union between such as me and thee?

The doe spoke :

- 20 If thy mind has any regard for me, do thou embrace me ;  
or if thou dost think good, I will do as thou desirest. I  
shall be supremely honoured by thee, Sir, such as thou art.

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 21 Sva-rocis then embraced the doe ; and as soon as he em-  
22 braced her, she assumed a heavenly body. Then filled with  
astonishment said he, " Who art thou ? " And she told him  
*this* story in words rendered slow by love and modesty.—  
23 " I have been besought by the gods, *I* the goddess of this  
forest, *with the demand that* ' Verily a Mann must be begotten  
24 of me by thee.' O magnanimous man ! Beget that son, who  
shall guard the terrestrial world, of me who am full of  
love. I speak to thee according to the gods' \* behest ! "

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 25 Forthwith he begat in her a son marked with every aus-  
26 picious mark, full of energy like unto himself. And as soon  
as he was born, heavenly instruments of music sounded forth,  
the Gandharva princes sang, and bands of Apsarases danced ;  
27 the *celestial* elephants bedewed him with drops of water,  
and the rishis rich in austerities and the gods scattered also  
28 a shower of flowers around. Beholding his splendour his father  
himself bestowed on him the name Dyuti-mat, since the  
29 regions of the sky were illuminated by his splendour. The  
boy named Dyuti-mat possessed great strength and valour ;  
since he was son of Sva-rocis, he became *known as* Svárociṣha.  
30 Sva-rocis also once, while roaming by a charming mountain  
31 cascade, saw a duck attended by his mate. He said then to  
his mate, who was full of continuous longings, — " Restrain  
32 thyself, I have played with thee full long. What dost thou need  
with pleasures at all times ? Old age has fallen on us, the

\* For *davánám* read *devánám*.

time to relinquish them has come to me and thee also, O water-roamer ! ”

The female duck replied :

- 33 What time is unfit for pleasures ? The world is all composed  
of pleasures. Bráhmans with souls subdued perform sacri-  
34 fices in order to get pleasures. Moreover people of discrimi-  
nation, being eager for pleasures experienced and not yet  
experienced, both give alms and perform the full round of  
35 righteous acts. Why then dost thou not wish for pleasures ?  
Pleasure is the reward of effort among men who have dis-  
crimination and among brute animals, how much more among  
those who have subdued their souls ?

The duck spoke :

- 36 The mind of those who are not attached to pleasures is  
with the Supreme Soul. And when will it be so among those  
37 who have contracted attachments towards relatives ? Crea-  
tures perish when attached to son, friend and wife, just as  
38 aged wild elephants when sunk in lake or mire or sea. Or  
dost thou not see, lady, how Sva-rocis, in whom attachments  
have grown up and who has been devoted to his lusts  
from his boyhood, has sunk in the watery mire of affection ?  
39 Sva-rocis' mind was exceedingly sunk in his wives in his  
youth, now in his sons and grandsons ; whence will it obtain  
40 deliverance ? I am not the equal of Sva-rocis, nor am I one  
to be distressed by females, O water-roamer ! I possess also  
discrimination in pleasures, and I have desisted *therefrom* now.

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 41 Sva-rocis hearing this speech from a bird felt disturbed in  
mind ; taking his wives he departed to another grove to prac-  
42 tise austerities. After performing severe austerities there  
with his wives, he, lofty in mind, reached the pure worlds  
with every stain removed.
-

## CANTO LXVII.

*The Story of Svároç'isha concluded.*

*Márkaṇḍeya mentions the gods, rishis and kings in the Svároç'isha Manvantara.*

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 1 Then the adorable god made the Prajápati named Svároç'isha Dyuti-mat a Manu. Listen to his Manv-antara ; who
- 2 were the gods during that period, who were the munis and their sons, who were the princes, listen while I tell of them, O Kraushṭuki.
- 3 The gods in that period were the Párávatas and also the Tushitas. O bráhmaṇ ; and in Svároç'isha's period the
- 4 Indra was famed as Vipráç'ít. Urja, Tamba and Prápa, Dattoli and Rishabha, Nisécara and Cárva-vírat were the seven
- 5 rishis in that period. And seven sons had that high souled Manu, C'aitra, Kim-purusha, &c., very valiant, guardians of
- 6 the earth. So long as his Manv-antara lasted, all this earth was enjoyed among the outspreadings of his family. That was the second Manv-antara.
- 7 Now the man who hears of Sva-roç'is' deeds and Svároç'isha's birth, and believes them, is delivered from his sins.

## CANTO LXVIII.

*A description of the Nidhis.\**

*Márkaṇḍeya tells of the knowledge called Padminí, of the eight Nidhis connected with it, and of the influences which they exercise over men.*

Kraushṭuki spoke :

- 1 Adorable Sir ! thou hast related it all fully to me, both Sva-roç'is' deeds and Svároç'isha's birth. Now tell me at

\*These are demi-gods who preside over and influence men's propensities, pursuits, pleasures, tastes, &c.

- 2 length about the knowledge named Padminí which compasses  
all pleasures, and about the Nidhis who are allied thereto,  
3 and about the nature of the eight Nidhis who *exist*, and the  
composition of their wealth. I desire to hear it expounded  
by thee thoroughly, O guru !

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 4 The knowledge which is named Padminí has Lakshmí for  
its deity, and the Nidhis for its supporters. Listen while I  
5 tell thee of it. *The Nidhis* therein are Padma and Mahá-  
padma, and Makara, and Kaśchapa, Mukunda and Nandaka,  
Níla, and Śaṅkha is the eighth Nidhi. These live in real  
6 good-fortune\* ; verily perfection springs from them. These  
eight Nidhis indeed have been proclaimed to thee, O Kraush-  
7 ŭki†. By means of the gods' favour and by attendance on  
good men a man's wealth is always watched over by them,  
8 O muni. Listen while I tell thee what their nature is like.

- First, the Nidhi named Padma belongs, O bráhmaṇ, to  
9 Maya,‡ to his son, and to the sons and grandsons of his *son*  
perpetually. And a man dominated thereby may become the  
10 perfection of politeness, since this Nidhi is supported by good-  
ness, yields great enjoyment *and* is sincere. And he amasses  
11 immense quantities of gold, silver, copper and other metals,  
and buys and sells them ; he also makes sacrifices, and be-  
12 stows the sacred fee ; and he causes a palace to be built and  
temples for the gods, applying his mind thereto.

- And another Nidhi who is supported by goodness is  
13 known as Mahá-padma. He has goodness for his chief quality.  
And a man dominated thereby amasses rubies and other gems,  
14 pearls *and* coral, and buys and sells them ; and he gives to  
those whose disposition is towards religious devotion, and  
15 has dwellings constructed for them ; and he himself develops  
into that disposition. And from him are born *others* of simi-

\* Or, prosperity ; *satyám riddhau*.

† *Tava kroshŭke* ; this violates the metre ; read instead *kraushŭke tava* ?

‡ Maya was an Asura, the great artificer of the Dánavas, and constructed  
a magnificent Court for the Páṇḍavas ; see Mahá-Bhárata, Sabhā-P.,  
i and iii.

16 lar disposition in the descent of sons and grandsons. *This Nidhi comes* only from prior good-fortune \*, and does not depart for seven generations.

The Nidhi who is composed of darkness † is named  
 17 Makara. And a man on whom he looks ‡ is indeed born  
 18 characterized chiefly by ignorance, though good in disposi-  
 19 tion. He gathers together arrows, swords, spears and bows,  
 and shields and rope, and attains to friendship with kings;  
 and he gives to kings who occupy themselves with heroic  
 20 deeds, and to those whom they esteem; and he finds pleasure  
 in buying and selling weapons and in nothing else. This *Nidhi*  
 belongs to a man singly, and does not descend to  
 his progeny. Such a man may meet § death for the sake of  
 wealth at the hands of robbers and also in battle.

And the man on whom the Nidhi, who is called Kaśchapa,  
 21 casts his eye is dominated by ignorance, because that Nidhi  
 is characterized by darkness; and he performs all the rules  
 22 of life || along with men who have acquired merit, and makes  
 all those rules consist in mere acts; he confides in no one.  
 23 Just as a tortoise draws all its limbs in, so drawing in all his  
 thoughts while unharmed he remains with diffuse mind. ¶  
 He gives not nor does he enjoy, being afraid of destruction  
 24 thereby; he makes his resting-place on the earth. That  
 Nidhi also is limited to men singly.

And another Nidhi, who is named Mukunda, is composed  
 25 of the quality of passion.\*\* The man on whom he looks be-  
 comes of the same quality, O bráhmaṇ. He gathers together  
 lutes, flutes and drums, and any musical instrument of per-  
 26 cussion; he bestows wealth on singers and dancers, and on  
 minstrels, bards, sycophants and those who are skilled in

\* For *púrvárdha-mátraḥ* the Bombay Edition reads *púrvarddhi-mátraḥ*, which I have adopted.

† Or ignorance; *támasa*.

‡ *Ava-lokita*; frequently used in this canto.

§ For *savraje* read *sa vrajet* ?

|| *Vyavahára*.

¶ *Áyata-mánasaḥ*; or better *áyatta-mánasaḥ* "with submissive mind" ?

\*\* *Rajas*.



27 drama; he bestows pleasures on *them* day and night, and  
 enjoys *life* along with those *companions*, O bráhmaṇ; and he  
 finds no delight in women of loose character, nor with other  
 28 folk of that kind. He forms a single union, the man to whom  
 this Nidhi resorts.

And composed of passion and darkness is another great  
 29 Nidhi called Nanda. The man on whom he looks attains to  
 eminent firmness.\* He gathers together all *kinds* of miner-  
 30 als and precious stones and trade-wares,† grain and other  
 articles, and also buys and sells *the same*; he is the support  
 31 of his own family and of *each* visitor and guest; he does not  
 brook disrespectful language although it be very slight,  
 O great muni! and when praised he entertains strong affec-  
 32 tion and proffers it; and whatever object of desire he wants,  
 he has recourse to tenderness to obtain it. He has many  
 33 wives, who are prolific and very beautiful to *his* delight. And  
 the Nidhi Nanda passes down to seven generations, and when  
 strongly developed passes on to the next descendant with an  
 34 eighth portion, O best of men! and he bestows length of  
 life on all men. Nanda verily provides support to kinsmen  
 35 indeed, and to those *guests* who have arrived from afar; and  
 he is not held in honour in the next world; affection does  
 not belong to him, but is born among those who dwell together;  
 36 he causes laxity among those who were former friends, and  
 affection with others.

Moreover the great Nidhi who contains goodness and  
 37 passion is termed *Iśā*.‡ A man united with him may become  
 of that disposition. He leads a man to collect clothing, cotton  
 38 cloth, grain and other fruit and flowers, also pearls, coral,  
 and shells, and small shells and other *similar things*, timber  
 and other *materials* and whatever else is produced in water,  
 39 O muni; he leads him to buy and sell other things. In  
 nothing else does his mind delight; and he constructs ponds

\* Or solidity: *stambha*.

† For *pañya-dhānyādikasya* read *pañya-dhānyādikasya* ?

‡ For *sa-līla-sañjñas* read *sa līla-sañjñas* ? He is also called *Nīla* in verse 5  
 above and verse 41 below.

40 and tanks and places for pleasure; and *such* a man makes  
 embankments across rivers and plants trees; and after  
 enjoying unguents, flowers and other objects of delight he is  
 41 born again. And this Nidhi named Nila persists for three  
 generations.

And composed of passion and darkness is another Nidhi  
 42 who is named Sañkha. And the *man who is* lord of this  
 Nidhi is led by him to possess the same qualities, O bráhmaṇ.  
 He exists in a *man* singly, and does not pass on to another  
 43 generation. Listen, O Krauśṭuki, to the character of a *man*  
 who possesses the Nidhi Sañkha. *It is when* quite alone *that*  
 he enjoys food and clothing such as he himself has made;  
 44 his family eat wretched food and wear no bright clothing;  
 he makes no gift to friend, wife, brother, son, daughter-in-  
 45 law and other *relatives*. Always intent on his own nourish-  
 ment is the man who possesses Sañkha.

Thus these Nidhis have been described, the deities of wealth  
 46 among men. When their looks are blended, the blended  
*Nidhis* produce results according to their natures, just as *each*  
 nature described above springs indeed from the aspect of a  
*particular Nidhi*. And in sovereignty over them all *sits*  
 Lakshmi, *who is this knowledge called* Padmini of the dvijas.

---

## CANTO LXIX.

---

### *About the Auttāna\* Manv-antara.*

King Uttama banished his queen to a forest because of her  
 persistent unloving behaviour.—A bráhmaṇ whose wife had been  
 carried off invokes the king's help to recover her.—The king in  
 searching for her reaches a muni's hermitage, and is censured  
 by the muni for his conduct to the queen.

Krauśṭuki spoke :

1. O bráhmaṇ, thou hast described to me the Sváročísha

\* This should be *Auttama*; see canto liii, verse 7, and lxii, verse 39. It seems to be a mistake caused by the fact that Uttama was son of *Uttāna-páda*, see verse 3. It occurs in the next canto, but is corrected in canto lxxi.

- 2 manv-antara at length and also the eight Nidhis, whom I asked about. Thou didst tell me of the Sváyambhuva manv-antara before that. Tell me of the third manv-antara which is named after Uttama.\*

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 3 There was a son of Uttána-páda named Uttama, son of  
4 Su-ručí,† famous, great in strength and valour, and righteous of soul, and magnanimous, a monarch rich in valour. Excell-  
5 ing all created beings he shone in valour like the sun. He was the same both to foe and friend, to his city and to his son, being one who understood righteousness ; and he was like Yama to the wicked, and like Soma to the good, O great muni !  
6 A knower of righteousness, Uttána-páda's son Uttama married a maiden of Babhrú's race named Bahulá, as supreme  
7 Indra married famous Sācī. His mind was always exceedingly affectionate to her, O noble bráhmaṇ,‡ just as is the moon's  
8 mind which has fixed its abode in Rohiṇí. Verily his mind felt no attachment to any other object ; in sleep also that king's mind rested on her. And the king at the very sight  
9 of her, who was most beautiful in every limb, was continually touching her body, and at the touch of her body he became  
10 one with her. § The king's words, although kindly, caused annoyance to her ears, and she deemed his special respect as  
11 humiliation from him. She contemned a garland when given by him, and his beautiful ornaments ;— and she arose as if pained in body when he drank the choice nectar of her lips ;  
12 and only a moment did the king hold her by the hand when he enjoyed her. She ate very little food, O bráhmaṇ, and  
13 that with no great delight. Thus she was not favourable to the magnanimous king who was favourable to her ; yet more abundant and excessive love did the king show.  
14 Now once the king, when engaged in drinking, respectfully

\* Uttama would be preferable, as he was the Manu, see canto lxii, verse 39 ; read then *kathayauttama-saṁjñitam* for *kathayottama-saṁjñitam* ?

† Or *Su-ručí*, a feminine name.

‡ For *dvija-varyá* read *dvija-varya* ?

§ *Tan-maya*.

caused that wilful *queen* to hold a drinking cup which  
 15 had been cleansed with wine, he being *then* surrounded with  
 accomplished attendants\* who were melodious in their singing,  
 and who were assiduously singing and chanting while kings  
 16 looked on; but she does not wish to take that cup, turning  
 her face away from it, in the sight of the kings. Thereat  
 17 the king was enraged. Breathing hard like a serpent, when  
 set at nought by his dear queen, *as if* a husband not dear  
 18 to her, he called the door-keeper and said,—“ O door-keeper !  
 Take this lady of evil heart to a desolate forest and abandon  
 her forthwith ! Deliberate thou not on this my command ! ”

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

19 Thereupon the door-keeper, deeming the king's word was  
 not to be questioned, mounted the beautiful-browed lady in a  
 20 chariot and left her in a forest. And she, when abandoned  
 thus by the king in the forest and being away from his sight,  
 21 held he had done her the greatest favour. And king Autá-  
 na-pádi, with soul and mind burning with the anguish of love  
 22 for her, took no other wife. He remembered her who was  
 beauteous in every limb, day and night bereft of ease, and  
 ruled his kingdom, governing his people righteously.  
 23 While he ruled his people, as a father his own children,  
 a certain bráhmaṇ suffering in mind arrived and spoke  
 thus—

The bráhmaṇ spoke :

24 O Mahá-rája ! in grievous suffering am I ; hearken while I  
 speak. Men's deliverance from pain comes from no where  
 25 but the king ! Some one carried off my wife by night while  
 I slept, without unlocking the house door. Deign to bring  
 her back to me.

The king spoke :

26 Knowest thou not, O bráhmaṇ, who carried her off or  
 where has she been taken ? With whom *shall* I strive in  
 fight ? or whence *shall* I bring her back ?

\* *Vāra-mukhyaṇiḥ* ; the dictionary gives only the *fen.*, *vāra-mukhyá*, “ a royal courtesan.”

The bráhmaṇ spoke :

- 27 While I slept just as I was, with the door fastened, O king,  
 why and by whom my wife was carried off—this thou, Sir,  
 28 knowest. Thou art our guardian, O king, whose due is the  
 levy of a sixth part of *our wealth*.\* Therefore men sleep  
 at night, freed from anxiety about justice.

The king spoke :

- 29 I have not seen thy wife. Tell me what is she like in  
 body, and *what is her age*; and of what disposition is the  
 bráhmaṇ lady ?

The bráhmaṇ spoke :

- 30 Sharp-eyed is she, very tall, short-armed, thin-faced,  
 ungainly in form, O king. I defame her not by this *description*;  
 31 very harsh in speech, and ungentle is she in disposition,  
 O king—thus I have described my wife; she is a do-nothing,  
 32 unpleasant in look, and she has slightly passed early woman-  
 hood, O king. Such is my wife in form; true is this I have  
 spoken.

The king spoke :

- 33 Enough hast thou had of her, O bráhmaṇ. I *will* give  
 thee another wife. An excellent wife tends to one's happiness,  
 34 such a one as that is verily a source of pain. Bodily beauty  
 consists in healthfulness,† O bráhmaṇ, its cause is a noble  
 disposition. She who has neither beauty nor good disposition  
 should be abandoned for that very reason.

The bráhmaṇ spoke :

- 35 "A wife must be guarded," O king—such is our highest  
 divine teaching. When a wife is guarded, the offspring is guar-  
 36 ded. For the Soul ‡ is born in her, hence she must be guarded,  
 O king. When the offspring is guarded, the Soul is guarded.  
 37 When she is not guarded, there will arise confusion among  
 the castes; that will hurl one's forefathers down from  
 38 Svarga, O king. And I may have loss of righteousness from

\* For *śaḍāgāddāna* read *śaḍ-bhāgāddāna* ? See verse 39.

† There is a play on words here, *kalyāṇī*, "an excellent (wife)," and *kalye*,  
 "in healthfulness."

‡ Or, one's self; *ātma*.

day to-day, while I remain wifeless; and that, through the destruction of the perpetual ceremonies, *will tend to my downfall*. And in her will be my offspring, O king. She will give thee the sixth part; she will be a cause of righteousness. For that reason I have declared this to thee. Bring back my wife who has been carried off, my lord, since your honour is placed supreme for our protection.

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

The king, on hearing him so speak, took thought, and mounted his great chariot which was furnished with every useful requisite. Hither and thither he wandered over the earth with that *bráhmaṇ*, and saw a fine hermitage of ascetics in a large forest; and alighting there he entered and saw a muni, seated on a silken cushion, and blazing as it were with splendour. Seeing the king arrived, he rose in haste, and welcoming him with full respect commanded his disciple to bring the arghya offering. His disciple said to him quietly —“Why should the arghya be given to him, O muni? Think well of it and command me, for I carry out thy command.” Then the *bráhmaṇ* being acquainted with the king’s history, with self-possession did him respect in conversation and by giving him a seat.

The *ṛishi* spoke :

Why hast thou come here, Sir; and what dost thou wish to do? I know thee, O king, to be Uttána-páda’s son Uttama.

The king spoke :

A *bráhmaṇ*’s wife was carried off from his house by some one whose person is unknown, O muni: to seek her I have come here. Deign, adorable Sir, in compassion to tell me, who have reached thy house and am prostrate *before thee*, what I ask thee!

The *ṛishi* spoke :

Ask me, O king, without fear what thou must ask. I will tell thee truthfully if I ought to tell it thee.

The king spoke :

Why is the arghya offering kept back, which thou wast pre-

pared to give me on first seeing me on my arrival at thy house, O muni ?

The řishi spoke :

- 52 When through agitation at the sight of thee, O king, I commanded this disciple to give it, then I was cautioned by him.  
 53 Through my favour he knows the future in this world, as  
 54 I know both the past and the present thoroughly. When he said, "Consider and give thy order," then I also knew it; hence I did not give thee the arghya according to precept.  
 55 Truly O king, thou art worthy of the arghya and *thou belongest* to the race of Sváyambhuva; nevertheless we deem thee Uttama not fit for the arghya.

The king spoke :

- 56 What then have I done, O bráhmaṇ, whether wittingly or unwittingly, that arriving after a long time I am not worthy of the arghya from thee ?

The řishi spoke :

- 57 Hast thou forgotten, both that thou didst abandon thy wife in the forest, and that along with her thou didst abandon  
 58 all thy righteousness, O king. Through neglect of religious acts a man becomes unfit to be touched by his adherents, like one on whom ordure and urine have been showered;\* thou  
 59 hast neglected an act of permanent observance. Just as a complaisant wife must bear with her husband though he be of bad disposition, so a wife although of bad disposition must be cherished by her husband, O king. Ungracious indeed was that bráhmaṇ's wife who was carried off; nevertheless he, being a lover of righteousness, very much excels †  
 60 thee, O king. Thou establishest other men in their proper ways of righteousness when they swerve *therefrom*, O king. What other person will establish thee when thou swervest from thy righteousness ?

\* *Várshikī*, a noun, not given in the dictionary; it must apparently mean "a shower."

† *Ud-yáti-tardāṇ*. The only meanings assigned to *ud-yá* in the dictionary are, "to go up or out, to rise, originate."

Márkaṇḍeya spoke:

- 62 A gazing-stock was the king when thus addressed by the  
wise *ṛishi*; and saying "So be it!" he enquired about the  
63 bráhmaṇ's wife who had been carried off—"Adorable Sir,  
who has taken away the bráhmaṇ's wife, or where is she?  
Thou Sir knowest unerringly the past and the future in  
this world."

The *ṛishi* spoke:

- 64 A Rákshasa named Valáka, son of Adri, has captured her,  
and thou shall see her now in Utpalávataka forest, O king.  
65 Go, unite the bráhmaṇ with his wife quickly. Let him not  
become a seat of sin as thou art day after day.

---

## CANTO LXX.

---

*About the Auttána \* Manv-antara*

*King Uttama finds the bráhmaṇ's wife in the forest and is courteously received by the Rákshasa, who says he carried her off in order to impair the bráhmaṇ's religious merit.—At the king's request the Rákshasa consumes her evil disposition and restores her to her husband.*

Márkaṇḍeya spoke:

- 1 Then the king prostrated himself before the great muni,  
and mounted his chariot, and went to the forest Utpalávata  
2 mentioned by him. And the king saw † the bráhmaṇ's wife,  
in appearance such as her husband described her, eating the  
3 fruit of the bel tree; ‡ and asked—"How didst thou come to

\* This should be *Auttama*, see page 419, note \*.

† For *dadárśa* read *dadarśa*.

‡ *Sri-phala*, the fruit of the *bilva* or *vilva* tree, *Ægle marmelos*, and also the tree itself. It is a pretty large tree, a native of the mountainous parts of the East coast, and also found in the low lands; its fruit is considered "nutritious, warm, cathartic; in taste delicious; in fragrance exquisite"—Roxburgh's *Flora Indica*, vol II. 579-80. See page 25 note \*; but I have made an error there in assigning the name *bel-phul* to this tree. *Bel-phul* is the name of the double Arabian jasmine, *Jasminum Zambac*, Roxb. (I. 88) or *J. Sambac*, Oliver. This jasmine is a shrub with delightfully fragrant white



this forest, lady ? tell me plainly ; art thou the wife of  
 Śa-sarman Vaiśáli ? \*

The bráhmaṇ woman spoke :

- 4 I am daughter of the bráhmaṇ Ati-rátra, who dwells in the  
 forest, *and* wife of Viśála's son whose name thou hast uttered.  
 5 Being such, I was carried off by the evil-minded Rákshasa  
 Valáka, while asleep at the extremity of my house, *and* parted  
 6 from my brothers and mother. May that Rákshasa become  
 ashes, by whom I have been parted thus from my mother,  
 brothers and other *relatives* ! Here I remain in great affliction.  
 7 Bringing me to this very dense forest he has cast me off.  
 I know not what is the reason he neither has intercourse with  
 me nor devours me.

The king spoke :

- 8 Perchance thou knowest, where has the Rákshasa gone  
 after leaving thee ? I have been sent here by thy husband  
 indeed, O bráhmaṇ lady.

The bráhmaṇ woman spoke :

- 9 The night-stalking *demon* stands at the edge of this very  
 forest. Enter and see him, Sir, if thou dost not fear him.

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 10 Then he entered by the path that she showed, and saw the  
 11 Rákshasa attended by his retinue. Then the Rákshasa hurry-  
 ing, the moment he saw him, touching the earth with his  
 head from afar indeed, approached his feet.

The Rákshasa spoke :

- 12 Thou hast done me great favour in that thou hast come  
 to my abode here. Give me thy command. What *shall* I do,  
 13 such as I am here ? I dwell within thy country. Accept thou  
 this arghya offering, and let this seat be placed *for thee*. We  
 are servants, thou, Sir, art master ; command me firmly.

flowers, and is in common cultivation. Its Sanskrit name is *malliká*, and also  
*saptalá* ; and *bel-phúl* is the common-modern name both for the flower and  
 for the plant itself. It has numerous other vernacular names, and Roxburgh  
 says *bela* is one of them, but this seems doubtful.

\* Son of Viśála ; see next verse.

The king spoke :

- 14 Thou hast done everything, even every rite due to a guest. \*  
 15 Why hast thou brought the bráhmaṇ's wife *here*, O night-  
 16 stalker ? She is not comely ; there are others *comely*, if thou  
 17 didst carry her off for a wife : if to devour her, why hast thou  
 18 not eaten her ? Tell me this.

The Rákshasa spoke :

- 16 We do not feed on men ; such are other Rákshasas. But we  
 17 eat the fruit that springs from a good deed, O king ; and we  
 18 consume the natural disposition of men and women, being  
 19 treated with disrespect, and *yet* honoured ; we are not eaters  
 20 of living creatures. When we have eaten the patience of  
 21 men, they become enraged ; and when we have eaten their  
 22 evil nature, they also become virtuous. We have Rákshasís  
 23 who are fascinating, rivalling the Apsarasas in beauty, O  
 24 king, while they are *with us*, how should we delight in  
 the females of mankind ?

The king spoke :

- 20 If she is not for sensual enjoyment nor for food, O night-  
 21 roamer, why then didst thou enter the bráhmaṇ's house and  
 22 carry her off ?

The Rákshasa spoke :

- 21 That excellent bráhmaṇ, learned in spells, keeps on expelling  
 22 me, when I go to sacrifice after sacrifice, by uttering spells that  
 23 destroy Rákshasas, O king. By reason of his spells and ex-  
 24 pulsive rites we were a-hungered ; where *shall* we go ? that  
 bráhmaṇ† is the priest at every sacrifice. Therefore we  
 inflicted this damage‡ on him ; without a wife a man becomes  
 unfit to perform sacrifices.

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 24 At his announcement of the high-minded bráhmaṇ's im-

\* There appears to be a mistake in this line, read *kṛitaván eva tvam* instead of *kṛitam eva tvayá* ? or else *sarvá evátithi-kriyáḥ* for *sarvám evátithi-kriyám* ? unless *kṛita-ván* is understood in the second half of the line.

† *Dvijáḥ* seems preferable to *dvija*.

‡ *Vaikalyam*, "impaired or mutilated condition."

- paired condition the king became exceedingly dejected then,  
 25 *thinking* "While he speaks of the bráhmaṇ's impaired condition, *it is* me indeed he censures. That best of munis also  
 26 said I was unworthy of the argha offering. As the Rákshasa also has spoken to me of that bráhmaṇ's impaired condition, I *being* in like *plight* am placed in a great strait, because I am wifeless."

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 27 While he thus thought, O muni, the Rákshasa spoke again to the king, bowing in obeisance and placing his hands together respectfully—"O king, favour with thy command  
 28 me, thy servant, prostrate before thee\*, a dweller within thy realm."

The king spoke :

- 29 Since thou hast said, O night-roamer—"We feed on a *person's* disposition," hear then from me what deed we solicit.  
 30 Do thou consume this bráhmaṇ woman's evil disposition this day ; since she will have her evil disposition eaten by thee,  
 31 she may then become good in behaviour. Take her to his house whose wife she is, O night-roamer. When this is done, thou hast done all for me who am come *as a guest* to thy house.

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 32 Thereupon the Rákshasa, entering within her though his own faculty of illusion, devoured her evil disposition by his  
 33 own power at the king's command. Being rid entirely of that very violent evil disposition that bráhmaṇ's wife said  
 34 to the king—"By the maturing of the fruit of my own actions I was separated from that magnanimous *man*, my husband ; this night-roaming *demon* was the cause thereof.  
 35 He is not in fault, nor that magnanimous *man*, my husband ; mine in truth was the fault, no one else's. A good deed is  
 36 verily enjoyed. In some *former* life I separated myself from some *husband* ; that same *separation*† has been encountered

\* For *trām* read *trām* ?

† Or perhaps *doṣa*, "fault," should be understood.

again even by me.\* What fault is there in this magnanimous man ? ”

The Rákshasa spoke :

- 37 I will cause her to reach her husband's house at thy command, my lord. Enjoin me whatever else should be done for thee, O king !

The king spoke :

- 38 When this is done, thou hast done all for me, O night-roamer. And thou must come, O hero, at the time of action when I recall thee to mind.†

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 39 “ So be it ! ” then quoth the Rákshasa, and taking the bráhmaṇ woman conveyed her, purified then by the removal of her evil disposition, to her husband's house.

---

## CANTO LXXI.

---

*About the Auttama Manv-antara.*

*King Uttama visits the ṛishi, learns his queen has been taken to Pátála by a Nága king, who then curses his daughter for hiding the queen from him—and he is also told his unhappy married life was caused by adverse planetary influence.*

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 1 Now the king, after despatching the woman to her husband's house, sighed and thought, “ What good deed may there be
- 2 in this ? The high-minded *muni* declared I was wretched because of my unfitness for the arghya offering ; and this night-roaming *demon* spoke of ‘ impaired condition ’ with
- 3 reference to the bráhmaṇ. Being such, what shall I do, for I abandoned her, my wife ? Or shall I enquire of that best of munis who has the eye of knowledge ? ”
- 4 Thus pondered the king, and mounting the chariot went where dwelt the great muni, righteous in soul, who knew the
- 5 three periods of time. And descending from the chariot he

\* Or perhaps for *mayápy-upagataḥ* we should read *mayy-apy-upagataḥ* ?

† For *c'a te* read *tvayá*, in order to make a pronoun agreeing with *smṛitena* ? See cantq lxvii, verses 15 and 16.

approached and prostrated himself before that *muni*, and related how happened his meeting with the Rákshasa, and  
 6 his interview with the bráhmaṇ woman, and the removal of her evil disposition,\* and her despatch to her husband's house, and what was his business in coming *back*.

The *ṛishi* spoke :

7 I knew this before, which thou hast done, O king, and  
 8 the whole of thy business in coming *back* to me. Ask me here " what must I do ? " with anxious mind ; and since  
 9 thou art come, O king, hear what thou must do. A wife is a potent cause of righteousness, wealth and love among men ; and in particular one who forsakes her has in sooth  
 10 abandoned righteousness. A wifeless man, O king, is not fit for his own works, *be he* bráhmaṇ or kshatriya, vaiśya or  
 11 even súdra, O king. No brilliant deed didst thou do, Sir, when thou didst abandon thy wife ; for as women must not forsake a husband, so men *must not forsake* a wife.

The king spoke :

12 Adorable Sir, what *shall* I do, such as I am ? *It was* the maturing of my actions, that I abandoned *her* because she was not favourably disposed *to me* while I was favourable  
 13 *to her* Whatever one does, that one endures with one's mind burning, *even* that with one's inmost soul terrified at  
 14 the pain of separation thereby, adorable Sir. But now I know not where she when abandoned in the forest has gone, or whether she has been devoured by lions, tigers and night-roaming *beasts* in the forest.

The *ṛishi* spoke :

15 She has not been devoured by lions or tigers or night-roaming *beasts*, O king, but she is now in Rasátala with unblemished character.

The king spoke :

16 Who conveyed her to Pátála ? How dwells she there uncorrupted ? Most wonderful is this, O bráhmaṇ ; deign to tell me *of it* as it happened.

\* For *doḥ-śilyāpagamaṁ* read *dauḥ-śilyāpagamaṁ* ?

The řishi spoke:

- 17 In Pátála is a Nága king and he is famed as Kapotaka.  
 He saw her when abandoned by thee she was wandering  
 18 in the great forest. Enamoured of her then he declared his  
 object and carried the beautiful young *queen* to Pátála, O  
 19 king. Now that wise Nága king has a beautiful-browed  
 20 daughter named Nandá, O king, and a charming wife. That  
*daughter* saw thy beautiful *queen*, and thinking, "this bright  
 lady will become a rival wife to *my* mother," brought her to  
 her own house and concealed her in the women's apartments.  
 21 But Nandá, when entreated, *continually* refuses to answer the  
 king; then the father cursed her his daughter that she should  
 22 become dumb. Thus did he curse his daughter; and she,  
*thy wife*, remains there, O king, carried off by that Nága king,  
 detained by his daughter, and still chaste.

Márkaṇḍeya spoke:

- 23 Rejoicing greatly thereat, the king asked the eminent  
 bráhmaṇ \* *what was* the reason of his ill-fortune with regard  
 to his darling wife.

The king spoke:

- 24 Adorable Sir! I meet with the utmost affection from all  
 the world, what then is the reason, why my own wife is not  
 25 very tender? On the one hand I dearly long for her even  
 beyond my own life, O great muni, and on the other she  
 is ill-disposed towards me. Say, what is the reason, O  
 bráhmaṇ.

The řishi spoke:

- 26 When thou didst take her hand in marriage, the Sun and  
 Mars and Saturn *looked on* thee, and Venus and Jupiter  
 27 looked on thy wife. At that moment the moon was *favour-*  
*able to thee*, and Mercury to her. Those two *groups of*  
*planets* are mutually hostile; hence *they have been exceed-*  
 28 *ingly adverse* to thee, O king. Go then; attended by thy

\* The text reads *dvija-varjyam*. But *dvija-varyam*, which the Bombay edition reads, is much better and I have adopted it; see *rāja-varyya* in canto lxxii, verse 2. The translation of the text would be "putting aside bráhmaṇs."

wife, rule the earth in thy righteousness, and perform every rite that pertains to righteousness !

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 29 At this exhortation king Uttama prostrated himself before the *muni*, and then mounting his chariot went to his own city.

## CANTO LXXII.

*About the Auttama Manv-antara.*

*The bráhmaṇ performs a sacrifice which turns the queen's heart to the king, and the Rákshasa brings her back from Pátála—The bráhmaṇ frees the Náya princess from the curse, and she coming to thank the king promises him a son who shall be a Manu—Accordingly a son is born who was the Manu Auttama.*

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 1 Then arriving at his city, the king saw the joyful bráhmaṇ accompanied by his wife also who was sweet-dispositioned.

The bráhmaṇ spoke :

- 2 O noble king, successful am I inasmuch as righteousness has been preserved by thee, who art wise in righteousness here and who bringest back my wife.

The king spoke :

- 3 Successful art thou, O bráhmaṇ, because thou observest thy own laws of righteousness. I am in a strait, who have no wife at home, O bráhmaṇ.

The bráhmaṇ spoke :

- 4 O king, if she, *thy queen*, has indeed been devoured by wild beasts in the forest, away with her ! Why dost thou not take another's hand in marriage ? Falling under the dominion of anger thou didst not preserve righteousness.

The king spoke :

- 5 My darling wife is not devoured by wild beasts ; indeed she is alive, with character unblemished. How *shall* I act in this matter ?

The bráhmaṇ spoke :

- 6 If thy wife lives and has not gone astray, why then dost thou commit a sin which will render thee wifeless in another birth ?

The king spoke :

- 7 In sooth, although she were brought back, she is ever opposed to me, O bráhmaṇ, *she would tend* to unhappiness, not to happiness ; enough ! her friendship is not at all towards me. Do thou so strive for me that she may become submissive *unto me*.

The bráhmaṇ spoke :

- 8 The Vara sacrifice\* is beneficial for mutual affection between thee and her. I *will* perform the Mitra-vindá†  
9 sacrifice which those perform who wish for friends ; for it produces affection between two persons who love not each other ; it creates‡ the warmest§ *affection* between wife and husband, O king. I *will* perform that sacrifice for thee.  
10 Fetch thy beautiful-browed wife from wherever she is now, O king ; she shall feel the warmest love for thee !

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 11 Thus admonished, the king then collected all the materials  
12 requisite, and the bráhmaṇ performed that sacrifice. Seven times then the bráhmaṇ performed the sacrifice in repetition  
13 in order to procure for the king his wife. When the great muni deemed that he had aroused friendliness within her towards her husband, then he, the bráhmaṇ, addressed the  
14 king—"Fetch her, O king, who is dear to thee, close to thy soul ; enjoy *all* enjoyments with her, and offer sacrifices, being *duly* respected."

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 15 Thus exhorted by the bráhmaṇ the king a-wondering then recalled to mind the very valiant, truthful, night-roaming

\* *Vareshṭi*.

† "Friend-finding."

‡ *Sañ-janant* : not in the dictionary. *Sañ-janana* is given only as a neuter noun.

§ *Param* : *anu-rdgam* or some similar non-feminine noun must be understood ; unless we read *pardm* to agree with *prīti* as in the next verse.



- 16 *Rákshasa*.\* And he, *the Rákshasa*, being remembered by him, approached the king at once then, and prostrating himself before the great muni exclaimed, "What *shall* I do?"
- 17 Thereupon, after the king had declared *the matter* fully, he
- 18 went to Pátála and brought the queen back. And she, when brought back, gazed on her husband then with exceeding love and said "Be gracious!" again and again, while filled with
- 19 joy. Thereat the king embraced the stately lady impetuously and said—"Darling, I am indeed well pleased! why dost thou keep on repeating that?"

The queen spoke :

- 20 If thy mind is inclined with favour to me, O king, then I make thee this request; do thou do it as an honour to me.

The king spoke :

- 21 Speak out fearlessly whatever thou desirest from me, lady. Thou shalt certainly obtain it, timid one! I am all docile towards thee and not otherwise.

The queen spoke :

- 22 On my account the Nága cursed his daughter *who is* my friend; he said "Thou shalt become dumb," and she became
- 23 dumb. If thou, Sir, canst for love of me *devise* a remedy for her to cure her deprivation of speech, then what *will* thou not have done for me?

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 24 Then said the king to the bráhmaṇ—"What kind† of ceremony *is there* for this, in order to dispel her dumbness?" And he replied to the king:—

The bráhmaṇ spoke :

- 25 O king, I *will* perform a sacrifice to Saras-vatí at thy word. Let this thy wife discharge her debt of *gratitude* by stimulating the power of speech in that *friend*.

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 26 The bráhmaṇ performed the sacrifice to Saras-vatí on her

\* See canto lxx, verse 38.

† For *kidyíśi* read *kídíśi*?

behalf, and uttered the hymns addressed to Saras-vatī, with composed mind.

27 Thereupon Garga\* spoke to the maiden, who had recovered her speech, in Rasātala—"This most difficult benefit has been effected by thy friend's husband."

28 Having gained this information Nandá sped in haste to the city. Then the Nága's daughter, embracing her friend the  
29 queen and praising the king with auspicious words again and again, spoke sweetly, *she*, the Nága maiden placing herself upon a seat,—

30 "By this benefit, that thou, O noble hero, hast done me now,† my heart is drawn out. Listen to what I tell thee.  
31 Thou shalt have a son great in valour, O king; he shall  
32 wield the discus unresisted on this earth. He shall be skilled in the principles of all the useful sciences, ‡ devoted to the practice of righteousness, in truth a Manu, the wise lord of a manv-antara."

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

33 Having thus bestowed a boon on him, the Nága king's daughter then closely embraced her friend and departed to Pátála, O muni.

34 While the king lived in pleasure there along with her and  
35 ruled his subjects, a very long time passed by. Then the son was born of her to the high-souled king, like the lovely full-  
36 orbed moon at the period of full-moon. At the birth of that high-souled *child* all the people rejoiced, heavenly drums sounded forth, and a shower of flowers fell.

37 Seeing that his body would be lovely and his disposition also, and *reflecting* that he was the son of Uttama,§ the assembled munis gave him a name *saying*, "He is born in an excellent|| family and at an excellent time in it; he has excellent limbs; hence he shall be Auttama."

\* See canto lxxv, verse 13. Garga was the name of an old ṛishi, a descendant of Bharad-vāja and Aṅgiras (see M.-Bh., Sūnya-P. liii); and also of various other persons.

† For *mamādhunā* read *mamādhunā*?

§ *Auttama*.

‡ The Artha-śāstras.

|| *Uttama*.

Mārkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 39 So he was Uttama's son and was famed as Auttama by name. He was a Manu, possessing the majesty of such; hearken to me, O Bháguri. \*
- 40 He who listens constantly to the entire story of Uttama and also the birth of Uttama,† never experiences enmity;
- 41 nor shall the man who listens to it or reads it ever incur
- 42 separation from his loved wife or sons or kinsmen. Hearken while I tell thee, O bráhmaṇ, about his manv-antara, and hear who was the Indra in it and who were the gods and rishis.

---

CANTO LXXIII.

---

*End of the Auttama Manv-antara.*

*Mārkaṇḍeya names the gods of the Auttama Manv-antara and their lord, and mentions the kings and rishis.*

Mārkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 1 Listen while I speak of the gods, the Indra, the rishis, the kings in this third manv-antara of the Prajá-pati Auttama.
- 2 Thus the *first group* of gods was the Sva-dhámans,‡ who acted according to their name; and another also, the second
- 3 group of the thirty gods, was the Satyákhyas.§ Now the gods in the third group were the Sívákhyas,|| O best of munis: now they were auspicious by nature; they are de-
- 4 clared to have destroyed sin. And the fourth group of the gods therein was the Pratardanákhyaṇ,¶ O best of munis,
- 5 in the period of Auttama Manu. And the gods in the fifth group therein were the Vāsa-vartins,\*\* O bráhmaṇ; now

\* *Bhágure*; see canto lviii, verse 40, note †. It is said to be a patronymic of Kṛaśhṭuki.

† But *Auttama* seems preferable: read *c'aivauttamasya* for *c'avottamasya*?

‡ "Deities who reside in their own dwellings."

§ "Named after truth," or "named as true."

|| "Named as auspicious."

¶ "Named Pratardanas."

\*\* "Those who are obedient to another's will." This half line has a syllable too much.

all of them indeed had natures corresponding to their  
 6 names, O great muni. And these five groups of gods are  
 reported to have fed of the sacrifices. All the groups were  
 twelve in the manv-antara which appertained to that best  
 7 of Manus. Their lord\* *was* illustrious; may he become the  
 spiritual preceptor in the three worlds! Having offered a  
 8 hundred sacrifices, he was verily named Su-sánti.† Now  
 a song, which is embellished with the words composing  
 his name in order to avert portents *emanating* from him, is  
 9 sung by men on the earth even to this day,—“Sweetly serene  
 is the kindly ruler of the gods, he bestows sweet serenity.” He  
 is attended by the Sivas and Satyas‡ and other *groups* of  
 10 gods and also by the Vaśa-vartins.§ Without birth|| *was*  
 he, absolutely pure, supernatural.

Very powerful and valiant were that Mann's sons, renowned,  
 11 like unto the thirty gods. The descendants of his sons ruled  
 over the earth as kings during the manv-antara of that  
 12 Manu of supreme splendour. Of his four ages were reckoned  
 in truth seventy-one and a half, *of the ages* called Kṛita,  
 Tretá and so on, which I have declared in the *account of*  
 13 *the Age*. By the innate splendour of the austerities of *that*  
 most excellent high-souled *Manu* his seven sons became the  
 seven ṛishis in that period.

14 This third manv-antara I have declared to thee. Now the  
 15 fourth is called the period of Manu Tāmasa, who born of an  
 animal's womb illuminated the world with his fame; hearken  
 16 to the birth of that Manu, as I tell thee, O bráhmaṇ. And  
 the exploits of all those¶ *Manus* transcend the cognizance  
 of the senses; and the birth of the high-souled *Manus* is to be  
 known *as such*, and *their* majesty *also*.

\* *Indro.*

† “Sweetly serene.”

‡ See verses 2 and 3 above.

§ For *vaśa-vartinaiḥ* read *vaśa-vartinaiḥ* ?

|| *Aja*; or “a leader.”

¶ For *amúnam* read *amśhám* ?

## CANTO LXXIV.

*About the Tāmāsa Manv-antara.*

*King Sva-rāshṭra being driven from his kingdom by enemies became an ascetic, and met his deceased queen in the shape of a doe during a great flood.—He begot a son by her who became the Manu Tāmāsa.—The gods, rishis and kings of that manv-antara are named.*

Mārkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 1 There lived on the earth a famous king, by name Sva-rāshṭra, valiant, an offerer of many sacrifices, wise, invincible
- 2 in battles. The sun being invoked by his ministers gave him a very long life; and he had a hundred happy wives,
- 3 O brāhman. The wives of that long-lived king were not very long-lived, O muni; and in time his servants, ministers
- 4 and people came to their end. And he, being bereft\* of his wives and his servants who were his equals in age, was dejected in mind and dwindled in vigour day and night.
- 5 A neighbouring king named Vi-marda ousted him then from his kingdom, failing as he was in vigour, deprived of his
- 6 devoted adherents, greatly afflicted. And being ousted † from his kingdom, he went to a forest, despairing in mind, and taking up his abode on a sandbank in the Vitastá,
- 7 illustrious as he was, he practised austerities. Undergoing the five fires in the hot season,‡ exposing himself naked to the showers § in the rainy season, and lying in water in the cold season, he lived abstaining from food, strict in his devout rites.
- 8 Afterwards there occurred, while he practised his austerities, a great flood day after day in the rainy season, with the
- 9 clouds pouring down rain incessantly. The east could not be

\* For *yukto* read *tyakto* (see verse 5)? The Bombay edition reads *mukto*.

† For *c'yutam* read *c'yutah*?

‡ Four fires around and the sun over-head; see Manu vi. 23.

§ For *abhrāṅkashāśīkaḥ* read *abhrāvakaśīkaḥ*, which is the word in Manu vi. 23.

distinguished, nor the south, nor the west, nor the north ;  
 10 everything looked as if besmeared with darkness. The king,  
 forced then in the excessive flood to seek the river bank,  
 could not reach it although seeking it, being carried away  
 11 by the exceedingly furious current. Now the king, after  
 being carried a long way by the swollen water, chanced upon  
 12 a Rauha doe in the water and seized her by her tail. Borne  
 along by that flood he passed over the surface of the land  
 hither and thither in the darkness ; at length he reached a  
 13 bank. Crossing an expanse of mud, which was extremely  
 hard to be crossed, the king being drawn along by her still,  
 14 gained another charming forest. The Rauha doe dragged  
 the illustrious king along in the darkness there, while he  
 clung to her tail, enfeebled throughout his nervous system.  
 15 And he experienced an intense pleasure which arose from  
 touching her, as he wandered continually in the darkness,  
 16 with his mind drawn out in love to her. Perceiving that  
 the king was enamoured of her, *and was* engrossed in touch-  
 ing her back, the doe verily spoke to him within that  
 forest:—

17 “Why dost thou touch my back with trembling hand?  
 18 Quite otherwise has this affair turned out, O king. To no  
 unsuitable object has thy mind gone *forth* ; not unapproach-  
 able am I to thee, O king ; but this Lola creates an obstacle  
 to my union with thee.”

Mārkaṇḍeya spoke :

19 And the king, on hearing the doe say thus, was aroused to  
 curiosity and spoke thus to the Rauha doe.  
 20 “Tell me, who art thou ? How dost thou, a doe, speak  
 language\* like human beings ? And who is this Lola who  
 creates an obstacle to my union with thee ? ”

The doe spoke :

21 I was formerly thy darling Utpalāvati, O king, thy  
 wife, thy queen above a hundred *others*, Driḍha-dhanvan's  
 daughter.

\* *Mṛigī-vākyam* seems preferable as two words and not a compound.

The king spoke :

- 22     What deed then didst thou do,\* that thou hast reached this  
*animal* condition ? And true to thy husband, devoted to  
 righteousness, such as *thou wert*, how hast thou thus become  
 like this ?

The doe spoke :

- 23     While a girl in my father's home I went with my com-  
 panions to a wood to play, *and* saw a deer united with a  
 24 doe. Then approaching close I struck the doe. Frightened  
 by me she fled away, *and* then the deer enraged said to me,  
 25 "Silly girl ! why art thou so insane ? Fie on this thy evil  
 disposition, by which thou hast rendered this period of  
 26 impregnation fruitless for me !" Frightened then at hearing  
 him speaking language as of a human being, I said to him—  
 "Who art thou who hast reached this *animal* condition ?"  
 27 Thereupon he replied—"I am son of the rishi Nirvṛiti-śākshus,  
 by name Su-tapas, but being enamoured of *this* doe I became  
 28 a deer, and followed her in love, and she longed for me in  
*this* wood. Thou hast parted *us*, O naughty girl, therefore  
 29 I inflict a curse on thee." And I said—"Knowing thee not,  
 I have sinned, O muni ; be gracious ! deign not Sir to cast a  
 30 curse on me." And so addressed the muni gave me this  
 reply, O king,—“I do not inflict a curse on thee, if I *may*  
 31 give myself to thee.” And I said—"I am not a doe, nor  
 of deer-like form ; in *this* wood thou wilt find another doe ;  
 32 meanwhile let thy feeling towards me be repressed.” When  
 thus addressed he exclaimed, his eyes red with anger, and  
 his lower lip quivering—"No doe am I' saidst thou !  
 33 thou shalt become a doe, O silly girl." Then exceedingly  
 agitated I fell prostrate before the highly-enraged muni,  
 who had resumed his own form, and exclaimed "Be  
 34 gracious'." again and again ; "a girl is unskilled in words,  
 hence I spoke as *I did* ; assuredly women who have no  
 35 father choose a husband themselves ; and since I have a  
 father, how can I choose, O best of munis, or do wrong ?

\* For *kintu yūvat kṛitam* read *kim tvayā vai kṛitam* ?

36 at thy feet I bow, be gracious, my lord!" While thus I lay  
 prostrate, exclaiming repeatedly, "Be gracious! be gracious,"  
 O high-minded *king*, that lordly muni spoke—"My uttered  
 37 word never goes amiss. After thy death thou shalt become a  
 doe in this very wood in *thy next* birth; and in the doe-  
 38 condition thou shalt conceive within thee the muni Siddha-  
 vírya's mighty-armed son named Lola, O proud lady; and  
 39 when the embryo is conceived within thee, thou shalt re-  
 member thy former life; regaining thy memory, *thou*  
 40 shalt also utter human language. After his birth thou shalt  
 be freed from the doe-condition *and* be honoured by thy  
 husband; thou shalt attain to the worlds which \* are un-  
 41 attainable by those who commit sin. And he, Lola, mighty  
 in valour, shall indeed strike down his father's foes, and  
 conquer the whole earth and then become a Manu."

42 Incurring this curse I died and reached this brute con-  
 dition,† and through thy touch that embryo has come into  
 43 being in my womb. Hence I say—To no unsuitable object  
 has thy mind gone forth *in coming* to me, nor am I unap-  
 proachable;‡ *but* this Lola who is conceived within me  
 creates an obstacle.

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

44 Being thus addressed the king also experienced intense  
 joy then, thinking, "My son will conquer my enemies and be-  
 come a Manu on the earth."

45 Afterwards the doe brought forth that son marked with  
 the auspicious marks; and at his birth all created things  
 46 rejoiced, and especially the king. At the birth of that  
 mighty son the doe was freed from the curse and attained  
 47 to the sublime worlds. Then all the rishis assembled, O  
 best of munis, and perceiving the future prosperity of that  
 48 high-souled *child* gave him a name—"He was born of his  
 mother while she existed as an ignorant animal,§ and the

\* For *ya* read *ye*.

† For *tīryaktvam* read *tīryaktvam*.

‡ For *agamyo* read *agamyá* ? see verse 18.

§ *Támasā bhajamánáydā yonim*.



world was enveloped in darkness,\* *hence* he shall be Tāmāsa.”  
 49 Then Tāmāsa was brought up by the father in the forest.  
 When he reached *the age of* intelligence he spoke thus to his  
 50 father, O best of munis,—“Who art thou, dear father?  
 and how am I thy son? and who was my mother? and why  
 hast thou come *here*? Tell me this truly.”

Mārkaṇḍeya spoke :

51 Thereupon his father, the large-armed king, narrated to  
 his son how he was ousted from his kingdom and ~~all~~<sup>all</sup> other  
 52 events. And on hearing all that, he invoked the sun and  
 obtained celestial weapons together with the spells that  
 53 controlled them in their completeness. Having mastered  
 the use of the weapons he vanquished those enemies, and  
 bringing them near his father released them, when they were  
 permitted by the *father* to depart, observing *thus* his own  
 54 righteousness. And his father, after seeing his son's face  
 happy, quitted his body and attained to the worlds, which he  
 had won for his own by austerities and sacrifices.

55 He having conquered the whole earth as king by the name  
 Tāmāsa, became a Manu by name Tāmāsa. Hear about his  
 56 manu-antara : who were the gods, who was the ruler,† and who  
 was the lord of the gods, and who were the ṛishis, and who  
 were that Manu's sons, the guardians of the world.

57 The Satyas and next the Su-dhīs, the Su-rūpas, and the  
 Haris, these were the classes of gods therein, seven and  
 58 twenty *in number*, O muni. And Sikhi Indra, mighty, great  
 in valour, distinguished by a hundred sacrifices, became the  
 59 lord of those gods. Jyotir-dhāman, Pṛithu, Kāvya, C'aitra,  
 Agni, and Valaka, and also Pívara, *these* seven, were the  
 60 seven ṛishis, O bráhmaṇ. And Nara, Kshánti, and Sánta,  
 Dánta, Jínu, Jaṅgha and others were Tāmāsa's sons, very  
 mighty kings.

\* *Tamasá*.

† For *yat-patir* read *tat-patir*, according to the Bombay edition.

## CANTO LXXV.

*Raivata's Manv-antara.*

*The rishi Rīta-vác' had a son who was bad because born under the constellation Revatī, and the rishi made the constellation fall with his curse.—A daughter was born therefrom whom the rishi Pramuc'a adopted and named Revatī.—King Durgama visited Pramuc'a and married Revatī, and the constellation was restored to its place at the marriage.—They had a son, the Manu Raivata.—The gods, rishis and kings in his period are named.*

Mārkaṇḍeya spoke:

- 1 Moreover the fifth Manu was the famous one named Raivata. Listen ! I tell thee fully about his birth.
- 2 There was an illustrious and famous rishi named Rīta-vác. To that high-souled rishi who had no son a son was born at
- 3 the termination of the constellation Revatī. He performed the birth ceremony and all other rites for that son according to the ordinances, and also the investiture with the sacred
- 4 thread and other ceremonies. And he was of bad disposition, O muni. And even from his son's very birth the rishi, that lordly muni, became afflicted with a lingering disease; his
- 5 mother suffered extreme pain, being attacked with leprosy and other diseases. And his father in his affliction pondered —
- 6 "Why is this?" And that his son also, being exceedingly wicked in mind, took another muni's son's wife whom he met.
- 7 Then dejected in mind Rīta-vác spoke thus—"Better is it
- 8 for men to have no son than a bad son ! A bad son is always causing trouble to his father's and mother's heart; and casts
- 9 downwards his ancestors who dwell in Svarga. He benefits not his friends, he satisfies not his ancestors, he causes suffering to his parents—fie on the birth of that son who
- 10 commits evil deeds ! Happy are they whose sons are commended by all the world, who benefit others, who are peaceful,
- 11 who are devoted to good work ! Uneasy and dull, averse to the next world, tending towards hell and not towards beatitude
- 12 is our life which depends on our son. A bad son brings

misery on his friends and joy to his adversaries, and he assuredly brings untimely old age on his parents."

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 13 With his thoughts thus burning through the conduct of his exceedingly perverse son, the muni questioned Garga\* as to what had happened.

Rita-vác spoke :

- 14 Keeping my religious vows strictly I learned the Vedas formerly according to precept; after acquiring the Vedas  
15 I married a wife according to precept. Along with my wife, the rites to be performed, those enjoined by revealed religion, those enjoined by tradition, the oblations made in fire with the *exclamation* vashaṭ, I have never failed to perform to the full  
16 unto this day, O great muni. Following the ordinances prescribed concerning conception, without gratifying † my lust and in order to have a son, I begot this *son*, I who fear the  
17 *hell* named Put, O muni. Is it through his own fault or through my fault, that this *son* has been born, bringing suffering on us *and* causing grief to his kinsmen by his bad disposition, O muni ?

Garga spoke :

- 18 O best of munis, this thy son was born at the termination of the *constellation* Revatí; therefore *he causes* thee suffering  
19 since he was born at an evil time. This is no transgression by thee nor yet by his mother, nor by thy family; but the termination of Revatí befell *as* the cause of his bad disposition.

Rita-vác spoke :

- 20 Because this my only son's bad disposition sprang from the termination of Revatí, let that Revatí therefore fall quickly !

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 21 When he uttered this curse, the constellation Revatí verily fell, while all the world beheld with minds pervaded with as-

\* See canto lxxii, verse 27.

† For *anurundhyatá* read *anurudhyatá*.

- 22 tonishment. And the constellation Revatí, falling on and  
 around the mountain Kumuda, suddenly illuminated\* its  
 23 woods, ravines and cascades. And the mountain Kumuda,  
 by reason of her down-fall, became famous as Raivataka,†  
 a mountain exceedingly charming through the whole earth.  
 24 But the beauty of that constellation became the lake Pañka-  
 jini;‡ therefrom a maiden was born then exceedingly  
 25 brilliant in form. The muni Pramuća saw her who was  
 born from Revatí's beauty, and so gave her a name, the name  
 26 Revatí, O Bháguri. And illustrious Pramuća nourished her,  
 who had been born near his hermitage, in that same land.  
 27 Now seeing the maiden *grown* to the bloom of youth, and  
 beautifully formed, the muni bethought—"Who may be  
 28 her husband?" While he thus pondered a long time passed  
 by, O muni; nor did the great muni light upon a bridegroom  
 29 equal to her. At length the muni Pramuća entered his room  
 where the sacred fire burned, to ask Agni about a bridegroom  
 30 for her. Agni replied to the questioner,—“Great in strength,  
 great in valour, kind of speech, fond of righteousness, the  
 king named Durgama shall assuredly be her husband.”

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 31 And immediately there reached his hermitage, O muni, in  
 32 the course of hunting that wise king Durgama, who was  
 sprung from Priya-vrata's lineage, great in strength and  
 prowess, Vikrama-śíla's son, born of Kálinđi's womb. The  
 33 king entered the hermitage and, not seeing the řishi, hailed  
 the slender maiden *with the word* “Dear!” and asked :—

The king spoke :

- 34 Whither has he gone from this hermitage, the adorable  
 lordly muni? I wish to pay him my affection here. Tell him  
 so, O bright maiden !

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 35 The bráhmaṇ, who was in the room where the sacred fire

\* For *bhádshayámśa* read *bhásayámśa*.

† See page 289 note \*

‡ Or, “a lake of lotuses.”

- burned, heard that his speech and the hailing her as "Dear!"  
 36 and came out in haste. The muni saw high-souled king Durgama, bearing the royal insignia, bowing respectfully before him.  
 37 Now on seeing him he spoke at once to his disciple Gautama — "Gautama! bring quickly the argha offering for this king.  
 38 At length he has come alone after a long time, this king and in particular my son-in-law; I deem him worthy of the argha."

Márkanḍeya spoke :

- 39 Thereat the king pondered on the reason for *his using the*  
*term* son-in-law and understood it not; therefore keeping  
 40 silence the king accepted the argha. When the king had taken a seat and accepted the argha, the bráhmaṇ, the great  
 41 muni, addressed him a welcome — "I trust thou farest well in thy home, in thy treasury, and army, in thy friends, in thy servants and ministers, and in thy own self whereon  
 42 rests every thing, O king of mighty arm! And thy wife fares well; since she is indeed at hand, I ask not therefore about her, *but I hope* thy other wives fare well!"

The king spoke :

- 43 Through thy favour I have no ill-fortune any where, O strict observer of vows; and my curiosity is aroused, what wife have I here, O muni?

The řishi spoke :

- 44 Most noble Revatí, beautiful even through the three worlds, is thy wife of exquisite figure; dost thou not know her, O king?

The king spoke:

- 45 My lord! Su-bhadrá, Śánta's daughter, Káveri's daughter, and Su-játá born in Su-ráshṭra, and Varútha's daughter  
 46 Kadambá, Vipáṭhá, and Nandini — *these* I know as my wives, O bráhmaṇ; they remain at my home. I know not Revatí, adorable Sir; who then is she?

The řishi spoke:

- 47 *She is this maiden* of beautiful complexion, whom thou didst address just now as "Dear!" Hast thou forgotten, O king? Worthy of praise is this lady of thy house!

The king spoke:

- 48 In truth I said so, but no improper feeling had I, O muni.  
Deign not to be angry with me for this, I beseech thee,  
Sir!

The fishi spoke:

- 49 Thou speakest truly, O king; no improper feeling hadst  
thou. Thou didst utter this *word*, being impelled by Agni,  
50 O king. I asked Agni, "Who *shall be* her husband?" O  
king; and he replied that thou thyself, Sir, shouldst verily  
51 be her bridegroom this day. Take her then; I give thee  
the maiden, O king, and thou didst hail her as "Dear!"  
How dost thou decide?

Márkaṇḍeya spoke:

- 52 At his address the king then kept silence; and the fishi  
53 prepared to perform her wedding ceremony. The maiden  
spoke a little thing to her father who was prepared for the  
marriage, her countenance bent downward with respect—  
54 "If thou lovest me, dear father, deign to give me a favour;  
perform then my marriage in the constellation Revatí, since  
I have won thy favour."

The fishi spoke:

- 55 Fair maiden! the constellation Revatí is not declared to be  
one that unites with the moon. The constellations appro-  
priate to thy marriage are others, O beautiful-browed!

The maiden spoke:

- 56 Dear father! without that *constellation* the time appears  
to me unprofitable. How may the marriage of such as me  
take place at an unprofitable time?

The fishi spoke:

- 57 The famous ascetic named Rīta-vác was enraged against  
Revatí; in his anger he caused the constellation to fall down.  
58 And I have promised thee as wife to this *king*, O maiden  
with intoxicating eyes; and if thou desirest not the marriage,  
we have fallen into a strait!

The maiden spoke :

- 59 Dear father ! Why did that muni Rīta-vác perform austerities in that fashion ? Have I nought *to do* with thee as father ? Am I the daughter of an unworthy bráhmaṇ ?

The řishi spoke :

- 60 Thou art not the daughter of an unworthy bráhmaṇ, nor of an ascetic, O maiden. Thou art daughter to me who am striving to make other gods.\*

The maiden spoke :

- 61 If my father is a practiser of austerities, why then does he not raise this constellation to the sky and perform my wedding under the constellation ?

The řishi spoke :

- 62 Be it so ! prosperity be thine, fair maiden ; be thou affectionate ! I raise the constellation Revatī to the moon's pathway for thy sake.

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 63 Then by the power of his austerities the great muni placed the constellation Revatī as before in conjunction with the  
64 moon, O bráhmaṇ. And full of affection he celebrated his daughter's marriage accompanied with sacred texts according  
65 to rule, and said to his son-in-law again, " Tell me, O king, what *shall* I give thee as a wedding gift ? I will give even that which is hard to be obtained, *for* irresistible are my austerities."

The king spoke :

- 66 Of Manu Sváyambhuva's lineage † I am sprung, O muni. I choose as gift a son who shall reign over a many-antara through thy favour.

The řishi spoke :

- 67 This thy wish shall be fulfilled. As a Manu thy son shall enjoy the whole earth, and shall be wise in righteousness, O king.

\* *Devda* ; this seems erroneous, but the Bombay edition reads the same.

† For *santato* read *santatau* ?

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 68 Then taking her the king went to his own city. From him  
 69 was born of Revati a son, the Manu Raivata, possessed of  
 all righteousness, unconquered by mankind, who understood  
 the meaning of every sacred book, who knew the Vedas, the  
 sciences and the books of practical arts.
- 70 Hear most composedly, O bráhmaṇ, about the gods, the  
 munis, the lord of the gods and the kings in his manv-antara,  
 71 as I mention them. The gods therein were the Su-medhases.  
 And the kings were Vaikuṇṭha and Amitábha, fourteen and  
 72 fourteen, O bráhmaṇ. And now the lord of those very four  
 classes of gods was named Vibhu, who was the regarder of  
 73 a hundred sacrifices, O king. Hiraṇya-loman, Veda-śrī, and  
 also Urddhva-báhu, Veda-báhu, and Su-dháman and the  
 74 great muni Parjanya, and illustrious Vaśiṣṭha who was  
 thoroughly versed in the Vedas and Vedánta—these were  
 75 the seven ṛishis also in Manu Raivata's period. Bala-bandhu  
 mighty in valour, and also Su-yashtavya, and Satyaka and  
 others were Manu Raivata's sons.
- 76 Now *these* are the Manus down to Raivata, whom I have  
 told thee about; they were indeed connected with Sváyam-  
 bhuva, except \* Manu Svárociṣha.†

---

## CANTO LXXVI.

---

### *The Sixth Manv-antara.*

*O'ákshusha when an infant was taken by a hag from his  
 parents and changed for the son of king Vi-kránta, and was  
 brought up as a prince.—On reaching boyhood he revealed the  
 fraud, and abandoning his princely state became an ascetic.  
 —Brahmá made him the sixth Manu.—The deities, ṛishis and  
 kings of his period are mentioned.*

\* For *riter* read *rite* with the Bombay edition.

† The Bombay edition adds a verse within brackets. "He who may  
 hear or read the sublime story of these Manus continually, is delivered from  
 all sins and obtains to the world that is earnestly desired."



Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 1 Thus I have narrated these five many-antaras to thee.\*  
Hear about this sixth period, *that* of tho Manu C'ákshusha.
- 2 In another birth he was born from the eye† of the supremo  
deity, hence in this birth also he retained the condition‡ of
- 3 C'ákshusha, O bráhmaṇ.§ His mother repeatedly makes him  
prattle|| as he lies in her lap after his birth, and embraces
- 4 him lovingly and then again makes him prattle.¶ Being  
indeed born with a recollection of his previous existences, he
- 5 laughed as he lay on his mother's lap. His mother said to  
him angrily then—"I am frightened; what is this, my child,  
that there is laughter in thy mouth? Thou art born with  
premature intelligence. Perhaps thou seest something  
bright!"

The son spoke :

- 6 Dost thou not see, a cat in front wishes to devour me?  
And another, *the hag* who seizes newly-born children,\*\* has
- 7 vanished. And since thou, lady, looking on me lovingly in  
*thy* affection for thy son, dost keep on making me prattle and
- 8 dost embrace me much, while thy hair rises up and thine  
eyes are suffused with tears springing from love, therefore
- 9 I chanced to laugh. Hear also the reason of it. The cat  
intent on its own object looks on me who am attached to  
*thee*; and the other also, *the hag* who seizes newly-born
- 10 children, has vanished. Just as these two, with hearts solici-  
tous for their own self-interest,†† were busy over me, even

\* For *tava* read *tathá*? The Bombay edition reads *mayá*.

† C'ákshushaḥ.

‡ Or "appellation."

§ The Bombay edition inserts an explanatory verse here—"Bhadrá, wife of the high-souled royal řishi An-amitra, gave birth to a son, *who was* very wise-pure, who remembered his former lives, a *very* sovereign." See verse 27.

|| *Ul-lápya*. *Ul-lap* is not given as a verb in the dictionary; *ul-lápa* is given as a noun meaning "calling out in a loud voice; change of voice in grief, sickness, &c.;" but those meanings seem inadmissible here. See *ul-lápana* in canto xxv, verse 10.

¶ *Ul-lápayati*.

\*\* *Játa-hárin*?; see canto li, verse 102.

†† For *snigdha-hrīdayá* read *snigdha-hrīdaye* to agree with *ete pra-vṛtte*, as the Bombay edition reads.

- so thou appearest to me to be engaged in thy own self-interest. But the cat *and the hag* who seizes newly-born children aimed at enjoying me; thou on the other hand desirest to obtain good results from me which shall be enjoyed gradually. Thou dost not know me who I am, nor the benefit that I have conferred. Our meeting is for no very long time, a period of five and seven days. Nevertheless thou lovest and embracest me excessively with tears in *thine eyes*; sincerely thou callest me "dear child" and "lovely darling."

The mother spoke :

- "It is not for the sake of a benefit that I embrace thee lovingly, my darling, nor shall I be deprived of thee, if this shall be for thy pleasure.\* I have *now* relinquished *any* self-interest which shall accrue to me from thee."†
- So saying she left him and went out of the lying-in house. *The hag* Jāta-hāriṇī then seized him when left, his body and external organs of sense being apathetic, his heart and soul pure. Having seized the boy she placed him then as a new-born child on the bed of king Vi-krānta's wife, and took his new-born son and carried him‡ to another house, and taking a son from that house she, Jāta-hāriṇī, in regular course devoured *this* third child. Now carrying children off in succession she devours the third child, totally devoid of pity; but she makes a substitution thus with the other two day after day.
- And then king Vi-krānta performed the purificatory rites, which appertain to a prince, for that very son; and as father king Vi-krānta gave him the name Ananda according to rule, being *himself* filled with intense joy. Now when as a youth he had donned the sacred thread, his spiritual guide ordered him—"Approach before thy mother respectfully and salute her!" Hearing that his guru's speech, he smiled and spoke thus—"Which of my mothers shall I praise, her who gave me birth or her who has nourished me?"

\* This seems a little involved, but both editions read alike.

† For *fatto* read *twatto*.

‡ For *tvam* read *tam*? but both editions read *tram*.

The guru spoke :

- 24 Not the latter, indeed ! Thy mother who bore thee, noble youth, is Rutha's daughter, Vi-krānta's chief queen, Haimini by name.

Ananda spoke :

- 25 She is the mother of C'aitra, who dwells in the village Viśāla, as son of the leading brāhman Bodha, and who was born of her. I come from elsewhere.

The guru spoke :

- 26 Whence art thou ? tell me, O Ananda. What C'aitra again dost thou mention ? It appears to be a great difficulty. Where wast thou born ? What dost thou say of this ?

Ananda spoke :

- 27 I was born in a kshatriya king's house of his wife Giribhadra, O brāhman. The *lag* that steals new-born children  
28 took me ; she left me here, and taking Haimini's son also carried him further to the house of the leading brāhman  
29 Bodha, and devoured the brāhman Bodha's son. Haimini's son has been consecrated with the sanctifying rites of a brāhman  
30 there. I have been consecrated here by thee as guru, illustrious Sir. I must obey thy command : which mother shall I approach, O guru ?

The guru spoke :

- 31 Extremely intricate, my child, is this great difficulty that has befallen. I understand it not at all, for my wits are wandering as it were through enchantment.

Ananda spoke :

- 32 What case of enchantment is there here, while the world is thus constituted ? Who is whose son, O brāhman rishi ?  
33 Or who is not whose kinsman ? Beginning from his birth, whatever man enters into connexions, the others who are connected with him are made to pass away by death, O  
34 brāhman. Moreover when he is born here, whatever connexion he has with kinsmen, that also ceases with the ending of his body. This is the entire process. Hence I say,  
35 " Who is not a kinsman to one who dwells in this worldly

existence? Or who is a kinsman for ever?" Is thy mind  
 36 bewildered? I have had two fathers indeed in this very  
 birth, and two mothers; is it wonderful that it *should be*  
 37 otherwise in the *recurring* birth of the body? Being such, I  
 will practise austerities. Do thou bring here C'aitra, who is  
 indeed the son of this king, from the village Viśāla.

Mārkaṇḍeya spoke :

38 Thereupon the king was astonished with his wives and  
 kinsmen; withdrawing his feeling of ownership from that  
 39 boy, he permitted him *to depart* to the forest. Fetching his  
 son C'aitra he made him worthy of the kingdom, after  
 honouring the bráhmaṇ who brought him up in the belief  
 that he was his son.

40 And he, Ananda, a mere boy, practised austerities in the  
 great forest, in order to consume away his actions *which*  
 41 *were* adversaries in the path to final emancipation. And  
 to him then as he practised austerities spoke the divine  
 Prajā-pati—"Why art thou performing severe austerities  
 my child? tell me that."

Ananda spoke :

42 Desirous of purity of soul I perform austerities, adorable  
 lord! setting my face towards consuming the actions which  
 tend to fetter me.

Brahmá spoke :

43 He who is lord over consumed actions is fit for final emanci-  
 pation, not he who engages in action. Hence Sir! thou shalt  
 obtain final emancipation, when thou hast the lordship of  
 44 goodness. Thou must be the sixth Manu; go; do accor-  
 dingly! Enough of austerities for thee! When thou hast  
 done that, thou shalt obtain final emancipation.

Mārkaṇḍeya spoke :

45 Being thus exhorted by Brahmá, he then the high-minded  
 replied, "So be it!" and went directing himself to that  
 46 pursuit. He ceased indeed from austerities. Turning him  
 away from austerities Brahmá addressed him as C'ákshusha ;

- formerly he was *known* by *that* name; he became famous as Manu C'ákshusha.
- 47 He married Vidarbhá, daughter of king Ugra, and begot by her sons celebrated for valour.
- 48 Hear, O bráhmaṇ, who were the gods of the period, while he reigned over the manv-antara; and who were the ṛishis,
- 49 and *who was* the Indra, and who were his sons. The gods therein were named Aryas; they formed one group of eight persons; it *was composed* of those who had done famous deeds, who partook of the oblations at the sacrifice, O bráhma-
- 50 man, of those who were famous for strength and valour, who were hardly to be gazed at because of their halo of splendour. And the second class of gods was called Prasú-
- 51 tas, consisting of eight persons. There was another class of gods also called Bhavyas, consisting of just eight persons; and a fourth class therein was called Yútha-gas, which also
- 52 consisted of eight persons. There were, moreover, other gods called Lekha in a fifth class also in that manv-antara,
- 53 O bráhmaṇ; those so named fed indeed on amṛita. And the Indra was Mano-java, who offered a hundred sacrifices and became their lord; *he was* reckoned the eater of a por-
- 54 tion of the sacrifices. And Su-medhas, and Vi-rajas, Havishmat, Un-nata, Madhu, Ati-náman, and Sahishṇu were the
- 55 seven ṛishis. Manu C'ákshusha's sons, chief of whom were Urú,\* Puru, and Sata-dyumna, very great in strength, were the kings of the earth.
- 56 Thus I have narrated to thee the sixth manv-antara, O bráhmaṇ, both the birth and the exploits of high-souled
- 57 C'ákshusha. He who subsists at the present time is named Manu Vaivasvata; hear from me about the gods and other *chief personages* in his, the seventh, period.

---

\* For Urú read Uru.

## CANTO LXXVII.

*The Vaivasvata Manv-antara.*

*The Sun married Tvashtri's daughter Sañjñá, and their children were Manu Vaivasvata and Yama—Márkaṇḍeya narrates, how the Sun's splendour was pared down by Tvashtri because she could not endure it.*

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 1 The Sun Mártaṇḍa's wife was Viśva-karman's illustrious
- 2 daughter, by name Sañjñá. The Sun begot of her a son, a
- Manu, of celebrated fame, learned in many sciences : since
- he was Vivasvat's son, he was called Vaivasvata in sooth.
- 3 And Sañjñá used to shut her eyes when the Sun gazed on
- her, and the Sun in anger thereat spoke sharply to Sañjñá —
- 4 "Because thou dost always imprison thine eyes when thou
- seest me, O silly one, thou shalt therefore give birth to Yama,
- the prisoner\* of mankind."

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 5 Thereupon the goddess, unnerved by fear, became wild-
- eyed, and the Sun seeing her agitated glances addressed her
- 6 again—"Since thine eye-sight has become agitated, † now
- that thou hast seen me, thou shalt therefore give birth to a
- daughter, the river Vi-lolá." ‡

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 7 Hence through that her husband's curse Yama verily was
- born of her, and also Yamuná this famous and very great
- 8 river. And *it was* with pain *that* Sañjñá, the noble lady,
- endured the Sun's splendour ; and then unable to bear the
- 9 splendour she fell into thought—"What am I to do ? Where
- am I to go ? Where shall I go that I may find ease ? And
- 10 how shall the Sun, my husband, control his wrath ?" So
- pondering in many ways, the Prajá-pati's illustrious daughter

\* A play on the words *sañ-yama*, *yama* and *sañ-yamana*.

† *Vi-lolita*.

‡ This means the Yamuná, see the next versc. This name is not given in the dictionary and I have not met with it elsewhere.

then thought much of actually taking refuge with her father.

- 11 Thereupon the famous lady having resolved to go to her  
 father's house fashioned her body, that the Sun loved, in  
 12 shadow-form, and addressed her *shadow-self*—"Remain thou  
 here in the Sun's house even as I; and behave thou becomingly  
 13 to the children even as to the Sun And though questioned say nothing of this my going away; say always this,  
 'I am she indeed, Sañjñá by name.'"

The Shadow-Sañjñá spoke :

- 14 "O lady, I will obey thy order *and* will so declare, as far  
 as *suffering* my hair to be seized and as far as *undergoing*  
 curses; it is performed indeed as far as drawing curses down  
*upon myself*."
- 15 The goddess\*, receiving this *assurance*, then went to her  
 father's abode. She saw Tvasht̥ri there cleansed from stain  
 16 by means of austerities. And being honoured by him, Viśva-  
 karman, with much respect, she remained in her father's  
 17 house some time, unreproached. Then her father spoke to  
 the beautiful lady, his daughter, when she had dwelt there  
 not very long, after praising her and prefacing *his speech*  
 with love and much respect—
- 18 "Now while I have been seeing thee my child, the days  
 though very many may be *reckoned* as equal to half a mo-  
 19 ment; nevertheless righteousness suffers loss. Dwelling a  
 long time among kinsmen brings no good repute to women;  
 kinsmen hold a woman's *proper* residence is in her husband's  
 20 house. Such art thou, and thou art mated to a husband, the  
 Sun, the lord of the three worlds; deign not my daughter  
 21 to dwell a long time in thy father's house. Being such, go  
 thou to thy husband's home. I am pleased; thou hast been  
 honoured by me. Thou must come again to see me, my  
 beautiful one."

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 22 Thus was she admonished by her father then, and she  
 agreeing saluted her father respectfully and went to the

\* For *duṣṭ* read *devī*.

23 Northern Kurnu, O muni, disliking the Sun's heat, afraid of his splendour; and there she practised austerities, changed into a mare's shape.

24 The lord of day thinking *the shadow-form* was Sañjñá, begot  
25 of that other two sons and a charming daughter. Now the Shadow-Sañjñá was very affectionate to the *other* children just as to her own; Sañjñá did not use to show special attention to her daughter and two sons daily by caresses\* and other marks of pleasure. Manu accepted that *affection* from  
26 her; Yama did not bear it patiently from her, and indeed he lifted his foot in anger to kick her, but, again moved with forbearance towards her, did not strike it against her body.  
27 Thereupon, O bráhmaṇ, the Shadow-Sañjñá in anger cursed Yama, her upper lip quivering slightly, and her delicate  
28 hand shaking—"Because thou spurnest me, thy father's wife, disrespectfully with thy foot, this thy foot shall therefore fall this very day to the earth."

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

30 Yama, terrified on hearing the curse that his mother had pronounced on him, went to his father and falling prostrate before him spoke :—

Yama spoke :

31 O father, this great marvel was never seen by any one, that a mother casting love away imprecates a curse on her  
32 son. She is not mother to me in the same way as Manu calls her his *mother*; no mother would abandon her good qualities even towards sons devoid of good qualities.

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

33 Hearing this speech from Yama, the adorable Dispeller of darkness called the Shadow-Sañjñá and asked her—"Where  
34 has she gone?" And she answered—"I am Tvasṭṛi's daughter Sañjñá, O god of fire, thy wife; through thee these children  
35 were begotten of me." Now when, as Vivasvat was thus questioning her repeatedly, she did not speak further, the Sun  
36 enraged thereat prepared to curse her. Thereupon she told

\* For *ñalínádi* read *lalanádi*, with the Bombay edition.



the Sun what had happened, and the god knowing the truth went to Tvashṭri's abode.

- 87 He then paid honour to the Sun, the god honoured by the  
three worlds, who had visited his house, with sublime faith.  
38 Viśva-kṛit on being asked about Sañjñá, then told him—  
“She came indeed here to my house, saying she had been  
39 verily sent by thee.” And the Sun, collecting his mind in  
meditation, perceived her in mare's shape practising austeri-  
40 ties among the Northern Kurus, and the Sun understood the  
purpose of her austerities, namely, ‘May my husband become  
41 mild in body, beautiful in form.’ “Pare down my splendour  
now” quoth the Sun also to Sañjñá's father Viśva-karman,  
42 O bráhmaṇ. And Viśva-karman thereupon pared down the  
splendour of the year-revolving Sun, and obtains the praises  
of the gods.

---

### CANTO LXXVIII.

*The Birth of Vaivasvata in the Sávarṇika Manv-antara.\**

---

*Márkaṇḍeya relates how the gods praised the Sun, what became of the splendour pared off from the Sun, and how the Sun regained his wife—He mentions the positions assigned to the Sun's children.*

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

Then the gods and the devārshis assembling praised in words the Sun, who is worthy of being praised by the entire three worlds.

The gods spoke :

- 2 “Adoration to thee who hast the nature of the R̥ic’ !  
adoration to thee who hast the nature of the S̥áman ! adoration  
to thee whose form has the nature of the Yajus ! to thee who  
3 hast the glory of the S̥ámans ! Adoration to thee who hast  
become the sole domain of knowledge, to the cleanser of  
darkness ! to thee who hast the nature of pure light ! to the

\* This title is a mistake as the canto shews. It should be the Vaivasvata manv-antara.

- 4 purified, to the stainless Soul! Adoration to the most excellent, to the desirable one! to the utmost one, to the supreme Soul! Adoration to *thee* whose nature pervades the entire
- 5 universe, to the embodiment of Soul!" (This fine delightful eulogy must be heard by men with faith. Having become a disciple and having given also the guru his fee *one may hear*
- 6 *it* rapt in meditation. It must not be heard by those who have become empty-handed. Now may this become fruitful!) "Adoration to the being who is the universal cause, to
- 7 the goal\* of men of wise intellect! Adoration to *thee* who hast the nature of the sun, who hast the nature of the brilliant Soul! Adoration to thee, the illuminator, and
- 8 adoration to the maker of day! And adoration to the causer of night, to the maker of twilight and moon-light! Thou art this universe, *thou art* the adorable! With thee, as thou
- 9 revolvest above the world, the entire egg of Brahmá, devoid of intelligence,† with *everything* moveable and immoveable, turns round! This universe when touched by thy rays
- 10 comes to life, pure! Water and other *objects* are cleansed by contact with thy rays! Oblations, alms-giving and the other deeds which compose righteousness tend to no benefit
- 11 so long as this world has no contact with thy rays! All these Ric'es verily are thine; these Yajushes on the other *hand*
- 12 *are thine* also; and all the Sámans drop from thy body! Since thou are composed of the Ric', O lord of the world, and thou
- 13 indeed art composed of the Yajus, and composed also of the Sáman, therefore, O lord, thou art composed of the three! Thou verily art Brahmá's form; *thou art* the
- 14 highest and the lowest also! Moreover *thou art* material and non-material; *thou art* minute and yet *thou* dost exist in massive shape! Thou hast the form of Time, composed of moments, káshthas and other *divisions of time*, yet subject to decay! Be gracious! Of thine own will mitigate the innate splendour of thy form!"

\* Nishtháyai.

† Or, illusory; á-vidhá.

Márkanḍeya spoke :

- 15 Being extolled thus by the gods and devarahis, the imperishable globe of splendour shed his splendour then.  
 16 That *portion* of the Sun's splendour which was composed of the *Ric'* became the earth, and of *that portion* composed of  
 17 the Yajus *was made* the sky, and *that portion* composed of the Sáman *became* heaven.\* Of the fifteen shreds of his splendour which were pared off by Tvasht̥ri, the high-souled  
 18 Tvasht̥ri verily made Sarva's † trident, the discus of Vishṇu and the Vasus, the very terrible *weapon* of Sāṅkara, and  
 19 Agni's spear and Kuvera's paiki ; and all the fierce *weapons* of the others who are the gods' foes, and of the Yakshas and  
 20 Vidyádhara—those *Viśva-kṛit* made. And therefore the adorable lord bears *only* a sixteenth part. His splendour was pared off by *Viśva-karman* into fifteen parts.  
 21 Then assuming a horse's form the Sun went to the Northern  
 22 Kurus, and saw Sañjñá there disguised in mare's shape. And she, seeing him approaching and afraid of a strange male, went towards him face to face, intent on guarding her rear.  
 23 And thereupon as the two met there and joined their noses, two sons issued from the mare's mouth, Násatya and Dasra ;  
 24 and at the termination of the flow of semen Revanta was born, bearing sword, shield and armour, mounted on horse-back, furnished with arrows and quiver. Then the Sun displayed his own peerless form, and she gazing upon his true  
 25 form felt a keen joy ; and the Sun, the robber of the waters, brought home this his loving wife Sañjñá restored to her own shape.  
 27 Her eldest son then became Vaivasvata Manu ; and her second son Yama became the righteous-eyed *judge* because  
 28 of the curse. His father himself made an end of the curse by saying—"Insects taking flesh † from his foot shall fall to  
 29 the earth." And because he is righteous of eye, impartial

\* Svarga.

† Siva's.

‡ For *tritiyo mán samáddya*, which is erroneous, the Bombay edition reads *kṛimayo mánsum áddya* which is intelligible ; but *patishyatt̥i* which both editions read in the next line must then be changed to *patishyan̥t̥i*.

- to friend and foe, therefore the Dispeller of darkness appointed him over the southern region.\* And Yamuná became the river which flows from the recesses of mount Kalinda. The Ásvins were made the gods' physicians by their high-souled father. And Revanta also was appointed king of the Guhyakas. Hear also from me the places assigned to the Shadow-Sañjñá's sons. The eldest son of the Shadow-Sañjñá was equal to Manu the eldest-born; hence this son of the Sun obtained the title Sávarṇika. He also shall be a Manu when Bali shall become Indra. He was appointed by his father as the planet Saturn among the planets. The third of them, the daughter named Tapatí, had a son Kuru, king of men, by king Sambarapa.†
- Thus I describe the seventh period, that of Manu Vaivasvata, his sons, the kings, the ṛishis, the gods and the king of the gods.

---

## CANTO LXXIX.

---

*The praise of Vaivasvata in the Sávarṇika Manu-antara.‡*

*Márkaṇḍeya names the deities, munis and kings of the Vaivasvata Manu-antara.*

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 1 The Adityas, the Vasus, the Rudras, the Sádhyas, the Visve-devas, the Maruts, the Bhrigus, and the Aṅgirases are the eight whereof the classes of gods are traditionally held
- 2 to be composed. The Adityas, the Vasus, the Rudras are to be known as Kaśyapa's sons; and the Sádhyas, the Vasus,§

\* *Yámya.*

† She married the Paurava king Sambarapa and was the twelfth ancestress of the Páṇḍavas; see Mahá-Bhárata, Adi-P. xciv. 3738-9; xcv. 3791; and clxxi. 6521-clxxiii. 6616.

‡ This is a mistaken title as the canto shews.

§ This seems a mistake for Maruts; for *vasavo* read *maruto*? But both editions read alike.

- 3 the *Viśve-devas* are the three groups of *Dharma's* sons. Now  
 4 the *Bhṛigu* class of gods are the sons of *Bhṛigu*, and the  
*Āngirases* are the sons of *Āngiras*. And it is the present  
 creation. *Māric'a* is to be known as the lord at present.  
 5 And the *Indra* is named *Urjjasvin*, high-souled, the con-  
 sumer of a share of the sacrifices. Now all those lords of  
 6 the thirty gods, who have passed away, and who have  
 not yet come, and who reign now, are to be known as having  
 equal characteristics—all indeed are thousand-eyed, wielders  
 7 of the thunder-bolt, smiters asunder of cities; all are  
 bestowers of gifts, pre-eminent, bearers of crests, walking  
 like elephants; they are all receivers of a hundred sacrifices,  
 8 dominating created things with their splendour, possessing  
 the good qualities of sovereignty with righteousness and  
 other pure actions, masters of the past, the future and the  
 present.  
 9 Hear also about this triple world, O *brāhman*. *Bhūr-loka*  
 is traditionally held to be this earth; *antariksha* is held to  
 be the sky,\* and *svarga* is called heaven†—such is spoken  
 of as the triple-world.  
 10 And *Atri* and *Vaśisṭha* and the great *rishi Kāśyapa*, and  
*Gautama*, *Bharadvāja* and *Viśvā-mitra Kausika*, and also  
 the adorable son of the high-souled *Ric'ika*, namely *Jamad-*  
*agni*—these seven are thus the *munis* in the present period.  
 11 *Ikshvāku*,‡ and *Nābhaga*,§ and *Dhrishṭa-śarmāti*,|| and

\* *Divah*; read *divam*, neuter?

† *Divya*.

‡ *Ikshvāku* was the eldest son of *Manu Vaivasvata*. He got *Madhya-*  
*deśa* and was the ancestor of several dynasties, the chief of which was the  
*Solar* dynasty that reigned in *Ayodhyā* (*Hari-Vaṁśa*, x. 634, and xi. 661-8;  
*M.-Bh.*, *Sabha-P.* xiii. 568-9; *Rāmāy.*, *Adi-K.* lxxii. and *Ayodh.-K.* cxix).

§ Or *Nābhaga*. He was father or ancestor of famous king *Amburisha*  
*(Hari-V., x. 613 and 641; M.-Bh., Droṇa-P. lxiv; Śānti-P. xxix. 993-7, and*  
*cxxxiv. 8597; and Anuśās.-P. cxxxvii. 6252).*

|| This is given as a single name, but should be two; thus for *Dhrishṭa-*  
*śarmātir* read *Dhrishṭaḥ Saryātir*, "Dhrishṭa and Saryāti" according to the  
*Bombay* edition. *Dhrishṭa* or *Dhrishṭu* was ancestor of the *Dhārshṇaka*  
*kshatriyas* (*Hari-V., x. 613 and 642*). *Śarmāti* should be *Saryāti* or

- 12 famous Narishyanta,\* Nábhaga† and Dishṭa,‡ and Kurúsha,§ and Prushadhru,|| world renowned Vasu-mat¶ —these are the nine celebrated sons of Manu Vaivasvata.
- 13 I have declared this Vaivasvata period to thee, O bráhmaṇ. When he hears and reads this, a man forthwith is freed from all sins and gains great merit, O best of *munis*.

## CANTO LXXX.

*The Sávarṇika Manv-antara.*

... *Márkaṇḍeya names the rishis, gods and kings of that period.*

Kraushṭuki\*\* spoke :

- 1 Thou hast told me†† about these seven Manus, Sváyambhava and the rest, the gods, the kings and munis which ruled in
- 2 their periods. Tell me, O great muni, of the seven other Manus which shall follow in this kalpa, and the gods and

Saryáte ; he dwelt in the country around the Gulf of Cambay, and founded a dynasty which reigned in Anarta (Hari-V., x. 613 and 642-9; M.-Bh., Vana-P. cxxi. 10312, and cxxii; Anuśás.-P. xxx. 1945; Sata-p Bráh. iv. 1. 6; and page 368 note §§).

\* Or Narishya ; he is said to have been the progenitor of the Sakas (Hari-V., x. 614 and 641).

† This and the next name should apparently be read as one, viz., for *Nábhaga dishṭa* read *Nábhagádishṭa*, or better, *Nábhágádishṭa*. He is said to have had two sons, who were vaiśyas and became bráhmans (Hari-V., x. 614, and xi. 658).

‡ See the preceding note.

§ This should be Karúsha as the Bombay edition reads. He was the progenitor of the Karúshas, who were reckoned as kshattriyas (Hari-V., x. 614, and xi. 658) ; they occupied the country of which Rewa is the centre, see page 341 note †.

|| Or better, Prishadhru as the Bombay edition reads ; it is said he was cursed by his guru and became a súdra (Hari-V., x. 614, and xi. 659).

¶ He must be the same as Prámśu (Hari-V., x. 614), but I have found no clear allusions to him elsewhere.

\*\* For *Kraushṭukir* read *Kraushṭukir*.

†† *Tvayá* would be better than *mayá* ; the Bombay reading *mama* is preferable.

other rulers, whoever they may be, *who shall characterise their periods.*

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 3 I have told thee about Sávarṇi also who was the son of the Shadow-Saṅjñá; equal to his eldest brother Manu, he shall
- 4 be the eighth Manu. Ráma,\* Vyása and Gálava,† Dipti-mat,‡ and Kṛipa,§ Rishyaśringa,|| and Droṇi¶ were\*\* the seven rishis †† of that period.
- 5 And the Suta-pas and Amitábhās and Mukhyas shall be the gods in three divisions; and each group of these three is said ‡‡ to be composed of twenty, and to have the three
- 6 good qualities. Tapa and Tapas,§§ and Sakra, Dyuti, Jyotis, Prabhá-kara, Prabhása, Dayita, Gharma, Tejas, Rásmi,|||
- 7 Vakratu, and so forth are the Suta-pas, the twenty-fold

\* Jámadagnya.

† The name of a son of Viśvá-mitra, and a famous rishi: see M.-Bh., Anuśás.-P. iv. 249-59; Hari-V. xxvii. 1460-63, xxxii. 1767-76, and xi. 724-6. A story of him is told in cantos xx and xxi *ante*; and a long story in M.-Bh., Udyoga-P. cv. and cxiii-cxviii. He is also referred to in Śānti-P. cclxxix; but the Gálava mentioned in Hari-V. xx. 1047-50 belonged to a later period and was probably a descendant.

‡ I have not met with this name elsewhere as the name of a rishi, nor is it as such in the dictionary.

§ The name of one of Dhṛita-ráshṭra's councillors, a well-known figure in the Mahá-Bhárata. He was son or descendant of Śarad-vat.

|| The name of a famous rishi, who was brought up in seclusion in a forest; he put an end to a long drought in Ahga during king Loma-páda's reign, and by sacrifice obtained four sons for king Daśa-ratha of Ayodhyá; see Rámáy., Adi-K. viii. 7-ix. 69; x-xiv and xvii and xviii; M.-Bh., Vana-P. cx. 9991-cxiii. 10094; Śānti-P. cccxxiv. 8009; and Anuśás.-P. cxxxvii. 6269.

¶ This is not the name of any rishi, and the name should apparently be Droṇa or his son Drauṇi Áśvattháman. Both are leading figures in the Mahá-Bhárata.

\*\* Abhavan; the past for the future.

†† All these names are the names of past rishis, and this manv-antara, the Sávarṇika, is still future; see canto liii. verses 7 and 8.

‡‡ For *kathitáś* read *kñhitaś*?

§§ *Tapas tapas* c'a; the two words must be different, it seems; and *tapas*, neuter, is supported by the following *jyotis*, neuter.

||| Or *Tejo-rásmi*, as one name.

- group of gods. Prabhu, Vibhu, Vibhása and others are like-  
 8 wise another group of twenty. Hear also from me the third  
 group of Amita gods ; Dama, Dánta, Ríta, Soma, and Vinta  
 9 and the rest are the group of twenty. And these *shall be*  
 celebrated as Mukhya\* gods, rulers of the manv-antara—  
 they are verily the sons of Máric'a *and* of the Prajá-pati  
 10 Káśyapa, and they shall be in the future during Sávarṇa  
 Manu's period. Now the lord of them, O muni, shall be Bali  
 11 Vairoc'ani, the Daitya who dwells in Pátála at present, bound  
 by a compact.†

And Virajas, and Arvavíra, Nirmoha, Satya-vác', Kṛiti,  
 Vishṇu and others, the sons of Sávarṇa Manu, *shall be*  
 kings.

---

### CANTO LXXXI.

*Commencement of the Deví-Máhátmya.*

---

*The slaughter of Madhu and Kaiṭabha  
 in the account of the Sávarṇika Manv-antara.*

---

*King Su-ratha being defeated and driven from his kingdom took  
 refuge in the forest with a muni—He met a vaiśya who had been  
 driven from his home by his relatives, and both asked the muni about  
 the selfish feelings which still possessed them.—He ascribes those feel-  
 ings to the goddess Mahá-máyá or Great Illusion, and relates how  
 Brahmá lauded the goddess at the end of a former kalpa in order to  
 seek deliverance from the demons Madhu and Kaiṭabha, and how  
 Vishṇu awaking slew the demons.*

---

Om ! Reverence to C'aṇḍiká.

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- Súrya's son Sávarṇi is *he* who is called the eighth Manu.  
 2 Hear about his birth, as I tell it at full length, how by  
 reason of the authority of the Great Illusion‡ that illustrious

\* "Principal," "chief." † *Samaya-bandhanaḥ* ; or "bound for a season."

‡ *Mahá-máyá*.



son of the Sun, Sávarpi, became the king of the *eighth* manv-antara.

- 3 In times ago in the Svároç'isha period, a king named Su-  
 4 ratha, sprung of the race of C'aitra, reigned over the whole  
 5 earth. And while he guarded his subjects duly as if *they*  
*were* his own children, there arose hostile kings, who did  
 6 not destroy the Kolas.\* He the bearer of a very powerful  
 7 sceptre had war with them, and was defeated in war by  
 8 them, inferior though they were, *those* non-destroyers of the  
 9 Kolas. Then coming to his own city he reigned as king over  
 10 his own country. That illustrious *king* was attacked then by  
 11 those powerful enemies. His powerful and corrupt ministers,  
 12 who were evil-disposed to a weak person, thereupon robbed  
 13 him of treasury and army even there in his own city. Hence  
 14 the king deprived of his sovereignty departed alone on horse-  
 15 back to a dense forest under the pretence of hunting. There  
 he saw the hermitage of the noble dvija Medhas, inhabited  
 by wild animals which were peaceful, graced by the muni's  
 disciples; and he dwelt there some time, honoured by the  
 muni. And roaming hither and thither in that fine hermi-  
 tage of the muni, he fell into thought there then, his mind  
 being distraught by selfishness, egotistical—"Lost indeed  
 is the city *which* I guarded formerly. Whether it is guarded  
 righteously or not by those my servants of wicked conduct,  
 I know not. My chief war-elephant, always ardent, has passed  
 into the power of my foes; what pleasures will he obtain?  
 They who were my constant followers now assuredly pay  
 court to other kings with favour, riches and food. The  
 treasure which I amassed with great difficulty will go to  
 waste through those men, addicted to unbecoming expendi-  
 ture, who are squandering it continually." These and other  
 matters the king thought of continually.

\* *Kolávidhvamsinah*. This is an adjective in the nom. plural, agreeing with *bhúpāh*, and not a gen. case; and it is also a single compound, as appears from the next verse. Besides various fanciful explanations, the commentator renders *kola* as *śúkara*, and the whole word as "Yavanas." It seems plain that the Kolas mean aboriginal races, the Kols, and the whole word denotes some enemies who were in alliance with the Kolas.

Near the bráhmaṇ's hermitage there he saw a solitary  
 16 vaiśya, and asked him, "Ho! who art thou? and what is the  
 reason of thy coming here? Why appearest thou as if full  
 17 of sorrow, as if afflicted in mind?" Hearing this speech of  
 the king, which was uttered in friendly mood, the vaiśya,  
 18 bowing respectfully, replied to the king, "I am a vaiśya,  
 Samádhi by name, born in a family of wealthy *folk*, and have  
 been cast out by my sons and wife, who are wicked through  
 19 greed for wealth. And bereft of riches, wife and sons, taking  
 my wealth I have come to the forest, unhappy and cast out  
 20 by my trusted kinsmen. In this state I know not what is  
 the behaviour of my sons as regards prosperity or adversity,  
 21 nor of my family nor of my wife. Here I dwell. Is welfare  
 theirs at home now or ill-luck? How are they? Are my  
 sons living good or evil lives?"

The king spoke:

22 Why dost thou, Sir, fix thy mental affection on those  
 covetous *folk*, thy sons, wife and others, who have cast thee  
 out from thy wealth?

The vaiśya spoke:

23 This very thought has occurred to me, just as thou hast  
 uttered it, Sir. What *can* I do? My mind does not enter-  
 24 tain implacability; and my mind, which bears affection as of a  
 master to his family, is affectionate to those very persons,  
 who have abandoned affection for a father and driven me  
 25 out in their greed for riches. I do not comprehend, although  
 I know it, O high-minded Sir, how it is that the mind is prone  
 26 to love even towards worthless kinsmen. On their account  
 my sighs *flow* and distress of mind arises. What *can* I do  
 since my mind is not relentless to those unloving *relatives*?

Márkaṇḍeya spoke:

27 Thereupon they both, the vaiśya named Samádhi and the  
 28 noble king approached the muni, O bráhmaṇ, and having  
 both observed the etiquette worthy of him, as was proper,  
 they sat down *and* held various discourse, the vaiśya and the  
 king.

The king spoke :

- 29 Adorable Sir ! I desire to ask thee one thing ; tell me that ;  
 since it tends to afflict my mind without *producing* submis-  
 30 siveness of my intellect. I have a selfish feeling for my  
 kingdom, even with regard to all the requisites of regal  
 administration, although I know *what it is*, yet like one who  
 31 is ignorant ; how is this, O est of munis ? And this *man*  
 has been set at nought and cast off by his children, wife and  
 servants ; and when forsaken by his family he is nevertheless  
 32 exceedingly full of affection *towards them*. Thus he and I  
 also are both excessively unhappy ; our minds are drawn by  
 selfish thoughts to *this* matter, even though we perceive the  
 33 faults in it. How *happens* this then, illustrious Sir, that we  
 are deluded although aware of *it*, and that this state of delu-  
 sion besets me and him, who are each blind in respect of  
 discrimination ?

The rishi spoke :

- 34 Every animal has *this* knowledge in objects cognizable by  
 the senses and an object of sense reaches it thus in divers ways,  
 35 illustrious Sir ! Some living beings are blind by day, and  
 others are blind at night ; some living beings can see equally  
 36 well by day and at night. Mankind know what is true, but  
 not they alone indeed, because cattle, birds, wild animals  
 37 and other *creatures* all certainly know it ; and men have \* the  
 same knowledge which those wild animals and birds have,  
 and equally both *wild animals and birds* have the other know-  
 38 ledge which those men have. Though *they* have such know-  
 ledge, look at these birds, which, though distressed by hunger  
*themselves*, are yet because of *that same* delusion assiduous in  
 39 dropping grains into the beaks of their young ones. Human  
 beings are full of longings towards their children, O hero ; do  
 they not *pass* from greed *for self* unto mutual benefaction ; †

\* The Bombay edition reads *na* instead of *c'a*, "men have not the same knowledge, &c."

† This is very noteworthy. The altruistic virtues are here said to have been evolved out of the parental virtues.

- 40 dost thou not perceive this ? Nevertheless they are hurled  
 into the whirlpool of selfishness *which is* the pit of delusion ;  
 through the power of the Great Illusion \* they make worldly  
 41 existence permanent.† Marvel not then at this. This is the  
 contemplation-sleep of the lord of the world, and the Great  
 Illusion *that comes* from Hari ; by it the world is completely  
 42 deluded. Verily she, the adorable goddess, Great Illusion,  
 forcibly drawing the minds even of those who know, presents  
 43 them to delusion. By her is created this whole universe  
 both moveable and immoveable ; she it is who when propitious  
 bestows boons on men with a view to their final emancipation,  
 44 She is Knowledge supreme ; she is the eternal cause of final  
 emancipation, and the cause of the bondage of worldly  
 existence ; she indeed is the queen over all lords.

The king spoke :

- 45 Adorable Sir ! Who then is that goddess whom thou styloest  
 Mahá-máyá ? How was she born, and what is her *sphere of*  
 46 action, O bráhmaṇ ? And what is her disposition, and what  
 is her nature, and whence did she originate, the goddess—all  
 that I wish to hear from thee, O thou most learned in sacred  
 knowledge !

The ṛishi spoke :

- 47 She exists eternally, embodied as the world. By her this  
 universe was stretched forth. Nevertheless her origin is in  
 48 many ways ; hear it from me. When she reveals herself  
 in order to accomplish the purposes of the gods, *it is then*  
*said* in the world that she is born ; she is also named the  
 49 Eternal One.‡ While the adorable lord Viṣṇu, stretching  
 Śeṣha out, wooed the sleep of contemplation at the end of  
 the kalpa, when the universe was converted into absolute  
 50 ocean, then two terrible Asuras named Madhu and Kaiṭabha,§

\* Mahá-máyá.

† For *Saṃsára-sthiti-kárināḥ* the Bombay edition reads *Saṃsára-sthiti-kárinā*, "they are hurled, &c., through the power of the Great Illusion which makes worldly existence permanent."

‡ *Nityá*.

§ See Hari-Vaṃśa, ccii. 13562-81.

springing from the root of Vishṇu's ear, sought to slay  
 51 Brahmá. Brahmá the Prajá-pati stood on the lotus *that grew*  
 from Vishṇu's navel; and seeing those two fierce Asuras  
 52 and sleeping Janárdana, *and* standing with heart solely thereon  
 intent, in order to awaken Hari, extolled that Sleep of con-  
 53 templation which had made its dwelling in Hari's eyes—the  
 lord of splendour *extolled* Vishṇu's Sleep, which is Queen of the  
 universe, the supporter of the world, the cause of permanence  
 and dissolution, full of reverence, incomparable.\*

Brahmá spoko :

54 Thou art Sváhá, thou art Svadhá; thou indeed art Vashaṭ-  
 kára, *thou* hast sound for thy soul; † thou art the nectar  
*of the gods*, the two eternal letters, ‡ *thou* existest having  
 55 the three-fold mátrás for thy soul; § *thou* existest half a  
 mátrá in duration *yet* eternal; thou indeed canst not be  
 uttered specifically; thou art || the Sávitri, ¶ *thou art* the  
 56 divine mother\*\* sublime. By thee indeed everything is main-  
 tained, by thee this world is created, by thee †† it is pro-  
 tected, O goddess! and thou dost always consume it at the  
 57 end. At its emanation thou didst take the form of creation,  
 and in protecting it thou hast the form of permanence, and  
 at the end of this world *thou* wilt have the form of con-  
 58 traction, O thou who containest the world! Thou art the

\* The Bombay edition introduces *staumi* and some changes in the second line, and reads this verse as the beginning of Brahmá's invocation.

† Or, "thou hast heaven for thy soul," *svarátmiká*. The meaning "sound" seems preferable, as it agrees with the rest of the verse.

‡ *Om* ? The commentary overlooks this expression, *akshare nitye*.

§ "The three prosodial measures." The expression *tridhámátrátmiká*, is also divided by the commentator into *tri-dhámá trótmiká*, "thou hast the three mansions, (*i.e.*, the three worlds, the three Vedas, the three chief deities, &c.), *thou* hast the preserver (Vishṇu) for thy soul."

|| For *sá tram* the Bombay edition reads *sandhyá*, "the twilight."

¶ The Gáyatri verse.

\*\* For *devi jananí* the Bombay edition reads *Veda-janani*, "the mother of the Veda."

†† For *tvayetat* read *trayatat*.

Great Knowledge, the Great Illusion, the Great Vigour, the Great Memory, and the Great Delusion,\* the Lady, the Great  
 59 Goddess, the Great Demon.† And thou art the original source‡ of the universe, the exciting cause of the three qualities; thou art the Night of the world's destruction, the  
 60 Great Night, and the Night of delusion, terrible! Thou art Good Fortune, thou art Queen, thou art Modesty; thou art Intelligence characterized by perception; thou art Shame, Nourishment, and Contentment, Tranquillity and Patience  
 61 also. Thou art terrible, armed with sword, with spear, with club, and with discus, with conch, with bow, and having as  
 62 weapons arrows, slings§ and an iron mace. Thou art gentle, yea more than gentle, exceedingly beautiful to those who are wholly gentle; thou art indeed beyond the highest and the  
 63 lowest, Queen supreme! And whatever or wherever a thing is, whether good or bad, thou art the energy which all that possesses, O thou who art the soul of everything. Can I  
 54 extol thee *more than this*? || By thee, who art such, he indeed, who created the world, who protects the world,¶ who consumes the world, is brought under the dominion of sleep.  
 65 Who is able here to extol thee? Since Vishṇu, I and Siva have been made by thee to assume bodies, who then may be  
 66 powerful *enough* to extol thee? Being such, do thou, O goddess, lauded thus, bewitch these two unassailable Asuras,  
 67 Madhu and Kaiṭabha, with thy exalted powers, and let the imperishable master of the world be lightly brought back to consciousness, and let him rouse up his intelligence to slay these two great Asuras!

\* Or rather, "thou hast the great delusion," *Mahá-mohá*.

† *Mahásurí*. The Bombay edition reads *Maheśvarí*, "the Great Queen."

‡ *Prakṛiti*.

§ *Bhruṣuṇḍi*. After explaining this word as a contraction of *bhuja-śatru-muṇḍi*, "she who cuts off enemies with her arms," the commentator says it = *go-phaṇiká*, "a sling." The dictionary says it is "a kind of weapon (perhaps a kind of fire-arms)."

|| *Mayá* as in the Bombay edition is preferable to *tadá*.

¶ For *gajapátátti* read *jagat páty atti* according to the Bombay edition; see verse 56.

The ṛishi spoke :

- 68 Then the goddess of darkness, extolled thus by the Creator  
there in order to awaken Viṣṇu to slay Madhu and Kaiṭabha,  
69 issued forth from his eyes, mouth, nose, arms and heart and  
breast, and stood in the sight of Brahmá whose birth is  
70 inscrutable ; and Janárdana, master of the world, being  
quitted by her, rose up from his couch in the universal ocean ;  
71 and he saw those two then, Madhu and Kaiṭabha, evil of soul,  
excelling in heroism and prowess, red-eyed through anger,  
72 fully prepared to devour Brahmá. Thereupon the adorable  
lord Hari rose up and fought with those two, striking them  
73 with his arms, for five thousands of years. And they, exceed-  
ingly frenzied with their power, deluded by the Great Illu-  
sion, exclaimed to Keśava, " Choose a boon from us ! "

The god spoke :

- 74 Be ye both now content with me ; ye must both be slain  
by me ! What need is there of any other boon here ? Thus  
much indeed is my choice.

The ṛishi spoke :

- 75 Gazing then at the entire world which was nothing but  
water, those two, who had been thus tricked, spoke to the  
adorable lotus-eyed *god*,—" Slay us where the earth is not  
overwhelmed with water." \*

The ṛishi spoke :

- 76 " Be it so " said the adorable wielder of the conch, discus  
and club, and cutting † them with his discus clove them both  
asunder, heads and buttocks.  
77 Thus was she born when praised by Brahmá himself. Now  
listen again, I tell thee of this goddess' majesty.

\* The Bombay edition makes this sentence the second line of a new verse and reads as the first line of it—*Prītau svas tava yuddhena śīdghyas tvam mṛityur āvayoh*, " We are pleased at the battle with thee ; thou art worthy of praise as Death to us ! "

† For *kṛitvá* read *kṛittvá* ?

## CANTO LXXXII.

---

*The Deví-máhútmya.*

*Slaughter of the army of the Asura Mahisha.*

---

*The gods were defeated in a great battle formerly by the Asuras and driven from heaven, and the Asura Mahisha became supreme.—All the gods gave forth their special energies, which combined and formed the goddess O'ṇḍiká.—They gave her their weapons, and she fought with and destroyed the Asuras.*

---

The ṛishi spoke :

Of yore there was a fight for a full hundred years between the gods \* and Asuras, when Mahisha was lord of the Asuras  
 2 and Indra lord of the gods ; in it the army of the gods was vanquished by the Asuras who excelled in valour, and the Asura Mahisha after conquering all the gods became the  
 3 Indra. Then the vanquished gods, placing the Praja-pati Brahmá at their head, went where abode Śiva and Viṣṇu.  
 4 The thirty gods described to them accurately what had happened, the full story of the gods' discomfiture which  
 5 had been wrought by the Asura Mahisha,—“ He, Mahisha, in his own person domineers over the jurisdictions of the Sun, Indra, Agni, Váyu and the Moon, of Yama and Varuṇa  
 6 and of the other gods. Cast out by that evil-souled Mahisha from Svarga all the hosts of the gods wander on the earth  
 7 like mortals. It has now been related to you both, all that has been wrought by the foe of the Immortals, and we have sought you both as a refuge ; let his destruction be devised ! ”  
 8 Having thus heard the words of the gods, Viṣṇu was wroth and Śiva also ; both their faces became furrowed with  
 9 frowns. Then issued forth great energy † from the mouth of Viṣṇu who was full of intense anger, and from the  
 10 mouths of Brahmá and Śiva ; and from the bodies of Indra

\* For *Davásuram* read *Devásuram*.

† *Tejas*.



- and the other gods went forth a very great energy ; and it  
 11 *all* amalgamated. The gods beheld the mass of intense  
 12 energy there like a burning mountain, pervading the other  
 regions of the sky with its blaze; and that unparalleled  
 energy born of the bodies of all the gods, which pervaded  
 the three worlds with its light, gathering into one became  
 13 a female. By what was Śiva's energy her face was devel-  
 oped, and by Yama's *energy* grew her hair, and her arms  
 14 by Viṣṇu's energy, by the Moon's her twin breasts; and  
 her waist came into being by Indra's *energy*, and by Varuṇa's  
 15 her legs and thighs, by the Earth's energy her hips, by  
 Brahmá's energy her feet, her toes by the Sun's energy, and  
 by the Vasus' *energy* her hands and fingers, and by Kuvera's  
 16 her nose; and her teeth grew by the Prajā-pati's energy,  
 17 and three eyes were developed by Agni's energy; and her  
 eyebrows *were* the energy of the two twilights, and her ears  
 Váyu's *energy*; and the coming into being of the energies of  
 the other gods *became* the auspicious goddess  
 18 Then gazing at her, who had sprung from the combined  
 energies of all the gods, the Immortals who were afflicted by  
 19 Mahisha felt a keen joy.\* The bearer of *the bow* Pináka  
 drawing a trident forth from *his own* trident gave it to her;  
 and Kṛishṇa gave a discus pulling it out of his own discus;  
 20 and Varuṇa gave her a conch, Agni a spear, Māruta gave a  
 21 bow and a quiver filled with arrows.† Indra lord of the  
 Immortals *gave* a thunder-bolt pulling it out of *his own*  
 thunder-bolt; the Thousand-eyed gave her a bell from his  
 22 elephant Airāvata. Yama gave a rod from his own rod of  
 Fate, and the lord of the waters a noose; and the Prajā-pati  
 gave her a necklace of beads, Brahmá an earthen water-pot;  
 23 the Sun bestowed his own rays on all the pores of her skin,  
 and Destiny ‡ gave her a sword and a spotless shield;

\* The Bombay edition inserts a verse here. "Then the gods gave her also their own several weapons; wishing for victory they shouted aloud to the victorious goddess 'Conquer! conquer!'"

† For *vāṇa-púrṇa* read *vāṇa-púrṇá* ?

‡ Or Time, *Kāla*.

24 and the Ocean of milk a spotless necklace of pearls and also  
 a pair of undecaying garments. And a celestial crest-jewel, a  
 25 pair of ear-rings, and bracelets, and a brilliant half-moon  
 ornament, and armlets over all her arms, and also a pair of  
 26 bright anclets, a necklet of the finest *make*, and rings and  
 gems on all her fingers — *these* Viśva-karman gave to her, and  
 27 also a brightly polished axe, weapons of many shapes and also  
 armour that could not be pierced. And Ocean gave her a  
 28 garland of fadeless lotus-flowers for her head and another for  
 her breast, and a very brilliant lotus-flower *besides*. Himavat  
 29 gave her a lion to ride on and gems of various kinds. Kuvera  
 gave a drinking cup full of wine. And Śesha, the lord of all  
 30 the serpents, who supports this earth, gave her a serpent-  
 necklace adorned with large gems. Honoured by other gods  
 31 also with *gifts of* ornaments\* and weapons, the goddess  
 uttered a loud roar blended with a horse-laugh again and  
 again. The whole welkin was filled with her terrible roar.  
 32 By that penetrating and exceedingly great *roar* a great echo  
 33 arose, all the worlds shook and the seas trembled, the earth  
 quaked and all the mountains moved. And “Conquer thou!”  
 exclaimed the gods with joy to her who rode on the lion  
 34 and the munis extolled her as they bowed their bodies in  
 faith.

Seeing all the three worlds greatly agitated, the foes of the  
 35 Immortals uniting all their armies rose up together, with up-  
 lifted weapons. “Ha! what is this?” exclaimed the Asura  
 36 Mahisha in wrath, and rushed surrounded by all the Asuras  
 towards that roar. Then he saw the goddess, pervading the  
 37 three worlds† with her light, causing the earth to bow at the  
 touch of her feet, grazing the firmament with her crest,  
 shaking the whole of Pātāla with the twang of her bow-string,  
 38 standing pervading the sky all around with her thousand  
 arms. Then began a battle between the goddess and the

\* For *bhashanair* read *bhūshanair*.

† For *vyāpta-loka-trayam* read *vyāpta-loka-trayām*, with the Bombay edition; otherwise this word, read as a neuter noun, separates *devīm* from the feminine adjectives which follow.

39 enemies of the gods, in which every region of the sky was  
 illumined with the weapons and arms hurled in abundance.  
 And the Asura Mahisha's general, the great Asura named  
 40 C'ikshura, fought with her; and the Asura C'ámara attended by  
 his cavalry fought along with others. The great Asura  
 41 named Udagra with six myriads of chariots fought; and  
 Mahá-hanu with a thousand myriads gave battle; and the  
 42 great Asura Asi-loman with fifty millions; with six hundred  
 myriads Váskala fought in the battle; Ugra-daršana \* with  
 43 many troops of thousands of elephants and horses, and sur-  
 rounded with ten million chariots fought in that battle; and  
 44 the Asura named Viḍála fought in the battle there, surround-  
 ed with fifty myriads of myriads of chariots. And other  
 45 great Asuras in myriads, surrounded with chariots, elephants  
 and horses, fought with the goddess in that battle there. Now  
 46 the Asura Mahisha was surrounded with thousands of ten  
 million times ten millions of chariots and elephants and horses  
 in the battle there. With iron maces and javelins, with spears  
 47 and clubs, with swords, with axes and halberds they fought  
 in the battle against the goddess. And some hurled spears,  
 48 and others nooses, but they assailed the goddess with blows  
 from their swords in order to slay her.

And then the goddess C'aṇḍiká clove, as it were in merest  
 49 play, those weapons and arms by raining forth her own  
 weapons and arms. The goddess betrayed no exertion in her  
 50 countenance, while the gods and ṛishis were praising her. The  
 queenly goddess hurled her weapons and arms at the Asuras'  
 bodies. The lion also that bore the goddess, enraged and  
 51 with ruffled mane, stalked among the armies of Asuras, like  
 fire through the forests. And the deep breaths, which  
 52 Ambiká fighting in the battle breathed forth, came into real  
 being at once as troops by hundreds and thousands. These  
 fought with axes, with javelins, and swords and halberds,  
 53 destroying the Asura bands, being invigorated by the god-

\* Instead of *pari-vártaḥ* I take the reading of the Bombay edition *Ugra-daršanaḥ* as a proper name. The Calcutta text contains no name as a nominative in this line or the next.

54 dess' energy. And of these bands *some* raised a din with  
 large drums, and others with conchs, and others besides with  
 drums, in that great battle-festival. Then the goddess with  
 55 her trident, her club, with showers of spears, and with her  
 sword and other weapons slaughtered the great Asuras in  
 56 hundreds, and laid others low who were bewitched with the  
 ringing of her bell; and binding other Asuras with her noose  
 dragged them on the ground. And others again, cloven in  
 57 twain by sharp slashes of her sword *and* crushed \* by blows  
 with her mace, lie on the ground; and some grievously  
 58 battered by her club vomited forth blood. Some were felled  
 to the ground, pierced in the breast by her trident. Some  
 being closely massed together were cut in pieces† by the  
 59 torrent of her arrows in the battle-field. Following the manner  
 of an army,‡ the afflicters of the thirty *gods* gave up the  
 ghost; some with their arms cut off, and others with severed  
 60 necks; their heads fell from others, others were torn asunder  
 in the middle; and other great Asuras fell to the earth with  
 61 legs clean cut off; some were cloven by the goddess into two  
 parts, with a single arm and eye and foot *to each part*; and  
 others fell and rose again, although with head cut off.  
 62 Headless corpses, *still* grasping the finest weapons, fought  
 with the goddess; and others danced there in the battle,  
 keeping time to the strains of the musical instruments.  
 63 Corpses, with heads severed, *still* held swords and spears and  
 lances § in their hands; and other great Asuras *were* shouting  
 64 to the goddess, "Stand! stand!" || With the prostrate chariots,  
 elephants and horses and Asuras the earth became impassable

\* *Vi-pothita*; *vi-puth* is not in the dictionary.

† For *kritāḥ* read *krutāḥ*?

‡ *Senānukāriṇaḥ*; but the commentator translates it, "fighting in the rear of the army." The Bombay edition reads *śailānukāriṇaḥ*, "who resembled mountains."

§ For *uśhṭi* read *riśhṭi*.

|| The Bombay edition adds a line to this verse, "while from their mangled limbs flowed streams of blood (*nudhiraṅgha-vaduptāṅgīḥ*) in that appalling battle."

- 65 where that great battle took place. And large rivers formed  
of torrents of blood straightway flowed along there amidst  
the armies of Asuras, and among the elephants, Asuras and  
horses.
- 66 Thus Ambiká brought that great army of the Asuras to  
utter destruction in a moment, even as fire *utterly consumes*  
67 a huge pile of grass and timber. And the lion, with quivering  
mane, *stalked on* roaring aloud.\* While he prowled † as it  
were for lives out of the bodies of the foes of the Immortals,  
68 the battle was fought there between those troops of the  
goddess and the Asuras, so that the gods in heaven sending  
down showers of flowers gratified ‡ her.§

---

CANTO LXXXIII. 3

---

*The Devī-māhātmya.*

*The slaying of the Asura Mahisha.*

---

*The description of the battle is continued—The goddess slew the  
Asura chiefs in single combat and finally the Asura Mahisha.*

---

The fishi spoke :

- 1 Now the great Asura, the general C'ikshura, seeing that  
army being slaughtered, advanced in wrath to fight with
- 2 Ambiká. The Asura rained a shower of arrows on the god-  
dess in the battle, as a clond *deluges* mount Meru's summit
- 3 with a shower of rain. The goddess, cutting asunder the  
masses of his arrows then as it were in play, smote his horses
- 4 with her arrows and their charioteer ; and split his bow forth-  
with and his banner raised high aloft ; and with swift

\* The Bombay edition repeats here the second line of verse 50.

† *Vi-c'invati*, the loc. case, with *simhe* understood.

‡ Or "lauded," according to another reading.

§ For *eshām* read *enām*.

*missiles* pierced his limbs as he *stood* with shattered bow.

- 5 His bow shattered, his chariot useless, his horses killed, his  
 6 charioteer slain, the Asura armed with sword and shield  
 7 rushed at the goddess. With the utmost celerity he smote  
 8 the lion on the head with his sharp-edged sword, and struck  
 9 the goddess also on her left arm. His sword shivered to  
 10 pieces as it touched her arm (O prince). Thereon red-eyed  
 11 with anger, he grasped his pike, and he, the great Asura,  
 12 flung it at Bhadra-káli, as it were the Sun's orb blazing  
 13 brightly with its splendour from out the sky. Seeing that  
 14 pike falling on her, the goddess hurled her pike, *and* it  
 15 shattered that pike into a hundred fragments and the great  
 16 Asura also.

- 10 When he, Mahisha's very valiant general, was slain,  
 11 C'ámara, the afflicter of the thirty *gods*, advanced mounted  
 12 on an elephant; and he also hurled his spear at the goddess.  
 13 Down to the ground Ambiká quickly struck it, assailed with  
 14 a contemptuous hoot and rendered lustre-less. Seeing his  
 15 spear broken *and* fallen, C'ámara filled with rage flung a pike;  
 16 and that she split with her arrows. Then the lion leaping  
 17 up fastened on to the hollow of the elephant's forehead, and  
 18 fought in close combat aloft with that foe of the thirty *gods*;  
 19 but both then fell, as they were fighting, from the elephant  
 20 to the ground. They fought closely locked together with  
 21 most terrible blows. Then quickly springing up to the sky,  
 22 and descending, the lion severed C'ámara's head with a blow  
 23 from his paw.

- 16 And Udagra was slain in battle by the goddess with stones,  
 17 trees and other *things*, and Karála also was stricken down  
 18 by her teeth and fists and feet.\* And the goddess enraged  
 19 ground Ud-dhata to powder with blows from her club; and  
 20 killed Váskala with a dart, Támra and Andhaka with arrows.  
 21 And the supreme three-eyed goddess slew Ugrásya and Ugra-  
 22 vírya and Mahá-hanu also with her trident. With her sword  
 23 she struck Viḍála's head clean down from his body. She

\* *Danta-mushṭi-talaiś*; or, according to the commentator, "with the lower parts of her ivory sword-hilt."

despatched both Dur-dhara and Dur-mukha to Yama's abode with her arrows.\*

- 20 Now, as his army was being thus destroyed utterly, the  
 Asura Mahisha in his own buffalo-shape terrified *her* troops.  
 21 Some *he laid low* by a blow from his muzzle, and others by  
 stamping with his hooves, and others *because they were* lashed  
 22 with his tail and gashed with his horns, and others again by  
 his impetuous rush, his bellowing and his wheeling career,  
*and* others by the blast of his breath—*thus* he laid *them* low  
 23 on the face of the earth. Having laid low the *van* of her  
 army, the Asura rushed to attack the great goddess' lion.  
 24 Thereat Ambiká displayed her wrath. And he, great in  
 valour, pounding the surface of the earth with his hooves in  
 his rage, tossed the mountains aloft† with his horns and  
 25 bellowed. Crushed by his impetuous wheelings the earth  
 crumbled to pieces; and the sea lashed by his tail overflowed  
 26 in every direction; and the clouds pierced by his swaying  
 horns were rent to fragments; mountains fell in hundreds  
 from the sky, being cast down by the blast of his breath.  
 27 C'aṇḍiká looked on the great Asura, as swollen with rage he  
 rushed on, and gave a way to her wrath then in order to slay  
 28 him. She flung her noose full over him, and bound the great  
 Asura fast. And he quitted his buffalo shape when held  
 29 bound in the great battle, *and* then became a lion suddenly.  
 While Ambiká is cutting off his head he took the appearance  
 30 of a man with scymitar in hand. Straightway the goddess  
 with her arrows swiftly pierced the man together with his  
 scymitar and shield. Then *hè* became a huge elephant, and  
 31 tugged at *her* great lion with his trunk and roared, but the  
 goddess cut off his trunk with her sword as he made his tugs.

\* The Bombay edition inserts four lines here. "And she, who is the Night of Fate, laid Kála low with her rod of Fate. She belaboured Ugra-darsana with very fierce blows from her scymitar. She clove Asi-loman indeed with her sword in the battle-festival. Her troops, her lion and the goddess *herself* raised aloud the battle-ory of victory along with *those* battle-festivals."

† *Uc'cáiḥ*, which the Bombay edition reads, is preferable to *uc'c'án*, "high mountains."

- 32 Next the great Asura assumed his buffalo shape again, and  
 so shook the three worlds with all that is moveable and im-  
 33 moveable therein. Enraged thereat C'aṇḍiká, the mother of  
 the world, quaffed a sublime beverage again and again,\* and  
 34 laughed as her eyes gleamed ruddy. And the Asura roared  
 out, puffed up with his strength and valour and frenzy, and  
 35 hurled mountains against C'aṇḍiká with his horns. And she,  
 shivering to atoms with showers of arrows those mountains  
 that he hurled, spoke to him in confused words, while her  
 mouth was rendered ruddier by the mead *that she had drunk.*

The goddess spoke :

- 36 Roar, roar on *thy* brief moment, O fool, the while I quaff  
*this* mead ! The gods shall soon roar, when I shall slay thee  
 even here.
- 37 Exclaiming thus she leaped upwards and sat herself on that  
 great Asura, and kicked him on the neck with her foot and  
 38 struck him with her spear. And thereupon he, being assailed  
 by her foot, half issued forth† from his own mouth in sooth,  
 39 being completely encompassed by the goddess' valour. That  
 great Asura being thus attacked half issued forth indeed.  
 The goddess struck off his head with her great sword and  
 laid him low.‡
- 40 Then perished all that Daitya army with great lamentation.  
 And all the hosts of the gods rose to the highest exultation.
- 41 The gods and the great heavenly ṛishis poured forth praises  
 to the goddess, the Gandharva chiefs burst into song and the  
 bebies of Apsarases into dances.

\* See canto lxxxii, verse 29.

† For *eváti* the Bombay edition reads *evásít*.

‡ The Bombay edition inserts two verses here. "Thus the Asura named Mahisha was destroyed by the goddess along with his army and his bands of friends, after he had bewitched the three worlds. When Mahisha was slain, all created things in the three worlds then uttered the shout 'Conquer thou !' along with gods and Asuras and men."



## CANTO LXXXIV.

*The Devī-māhātmya.**The Slaying of the Asura Mahisha concluded.*

*The gods poured forth their praises to U'ṇḍiká on her victory—And she gave them the boon that she would always befriend them, if they recalled her to mind in calamities.*

The ṛishi spoke : \*

- 1      When that most valiant evil-souled army of the gods' foes  
was vanquished by the goddess, Śakra and the hosts of other  
gods poured forth their praises to her with their voices,  
reverently bending down their necks† and shoulders, while  
their bodies looked handsome because their hair stood erect  
with exultation.
- 2      The goddess, who stretched out this world by her power,  
Whose body comprises the entire powers of all the hosts  
of gods,  
Her, Ambiká, worthy of worship by all gods and great  
ṛishis,  
We bow before‡ in faith ; may she ordain blessings for us !
- 3      May she, whose peerless majesty and power Ananta  
Adorable, Brahmá and Hara cannot in sooth declare,  
May she, C'ṇḍiká, to protect the entire world  
And to destroy the fear of evil turn her mind !
- 4      Her, who is Good-Fortune herself in the dwellings of men  
of good deeds, Ill-Fortune

\* The Bombay edition inserts a preliminary verse here—"Then all the hosts of gods with Indra at their head began to sing the praise of the goddess, when the Asura Mahisha was slain." This is tautological and superfluous.

† For -śiro-'dharámsá read -śirodharámsá as in the Bombay edition.

‡ Natáḥ sma ; so again in verse 4. This seems a peculiar use of the particle sma. Similarly pra-ṇatáḥ sma in canto lxxxv, verse 7.

*In those of men of sinful souls ; who is Intelligence in the hearts of the prudent,*

*Who is Faith in those of the good, and Modesty in that of the high-born man ;\**

*Her, even thee, we bow before ; protect the universe, O goddess !*

- 5 Can we describe† this thy thought-transcending form ?  
Or thy abundant surpassing valour that destroyed the Asurns ?

Or thy surpassing‡ feats which *were displayed* in battles  
Among all the hosts of Asuras, gods and others, O goddess ?

- 6 *Thou art* the cause of all the worlds ! Though characterized by the three qualities, by faults§  
Thou art not known ! Even by Hari, Hara and the other gods *thou art* incomprehensible !  
*Thou art* the resort of all ; *thou art* this entire world which is composed of parts !

Thou verily *art* sublime original Nature || untransformed !

- 7 Thou, whose complete divinity by means of utterance  
Finds satisfaction in all sacrifices, O goddess, ¶  
Art verily Svāhá, and givest satisfaction to the Pitṛi-hosts !  
Hence thou art in truth declared by men to be Svadhá also.

- 8 Thou *art she*, who effects final emancipation, and performs great thought-transcending penances !  
Thou studiest\*\* with thy organs, which are the essence of strength, †† well-restrained !

\* For *kula-jana-prabhasya* read *kula-jana-prabhavasya*, with the Bombay edition.

† *Kim varṇayāma*.

‡ For *tavditi yāni* the Bombay edition reads *tavādbhutāni*, which is equivalent.

§ For *doshair* the Bombay edition reads *devair*, which is inferior.

|| *Prakṛitī*.

¶ The Bombay edition reads plurals.

\*\* *Abhy-asyase* ; *ātmane-pada*, which seems rare.

†† *Sattva-sāraiḥ* of the Bombay edition is preferable to *tattva-sāraiḥ*.

With munis, who seek final emancipation and who have  
shed all their faults,

Thou art The Knowledge, adorable, sublime in sooth, O  
goddess !

- 9 Sound is thy soul ! *thou art* the repository of the most  
spotless *ric* and *yajus* hymns,  
And of the *sámans*, which have the charming-worded texts  
of the *Ud-gítha* !

*Thou as goddess art* the triple *Veda*, the adorable, and for  
the existence and production

Of all the worlds art active ; *thou art* the supreme destroyer  
of their pains ! \*

- 10 Thou art Mental Vigour, † O goddess ! thou hast compre-  
hended the essence of all the Scriptures !

Thou art *Durgá* ; the boat *to cross* the difficult ocean of  
existence ; devoid of attachments !

Thou art *Srí*, who has planted her dominion alone in the  
heart of *Kaiṭabha*'s foe !

Thou indeed art *Gaurí*, who has fixed her dwelling in the  
moon-crested *god* !

- 11 Slightly-smiling, spotless, resembling the full moon's  
Orb, beautiful as the choicest gold, *and lovely was thy*  
*face* !

Yet 't was very marvellous that, being swayed by anger,  
The *Asura Mahisha* suddenly smote thy face when he  
saw it.

- 12 But after seeing thy wrathful *face*, O goddess, terrible with  
its frowns,  
And sheeny in hue like the rising moon, that *Mahisha*  
Did not forthwith yield up his life, 't was passing wonder-  
ful !

\* This half verse admits of more than one translation. I have adopted  
from the commentary what seems the most natural meaning. *Váṛttá* seems  
obscure ; the commentary explains it as *vr̥ttānta-rūpá*, " having the form of  
events " or " having the form of history ; " or as *kr̥ishi-go-rakshádi-vr̥ttir*,  
" following the occupations of cultivation, cattle-rearing and such like."

† *Medhd*.

- For who can live after beholding the King of Death enraged ?
- 13 Be gracious, O goddess, as supreme lady, to life !  
When enraged thou dost forthwith destroy *whole* families !  
Known at this very moment is this, that here is brought to its end  
The Asura Mahisha's most extensive might !
- 14 Esteemed are they among the nations, theirs are riches,  
Theirs are glories, and their sum of righteousness\*  
perishes not,  
Happy are they indeed, *and* they possess devoted children,  
servants and wives,  
On whom thou, well-pleased, dost always bestow prosperity,  
O lady !
- 15 All righteous actions ever indeed, O goddess,  
With utmost respect the man of good deeds daily performs,  
And gains heaven thereafter by thy favour, O lady.  
Dost thou not by him† bestow rewards even on the three  
worlds, O goddess ?
- 16 Thou, O Durgā, when called to mind, dost remove terror  
from every creature !  
Thou, when called to mind by those in health, dost bestow  
a mind extremely bright !  
What *goddess* but thou, O dispeller of poverty, pain and  
fear,  
Has ever benevolent thoughts in order to work benefits to  
all ?
- 17 By these slain *foes* the world attains‡ to happiness ; thus  
let these  
Forsooth practise sin *so as to descend* to hell for long !§

\* Or *bandhu-vargah*, "whole body of kinsfolk," according to the Bombay edition.

† *Tena*, or "therefore."

‡ Or *upaitu*, "may it attain," according to the Bombay edition.

§ This appears to be one meaning given in the commentary ; another, which seems to be preferred, is to read *nāma narakāya* as *na dāma-narakāya*, "let these not practice sin *so as to descend* to the Hell of Disease for long !"

- ‘ Meeting death in battle let them proceed to heaven ’—  
 Thinking thus, thou dost assuredly destroy the enemies,  
 O goddess !
- 18 Having indeed seen them, why dost thou not, O lady,  
 reduce to ashes  
 All the Asuras, since thou directest thy weapons against  
 the foes ?
- ‘ Let even enemies, purified by dying in arms, attain in  
 sooth to the *bright* worlds ’—  
 Such is thy most kindly intention towards even them.
- 19 And though, neither by the sharp flashes \* of abundant  
 light from thy scymitar,  
 Nor by the copious lustre of thy spear-point, the eyes of  
 the Asuras  
 Were destroyed ; yet, as they gazed upon thy countenance  
 Which bore a portion of the radiant moon, this very thing  
*happened*.
- 20 Thy disposition, O goddess, subdues the conduct of men  
 of evil conduct ;  
 And this *thy* form surpasses thought and rivalry by others ;  
 And thy valour vanquishes those who have robbed the gods  
 of their prowess ;  
 Thou hast as it were † manifested pity thus even on  
 enemies !
- 21 To what my this thy prowess be compared ?  
 And whereto thy form most charming, which strikes fear  
 among foes ?  
 Compassion in mind and relentlessness in battle are seen  
 In thee, O goddess, who bestowest boons even on the three  
 worlds !
- 22 Through the destruction of the foes, these three worlds  
 entire  
 Have been saved by thee. Having slain them in the battle-  
 front

\* *Vispurana* ; not in the dictionary.

† Or *prakaṣitaiva*, “ thou hast indeed manifested,” as in the Bombay edition.

Thou hast led even those hosts of foes to heaven, and  
dispelled the fear  
Which beset us from the frenzied foes of the gods.  
Reverence to thee !

- 23 With thy spear protect us, O goddess !  
Protect us with thy sword also, O Ambikā !  
By the clanging of thy bell protect us,  
And by the twanging of the thong of thy bow !
- 24 In the east guard us, and in the west ;  
O C'āṇḍikā, guard us in the south  
By the brandishing of thy spear,  
And also in the north, O goddess !
- 25 Whatever gentle forms of thee wander about in the three  
worlds,  
And whatever exceedingly terrible *forms wander*, by means  
of them guard us and the earth !
- 26 Thy sword and spear and club, and whatever other weapons,  
O Ambikā,  
Rest in thy pliant hand, with them guard us on every side !

The ṛishi spoke :

- 27 Thus was she, the Upholder of the worlds, hymned by the  
gods, and they paid honour to her with celestial flowers that  
blossomed in Nandana, and with perfumes and unguents.
- 28 Moreover all the thirty *gods* in faith censured her with heavenly  
incenses. Benignly sweet in countenance she spoke to all  
the prostrate gods.

The goddess spoke :

- 29 Choose, ye thirty all ! whatever ye desire of me, for I grant  
it with pleasure, being highly honoured by these hymns.\*

The gods spoke :

- 30 Thou, O adorable lady, hast accomplished all, nought  
remains *undone*, in that this Asura Mahisha, our foe has

\* The Bombay edition inserts another verse here—“ ‘ And whatever else  
must be done, I do not deem it difficult.’ Hearing this speech from the  
goddess, those heaven-dwellers made answer.”

- 31 been slain. Yet if thou must grant us a boon, O goddess  
great! whenever we call thee, call thee to mind, do thou  
32 away with our direst calamities! And whatever mortal  
shall praise thee with these hymns, O lady of spotless coun-  
tenance, to prosper him in wealth and wife and other bless-  
ings by means of riches, success and power do thou incline  
always, O Ambiká, who art propitious to us!

The ṛishi spoke :

- 33 Being thus propitiated by the gods for the good of the  
world and on their own *behalf*, "Be it so!" said she, Bhadrá-  
kálí; and vanished from their sight, O king.  
34 Thus I have narrated this, O king, how the goddess came into  
being of yore from out of the gods' bodies, she who desires the  
35 good of all the three worlds. And again she came into existence  
having the body of Gaurí, just as she did before, in order  
36 to slay the wicked Daityas and Śumbha and Niśumbha, and  
to preserve the worlds, as benefactress of the gods. Hearken  
then to what I have declared to thee. I have truly told it  
thee.

---

## CANTO LXXXV.

---

*The Devī-māhātmya.*

*The goddess' conversation with the Asura's messenger.*

*The Asuras Śumbha and Niśumbha conquered the gods and drove them from heaven.—The gods invoked O'ambiká at Himavat in a hymn, appealing to her by all her attributes to help them.—Párvatī came there and O'ambiká sprang forth from her body.—The servants of Śumbha and Niśumbha saw her and extolled her perfect beauty to Śumbha.—He sent a messenger to invite her to marry him.—She explained that by a vow she could marry no one who did not conquer her in fight.*

The ṛishi spoke :

Of yore the Asuras Śumbha and Niśumbha, trusting in

- their pride and strength, robbed Śaśi's lord of the three  
 2 worlds\* and of his portions of the sacrifices; they both  
 usurped likewise the sun's dignity and the moon's dominion,  
 3 and Kuvera's and Yama's and Varuṇa's; and they both  
 exercised Váyu's authority and Agni's *sphere of action*.†  
 Thereby the gods were scattered, deprived of their sover-  
 4 eignities *and* put to rout. The thirty gods, bereft of their  
 dominion *and* set at nought by those two great Asuras, all  
 5 recall to mind that never-vanquished goddess,—“Thou didst  
 grant us the boon,‡ ‘As *ye when* in calamities *shall call me* to  
 mind,§ that very moment will I put an end to all your direst  
 6 calamities.’” Making this resolve the gods went to Hima-  
 vat, lord among mountains, and there raised their hymn to  
 the goddess, who is Vishṇu's illusive power.||

The gods spoke :

- 7 Reverence to the goddess, to the great goddess !  
 To her who is auspicious reverence perpetually !  
 Reverence to Prakṛiti the good !  
 Submissive we fall prostrate before her ! ¶  
 8 Reverence to her who is terrible, to her who is constant !  
 To Gaurí, to Dhátrí reverence, *yea* reverence !  
 And to the Moon-light,\*\* to her who has the moon's form,  
 To her who is happy, reverence continually !

\* For *traikokyam* read *trailokyam*.

† The Bombay edition inserts a line here—

*anyeshám c'ádhikáráṇ saḥ svayam evádhitishṭhati*

and reads the first three words with the preceding words, but does not explain the last four in its commentary. I would suggest that the line should run thus—

*anyeshám adhikáráṇśc'a svayam evádhitashṭhatuḥ*

“and they themselves dominated the lordships of the other gods.”

‡ See canto lxxxiv, verse 31.

§ *Smṛitákhilāḥ*, i.e., *smṛitā*, and *akhilāḥ* agreeing with *paramápadaḥ*.

|| *Vishṇu-máyā*.

¶ *Prasatāḥ sma tám*; *sma* is used here with a past participle.

\*\* *Jyotendyai*.



- 9      Falling prostrate, to her who is propitious, to Prosperity,\*  
       To Perfection let us pay † reverence, *yea* reverence !  
       To Nirriti,‡ to the goddess of Good-Fortune of kings,  
       To thee, Śarvāpī, reverence, *yea* reverence !
- 10     To Durgā, to her who is a further shore difficult to be  
       reached,§  
       To her who is essential, to her who works all things,||  
       And to Fame also, to her who is blue-black,¶  
       To her who is smoke-dark reverence continually !
- 11     Before her who is *at once* most gentle and most harsh  
       We fall prostrate ; to her reverence, *yea* reverence !  
       Reverence to her who is the foundation of the world !  
       To the goddess *who is* Action reverence, *yea* reverence !
- 12     To the goddess who among all created things  
       Is called Viṣṇu's illusive power,  
       Reverence to her, *yea* reverence to her !  
       Reverence to her, reverence, *yea* reverence !
- 13     To the goddess who among all created beings  
       Bears the name Consciousness,\*\*  
       Reverence to her, *yea* reverence to her !  
       Reverence to her, reverence, *yea* reverence !
- 14     To the goddess who among all created beings  
       Stands firm †† with the form of Intellect,‡‡  
       Reverence to her, *yea* reverence to her !  
       Reverence to her, reverence, *yea* reverence !

\* For *Vṛidvyai* read *Vṛiddhyai*. But the Bombay edition reads *mṛidvyai*,  
 "to her who is gentle."

† *Kurmo* ; the Bombay edition reads *Kūrmyai*, "to the female Tortoise."

‡ "Dissolution."

§ *Durga-pārdyai*.

|| *Sarva-kāriṇyai* ; this violates the metre. The Bombay edition reads  
 better, *sarva-kāriṇi*, "O thou who workest all things !"

¶ *Kṛishṇdyai*.

\*\* *O'stand*.

†† *Saṁsthītā* ; or "abides." The commentary explains it as *samyak  
 sthītā*.

‡‡ *Buddhi-rūpeṣa*.

- 15 To the goddess who among all created beings  
Stands firm with the form of Sleep,  
Reverence to her, *yea* reverence to her !  
Reverence to her, reverence, *yea* reverence !
- 16 To the goddess who among all created beings  
Stands firm with the form of Hunger,  
Reverence to her, *yea* reverence to her !  
Reverence to her, reverence, *yea* reverence,
- 17 To the goddess who among all created beings  
Stands firm with the form of Shadow,  
Reverence to her, *yea* reverence to her !  
Reverence to her, reverence, *yea* reverence !
- 18 To the goddess who among all created beings  
Stands firm with the form of Energy,\*  
Reverence to her, *yea* reverence to her !  
Reverence to her, reverence, *yea* reverence !
- 19 To the goddess who among all created beings  
Stands firm with the form of Thirst,  
Reverence to her, *yea* reverence to her !  
Reverence to her, reverence, *yea* reverence !
- 20 To the goddess who among all created beings  
Stands firm with the form of Patience,  
Reverence to her, *yea* reverence to her !  
Reverence to her, reverence, *yea* reverence !
- 21 To the goddess who among all created beings  
Stands firm with the form of Speciality,†  
Reverence to her, *yea* reverence to her !  
Reverence to her, reverence, *yea* reverence !
- 22 To the goddess who among all created beings  
Stands firm with the form of Modesty,  
Reverence to her, *yea* reverence to her !  
Reverence to her, reverence, *yea* reverence !
- 23 To the goddess who among all created beings

\* *Sakti-rūpeṇa*.

† *Jāti*. The commentary explains it as *nityaikhānugata-pratyaya-hetur aneka-samavāyīni*.

- Stands firm with the form of Peaceableness,  
 Reverence to her, *yea* reverence to her !  
 Reverence to her, reverence, *yea* reverence !  
 24 To the goddess who among all created beings  
 Stands firm with the form of Faith,  
 Reverence to her, *yea*, reverence to her !  
 Reverence to her, reverence, *yea* reverence !  
 25 To the goddess who among all created beings  
 Stands firm with the form of Loveliness,  
 Reverence to her, *yea* reverence to her !  
 Reverence to her, reverence, *yea* reverence !  
 26 To the goddess who among all created beings  
 Stands firm with the form of Good-Fortune,  
 Reverence to her, *yea* reverence to her !  
 Reverence to her, reverence, *yea* reverence ! \*  
 27 To the goddess who among all created beings  
 Stands firm with the form of Activity,  
 Reverence to her, *yea* reverence to her !  
 Reverence to her, reverence, *yea* reverence !  
 28 To the goddess who among all created beings  
 Stands firm with the form of Memory,  
 Reverence to her, *yea* reverence to her !  
 Reverence to her, reverence, *yea* reverence !  
 29 To the goddess who among all created beings  
 Stands firm with the form of Mercy,  
 Reverence to her, *yea* reverence to her !  
 Reverence to her, reverence, *yea* reverence ! †  
 30 To the goddess who among all created beings  
 Stands firm with the form of Contentment,  
 Reverence to her, *yea* reverence to her !  
 Reverence to her, reverence, *yea* reverence !  
 31 To the goddess who among all created beings

\* The Bombay edition inserts here a similar verse, invoking the goddess in the form of Steadfastness (*dhṛiti*).

† After this verse and after verse 30 the Bombay edition inserts two similar verses, invoking the goddess in the form of Good Policy (*nīti*) and Nourishment (*puṣhṭi*) respectively.

- Stands firm with the form of Mother,  
 Reverence to her, *yea* reverence to her!  
 Reverence to her, reverence, *yea* reverence!
- 32 To the goddess who among all created beings  
 Stands firm with the form of Error,  
 Reverence to her, *yea* reverence to her!  
 Reverence to her, reverence, *yea* reverence!
- 33 To her who both governs the organs of sense  
 Of created beings, and *rules* among all  
 Created beings perpetually,—to her  
 The goddess of Pervasiveness reverence, *yea* reverence!
- 34 To her who exists pervading this entire  
 World with the form of Thinking Mind,  
 Reverence to her, *yea* reverence to her!  
 Reverence to her, reverence, *yea* reverence!
- 35 Praised by the gods afore-time because of eagerly-desired  
 protection,  
 And waited upon by the lord of the gods *many* days,  
 May she, the goddess, the origin of brightness, accomplish  
 for us  
 Bright things, *yea* good things, and ward off calamities!
- 36 And she, who is both revered as queen by us gods,  
 Who are tormented now by the arrogant Daityas,  
 And whom we called to mind as we bow our bodies in faith,\*  
 She this very moment destroys † all our calamities!

The ṛishi spoke :

- 37 While the gods were thus engaged in *offering* hymns and  
 other *reverential acts*, Pārvatī came there to bathe in the water  
 38 of the Ganges, O prince. She, the beautiful-browed, said to  
 those gods,—“ Whom do ye, lords, hymn here ? ” And spring-

\* *Bhakti-vinamra-mūrttibhīḥ* must be taken with *asmābhir*, though it is ill-placed as the verse stands. It would be better to read the second half of the verse thus—

*Yā c'a smṛitā bhakti-vinamra-mūrttibhīḥ  
 Sarvāpadas tat-kṣaṇam eva hanti naḥ.*

† *Hantu*, “ may she destroy,” would be better than *hanti*.

ing forth from the treasure-house of her body the auspicious  
 39 goddess spoke—"For me this hymn is uttered by the assembled gods, who have been set at nought by the Daitya  
 40 Śumbha and routed in battle by Niśumbha." Because Ambikā issued forth from the treasure-house\* of Párvatī's body, she is therefore named in song as Kaushikī †  
 41 among all the worlds. Now after she had issued forth, the other also, *even* Párvatī, became Kṛishṇā; she is celebrated as Kálikā; she fixed her abode on Mount Hima-vat.

42 Thereafter C'anda, and Munḍa, the two servants of Śumbha and Niśumbha, saw Ambikā displaying her sublime and most  
 43 captivating form; and both spake out unto Śumbha;—

"What woman then, most surpassingly captivating, dwells  
 44 here, illuminating Mount Hima-vat, O great king? Such sublime beauty was never in sooth seen by anyone anywhere; let it be ascertained if she is any goddess, and let her be taken  
 45 possession of, O lord of the Asuras. A gem among women, surpassingly beautiful in body, illuminating the regions of the sky with her lustre, *there* she is then, O lord of the  
 46 Daityas; deign, Sir, to look at her. Moreover, whatever gems, precious stones, elephants, horses and other *valuable things* indeed exist in the three worlds, O lord, all those display their splendour at this present time in thy house.  
 47 Airāvata, gem among elephants, has been captured from Purandara; and this Párijāta tree and also the horse Ućcāiḥ-  
 48 śravas. Here stands the heavenly chariot yoked with swans in thy court-yard; it has been brought here, the wonderful *chariot* composed of gems, which belonged to Brahmā.  
 49 Here is the Nidhi Mahá-padma, ‡ captured from the Lord of wealth. And the Ocean gave a garland made of filaments  
 50 and of undying lotus flowers. In thy house stands Varuṇa's umbrella, which streams with gold. And here is the choice  
 51 chariot that belonged to Prajá-pati formerly. Thou, O lord,

\* *Kosha*; but *kōśa* is better.

† *Kauśikī* is better. The derivation is of course absurd.

‡ See canto lxviii, verse 12.

- hast carried off Death's power which is named Utkrānti-dā.\*  
 The noose of the Ocean-king is in thy brother's possession.  
 52 And Nisumbha has every kind of gem which is produced  
 in the sea. Agni also gave thee two garments which are  
 53 purified by fire. Thus, O lord of the Daityas, all gems  
 have been captured by thee; why dost thou not seize this  
 auspicious lady, *this* gem of womankind?"

The ṛishi spoke:

- 54 Sumbha, on hearing this speech then from C'anda and  
 Muṇḍa, sent the great Asura Su-grīva as messenger to the  
 55 goddess, *saying*—"Go and address her thus and thus  
 according to my words, and lightly conduct *the matter* so that  
 she may come *to me* of her own good pleasure." He went to  
 56 where the goddess sat on a very bright spot in the mountain  
 and spoke gently with mellifluous voice.

The messenger spoke:

- 57 O goddess! Sumbha, lord of the Daityas, is supreme lord,  
 over the three worlds. A messenger am I, sent by him; to  
 58 thy presence here I have come. Hearken to what he has  
 said, whose command is never resisted among all beings of  
 divine origin, *and* who has vanquished every foe of the  
 59 Daityas—"Mine are all the three worlds; obedient to my  
 authority are the gods, I eat every portion of the sacrifices  
 60 separately. The choicest gems in the three worlds are alto-  
 gether under my power; and so are the finest elephants and  
 the chariot of the lord of the gods, since I have captured  
 61 *them*. That gem among horses, named Ucéaiḥ-śravasa, which  
 came forth at the churning of the sea of milk, was presented  
 to me by the immortals who prostrated themselves *before me*.  
 62 And whatever other created things in the shape of gems  
 existed among the gods, Gandharvas and Nāgas, they *were*  
 presented even to me, O brilliant lady. I esteem thee  
 63 O goddess, to be the gem of womankind in the world; do

\* "Giving an exit," "granting departure."

thou, *who art* such, approach unto me, since I am an enjoyer  
 64 of gems. Either to me, or to my younger brother Nisumbha  
 of wide-reaching prowess, approach thou, O lady of quick  
 65 side-glances, since thou art in truth a gem. Supreme  
 dominion beyond compare thou shalt gain by wedding me.  
 Understand and consider this, and come unto wedlock with  
 me ! ”

The rishi spoke :

66 Thus accosted the goddess, smiling deeply within *herself*,  
*she*, Durgá the adorable *and* good, who supports this world,  
 sang *this reply* then.

The goddess spoke :

67 Truly hast thou spoken ; nought hast thou uttered falsely  
 herein. Sovereign of the three worlds is Sumbha, and like  
 68 unto him is Nisumbha also ! But how can that which has  
 been promised concerning this *myself* be fulfilled falsely ?  
 Hearken, what vow I made formerly by reason of my small  
 69 understanding *at that time*,—‘He who vanquishes me in fight,  
 who forces my pride from me, *and* who is my match in  
 70 strength in the world, he shall be my husband.’ Let Sumbha  
 come here then, or Nisumbha the great Asura ; let him  
 vanquish me—what need of delay here ? and let him lightly  
 take my hand *in marriage* !

The messenger spoke :

71 Proud art thou ! Talk not so before me, O goddess !  
 What male in the three worlds may stand front to front with  
 72 Sumbha and Nisumbha ? All the gods verily stand not face  
 to face with even the other Daityas in battle, O goddess ;  
 how much less *canst* thou *so stand*, a woman single-handed !  
 73 With Sumbha and those other *Daityas*, against whom Indra  
 and all the other gods stood not in battle, how shalt thou,  
 74 a woman, venture face to face ? Do thou, *being* such, to  
 whom I have in sooth delivered my message, go near unto  
 Sumbha and Nisumbha ; *let it not be that* thou shalt go with

thy dignity shattered in that thou wilt be dragged *thither* by thy hair !

The goddess spoke :

- 75     So strong as this is Śumbha ! and so exceedingly heroic is  
       Nisumbha ! What *can* I do, since *there stands* my ill-con-  
 76     sidered promise of long ago ? Go thou thyself ; make known  
       respectfully to the lord of the Asuras all this that I have said  
       to thee, and let him do whatever is fitting.

---

### CANTO LXXXVI.

---

*The Devī-māhātmya :*

*The slaying of Sumbha and Nisumbha's general Dhūmra-loč'ana.*

*Sumbha despatched his general Dhūmra-loč'ana and an army to capture the goddess and she destroyed them.—He then despatched C'anda and Munḍa with another army.*

The ṛishi spoke :

- 1     The messenger, on hearing this speech from the goddess,  
       was filled with indignation, and approaching related it fully  
 2     to the Daitya king. The Asura monarch then, after hearing  
       that report from his messenger, was wroth and commanded  
       Dhūmra-loč'ana, a chieftain of the Daityas ;—  
 3     “ Ho ! Dhūmra-loč'ana, haste thee together with thy army ;  
       fetch by force that shrew, *who will be* unnerved when dragged  
 4     along by her hair. Or if any man besides stands up to offer  
       her deliverance, let him be slain, be he an Immortal, a Yaksha  
       or a Gandharva forsooth.”

The ṛishi spoke :

- 5     Thereupon at his command the Daitya Dhūmra-loč'ana went  
 6     forthwith quickly, accompanied by sixty thousand Asuras. On  
       seeing the goddess stationed on the snowy mountain, he cried  
       aloud to her there—“ Come forward to the presence of Śumbha  
 7     and Nisumbha ; if thou wilt not, lady, approach my lord with



affection now, I *will* here take thee by force, *who will be un-*  
nerved since thou shalt be dragged along by thy hair!"

The goddess spoke :

- 8 Sent by the king of the Daityas, mighty *thyself*, and accom-  
panied by an army, thou dost thus take me by force—then  
what *can* I do unto thee ?

The fishi spoke :

- 9 At this reply the Asura Dhúmra-ločana rushed towards her.  
10 Then Ambiká with a mere roar reduced him to ashes. And  
the great army of Asuras enraged poured on Ambiká a shower  
11 both of sharp arrows and of javelins and axes. The lion that  
carried\* the goddess, shaking his mane in anger and uttering a  
12 most terrific roar, fell on the army of Asuras ; he slaughtered  
some Asuras with a blow from his fore-paw, and others  
with his mouth. *and* others, very great Asuras, by striking  
13 them with his hind foot.† The lion with his claws tore out  
the entrails of some, and struck their heads off with a cuff-like  
14 blow. And he severed arms and heads from others, and  
shaking his mane drank the blood *that flowed* from the entrails‡  
15 of others. In a moment all that army was brought to destruc-  
tion by the high-spirited lion, who bore the goddess *and* who  
was enraged exceedingly.  
16 When he heard that that Asura Dhúmra-ločana was slain  
by the goddess, and all his army besides was destroyed by the  
17 goddess' lion, Sumbha, the lord of the Daityas, fell into a  
rage and his lip quivered greatly, and he commanded the two  
18 mighty Asuras C'anda and Muṇḍa,—“Ho, C'anda ! Ho, Muṇḍa !  
take with you a multitude of troops and go there ; and going  
19 there bring her here speedily, dragging her by her hair or  
binding her ; if ye have a doubt of that, then let her be slain  
outright in fight by all the Asuras brandishing all their  
20 weapons. When that shrew is slain and her lion stricken down,  
seize her, Ambiká, bind her and bring her quickly !”

\* *Tu váhanaḥ* in the Bombay edition is better than *sva-váhanaḥ*.

† *C'araṇena* of the Bombay edition is better than *c'ádhareṇa*.

‡ For *kaushádhá* read *koshádhá*.

## CANTO LXXXVII.

*The Devī-māhātmya.**The slaying of C'aṇḍa and Muṇḍa.*

*The goddess Kálí destroyed the second Asura army and also the generals C'aṇḍa and Muṇḍa—C'aṇḍiká gave Kálí as a reward the name C'ámuṇḍá.*

The rishi spoke :

- 1      Then at his command the Daityas, led by C'aṇḍa and
- 2      Muṇḍa, and arrayed in the four-fold order of an army, march-
- 3      ed with weapons uplifted. Soon they saw the goddess, slightly
- 4      smiling, seated upon the lion, on a huge golden peak of the
- 5      majestic mountain. On seeing her some of them made a
- 6      strenuous effort to capture her, and others approached her
- 7      holding their bows bent and their swords drawn.
- 8      Thereat Ambiká uttered her wrath aloud against those foes,
- 9      and her countenance then grew dark as ink in her wrath. Out
- 10     from the surface of her forehead, which was rugged with
- 11     frowns, issued suddenly Kálí of the terrible countenance,
- 12     armed with a sword and noose, bearing a many-coloured
- 13     skull-topped staff,\* decorated with a garland of skulls, clad in
- 14     a tiger's skin, very appalling because of her emaciated flesh,
- 15     exceedingly wide of mouth, lolling out her tongue terribly,
- 16     having deep-sunk reddish eyes, and filling the regions of the
- 17     sky with her roars. She fell upon the great Asuras impetu-
- 18     ously, dealing slaughter among the host, and devoured that army
- 19     of the gods' foes there. Taking up the elephants with one
- 20     hand she flung them into her mouth, together with their rear-
- 21     men and drivers and their warrior-riders and bells. Flinging
- 22     likewise warrior with his horses, and chariot with its driver
- 23     into her mouth, she ground them most frightfully with her
- 24     teeth. She seized one by the hair, and another by the neck ;
- 25     and she kicked another with her foot, and crushed another
- 26     against her breast. And she seized with her mouth the

\* For *khaffáṅga* read *khafúṅga* here and again in verse 14.

weapons and the great arms which those Asuras abandoned,  
 13 and crunched them up with her teeth in her fury. She  
 crushed all that host of mighty and high-spirited Asuras;  
 14 and devoured some and battered others; some were slain with  
 her sword, some were struck with her skull-topped staff, and  
*other* Asuras met their death being wounded with the edge of  
 her teeth.

15 Seeing all that host of Asuras laid low in a moment,  
 C'aṇḍa rushed against her, Kālī, who was exceedingly appal-  
 16 ling. Muṇḍa the great Asura covered her, the terrible-eyed  
*goddess*, with very terrible showers of arrows and with dis-  
 17 cuses hurled in thousands. Those discuses seemed to be  
 penetrating her countenance in multitudes, like as very many  
 solar orbs *might penetrate* the body of a thunder-cloud.  
 18 Thereat Kālī, who was roaring frightfully, laughed terribly  
 with excessive fury, showing the gleam of her unsightly teeth  
 19 within her dreadful mouth. And the goddess, mounting upon  
 her great lion, rushed at C'aṇḍa, and seizing him by his hair  
 20 struck off his head with her sword. And Muṇḍa also rushed  
 at her when he saw C'aṇḍa laid low; him also she felled to the  
 21 ground, stricken with her scymitar in her fury. Then the army,  
 so much as escaped unslain, seeing C'aṇḍa laid low and most  
 valiant Muṇḍa also, seized with panic fled in all directions.

22 And Kālī, holding C'aṇḍa's head and Muṇḍa also, approached  
 C'aṇḍikā and said, her voice mingled with passionate loud  
 23 laughter—"Here I have brought thee C'aṇḍa and Muṇḍa, two  
 great beasts; thou thyself shalt slay Śumbha and Niśumbha  
 in the battle-sacrifice."

The ṛishi spoke :

24 Thereon, seeing those two great Asuras C'aṇḍa and Muṇḍa  
 brought to her, auspicious C'aṇḍikā spoke to Kālī *this* witty  
 25 speech,\* "Because thou hast seized both C'aṇḍa and Muṇḍa  
 and brought *them*, thou, O goddess, shalt therefore be famed  
 in the world by the name C'ámuṇḍá!"

\* *Lalitām vac'aḥ; a ben met.*

CANTO LXXXVIII.

*The Devī-māhātmya.*

*The slaying of Rakta-vīja.*

*Sumbha sent forth all his armies against C'andikā—To help her the Energies (Saktis) of the gods took bodily shape—C'andikā despatched Siva to offer terms of peace to Sumbha, but the Asura hosts attacked her and the battle began—C'andikā's fight with the great Asura Rakta-vīja is described—He was killed.*

The ṛishi spoke :

- 1 After both the Daitya C'anda was slain and Muṇḍa was laid low, and many soldiers were destroyed, the lord of the Asuras,
- 2 majestic Sumbha, with mind overcome by wrath, gave command then to array all the Daitya hosts,—“ Now let the
- 3 eighty-six Daityas, upraising their weapons, *march forth* with all their forces; let the eighty-four Kambús\* march forth
- 4 surrounded by their own forces; let the fifty Asura families who excel in valour *go forth*; let the hundred families of
- 5 Dhaumras† go forth at my command. Let the Kálakas,‡ the Daurhṛitas,§ the Mauryas,|| and the Kálakeyas,¶—let these Asuras, hastening at my command, march forth ready for battle.”
- 6 After issuing these commands Sumbha, the lord of the Asuras, who ruled with fear, went forth, attended by many

\* *Kambú* means a thief or plunderer. The commentary says *Kambús* are a class of Daityas.

† “ The descendants of Dhúmra.” *Dhúmras* is the reading in the Bombay edition. They are a class of Daityas.

‡ A group of Dánavas.

§ The Bombay edition reads *Daurhṛidas*, “ the descendants of Durhṛid.”

|| “ The descendants of Mura.” *Mura* or *Muru* is referred to generally in connexion with Prágjyotiṣa; e.g., *Mahá-Bhārata*, *Sabha-P.*, xiii. 578; *Vana-P.*, xii. 488; and *Udyoga-P.*, xlvii. 1887-92: *Hari-V.*, cxii. 6791-6801.

¶ A group of Dánavas. They are mentioned in the *Mahá-Bhārata*, *Sabha-P.*, iv. 118; *Udyoga-P.*, clvii. 5879: and *Vana-P.*, c. 8691.

- 7 thousands of great soldiers. C'aṇḍiká, seeing that most  
 8 terrible army at hand, filled the space between the earth and  
 the firmament with the twanging of her bow-string. Thereon  
 her lion roared exceedingly loud, O king; and Ambiká  
 9 augmented\* those roars with the clanging of her bell. Káli,  
 filling the regions of the sky with the noise from her bow-  
 string, from her lion and from her bell, and expanding her  
 mouth wide with her terrific roars, had the predominance.†  
 10 On hearing that roar which filled the four regions of the sky,  
 the Daitya armies enraged‡ surrounded the goddess' lion and  
 Káli.
- 11 At this moment, O king, in order to destroy the gods' foes,  
 and for the well-being of the lion-like Immortals, there issued  
 12 forth endowed with excessive vigour and strength the  
 Energies§ from the bodies of Brahmá, Śiva, Guha and Viṣṇu  
 and of Indra also, and went in the forms of those *gods* to  
 13 C'aṇḍiká. Whatever was the form of each god, and what-  
 ever his ornaments and vehicle, in that very *appearance* his  
 14 Energy advanced to fight with the Asuras. In the front of a  
 heavenly car drawn by swans advanced Brahmá's Energy, bear-  
 ing a rosary of seeds and an earthen water-pot; she is called  
 15 Brahmáṇí. Maheśvara's Energy, seated on a bull, grasping a  
 fine trident, and wearing a girdle of large snakes, arrived,  
 16 adorned with a digit of the moon. And Kumára's Energy,  
 Ambiká, with spear in hand and riding on a choice peacock,  
 17 advanced in Guha's shape to attack the Daityas. Likewise  
 Viṣṇu's Energy, seated upon Garuḍa, advanced with conch,  
 18 discus, club, bow and scymitar in hand. The Energy of Hari,  
 who assumes the peerless form of a sacrificial boar, she also

\* For *c'opavṛimhayat* read *c'ápy avṛimhayat* as in the Bombay edition.

† *Jigye*; *ji* is here used by itself in the *Ātmane-pada*. The commentary gives "vanquished the enemies" as an alternative translation. It mentions *jajñe* as an alternative reading, which means then "expanded her mouth wide with her terrific roars."

‡ For *sa-roshair* the Bombay edition reads *śaraughair* "with multitudes of arrows."

§ *Suktayaḥ*.

19 advanced assuming a hog-like form. Nṛi-simha's *Energy*  
 assuming a body like Nṛi-simha's arrived there, *adorned* with  
 a cluster of constellations hurled down by the tossing of his  
 20 mane. Likewise Indra's *Energy*, with thunder-bolt in hand,  
 seated upon the lord of elephants and having a thousand eyes,  
 21 arrived; as is Śakra, such indeed was she. Then those  
 Energies of the gods surrounded Śiva. He said to C'aṇḍiká,  
 "Let the Asuras be slain forthwith through my good-will."

22 Thereupon from the goddess' body there came forth  
 C'aṇḍiká's Energy, most terrific, exceedingly fierce, howling  
 23 like a hundred jackals. And she the unconquered said to  
 Śiva, who was smoke-coloured and had matted locks, "Be  
 thou, my lord, a messenger to the presence of Śumbha and  
 24 Niśumbha. Say unto the two overweening Dánavas, Śumbha  
 and Niśumbha, and to whatever other Dánavas are assembled  
 25 there to do battle—'Let Indra obtain the three worlds,  
 let the gods be the enjoyers of the oblations; go ye to Pátála  
 26 if ye wish to live. Yet if through pride in your strength ye  
 are longing for battle, come ye on then! let my jackals be  
 27 glutted with your flesh.'" Because the goddess appointed  
 Śiva himself to be ambassador,\* she has hence attained fame  
 as Śiva-dúti in this world.

28 Those great Asuras however, on hearing the goddess' speech  
 fully announced, were filled with indignation and went where†  
 29 Kátyáyani‡ stood. Then, at the very first, the arrogant and  
 indignant foes of the Immortals in front poured on the god-  
 30 dess showers of arrows, javelins and spears. And gracefully  
 she clove those arrows, darts, discuses and axes, which were  
 hurled,§ with large arrows shot from her resounding bow.||  
 31 And in front of her stalked Kálí then, tearing the foes asunder

\* For *daityena* read *dútyena* as in the Bombay edition, or perhaps *daityena*  
 'with the rank of ambassador.'

† *Yatra* as in the Bombay edition is better than *yataḥ*.

‡ A name of C'aṇḍiká.

§ For *pratíhán* read *prahítán*.

|| *Dhmdta-dhanur-muktair*; the commentary explains *dhmdta* as *maurvá-*  
*śam-káreṣa śabdítam*, "resonant with the twanging of the bow string."

with the onset of her darts and crushing them with her skull-topped staff.\* And Brahmáṇi caused the foes to lose their courage by casting water *on them* from her earthen pot, and weakened their vigour, by whatever way she ran. Maheśwara's *Energy* slew Daityas with her trident, and Vishṇu's *Energy* with her discus, and Kumára's *Energy*, very wrathful, slew them with her javelin. Torn to pieces by the down-rush of the thunder-bolt *hurled* by Indra's *Energy*, Daityas and Dánavas fell on the earth in hundreds, pouring out streams of blood. Shattered by the hog-embodied *Energy* with blows from her snout, wounded in their breasts by the points of her tushes, and torn by her discus, *demons* fell down. And Nṛsimha's *Energy* roamed about in the battle, devouring other great Asuras who were torn by her claws, as she filled the intermediate region of the sky with her roaring.† Asuras, demoralized by Śiva-dúti with her violent loud laughs, fell down on the earth; she then devoured those fallen ones. Seeing the enraged band of Mothers‡ crushing the great Asuras thus by various means, the troops of the gods' foes perished.

Rakta-vija, a great Asura, seeing the Daityas, who were hard-pressed by the band of Mothers, intent on fleeing, strode forward to fight in wrath. When from his body there falls to the ground a drop of blood, at that moment starts up from the earth an Asura of his stature. He, a great Asura, with club in hand fought with Indra's *Energy*, and Indra's *Energy* then struck Rakta-vija with her thunder-bolt; blood flowed quickly from him when wounded by the thunder-bolt. Thereupon stood up together *fresh* combatants, like him in body, like him in valour; for as many blood-drops fell from his body, so many men came into being, like him in courage, strength and valour. And those men also who sprang from his blood fought there with the Mothers *in a combat*, dreadful because of the sweep of their very sharp weapons. And again

\* For *khaṭṭāṅga* read *khaṭvāṅga*.

† *Nāḍāpūrṇa-dig-antard*. The reading of the Calcutta edition *nāḍāpūrṇa-dig-ambard* is hardly satisfactory.

‡ *Mātri-gaṇa*; i.e., the *Energies*.

when his head was wounded by the fall of her thunder-bolt, his blood poured forth; therefrom were born men by thousands. And Vishṇu's *Energy* struck at this foe with her discus in the battle. Indrā's *Energy* beat that lord of the Asuras with her club. The world was filled by the thousands of great Asuras, who were his equals, and who sprang from the blood that flowed from him when cloven by the discus of Vishṇu's *Energy*. Kumāra's *Energy* struck the great Asura Rakta-vīja with her spear, and Varāha's *Energy* also struck him with her sword, and Mahēśvara's *Energy* with her trident. And the Daitya Rakta-vīja, that great Asura, filled full of wrath, struck every one of the Mothers in turn with his club. By the stream of blood, which fell on the earth from him when he received many wounds from the spears, darts and other weapons, Asuras came verily\* into being in hundreds. And those Asuras who sprang from that Asura's blood pervaded the whole world; thereat the gods fell into the utmost terror. Seeing the gods dejected, C'āṇḍika spoke with haste; she said to Kālī, "O C'āmupḍā! stretch out thy mouth wide; with this mouth do thou quickly take in the great Asuras, which are the drops of blood, that have come into being out of Rakta-vīja† at the descent of my weapon on him. Roam about in the battle, devouring the great Asuras who sprang from him; so shall this Daitya with his blood ebbing away meet destruction. These fierce demons are being devoured by thee and at the same time no others will be produced."

Having enjoined her thus, the goddess next smote him with her dart. Kālī swallowed Rakta-vīja's blood with her mouth. Then he struck C'āṇḍikā with his club there; and the blow of his club caused her no pain, even the slightest, but from his stricken body blood flowed copiously, and from whatever direction it came, C'āmupḍā takes it then with her mouth. The great Asuras, who sprang up from the flow of blood in her mouth, C'āmupḍā both devoured them and quaffed his blood. The goddess smote Rakta-vīja with her dart, her thunder-bolt,

\* For *yodhai* read *yo vai* as in the Bombay edition.

† For *Rakta-vindoḥ* read *Rakta-vījāt*, as in the Bombay edition.



- 60 arrows, swords and spears, when C'ámuṇḍá drank up his blood. Stricken with *that* multitude of weapons, he fell on the earth's  
 61 surface, and the great Asura Rakta-víja became blood-less, O king. Thereat the thirty gods gained joy unparalleled, O king. The band of Mothers which sprang from them broke into a dance, being intoxicated with blood.

---

CANTO LXXXIX.

---

*The Devī-máhátmya.*

*The slaying of Nisumbha.*

*Nisumbha attacked the goddess C'aṇḍiká and was worsted in single combat.—Sumbha came to his help, but the goddess foiled him, and slew Nisumbha—Numbers of the Asuras were destroyed.*

The king spoke :

- 1 Wonderful is this that thou, Sir, hast related to me,  
 the majesty of the goddess' exploits in connexion with  
 2 the slaying of Rakta-víja ; and I wish to hear further what  
 deed did Sumbha do after Rakta-víja was killed, and *what*  
 the very irascible Nisumbha *did*.

The rishi spoke :

- 3 After Rakta-víja was slain and other *demons* were killed  
 in the fight, the Asura Sumbha gave way to unbounded wrath,  
 4 and Nisumbha also. Pouring out his indignation at behold-  
 ing his great army being slaughtered, Nisumbha then rushed  
 5 forward with the flower of the Asura army. In front of him  
 and behind and on both sides great Asuras, biting their lips  
 6 and enraged, advanced to slay the goddess. Sumbha also went  
 forward, mighty in valour, surrounded with his own troops,  
 to slay C'aṇḍiká in his rage, after engaging in battle with  
 7 the Mothers. Then occurred a desperate combat between  
 the goddess and Sumbha and Nisumbha, who both, like two

thunder-clouds, rained a most tempestuous shower of arrows  
 8 on her. C'andiká with multitudes of arrows quickly split  
 the arrows shot by them, and smote the two Asura lords on  
 their limbs with her numerous weapons.

9 Niśumbha grasping a sharp scymitar and glittering shield  
 struck the lion, the noble *beast* that bore the goddess, on the  
 10 head. When her animal was struck, the *goddess* quickly  
 clove Niśumbha's superb sword with a horse-shoe-shaped  
 arrow, and also his shield on which eight moons were pour-  
 11 trayed. When his shield was cloven and his sword too, the  
 Asura hurled his spear; and that his *missile* also, as it came  
 12 towards her, she split in two with her discus. Then Niśum-  
 bha, the Dánava, puffed up with wrath, seized a dart; and  
 that also, when it came, the goddess shattered with a blow of  
 13 her fist. And then aiming\* his club he flung it against  
 C'andiká, yet that was shivered by the goddess' trident and  
 14 became ashes. As that lordly Daitya then advanced with  
 battle-axe in hand, the goddess struck him with a multi-  
 tude of arrows and laid him low on the ground.

15 When his brother Niśumbha, who was terrible in prowess,  
 fell to the ground, *Sumbha* in utmost fury strode forward to  
 16 slay Ambiká. And he, standing in his chariot, appeared to  
 fill the entire sky with his eight arms, which were *lifted* far  
 on high grasping his superb weapons.

17 Beholding him approaching, the goddess sounded her  
 conch, and made her bow also give forth from its string a  
 18 note which was exceedingly hard to endure. And she filled  
 all regions with the clanging of her bell, which caused  
 19 the vigour of all the Daitya hosts to die away. Then her  
 lion filled the heaven, the earth and the ten regions of the  
 sky with loud roars, which checked the copious flow of  
 20 the exudation from the *demons'* rutting elephants. Kálí  
 springing upward then struck the heaven and the earth with  
 21 both her hands; the boom thereof drowned those previous  
 sounds. Śiva-dúti† uttered a loud inauspicious laugh. At

\* *Āvidhya*. The Bombay edition reads *ádāya*, "taking."

† *I. e.*, C'andiká; see canto lxxviii, verse 27.

those sounds the Asuras trembled; \* Sumbha gave way  
 22 to utmost rage. When Ambiká cried out "Stand, O evil-  
 souled ! stand !" the gods who had taken their stations in the  
 air then called *to her*, " Be thou victorious ! "

23 The spear flaming most terribly, which Sumbha approaching  
 hurled, that, gleaming like a mass of fire as it came along, was  
 24 driven aside by a great fire-brand. The vault between the  
 three worlds reverberated with Sumbha's lion-like roaring, *but*  
 the dreadful sound of the slaughter *among his soldiers* sur-  
 25 passed that, O king. The goddess split the arrows shot by  
 Sumbha, and Sumbha the arrows that she discharged, *each*  
 with *her and his* sharp arrows in hundreds and thousands.  
 26 C'aṇḍiká enraged thereat smote him with a dart. Wounded  
 therewith he fell in a faint to the ground.

27 Thereupon Nisumbha, regaining consciousness, seized his bow  
 again and struck the goddess, *and* Kálí and the lion with  
 28 arrows. And the Dánava lord, *that* son of Diti, putting forth  
 a myriad arms, again covered C'aṇḍiká with a myriad discuses. †  
 29 The goddess then enraged, *she*, Durgá who destroys the afflic-  
 tions of adversity, split those discuses and those arrows with  
 30 her own arrows. Then Nisumbha seizing his club rushed  
 impetuously at C'aṇḍiká to slay her outright, with the Daitya  
 31 host surrounding him. As he was just falling upon *her*,  
 C'aṇḍiká swiftly clove his club with her sharp-edged scymi-  
 32 tar. And he took hold of a dart. C'aṇḍiká with a dart  
 hurled swiftly pierced Nisumbha, the afflioter of the Immor-  
 tals, in the heart, as he approached with dart in hand.  
 33 When he was pierced by the dart, out of his heart issued  
 another man of great strength and great valour, exclaiming  
 34 " Stand ! " When he stepped forth, the goddess laughing aloud  
 then struck off his head with her scymitar ; thereupon he  
 fell to the ground.

35 The lion then devoured those Asuras whose necks he had  
 crushed with his savage teeth, and Kálí and Siva-dúti de-  
 36 voured the others. Some great Asuras perished, being

\* For *Asurdátreṣhu* read *Asurás tresuḥ* as in the Bombay edition.

† For *c'akráyudhena* read *c'akráyutena* as in the Bombay edition.

- pierced through by the spear *held* by Kumára's *Energy*; others were driven back by the water purified by the spell  
 37 *uttered* by Brahmá's *Energy*; and others fell, pierced by the trident *wielded* by Siva's *Energy*; some were pounded to dust on the ground by blows from the snout of Varáha's  
 38 *Energy*; some Dánavas were out to pieces by the discus *hurled* by Vishṇu's *Energy*; and others again by the thunder-bolt discharged from the fingers of Indra's *Energy*. Some  
 39 Asuras perished outright, some perished by reason of the great battle, and others were devoured by Káli, Siva-dúti and the lion.

---

CANTO XC.

---

*The Deví-máhátmya.*

*The slaying of Šumbha.*

*Ambiká absorbed all the other goddesses, and fighting with Šumbha in single combat, killed him.—The universe was then filled with joy.*

The řishi spoke :

- 1 Seeing his brother Nišumbha slain, who was dear to him as his life, and his army being slaughtered, Šumbha in
- 2 wrath spoke thus—"O Durgá, who art tainted with the arrogance of strength, bring not thy pride *here*, thou who, trusting in the strength of the other *goddesses*, dost fight in exceeding haughtiness!"

The goddess spoke :

- 3 Alone verily am I in the world here; what other *goddess* is there besides me? See, vile one! that these *goddesses*, who have their divine power from me, are entering into me indeed.
- 4 Then all those goddesses, Brahmání and the others, became absorbed into the goddess' breasts; Ambiká then remained alone indeed.

The goddess spoke :

- 5      Whereas I existed\* with my divine power in many forms  
here—that has been drawn in by me, truly alone I stand  
now. Be thou steadfast in combat !

The fishi spoke :

- 6      Thereupon commenced a battle between them both, the  
goddess and Sumbha, while all the gods and the Asuras  
7 looked on—a battle without quarter. With showers of arrows,  
with sharp weapons and also with pitiless missiles both  
engaged anew in a combat which set all the world in fear.  
8 And the lord of the Daityas broke the heavenly missiles,  
which Ambiká discharged in hundreds, with weapons that  
9 parried them. And the supreme goddess in merest play  
broke the heavenly missiles that he discharged, with fierce  
10 shouts, ejaculations and other sounds. Then the Asura  
covered the goddess with hundreds of arrows, and the god-  
dess enraged thereat split his bow also with her arrows.  
11 And when his bow was split the lord of the Daityas took  
up his spear. The goddess split it, as he held it in his  
12 hand, with a discus. Next the supreme monarch of the  
Daityas, seizing his scymitar and sun-like shield, on which  
a hundred moons were portrayed, rushed at the goddess†  
13 at that moment. Just as he was falling upon her, C'andiká  
hastily split his scymitar with sharp arrows shot from her  
bow, and his shield also which was spotless as the sun's rays.  
14 With his steeds wounded, with his bow split, without a  
charioteer, the Daitya then‡ grasped his terrible mace, being  
15 ready to slay Ambiká. As he was falling upon her, she clove  
his mace with sharp arrows ; nevertheless raising his fist  
16 he rushed swiftly at her. The lordly Daitya brought his  
fist down on the goddess' heart, and the goddess also smote  
17 him on his breast with her palm. Wounded by the blow of

\* For *yadā sthita* read *yad āsthita* as in the Bombay edition.

† For *devī* read *devīm*. The Bombay edition reads *tañ hantum*.

‡ For *sadā* read *tadā*.

- her palm the Daitya king fell suddenly on the earth; and  
 18 again indeed he rose up, and springing upward he seized  
 the goddess and mounted on high into the sky. There also  
 19 C'añḍiká, being without any support, fought with him. The  
 Daitya and C'añḍiká then fought at first with each other in  
 the sky in a close combat, which wrought dismay among the  
 20 Siddhas and munis; after carrying on the close combat for a  
 very long time with him, Ambiká lifted him up then and  
 21 whirled him around *and* flung him on the earth. When flung  
*thus* he touched the earth, he raised his fist hastily and  
 rushed, evil of soul *as he was*, with the wish to kill C'añḍiká.  
 22 Seeing him, the lord of all the Daitya folk, approaching,  
 the goddess then pierced him in the breast with a dart and  
 23 felled him down on the earth. Shattered by the point  
 of the goddess' dart he fell lifeless on the ground, shaking  
 the whole earth and its seas, islands and mountains.  
 24 When that evil-souled *demon* was slain, the universe  
 became placid, the earth regained perfect well-being, and the  
 25 sky grew pure. Portent-clouds, which were full of flame  
 before, became tranquil, and the rivers kept within their  
 26 channels, when he was stricken down there. All the bands  
 of gods then grew exceedingly joyful in mind, when he was  
 27 slain; the Gandharvas sang out sweetly, and others of  
*them* sounded their instruments, and the bevvies of Apsarases  
 danced; and favourable breezes blew, very brilliant grew the  
 sun, and the tranquil sacred fires blazed *freely*, and tranquil  
 became the *strange* sounds that had occurred in the regions  
 of the sky.

---

## CANTO XCI.

---

### *The Devī-māhātmya.*

#### *The Eulogy of the Goddess.*

*The gods offered a hymn of praise to the goddess.—She granted them  
 the boon that she will always become incarnate and deliver the  
 world whenever it is oppressed by demons.*

The *īshi* spoke :

- 1 When the great lord of the Asuras was slain there by the goddess, Indra and the other gods led by Agni offered praise to her, *Kātyāyanī*, because they had gained their desire;\* and their faces shone forth, and their hopes became manifest.†
- 2 “O goddess, who removest the sufferings of thy suppliants, be gracious !  
Be gracious, O mother of the whole world !  
Be gracious, O queen of the universe ! safeguard the universe !  
Thou, O goddess, art queen of *all* that is moveable and immovable !
- 3 Thou alone hast become the support of the world,  
Because thou dost subsist in the form of the earth !  
By thee, who existest in the form of water, all  
This *universe* is filled, O thou inviolable in thy valour !
- 4 Thou art Vishṇu's energy, boundless in thy valour ;  
Thou art the germ of the universe, *thou art* Illusion sublime !  
All this *world* has been bewitched, O goddess ;  
Thou indeed when attained‡ art the cause of final emancipation from existence on the earth !
- 5 All sciences are portions of thee, O goddess ;  
*So are* all females without exception in the worlds§ !  
By thee alone, as mother, this world has been filled !  
What praise *can there be* for thee ? *Thou art* beyond praise,  
the sublimest expression|| !

\* For *īshā-lambhād* read *īshā-lābhād* with the Bombay edition.

† The Bombay edition reads *vikāśi-vaktrābja-vikāśitāśāḥ*, which means much the same.

‡ *Prapannā* ; but *prasannā*, “well-pleased,” in the Bombay edition is better.

§ The Bombay edition reads—

*striyaḥ samastāḥ sakalaṁ jagac' e'a.*

“*So are* all females, and so is the whole world.”

|| *Parokṣā* ; or “the expression of the sublime.”

- 6 When *as being* the goddess, who constitutes every created thing,  
And who bestows Svarga and final emancipation from existence,  
Thou are praised—for thy praise again  
What sublime words can be sufficient ?
- 7 O thou, who abidest under the form of Intelligence  
In the heart of every living creature ;  
O goddess, who bestowest Svarga and final emancipation from existence,  
O Náráyāṇí, reverence be to thee !
- 8 Thou in the form of minutes, moments and other *portions of time*,  
Dost bring results to pass ;  
O thou who art mighty in the death of the universe,  
O Náráyāṇí, reverence be to thee !
- 9 O thou who art beneficent with every happiness,  
O *lady* auspicious, who accomplishest every petition,  
O giver of refuge, O Tryambaká, O brilliant one,  
O Náráyāṇí, reverence be to thee !
- 10 O eternal goddess, who constitutest the energy  
Of creation, permanence and destruction,  
O *thou* abode of good qualities, who consistest of good qualities,  
O Náráyāṇí, reverence be to thee ! \*
- 11 O thou who ridest in a heavenly car yoked with swans,  
Who assumest the form of Brahmání,†  
O goddess who sprinklest kuśa-grass-steeped water,‡  
O Náráyāṇí, reverence be to thee !
- 12 O thou who holdest a trident, the moon and a serpent,

\* The Bombay edition inserts a verse here—

O thou who art the Supreme Way for the salvation  
Of those that seek refuge, of the woe-begone and of the afflicted,  
O goddess who takest suffering away from every one,  
O Náráyāṇí, reverence be to thee !

† The Energy (*śakti*, *śm.*) of Brahmá. The swan is his vehicle.

‡ The Commentary translates *kṣhariká* as *kṣheṣṣaṇa-káriṇī* or *ś-śektrī*.



- Who art borne on a huge bull,  
 With the natural character of Máheśvarí,\*  
 O Náráyaṇi, reverence be to thee !
- 13 O thou who art attended by the peacock and cock,  
 Who bearest a great spear, O sinless one ;  
 O thou who takest thy station in Kaumárí's† form,  
 O Náráyaṇi, reverence be to thee !
- 14 O thou who holdest as thy finest weapons  
 A conch, discus, club, and the bow Śárṅga,  
 Be gracious, O thou who hast Vaishṇaví's‡ form ;  
 O Náráyaṇi, reverence be to thee !
- 15 O thou who graspest a huge formidable discus,  
 Who hast uplifted the earth with thy tushes,  
 O auspicious one, who hast a hog-like form,§  
 O Náráyaṇi, reverence be to thee !
- 16 O thou who in the fierce man-lion|| form  
 Didst put forth thy efforts to slay the Daityas,  
 O thou who art connected¶ with the deliverance of the  
 three worlds,  
 O Náráyaṇi, reverence be to thee !
- 17 O thou who hast a diadem and a great thunderbolt,  
 Who art dazzling with a thousand eyes,  
 And who tookest away Vṛitra's life-breath, O Aindrí,\*\*  
 O Náráyaṇi, reverence be to thee !
- 18 O thou who with the nature of Śiva-dútí††

\* The Energy (*śakti*) of Maheśvara or Śiva. The trident, moon and serpent are his emblems and ornaments, and the bull is his vehicle.

† The Energy of Kumára or Kárttikeya. The peacock is his vehicle, and the cock is an attendant of his parents, Śiva and Párvatí.

‡ The Energy of Viṣṇu. The conch, discus, club and bow are his weapons.

§ The Energy of Viṣṇu in his incarnation as a boar.

|| The Energy of Viṣṇu in his incarnation as a lion-headed man.

¶ Another reading is *Trailokya-trána-mahite*, "O thou who art honoured with the deliverance of the three worlds."

\*\* The Energy (*śakti*) of Indra, the slayer of Vṛitra. The diadem is his ornament, the thunder-bolt his weapon, and he has a thousand eyes.

†† See canto lxxxvii, verse 25.

- Slewest the mighty hosts of the Daityas,  
 O thou of terrible form, of loud shrieks,  
 O Náráyaṇí, reverence be to thee !
- 19 O thou who hast a face formidable with tushes,  
 Who art decorated with a garland of heads,  
 O C'ámuṇḍá, who grindest shaven heads,  
 O Náráyaṇí, reverence be to thee !
- 20 O Lakshmí, Modesty, Wide-Knowledge !  
 O Faith, Nourishment, Svadhá, Immoveable !  
 O Great-Night, Great-Illusion !\*
- O Náráyaṇí, reverence be to thee !
- 21 O Mental-Vígour, Sarasvatí, Choice One !  
 O Welfare, Wife of Babhru,† Dark One !  
 O Self-controlled Queen, be thou gracious !  
 O Náráyaṇí, reverence be to thee !‡
- 22 O thou who hast the nature of all, Queen of all !  
 O thou who possessest the might of all !  
 From terrors save us, O goddess !  
 O goddess Durgá, reverence be to thee !
- 23 Kindly is this thy countenance,  
 Which is adorned with three eyes ;  
 May it guard us from all created things !  
 O Kátyáyaṇí, reverence be to thee !
- 24 Formidable with flames, exceedingly sharp,  
 Destroying the Asuras without quarter,  
 May thy trident guard us from fear !  
 O Bhadra-káli, reverence be to thee !
- 25 Thy bell, that fills the world with its ringing  
 And destroys the glories of the Daityas,  
 May thy bell guard us, O goddess,

\* The Calcutta edition reads " Wide-knowledge " again here.

† *I.e.*, Siva.

‡ The Bombay edition inserts a verse here—

O thou, the limit of whose hands and feet is everywhere,  
 Whose eyes and head and mouth are everywhere,  
 Whose ears and nose are everywhere ;  
 O Náráyaṇí, reverence be to thee !

- Even us like children from sins !
- 26 Besmirched with the blood and fat of the Asuras  
As with mire, gleaming with rays,  
May thy scymitar be for our welfare !  
O C'aṇḍikā, to thee we bow !
- 27 Thou destroyest all sicknesses, when gratified ;  
But when wrathful *destroyest* all longed-for desires.  
No calamity *befalls* men who have sought unto thee !  
They who have sought unto thee become verily a refuge  
*themselves !*
- 28 This slaughter that thou hast now wrought  
On the great Asuras who hate righteousness, O goddess ,  
By multiplying thy body in many forms,—  
O Ambikā, what other *goddess* achieves that ?
- 29 In the sciences, in the scriptures, which need the lamp of  
discrimination,  
And in the ancient sayings, who but thou  
Within the pit of selfishness, wherein is exceeding great  
darkness,  
Causes this universe to whirl about most grievously ?
- 30 Wherever  *dwell* Rākshasas and virulently-poisonous Nāgas,  
Wherever foes *exist*, wherever the powers of the Dasyus,  
And where flaming fire *appears* amid the ocean,  
There abiding thou dost safeguard the universe !
- 31 O queen of the universe, thou safeguardest the universe !  
Thou hast the nature of the universe, for thou upholdest  
the universe.  
*Thou art* the lady worthy to be praised by the lord of the  
universe. They are  
The refuge of the universe, who bow in faith before thee !
- 32 O goddess, be gracious ! Protect us wholly from fear of  
our foes  
Perpetually, as *thou hast* at this very time *saved us* promptly  
by the slaughter of the Asuras !\*
- And bring thou quickly to rest the sins of all the worlds

\* For *yathā sura-badhā* read *yathāsura-badhā*.

And the great calamities which have sprung from the maturing of portents !

- 33 To *us* who are prostrate be thou gracious,  
O goddess, who takest away affliction from the universe !  
O thou worthy of praise from the dwellers in the three worlds,  
Bestow thou boons on the worlds ! ”

The goddess spoke :

- 34 I *am ready* to bestow a boon. O ye hosts of gods, choose whatever boon ye desire in your mind ; I grant it as a thing that benefits the worlds.

The gods spoke :

- 35 O queen of all, complete thou\* thus indeed the pacification of every trouble of the three worlds, and the destruction of our enemies.

The goddess spoke :

- 36 When the twenty-eighth age has arrived, in the Vaivasvata Manv-antara, two other great Asuras shall be born, Śumbha  
37 and Niśumbha. Then born as the offspring of Yaśodā's womb in the cowherd Nanda's house, *and* dwelling on the Vindhya  
38 mountains, I will destroy them both. And again becoming incarnate in a very terrible form on the face of the earth, I  
39 will slay the Vaiprac'itta† Dánavas ; and when I devour those fierce and great Vaiprac'itta Asuras, my teeth shall become  
40 red like the flowers of the pomegranate. Hence the gods in Svarga and men in the world of mortals praising me shall always talk of me as “ Red-toothed.”‡  
41 And again after a period of a hundred years during which rain and water shall fail, praised by the munis I shall *be*  
42 born, but not womb-begotten, on the earth. Then because I shall behold the munis with a hundred eyes, mankind shall therefore celebrate me as “ Hundred-eyed.”§

\* For *tvathá* read *tvayá*.

† The descendants of Viprac'itti.

‡ *Rakta-dantiká*.

§ *Satáksá*.

- 43 Next, O ye gods, I shall support\* the whole world with the  
 44 life-sustaining vegetables, which shall grow out of my own  
 45 body, during a period of heavy rain. I shall gain fame on  
 46 the earth then as Sákambharí; † and in that very period I  
 shall slay the great Asura named Durgama.
- 45 And again when taking a terrible form on mount Himavat I  
 shall destroy Rákshasas for the sake of delivering the munis,  
 46 all the munis bowing their bodies reverently shall laud me  
 then; hence my name "The terrible goddess" ‡ shall become  
 celebrated.
- 47 When Aruṇáksha§ shall work great trouble in the three  
 worlds, I shall take a bee-like form, *the form* of innumerable  
 48 bees, and shall slay the great Asura for the welfare of the  
 three worlds, and folk shall then extol me everyone as  
 Bhrámarí. ||
- 49 Thus whenever trouble shall arise caused by the Dánavas,  
 at each such time I shall become incarnate and accomplish  
 the foes' destruction.

---

CANTO XCII.

---

*The Deví-máhátmya.*

*The slaying of Sumbha and Niśumbha concluded.*

*The goddess descants on the merits of this poem and the beneficent results of reading and listening to it.—The gods regained their rights and the Daityas departed to Pátála.—Her attributes and beneficence are extolled.*

\* I.e., nourish.

† "Herb-bearing" or "Herb-nourishing."

‡ *Bhímd Deví.*

§ Or *Aruṇákhyā* in the Bombay edition; "When the Asura named Aruṇa shall work, &c."

|| "The bee-like goddess."

## The goddess spoke :

- 1 And whoever with mind composed shall praise me constant-  
 ly with these hymns, I will quiet down every trouble for him  
 2 assuredly. And those who shall celebrate the destruction of  
 Madhu and Kaiṭabha, the slaughter of the Asura Mahisha,  
 3 and the slaying of Śumbha and Niśumbha likewise; and  
 those also who shall listen\* in faith to *this poem of my*  
 sublime majesty on the eighth day of the lunar fortnight, on  
 4 the fourteenth and on the ninth, with intent mind, to them  
 shall happen no wrong-doing whatever, nor calamities that  
 arise from wrong-doing, nor poverty, nor indeed deprivation of  
 5 their desires.† Never shall he experience fear from enemies,  
 from robbers, nor from kings, nor from weapon or fire or  
 6 water-flood. Hence this *poem of my majesty* must be read  
 by men of composed minds and listened to by them always  
 7 with faith, for it is the supreme course of blessings. Now  
 may *this poem of my majesty* quell all kinds of calamities,  
 which arise from grievous pestilence,‡ and the three-fold  
 8 portent. Where this *poem* is duly read constantly at my  
 sanctuary, I will never forsake that *place*, and there my  
 9 presence is fixed. At the offering of the bali, and during  
 worship, in the ceremonies with fire, and at a great festival,  
 all this story of my exploits must verily be proclaimed and  
 10 listened to. I will accept with kindness both the bali  
 worship that is paid, and the oblation by fire that is offered, by  
 11 him who understands or him who understands not. And at  
 the great annual worship that is performed in autumn time,  
 the man, who listens filled with faith to *this poem of my*  
 12 majesty, shall assuredly through my favour be delivered from  
 every trouble, and be blessed with riches, grain and children.  
 13 From listening to *this poem of my majesty* moreover come  
 splendid issues and prowess in battles, and a man becomes

\* The Bombay edition reads *stoshyanti*, "shall celebrate in song."

† *Ishṭa-viyojana*; or "separation from loved ones." *Viyojana* is not in the dictionary.

‡ *Mahá-máti*; or "cholera."

- 14 fearless.\* When men listen to *this poem* of my majesty,  
 enemies pass to destruction, and prosperity accrues and their  
 15 family rejoices. Let a man listen to *this poem* of my majesty  
 everywhere, at a ceremony for securing tranquillity, and after  
 seeing an ill-dream and when planets are greatly eclipsed.  
 16 Thereby portents turn into calm, and also dreadful eclipses of  
 the planets, and also an ill-dream which men have seen; and  
 17 a sweet dream appears. It produces peacefulness in children  
 who have been possessed by the demon that seizes children,† and  
 it is the best promoter of friendship among men when union  
 18 is dissolved; it is the most potent diminisher of the power  
 of all men of ill livelihood; verily through reading it, comes  
 19 the destruction of Rákshasas, goblins and Pisácas. All this  
*poem* of my majesty brings a man near unto me. And by  
 means of cattle, flowers, arghya offerings and incenses, and  
 20 by the finest perfumes and lamps, by feasts given to bráhmans,  
 by oblations, by sprinkled water day and night, and by  
 various other objects of enjoyment, by gifts yearly—the  
 21 favour which comes by such means, such favour is won from me  
 when this story of my noble exploits is once heard. When  
 22 heard it takes away sins and confers perfect health. This  
 celebration of me preserves created beings from future births,  
 even this story of my exploits in battles, the annihilation of  
 23 the wicked Daityas. When it is heard, no fear, that is  
 caused by enmity, springs up among men. And the hymns  
 which ye have composed, and those composed by bráhma-  
 24 nishis, and those composed by Brahmá bestow a splendid  
 mind.‡ He who is surrounded by a raging fire in a forest

\* The text as it stands is incorrect, for *parákrama* is masc., and *parákra-*  
*nam*, acc., has no verb. I have read therefore *parákramaś c'a* for *parákra-*  
*nam c'a*. The Bombay edition reads *tathotpattíḥ prithak śubhāḥ parákra-*  
*mānāś c'a*, and the commentary translates the verse thus—"From listening to  
 this poem of my majesty, and to my splendid diverse appearances in the  
 forms of the Energies, and to my feats of prowess in battles, a man becomes  
 fearless."

† *Bálu-graha*; see canto li.

‡ Or *gatim*, "course" or "issue."

- 25 or on a lonesome road, or who is encompassed by robbers in  
a desolate spot, or who is captured by enemies, or who is  
prowled after by a lion or tiger or by wild elephants in a  
26 forest, or who is under the command of an enraged king,  
or who is sentenced to death, or who has fallen into bonds,  
or who is whirled around by the wind, or who stands in a  
27 ship in the wide sea, or, *who is* in the most dreadful battle  
with weapons falling *upon him*, or who is afflicted with pain  
28 amidst all *kinds of* terrible troubles—*such* a man on calling  
to mind this story of my exploits is delivered from his strait.  
Through my power lions and other *dangerous beasts*, robbers  
and enemies, from a distance indeed, flee from him who calls  
to mind this story of my exploits.

The řishi spoke :

- 29 Having spoken thus the adorable C'aṇḍikā, who is fierce in  
prowess, vanished there, while the gods were gazing indeed  
30 on *her*. The gods also relieved from fear, their foes being  
slain, all resumed their own dominions as before, participating  
in their shares of sacrifices.
- 31 And the Daityas—when Śumbha, that most fierce foe of  
the gods, who brought ruin on the world *and* who was peerless  
32 in prowess, had been slain by the goddess in fight, and  
Nisumbha also great in valour *was slain*—all came to Pátála.
- Thus that adorable goddess, although everlasting, *yet*  
33 taking birth again and again, accomplishes the safeguarding  
of the world, O king. By her this universe is bewitched ; she  
34 verily gives birth to the universe. And when besought, she  
*bestows* knowledge ; when gratified, she bestows prosperity.
- 35 All this egg of Brahmá, O king, is pervaded by her, *who is*  
Mahákālī at Mähákála,\* *and* who has the nature of the Great  
Destroying Goddess.† She indeed is Mahá-māri at the fated  
36 time ; she indeed is creation, the Unborn ; she indeed the Eternal  
gives stability to created beings at their fated time. She indeed

\* A shrine sacred to Śiva at Ujjain ; see Raghu-Vaṁśa, vi. 32-34 ; and Megha-Dūta i. 34.

† Mahá-māri ; see verse 7 above.



- is Lakshmi, bestowing prosperity on the houses of men while  
 37 she abides with *them*; and she indeed when she is absent  
 becomes the goddess of Ill Fortune\* unto their destruction.  
 When hymned and worshipped with flowers, and with incense,  
 perfumes and other *offerings*, she bestows wealth and sons, and  
 a mind brilliant in righteousness.

---

CANTO XCIII.

---

*The Deví-máhátmya (concluded).*

*After hearing this poem, king Su-ratha and the vaiśya practised austerities and worshipped the goddess.—C'aṇḍiká appeared to them and gave the king the boon that he should be Manu Sávarṇi. in a future life, and bestowed knowledge on the vaiśya.*

The ṛishi spoke :

- 1 I have now related to thee, O king, this sublime poem the  
 Deví-máhátmya. Such majestic power has the goddess, by  
 2 whom this world is upheld. Moreover knowledge is conferred  
 by her who is the adorable Vishṇu's Illusive power. By her  
 thou and this vaiśya and other men of discrimination, and  
 3 celebrated men are bewitched; and others shall become  
 bewitched. Go unto her, the supreme queen, as to a place of  
 refuge, O great king. She indeed, when propitiated by men,  
 bestows enjoyment, Svarga and final emancipation from  
 existence.

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 4 Having heard this his speech, king Su-ratha fell prostrate  
 before the illustrious ṛishi who performed severe penances,  
 5 and being down-cast by his excessive regard for self and  
 by the deprivation of his kingdom, went forthwith to per-  
 6 form austerities; and the vaiśya, O great muni, in order to  
 get a vision of Ambá, took up his station on a sand-bank

\* *A-lakshmi.*

- 7 in a river; and the vaiśya practised austerities, muttering the sublime hymn to the goddess. They both made an earthen image of the goddess on that sand-bank, and paid worship  
 8 to it with flowers, incense, fire and libations of water. Abstaining from food, restricting their food, concentrating their minds on her, keeping their thoughts composed, they both  
 9 offered the bali offering also sprinkled with blood drawn from their own limbs. When they continued with subdued souls to propitiate her thus for three years, C'aṇḍikā, who upholds the world, well-pleased spoke in visible shape.

The goddess spoke :

- 10 What thou dost solicit, O king, and thou O rejoicer of thy family, receive ye all that from me; well-pleased I bestow it.

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 11 Then the king chose a kingdom that should not perish in another life, and in this life his own kingdom wherein the  
 12 power of his enemies should be destroyed by force. Then the vaiśya also, whose mind was down-cast, chose knowledge,—to be wise, knowing '*what is mine,*' and '*what I am,*'—*knowledge* that causes the downfall of worldly attachments.

The goddess spoke :

- 13 O king, thou shalt obtain thine own kingdom in a very few days, after slaying thine enemies; it shall be steadfast for  
 14 thee there; and when dead thou shalt gain another life from the god Vivasvat, and shalt be a Manu on earth, by name  
 15 Sāvarṇika. And O excellent vaiśya, I bestow on thee the boon which thou hast besought of me; knowledge shall be thine unto full perfection.

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 16 Having thus given them both the boon that each desired, the goddess vanished forthwith, while extolled by them both in faith.  
 17 Having thus gained the boon from the goddess, Su-ratha the noble kshattriya shall obtain a new birth through the Sun, and shall be the Manu Sāvarṇi.

## CANTO XCIV.

*The Bauc'ya and future Manv-antaras.*

*Márkaṇḍeya mentions briefly the succeeding Manus, the ninth to the thirteenth, and declares what shall be the names of the gods, ṛishis and kings in their several periods.*

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 1 I have duly declared unto thee this *account of the Sávarṇika*
- 2 *Manv-antara*, and also the *Deví-mábhátmya* which tells of the
- 3 *slaughter of the Asura Mahisha*. And the origins of the
- 4 *Mothers* also which were from the goddess in the great battle,
- 5 *and the origin as well as the life of the goddess C'ámunḍá*, and
- 6 *the majesty of Siva-dúti*, the slaying of *Sumbha* and *Nisumbha*,
- 7 *and the killing of Rakta-víja*—all this has been narrated
- 8 *to thee*.
- 9 Now hear O noble muni, of the next *Manu Sávarṇika*. And
- 10 *Daksha's son* shall be *Sávarṇa*, who *will be* the ninth *Manu*.
- 11 I tell thee about that *Manu*, and who *shall be* the gods, the
- 12 *munis* and the *kings* in *his period*. The *Páras* and the *Maríḍis*
- 13 *and the Bhargas* and the *Su-dharmans* *shall be* the gods ; these
- 14 *shall be* in threes ; they *shall be* twelve groups in all ; now
- 15 *their lord\** shall be *Sahasráksha*, great in power. He, who is
- 16 *at present* *Agni's* six-faced son *Kárttikeya*, shall be the *Indra*,
- 17 *by name* *Adbhuta*, in that *Manu's* period. *Medhátithi*, *Vasu*,
- 18 *Satya*, *Jyotish-mat* and *Dyuti-mat*, *Sabala* another, and *Havya-*
- 19 *váhana* another—*these shall be* the seven *ṛishis*. *Dhṛishṭa-ketu*,
- 20 *Varha-ketu*, *Pañḍa-hasta*, *Nir-ámaya*, *Prithu-śravas*, and
- 21 *Arḥish-mat*, *Bhúri-dyumna*, *Vṛihad-bhaya*—*these shall be* the
- 22 *royal sons* of that son of *Daksha*, yea the *kings*.

Now hear, O bráhmaṇ, about the next *Manv-antara*, *that* of the

- 11 *tenth Manu*. And in the *tenth Manv-antara* of the wise son of
- 12 *Brahmá*, the *Sukhásinas* and the *Niruddhas* *shall be* the gods,
- 13 *with three classes each*, according to tradition ; they indeed

\* *Indra*.

- shall be the gods, a hundred in number, *in the period* of that future Manu. As there *shall be* a hundred sons\* of his,
- 13 so *shall there be* a hundred gods then. And Sánti shall be the Indra, endowed with all Indra's good qualities. Hear thou
- 14 who shall indeed be the seven ṛishis then; Apo-múrtti and Havish-mat, Su-kṛitin and Satya, Nábhága and A-pratima,
- 15 and Vásishṭha the seventh. And Su-kshetra and Uttamañjas and valiant Bhúmi-sena, and Satánika, Vṛishabha and An-
- 16 amitra, Jayad-ratha, Bhúri-dyumna, and Su-parvan—these shall be that Manu's sons.
- 17 Hear about the period of Dharma's son Sávarṇa. The Vihañ-gamas, and the Káma-gas and the Nirmápa-ratis shall be *the gods* of three kinds; each shall be a group of thirty.
- 18 Now the Nirmápa-ratis shall be those who preside over the months, seasons and days; and the Vihañ-gamas *shall be those who preside over* the nights;† the groups of Káma-gas
- 19 *shall be* those who preside over the moments.‡ Their Indra shall be named Vṛisha, celebrated for valour. And Havish-
- 20 mat, and Varishṭha, and another ṛishiṣ Aruṇi, and Nis-čara and An-agma, and another great muni Viṣṭi, and Agni-deva the seventh,—these *shall be* the seven ṛishis in that period.
- 21 Sarvatra-ga and Su-śarman, Devánika, Purúdvaha, Hema-dhanvan, and Dṛiḍháyū shall be the sons of that Manu, *yea* the kings.
- 22 When the twelfth Manv-antara of Ārudra's son, the Mann named Sávarṇa, shall have arrived, who *shall be* the gods
- 23 and munis,—hear about them. The Su-dharmans, the Su-manases, the Haritas and the Rohitas and the Su-varṇas

\* For *prāṇinām* read *putrāṇām* as in the Bombay edition.

† Both the Calcutta and Bombay editions read *rātrayo 'tha*, which is the plural of *rātri*; but this word should apparently be analogous to *mauhūrtta* in formation, and be an adjective derived from *rātri*. Perhaps the reading should be *rātrakāś tu* instead.

‡ This seems to be the meaning intended by the word *mauhūrttāk*; but the only meaning given in the dictionary is "astrologer."

§ Both editions read *ṛishīr*, but it can hardly be right, for it would be a proper name, and the number would then exceed seven. It seems to be a mistake for *ṛishir*.

- shall be the gods therein ; these five shall be ten-fold groups.*
- 24 Now their Indra shall be known as Rīta-dhāman, great in power, endowed with all Indra's good qualities. Hear from
- 25 me the seven ṛishis also—Dyuti, Tapas-vin, Su-tapas, Tapo-múrtti, Tapo-nidhi, and Tapo-rati another, and Tapo-dhṛiti
- 26 the seventh. Deva-vat, and Upa-deva, Deva-śreshṭha, Vidúratha, Mitra-vat, and Mitra-vinda, shall be the sons of that *Manu*, yea the kings.
- 27 Listen while I tell thee of the *Manu's* sons and of the seven ṛishis and of the kings in the turn of the thirteenth
- 28 *Manu* named Raućya. The gods therein *shall be* the Sudharmans, the Su-karmans, and the Su-śarmans the others ;
- 29 all these verily *shall be* the gods, O best of munis. Their Indra *shall be* Divas-pati, great in power, great in valour.
- 30 Now hear while I tell thee of the seven ṛishis who shall be *then*—Dhṛiti-mat, and A-vyaya, Tattva-darśin, Nir-utsuka, Nir-moha, and Su-tapas another, and Nish-prakampa the
- 31 seventh. C'itra-sena and Vi-ćitra, Nayati, Nir-bhaya, Dṛiḍha, Su-netra, and Kshatra-buddhi, and Su-vrata *shall be* the sons of that *Manu*.

---

## CANTO XCV.

---

### *The Story of Rući.*

- 4 *Prajá-pati* named Rući formerly lived in solitary discomfort—His forefathers appeared to him and urged him to marry—He demurred and they insisted on the importance of marriage.

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 1 A *Prajá-pati* Rući, who was devoid of self, free from pride, fearless and moderate in sleeping, formerly roamed this earth.
- 2 Seeing that he was destitute of fire, had no habitation, that he ate but once a day, had no hermitage, and was cut off from all attachments, his ancestors spoke to him, the muni.

The Pitṛis spoke :

- 3 Dear son, wherefore hast thou not done the sacred deed of taking a wife, since that is the cause of gaining Svarga and

final emancipation from existence? without that there is  
 4 bondage perpetually. A house-holder by paying worship to  
 all the gods and the Pitris likewise, to *ṛishis* and guests, gains  
 5 the *heavenly* worlds. He apportions the gods *their share* by  
 uttering 'sváhá' aloud, the Pitris by uttering 'svadhá' aloud,  
 6 created beings and other guests by the giving of food. Being  
 such a *negligent one*, thou dost incur bondage by reason of  
 the debt due to the gods, bondage by reason of the debt due  
 to us also, *bondage* unto men and created beings day by day,  
 7 by not begetting sons, by not satisfying the gods and Pitris.  
 And how, by not fulfilling *these duties* through folly, dost thou  
 8 hope to go the good way? We think affliction, one *affliction*  
 after another, may be for thee in this world, O son; hell  
 likewise when thou art dead, *and* affliction in sooth in another  
 birth.

Ruci spoke :

9 Wedlock tends to excessive suffering, and is a downward  
 10 course toward sin; hence I took no wife hitherto. Control which  
 is *gained* over one's self, this is effected by firm suppression;\* it  
 is the cause of final emancipation from existence; that *emanci-*  
 11 *pation* verily comes not from wedlock. That the soul, though  
 besmirched with the mire of selfishness, be washed clean day  
 by day by those who have no family ties with the waters of  
 12 thought—better verily is this! The soul, which is marked  
 with the mire of actions that have developed during many  
 existences, must be washed clean with the waters of good  
 perceptions by wise men who keep their bodily organs under  
 control.

The Pitris spoke :

13 Fitting it is that those who have their organs under control  
 should cleanse their soul; but does this path, wherein thou  
 wendest, O son, tend to final emancipation from existence?†

\* *Ni-yantrana*; a word not in the dictionary.

† I take *kintu* as *kin tu* interrogatively; but the Bombay edition reads *lepáya* for *moksháya* and *kintu* then would mean simply "but"—"but this path, wherein, &c., tends to defilement."

- 14 Moreover evil is driven away by means of disinterested\* gifts,  
 and by results and enjoyments which are good or ill according  
 15 to former actions. Thus no bondage befalls him who acts  
 with a tender heart, and such action being disinterested tends  
 16 not to bondage. Thus a former action done, which consists of  
 merit and demerit, is diminished day and night by enjoyments  
 which consist of pleasure and pain, O son, among mankind.  
 17 Thus wise men cleanse their soul and guard it from bonds ;  
 thus, on the other hand, indiscrimination, which is the mire  
 of sin, does not lay hold of it.

Ruśi spoke :

- 18 It is declared in the Veda, ignorance is the path of action,  
 O my forefathers. How then do ye, sirs, despatch me on the  
 path of action ?

The Pitṛis spoke :

- 19 Ignorance in very truth is this† action *thou mentionest*—this  
 maxim is not erroneous ; nevertheless action is the cause un-  
 20 doubtedly of full acquisition of knowledge. On that *view* the  
 restraint, which bad men observe because they do not perform  
 what is enjoined, *should tend* ultimately to final emancipation  
 from existence;‡ on the contrary it produces a downward  
 21 course. But thou thinkest, O son, ‘ I will cleanse my soul ’ ; yet  
 thou art burnt up by sins which arise from not performing what  
 22 is enjoined. Even Ignorance exists for the benefit of men,  
 just as poison does ; although it is different, it *does not in truth*  
*tend* to bondage§ by reason of the means which are put into  
 23 practice. Therefore, O son, do thou take a wife according to  
 precept ; let not thy birth be unprofitable by thy not observ-  
 ing the business of ordinary life fully.

\* *An-abhisandhita* : *abhi-sandhita* is not in the dictionary.

† For *evait* read *evaitat*.

‡ The Bombay edition reads *naśau* instead of *so 'nte*, and the meaning is “ *does not tend to final emancipation.* ”

§ The Bombay edition reads *bandhāyānyā yato hi śā*, “ *because it is different, it tends in truth to bondage.* ” Or if *anyā yato* be read as one word *a-nyāyato*, it would mean “ *because of iniquity it tends in truth to bondage.* ”

Ruc'i spoke :

- 24 I am now aged ; who will bestow a wife on me, O my forefathers ? Moreover it is hard for a poor man to take a wife.

The Pitris spoke :

- 25 Our downfall will assuredly come to pass, O son, and so also will thy downward course ; thou dost not welcome our speech.

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 26 Having spoken thus, the Pitris suddenly vanished from sight while he beheld them, O best of munis, just as lights when blown by the wind.

---

### CANTO XCVI.

---

*The story of Ruc'i (continued).*

*Perturbed by his forefathers' admonition Ruc'i offered worship to Brahmá, and Brahmá promised he should gain his desire with the Pitris' help—Ruc'i poured forth therefore a long hymn and prayer to the Pitris.*

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 1 The bráhmaṇ rishi *Ruc'i*, being greatly agitated in mind at that his forefathers' counsel, wandered about the earth, desirous to find a maiden. Failing to obtain a maiden he, illuminated by the fire of his forefathers' counsel, fell into deep thought, while his mind was exceedingly agitated—"What can I do ? Where am I going ? How am I to take a wife ? May that come to pass quickly, which will effect my forefathers' advancement !" While the high-souled *muni* pondered thus, a thought occurred to him—"I will propitiate lotus-born Brahmá with austerities." Thereupon he performed austerities to Brahmá for a hundred celestial years, and for the purpose of propitiating him engaged then in the utmost self-mortification. Brahmá the forefather of the worlds thereupon showed himself and said to him—"I am



- 7 well-pleased, declare thy earnest wish." He fell prostrate then before Brahmá, *who is* the origin of the world, and declared what he wished earnestly *to do* according to the counsel of his forefathers. And Brahmá hearing his earnest wish spoke to the bráhmaṇ Ruçi.

Brahmá spoke :

- 8 Thou shalt be a Prajá-pati ; thou shalt create human folk. After creating human folk, O bráhmaṇ, *and* begetting sons  
9 and performing ceremonies, thou shalt then, after thy dominion shall be taken away, attain perfect felicity. Being such,  
10 do thou take a wife as enjoined by thy forefathers ; and after reflecting on this desire, perform worship to the Pitṛis ; those Pitṛis indeed being gratified shall bestow on thee the wife and sons desired. When satisfied what may thy ancestors not bestow ?

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 11 The ṛishi\* on hearing this speech from Brahmá, whose birth is inscrutable, performed worship to the Pitṛis on  
12 a distant sand-bank in a river, and also gratified the Pitṛis, O bráhmaṇ, with these praises, respectfully, with single mind, subduing his body, and bending his neck in faith.

Ruçi spoke :

- 13 I pay reverence unto the Pitṛis who dwell as presiding deities in the śráddha ; and whom even the gods verily delight with *invocations* concluding with *the word* svadhá at the  
14 śráddha. I pay reverence unto the Pitṛis, whom maharshis, who desire to obtain enjoyment and final emancipation from existence, delight with mental śráddhas *and* with faith in  
15 Svarga. I pay reverence unto the Pitṛis, whom the Siddhas delight with all *kinds of* incomparable heavenly offerings at the  
16 śráddhas in Svarga. I pay reverence unto the Pitṛis, whom the Guhyakas also, who earnestly desire boundless sublime pros-

\* For *rishar* read *rishir* ?

- perity because they are absorbed therein,\* honour with faith.
- 17 I pay reverence unto the Pitris, who are always honoured by mortals on the earth, *and* who grant *unto men* to attain unto
- 18 the desired worlds by means of faith at the śráddhas. I pay reverence unto the Pitris, who are always honoured by bráhmans on the earth, *and* who grant generative power for
- 19 the obtaining of what they earnestly desire and long for. I pay reverence unto the Pitris, whom indeed forest-dwelling *ascetics*, who are restrained in their diet *and* whose stains have been washed away by austerities, delight with śráddhas performed
- 20 in the forests. I pay reverence unto the Pitris, whom bráhmans, who practise the vow of perpetual celibate studentship *and* who have subdued their souls, delight with intense
- 21 meditation continually. I pay reverence unto the Pitris, whom as being bestowers of benefits in the three worlds princes delight with śráddhas and all *kinds of* food-oblations according to precept. I pay reverence unto the Pitris, whom
- 22 vaiśyas, who take pleasure in their own occupations, honour with flowers, incense, food and water continually on the earth.
- 23 I pay reverence unto the Pitris, whom as famed by the name Su-kálin† śúdras also in faith always delight with śráddhas in this world. I pay reverence unto the Pitris, whom as feeding on the svadhá great Asuras, who have forsaken deceit and
- 25 arrogance, always delight with śráddhas in Pátála. I pay reverence unto the Pitris, whom Nágas, who wish to obtain their desires, honour with śráddhas *and* all *kinds of* enjoyments according to precept in Rasátala. I pay reverence
- 26 unto the Pitris, whom the Serpents,‡ who possess spells, enjoyments and good fortune, always delight there indeed
- 27 with śráddhas according to precept. I pay reverence unto the Pitris, who dwell visibly both in the world of the gods and in the atmosphere, and who are worthy of worship by gods and other *beings* on the face of the earth. May they

\* *Tan-maya-ivena* ; referring to wealth, because they are the attendants of Kuvera the god of wealth, and guardians of his treasures ?

† A class of Pitris regarded as the especial Pitris of Śúdras.

‡ *Sarpaiś*.

- 28 receive my offering. I pay reverence unto the Pitris, who have become *united* with the Supreme Soul, *who yet* in bodily form dwell verily in a heavenly car, and to whom as effecting deliverance from affliction the noblest yogins offer sacrifice
- 29 with minds cleansed from defilement. I pay reverence unto the Pitris, who also in bodily form in heaven feed on the *svadhá* for the purpose of *bestowing* desirable benefits, *and* who are powerful to bestow all desired *objects and* who grant
- 30 deliverance to those who have no engrossing interests. May all the Pitris be delighted herein, who signify desires to those who wish *for them, namely*, godhead, Indra's status, or what is more than this, *and also* sons, cattle, might *and* houses of
- 31 their very own! May the Pitris, who always dwell in the moon's rays, in the sun's orb and in a white heavenly car, be delighted herein with food and water, with perfumes and
- 32 other *odours*; may they obtain nourishment herefrom! And may the Pitris, who have satisfaction from the clarified butter in the oblation to Agni, who dwelling in the bodies of bráhmans feed on *the same*, *and* who reach intense delight by the offering of the *piṇḍa*, be *satisfied* herein with food and water!
- 33 May they, who have been greatly pleased by the chief maharshis with rhinoceros-flesh and with dark sesamum seeds, which attract the minds of celestial beings *and* are much desired by the gods, and with the herb *Ocimum sanctum*,
- 34 reach intense delight herein! And may all poems which are exceedingly coveted be for them, who are honoured by the Immortals! May they then be present here at the flowers,
- 35 perfumes, food and enjoyments which I have procured! May they, my forefathers,\* who receive honour day by day, who should be worshipped on earth at the end of the month *and* on the eighth day, and who should be worshipped at the end of the year and at its beginning,† obtain satisfaction
- 36 herein! May they, who as being luminous as the full moon‡ are worthy of worship from bráhmans, and who as having

\* Or, "The Pitris."

† *Abhyudaya*; or "the rising of the sun"?

‡ *Kumudendu-bhāso*.

- the hue of the rising sun *are worthy of worship* from kshattriyas, and who as bestowers of gold *are worthy of worship* from vaiśyas, and who as resembling the indigo plant\*  
 37 *are worthy of worship* from súdra folk, may they all reach delight with my offering of flowers, perfumes, incense, food, water and other *gifts* and with the fire-oblation also! Before  
 38 them, the Pitris, I am ever prostrate. May they, who eat of the food-oblations, *those* splendid sacrifices, which have been previously *offered* to the gods for the sake of exceeding delight, and who when delighted become creators of welfare *for us*, be delighted herein! I am prostrate before them.  
 39 May they, who expel† Rákshasas, goblins and fierce Asuras, yea, what is unpropitious to people, *and* who are the most ancient of gods, *and* who are worthy of worship by the lord of the Immortals, be delighted herein! I am prostrate before  
 40 them. May the Agni-shvátta‡ *Pitris*, the Barhi-shad§ *Pitris*, the Ajya-pa|| *Pitris* and the Soma-pá || *Pitris* attain delight  
 41 in this śráddha! I have delighted the *Pitris*. May the bands of Agni-shvátta *Pitris* protect the eastern region for me! And may the *Pitris* who are known as Barhi-shads protect  
 42 the southern region! May the Ajya-pa *Pitris* likewise protect the western region, and the Soma-pá *Pitris* the northern region from Rákshasas, goblins and Piśácas, and indeed from  
 43 harm inflicted by Asuras! And may their ruler Yama safeguard me everywhere! The Viśva, Viśva-bhuj, Arádhyā,  
 44 Dharma, Dhanya, Subhánana, Bhúti-da, Bhúti-krit *and* Bhúti are nine classes which *exist* among the *Pitris*. The Kalyána,  
 45 Kalyatá-kartṛi, Kalya, Kalyatarásraya, Kalyatá-hetu *and* An-  
 agha—these six, they are known as classes of *Pitris* also.

\* *Nílā-nibhāḍā*. This is obscure.

† *Nir-ndāyantas*. As a verb this is not given in the dictionary.

‡ The spirits of those who on earth neglected the sacrificial fire. See Manu III. 195 and 199.

§ See Manu III. 196 and 199.

|| Those who were the sons of Pulastya and the ancestors of the vaiśya order. See Manu III. 198.

¶ Those especially who were the progenitors of the bráhmans. See Manu III. 197 and 198.

- 46 The Vara, Varen̄ya, Vara-da, Pusht̄i-da and Tusht̄i-da, Viśva-  
 pátri and Dhátri—these seven indeed are also classes. The  
 47 Mahat, Mahátman, Mahita, Mahimá-vat and Mahá-bala—these  
 five moreover are classes of Pit̄ris, being destroyers of sin.  
 Sukha-da, and Dhana-da also, Dharma-da and Bhúti-da\*  
 48 besides—such also is likewise called a four-fold class of Pit̄ris.  
*There are thus thirty-one classes of Pit̄ris, who pervade the*  
*entire world. Delighted with me, may they be satisfied and*  
*ever grant me what is beneficial.*

---

CANTO XCVII.

---

*The bestowal of a boon by the Pit̄ris in the Rauc'ya Manv-antara.*

*A body of light appeared in the sky, and Ruc'i offered a hymn to all  
 the deities and Pit̄ris—The Pit̄ris appeared, and to enable him  
 to be a Prajā-pati granted him the boon of a wife—They com-  
 mend the hymn offered to them and declare its manifold efficacy.*

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 1 Now while he offered praises thus, a lofty pile of light  
 2 appeared suddenly, suffusing the sky. When he saw that  
 very great light, which remained stationary encompassing the  
 world, Ruc'i sank to the earth on his knees and sang this  
 hymn.

Ruc'i spoke :

- 3 I pay reverence† ever to those Pit̄ris, who are honoured,  
 incorporeal,‡ luminously splendid, who are rapt in meditation,

\* This word occurs twice, in verses 44 and 47. The Bombay edition reads the same. It seems to follow the Calcutta edition rather closely after the *Devī-máhātmya*.

† *Namasyámi*. It is used with the object in the genitive here and in verse 6; in the accusative in verses 4, 5, 7, 10 and 11; and in the dative in verses 8 and 9. The construction with the accusative is the only one mentioned in the dictionary.

‡ The Bombay edition reads *A-múrtitánám c'a múrtitánám*, "who are incorporeal and who are corporeal."

- 4 and who possess supernatural sight. And I pay reverence to those granters of *men's* desires, *who are* the leaders of Indra and the other *gods*, and of Daksha and Máric'a, of the seven  
 5 ṛishis and of other *sages*. I pay reverence to all the Pitṛis of Manu and the other chief munis, and of the sun and moon,  
 6 among the waters and in the sea. With conjoint hands I pay reverence likewise to the constellations and planets, to  
 7 wind and fire and the sky, and to heaven and earth. And with conjoint hands I pay reverence to the devarshis' progenitors, unto whom reverence is paid by all the worlds, *who are* always  
 8 givers of what is imperishable. With conjoint hands I pay reverence always to the Prajā-pati\* Kaśyapa, to Soma† and to  
 9 Varuṇa, and to the princes of religious devotion. Reverence to the seven classes of *Pitṛis* moreover in the seven worlds!‡  
 10 I pay reverence to self-existent Brahmá who is contemplation-eyed. I pay reverence to the Somádharma and Yoga-mūrtti-dhara classes of Pitṛis, and to Soma the father of the worlds.  
 11 I pay reverence moreover to the other Pitṛis who have the form of fire,§ because this universe is entirely composed of  
 12 Agni and Soma. Now these who *dwell* in *this* light, and who have the bodies of the moon, sun and fire,|| and whose true nature is the world, and whose true nature is Brahmá¶—to all  
 13 those Pitṛis, practisers of religious devotion, *I pay* reverence with subdued mind, reverence, *yea* reverence. May they, the consumers of the svadhá, be gracious unto me !

Mārkaṇḍeya syoke :

- 14 Being thus praised by him, O best of munis, those Pitṛis issued forth with their splendour, illuminating the ten regions  
 15 of the sky ; and he beheld them standing in front then,

\* For *Prajā-pateḥ* read *Prajā-pate* ?

† Or, " the moon." 'Soma' seems to be played upon in its various meanings in these verses.

‡ Or, " Reverence to the seven classes of *Pitṛis* and to the seven worlds !"

§ 'Agni' is also played upon in its different meanings.

|| "Soma, Sūrya and Agni."

¶ Or, "Brahman."

- adorned with the flowers, perfumes and unguents which he  
 16 had presented *unto them*. Falling prostrate again in faith,  
 again indeed joining his hands, full of respect he exclaimed,  
 separately *to each of them*, "Reverence to thee!" "Reverence  
 17 to thee!" Well-pleased the Pitris thereupon said to him, the  
 best of munis, "Choose thou a boon." To them he spoke,  
 bending his neck respectfully.

Ruci spoke :

- 18 Brahmá has commanded me now to be the maker of a *new*  
 creation. In such capacity I desire to obtain a wife, *who shall*  
*be happy, of heavenly kind, prolific.*

The Pitris spoke :

- 19 Here verily for thee let a wife be produced forthwith who  
 shall be most fascinating, and by her thou shalt have a son,  
 20 a Manu supreme, the ruler of a Manv-antara, wise, charac-  
 terized by thy very own name, being called Rauóya *from*  
 21 *thee*, O Ruci; he shall attain fame in the three worlds. He  
 shall also have many sons, great in strength and prowess,  
 22 great of soul, guardians of the earth. And thou, becoming  
 a Prajá-pati, shalt create people of the four classes; and  
 when thy dominion shall come to an end and *thou shalt be*  
 wise in righteousness, thou shalt thereafter attain perfect  
 felicity.
- 23 And whatever man shall gratify us with this hymn  
 in faith, we being gratified *will give* him enjoyments and  
 24 sublime spiritual knowledge, perfect bodily health, and wealth,  
 and sons, grandsons and other *descendants* :\* because verily  
 those who desire *blessings* must constantly praise us with this  
 25 hymn. And he who shall recite this hymn, which causes us  
 pleasure, with faith at a śráddha, standing the while in front

\* The Bombay edition inserts a verse and a half here—"We will give [the foregoing blessings] assuredly and whatever else is earnestly desired. Therefore men who continually desire sacred recompenses in the world and the imperishable gratification of the Pitris—such men must praise us with a hymn."

- 26 of the bráhmans as they feast, that śráddha, shall undoubtedly become ours imperishably, because of our pleasure in hearing the hymn when *a man* makes close approach unto us.
- 27 Although a śráddha be performed without a bráhman learned in the Veda, although it may be vitiated by means of wealth
- 28 which has been gained unjustly, or although it be performed in any other *defective* manner, or although moreover it be performed with blemished offerings unfit for a śráddha, or *be performed* also at a wrong time or in a wrong place, or
- 29 yet be unaccompanied by the *proper* ordinances, or *if* it is performed by men without faith or in reliance on deceit—nevertheless *such* a śráddha shall be to our delight because
- 30 this hymn is uttered *thereat*. Wherever this hymn which brings us happiness is recited at a śráddha, there delight
- 31 accrues unto us, lasting for twelve years. This *hymn recited* in the winter yields delight for twelve years; and this beautiful hymn *recited* in the dewy season *yields* delight for twice
- 32 *that number of years*; *when recited* at a śráddha ceremony in the spring *it tends* to delight us for sixteen years; and this *hymn* recited in the hot season causes delight for sixteen years
- 33 indeed. When a śráddha although performed imperfectly is consummated with this hymn in the rainy season, imperishable delight accrues unto us, O Ručí. When recited at the
- 34 time of a śráddha even in the autumn season, it yields us
- 35 delight with men which lasts for fifteen years. And in whose-soever house this *hymn* remains constantly in written form, there shall we be present when a śráddha is performed.
- 36 Therefore *standing* at a śráddha in front of the feasting bráhmans, O illustrious Sir! thou must hear this *hymn* which supplies nourishment unto us.\*

\* The Bombay edition adds—"Having spoken thus, his ancestors (Pitris) departed to heaven, O best of munis."



## CANTO XCVIII.

*The marriage of Málíní and the conclusion of the Rauc'ya Manv-antara.*

*Ruc'i married an Apsaras named Málíní, and had by her a son, the Manu Rauc'ya, who will be the ruler of a manv-antara.*

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 1      Thereupon from the midst of that river uprose an exquisite Apsaras, charming, slender-shaped, named Pramlośá.
- 2      And she spoke to high-souled Ruśi in very sweet accents, bowing courteously *towards him, she*, beautiful-browed Pramlośá, verily a choice Apsaras.
- 3      "A maiden of exceeding bodily beauty is my daughter, O best of ascetics; she was begotten by Varuṇa's high-souled
- 4      son Pushkara. Take her when I give her, a *maiden* of exquisite complexion, to be thy wife; a Manu of great intellect shall be born of her as son to thee!"

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 5      When he replied, "So be it," to her, she fetched up from
- 6      out that water then a shapely maiden named Málíní; and on that sand-bank in the river Ruśi, best of munis, after summoning the great munis together, took her hand *in marriage*
- 7      according to the ordinances. Of her was born to him a son, great in valour, great in intellect; he was *named* Rauc'ya
- 8      after his father's name; he was famous on this earth. And in his manv-antara who will be the gods and the seven ṛishis and his sons and the kings, they have been duly told to thee.
- 9      Increase of righteousness, and perfect health, and the growth of riches, grain and children—*this* without doubt is for men in this manv-antara, which *thou hast* heard about.
- 10     After hearing of both the praise of the Pitṛis and the classes of the Pitṛis also, a man obtains all his desires through their favour, O great muni.

## CANTO XCIX.

*Eulogy of Agni and fire.*

*There was formerly a very irascible muni named Bhúti, to whom everything was subservient—He left his hermitage once and put his disciple Sánti in charge—The sacred fire went out, and Sánti in consternation offered up a long prayer and eulogy to Agni.*

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 1     Hear next thereafter about the birth of Bhautya, and about the gods, the ṛishis, his sons and the kings of the earth in his period.
- 2     There was a disciple of Aṅgiras, by name Bhúti, very irascible, a muni who used to invoke bitter curses for a small matter, and who spoke harshly on the occasion of a trans-
- 3     gression. At his hermitage Mátariśvan blew not very fiercely, the sun caused no excessive heat, nor Parjanya
- 4     excessive mud, nor did the moon even when full cause excessive cold with its rays, through fear verily of that
- 5     irascible and very glorious muni. And the seasons, abandoning their course, produced flowers and fruit at all times on the trees that grew in his hermitage according to his
- 6     command. And the waters that flowed near his hermitage glided on according to his pleasure, and when taken into
- 7     his water-pot were frightened at that high-souled muni. He was impatient of excessive trouble and was exceedingly irascible, O bráhmaṇ.

- And that illustrious muni having no son set his mind on austerities. Desiring a son, restricting his food, exposing himself to cold, wind and fire, he fixed his mind on austerities indeed with the resolve, "I will practice austerities."
- 9     The moon did not tend to make him very cold, nor the sun to make him very hot, nor did Mátariśvan blow on him
  - 10    severely, O great muni. And Bhúti, best of munis, being

greatly pained by the couples of opposite causes\* did not obtain that desire and so ceased from his austerities.

- 11 His brother was Su-varcāsa. Being invited by him to a sacrifice *and* being desirous of going, Bhúti said to his high-  
 12 minded disciple named Śánti, who was calm, who had the measure of religious knowledge,† who was well-behaved, always zealous in the guru's business, observant of good customs, noble, an excellent muni.

Bhúti spoke :

- 13 I shall go to the sacrifice of my brother Su-varcāsa, O Śánti, being summoned by him, and do thou listen to what  
 14 thou must do here. Thou must keep watch over the fire in my hermitage thus *and* thus diligently, so that the fire may not become extinguished.

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 15 Having given this command and receiving the answer "Yea" from his disciple Śánti, the guru went to that his brother's sacrifice, being summoned *thereto* by his younger brother.  
 16 And while Śánti is fetching fuel, flowers, fruit and other *things* from the forest for that high-souled guru's maintenance, and is  
 17 performing other business, being faithfully obedient to his guru, the fire which was the root of his welfare‡ died out  
 18 during that *interval*. Seeing the fire had died out, Śánti, sorely distressed and afraid of Bhúti, fell, *though* of great intellect, into manifold anxiety, *thinking*—  
 19 "What am I to do? or how will the guru's return be? I must accomplish something now; what, when done, would  
 20 be a good thing done? If my guru sees this extinguished fire occupying the hearth, he will assuredly devote me at  
 21 once because of it to some grievous calamity. If I kindle another fire here in the fire-place, then he who sees everything  
 22 visibly§ will of a surety turn me into ashes. As such I am sinful on account of the wrath and curse of that guru. I do

\* Heat and cold; and so on.

‡ Bhúti-parigrahaḥ; a pun on the words.

† Akṣa-pratima; a difficult word. § Agni.

not grieve so much for myself as for the sin committed against  
 23 the guru. The guru on seeing the fire extinguished will  
 certainly curse me, or Agni *will be* angry. That brahman is  
 24 truly of such *immense* power! With what fitness will not he,  
 under whose command the gods live in terror of his majestic  
 power, assail me who have committed sin!"

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

25 After pondering thus in many ways, being always afraid of  
 that guru he, best of intelligent *munis*, sought refuge with  
 26 Agni. Controlling his mind then he offered a hymn to the  
 seven fires; and with thoughts intent on them he joined his  
 hands and knelt down on the ground.

S'ánti spoke :

27 Om! Reverence to the high-souled perfecter of all created  
 things, to him who has one, two and five side-altars at the  
 28 rája-súya *sacrifice*, to the six-souled *god*! Reverence to the very  
 brilliant one, who gives *their* functions\* to all the gods, to  
 him who has Sukra's form! Thou bestowest permanence  
 29 on all the worlds. Thou art the mouth of all the gods! The  
 oblation that is taken by thee, O adorable one,† cheers all the  
 30 gods! All the gods have their life-breath in thee! The obla-  
 tion sacrificed in thee turns into a fiery‡ cloud; and after-  
 wards the modification which it undergoes in the form of  
 31 water, by that comes the growth of all herbs, O wind-chario-  
 32 teered *god*. Upon all the herbs animals live in happiness. Men  
 perform sacrifices among the herbs also which thou hast crea-  
 ted. With sacrifices also gods and Daityas and Rákshasas like-  
 33 wise are fattened, O Purifier; those sacrifices have thee for their  
 support, O Fire. Hence thou art the origin of everything; and  
 34 thou, O Fire, art composed of everything. The gods, Dánavas,  
 Yakshas, Daityas, Gandharvas and Rákshasas, men, cattle,

\* Or "means of subsistence."

† Instead of *tvayáttum bhagaván haviṣ*, the Bombay edition reads *tvayát-  
tam bhagavan haviṣ*, which I have adopted.

‡ *Anala-megha* in the Bombay edition is preferable to *amala-megha* "a  
 pure cloud."

- 35 trees, deer, birds and reptiles are all fattened and nourished up by thee, O Fire. From thee indeed they take their birth, and in thee likewise they meet their dissolution at the end.
- 36 Thou, O god, createst the waters, thou again indeed consumest them, and by thee they are rendered wholesome *to be*
- 37 the source of nourishment for breathing beings. Thou abidest among the gods under the form of glowing light\* among the Siddhas with loveliness, among Nágas under the form of poison, among birds under the form of wind:
- 38 Among mankind thou art anger; among birds, deer and other *animals thou art* silliness;† thou art stability among trees; thou art hardness with reference to the earth;
- 39 thou art fluidity in water, O adorable *god*; and thou hast the form of swiftness in the wind; thou moreover, O Fire, with thy faculty of permeation abidest as soul in the
- 40 sky.‡ Thou, O Fire, *who art* the end of all created beings, movest about safe-guarding them. Wise men style thee one;
- 41 again they style thee three-fold.§ Having fashioned thee in eight ways, they fashioned the original sacrifice||. Supreme
- 42 rishis say this universe was created by thee. Without thee verily the whole world would perish at once, O Fire. A twice-born man proceeds on the course which is ordained by his own
- 43 actions, when he has paid worship to thee with oblations to the gods, oblations to deceased ancestors and other offerings after uttering *the words* svadhá and sváhá. Living beings have in truth the innate power of modification,¶ O thou who

\* *Tejo-rúpeṇa*.

† *Mohaḥ*.

‡ The Bombay edition reads *nabhasi tvam vyavasthitaḥ* instead, "thou abidest in the sky," omitting "as soul."

§ The three kinds of sacrificial fire, *gárhapatya*, *áhavaniya* and *dakṣhiṇa*.

|| The Bombay edition reads instead *yajñu-váham akalpayan*, "having fashioned thee in eight ways they fashioned (or esteemed) thee to be him who conveys the sacrifice to the gods."

¶ *Pariśadmátva-víryá*. The Bombay edition reads *-víryāni*, a plural neuter instead of a singular feminine noun; but it means the same. If *pariśadma*, "alteration," "modification," means "adaptation," this passage is a remarkable anticipation of modern scientific generalization.

- 44 art honoured by the Immortals. Flames issuing *from thee*,  
 moreover,\* burn up all created things. O most brilliant  
 Játa-vedas,† thine verily is this creation of the universe!
- 45 Thine are the Vedic ceremonial *and* the world which consists  
 of all created things. Reverence to thee, O yellow-eyed
- 46 Fire! Reverence be to thee, O consumer of oblations! O  
 Purifier, reverence be to thee now; reverence to thee, O  
 bearer of oblations *to the gods*.‡ Thou verily art the maturer  
 of the universe by reason of *thy* maturing§ things that are
- 47 eaten and drunk. Thou art the maturer of the crops; and  
 thou art the nourisher of the world. Thou verily art cloud,
- 48 thou art wind, thou art seed that produces the crops. Thou  
 indeed hast been, and shalt be, and art for the nourishing of  
 all created things. Thou art light among all created things;
- 49 thou art the illuminating Sun. Thou art day, thou also art  
 night; and thou art both the twilights. Thou hast golden  
 semen, O Fire; thou art the cause of the production of
- 50 gold; and thou hast gold within thy bosom;|| thou hast  
 lustre like unto gold! Thou art a muhúrta, and thou a
- 51 kshaṇa; thou art a truṭi and thou a lava;¶ thou existest  
 in the form of kalás, káshthás, nimeshas and other *periods of*  
*time*, O lord of the world. Thou art all this *universe*. Thou  
 art Destiny, which consists in continuous change.
- 52 Thy tongue which is *called* Káli brings about the conclusion  
 at the fated time, O lord; *by it*\*\* preserve us from fear, from
- 53 sins and from the great terror of this world! Thy tongue,  
 which is named Karáli†† is the cause of the great dissolution  
*of the world*; by it preserve us from sins and from the great
- 54 terror of this world! And thy tongue which is called Mano-

\* *Tvatto*, "from thee," would seem preferable to *tato*, "moreover."

† A name of Agni.

‡ The Bombay edition inserts a line here—"Thou indeed art the purifier  
 of the universe because of *thy* purification of all existing things."

§ *Pác'aka* and *pác'ana*; the metaphor is from "cooking" with fire.

|| *Hiranya-garbhas*.

¶ Various measures of time.

\*\* Instead of *bhayát*, "from fear," the Bombay edition reads *tayá*, "by it,"

†† "Formidable."

- 55 *javá\** is characterized by the quality of lightness; by it pre-  
 serve us from sins and from the great terror of this world! Thy  
 tongue which is called *Su-lohitá†* accomplishes their desire  
 for created beings, by it preserve us from sins and from the  
 56 great terror of this world! Thy tongue which is called  
*Sa-dhúmra-varpá‡* causes sickness among breathing beings,  
 by it preserve us from sins and from the great terror  
 57 of this world! And thy tongue which is called *Sphuliñ-*  
*gini,§* because it is altogether shapely, by it preserve us  
 58 from sins and from the great terror of this world! And  
 thy tongue which is called *Viśvása-dá||* bestows blessings  
 on breathing beings; by it preserve us from sins and from  
 59 the great terror of this world! O yellow-eyed, red-necked,  
 black-pathed || consumer of oblations, save me from all faults;  
 60 deliver me here from worldly existence! Be gracious, O  
 seven-flamed Fire, O *Kṛiśánu*, O bearer of the oblations to  
 the gods! Thou art proclaimed by the eight names of *Agni*,  
 61 *Pávaka*, *Sukra* and the rest. O *Agni*, O thou who didst  
 spring up before all created beings, O *Vibhá-vasu*, be gra-  
 cious, O thou who art called the Carrier of the oblations to the  
 gods, O changeless one whom I extol!  
 62 Thou art Fire imperishable, thou hast inconceivable beauty,  
 thou prosperest greatly, *thou art* hard to be endured,\*\* ex-  
 ceedingly ardent: or thy surpassing valour, which is changeless  
 and terrible, vanquishes him who injures all the worlds.††

\* "Swift as thought."

† "Very red."

‡ "Smoky-coloured."

§ "Having sparks of fire."

|| For *viśvá sadá* read *viśvása-dá*; "bestowing confidence"; the Bombay edition reads *viśva-sṛjā*, "creating the universe."

|| *Kṛishna-vartman* "black-pathed" of the Bombay edition is better than *kṛishna-varna* "black-hued" of the Calcutta edition.

\*\* For *dush-prahaso* read *dush-prasāho* as in the Bombay edition.

†† This passage appears to be corrupt. It runs thus in the Calcutta edition;—

*Tvam a-vyayam dhīmam a-śeṣha-lokam  
 Samúrtako hantý athaváti-víryam.*

- 63 Thou art the sublime principle of being,\* that dwells in the lotus-heart of every being,† unending, worthy of praise. By thee was stretched out this universe which comprises what is moveable and immoveable. O consumer of oblations, thou
- 64 art one in many forms here! Thou are undecaying; thou art the earth with its mountains and forests; *thou art* the sky that holds the moon and the sun; thou art everything that exists daily;‡ and thou art the submarine fire that is held within the bosom of the great ocean; thou standest with
- 65 superhuman power in thy hand.§ Thou art always, worshipped as the 'Consumer of oblations' at the great sacrifice by great rishis who are devoted to self-restraint; and when extolled thou drinkest the soma at the sacrifice, and *eatest* the oblations also, that are offered in fire with *the ex-*
- 66 *clamation* vashaṭ, for thy well-being. Thou art longed for|| continually by bráhmans here for the sake of recompense; and thou art sung of in all the Vedáṅgas. For thy sake bráhmans, who are zealously devoted to sacrificing, study the
- 67 Vedáṅgas at all times. Thou art Brahmá who is devoted to sacrificing, and also Vishṇu, goblin-ruling *Siva*, *Indra* lord of the gods, *Aryaman*, and water-dwelling *Varuṇa*. Both the

which seems unintelligible. The Bombay edition reads ;—

*Tadv-vyayam bhímam a-śesha-loka-*

*Savardhakam hantya athaváti-víryam.*

and I have followed it except as regards the word *sa-vardhakam* which seems incorrect. By comparing the two versions it may be conjectured that the proper reading should be *sam-mardakam*, or *sam-indhakam* or some such word, and I have ventured to translate it by the general phrase, "who injures."

\* Or "goodness," *sattva*. The Bombay edition reads *tattva*, "essential truth."

† For *-puṇḍaríkas tvam* the Bombay edition reads *-puṇḍaríka-stham*, which seems preferable.

‡ *Ahar-divákhilam*.

§ Or, "in thy ray of light," *kare*. The Bombay edition has a wholly different reading here ;—

*Bhavadn vibhuḥ pivati payámsi pávaka.*

"Thou as lord drinkest the waters, O Fire!"

|| *Ithyase*; but the reading in the Bombay edition *ityase*, "thou art sacrificed unto," is better.



- sun and moon and all the gods and Asuras gratifying *thee*  
 68 with oblations obtain *from thee* much-prized rewards. Every-  
 thing, though corrupted with grave malady to the utmost  
*degree*, becomes pure when touched by thy flames. Of ablutions  
 the most excellent by far is that which is *performed* with  
 ashes; therefore munis wait upon thee pre-eminently at even-  
 69 ing.\* Be gracious, O Fire, who art named the Pure! Be  
 gracious, O Air, who art unsullied *and* exceedingly brilliant!  
 Be gracious unto me now, O purifying *Fire* who comest from  
 lightning!† Be gracious, O Consumer of oblations! Protect  
 70 thou me! With the auspicious form that is thine, O Fire, and  
 with the seven flames that are thine—when praised *by us* protect  
 us therewith, O god, even as a father *protects* the son whom he  
 has begotten!

---

CANTO C

---

*The Fourteen Manv-antarās concluded.*

*Agni pleased with the hymn granted Śānti two boons; namely, the fire was re-kindled; and Bhūti obtained a son who will be the Manu Bhautya, and became gentle to all.—Agni also blessed the hymn.—The gods, rishis and kings in the Bhautya manv-antara are named.—The merits obtained by hearing about the manv-antaras are proclaimed.*

Mārkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 1 Being thus hymned by him the adorable Fire thereupon appeared before him there, encircled with a halo of flame,
- 2 O muni. And the god who abounds in light, pleased ‡ indeed

\* The Bombay edition inserts a short verse here :—"After doing that, people, who have easy self-control, by means of real faith gain heaven which is sung of by multitudes."

† For *vaidyutādya* the Bombay edition reads *vaidyutābha*, "who hast a lightning-like splendour."

‡ For *prīta-stotreṇa* read *prītaḥ stotreṇa*?

with that hymn, O bráhmaṇ, spoke with a voice as deep as a thunder-cloud's to Śānti who fell prostrate *before him*.

Agni spoke :

- 3 Well pleased am I with thee, O bráhmaṇ, for the praise which thou hast offered in faith. I grant thee a boon ; choose what thou desirest.

Śānti spoke :

- 4 O adorable god, I have accomplished my object inasmuch as I see thee in bodily shape ; nevertheless deign to hear me  
5 who bow to *thee* in faith. My guru has gone from the hermitage to his brother's sacrifice, O god, and when he shall return to the hermitage may he see the sacrificial altar\*  
6 with thee for its master. The sacrificial altar that has been forsaken by thee through my transgression, O Fire, may the  
7 bráhmaṇ see that now presided over by thee as before ! And if thou shewest me grace in any other way, O god, then let  
8 my guru who is sonless obtain a distinguished son. And as my guru will display friendliness to his son, so may his mind  
9 become gentle towards to all beings. And whoever shall praise thee † with *this* hymn, whereby thou art pleased with me, O changeless *god*, mayest thou whom I have propitiated bestow a boon on him !

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 10 On hearing this his speech, Agni, being highly conciliated with the hymn and with his devotion to his guru, spoke to that best of bráhmaṇs.

Agni spoke :

- 11 Inasmuch as thou hast asked, O bráhmaṇ, for two boons on thy guru's behalf *and* not for thyself, therefore I am  
12 exceedingly pleased with thee, O great muni. All this shall

\* For *dhishṭyam* read *dhishṣyam* as in the Bombay edition, here and in the next verse and verse 21. In the next verse *dhishṣya* is treated as a neuter noun, but the dictionary gives *dhishṣya*, masc. only, this meaning.

† For *patyatám* read *yáś c'a tvám* with the Bombay edition.

- happen to thy guru which thou hast prayed for—he shall be  
 13 friendly to all beings and shall have a son. The son shall  
 be the lord of a *manv-antara*, by name Bhautya, great in  
 strength, great in valour, great in knowledge, O thou who  
 praisest thy guru.\*
- 14 And whoever with composed mind shall praise me with  
 this hymn, all his desire shall come to pass and he shall  
 15 have merit. At sacrifices, on festival days, at places of  
 pilgrimage, at sacrifices, at oblations to the gods, and at  
 ceremonies let a *man* read this sublime *hymn*, which yields  
 16 nourishment to me, to *attain* unto righteousness. This  
 sublime *hymn*, which yields pleasure to me, when heard once,  
 O bráhmaṇ, shall without doubt destroy sin committed by  
 17 day and night. This *hymn* when heard shall at once quell  
 the faults and other *defects* that attend improper oblations  
 and times, and the faults which *are committed* by unworthy  
 18 men also who have made such *mistakes*. This hymn of praise  
 to me, when heard by mortals at full-moon, at new-moon *and*  
 on other sacred festivals, shall destroy sin.

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 19 Having spoken thus, adorable Agni became invisible forth-  
 with, while he indeed looked on, O muni, just as *the flame*  
 20 upon a lamp expires. And when Agni had departed, Sánti,  
 with mind fully satisfied *and* with the hair of his body stand-  
 ing erect with gladness, entered the guru's hermitage.  
 21 There he saw the fire blazing brightly on the guru's sacrificial  
 altar as before; thereat he felt an intense joy.
- 22 At this moment the *guru* also of that high-souled *disciple*  
 returned from his younger brother's sacrifice to his own  
 23 hermitage; and before him the disciple paid respectful  
 salutation to his feet. And the guru, after accepting the seat  
 24 and worship *offered*, said to him then—"My son, I feel  
 exceeding loving-kindness to thee and to other creatures also.  
 I know not what this is; if thou *knowest*, my son, tell this  
 25 quickly unto me." Thereupon the bráhmaṇ Sánti declares

\* *Guru-stava*. This is better than reading it *gurus tava*.

- all that, *namely*, the extinction of the fire and the other  
 26 incidents, to his teacher truly, O great muni. On hearing it  
 the guru with eyes moist through affection embraced him,  
 and gave the disciple the Vedas and Aṅgas and Upāṅgas,  
 O great muni.
- 27 A son was born to Bhúti, the Manu named Bhautya. Hear  
 from me of the gods, rishis and kings in his manv-antara,  
 28 namely, those who shall belong to *that* future *Manu*, while  
 I declare them at length; and who shall be the lord of the  
 29 gods *in the time* of that *Manu* famous for his deeds. Both  
 the C'ákshushas and the Kanishṭhas, the Pavitras and the  
 Bhrájjiras, and the Dhárāvṛikas—these *shall* be the five  
 30 classes of gods according to tradition. Śuśi shall be the  
 Indra of those gods then, great in strength, great in valour,  
 31 endowed with all an Indra's qualities. And Agnídhra, and  
 Agni-báhu, Śuśi and Mukta, Mádhava, Śukra and Ajita—  
 these seven *shall* be the rishis then according to tradition.  
 32 Guru, Gabhíra, and Bradhna, Bharata and Anugraha, and  
 33 Strímánin \* and Pratíra, Vishnu and Sañktandana,† Tejas-  
 vin and Subala—these *shall be* the Manu Bhautya's sons. I  
 have declared this fourteenth manv-antara to thee.
- 34 After hearing of the manv-antaras thus in order, O best of  
 munis, a man obtains merit, and a diminished succession.‡  
 35 By listening to the first manv-antara a man obtains  
 righteousness. By listening to Svárośisha's *period* he  
 36 gains all his desires. He obtains wealth from *listening to*  
 Auttami's *story*, and acquires knowledge in *hearing the story*  
 of Tāmasa; and when Raivata is heard about, he finds  
 37 intelligence *and* a handsome wife. Perfect health accrues  
 to men when C'ákshusha is heard of, and strength when  
 Vaivasvata *is heard of*, and virtuous sons and grandsons  
 38 when the Sun's son Sávarṇika is heard of. A man obtains  
 greatness of soul when Brahma-Sávarṇa *is heard of*, a bright  
 intellect when Dharma-Sávarṇika *is heard of*, victory when

\* Strímánin in the Bombay edition is better.

† Sañ-krandana in the Bombay edition.

‡ Of future births?

- 39 Rudra-Sávarṇika is heard of. A man becomes the chief of his kindred and is endowed with good qualities, when Daksha-Sávarṇika is heard of; he makes his enemies' power small \*
- 40 after hearing of Raućya, O best of men. He acquires the favour of the gods when the Bhautya manv-antara is heard of, and also obtains the sacred fire and sons endowed with
- 41 good qualities. And whoever listens to all the many-antaras in regular order, O best of munis, hearken to his supreme
- 42 reward also. After hearing of the gods, ṛishis, Indras, Manus, their sons the kings, and their genealogies therein, he is
- 43 delivered from all his sins. And the other gods, ṛishis, Indras and kings who rule over those manv-antaras are pleased with him, and when pleased they bestow a bright
- 44 intellect. Having obtained then a bright intellect and having performed a splendid deed, he attains a splendid course as long
- 45 as the fourteen Indras continue.† May all the seasons be salubrious; may all the planets be benign! Assuredly they are so, when he has listened to the ordinance of the many-antaras in their order.

---

CANTO CI.

---

*The Announcement of the Genealogies.*

*Márkaṇḍeya alludes to the famous races of kings and begins an account of the creation.—Brahmá created Daksha, and Daksha's daughter Aditi bore to Kaśyapa a son Mártaṇḍa, who was the Sun incarnate.—Márkaṇḍeya tells of the Mundane Egg and Brahmá's birth from it,—and expounds the word "Om."*

Kraushtuki‡ spoke :

- 1 Adorable Sir, thou hast duly expounded the ordinance of the manv-antaras, and I have ascertained it from thee

\* *Ni-śatayati*; not in dictionary.

† For *c'atur-dakṣaḥ* read *c'atur-dakṣa* with the Bombay edition.

‡ The discourse goes back to Canto lxxx, and Kraushtuki, who has disappeared during the Deví-máhátmya and the concluding account of the Manv-antaras, re-appears here with the genealogical portion of the Puráya.

- 2 gradually *and* at length. As I wish to hear of the complete genealogy of the kings of the earth, beginning from Brahmá and the other *progenitors*, O best of dvijas, do thou declare it to me duly, adorable Sir.

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 3 Listen, my son, to the origin of all the kings and their exploits, taking for the commencement the Prajá-pati who is  
4 the source of *this present* world, for this *his* progeny is adorned with kings, who celebrated many sacrifices, who were victorious in battle, who were wise in righteousness,  
5 who were numbered by hundreds. And by hearing of the exploits of these high-souled kings and their manifestations\*  
6 a man is delivered from all sins. The race, in which *arose* Manu and Ikshváku, An-aranya,† Bhagiratha and other kings in hundreds, who *all* protected their territories well,  
7 were wise in righteousness, performed sacrifices, were heroic and understood thoroughly the sublimest *matters*—when one hears about that race, a man is delivered from a multitude  
8 of sins. Hear then about this race wherefrom thousands of *subordinate* lines of kings were separated off like *subsidiary* stems from a banyan tree.
- 9 The Prajá-pati Brahmá, being desirous of yore of creating various peoples, created Daksha from his right thumb,‡ O  
10 best of dvijas ; and the adorable lord Brahmá who causes the birth of the worlds, *and* who is the supreme maker of the worlds, created a wife for him from his left thumb.  
11 Resplendent Aditi was born as a daughter to that Daksha,  
12 and of her Kaśyapa begot divine Mártaṇḍa,§ who has the nature of Brahmá,|| who bestows boons on all the worlds,

\* *Utpattayaś c'a* ; the Bombay edition reads the same. This is the nomin., and is inadmissible ; read instead *utpattíś c'aiva* ?

† This is the reading of the Bombay edition and is right. The Calcutta edition reads *Rañavanya* ; this name is given in the dictionary, but I have not met with it elsewhere.

‡ *Aṅgushṭhád dakshinád daksham* ; a play on the word. § I.e., the Sun.

|| The Bombay edition also reads *Brahmá sva-rúpam* ; but read *Brahma-svarúpam* instead ?

and who constitutes the beginning, the middle and the end in the operations of the creation, continuance and termination  
 13 of the world; from whom *proceeded* this universe and in whom everything subsists, O dvija; and whose nature this world  
 14 with its gods, Asuras and men possesses; who constitutes everything, *who is* the soul of all, the Supreme Soul, eternal. The Sun took birth in Aditi, after she had first propitiated him.

Kraushṭuki spoke :

15 Adorable Sir, I desire to hear what is the Sun's nature and what is the cause *why* he, the earliest god, became Kaśyapa's  
 16 son; and how he was propitiated by divine Aditi and Kaśyapa; and what he, the divine Sun, said when propitiated by her;  
 17 and what truly was his majestic power when he became incarnate, O best of munis. I wish to hear it in its fulness duly related, Sir, by thee.

Mārkaṇḍeya spoke :

18 Clear sublime Knowledge, Light, Luminosity *eternal and* free, Perfect Isolation,\* Understanding, Visible Manifesta-  
 19 tion,† Freedom of will, and Comprehension,‡ and Intelligence, and Perception, Memory and Discernment—these are  
 20 the forms of that luminous Form here. Harken also, illustrious sir, while I tell thee at length what thou hast asked, how the Sun became manifest.

21 In this *world*, destitute of light, obscure, which was enveloped with darkness all around, a single huge egg came  
 22 into existence, an imperishable most potent cause.§ It split open; within it stood the adorable fore-father, lotus-born Brahmá himself, who is the creator of the worlds, the lord.  
 23 Out of his mouth issued the great word "Om," O great muni; and then the Bhúr, after that the Bhuvás,|| and imme-

\* *Kaivalyam*.

† *Ávir-bhúṭ*; a word not in the dictionary.

‡ *Sam-vid*.

§ See Manu I. 5, &c.

|| These and the following words appear to mean both the utterances themselves and also the worlds that go by the same names, the Bhúr-loka

- 24 diately thereafter the Svar.\* These three mystic words  
therefore *express* the essential property of the Sun. Now  
from this essential property *indicated* by "Om" comes the  
25 subtle sublime form of the Sun. Next there *issued* the gross  
Mahar-loka, then the grosser Jana-loka, then the Tapo-loka,  
then the Satya-loka;—these are the seven-fold substantial  
26 forms. His permanent forms exist and do not exist, inasmuch  
as they assuredly come into existence in innate disposition  
and in feeling.†
- 27 The word "Om" which I have uttered, O bráhmaṇ, which  
has a beginning and an end, *which* is sublime, subtle, form-  
less, most sublime, permanent—that is the Supreme Spirit,  
yea his body.

---

CANTO CII.

---

*The Majesty of the Sun.*

Márkaṇḍeya says that from Brahmá's mouths issued the four Vedas  
and explains their peculiar qualities and transcendent merits—  
The gods and the Vedas are but manifestations of the Sun.

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 1 Now when that egg split open, out of the anterior mouth  
of Brahmá whose origin is inscrutable, O muni, came forth  
2 first the Ríć hymns, at once resplendent as the flowers of  
the China rose,‡ glorious in form, but disconnected,§ and  
divided into separate portions, and therefore bearing the

and the Bhavar-loka; and the meaning seems to be that, as he uttered each  
mystic word, the corresponding world came into existence.

\* The Svar-loka.

† Svabháva-bhāvayor bhávam yato gac'c'hanti saṁśayam. The Bombay  
edition reads the same, but it seems obscure. I have ventured to read  
gac'c'hyanty a-saṁśayam instead.

‡ Javá; Hibiscus rosa Sinensis. The flowers are very large and of a  
brilliant crimson-scarlet colour, very conspicuous.

§ Not in the order in which they are now arranged. For tejo-rúpánta-  
saṁhatáḥ the Bombay edition reads tejo-rúpá hy a-saṁhatáḥ, which I have  
adopted.



- 3 form of passion.\* Out of his right mouth *issued* the Yajus hymns, unimpeded, coloured like the colour of gold, and  
 4 disconnected. Out of the posterior mouth of the lord Brahmá, who is the highest of *all*, were revealed the Sáman  
 5 hymns, and the C'handas hymns. And the entire Atharvan† then, resplendent as a mass of black pigment or a cluster of bees,—that which has a nature as terrible as possible,‡ which contains the magical rites and the rites for removing  
 6 calamities,—became manifest out of the Creator's left mouth ; it is composed chiefly of pleasure, goodness and darkness,§ and has the essential properties of gentleness and harshness.  
 7 The Ríó hymns have the quality of passion ; and goodness is the quality|| of the Yajus hymns, O muni ; the Sáman hymns have the quality of darkness ; darkness and goodness  
 8 exist in the Atharvan hymns. These emanations, blazing indeed with unrivalled glory, obtained each a separate station almost at first.¶  
 9 That then was the original glory which is declared\*\* by uttering *the word* "Om." The glory which comes from the essential nature thereof—that, having encompassed it com-  
 10 pletely, remains fixed. As is the glory which consists of the Yajus, such is that of the Sámans, O great muni ; they have  
 11 grown into one in resorting to a supreme glory. Rites for the removal of calamities, and rites for promoting growth and magical rites also—these three things gained union†† with the three *Vedas*, the Ríó and the *two* others, O bráhmaṇ.

\* *Rajo-rúpa-vahás.*

† *Atharvāṇam*, neut. nomin. The meaning given in the dictionary is "the work, i.e., ritual of the Atharva-Veda," but here it must mean the Atharva-Veda itself. This Veda receives marked praise here.

‡ *Yāvad-ghora-svarūpam tad.*

§ *Sukha-sattva-tamaḥ-prāyam* ; *sukha* is peculiar in this connexion.

|| For *guṇá* read *guṇo* ? It is remarkable that a higher quality is given to the Yajur-Veda here than to the Ríg-Veda.

¶ *Pūrvam iva.*

\*\* *Abhi-śabdāyate* ; *abhi-śabd* as a verb is not in the dictionary.

†† *Layam agamat.* The reference seems to be to the Atharva-Veda ; see verse 5 where these rites are said to be part of that Veda. This passage then

- 12 This universe became most stainless then through the sudden  
destruction of darkness, and was to be developed horizontally,  
13 upwards and downwards, O bráhmaṇ pīṣhi. That excellent  
glory of the C'haudas became then an orb, and grew into  
14 oneness with the supreme glory, O bráhmaṇ. Since it  
obtained the name of Āditya at the very beginning, it became  
also the essentially unchanging cause of this universe, O  
illustrious Sir.
- 15 The triple *Veda*, which is named the Rīc, Yajus and Sáman,  
gives warmth in the morning and at mid-day and in the  
16 afternoon also. The Rīc hymns give warmth in the forenoon,  
and the Yajus hymns truly at mid-day, and the Sáman  
hymns give warmth truly in the afternoon, O best of munis.
- 17 Rites for the removal of calamities are deposited\* in the  
Rīc hymns in the forenoon, rites for promoting internal  
growth in the Yajus hymns at *mid-day*, and magical rites  
18 lastly in the Sáman at evening. Magical rites moreover  
*should be performed* at mid-day and in the afternoon equally,  
but the particular *ceremonies* for the Pitṛis should be per-  
formed with the Sáman in the afternoon.
- 19 In the creation of the world is manifested Brahmá, who is  
composed of the Rīc hymns; in its permanence† Vishṇu  
who is composed of the Yajus hymns; and Śiva, who is  
composed of the Sáman, at the dissolution; therefore its  
20 sound is impure.‡ Thus the adorable Sun, whose self is  
the Veda, who abides in the Veda and whose self is Vedic  
21 knowledge, is called the Supreme Soul.§ And he, the  
eternal, who is the cause of creation,|| permanence and  
dissolution, on taking recourse to passion, goodness and the

refers to the changes by which that work gained rank as a Veda. But these words may also mean "became blended with the three Vedas;" see verse 17 below.

\* *Vinyastam*.

† For *sthito* read *sthita* as in the Bombay edition.

‡ Manu says the sound of the Sáma-Veda is in a measure impure because it is sacred to the Pitṛis (IV. 124).

§ *Paraṁ puruṣaḥ*.

|| For *svarga*- read *sarga*- as in the Bombay edition.

other qualities, acquires the names of Brahmá, Vishṇu and the other gods.

- 22 Now ever to be praised by the gods is he whose body is the Veda,  
 Yet who has no body, who was in the beginning, who is embodied in all mortals ;  
 Who is the Light that is the refuge of the universe, who has righteousness that passes knowledge,  
 Who is to be attained unto in the Vedánta, supreme beyond *things that are* sublime !

---

CANTO CIII.

---

*Hymn to the Sun.*

*Brahmá, finding the Sun's glory too great for creation, offered a hymn to the Sun.—The Sun contracted his glory, and Brahmá accomplished the creation.*

Márkandeya spoke :

- 1 Now when *the egg* was being heated by his glory above and beneath, the lotus-born Forefather, being desirous of  
 2 creating, pondered—"My creation although accomplished will assuredly pass to destruction through the intense glory\* of the Sun, who is the cause of creation, dissolution and per-  
 3 manence, great of soul. Breathing beings *will* all be bereft of breath, the waters will dry up through his glory, and  
 4 without water there will be no creation of this universe." Pondering thus the adorable Brahmá, Forefather of the world, becoming intent thereon, composed a hymn to the adorable Sun.

Brahmá spoke :

- 5 I pay reverence *to thee* of whom everything consists  
 Here, and who consistest of everything ;  
 Whose body is the universe, *who art* the sublime Light  
 Whereon religious devotees meditate ;

\* *Abhi-tejasah* ; a word not in the dictionary.

- 6 Who art composed of the *Riç* hymns, who art the repository of the *Yajus* hymns,  
And who art the origin of the *Sáman* hymns ; whose power passes thought ;  
Who consistest of the three *Vedas* ;\* who art half a short syllable as touching grossness,†  
Whose nature is sublime, who art worthy of the fullness of good qualities.‡
- 7 To thee,§ the cause of all, who art to be known as supremely worthy of praise,||  
The supreme Light *that was* at the beginning, not in the form of fire ;¶  
And *who art* gross by reason that thy spirit is in the gods —to thee I pay reverence,  
The shining one, who wast in the beginning, the sublimest beyond the sublime !
- 8 Thine is the primeval power, in that urged on thereby I achieve *this* creation, which is in the forms of water, earth, wind and fire,  
Which has those *elements*, the gods and other *beings* for its objects, *and* which is complete with the word “ Om ” and other *sounds*—  
Not at my own wish ; and *that I effect* its continuance and dissolution in the self-same manner.

\* For *trayt-mayt* read *trayt-mayo* as in the Bombay edition.

† *Sthálatayárdha-mátrá* ; this seems obscure.

‡ *Guṇa-pára-yogyaḥ*. This may be taken in several ways ; “ who art adapted to the fullest measure of a suppliant’s good qualities,” or “ who art worthy of religious devotion by reason of the fullness of *thy* good qualities,” or “ who art worthy of religious devotion with the fullness of a suppliant’s good qualities.”

§ For *tañ* read *tvám* as in the Bombay edition.

|| The Bombay edition reads, but not so well, *paramāñ c’a vedyañ*, “ and who art to be known as the sublimest one.”

¶ The Bombay edition reads instead, *ádyam paramāñ jyotir a-vedya-rúpam*, “ the supreme Light that was in the beginning, whose form passes knowledge.”

- 9     Thou verily art fire. By reason of thy drying up of the  
        water thou achievest\*
- The creation of the earth and the primeval completion of  
        the worlds.
- Thou indeed, O lord, pervadest the very form of the sky.  
        Thou in five ways protectest all this world.
- 10    They who know the Supreme Soul sacrifice with sacrifices  
        to thee,  
        Who hast the nature of Vishṇu, who consistest of all  
        sacrifices, O Sun !  
        And self-subdued *ascetics*, who curb their souls and  
        thoughts, meditate  
        On thee, the lord of all, the supremest, while they desire  
        final emancipation from existence for themselves.
- 11    Reverence to thee, whose form is divine ;  
        To thee, whose form is sacrifice, be reverence ;  
        Yea to thee who in thy very nature art the Supreme Spirit,  
        Who art meditated upon by religious devotees !
- 12    Contract thy glory, since the abundance of thy glory  
        Tends to obstruct creation, O lord, and I am ready to begin  
        creation !

Mārkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 13    Being praised thus by the Creator Brahmá, the Sun  
        contracted his supreme glory *and* retained but very little.
- 14    And the lotus-born god accomplished the creation of the  
        world. Thus in those intervals of the former kalpas
- 15    illustrious Brahmá created indeed, as before, the gods,  
        Asuras and other *beings*, and mortals, cattle and other  
        *animals*, trees and shrubs and the hells, O great muni.

---

CANTO CIV.

---

*Praise of the Sun.*

*Brahmá finished the creation—He had a son Marí'ci, who had a son*

\* For *karomí*, "I achieve," the Bombay edition reads *karoshí*, which I have adopted as preferable.

*Kaśyapa—Kaśyapa married Daksha's thirteen daughters, and begot by them the gods, demons, mankind, animals, birds, &c.—The gods were subdued by the demons, and Aditi offered a hymn to the Sun, imploring his help.*

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 1 Having created this world, Brahmá then separated off the castes, the bráhmaṇ's four periods of life, the seas, the
- 2 mountains, and the islands even as before. The adorable lotus-born *god* fixed the forms and abodes of the gods, Daityas, Nágas and other *beings*, as before, according to the Vedas\* indeed.
- 3 Brahmá had a son, who was famed as Maríci ; his son was
- 4 Kaśyapa, namely Káśyapa by name.† Daksha's thirteen daughters were his wives, O bráhmaṇ ; and they had many children *who were* the gods, Daityas, Nágas and the rest.
- 5 Aditi gave birth to the gods who rule over the three worlds, Diti to the Daityas, and Danu to the fierce Dánavas whose
- 6 prowess is wide-reaching. And Vinatá bore Garuḍa and Aruṇa ; Khasá the Yakshas and Rákshasas indeed ; and
- 7 Kadru bore the Nágas ; Muni bore the Gandharvas ; from Krodhá were born the Kulyas ; and from Rishṭá the bebies of Apsarases ; and Irá bore Airávata and other elephants, O
- 8 dvija ; and Támrá bore daughters of whom Śyenú was the chief, O dvija, from *all of* whom were born the hawks,
- 9 vultures, parrots and other birds ; from Ilá were born the trees ; from Pradhá the various kinds of aquatic animals.‡
- This is the progeny which was begotten of Aditi by Kaśyapa.§
- 10 And by her sons and daughters' sons, by her sons' sons and

\* For *devebhyaḥ* the Bombay edition reads *Vedebhyaḥ*, which is preferable.

† *Káśyapo náma námataḥ* ; the Bombay edition agrees, but this can hardly be right. Káśyapa would be name of Kaśyapa's descendants.

‡ For *Pradháyáspatasám gaṇáḥ* read *Pradháyá yádasám gaṇáḥ* as in the Bombay edition.

§ Kaśyapa's wives and children are given differently in other authorities, e.g., Mahá-Bhárata, Adi-p., xvi, lxv. and lxvi ; Kúrma Puráṇa xviii ; Agni Puráṇa xix.

daughters' grandsons\* and other *descendants* this world was overspread, yea by the offspring of those *males* and those *females*, O muni.

- 11 The chief of those sons of Kaśyapa are the hosts of gods. Now these hosts are characterized by goodness, by passion  
 12 and by ignorance, O muni. Brahmá, the chief of those learned in sacred lore, the highest of *all*, the Prajá-pati, made the gods participators in the sacrifices, and rulers over the  
 13 three worlds. The hostile Daityas and Danavas and Rákshasas combining harassed them, and a very terrible war occurred  
 14 between them. Now the deities were vanquished for a thousand divine years, and the powerful Daityas and Dánavas  
 15 were victorious, O bráhmaṇ. Then Aditi, seeing her sons cast out and robbed of the three worlds by the Daityas and  
 16 Dánavas, O best of munis, and deprived of their shares of sacrifices, was exceedingly afflicted with grief, and made the  
 17 utmost efforts to propitiate the Sun. Concentrating her mind *thereon*, restricting her food, observing the utmost self-repression, she hymned the Sun, the ball of light that dwells in the sky.

Aditi spoke :

- 18 Reverence to thee who hast a sublime subtle golden body, O splendour of those who have splendour, O lord, O repository of splendours, O eternal one ! And the ardent form which thou hast who drawest up the waters for the benefit of the worlds, O lord of the *heavenly* cattle, to that I bow reverently ! The most ardent form which thou hast, who bearest the nectar that composes the moon to take it back during the space of eight months, to that I bow reverently !  
 21 The well-fattened† form which *thou hast*, who verily discharged all that same nectar to *produce* rain, to that thy cloud-form be reverence, O Sun ! And that light-giving form of thine, which tends to mature the whole kingdom of plants that are produced through the pouring forth of

\* *Dauhitríka*, a word not in the dictionary.

† *A-pyáyaka* ; a word not in the dictionary.

- 23 water, to that\* I bow reverently! And that form of thine which, when there is excessive cold by reason of the pouring forth of snow and other *causes*, tends to nourish the crops of that *winter* season—to the passing over of that thy *form*
- 24 be reverence! And that form of thine, which is not very ardent and which is not very cold, *and* is mild in the season of spring, to that be reverence, O divine Sun, *yea* reverence!
- 25 And *thy* other *form*, which fattens both all the gods and the pitris, to that which causes the ripening of the crops be
- 26 reverence! That one form of thine which, being composed of nectar for the vivification of plants, is quaffed by the gods and pitris, to that, which is the soul of the moon, be
- 27 reverence! That form of thine which, consisting of the universe, is combined with Agni and Soma these two forms of the Sun,† to that, the soul of which is the good quali-
- 28 ties,‡ be reverence! That form of thine which, named the three-fold *Veda* by reason of the unity of the *Riç*, *Yajus* and *Sáma Vedas*, gives heat to this universe, to that be reverence,
- 29 O luminous one! That thy form moreover, which transcends that *former one*, which is enunciated by uttering the word “Om,” *and* which is subtle, endless *and* stainless, reverence be to that, the soul of which is Truth!

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 30 In this manner the goddess, self-restrained, abstaining from food, offered praise day and night, desirous of propitiating the Sun, O muni.
- 31 A long time thereafter the adorable Sun rendered himself visible to her, Daksha's daughter, in the sky, O best of
- 32 dvijas. She beheld a huge mass of glory, dwelling in the sky and stationed on the earth, full of light, most difficult
- 33 to be gazed at because of its halo of flame. Seeing him then, the goddess became bold to the utmost and spoke—

\* For *taṁ* read *tan*?

† The Bombay edition reads *ápyáya-dáha-rúpábhyañ*, “two forms of fatness and conflagration.”

‡ *Gurátmāne* in the Bombay edition is better than *gaṇátmāne*.



- “Be gracious to me ! I *can* not gaze on thee, O lord of the  
 34 heavenly cattle. Since I while fasting have beheld thee, at  
 first standing in the sky *and* most difficult to be gazed upon,  
 35 *and* afterwards as brilliant and burning, even so I behold  
 thee here on earth a globe of glory. Be gracious; may I see  
 thy form, O maker of day ! O thou lord, who hast compas-  
 sion on thy believers, I believe ; protect my sons !
- 36 Thou, the Creator, createst this universe ;  
 Exerting thyself thou protectest it to make it permanent ;  
 In thee everything passes to its dissolution at the end.  
 Thou art it.  
 Besides thee verily there is no other way *of existence* in all  
 the world !
- 37 Thou art Brahmá *and* Hari ! thou bearest the name Aja !\*  
 Thou art Indra,  
 The lord of wealth *Kuvera*, the lord of the pitris *Yama*,  
 the lord of the waters† *Varuṇa*, the wind *Vayu* !  
 Thou art the Moon, Agni, the lord of the sky, the sup-  
 porter of the earth,‡ the Ocean !  
 What praise must be given to thee who art the splendour of  
 all souls and forms ?
- 38 O lord of sacrifice, bráhmans devoted to their own  
 ceremonies, day by day,  
 Praising thee with manifold words, offer sacrifice to thee.  
 Meditating on thee with firmly restrained minds 7  
*And* absorbed in religious devotion mortals§ attain unto  
 the sublimest condition.
- 39 Thou warmest, thou maturest the universe ; thou protectest  
 it, thou turnest it to ashes.

\* Either “the unborn one,” or “the driver, mover, instigator.”

† *Ambu-patiḥ* violates the metre ; read *ap-patiḥ* as in the Bombay edition.

‡ *Gagana-patiḥ mah-dhara* ; this is the reading of the Bombay edition.  
 The Calcutta reading *gagana-mah-dhara* makes the verse two syllables  
 short.

§ *Martyaḥ*, the reading of the Bombay edition. The Calcutta edition  
 reads instead *yoga-múrtiḥ*, “by means of the body which belongs to religious  
 devotion ;” but this violates the metre.

Thou makest it manifest, thou makest it sound forth\* with  
 thy rays which are pregnant with water.  
 Thou createst it again also in unerring manifestations.  
 Thou art revered by mortal *beings* that move, but art  
 unapproachable by workers of iniquity.†

---

CANTO CV.

---

*The Birth of Mártaṇḍa.*

*The Sun revealed himself to Aditi and became her son as Mártaṇḍa—  
 This name is explained—Mártaṇḍa destroyed the demons and  
 restored the gods to their sovereign positions.*

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 1 Thereupon from out of that his own glory the Sun re-  
 vealed‡ himself; the lord, the Sun, appeared then, like unto
- 2 glowing copper. And the luminous one spoke, O muni, unto  
 the goddess, who fell prostrate when she beheld him—
- 3 “Choose from me the coveted boon that thou desirest.” And  
 she, lying prostrate with her head *on the ground* and pressing  
 the earth with her knees, answered the Sun who present in  
 his very person offered her a boon :—
- 4 “O god! be gracious; the three worlds have been snatched§  
 from my sons, and the shares in sacrifices *also*, by both the
- 5 Daityas and the Dánavas who excel them in strength. Do  
 thou, O lord of the heavenly cattle, bestow on me favour for

\* *Hrádayasi* in both editions. The meaning is no doubt “to shout for joy;” see the Bible, Psalm lxx. 9-13.

† The Bombay edition reads the second half of this verse very differently—“Thou the lotus-born god createst it; thou who art named the Unwavering one protectest it, and thou destroyest it at the end of the age. Thou alone art awful in form!”

‡ For *ádir bháto* read *ávir-bháto*, as in the Bombay edition.

§ For *kṛitam* read *hṛitam*.

that purpose; with a portion of *thyself* enter thou into Brotherhood with them and destroy their enemies. In order that my sons may again partake of the shares of the sacrifices, O lord, and may become rulers of the three worlds, O Sun, do thou then most graciously show compassion\* on my sons, O Sun, who removest the afflictions of suppliants; thou art called the Author of permanence."

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

Thereupon the adorable lord, the Sun, the robber of the waters, spoke unto prostrate Aditi, O bráhmaṇ, while his countenance was benign with favour†—"Taking birth in thy womb with all my thousand portions, I *will* speedily destroy the foes of thy sons, O Aditi, in security."‡  
 Having spoken thus the adorable Sun vanished *from her sight*; and she ceased from her austerities, having gained all her desire. Thereupon the Sun's ray called Sausumna§ from out of his thousand rays|| became incarnate in the womb of the mother of the gods, O bráhmaṇ. And she, with her mind composed, performed the arduous cándráyaṇa penance¶ and other austerities. Being pure she conceived him, knowing that the embryo was a heavenly one, O bráhmaṇ. Then spoke Kaśyapa to her with words somewhat confused through anger,—“Why dost thou destroy the egg in thy womb by continual fasting?” And she said to him,—“Seest thou this egg within my womb, O wrathful man? It has not been destroyed; it shall be for the death of our adversaries.”

\* For *anukampá* read *anukampám*.

† For *prasádam sumukho* read *prasáda-sumukho*.

‡ For *nir-vṛitáḥ* read *nir-vṛitaḥ*.

§ This is the reading of both the editions, but it is not in the dictionary. *Su-shumṇu* is the name of one of the Sun's seven principal rays, that which is supposed to supply heat to the moon. The reading here should therefore presumably be *Su-shumṇa* or *Saushumṇa*.

|| For *raśmi-sahasraṁ* read *raśmi-sahasráṭ* as in the Bombay edition

¶ See Manu vi. 20.

Márkandeya spoke :

15 Having spoken so she, who is the path of the gods,\*  
 in anger at her husband's words, gave birth to the child then  
 16 which blazed brilliantly with glory. Kaśyapa, on seeing the  
 child which shone like the rising sun, fell prostrate and  
 17 praised it respectfully with ancient Ṛic hymns. Being  
 so praised, he revealed himself from out the foetal egg, having  
 a lustre like unto the petal of a lotus-flower, pervading the  
 18 regions of the sky with his glory. Moreover a voice deep  
 as a thunder-cloud's, addressing† Kaśyapa, best of munis,  
 from the air, spoke, issuing from no corporeal being—  
 19 "Whereas thou, O muni, hast spoken of this egg as des-  
 troyed‡ to thee, therefore, O muni, this thy son shall be  
 20 called Márttanḍa. And he as lord shall exercise the Sun's  
 sway on the earth; and he shall slay the Asuras, the foes  
 who have carried off the shares of the sacrifices."

21 The gods hearing this speech from heaven assembled  
 together, and experienced unparalleled joy; and the Dánavas  
 22 were bereft of their vigour. Thereupon Indra challenged  
 the Daityas to battle; and the Dánavas filled with joy  
 23 encountered the gods. Terrible was the battle of the gods  
 with the Asuras, wherein all the regions between the worlds  
 were rendered brilliant with the light from the arms and  
 24 weapons. In that battle the adorable Márttanḍa looked at  
 those great Asuras, and being burnt up by his splendour they  
 25 were reduced to ashes. Thereupon all the dwellers in  
 heaven experienced unparalleled joy, and praised Márttanḍa  
 26 the source of splendour and also Aditi; moreover they re-  
 gained their own spheres of dominion and their shares of the  
 sacrifices as before; and the adorable Márttanḍa also exer-  
 27 cised his own dominion. Like unto a rounded ball of fire  
 with rays shooting out both downward and upward like a  
 globular flower-head of the kadamba, the Sun assumed a  
 body that did not flash over-poweringly.

\* This is the Bombay reading, *surāraṇiḥ*. The Calcutta reading *surāvaniḥ* seems incorrect.

† For *ābhāsya* read *ābhāshya*?

‡ *Māritam aṇḍam*.

## CANTO CVI.

*The paring down of the Sun's body.*

*The Sun married Viśva-karman's daughter Sañjñā and had three children by her, Manu Vaivasvata, Yama and Yamunā—Sañjñā could not endure the Sun's glory and leaving her shadow C'háyā departed—C'háyā-Sañjñā took her place and had three children by the Sun—She cursed Yama for unfilial conduct, but the Sun minimised the curse and perceived the deception.—The Sun visited Viśva-karman and the latter placing the Sun on his wheel pared down his glory—The world was thrown into chaos as the Sun was whirled around—The gods and celestial beings hymned the Sun.*

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 1 Now the Prajá-pati Viśva-karman, after falling prostrate and propitiating him, gave his daughter named Sañjñā to
- 2 *the Sun*, Vivasvat.\* Mann Vaivasvata was begotten by Vivasvat of her then, and his nature has been already indeed
- 3 declared particularly.† He, *Vivasvat*, lord of the *heavenly* cattle, begot three children of her, two most illustrious sons
- 4 and a daughter Yamunā, O muni. Manu Vaivasvata was the eldest, the god who presides over śráddhas, the Prajá-pati ;
- 5 then were born Yama and Yamí as twins. With the exceeding splendour that Mártaṇḍa Vivasvat possessed, he scorched the three worlds and the moveable and immoveable things
- 6 therein very grievously. But Sañjñā saw Vivasvat's globe-like form and, being impatient of his great splendour, gazed at her own shadow C'háyā and spoke :—

Sañjñā spoke :

- 7 Fare thee well ! I will go to my father's very own abode. Yet thou must stay here without change at my command, O

\* See Canto lxxvii. The same story is repeated here.

† See Canto lxxviii, verse 27, and Canto lxxix.

- 8 fair one ; and thou must show honour to these two boys for me and to *this* daughter who is of noble rank ; and thou must not declare this at all to the god.

C'háyá the Shadow spoke :

- 9 "Unto *enduring* the seizing of my hair, unto undergoing curses, O goddess, I will never declare thy intention ; go where thou wishest."
- 10 Being addressed thus by C'háyá, Sañjñá went to her father's dwelling ; and there she, the beautiful of eyes,
- 11 abode some time in her father's house. Her father told her again and again to go to her husband. Then turning herself into a mare she departed to the Northern Kurus, O bráhmaṇ.
- 12 There, *like* a chaste wife, she practised austerities, fasting, O great muni.

- When Sañjñá had gone to her father, C'háyá, assiduous to
- 13 *Sañjñá's* command, and assuming her form, waited on the Sun ; and the adorable Sun begat of her, *he* thinking it was
- 14 of Sañjñá, two sons in addition and a daughter. The first-born of the two sons was equal to the eldest son Manu,
- 15 hence he was called Sávarṇi, O best of dvijas. And the other, who was the second son, became the planet Saturn.
- 16 And the daughter who was Tapatí, her king Samvarapa chose in marriage.\*

- Now as queen Sañjñá used to behave to those her own sons,
- 17 C'háyá did not behave to those eldest born *sons* with such affection. Manu suffered that *conduct* in her, and Yama did
- 18 not suffer it in her. Now being sorely distressed when his father's wife used to beseech him frequently, he Yama, by reason of both anger and childishness and indeed by the
- 19 force of predestination, threatened C'háyá-Sañjñá with his foot, O muni, and thereupon the Shadow-Sañjñá,† full of resentment, cursed Yama severely.

\* See Mahá-Bhárata, Âdi-p. xciv. 3738, xcv. 3791 ; and clxxi-clxxiii where it is described how Sambarapa while hunting met her, fell in love with her and gained her at length after propitiating the Sun. Her son was Kuru, the progenitor of the Kauravas.

† This must be C'háyá-Sañjñá ; but both editions read *Sañjñá*.

C'háyá spoke :

- 20 "Since thou threatenest thy father's wife, a venerable lady, with thy foot, thy very foot shall therefore assuredly drop down."
- 21 Now Yama was deeply afflicted in mind at that curse, and he, righteous of soul, along with Manu made it all known to his father.

Yama spoke :

- 22 O lord, our mother behaves not with equal affection towards us *all*; leaving us aside who are the elder, she wishes to foster
- 23 the two younger. I lifted my foot against her, but did not let it fall on her body; whether *it was* through childishness or
- 24 through foolishness, do thou, Sir, deign to pardon it. I have been cursed, dear father, by my mother in *her* anger. Since *I am her* son, verily therefore I revere her, my mother, (O best
- 25 of ascetics). Even towards unworthy sons a mother is not wanting in good feelings, O father; how shall *a mother* say
- 26 this out—"May thy foot drop down, O son!" Think, O adorable\* lord of the *heavenly* cattle, *of some way* so that through thy favour ~~this~~ my foot may not drop down now by reason of my mother's curse.

The Sun spoke :

- 27 Without doubt, my son, this curse must take effect here, since anger entered into thee, who art wise in righteousness
- 28 *and* who speakest truth. For all curses indeed a remedy assuredly exists; yet nowhere is there that which can turn a
- 29 curse away from those who are cursed by a mother. This thy mother's word then cannot be made false; I will *however* devise something as a favour for thee, because of my love for
- 30 *thee* my son. Insects taking *some* flesh *from thy* foot shall go forth to the earth;† her word *is thus* made true, and thou shalt be saved.

\* For *bhagaván* read *bhagavan* as in the Bombay edition.

† See Canto lxxviii, verse 28.

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 31 Now the Sun said to C'háyá,—“ Why among thy sons,  
 who are quite equal, dost thou show more affection to one?  
 32 Assuredly thou art not Sañjñá the mother of these ; thou art  
 some one *else* come in her stead ; for how could a mother curse  
 one son even among worthless children ?”

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 33 And she avoiding that *question* gave no answer to the Sun.  
 And he concentrating his soul fell into abstract thought\* and  
 34 perceived the truth. C'háyá-Sañjñá saw the lord of heaven  
 was ready to curse her, and trembling with fear declared to  
 35 him what had happened, O bráhmaṇ. Now the Sun, enraged at  
 hearing that, went then to his father-in-law. And he paid  
 honour fittingly to the Maker of day, and being strictly  
 religious he pacified him who wished to burn him up in his  
 wrath.

Viśva-karman spoke :

- 36 Permeated with surpassing glory is this thy form which  
 is so hardly endurable ; hence Sañjñá, unable to endure it,  
 37 practises austerities in the forest in sooth. Thou shalt now  
 see her, Sir, thy own wife, beautiful in her behaviour, prac-  
 tising most arduous austerities in the forest on account of  
 38 thy *too glorious* form. I remember Brahmá's word : if it  
 please thee, my lord, I *will* restrain thy beloved form, O lord  
 of heaven.

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 39 Inasmuch as the Sun's form was formerly spherical, so the  
 40 adorable Sun said to Tvashtṛi, “ Be it so !” And Viśva-  
 karman, being permitted by the Sun in Śáka-dvīpa, mounted  
 the Sun on his wheel and set to work to pare down his glory.  
 41 While the Sun, which was the centre of all the worlds, was  
 whirling round, the earth with its oceans, mountains and  
 42 forests mounted up to the sky, and the whole heavens with  
 the moon, planets and stars went downward, and were tossed

\* For *muktas* read *yuktas* as in the Bombay edition.



- 43 together *and* confused, O illustrious bráhmaṇ. And all  
*creatures* also were scattered about with the waters out of  
 the ocean;\* lofty hills were shattered to pieces, their sum-  
 44 mits and roots were torn asunder. The supports of the pole,  
 all the asterisms,† O best of munis, with their bands and  
 45 foundations splitting, went downwards in thousands. Hurled  
 away by the wind caused by the swift whirling, great  
 clouds wandering about with terrible thunder crumbled to  
 46 pieces all around. The earth, the air and the nether regions,  
 rolled about by the Sun's whirling, uttered their voices ;  
 47 there was exceeding chaos then, O best of munis. While all  
 the worlds were whirling round, O bráhmaṇ, the divine  
 rishis and the gods with Brahmá sang praises to the Sun :—  
 48 “Thou art the most ancient god among the gods ; this is  
 known from thy nature. At the periods of creation, conti-  
 nuance and dissolution thou existest with a triple division.  
 49 Hail to thee, O lord of the world, thou producer of warmth,  
 rain and snow ! Have pleasure in the peace of the worlds,  
 O god of gods, O Maker of the day !”  
 50 And Indra approaching the god, as he was being pared  
 down, praised him,—“Be victorious, O god who pervadest  
 51 the world ! Be victorious, O lord of all the worlds !” And  
 the seven rishis next, with Vasishṭha and Atri at their head,  
 praised *the Sun* with various hymns, exclaiming “Hail !  
 52 hail !” And the Bálikhilyas then, filled with joy, praised the  
 Sun with the noblest and most ancient Ríś hymns enunciated  
 53 in the Veda, as he was being pared down—“Thou, O master,  
 art final emancipation from existence to those who strive  
 after emancipation ; thou art worthy to be contemplated as  
 the supreme *one* by those who engage in contemplation !  
 Thou art the way for all created beings, even for those who  
 54 are occupied with ritual.‡ May there be a blessing for the

\* This is the reading of the Bombay edition which is preferable, *abdhitaḥ*, instead of *arc'ishaḥ*.

† For *dhishtyáni* read *dhiśhnyáni*.

‡ *Karma-kánde* ; the department of the Veda which relates to ceremonial acts and sacrificial rites.

people, O lord of the gods! May there be a blessing for us, O lord of the worlds! May there ever be a blessing for us in what is two-footed! And may there be a blessing for us in what is four-footed!"

55 Then the bands of Vidyádhara and the Yakshas, Rákshasas  
and Nágas joining their hands reverently all fell prostrate  
56 with their heads before the Sun, and uttered words such as  
these, giving joy to his mind and ears,—“May thy glory become  
endurable to created beings, O thou who causest created  
57 beings to exist!” Next Háhá and Huhu, Nárada and Tumburu,  
who were skilful in music, and who were accomplished in the  
58 three musical scales based on the shadja, madhyama and  
gándhára notes,\* began to sing in joy-giving accents to the  
Sun both with modulations† and various divisions of time,‡  
59 with combinations.§ And Viśvác’í and Ghṛitácí, Urvaśí and  
Tilottamá, Menaká and Saha-janyá and Rambhá,|| the choicest  
60 among the Apsarases, danced whilst the Sun, the lord of the  
worlds, was being pared down, the while they displayed¶  
many dramatic actions replete with amorous and coquettish  
61 gestures and dalliance. Then were caused to give forth their  
music there flutes and lutes, and other musical pipes, drums  
62 and kettle-drums, tabours, large drums and double drums, the  
drums of the gods and conchs in hundreds and thousands.  
And every place was rendered loudly resonant by the  
63 Gandharvas who were singing, and the bovies of Apsarases  
who were dancing, and with the sounds of trumpets and  
musical instruments.

Then all the gods, joining their hands reverently, and  
64 bowing their bodies in faith, prostrated themselves before  
the Thousand-rayed god as he was being pared down. In

\* See page 130, note †.

† *Márc’haná*; see page 131, note \*.

‡ *Tála*; see page 131, notes † and ||. But the Bombay edition reads *tánais*, “with protracted tones.”

§ *Sa-prayogaiḥ*; or *samprayogaiḥ* as in the Bombay edition.

|| For *Rambhá’s c’a* read *Rambhá c’a*.

¶ Both editions read *kurvanto*, but read *kurvatyo* instead?

that resounding noise, where all the gods were gathered together, Viśva-karman then gradually diminished his glory.

- 65 After hearing thus of the paring down of the body of the Sun, who is the cause of the cold, rainy and hot seasons, and who is praised by Viṣṇu on the lotus seat of Śiva, one goes\* to the Sun's world at the close of life.

---

CANTO CVII.

---

*Hymn to the Sun.*

*Viśva-karman praises the Sun, while he is reducing the Sun's splendour.*

Mārkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 1 While the Sun was being pared down, the Prajā-pati Viśva-karman then uttered this hymn, wherewith his hair stood erect with joy,† to the Sun.
- 2 "To the Sun, who is compassionate for the welfare of those who fall prostrate before him, who is great of soul, who has seven equally swift horses, who has great glory, who awakens the beds of lotuses, who splits asunder‡ the covering of the
- 3 veil of darkness, be reverence ! To him who works merit through the superabundance of fire, who gives many objects of desire, who reclines amid beams of radiant fire, who brings
- 4 welfare to all the world, be reverence ! To the Sun, who is without birth§, the cause of the three worlds, the soul of created beings, the lord of the heavenly cattle, the bull, highest among those who are greatly compassionate, the home
- 5 whence the eye originated,|| be reverence ! To the Sun, who

\* For *vajati* read *vrajati*.

† *Udbhūta-pulaka-stotram* ; both editions read the same, but *udbhūta-pulakaḥ stotram* would seem preferable.

‡ *Ava-pāṇine* ; a word not in the dictionary.

§ *Ajāya* ; or "who is the driver, the instigator."

|| *C'akshuḥ-prabhavādayāya* ; or "the pre-eminent abode of the eye."

is maintained by knowledge, *who is* the inmost soul,\* the foundation of the world, desirer of the world's welfare, the self-existent, the eye of all the worlds, highest among the  
 6 gods, boundless in glory, be reverence! *Thou*, for a moment the crest jewel of the day-spring mountain†, the honoured messenger‡ of the hosts of gods to the world, thou, whose body consists of a thousand wide-spreading rays of light,  
 7 shinest on the world, driving away the darknesses. By reason of *thy* intoxication from drinking up like spirituous liquor the darkness of the world, thy body has acquired a deep red *hue*,§ O Sun, so that thou shinest exceedingly with  
 8 masses of light that calls the three worlds into life. Mounting thy equally proportioned chariot that sways about gracefully and is widely pleasing||, with horses that are ever unwearied¶, O adorable *god*, thou coursest the broad world  
 9 for *our* good.\*\* O Sun, thou purifier of the three worlds, protect me, who am devoted to thy parrot-hued steeds, *and who am* most pure†† through the dust of thy feet, *and who am*

\* For *jñána-bhūtántarátmane* (the third syllable of which violates the metre, the *Vamśa-sthāvīla*) the Bombay edition reads *jñána-bhṛte 'ntarátmane*, which I have adopted.

† For *udayác'ala-mauli-máline* (the last word of which violates the metre, the *Sumukhī*) the Bombay edition reads *udayác'ala-mauli-manīḥ*, which I have adopted.

‡ *Sura-gaṇa-mahita-hito*; both editions read the same, but the word *mahita* violates the metre; it should consist of a long and a short syllable. Perhaps the word should be *mánya*.

§ For *vilohita-vigrahát* (which violates the metre in the last word) the Bombay edition reads *vilohita-vigrahátá*, which is correct.

|| *C'áru-vikampitam uru-ruc'wam*; both editions read the same, but it violates the metre, the *Sumukhī*. I would suggest as an amendment *Ruc'ira-vikampitam úrdhva-c'aram*, "that sways about pleasingly, moving on high."

¶ For *akhila-hayair*, which violates the metre, read *akhinna-hayair* with the Bombay edition.

\*\* *C'arasi jagad-dhitáya vitatam*; both editions read the same, but it violates the metre, the *Sumukhī*. The metre is satisfied by altering the words, *c'arasi hitáya jagad vitatam*.

†† Instead of *-pavitra-talam* I take the Bombay reading *-pavitra tamam*!

- 10 prostrate before thee, O thou who art kind to folk that bow to thee! Thus to the Sun, who exists as the procreator of all the worlds, who is the sole cause of the glory that calls the three worlds into life,\* who exists as the lamp of all the worlds—to thee, O choicest of the thirty gods, I ever prostrate myself!”†

---

CANTO CVIII.

---

*The Majesty of the Sun.*

*From the glory pared off from the Sun, Viśva-karman made the gods' weapons.—The Sun found his wife among the Northern Kurus and begat of her the Aśvins and Revanta.—The stations allotted to the Sun's offspring are declared.*

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 1 While he was thus hymning the Sun Viśva-karman kept intact in spherical shape the sixteenth part of the glory of
- 2 the lord of heaven; and when fifteen parts of his glory had been pared away, the Sun's body was exceedingly beauti-
- 3 ful and charming then. And with the splendour that was pared away from him was fashioned Viṣṇu's discus; and
- 4 Śiva's trident, and Kuvera's palki, the rod of the lord of the dead, and the spear of the gods' general. And Viśva-
- 5 karman made the brilliant weapons of the other gods with the Sun's splendour for the quelling of their foes. He whose splendour had been thus pared down shone with no
- 6 excessive splendour. Márttaṇḍa retained a body resplendent in every limb.

\* Instead of *Tri-bhuvana-pávana-dhāma-bhūtam*, which violates the metre, the *Pushpitāgrā*, I have taken the Bombay reading *Tri-bhuvana-bhāvana-dhāma-hetum ekam*.

† The Calcutta reading *Devam praṇato 'smi Viśva-karmāṇam* violates the metre, and is incorrect because it is Viśva-karman who is speaking. I have followed the Bombay reading *Tridāsa-vara praṇato 'smi sarvadā tvām*. Instead of these last two words *Viśva-karmā* might well be read.

Concentrating his thoughts he beheld his wife in the form  
 7 of a mare, unassailable by all created beings by reason of her  
 austerities and self-repression. And going to the Northern  
 8 Kurus, the Sun became a horse and approached her. And  
 she, beholding him approaching, because of her fear of a  
 strange male, went face to face with him, being intent on  
 9 guarding her rear. And thereupon they joined their noses,  
 when they both met there, and his glory *passed* from the  
 10 Sun's two nostrils\* into the mare. Two gods were begotten  
 there, the two Ásvins, who are the two best physicians,  
*namely* Násatya and Dasra, the sons who issued forth from  
 11 the mare's† mouth; these two are indeed the sons of Márt-  
 taṇḍa while he bore a horse's form. And at the termination  
 of the flow of his semen was born Revanta, holding a sword  
 12 and bow, clad in armour, riding on horseback, *and* carrying  
 arrows and a quiver.

Then the Sun revealed his own unsullied form. She  
 13 perceiving his form was mild felt a joy; and the Sun, the  
 robber of the waters, led to his own home this his wife  
 14 Sañjñá, changed *again* into her own form and full of love.

After that he who was her first-born son became Manu  
 Vaivasvata.

15 And the second was "Yama"‡ because of the curse, and  
 he was "The Righteous-eyed" because of *his father's* favour.  
 Now *he was called* Yama as having been greatly afflicted in  
 16 mind by that curse; *and* since righteousness delights him,  
 he is known therefore as the "King of righteousness,"  
 17 'Worms taking flesh from thy foot shall fall to the earth'—  
*so saying* his father himself put§ an end to this curse. And  
 because he is righteous-eyed, he is impartial to the good and  
 18 the evil. Therefore the Dispeller of darkness appointed him  
 to the southern region; his adorable father gave to him the

\* *Násikábhyaṁ*. *Násiká* here has its original meaning.

† The Calcutta edition reads *asva-vaktrád* and the Bombay *asvi-vaktrád*;  
 read however *asvá-vaktrád*?

‡ "Restraint, check."

§ For *c'akte* read *c'akre*.

- 19 duty of protecting the world, O bráhmaṇ, and the lordship over the pítṛis.

And the Sun, being well-satisfied, made Yamuná the river which flows from the recesses of *mount Kalinda*.

- 20 The two Ásvins were made the gods' physicians by their high-souled father.

- And Revanta was appointed to the lordship over the  
 21 Guhyakas; and even thus spoke the adorable *god* then who is acknowledged by the world,—“Thou shalt indeed be  
 22 worthy of worship by the entire world, my child; and mortals, who shall call thee to mind amid the terrors of forests and other *lonely places*, of great conflagrations, of enemies and robbers, shall be delivered out of great calamity.  
 23 Comfort, intelligence, happiness, kingship, perfect health, fame, exalted position—*these*, when worshipped *and* well-satisfied, thou shalt bestow on men.”

- 24 And Cháyá-Saṅjñá's son Sávarṇa was of very great fame; he will be the eighth Manu, *by name* Sávarṇaka, in a future  
 25 time. At present, indeed, *this* lord performs terrible austerities on Meru's summit. His brother became the planet Saturn  
 26 according to the Sun's command.\* Now the Sun's daughter, who was younger than they, O bráhmaṇ, became that best of rivers, the Yamuná, which cleanses the world.†

- 27 Now I will speak fully of Manu Vaivasvata, who was the illustrious eldest *son*, and to whom belongs *this* present  
 28 creation. He, who may either hear or read of this, the origin of the gods who are the offspring of Vivasvat, and  
 29 of the Sun's majesty, may obtain deliverance when he falls into calamity and may gain great fame. *This story of the* majesty of the primeval god, the high-souled Márttaṇḍa, when listened to, quells the sin that has been committed by day or night.

\* See Canto cvi, verse 15. In Canto lxxviii, verse 33 he and his elder brother are not distinguished clearly.

† This is a mistake, see verse 19 above. She was Tapatí, see Canto lxxviii, verse 34, and Canto cvi, verse 16.

## CANTO CIX.

*Praise of the Sun.*

*Márkaṇḍeya tells the story of king Rájya-var dhana.—After the king had reigned many years, his queen sorrowed over finding a grey hair in his head—He comforted her and resolved to depart to the forest—His vassals and subjects tried to dissuade him and in vain—They performed many austerities in order to propitiate the Sun and went to Káma-rúpa and continued their worship—At length the Sun appeared to them in bodily shape.*

Kraushṭuki spoke :

- 1 Adorable Sir! thou hast well declared the birth of the Sun's offspring, the majesty of the primeval god and his nature
- 2 at very full length. Nevertheless I desire, O best of munis, to hear more about the Sun's majesty comprehensively; deign therefore with favour to tell me of it.

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 3 Be it heard *then* ! I tell thee of the majesty of the primeval god, Vivasvat, what he did formerly when worshipped by mankind.
- 4 There was a famous king, Dama's son, *named* Rájya-var dhana;\* he, lord of the earth, kept the earth well protected.
- 5 Now the realm, being protected by that high-souled *monarch* in righteousness, increased day by day in people and wealth, O
- 6 bráhmaṇ. And joyous and thriving exceedingly were all the subordinate kings on the earth without exception, while he *was* king; and so also were his people, both town and country
- 7 folk. No portent *visited* them, nor sickness, nor the fear that comes from serpents, nor was there fear of drought there,
- 8 while Dama's son was king. And hé offered up great sacrifices, and gave gifts to those who asked; he enjoyed even the

\* He is mentioned in the Vishṇu Pur. IV. i. Dama was son of Narishyanta and grandson of the great Marutta. The story of these three kings is told in cantos cxxix to cxxvi below, and the Puráṇa ends abruptly with Dama. Rájya-var dhana is called Rásht̥ra-var dhana in the Váyu Puráṇa.



pleasures of sense without hindrance to true righteousness.

9 While he ruled the kingdom thus *and* protected his people  
duly, seven thousand years passed away as if a single day.

10 Now the daughter of Vidúratha, king of the South, was his  
11 queen, Mánini by name *and* high-spirited\* *indeed*. One day  
she, the fine-browed noble *lady*, shed tears when his head had  
not been dressed with ointment, in the sight of the king's  
12 folk. When her tear-drops *fell* on the king's body, he saw  
Mánini was of tearful countenance then and questioned her.  
13 In sooth beholding her weeping and shedding tears silently,  
14 Rájya-vardhana asked Mánini, "Why is this?" But she,  
being prudent, when questioned by her husband, replied then,  
15 "It is nothing." The king questioned her again.† And after  
the king *had* questioned her often, she, the slender-waisted  
*lady*, showed him a grey hair growing among his abundant  
16 locks. "Look at this, O king; is this a cause of vexation to  
me, most luckless that I am?" And the king laughed thereat.

17 With a smile quoth he to his wife—while listened all the  
kings and citizens, *and* the kings who were assembled there—  
18 "Away with grief, O wide-eyed *lady*! thou must not weep,  
pretty one! Birth, growth, decline of life and other changes  
19 *befall* all living beings. I have studied all the Vedas; I have  
offered sacrifices by thousands; I have given *alms* to bráh-  
mans; and I have begotten sons, O *lady* of finest countenance;  
20 I have enjoyed along with thee pleasures which are very  
hardly attainable by mortals; and I have protected the earth  
21 well; I have borne myself ably in battles; I have laughed  
with my beloved friends; and I have sported in the heart  
of the woods. What else is there which I have not done,  
22 that thou art frightened at grey hairs, O lady? Let my hair  
become grey; let wrinkles come to me, O beauteous one; let  
my body pass into weakness; *for* I have been successful, O  
23 Manini! Because thou hast shown me a grey hair on my  
head, O lady, here then I take medical treatment therefor  
24 through resorting to the forest. First in childhood *there is*

\* Mánini.

† For bhápaḥ read bháyaḥ.

childhood's action ; similarly *there is* action which *is natural* in youth ; and also such as is fitting in early manhood ; in old  
 25 age there is resort to the forest. Since those who lived before  
 me did so, lady, and also those who lived before them,  
 I see no reason whatever then for thee to shed tears. Away  
 26 with thy vexation ! Does not the sight of this grey hair  
 cause me elevation ? Weep not ; it is futile."

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

27 Then the kings and citizens who were in his presence did  
 him reverence, and the kings addressed Rájya-varohana with  
 conciliatory words, O great ṛishi :—

28 "It is not for thee to weep with this thy wife, O king ; it is  
 29 we *who* must weep here, or rather all living beings. Since  
 thou, O master, speakest the word indicating that thou wilt  
 dwell in the forest, life falls therefore from us who have been  
 30 tenderly cherished by thee, O king. We will all go, O king,  
 if thou goest to the forest. All the inhabitants of the earth  
 31 will thereby suffer loss in all their ceremonies without doubt,  
 when thou, O master, shalt take up thy abode in the forest ;  
 and if that *loss* tends to injure righteousness, let that *course*  
 32 be discarded. Seven thousand years this earth has been  
 guarded by thee ; have regard, O king, to the great merit that  
 33 has accrued therefrom ! The austerities, which thou, O great  
 king, wilt perform while dwelling in the forest, are not worth\*  
 the sixteenth part of this thy guardianship over the earth ! "

The king spoke :

34 "Seven thousand years I have protected this earth ; now  
 35 this my time has come to dwell in the forest. I have begotten  
 children. Now that I have seen my children and their de-  
 scendants, Death truly will not allow me a very few days.  
 36 Understand, O citizens, that this grey hair on my head has  
 become a messenger from ignoble Death, who is very sharp  
 37 in his actions. Being such, I will place my son in my kingdom,  
 and abandon worldly pleasures, and will, as a dweller in the  
 forest, perform austerities until Yama's troops arrive *for me*."

\* For *nárhanti* read *nárhati* ?

## Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 38 Being desirous of departing to the forest the king then en-  
 quired of the astrologers about the *best days* and moments for  
 39 anointing his son in the kingdom. And on hearing the king's  
 speech they became confused in mind ; they who were skilled  
 in the scriptures knew not the day nor moment nor the hours.\*  
 40 And the astrologers spoke to the king *with voices* inarticulate  
 with tears ;—" Our various knowledge has perished after that  
 we have heard this thy speech, O king."
- 41 Then *people* came in a multitude both from other cities and  
 also from dependent countries, and next from that city.  
 42 Springing up, O muni, the most eminent bráhmans, their heads  
 quivering *with emotion*, addressed the king who desired to  
 43 depart to the forest ;—" Be gracious ! Protect us, O king,  
 as we have been protected a long time past. The whole world  
 will sink down, when thou, O king, hast betaken thyself to  
 44 the forest. Do thou then so act, O king, that the world sink  
 not. And while we, such *as we are*, live *our* very short time, O  
 hero, we desire not to see the regal throne deprived of thee, O  
 lord."

## Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 45 Thus both they and other dvijas heading the citizens, and  
 kings, dependants and ministers appealed to *him*, and appealed  
 46 again and again ; *but* when he does not withdraw his deter-  
 mination to *take up his* abode in the forest, and returns them  
 47 the answer, " Death will not suffer it," both his ministers and  
 dependants, and the citizens, and the aged men and the dvijas,  
 assembled together and took counsel, " What must be done  
 48 here ? " While they took counsel, O bráhman, this reso-  
 lution developed there among those who were devotedly attached  
 49 to that most righteous king—" Giving ourselves over absolutely  
 to deep meditation, we *will* with composed minds propitiate  
 the Sun with austerities and beseech him for this king's life."
- 50 Being all resolved alike there on *that* object, some of *them* paid  
 adoration to the Sun with *their own* bodies, by presenting to

\* *Hord* (the Greek word) ; or " the rising of the zodiacal signs."

him the argha offering and presents and other oblations in due  
 51 course ; others gratified the Sun by maintaining silence, and  
 52 others by repeating the Rîc, Yajus and Sâman hymns ; and  
 other dvijas abstaining from food and lying down on river sand-  
 banks, wearied with austerities, made propitiation of the Sun ;  
 53 and others, applying themselves to the oblation to Fire, day  
 and night repeated hymns composed to the Sun ; others cast-  
 54 ing their eyes on the Sun remained standing there. Even  
 thus, applying themselves to those several rites, did they work  
 in manifold ways with exceeding determination in order to  
 propitiate the Sun.

55 Now while they were striving thus to propitiate the Sun, a  
 56 Gandharva named Sa-dâman came near and spoke thus—"If  
 ye desire, O dvijas, to propitiate the Sun, let this then be done,  
 57 whereby the Sun will become well-pleased. Therefore—there  
 is a forest named Guru-viśâla, frequented by the Siddhas, in  
 very mountainous Kâma-rûpa—go there verily in haste.  
 58 There perform your propitiation of the Sun with minds com-  
 pletely composed ; the Siddhas' friendly region is there ; there  
 ye shall obtain all your desires."

Mârkaṇḍeya spoke :

59 On hearing this his speech, those dvijas went to that forest  
 and beheld the sacred and beautiful shrine of the Sun there.  
 60 Those brâhmanas and *men of* other castes, diminishing their food,  
 and being indefatigable, O brâhman, offered worship there en-  
 61 riched with incense, flowers and oblations ; and with composed  
 minds, celebrating his worship with flowers, unguents and  
 other *gifts*, with incense, perfumes and other *fragrance* also,  
 with prayers, sacrificial oblations, food, lamps and other *offer-*  
*ings*, those dvijas gratified the Sun, O brâhman.

The brâhmanas spoke :

62 Let us approach the Sun as our refuge, the god who in splen-  
 dour surpasses gods, Dânavas and Yakshas, the planets, and  
 63 the heavenly bodies ; the lord of gods, who dwelling also  
 in the sky makes *everything* around brilliant, and penetrates  
 64 the earth and the atmosphere with his rays ; *even him who has*

*the names Aditya, Bháskara, Bhánu, Savitrī, Divákara, Púshan*  
 65 *and Aryaman, Svar-bhánu ;\* him who has flaming rays, who is*  
*the fire which shall destroy the universe at the end of the four*  
*ages, difficult to be gazed at, who persists to the end of the*  
 66 *final dissolution ; the lord of yogins, and the never-ending one ;*  
*who is red, yellow, white and black ; him who dwells in the*  
*oblation made to Fire by ṛishis, and among the gods of sacri-*  
*fice ; imperishable, sublime, secret, who is the supreme gate to*  
 67 *final emancipation from existence ; and who traverses the sky*  
*with hymns in the form of horses which are yoked together at*  
*his rising and setting ; who is always intent on circumambulating*  
 68 *Meru reverently. And we have sought unto the light-giver,*  
*who is not true and yet true, who is a sacred multiform place*  
*of pilgrimage, who is the permanence of the universe, and is be-*  
 69 *yond thought ; him who is Brahmá, who is Siva, who is Vishnu,*  
*who is Prajá-pati ; who is the wind,† the atmosphere and water,*  
 70 *the earth and its mountains and oceans ; who is the planets, the*  
*constellations, the moon and other heavenly bodies, trees bear-*  
*ing blossom and fruit, other trees and herbs ; who sets in mo-*  
*tion righteousness and unrighteousness, among created*  
*beings, those which are manifest and those which are*  
 71 *not manifest. Brahmá's body, and Siva's, and Vishnu's*  
*is the body, of thee, the Sun, whose special nature is three-fold*  
 72 *indeed. May the Sun be gracious ! May the Sun, of whom, as*  
*lord without beginning, all this world composes the body, and*  
*who is the life of the worlds—may he be gracious to us !*  
 73 *May the Sun, whose first‡ form is luminous and can hardly be*  
*gazed upon because of its circle of splendour, and whose second*  
 74 *form is the gentle lunar orb—may he be gracious to us ! And*  
*may the Sun, from those two forms of whom this universe has*  
*been fashioned consisting of Agni and Soma—may he, the god,*  
*be gracious to us !*

\* As a name of the Sun, not in the dictionary.

† Váyr

‡ For *eka-bhāvaram* read *ekam bhāvaram* ? The Bombay edition reads *ekam abharam* "whose first form is imperishable."

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 75 While they are thus entirely worshipping him with praise  
and faith, the adorable Sun became pleased after three months,  
76 O bráhmaṇ. Thereupon issuing from his orb, with the same  
splendour as his disk *possesses*, the Sun, who is hardly to be  
77 gazed at, descended and displayed himself to them. Those  
bráhmaṇ folk bowing in faith then prostrated themselves  
before the Sun, who is without beginning, *as he* manifested  
*himself* in bodily shape, while they quivered with thrills of  
78 awe ; *exclaiming* "Reverence, reverence be to thee, the thousand-  
rayed one ! Thou art the cause of everything—brilliant every  
whit. Thou art to be invoked against harmful assault, being  
the site of all sacrifices ; and to be meditated upon by those  
skilled in religious devotion. Be thou gracious !"

---

CANTO OX.

*The Majesty of the Sun, concluded.*

---

*King Rájya-varḍhana's subjects besought of the Sun that the king might reign ten thousand years more, and the Sun granted it—But the king, distressed that the boon did not include all his family and subjects, went and propitiated the Sun, and at length gained his desire—This story is commented on and its merits are extolled.*

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 1 Well-pleased then, the adorable Sun said to all the populace  
—"Choose, O ye dvijas and other *people*, what ye have wished  
to obtain from me !"  
2 Thereupon those bráhmaṇs and other people gazing in fear  
on the fiery-rayed *Sun*, as he stood before *them*, prostrated  
themselves and said, O bráhmaṇ :—

The people spoke :

- 3 Prostrating themselves they said then to the lord of the  
world who proffered them a boon—"O adorable Dispeller of  
4 darkness, if *thou art* pleased with our faith, then let our king

live\* ten thousand years, free from sickness, victorious over his enemies, rich in his treasury, *and* with firmly-enduring youth! May Rájya-varadhana live ten thousand years!"

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 5 "So be it!" said the Sun to the populace, and became too dazzling for sight, O great muni. And they, having gained  
6 the boon *and* joyous *thereat*, assembled about the king. And having gained the boon completely from the thousand-rayed god, O bráhmaṇ, they made known to the king how it had happened.
- 7 On hearing that, his queen Mániní rejoiced, O bráhmaṇ; and the king pondered a long while and said nothing to the people.  
8 Thereupon she Mániní, whose mind was filled with joy, exclaimed to the king her husband—"How fortunate! Prosper,  
9 O king, with long life!" Thus did Mániní courteously salute her husband in *her* delight, *but* the king said nothing, his mind  
10 being numbed with thought, O bráhmaṇ. She addressed her husband again, as he was rapt in thought with countenance bent downwards,—“Why dost thou not give way to joy in  
11 *this* supreme *moment* of exaltation, O king? Thou shalt live free from sickness, with firmly-enduring youth, ten thousand years from to-day. Why nevertheless dost thou not rejoice?  
12 But declare thou the reason, why thou hast thy mind drawn away by thought, even when a supreme *moment* of exaltation has been reached, O king?"

The king spoke :

- 13 How *has* a *moment* of exaltation come, O lady, and why dost thou courteously salute me? When thousands of afflictions  
14 are incurred, is courteous salutation wished for?† I shall live alone ten thousand years, *but* not thou; when calamity  
15 befalls thee, shall I not have affliction? When I see sons, grandsons, and great-grandsons and other beloved relatives  
16 dead, will *my* affliction indeed be small? And when *my* most faithful servants *are* dead, and when *my* circle of friends is

\* *Jivatm* ; *átmane-pada* ; and again in this verse.

† For *sabdhājanayishyate* read *sabdhājanam ishhyate* as in the Bombay edition.

dead, there will then be boundless affliction for me continually, O lady. They who with emaciated *bodies*, constantly attached to \* righteousness, have performed austerities for my sake, they shall die, and I who enjoy *the benefit* shall live—this is censurable! † This, such as it is, is a calamity that has befallen me, O lady of beautiful hips; it is not a moment of exaltation. How again is it thou dost not think in that thou dost courteously salute me now?

Mániní spoke :

O great king, as thou hast said, so indeed it is; herein there is no doubt. I and the citizens in our affection for thee did not perceive this mistake. Since it has gone so, consider what should be done in this *matter*, O lord of men. What the adorable Sun has said in his graciousness shall not be otherwise.

The king spoke :

It is a benefit that my citizens and servants have done to me out of affection; how shall I taste enjoyments, without discharging my obligation to them? I then in this position will go with subdued mind to the mountain from to-day‡ and will practise austerities, abstaining from food, resolved to propitiate the Sun. Since I shall live in firmly-enduring youth free from sickness ten thousand years through that god's favour therefore, if the adorable Sun grants us this favour, that all my people, my servants, and thou and my children, sons, grandsons and great-grandsons, and my friends shall also live, O lovely-faced one—then I shall continue in the kingdom and shall taste enjoyments with delight. If the Sun does not do this, then, O Mániní, I will practise austerities on the mountain there, abstaining from food until my life perish.

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

Being thus addressed by him, she said to the king then, "Be it so!" And she also went with him to that mountain. The king going with his queen to the sanctuary there engaged in

\* *Ni-san-tata*, not in the dictionary.

† *Dhik-kara*, not in the dictionary.

‡ The Bombay edition inserts two lines here doubtfully.



worshipping the Sun, being assiduous in his service, O bráhmaṇ,  
 29 *and* becoming emaciated through want of food ; and she, just  
 as that king *did*, practised severe austerities likewise, endur-  
 30 ing cold, wind and the sun's heat. While he was worshipping  
 the Sun and practising great austerities, when a year and  
 part of the next year had passed, the Maker of the day was  
 31 pleased then and granted him, O dvija, a boon according to  
 his desire for the sake of all his dependants, citizens and other  
*subjects*, and his sons, O excellent bráhmaṇ.

On gaining the boon, the king going to his city ruled his  
 32 kingdom in joyousness, protecting his people righteously ; and  
 he offered many sacrifices, gave away gifts day and night, and  
 in company with Mániní indulged in enjoyments, being wise in  
 34 righteousness. He rejoiced\* with his sons, grandsons and other  
*descendants*, with his dependants and citizens† for ten thousand  
 years ; he remained continuously youthful.

A Bhárgava named Pramati, after seeing that his exploit, sang  
 35 this song while his heart was drawn out with astonishment,—  
 36 “Lo, the power of faith in the Sun, in that king Rájya-var-  
 dhana has been born for the increase of life of his own people  
 as well as of himself ! ”

Thus I have related to thee, O bráhmaṇ, what thou didst  
 37 ask me, *namely*, the majesty of the lord‡ Áditya Vivasvat, the  
 38 god who was in the beginning. The man who, after  
 hearing the whole of that *story* of the Sun's sublime majesty  
 with the bráhmans, reads it also during the space of seven  
 39 nights, is delivered from his sins.§ And the intelligent  
 man, who may hold this fast, becomes free from sickness,  
 possessed of riches *and* opulent ; and is born *again* a man of  
 40 great understanding in a great family of wise men.|| And

\* For *samuditaḥ* read *sa muditaḥ*.

† *Pauttraḥ* in the text ; but read probably *pauraiḥ*, which I have adopted.

‡ *Vibho* ; but *vibhoḥ* seems preferable and I have adopted it. The Bom-  
 bay edition reads *áditaḥ*, “ what thou didst ask me from the first.”

§ Or “ reads it also, is delivered from the sins which he has committed  
 during seven nights ” as the Bombay edition reads.

|| The Bombay edition inserts here, though doubtfully—“ And he truly

miserable are they who are smitten herein by the Sun, O best of munis.\* The repetition of each of these *verses* during three  
 41 twilights destroys sin. And in whatever sanctuary of the Sun  
 all this *poem* of *his* majesty is recited, there the adorable *Sun*  
 42 withdraws not his presence. Therefore thou, O bráhmaṇ, who  
 desirest to gain great merit, must retain this *poem* of the Sun's  
 43 sublime majesty in thy mind and must mutter it over. Verily  
 he who makes a gift of a milch cow with gilded horns and  
 most handsome body, and the man *who* self-possessed listens  
 to this *poem* for three days—equal are the merit and reward  
 of them both, O bráhmaṇ !†

---

### CANTO CXI.

---

#### *The guide to the genealogies.*

*Manu* had seven sons, whose names are mentioned—and also a child,  
 who was born as a daughter named *Ilá*, and afterwards became  
 a man by name *Su-dyumna*—This child as *Ilá* had a son *Purú-*  
*ravas*, who reigned at *Pratishthána*, and as *Su-dyumna* had three  
 sons.

*Márkaṇḍeya* spoke :

- 1 Such power has the adorable Sun, who is without beginning  
 and without end, concerning whose majesty thou, O *Kraush-*
- 2 *ṭuki*, dost ask me in faith. He is the Supreme Soul among  
 religious devotees who meditate deeply on the dissolution of  
 heir intellects; ‡ *he* is the Conscious Soul among those who

*who* after hearing of this exploit sacrifices with great sacrifices replete with  
 boons and fees, gains honour as his reward."

\* The Bombay edition reads differently—"And the verses which were  
 herein addressed [*read abhikitá for abhihatá?*] to the Sun, O best of munis,  
 the repetition of each of these *verses* during three twilights destroys sin."

† For *dvijágyam* read *dvijágya*.

‡ This is the best meaning that I can get out of the text—*Paramátmá sa*  
*yogínám yuñjátám étasám layam*, which is the reading in the Calcutta, Bombay  
 and Poona editions, though the last in its corrigenda alters it to *yogánám*

apply the Sāṅkhya doctrine to the knowledge of spirit; and he is the Lord of sacrifice among those who are sacrificers : \*

3 while Viṣṇu, Śiva and Brahmá each supports the Sun's supremacy.

Manu was his son, a solver of doubts in all matters, the ruler  
4 of a manv-antara, whose is the seventh period, O bráhmaṇ.

Ikshváku, Nábhaga and Rishṭa—who were great in strength  
5 and prowess—and Narishyanta, Nábhága, Púshadhra and  
Dhṛishṭa;† these were that Manu's sons, each the guardian of  
6 a separate kingdom. All were celebrated in fame, all had the  
utmost skill in arms and weapons.

Seeking yet again for a son who should be more distinguished,  
7 Manu, best of the skilful ones, offered a sacrifice to Mitra  
and Varuṇa; in which sacrifice moreover when the offering was  
perversely made through the improper conduct‡ of the priest,

and then *sa yogánám* must be read as one word *sa-yogánám*. But the text is no doubt corrupt; *yogánám* should be *yoginám*, and *yuñjātām* should perhaps be *yuñjánánám*, though both Parasmai-pada and Átmane-pada have the meaning "to meditate deeply." Mahámahopádhyaíya Hara Prasád Śástrí suggests also that *layaḥ* would be better than *layam* and would translate thus, "He is the Supreme Soul to those who are successful in meditation [i.e., the Vedántists]; he is that in which the minds of those who are engaged in meditation, but who are not yet successful, are absorbed" [i.e., the Saguṇa Brahman of the Vedántists].

\* *Yajñeṣo yajvinám api*; but *yajvanám* must be read for *yajvinám*, and Mahámahopádhyaíya Hara Prasád Śástrí gives it the meaning "to those who consider sacrifices to be the means leading to beatitude" [i.e., the Mímáṃsists].

† Only seven sons are mentioned here. The number is generally given as ten. There is much diversity regarding the names of all of them except Ikshváku, Narishyanta, and Dhṛishṭa. Other names omitted are Śaryáti, Karúsha, Vena, and Prámśu. See Wilson's Viṣṇu Puráṇa, book IV, chapter i, notes. The second and third names Nábhaga and Rishṭa are sometimes given as a single name, Nábhágadishṭa in the Veda and Nábhánedishṭa in the Aitareya Bráhmaṇa; and the last-named book says—he was given to sacred study, his brothers deprived him of his share in the paternal property, and referred him to their father, and by his father's advice he helped the Āṅgirasas in their sacrificial session and obtained great wealth (V. ii. 14).

‡ For *śāpahrite* read *śāpahute*, as in the Poona edition. The verb *apa-hu* is

8 O great muni, a daughter was born to Manu named Ilá, slender of waist. On seeing that daughter born there, Manu  
 9 offered praise to Mitra and Varuna then and spoke this word, —“ When I made the sacrifice *with the prayer*, ‘ Through  
 10 your favour may I obtain a distinguished son,’ a daughter was born to me who am wise. If ye being gracious grant me a  
 11 boon, then let this my daughter, through the favour of you both, become a son endowed with surpassing virtues! ” And  
 when these two gods in sooth said, “ Be it so! ” that same  
 12 daughter Ilá became forthwith a son famed by the name Su-dyumna.

And afterwards that wise son of Manu, while roving the  
 13 forest a-hunting, was turned into a woman through the wrath of the god; \* in which *condition* Soma's son Budha begat of  
 14 her a son named Pururavas,† who was a mighty universal monarch. When that son was born, Su-dyumna again per-  
 15 formed a great horse-sacrifice and regained a man's nature and became a king.

Su-dyumna during his manhood had three sons, Utkala,‡  
 16 Vinaya§ and Gaya,|| who were most valiant, given to sacrificing, great in bodily strength. Now those three sons, who  
 17 were born to him during his manhood, enjoyed this earth ¶ while governing their minds in righteousness.

not in the dictionary. The Poona commentary explains *apahute apaśárát* by *viparīta-havane vyatyayát*.

\* The Hari-V. narrates only one change, namely, from womanhood (after she had given birth to Purúravas) to manhood (x. 615-37).

† Properly Purúravas, as in verse 17.

‡ From whom were descended the Utkalas, see note \* on canto lvii, verse 43, and also verse 53, pp. 327 and 341 *ante*; all the authorities agree about this.

§ He is also called Vinata, Vinatásva, and Haritásva by different authorities. He was king of the East according to the Matsya Pur., and king of the West according to the Hari-V. (x. 631-2) and Váyu Pur.

|| He gave his name to the city Gayá, as all the authorities agree; and he was king of the East as the Hari-V. says (x. 631-2).

¶ The Bhágavata Pur. says wrongly all three sons were rulers of the South, *Dakṣhiṇápatha*.

- But Purúṛavas, who was born of that monarch *Su-dyumna* during his womanhood, got no share of the earth, because he was Budha's son. Thereupon at Vasishṭha's word Pratishṭhána,\* an excellent city, was given to him; he became king in that exceedingly charming city.

---

CANTO CXII.

---

*The Story of Púshadhra.*

*Manu's son Púshadhra while hunting accidentally killed a bráhmaṇ's cow—The bráhmaṇ's son fell into a rage and cursed him—The bráhmaṇ reproved his son for his passionate conduct, but the curse could not be altered and Púshadhra became a śúdra.*

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 1 Manu's son who was named Púshadhra † went a-hunting to a forest. While walking about in that dense lonely forest he
- 2 lighted upon no deer at all, he was scorched by the sun's rays, and his body was seized with hunger, thirst and heat as he
- 3 walked hither and thither. Then he saw there a beautiful cow which yielded milk for sacrifice, belonging to a bráhmaṇ who maintained the sacrificial fire, half the body of which was
- 4 hidden among creepers. ‡ Thinking she was a gayál, he shot her with an arrow, and she fell to the earth, pierced to the heart
- 5 with the arrow. Thereupon the sacrificial priest's son Taporati,§ who was a religious student, on seeing his father's sacrificial cow stricken down cursed him; and sent forward his son
- 6

\* Manu gave this city to Su-dyumna who was excluded from the paternal dominions because he had been a female, and Su-dyumna gave it to Pururavas. It was situated on the north bank of the Ganges at its junction with the Yamuná (Hári-V., xxvi. 1371 and 1411-2).

† This name is generally written *Prishadhra*, which is the correct form.

‡ This is the reading of the Poona edition, *lutántar-deha-śhanndrdhám*; the text of the Calcutta edition is erroneous. The Bombay edition reads less properly *latántar-deha-śhinndrdhám*.

§ I have not found this name elsewhere.

- named Vábhravya\* who tended the cow. Then, O muni, his  
 7 mental feelings were overcome by wrath and resentment, *and* he  
 fell into a rage, while his eyes rolled and were blurred with drops  
 of perspiration that trickled down. The king Púshadhra seeing  
 8 that muni's son enraged said,—“ Be graci us, wherefore dost  
 thou give way to anger like a súdra. No kshatriya, no  
 vaiśya † in truth indulges so in wrath as thou dost like a  
 súdra, *thou* who art born in the noble family of a bráhmaṇ.”

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 9 When that son of a pre-eminent bráhmaṇ‡ was upbraided  
 thus by the king, he cursed the evil-souled *king*, saying : “ ‘Thou  
 10 shalt become § a súdra indeed ! Whatever sacred lore thou  
 hast learnt from thy guru's mouth shall waste away, because  
 thou hast hurt this my guru's sacrificial cow.’ ”  
 11 When cursed thus the king became angry, *yet* he was tor-  
 mented greatly by that curse. He took water up in his hand,  
 12 intent on cursing *the other* in retaliation, O bráhmaṇ. That  
 bráhmaṇ also gave way to wrath in order to destroy the king.  
 His father approached him hastily and forbade him in sooth,  
*saying—*  
 13 “ My son, enough, more than enough, of wrath which  
 does not counteract hostility ! || Verily calmness is beneficial  
 to the twice-born in things of this world and of the next  
 14 world. Anger destroys austerities; and the angry man falls  
 away from long life; the angry man's knowledge melts away,

\* This is a patronymic from Vabhru or Babhru. Viśvámitra had a son Vabhru from whom was descended the family of the Vabhrus (Mahá-Bh., Anuśás.-p., iv. 249-259; Hari-V., xxvii. 1463-67; but see Aitar. Bráh. VII. iii. 18); and Saunaka had a pupil named Vabhru (Wilson's Vishṇu-P.—edit. F. Hall—III. vi.); but the name Vábhravya soon after Mann's time seems out of place.

† The Poona edition gives the right reading, *na kshatriyo na vá vaiśya*; the Calcutta edition wrongly puts the accusatives.

‡ *Maulināḥ*; = *śreshṭharya* according to the commentator. This meaning is not in the dictionary.

§ For *bhaviśhyati* read *bhaviśhyati*.

|| For *kopaṇdyāti-vairiṇā* read *kopaṇāpratīvairiṇā* as in the Poona edition.

15 and the angry man fails of his object also. There is no righteousness in the man of angry disposition ; and the passionate man obtains not his object ; nor among those whose minds are possessed by wrath is the obtaining of their wishes enough for  
 16 happiness. If the king has killed this cow with his full knowledge, it is right for one, who perceives what is for his own  
 17 benefit, to extend pardon here. Or *if* he has slain this my cow in ignorance, how then is he worthy of a curse, since his  
 18 mind was not evil ? Whatever man, while seeking his own good, harasses another—merciful men should shew pardon to  
 19 that *man* in the knowledge that he is benighted.\* If wise men inflict punishment for what is done by a man in ignorance, I esteem him more than the wise men ; better are the men  
 20 who are ignorant.† Invoke thou no curse now on this king, my son ; by her own action indeed this cow has fallen in a painful death."

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

21 Púshadhra also, prostrating himself with bowed neck before the muni's son, exclaimed aloud, " Be gracious ! " and " She  
 22 was slain by me in ignorance, for I thought she was a *gayál* ; a cow must not be killed ; through ignorance, O muni, I slew thy sacrificial cow. Be thou also gracious to me, O muni ! "

The rishi's son spoke :

23 Since my birth, O king, I have uttered nothing in vain, and my anger this day can never be altered, illustrious sir.  
 24 Therefore I cannot make this curse otherwise, O king ; *but* the second curse which was prepared for thee is averted.  
 25 The father then took the son who had spoken thus and went to his own hermitage. And Púshadhra in sooth became a *śúdra*.

\* Or, " to that man whose understanding is foolish."

† *Tam* appears to be the right reading ; but read *tad* instead of *tam* ? " then better than the wise are, in my opinion, the men who are ignorant."

## CANTO CXIII.

*Nábhága's exploits.*

*Karusha's descendants were the Kárushas—Dishṭa's son was Nábhága ; Nábhága wanted to marry a vaiśya maiden—Her father referred the matter to the king Dishṭa, and the king consulted the ṛishis—They declared the prince might marry her, provided he first married a kshatriya maiden—He spurned that and took her—The king tried to vanquish him by force, but was caused by a bráhmaṇ to desist, on the ground that the prince had degenerated into a vaiśya.*

*Márkaṇḍeya spoke :*

- 1 Karusha's sons were the Kárushas,\* *who were kshatriyas and warriors. Now they were seven hundred valiant men ; and from them descended others in thousands.*
- 2 Now Dishṭa's† son was Nábhága ; ‡ he continued in the bloom of youthfulness. He saw a most surpassingly charming
- 3 vaiśya maiden. As soon as he beheld her, the prince was stricken in mind with love ; he became absorbed in sighs and
- 4 reproaches. He went to her father and asked for the vaiśya maiden in marriage ; and then to the prince, whose mental
- 5 feelings were under the dominion of the god of love, spoke her father—to the king's son *spoke* he, joining his hands respectfully, being afraid of the *prince's* father, this speech as he
- 6 bowed with deference, O bráhmaṇ—"Nobles of thy class are the enjoyers of the earth : dependants are we, paying tax to

\* See note † to canto lvii, verse 53, p. 341 *ante*

† This Dishṭa must be the Rishṭa mentioned in canto cxii, verse 4. The name is given variously as Nediashṭha, Dishta, and Arishṭa. The Hari-Vaṁśa says two of his sons though vaiśyas became bráhmans (xi. 658) ; and the Bhágavata Pur. says two of his sons, though kshatriyas obtained bráhmaṇhood (IX. ii. 17).

‡ Nábhága and his descendants are named in Vishṇu Pur. IV. i. The Purāṇas agree generally that he was degraded to be a vaiśya. His descendants and their exploits form the remainder of this Purāṇa. There were other kings afterwards of the same name.



you. Why dost thou earnestly desire connexion with us who are not thy equals ? ”

The prince spoke :

7 Equality of the human body is wrought by love, folly and  
other feelings. So indeed the human body is endowed with  
8 those very feelings at the appropriate time,\* and thus in truth  
those feelings also come into existence for its benefit. And  
different feelings, different persons exist when folk exist of  
9 separate castes. Moreover, other feelings also† that are in-  
appropriate become proper according to season, and likewise  
appropriate feelings become inappropriate ; for propriety de-  
10 pends upon season. As the body is fattened by food and other  
things that are longed for, so that same body when used‡ with  
11 due regard to season is well regulated.§ Do thou accordingly  
bestow this thy highly esteemed daughter on me ; otherwise  
calamity will be beheld in my body.

The vaiśya spoke :

12 We are under another's authority, and thou art under an-  
other's authority, namely the king's. When he thy father  
permits thee, take thou her ; I will give her.

The prince spoke :

13 Those who treat gurus|| with respect should consult their  
gurus¶ in all things that must be done ; but not in such things  
as this, things which are not to be done, \*\* do the words of

\* Or, "season."

† For *anyān api* read *anyāny api*, as in the Poona edition.

‡ *Bhuktam*. The Poona edition reads *bhūtam* ; and the meaning would be  
"that same body when so constituted with due regard to season is well  
regulated."

§ *Parīśhyate*. I take this as the passive of *pari-śās* ; but *pari-śās* is not  
in the dictionary.

|| Venerable persons, parents or spiritual preceptors.

¶ For *guruvo* read *guravo* here and in the next verse.

\*\* For the text *īdṛīśeshu a-kāryeshu* it seems *īdṛīśeshu kāryeshu* would  
be better—"but not in such businesses as this do the words of gurus have  
scope."

- 14 gurus have scope. What has Love's conversation to do with listening to gurus? This is incompatible. In other things men should consult their gurus.

The vaiśya spoke :

- 15 Such, *even* this, is Love's talk ! I, I here, *will* ask the guru, thine, the suitor's. My talk is not based on the speech of love.

Mārkandeya spoke :

- 16 When addressed thus the prince became silent. And he, *the vaiśya*, related to that *prince's* father all that the prince  
17 thought. Thereupon his father summoned, before him the chief dvijas, Rīcīka\* and the other bráhmans, and the prince ; and he made known *the matter* as it had been announced to  
18 him ; and after making it known he, being so situated *in the matter*, said to the munis,—“The best of dvijas deign† to declare what ought to be done.”

The rishis spoke :

- 19 O prince, if thou hast love for this vaiśya's child, then let this ordinance of righteousness‡ verily be *observed*, but *let it*  
20 *be observed* in the order *enjoined* bylaw. Marriage was *enjoined* for princes in the first place with the daughter of one who had been *royally* anointed. Be it so now *first in thy case* ; and immediately afterwards this *maiden also* shall become thy wife.

\* A famous rishi, son of Bhṛigu and father by Satya-vatī of Jamadagni ; see Mahá-Bh., Sánti-p. xlix. 1716-21 ; Hari.-V., xxvii. 1423-63, and xxxii. 1761-76 ; and Viṣṇu Pur. IV. vii. He married Satya-vatī, daughter of Gádhi king of Kánya-kubja, by giving a present of a thousand horses for her (Mahá-Bh., Vana-p. cxv. 10144-153, and Udyoga-p. cxviii. 4005-7). Though Satya-vatī is connected with the R. Kauśikī (the R. Kosi, see canto lvii, verse 18, note \*\*) in the passages cited above from the Hari V. and Viṣṇu Pur., yet Rīcīka is generally connected with the west coast around the Gulf of Cambay (see Mahá-Bh., Vana-p. cxlvii. 10221-27 and the two other passages last cited above), and Dyuti-mat king of Sálva (see canto lviii, verse 6, note §) gave his kingdom to Rīcīka (Mahá-Bh., Sánti-p. ccxxxiv. 8607, and Anuśās-p. cxxxvii. 6267).

† For *arhanti* read *arhantu* ? “Let the best of dvijas deign, &c.”

‡ I.e., marriage.

- 21 In this way no wickedness will attach\* to thee when thou enjoyest her thus; otherwise it does accrue: thy high rank comes from marriage with exalted maidens.†

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 22 When admonished thus, he flung aside altogether that speech of those high-souled *munis*; and going outside he  
23 seized her, and raising his sword aloft exclaimed,—“ I have carried off the vaiśya's daughter by the Rákshasa form of marriage; let him who has power here rescue her!”

- 24 Then the vaiśya seeing his daughter seized, O bráhmaṇ, hastened to that prince's father for help, exclaiming “ Save  
25 her!” His father enraged thereat gave command to his great army—“ Let him be slain; let wicked Nábhága who violates  
26 righteousness be slain!” Thereon that army fought indeed with the king's son; it was laid low then in great numbers by  
27 him, who was skilled in weapons, with his weapon. The king, on hearing that the army was slain by the prince, went forth  
28 himself indeed to fight, surrounded by his army. In the battle then which took place between the king and his son, the father excelled the prince in weapons and arms.

- 29 Thereupon a wandering Muni suddenly approached from out the air and spoke back to the king;—

- 30 “ Cease from combat. O illustrious sir, thy high-souled son is in the right here; moreover fighting between thee and a  
31 vaiśya‡ is not according to righteousness, O king. A bráhmaṇ who marries wives among all the castes, provided that  
32 he marries first a bráhmaṇ woman, incurs no injury in his bráhmaṇ-hood. Likewise a kshatriya who marries first a  
kshatriya's daughter, incurs no harm if he marries wives from lower castes; and therefore, O king, these other wives§ fall not

\* *Bhavitá* in the Poona edition is better than *bhavati*.

† The Calcutta edition reads *utkriṣhṭábálikám haram*; the Poona reading is *utkriṣhṭábála sarvadá*, and the Bombay reading *utkriṣhṭábálaká-nayát*. From these readings it would seem the correct reading should be *utkriṣhṭa-báliká-nayát*, and I have adopted this.

‡ Explained in verses 35 and 36 below.

§ I.e., daughters of vaiśyas and śúdras, as the commentator explains.

- 33 from their own righteousness. Thus a vaiśya, *who marries first*  
 a vaiśya woman and afterwards a girl born from a śúdra  
 34 family, is not excluded from the vaiśya family. The law is  
 thus declared in order. Bráhmans, kshatriyas, vaiśyas, who  
 do not *first* marry women of the same caste,\* fall by marrying  
 35 women of other castes, O king. Whatever excluded woman  
 a man marries after neglecting union in *his own* caste, of that  
 36 woman's caste let him indeed† become a participator. This  
 thy son, who is such, has fallen to vaiśya-hood; he is of  
 wretched understanding. He has no right to combat with  
 37 thee a kshatriya. We do not acknowledge this to be a reason  
 for combat, O royal scion; and since this shall be so, desist  
 thou from the business of battle!"

---

 CANTO CXIV.
 

---

*Nábhága's exploits.*

*Nábhága married the vaiśya maiden and became a vaiśya—He had a son Bhanandana, who with the help of the rishi Nípa conquered the earth and offered the sovereignty to his father Nábhága—Nábhága declined it as he was a vaiśya, and his wife Su-prabhá then explained to him, that she was not really of vaiśya descent, but the daughter of king Su-deva who became a vaiśya under the rishi Pramati's curse, because he would not rescue Pramati's wife from his own friend Nala.*

## Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 1 The king thereupon desisted from battle with his son; and  
 2 he indeed, that king's son, married that vaiśya maiden. He  
 became a vaiśya thereby. Starting up he spoke to the king,—  
 "O king, let it be declared to me what I must do."

\* For *sa-varṇá-* read *sva-varṇá-* ? but the meaning would be the same.

† For no '*pi tad-vastu-bhág* read so '*pi tad-varṇa-bhág* as in the Poona edition.

## The king spoke :

- 3 Let Bábhravya\* and the other ascetics, who are engaged in the superintendence of righteousness, declare what is the occupation for this *man* for *the end of* righteousness—do thou act accordingly.

## Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 4 Then those munis seated in the council announced that for him the tending of cattle and cultivation and trade *should be*  
 5 the highest righteousness. And the king's son complied with what was declared by those expounders of righteousness to be righteousness for him who had fallen from his own *sphere of* righteousness.  
 6 A son was born to him afterwards, who was famed by the name Bhanandana.† Being sent by his mother *who said*, "Be  
 7 a keeper of cattle, my son," he went forth ; and when enjoined thus by his mother, he prostrated himself before his mother and went to the royal rishi Nípa‡ who had resorted to mount  
 8 Himavat ; and approaching him Bhanandana held his feet according to rule, and prostrating himself before this royal rishi spoke :  
 9 " Adorable sir, verily I have been commanded by my mother *thus*, 'Be thou a keeper of cattle'§ ; and *yet* I must protect  
 10 the earth ; how *can there be* assent to her ? Verily I must protect the earth,|| when it may be appropriated¶ *by men*.  
 11 This my earth is assailed by powerful heirs. Shew me how I may gain the earth through thy favour, O lord ; I will carry out thy command ; I am prostrate before thee."

\* See note \* page 591.

† Or *Bhalandana* according to the Vishṇu Pur. IV. i.

‡ This was apparently Nípa of the Paurava race, who was king of Kám-pilya. He had a hundred sons who were all styled Nípas. His dynasty lasted till Ugrá Yudha killed all the Nípas just before the Páṇḍavas' time ; see Hari-V., xx. 1040, 1060-73, 1082-86 ; Matsya Pur. xlix. 52-59.

§ *Go-pála*.

|| *Gauḥ paṇanáyá*. There a double pun here with *go*, "cattle" and "the earth," and the verb *pál*, "to tend" and to protect."

¶ There is also a play on the words *sví-karaṇa*, "assent," in verse ! and *sví-kṛta*, "appropriated," here.

## Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 12 The royal fishi Nípa then gave to high-souled Bhananda  
 13 a complete set of weapons, O bráhmaṇ. After acquiring skill  
 in the weapons he went to his paternal uncle's sons, Vasuráta  
 and the other sons, O dvija; he was so commanded by that  
 14 high-souled *rishi*. He demanded half of the kingdom as be-  
 fitted his father and paternal grandfather; and they said,—“A  
 15 vaiśya's son thou art; how shalt thou enjoy the earth?” A  
 battle then occurred between Bhananda who was skilled in  
 weapons and those his kinsmen Vasuráta and the rest, who were  
 16 angry and showered weapons on him; but vanquishing them  
 all when their troops had been shattered with his weapons,  
 he, wise in righteousness, took the earth away from them by  
 17 righteous combat. After vanquishing his foes, he next pre-  
 sented all the earth and the sovereignty to his father; and his  
 father did not accept it, and in front of his wife made an-  
 swer to the son then.

## Nábhága spoke :

- 18 O Bhananda, this kingdom is thine; let it which was ruled  
 by thy ancestors be ruled by thee.

## The king spoke :\*

- 19 I did not rule the kingdom; I was not devoid of the capacity  
 for it † formerly; but preferring a vaiśya's condition I obeyed  
 20 my father's command to that effect. Because I showed want  
 of affection for my father in that I wedded a vaiśya maiden, I  
 did not become a king, who enjoys the sacred worlds until the  
 21 subversion of the world has arrived.‡ If disregarding his  
 command again I rule over the earth, there is verily no final  
 emancipation from existence for me thereafter even during  
 22 hundreds of kalpas. Nor indeed is it fit that I, who have my

\* This heading is superfluous, it is still Nábhága who speaks.

† *Násámarthya-yutaḥ*. The commentator explains it by *ati-sámarthya-yuto* 'pi, “I did not rule the kingdom, although I possessed exceptional capacity formerly.”

‡ For *yávad-dhúta-samplavaḥ* the Bombay and Poona editions read *yávad-dbhúta-samplavam*. An *avyayí-bháva* compound is preferable.

own pride, should enjoy the kingdom which thou hast won by thy arm, when I have no desire for it, like any weakling.\*

23 Rule thou the kingdom thyself the while, or relinquish it to thy heirs. For me it is good to keep my father's command and not to rule the earth.

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

24 Laughing thereat his wife, the lady Su-prabhá by name, made answer to her husband, " O king, take the mighty kingdom. Thou art no vaiśya, nor indeed was I born of a vaiśya family, O king; thou art a kshatriya and I also was born of a family of kshatriyas. Formerly there was a famous king Su-deva † by name, and his friend was king Dhúmráśva's son Nala.‡ Accompanied by his friend he went to the wood Ámra-vana, § he to sport with his wives in the month of spring, O king. Accompanied by those wives and attended by that friend he enjoyed many *kinds of* drinks and food then. Afterwards he saw the extremely fascinating and royally born wife of

30 Ćyavana's son Pramati || on the bank of a tank. His friend Nala, who was intoxicated and not in his right mind, laid hold of her, the while she cried out " Save me, Save me ! " even as

31 the king looked on. Her husband Pramati, on hearing her

32 cry, at once came up hastily exclaiming " What is it ? " Then

\* For *durbalasyeha* read *durbalasyeva*, as in the Poona edition.

† The most famous king of this name appears to have been Su-deva of the Kásis who had a great contest with the Vítahavyas, and was father of Divodása (Mahá-Bh., Anusás.-p. xxx. 1950-54); but this story pays no regard to chronology.

‡ There were many kings of this name, but none of them (as far as I have found) son of Dhúmráśva. One of the kings of Vaiśálí was Dhúmráśva (Vishṇu Pur. IV. i.)

§ I have not found any wood of this name in western India where this story is laid; but Ámra-vana may mean simply " a grove of mangoes."

|| Ćyavana was a famous rishi, son of Bhṛigu. He married Sukanyá daughter of Manu's son Saryáti, and by her had a son Pramati. Pramati married Ghrítáśí; see Mahá-Bh., Ádi-p. v. 870 and 871, and viii. 939, 940; and Vana-p. cxvii: also Sata-patha Bráh. IV. 5; Aitar.-Bráh. VIII. iv. 21). Ćyavana's region was in the west near the mouth of the R. Narmadá, see Mahá-Bh., Vana-p. lxxxix 8364, 8364 and 8365; cii. 8737-40 and cxvi. 10812.

he saw king Su-deva standing there, and his wife in the  
 33 grasp of Nala, who was very much out of his senses. Pramati  
 spoke to the king then,—

“ Make this man quiet ! And thou art the ruler ; thou, Sir,  
 art the king ; and this Nala is a bad man, O king.”

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

34 On hearing that distressed rishi's appeal, Su-deva *deterred*  
 by reason of Nala's high position replied,—“ I am a vaiśya ;  
 35 seek someone else, a kshatriya, in order to rescue her.” Then  
 Pramati enraged, burning forth as it were with splendour,  
 made answer to the king who said “ I am a vaiśya.”

Pramati spoke :

36 Be it so ! thou, Sir, art a vaiśya.\* A kshatriya *is so named*  
 because he guards one from injury. † Kshatriyas hold the  
 weapon in order that there may be no cry of distress. Thou  
 being such art no kshatriya ; verily thou shalt be a vaiśya of  
 base family.

---

## CANTO CXV.

---

*Su-prabhā continues her story to Nábhága—That Pramati reduced  
 Nala to ashes, and, on Su-deva's imploring pardon, mitigated the  
 curse on Su-deva, with the promise that he should regain his  
 kshatriya-hood—Also that she had been the daughter of the royal  
 rishi Su-ratha, and had been cursed by Agastya to be born a  
 vaiśya woman temporarily.*

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 1 After imprecating the curse on him then, Pramati, the  
 descendant of Bhṛigu, enraged *and* burning up, as it were, the  
 three worlds by reason of his wrath, spoke to Nala, O dvija ;—
- 2 “ Inasmuch as thou, Sir, intoxicated with lust, forcibly seizest  
 my wife here in my hermitage, become thou therefor ashes

\* For vaiśya read vaiśyaḥ as in the Poona edition.

† Kshatriyaḥ kshata-rakṣaṇát. For a different derivation, see canto cxxij.



3 forthwith." And then immediately as he uttered that speech,  
Nala, *consumed* by the fire that sprang from *the rishi's* body,  
became forthwith a heap of ashes.

4 On seeing that *rishi's* power then Su-deva sobered thereat,  
bending himself in reverence, said thus—"Grant pardon!  
5 grant pardon! Let that which I have spoken,\* adorable sir,  
*a thing* disordered by reason of intoxication through drinking  
spirituous liquor, be pardoned; be thou gracious; let this  
6 curse be turned aside!" Being thus propitiated by him, Pra-  
mati, the descendant of Bhṛigu, whose anger had passed off  
when Nala was burnt up, replied with mind devoid of strong  
7 feeling;—"The word which I have uttered shall not be otherwise;  
nevertheless being gracious I will do thee a supreme favour.  
8 Thou, sir, shalt be a vaiśya by race -of this there *can* be no  
doubt; *thou*, a kshatriya, shalt be a vaiśya soon in the *very*  
9 *next* birth. When a kshatriya's son shall seize thy daughter  
by force, thou being seized by one of thy own race shalt then  
10 become † a kshatriya *again*, O vaiśya." Thus that Su-deva  
as a vaiśya became my father, O king.

11 Hear also, illustrious sir, all the *story* ‡ who I am. There  
was of yore a royal ṛishi named Su-ratha on *mount* Gandha-  
mádana, who practised austerities, restricted his food, aban-  
12 doned *worldly* associations, and abode in the forest. On his  
seeing then a mainá § fallen from a hawk's beak to the  
ground, compassion sprang up within that high-souled *rishi*,  
13 and he swooned therewith; then when the swoon passed off, I  
was produced from his body, and seeing me he took me with  
14 a loving mind. "Because she has been born from me, while I  
was overcome with compassion, she shall therefore be *known* by  
15 the name Kṛipá-vatí" ||—so said he, *my lord*. Thereafter  
growing up in his hermitage, I *used to* wander day and night

\* For *yad uktaváms tvam*, read *yad uktaváms tvám* as in the Poona edition,  
and the commentator says *aham* must be understood.

† For *bhavishyati* read *bhuvishyasi*.

‡ For *tvat-sarvaṁ* read *tat sarvaṁ*.

§ *Sáriká*, a bird.

|| "Full of compassion."

- through the woods also with my girl-companions of the same  
 16 age. Then the muni Agastya's brother, who was known as  
 Agastya,\* while seeking for forest-products in the forest,  
 17 was angered by my girl-companions and cursed me; and I said  
 —“No offence have I committed against thee, O best of dvijas;  
 why because of an offence by other girls hast thou cursed me?”

The ṛishi spoke :

- 18 “By reason of contact with the bad even that which is not  
 bad becomes bad, just as a jar containing the five substances  
 obtained from cows † becomes spoilt if a drop of spirituous  
 19 liquor falls into it. Since thou hast fallen prostrate and pro-  
 pitiated me by declaring ‘I am not bad,’ hear therefore what ‡  
 20 favour I will do to thee, O maiden. When, being born in a  
 vaiśya family, thou shalt admonish thy husband § to under-  
 take kingly rule, thou shalt then fully recover the remembrance  
 21 of this existence; and thou shalt resume thy kshatriya caste  
 along with thy husband and shalt obtain heavenly pleasures.  
 Go now, let fear depart from thee!”
- 22 Thus was I cursed formerly by that great ṛishi, O king of  
 kings; and my father was thus cursed by Pramati formerly.  
 23 So thou art not a vaiśya, O king; nor was my father a vaiśya;  
 nor indeed am I; || how dost thou, who art not degraded,  
 become degraded in marrying me who am not degraded?

\* Or Agastya.

† Milk, cheese, butter, urine and dung.

‡ For *śṛiṇuyāt* read *śṛiṇu yat*, as in the Poona edition.

§ *Tvam putram*, “thou shalt admonish thy son, &c.,” is the reading in the Calcutta and Poona editions, but the latter in its Corrigenda alters it to *svapatim*, and I have followed this.

|| *Na tvam hi* is the reading in the editions, but is incorrect. I venture to amend it to *na tv-aham*, and have translated it accordingly. Another emendation is to read *sa* for *na*, and then the meaning of these and the following words would be—“How indeed dost thou, who art such and who art unde-graded, become degraded in marrying me who am undegraded?”

## CANTO CXVI.

*The Exploits of Bhananda and Vatsa-pri.*

*Nábháya declined the kingdom and Bhanandana became king—He had a son Vatsa-pri—A Daitya king Kujrimbha, who had a magic club called Sunanda, opened a great hole near king Vidúratha's city and carried the princess Mudáratí down to Pátála—Her brothers failed to rescue her and were made captive—Vatsa-pri killed the Daitya, after she destroyed the club's magic power, and rescued her and her brothers—She was named Sunandá after the club, and Vatsa-pri married her.*

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 1 On hearing this herspeech and his son's, the king, wise in
- 2 righteousness, addressed his wife and son again,—“ Inasmuch
- as I relinquished the kingdom at my father's command, I will
- not take it again ; why dost thou, *O wife*, draw out my soul
- 3 with vain words ? Standing *fast* in my duties as *vaiśya* I will
- pay thee taxes, *my son*. Enjoy thou the whole kingdom, or
- relinquish it if thou wishest.”
- 4 Being addressed thus by his father, prince Bhanandana \*
- then governed the kingdom in righteousness and in like wise
- 5 married a wife. Unrepulsed was his discus in the earth, *O*
- bráhmaṇ, and his mind *was* not *set* upon unrighteousness. All
- 6 kings were in subjection to him. He performed a sacrifice ac-
- cording to precept ; he rules the earth well. He in sooth was
- the only lord ; his commands pervaded the earth.
- 7 A son was born to him, namely Vatsa-pri by name, who, a
- high-souled *king*, surpassed his father with the multitude of
- 8 his good qualities. And his wife was Saunandá, daughter of
- Vidúratha, who was devoted to her husband, an illustrious
- woman. He gained her by his valour in slaying the Daitya
- king Kujrimbha,† the enemy of Indra.

\* Or *Bhalandana* according to Vishṇu Pur. IV. i. where his descendants are given.

† The Calcutta text reads *Kujumbha* here and in verse 9, incorrectly ; see verse 16.

Kraushtuki spoke :

- 9 Adorable sir, how did he gain her through the destruction of  
Kujrimbha ? Tell me this story with benignant mind.

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 10 There was a king named Vidúratha \* whose fame was cele-  
brated in the earth. Two sons were born to him, Su-niti and  
11 Su-mati. Now Vidúratha went to the forest once upon a time  
to hunt. He beheld a very great pit, as it were the earth's  
12 mouth thrust up. On seeing it he pondered. "What is this  
dreadful thing ? I trow *it is* a hole *down* to Pátála : it has  
13 not belonged to the earth a long while." While thinking thus,  
he saw in a lonely wood there an ascetic brahman named Su-  
14 vrata approaching. and the king being astonished asked him,  
—"What is this ? *It is* very deep *and* displays the earth's  
belly which is situated within."

The řishi spoke :

- 15 "Knowest thou it not, O king ? for thou art deemed by me  
to have spies as thine eyes. † A king ought to know everything  
16 that passes on the face of the earth. A very valiant fierce  
Dánava dwells in Rasátala ; because he makes the earth to  
17 yawn, ‡ he is therefore called Ku-jrimbha. Whatever has been  
produced, whether produced on the earth or in heaven, is  
wrought by him, O king ; how is it then that thou dost not  
18 know him, Sir ? That wicked-souled *demon* carried off the  
club named Su-nanda, which Tvashtři fashioned of yore ; there-  
19 with he slays his enemies in battle. Hidden within Pátála *that*  
Asura cleaves this earth with it, and makes doors *of exit* for  
20 all the Asuras ; with that weapon, the club Su-nanda, the  
earth has been pierced in this *spot*. How shalt thou, Sir, enjoy

\* The story shows that this king's capital was near the river Nirviṇḍhyá which was apparently in the Málwa region (see verses 27 and 33). There were several kings of this name, but I have found none who had two sons of the names mentioned.

† For *vág-arthas*, which the Calcutta and Bombay editions have, read *śárák-shas* as in the Poona edition.

‡ *Jrimbhayati*.

21 this earth unless thou conquerest him ? That fierce, mighty  
 adversary of the gods, armed with the club, destroys sacrifices  
 22 and fattens up the Daityas. If thou slayest this foe, whose  
 sphere is in Pátála, thou *shalt* thereby become lord of all the  
 23 earth, the supreme monarch. That mighty *demon's* club is  
 called Saunanda by men-folk ; and the wise moreover speak of  
 24 it\* as partly strong and partly weak ; yet when touched by a  
 woman it loses its power on that day,† O king ; on the following  
 25 day it issues forth with its power *regained*. That *demon* of  
 evil ways does not know then the majestic power of the club,  
*nor* the defect which comes at the touch of a woman's fingers,  
*that is*, the collapse of its power.

26 “ Thus I have declared to thee, O king, the might of that  
 evil-souled Dánava and of his club. As I have spoken, so do  
 27 thou comport thyself. This hole which he has made in the  
 earth is near thy city, O king ; why art thou foolishly ‡ un-  
 concerned *about it*, Sir ? ”

28 Now when that *rishi* had spoken thus and departed, the  
 king went to his city and took counsel with his ministers who  
 29 were skilled in counsel within his city. He made known to  
 the ministers all that *story* as he had heard it, both the majestic  
 30 power of the club and also the waning of its power. Now his  
 daughter Mudá-vatí, who was by his side, heard that counsel  
 which the king was taking with his ministers.

31 But some days afterwards, the Daitya Kujrimbha carried off  
 that maiden, who was possessed of energy, from a grove, while  
 32 she was accompanied by her maiden-friends. On hearing  
 that, the king's eyes were distraught with anger, and he said  
 to his two sons, “ Hasten quickly ye two who are well acquaint-  
 33 ed with the forests : there is a hole on the bank of the Nir-vin-  
 dhá ; § go ye *down* thereby to Rasátala and slay him who with  
 most evil mind has carried Mudá-vatí off.”

\* For *tam* read *tad* as in the Poona edition.

† On the day on which it is touched, *sparśa-dine* (comment.)

‡ For *yathá* read *vrithá* as in the Poona edition.

§ Or *Nirvindhá*, as in the Poona edition, which is the preferable form ;  
 see canto lvii, verse 24, note ‡.

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

34 Thereupon those two sons of his, following on the steps of that  
 demon, reached that hole and in excessive wrath fought with  
 35 Kujrimbha with *the aid* of their own army. Then occurred a  
 very terrible combat between them with maces, swords, spears,  
 36 javelins, and axes and arrows without intermission. After it  
 that Daitya, who possessed the might of illusive power, bound  
 those two princes in battle after slaying all their soldiers.

37 On hearing of that, the king spoke thus to all his soldiers,  
 “ I have fallen into utter misery, now that my sons are in  
 38 bonds, (O best of munis) ; whoever shall slay that Daitya  
 and shall set my daughter there free, I will bestow even her,  
 39 the large-eyed maiden, on him.” Even thus the desperate  
 king made a proclamation in his city then in order to obtain  
 the deliverance of his sons and daughter from bondage, O  
 muni.

40 Bhanandana's son Vatsa-prí then heard of that *promise* in  
 sooth, which was proclaimed abroad—he, possessed of strength,  
 41 skilled in weapons, endowed with heroism. And arriving *there*  
 he saluted this noblest of kings, and bowing with deference  
 42 spoke to him who was *his own* father's peerless friend ;—“ Com-  
 mand me in sooth speedily ; I *will* deliver thy two sons and  
 also thy daughter, after slaying that Daitya through thy very  
 glory.”

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

43 Embracing him joyfully, *who was* his dear friend's son, the  
 king said :

44 “ Go thou to full success,\* my dear son. My dear son shall  
 stand in *my* place, if he performs the precept thus. Do this  
 quickly, my dear son, if thy mind is resolute.”

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

45 Then armed with scymitar and bow, having a leathern bow-  
 guard and finger-protector bound *on him*, the heroic *prince*  
 46 went in haste to Pátála by that hole. The prince made  
 his bow-string twang with an exceedingly vehement sound

\* For *samsiddha* read *samsiddhyai*, as corrected in the Poona edition,

then, wherewith the whole of Pátála was filled throughout.

47 Hearing the sound of the bow-string, the Dánava king, Ku-  
 48 jrimbha came forward then in excessive wrath, attended by his  
 49 army. Then occurred a battle between him and the king's  
 50 son, one with his army against the *other* with his army, mighty  
 51 against mighty. When the Dánava had fought with him for  
 52 three days, he was filled with rage in his soul and rushed  
 53 to *get* his club. Worshipped with perfumes, garlands and in-  
 54 cense, it stands in the private apartments, O illustrious sir ; *for*  
 55 *it had been* fashioned by the Prajá-pati.\* Mudá-vati, who  
 56 knew well the *secret of the club's* majestic power, bowing her  
 57 neck very low, touched the noble club then. Until the great  
 58 demon grasps the club again, till then the beautiful maiden  
 59 touched it many times under pretence of paying reverence  
 60 to it. Going *back* then the king of the demons fought  
 with the club. Vainly fell the blows of the club on those  
 enemies. But inasmuch as the supreme weapon, the club  
 Saunanda, had lost its power, O muni, the Daitya fought  
 with his weapons and arms against his foe in the battle.  
 With his arms and weapons the demon was not the  
 prince's equal, and that, his might with the club, had been  
 dissipated by the maiden.† Conquering then the Dánava's  
 weapons and arms, the king's son forthwith forced him from  
 his chariot ; and then *the demon* grasping his shield and scy-  
 mitar rushed at him again. The prince felled that enemy of  
 the lord of the thirty *gods*, as he rushed forwards violently in-  
 cited and displaying his rage,—*felled him* to the earth with his  
 weapon of fire which gleamed like the Fire that burns up the  
 world *finally*. That foe of the thirty *gods* was wounded griev-  
 ously in the heart by the fiery weapon and quitted his body.  
 And forthwith there was high festival among the huge snakes  
 within the confines of Rasátala.

Then fell a shower of flowers upon the king's son ; the  
 Gandharva lords sang forth, the gods' instruments of music  
 sounded out. And the prince, after slaying that *demon*, set free

\* See verse 18.

† For *buddhyá* read *tanvyá* as in the Poona edition,

- the king's two sons and the slender-shaped maiden Mudá-vatí.
- 61 And the king of the serpents, Ananta who is named Śeṣha,  
 62 took that club, when that Kujrimbha was slain ; and he, Śeṣha  
 lord of all the serpents, was satisfied with her ; he rich in aus-  
 terities had meditated with glee upon the course of Mudá-  
 63 vatí's mind. Because the most beautiful *maiden* had repeated-  
 ly touched the club Sunanda, knowing the power of the  
 64 touch of a woman's palm \* *on it*, therefore the serpent  
 king in his joy gave Mudá-vatí then the name Su-nandá,  
 derived from the quality of *the club* Saunanda, O dvija.
- 65 And the prince brought her in company with her two bro-  
 thers to their father's presence quickly, and bowing down  
 66 spoke to him thus—“ *Here* are brought *thy* two sons, dear  
 father, and here *is brought* Mudá-vatí according to thy com-  
 mand ; what else I must do, declare thou that.”

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 67 Thereat the king's heart was filled with gladness, and he  
 exclaimed aloud, “ Well done ! well done ! ” and “ Splendid !  
 68 my dear son, my dear son ! I am honoured by the thirty *gods*,  
 my dear son, for three reasons—in that I have both gained thee  
 69 for my son-in-law, and that the foe has been stricken down, and  
 that my children have come unharmed to me here again ; there-  
 70 fore take her hand now on *this* auspicious day—I have said it ;  
 make my word true—that thou, O prince, be joined in joy  
 with my daughter Mudá-vatí, a maiden of lovely form.”

The prince spoke :

- 71 I must obey thy command, dear father ; what thou sayest I  
*will* do. Thou verily knowest, dear father, *that* in this *matter*  
 we are in truth unchanged.

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 72 Then the great king performed the series of marriage *rites*  
 for them both, for his daughter Mudá-vatí and Bhanandana's

\* Read *yoshit* as part of the compound *yoshit-karatala-sparśa*- &c., and not separately as in the Calcutta edition.



- 73 son. Thereafter Vatsa-prí in his early manhood sported with  
her in charming regions and in palaces and on hill-tops.
- 74 As time passed on, his father Bhanandana grew old *and*  
75 departed to the forest; Vatsa-prí himself became king. He  
offered up sacrifices continually, while protecting his people  
with righteousness. Now the people, being protected by that  
high-souled *monarch* as if *they were his children*, prospered;  
76 and in his realm there was no confusion among the castes;  
and no one felt any fear of robbers, rogues or villains, nor any  
fear of calamities, while he ruled as king.

---

CANTO CXVII.\*

---

*Khanitra's exploits.*

*Vatsa-prí was succeeded by his son Prámśu, and Prámśu by his son  
Prajáti.—Prajáti had five sons, of whom Khanitra succeeded  
him—Khanitra's special prayer is given—He made his four bro-  
thers subordinate kings—The minister of one of them subdued  
the other brothers and tried to gain the supreme power for his  
master through magic performed by the family priests of all four  
brothers—The magic produced a female deity which destroyed the  
four priests and the minister.*

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 1 To him, *Vatsa-prí*, were born of *Su-nandá* twelve sons,  
2 *Prámśu*, *Pracíra* and *Súra*, *Su-śakra*, *Vikrama*, *Krama*, *Balin*,  
*Baláka*, and *Ćaṇḍa* and *Pracāṇḍa*, *Su-vikrama* and *Sva-rúpa*—  
all *princes* of great parts, most victorious in battle.
- 3 The eldest of them, *Prámśu*, who was great in valour, was  
king; these others were subordinate to his authority like de-  
4 pendants. At his sacrifice the earth† justified her name by  
reason of the many multitudes of things, which she gave away

\* The Calcutta edition makes a mistake in the numbering. It omits cxvii, calls this Canto cxviii, and continues the mistaken numbering to the end.

† *Vasun-dhard*, "container of wealth."

to the twice-born and which she parted with to the inferior  
 5 castes. While he duly protected his people as if his own be-  
 gotten children, the sacrifices then, which he performed with  
 6 the accumulation of wealth that lay in his treasury, were hun-  
 dreds of thousands; their number is not reckoned by ten  
 thousand or such a *figure*, nor by ten millions, nor by a thousand  
 billion or such a *figure*, O muni.

7 Pra-játi\* was his son; at whose sacrifice Indra, gaining  
 unparalled gratification along with the gods who partake of  
 8 shares of sacrifices, the chiefest of the mighty,† smote nine  
 nineties‡ of valiant Dánavas and Bala and Jambha noblest of  
 9 Asuras, and smote other very valiant foes of the gods.

Prajáti had five sons, of whom Khanitra was chief, O muni.  
 10 Of them Khanitra became king; he was celebrated for his  
 personal feats of prowess. He was a pacific, truth-speaking  
 11 hero; he delighted in *doing* good to all living creatures; he  
 took delight in his own *sphere* of righteousness constantly; he  
 waited upon the aged, he was well versed in the Vedas, he  
 was eloquent, endowed with modesty, yet skilled in weapons  
 12 and no boaster. He was the beloved of all people continually;  
 he uttered this *prayer* day and night;—

‘Let all created things rejoice, let them be affectionate  
 13 even in solitary *places*! May there be welfare for all created  
 things, and may they be free from affliction! May created  
 things experience no bodily sickness nor any mental diseases!  
 14 May all created things cherish friendliness to every living  
 being! May there be bliss for all the twice-born; may they have  
 15 mutual lovingkindness! May all castes have full prosperity,  
 and may *all* deeds attain perfect accomplishment! May the  
 worlds be *propitious* to all created things! May your mind  
 16 always be propitious! Desire ye at all times what is good for your  
 son even as for yourselves! Similarly be ye benevolent in mind

\* He is called Prajāni in the Vishnu Pur. (IV. i.) and Pramati in the  
 Bhāgavata Pur. He seems to be the same as Prasandhi in the genealogy in  
 Mahā-Bh., Kṣvam.-p. iii. 65.

† That is, Indra.

‡ *Dabddhikāśafatīm*, comment.

17 to all created things! This is unbounded good for you. More-  
 18 over who sins against whom, that he causes any harm to any  
 one besotted in mind? To him assuredly \* comes that result,  
*that* which accrues to the doer *thereof*. So thinking, ho! let the  
 19 people be informed of their duties† to all,‡ lest *ye* wise people  
 shall undergo secular sin.§ May there ever be bliss on the  
 20 earth for him, who loves me now; and may even he, who hates  
 me, see good things in this world!’

21 Such was that king’s son Khanitra in disposition; he was  
 endowed with every good quality; he possessed good fortune,  
 his eyes were like a lotus-leaf. He appointed those his *four*  
 22 brothers to separate kingdoms out of affection, and he himself  
 enjoyed this earth bounded by the seas; *thus* he placed Śauri over  
 23 the east *region*, Mudāvasu|| over the south, Sunaya over the  
 western region, and Mahā-ratha over the northern. They and  
 24 that king had separate families of *brāhman*s as purohitas, and  
 also munis, who descended in a regular lineage of ministers.  
 Śauri’s *purohita* was a *brāhman* ¶ Su-hotra by name who sprang  
 25 from the family of Atri; Udāvasu’s was Kusāvartta, who was  
 born of the lineage of Gautama; a Kāśyapa by name Pra-mati  
 26 was Sunaya’s purohita; Vāsishṭha was purohita to king Mahā-  
 ratha. Those four kings indeed enjoyed their own kingdoms,  
 27 and Khanitra was their over-lord, being over-lord of all the  
 earth. King Khanitra was always kindly to those *his* four  
 28 brothers and to all his people as to his own sons.

One day Śauri was addressed by his minister Viśva-vedin—  
 29 “O king, we have somewhat to say unto thee in private. He,  
 who possesses all this earth, to whom *all* kings are in subjec-  
 30 tion, is the king, and *so will be* his son and his grandsons and  
 thereafter his descendants. These others, his brothers, are

\* For *nyānaṁ* read *nānaṁ* as in the Poona edition.

† The Poona edition reads *hita-buddhayaḥ*, and the meaning would then be  
 “be friendly-minded.”

‡ Or, ‘in all things.’

§ *Laukikam pāpam*.

|| Or better *Udāvasu*, as in the Poona edition and in verse 25.

¶ Family priest. For *dvijāḥ* read *dvijaḥ* as in the Poona edition.

31 kings of very small \* territories; and his son is smaller than  
 he;† and his grandsons *will be* of smaller make. Degenerat-  
 32 ing in time from individual to individual, his descendants *will*  
 become dependant on agriculture for their living, O king. *Thy*  
 brother, bestowing affection and power on his brothers, *yet* makes  
 33 no division of the patrimony.‡ What affection *will he have*,  
 O king, for the two more distant, *his* brothers' sons§? His  
 mind *will be* more distant with regard to their two sons, O  
 34 king. By what thing that is to be done will his son be endowed  
 with affection? Or *if* a king is satisfied by anything whatsoever,  
 35 yet to what end then do kings entertain ministers?|| The  
 whole kingdom is enjoyed by me while I remain thy minister.  
 36 Dost thou retain that to no purpose,¶ if it gives\*\* satisfaction?  
 Sovereignty accomplishes what should be done; an instru-  
 37 ment is desired by one who operates. And the acquirement  
 of sovereignty†† is what thou must accomplish; thou art the  
 worker, we are the instrument. Do thou, being such, rule  
 the kingdom that belonged to thy father and grandfather by  
 means of us, the instruments. We shall not bestow benefits  
 on thee in another world.

The king spoke:

38 Inasmuch as the eldest *brother* is king (O monarch), *and*  
 we are his younger brothers, he therefore enjoys the earth  
 39 and we *enjoy* small *portions* of the earth. Now we are five

\* For *kalpa-vishayádhipāḥ* read *svalpa-vishayádhipāḥ* as in the Poona edition.

† *Tat-putraś cālpakas tasmāt*, referring to each of the brothers; but a plural reading would be preferable, "their sons are smaller than they."

‡ *Uddhāram*. The Poona edition reads *hhrátuvā sneha-bālarpiṇaḥ*, and the meaning would then be, "Thy brother makes no division of the patrimony for a brother who bestows affection and power:" though *arpa* and *arpiṇ* are not in the dictionary.

§ For *snehakaḥ* the Poona edition reads better *snehaḥ kaḥ*.

|| For *mantra-parigrahaḥ* the Poona edition reads better *mantri-parigrahaḥ*.

¶ For *sukhādhrāyase* read *mudhā dhārayase* as in the Poona edition.

\*\* For *kurute* the Poona edition reads *kurushe*.

†† For *rājya-lubdhāś* read *rājya-lambhaś* as in the Poona edition.

brothers, and *there is but one earth*, O high-minded *sir*, hence how can there be entire sovereignty over it separately *for us* ?

Viśva-vedin spoke :

- 40 Be this so here !\* If *there is but one earth*, O king, do thou thyself take possession of it ; do thou Sir, as eldest *brother*,  
41 rule the earth. Be thou the absolute ruler, exercising entire sovereignty, unto all. And the ministers *whom they have entertained* strive for them† as I *strive* for thee.

The king spoke :

- 42 Since the eldest, the king, esteems us affectionately like sons, how shall I display against him a selfishness that relates to the world ?

Viśva-vedin spoke :

- 43 When seated in the kingdom, thou mayest do worship as the eldest with new kingly honours. What is this position of youngest and eldest ? Sovereignty is for men who want it.

Mārkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 44 And on the king's assenting, "So be it," O best of men, Viśva-vedin the minister brought his brothers into subjection  
45 to him then, and brought their purohitas into subjection to himself in ceremonies performed for the removal of obstacles and other rites. Next he employed them in spells directed against  
46 Khanitra, and severed his faithful adherents by conciliation, gifts and other means ; and he exerted the utmost efforts in  
47 repelling punishment from his own folk. And while the four purohitas were performing an exceedingly arduous magical incantation day by day, there was produced a four-fold female  
48 deity‡ which was very formidable, had a large mouth, was exceedingly terrible to behold, held a large pike raised aloft, was  
49 lofty and was exceedingly pitiless. It came to the place then where king Khanitra was, and it was cast out by that un-  
50 blemished king's store of merit. The four-fold female deity

\* For *bha-dāms tatra* read *bhavatv atra* as in the Bombay edition.

† *Teshām* ; the commentator explains thus, *bhṛātṛāḍām kārya-vishaye*.

‡ *Kṛity-dātushṭaya*.

- fell on those evil-souled purohitas of *his brother kings*, and on  
 51 *Viśva-vedin* indeed. Then were burnt up by that female  
 deity, who assailed them, those purohitas and *Viśva-vedin* the  
 minister who gave evil counsel to *Sauri*.

---

 CANTO CXVIII.\*
 

---

*Khanitra's exploits concluded.*

*Khanitra, on hearing of the destruction of the family priests, lamented and took the blame on himself—He resigned the kingdom to his son Kshupa, departed to the forest, and died there in sanctity.*

- 1 Thereupon there was great dismay in all the world, in-
- asmuch as those *purohitas* dwelling in separate cities perished
- 2 at the same time. *Khanitra* heard then that his brothers' puro-
- hitas had reached their death, and that his brother's minister
- 3 *Viśva-vedin* also had been burnt up. *Khanitra* the great king
- was extremely surprised, wondering "What is this?" O best
- 4 of munis; and knew not the cause. Then the king asked
- Vasishṭha* who had come to his palace, what the reason was
- why those, the minister and purohitas of his brothers, had
- 5 perished. When questioned by him the great muni related
- then how it had happened, what *Sauri's* minister had said
- 6 and what *Sauri* had replied to him, and what he, that evil
- minister, had performed as a means of producing dissension
- 7 among the brothers and what the purohitas had done; for what
- reason they, the purohitas who were absolutely compassionate
- even to an enemy, had perished, while injuring that sinless
- 8 king. On hearing that, the king reproached himself exceed-
- ingly then, exclaiming, "Alas! I am sore stricken!" in *Vasish-*
- ṭha's* presence, O *dviḥja*.

The king spoke :

- 9 "Fie on me, who am of unholy composition, of scanty good-

\* Canto cix in the Calcutta edition.

fortune, destitute of splendour! Sin which is utterly contemned by all the worlds has been committed *by me* through the fault of fate. That is the reason why those four bráhmans have perished: what other man besides me will there be more sinful on the earth? If I were not a man here on the earth, they, my brothers' purohitas, would not have perished then. Fie on the kingdom! fie too on my birth in the family of great kings—I who have become the cause of the destruction of the bráhmans! They, my brothers' sacrificing priests, met their end while working at their masters' object; no wicked *men* were they; I am wicked in causing their destruction. What am I to do? Where am I to go? No one verily is a sinner on the earth but I who have become the cause of the bráhmans' destruction."

Thus grieving in heart, king Khanitra being desirous of departing to the forest anointed his son *to the throne*. After anointing his son who was named Kshupa to the kingdom, the king departed to the forest, along with his three wives, to perform austerities. Going there he, best of kings, being well-versed in the ordinances concerning vána-prasthas, performed austerities three hundred and fifty years. Now, when his body had become emaciated through austerities, the noble king, having restrained all the organs of sense, quitted his life while dwelling in the forest, O chief of bráhmans. He went then to the sacred worlds which yield every desire *and* are undecaying, which are to be gained by kings by means of horse-sacrifices and other sacrifices. And those his three wives quitted their life at the very same time with him, *and* gained the same world\* along with him indeed, their most high-souled lord.

This is *the story* of Khanitra's exploits; when heard, it destroys stains; and *it destroys the stains* of those who read it, illustrious sir. Hear next about Kshupa.

\* For *vápuḥ sandhokyaṁ* read *avápuḥ sálokyam* as in the Poona edition.

## CANTO CXIX.\*

*Vivimsa's exploits.*

*Kshupa emulated a more ancient king of the same name and enriched the bráhmans—He was succeeded by his son Vira ; and Vira by his son Vivimsa whose was a prosperous reign.*

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 1 Now Khanitra's son Kshupa on receiving the kingdom protected his people, while delighting them in righteousness, even
- 2 as his father *had done*. That king was by disposition liberal of gifts, and a sacrificer of sacrifices ; he was just alike both to foe and friend in the path of the administration of justice and so forth.
- 3 One day the king, while at his own residence, O muni, was addressed by his bards, —“ As *was* king Kshupa of yore, so art
- 4 thou, sir. ”† Of yore there was a king Kshupa,‡ Brahmá's son ; as had been the exploits of this *king*, such that one indeed endeavoured to achieve.

The king spoke :

- 5 I wish to hear of the exploits of the most high-souled Kshupa. If such can be accomplished by me, I will perform them.

The bards spoke :

- 6 That king made *cattle-keeping* bráhmans § multitudes of yore, O king ; and with the *tribute of the sixth* portion that high-souled *king* performed a sacrifice on the earth.

\* Canto cxx in the Calcutta edition.

† For *tathábhavat* read *tathá bhaván* as in the Poona edition.

‡ It must apparently be this Kshupa to whom reference is made in the Mahá-Bh. (Sánti-p. clxvi. 6164-65 and 6192-93) where it is said that after the sword was fashioned Manu gave it to Kshupa for the protection of the people, and Ikshváku got it from Kshupa.

§ *Go-bráhmaṇán*. The compound occurs again in verses 10 and 12. It does not seem to mean “cattle and bráhmans,” for this meaning hardly suits the verb used, and the compound occurs twice in the singular in verse 12 In that verse the Poona edition varies in reading *go-bráhmaṇáh*, plural, but both editions agree in reading *go-bráhmaṇáya*, singular.



The king spoke :

- 7 Who like me will follow those high-souled kings ? Never-  
 8 theless, may he be strenuous after the exploits of *those kings*  
 9 of exalted exploits ! Hear then the promise which I now  
 10 make—I will imitate the great king Kshupa's exploits. I  
 will perform sacrifices three and three on the present and  
 future\* gathering of the harvests on the earth which has four  
 streams—this promise I have made. And the tribute which  
 cattle-keeping bráhmans gave to *that* king of yore, the very  
 same I will restore to the bráhmans and the cattle.

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 11 Having thus pledged his word, Kshupa performed it accord-  
 12 ingly. He, best of sacrificers, offered three sacrifices on the  
 appearance of the crops. And the very tribute which a cattle-  
 keeping bráhmaṇ gave to kings before, of that same quantity  
 gave he other wealth to the cattle-keeping bráhmaṇ.  
 13 He had a son, Víra,† of *his wife* Pramathá, a blameless  
 prince, by whose majesty and valour kings were brought into  
 14 subjection. And his dear wife was a Vidarbha princess named  
 Nandíní ; he, the lord, begat a son Vivimśa‡ of her.  
 15 While Vivimśa was ruling the earth, as a king of great vi-  
 16 gour, the earth became densely populated with men. Par-  
 janya rained in *due* season, and the earth abounded with  
 17 harvests, and the harvests were most fruitful, and the fruits  
 were full of juice, and the juices gave nourishment, *yet* the  
 nourishment caused no outrageous behaviour ; nor did the  
 stores of riches become causes of debauchery among men.  
 18 His enemies were cowed by his energy, O great muni. The  
 people, who were *all* a band of friends, *desire* good health ; the  
 19 citizens desire mirth. After performing very many sacrifices,

\* *Sasyápaté gatágate ; = śasya-práptau játáyám ajátáyám vá* (comment.)

† This king is called Viṁśa in the Vishṇu Pur. (IV. i). Between Kshupa and Viṁśa a king Ikshváku is inserted in the genealogy given in Mahá-Bh. Káram -p. iii. 65-68.

‡ The Vishṇu Pur calls him Vivimśa or Vivimśati (IV. i).

after protecting the earth well, he met his death in battle and departed hence to the world of Indra.\*

---

CANTO CXX. †

---

*Khanīnetra's exploits.*

*Virimśa was succeeded by his son Khanīnetra, who was a great sacrificer—Being son-less he went hunting to kill a deer for a sacrifice, and two deer came, one having no offspring and the other many—Each pressed his claim to be killed, but the king refused to kill either.*

Mārkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 1 His son was Khanīnetra, great in strength and prowess, at whose sacrifices sang the Gandharvas, filled with astonishment,
- 2 thus—"Like unto Khanīnetra there will be no other sacrificer on earth." After completing ten thousand sacrifices, he gave
- 3 the earth with its seas away. And *he it was* who, after giving away all the earth to high-souled brāhmanas, acquired wealth through austerities fully performed, and lavished *that also*; ‡
- 4 and after obtaining unparalleled increase of riches from that most noble giver, brāhmanas accepted no donation from any
- 5 other king, O brāhman :—*he it was* who sacrificed sixty-seven thousand and sixty-seven hundred and sixty-seven sacrifices with abundance of largesse.
- 6 That monarch being son-less engaged in a hunt with the desire of *obtaining* flesh for a sacrifice to the pitṛis in order to
- 7 obtain a son, O great muni. He rode on his horse, away from his troops, absolutely alone in a great forest, having his leathern bow-guard and finger-protector bound on him, and
- 8 carrying arrows, sword and bow. A deer issuing out of a dense

\* For *śatru-lokam* read *śakra-lokam*, as in the Poona edition.

† Canto cxxi in the Calcutta edition.

‡ The Poona edition reads *śāśādyāmoḥayāt śādhikena* for *śāśādyā moḥayet śādhitena*, "acquired wealth through austerities and lavished that together with more besides" (*kṛṣṭa-stha-dṛavyeṣa saha*).

forest from another side said to the horse that carried him—  
 “Accomplish thy object by killing me.”

The king spoke :

- 9 Other deer on seeing me flee in great terror ; how *is it that*  
 thou wishest to yield thyself as a gift to death ?

The deer spoke :

- 10 I have no son, O great king ; vain is the purpose of my  
 existence ; while wandering about I do not perceive the *use of*  
 maintaining my life here.

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 11 Now another deer approached the king and said in the  
 presence of that *first* deer—“Enough of this, O king ; slay me,  
 12 perform thy rite with my flesh. As thou mayest *thus*  
 succeed in thy object, so *will* that also *be* beneficial to me.  
 13 Thou, O great king, desirest to sacrifice to thy pitṛis in order  
 to *obtain* a son ; how wilt thou gain thy earnest wish by means  
 14 of the flesh of this *other* son-less deer ? As is the rite that is to  
 be performed, such *is* the thing one should offer. Knowledge  
 of the odours of sweetly-odorous things is not ascertained by  
 means of ill-odorous things.

The king spoke :

- 15 This *other deer* has declared to me that the reason of his  
 indifference to worldly desires is his son-lessness : tell thou me  
 what is the reason of thy indifference to worldly desires in  
 thy abandonment of life.

The deer spoke :

- 16 Many are my sons, O king ; many are my daughters also ;  
 in the miseries of my anxieties for whom I dwell as amid the  
 17 flames of a raging conflagration. O king, this most weakly  
 deer-tribe is to be mastered by every one, and I have excessive  
 self-interest in those my children—therefore I am distressed.  
 18 I am in fear of men, lions, tigers, wolves, and other *ravenous*  
*beasts*, but not of a feeble *animal*, nor of all good creatures, nor  
 19 even of a dog or jackal, my lord. Being such, I desire most

- earnestly for the sake of my kindred, that all this earth may be free for once from the fear of men, lions, and other *beasts*.
- 20 Some *animals*, cows, goats, sheep, horses and such like, feed on grass; for their thriving I wish those *beasts* sent to destruction.
- 21 After those *beasts* then have departed *and* my offspring *remain* separate, anxious thoughts occur by hundreds
- 22 to me whose mind is enveloped by self-interest, *such as*—‘Has a son of mine while browsing in the forest encountered a crafty trap, or a thunderbolt, or a noose? or has he fallen into the power of a man, or lion or other *dangerous creature*?
- 23 *What condition* has this one reached? what condition have those *sons* of mine reached, who while actually grazing
- 24 have now gone to the very great forest?’ On seeing that those my sons have reached my presence,\* O king, I, panting somewhat, wish for night however as security
- 25 At dawn I desire day earnestly as security, *and* when the sun has set *I desire* again the night *earnestly*: when
- 26 will there be safety at every time? This I have declared to thee, O king, is the cause of my anxiety. Be gracious to me therefore—let this *thy* arrow be discharged at me!
- 27 That is the cause why pierced by hundreds of sufferings I thus forsake even my life; hearken thou as I speak, O king!
- 28 Named ‘The Sun-less’ are the worlds, to which those who kill themselves go; *but* cattle that are suitable for sacrifice attain
- 29 *thus* to exalted stations,† O lord. Agni was a domestic animal‡ formerly; the lord of the waters was a domestic animal; and *so was* the Sun, who gained exalted stations *and* reached his
- 30 culmination in sacrifice.§ Shew me this pity then, and conduct me to an exalted position; and thou shalt obtain the earnestly desired wish of thy soul by gaining a son.

\* This is the reading of the Bombay edition *prāptān mamābhyāsam*; instead of the Calcutta reading *prāpta-samābhyāsam*, which seems incorrect; *samābhyāsa* is not in the dictionary.

† *Uttama-lokān* (comment.)

‡ *Paśu*.

§ Or “and the Sun gained exalted stations *and* reached his culmination in sacrifice.”

The first deer spoke :

- 31 O supreme king, this deer must not be killed ; he is happy  
as a kind doer, who has many sons ; I must be killed who have  
no progeny.

The second deer spoke :

- 32 Happy in truth art thou, sir *deer*, being such a one for whom  
suffering exists in a single body ! He who has many bodies has  
33 manifold sufferings. But formerly when I was single, the suf-  
fering that arises from the body *consisted* then in my regard  
for myself ; that become doubled when there was a wife.  
34 When children were born, then as many as they were, so many  
35 sites in my body did my sufferings find in sooth. Hast not  
thou, sir, been successful, for whom existence has not tended  
to excessive suffering ? My offspring are for suffering in this  
36 world, and *will be* of opposite qualities in the next world. Since  
I do that for the preservation and nourishment of my children,  
and am anxious *about that*, my birth *will* therefore certainly *be*  
in hell.\*

The king spoke :

- 37 I know not, O deer, whether he who has offspring is happy  
in this *world*, or he who has no son ; and this undertaking of  
38 mine in order to obtain a son makes my mind vacillate. Off-  
spring verily tend then to cause suffering both in this *world*  
and in the other *world* ; nevertheless, debts come upon those  
39 who have no son—so have I heard. I being such will strive  
to obtain a son, without the slaughter of breathing beings, O  
deer, even with very arduous austerities, as did a king of yore.

---

## CANTO CXXI.†

---

*Karandhama's exploits.*

*Kharānētra propitiated Indra and obtained the gift of a son, Ba-*

\* The Poona edition reads instead *śintayāmi śa sambhūtiṁ tena me narako dhruvam*, "and am anxious about my offspring (*sambhūti* = *santati*, comment.) therefore hell is certainly *destined* for me."

† Canto cxxii in the Calcutta edition.

*láśva*—King *Balásva* was besieged by his rebellious vassal kings and was delivered by an army which issued from his hands that shook with distress—Hence he was named *Karandhama*.

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 1 Thereupon the king went to the sin-destroying river Go-
- matí,\* and, practising self-restraint, gratified the god Puran-
- 2 dara there. And assiduously practising severe austerities,
- subduing his voice, body and mind, and controlling himself,
- 3 the king gratified Indra in order to obtain a son. The ad-
- orable Indra, lord of the gods, was gratified with his praise,
- 4 austerities and faith, and said to him, O great muni, — “ By
- reason of these austerities, faith and praise uttered by thee,
- I am well satisfied with thee, O king ; choose a boon, sir ! ”

The king spoke :

- 5 May I who am son-less obtain a son, *who shall be chief among*
- all who bear arms, and always unrepulsed in his sover-
- eignty,† a doer of righteousness, a knower of righteousness,
- and skilful.

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 6 And when Indra said to him, “ Be it so ! ” the king gained
- his desire. The king returned to his own city to protect his
- 7 people. As he was performing sacrifice there, as he was duly
- protecting his people, a son was born to him then through
- 8 Indra’s favour, O bráhmaṇ. The king, his father, gave him
- the name *Balásva*,‡ and caused the son to acquire *skill in every*
- 9 kind of weapon. When his father died, O bráhmaṇ, he stood

\* See p. 291, note ††.

† For *śábhyaáhataisvāryo* read *śávyáhataisvāryo* as in the Poona edition.

‡ He was also called *Suvárśas* (*Mahá-Bh.*, *Áśvam.*-p iii. 72-79) and *Balakásva* or *Subalásva*; but his most famous name was *Karandhama* which is fancifully explained in verse 21, and in the above-mentioned passage of the *Mahá-Bhárata*. A king *Vibhúti* or *Ati-vibhúti* is sometimes inserted between *Khanínetra* and this king. This famous *Karandhama* must be distinguished from another king of the same name, who was fourth in descent from *Yayáti*’s son *Turvasu* (*Hari-V.*, xxiii. 1829-31; and *Matsya Pur.* xlviii. 1, 2.)

- as king in the supreme sovereignty.\* Balásva brought all  
 10 kings on the earth into subjection; and the king after first  
 taking away their choicest property, † made all the kings pay  
 him tribute; and he protected his people.
- 11 Now all those kings as claimants were furious against him; and  
 at all times they neither rose up *before him* nor paid him tribute.
- 12 They stood up ‡ then in their own countries; disregarding con-  
 tentment as the chief *good*, those kings seized that king's terri-  
 13 tory. That king held fast his own kingdom by force, § O muni,  
 and made his stand in his own city. Many kings besieged him.
- 14 Kings, very great in valour, possessing military apparatus and  
 riches, assembled then and besieged that king in that city.
- 15 Now the king was enraged at that siege of his city, *but*, having  
 very little treasure and a small army, fell into the utmost  
 16 distress. Beholding no succour *though* possessing an army,  
 O best of dvijas, he put his hands before his face and sighed  
 17 in mental suffering. Then compacted together || by the breath  
 from his mouth, *which issued* through the interstice between  
 his hands, there went forth ¶ in hundreds warriors accom-  
 18 panied by chariots, elephants and horses. Thereby in a  
 moment all that city of that king was pervaded by a host of  
 forces, choice by reason of their extreme strength, O muni.
- 19 Surrounded then by that exceeding great host of forces, the  
 king sallied forth from that city and conquered those *foes*.
- 20 And after vanquishing them the king, having great good for-  
 tune, brought them into subjection and made them pay tri-  
 21 bute again as before, illustrious *sir*. Because from his agi-

\* The Mahá-Bh. says Khanánetra was deposed by his subjects (Kávam.-p. iii. 70-72.)

† *Sára-grahana-púrvakam*; *sára* = *śreshṭha-vastu* (comment.)

‡ *Vyutthitāḥ*. The root *vy-ut-thā* is given only in the causal form in the dictionary.

§ For *prithivīśo balān* the Poona edition reads *prithivīśo 'balān*; *prithivīśo balān* appears therefore to be the correct reading.

|| *Samāhitāḥ* appears to be the reading, but hardly yields a suitable meaning; *samāhitāḥ*, "put into order," "arrayed" would be preferable.

¶ For *hasta-viravān* read *hasta-vivarān*, and for *nī-jagmuḥ* read *nir-jagmuḥ* as in the Poona edition.

tated hands was produced an army which burnt up his  
 22 foes, Baláśva is thence called Karandhama.\* He was right-  
 eous of soul and great of soul; he was benevolent to all living  
 creatures. King Karandhama was celebrated in the three  
 23 worlds. And Power, which is denounced by Righteousness  
 itself approaching the king, who had undergone intense suffer-  
 ing, granted him the destruction of his enemies.†

---

### CANTO CXXII.‡

---

#### *Avikshita's exploits.*

*Karandhama had a son Avikshita, who was so called because benign planets looked upon his birth—Avikshita was a great prince; he was chosen by many princesses and he also carried off others at their svayam-varas—He carried off Vaisálini princess of Vidiśá, and other kings arrayed themselves against him.*

#### Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 1 Vírya-śandra's§ beautiful-browed daughter was named Vírá ;  
 she was noble in her vows. She chose the great king Karan-
- 2 dhama for her husband at her svayam-vara. That valiant king  
 of kings begat of her a son named Avikshita,|| who attained
- 3 fame on the face of the earth. When that son was born,

\* The derivation given here is from *karayor dhutayor*, but this is insufficient; the root *dhmá* would support this fanciful explanation better than *dhu* or *dhú*.

† The verse seems involved. The Poona edition has been followed. It reads *sampráptam paramám ártim* for *sampráptasya parám ártim*, and *nṛipam* for *nṛipaḥ*; and the commentator says *balam* is the subject and *ari-vináśanam* the object.

‡ Canto cxxiii in the Calcutta edition.

§ I have not found this king elsewhere.

|| He is called Avikshít and Avíkshi in various passages in the following cantos (see canto cxxx, verse 22); see also *Mahá-Bh.*, Áśvam., p. iii. 80-85, and *Vishnu Pur.* IV. i. In the former of these passages he is also called Kárandhama, is highly extolled as a great king, and is said to have reigned at the beginning of the Tretá Age with Aṅgiras as his priest.



the king asked *the astrologers* who could read fate—"I trust my son *is born* under an excellent constellation, at an excellent  
 4 conjuncture? And I trust that benignant planets have looked upon my son's birth; I trust it did not pass into the path of view of evil planets?"

5 When addressed thus by him, the astrologers spake then to the king—"When the moment, the constellation and the con-  
 6 juncture have been excellent, thy son has been born *to be great* in valour, great in his parts, great in strength. O great king, thy  
 7 son shall be a great king. The *planet Jupiter*, preceptor of the gods, has looked on him, and Venus which is the seventh; and the Moon the fourth *planet* has looked upon this thy son;  
 8 and Soma's son *Mercury* also, which is stationed at the edge,  
 9 has guarded him. The Sun has not looked on him; nor *has Mars* or Saturn *looked on* thy son, O great king. Happy is this thy son! he will be endowed with all good fortune and prosperity."

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

10 On hearing this the astrologers' speech, the king was filled with gladness in his mind, *and* going then to his own abode he said—

11 "The preceptor of the gods has looked on him, *and so has* Soma's son Mercury. The Sun has not looked on him, nor  
 12 has the Sun's son\* nor Mars. This word 'Has looked upon'† that ye, sirs, have uttered often,—celebrated by reason of it his name shall be Avikshita."

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

13 His son Avikshita learnt the whole of the Vedas and Vedāṅgas. He acquired too from Kaṇva's son perfect *skill in* every  
 14 weapon. The prince surpassed both the Physicians of the gods in figure, Vācas-pati in intellect, the Moon in loveliness,  
 15 the Sun in splendour, the Ocean in steadfastness, and the Earth in endurance, full of valour *as he was*. In heroism no one was the equal of that high-souled *prince*.

\* *Arka-sūnu*.

† *Avikshata* from the root *ava + iksh*.

16 At her svayam-vara Hema-dharma's daughter Varā chose him  
for her husband ; so also did Sudeva's daughter Gaurī, Balin's  
17 daughter Su-bhadrá, Vīra's daughter Līlāvati, Vīra-bhadra's  
daughter Anibhá,\* Bhīma's daughter Mānya-vatī, Dambha's  
18 daughter Kumud-vatī. And those maidens who, awaiting the  
precise moment at their svayam-varas, did not approve him,†  
19 even them the hero prince took by force. Driving off all the  
kings and the fathers and families of those princesses and trust-  
ing in his own valour, the mighty prince was indeed proud of  
his strength.

20 Now one day he seized Vaiśālinī of the beautiful teeth,  
daughter of the Vaidīśa‡ king Viśāla, as she was waiting for  
21 the proper moment at her svayam-vara; after vanquishing  
all the kings he seized her by force, because in her own free  
fancy she chose him not, O brāhman-rishi, just as, proud of  
22 his strength, he had seized other princesses. Then all those  
kings, being repeatedly driven off by that haughty prince  
and being sorely dejected, spoke to one another, all throng-  
23 ing together,—

“Fie on the birth of you kings, who being endowed with  
strength submit to this defrauding deed § at the hands of  
24 a single man, and who are many, of the same caste! A  
kshatriya is he who delivers from injury|| a man, who is being  
killed by ferocious men; that is the name of such a one; for  
25 in vain verily do others bear that name! Of you, sirs, who,  
though born of kshatriya lineage, cannot save even your own  
selves from injury at the hands of this scoundrel, what is  
26 your resolution like? Let the praise, which is poured forth  
to you ¶ by bards and minstrels and heralds, be true—let it

\* Or Nibhá.

† For *śaivam nābhinandanti* read *śainam nābhyanandanta* as in the Poona edition.

‡ The adjective of Vidiśā, a town, see p. 343, note †.

§ For *lalanām* read *vañtanām* as in the Bombay edition.

|| *Kshatriyo yaḥ kshata-tīdṇam karoti*. This fanciful derivation is also in *Raghu-Vaṁsa* ii. 53. For a different derivation, see *ante*, canto cxiv, 36.

¶ For *śa* read *vaḥ* with the Bombay edition.

not be in vain—O heroes, by reason of the destruction of your  
 27 foes! Let not this *story* vainly spread itself about by messen-  
 gers belonging to other regions,\* O kings! Ye all rely on your  
 manhood, *ye are* sprung from exalted families. Who fears  
 28 not death? Who is immortal without battling? With these  
 thoughts *ye* whose profession is arms must not abandon your  
 manhood."

On hearing this the kings were filled with openly displayed  
 wrath; all spoke *at once* to one another and rose up with  
 30 their weapons. Some mounted chariots, some elephants and  
*others* horses; others overpowered with wrath advanced on  
 foot against him.

---

CANTO CXXIII.†

---

*Avikshita's exploits.*

*The kings had a great battle with Avikshita and conquered and  
 captured him.—The swayam-vara was re-opened, but the princess  
 would not choose any husband, and the wedding was postponed.*

Mārkaṇḍeya spoke :

1 Thus were prepared for battle those kings and princes, who  
 had been beaten off repeatedly and yet were not destroyed‡ at  
 2 that time. Then began a terrible battle between him and them,  
 between *the prince* single-handed and many kings and noble  
 3 princes, O muni. In great ferocity they fought, assailing him  
 with their swords, spears, clubs, arrows, and hands; and he  
 4 fought with them all. The prince mighty and skilled in wea-  
 pons pierced them with hundreds of fierce arrows; and they

\* The Calcutta edition reads *śaratām sā vrithaivaishā bhūpāś śārair dig-antaraiḥ*; the Bombay edition *śaratām sā tathaivaishā bhūpāś śārair dig-antare*; and the Poona edition *śaratām mā vrithaivaishā bhūpa-śabdo dig-antare*. The first is incorrect; the second is sound whether it reads *dig-antare* or *dig-antaraiḥ*, and the third is also good. Comparing these, the best reading appears to be *śaratām mā vrithaivaishā bhūpāś śārair dig-antaraiḥ*, and I have taken this.

† Canto cxxiv in the Calcutta edition.

‡ For *a-vikshitāḥ* read *a-vikshitāḥ* as in the Bombay edition.

- 5 pierced him with sharp arrows. He cut off the arm of one,  
and the neck of another; and pierced another in the heart,  
6 and smote another in the breast. He cut off the trunk of an  
elephant and the head of a horse, and *wounded* the horses of  
the chariot of these *foes*,\* and the driver of the chariot of  
7 another. And he split in two with *his own* arrows his enemies'  
arrows which were falling on him, and in his agility cracked  
8 the scymitar of another and the bow of another. One prince  
perished when his armour was torn away by the *prince*, and  
another who was on foot being wounded by Avikshita quitted  
the battle.
- 9 When that entire band of kings was thus thrown into con-  
fusion, seven hundred warriors stood *forth* resolute unto death,  
10 who were nobly born, in the flower of their age, heroic, valiant,  
and modest, after all the army was defeated *and* was in a panic of  
11 flight. Now the king's son coming to close quarters with those  
kings fought in righteously-conducted determined combat.†  
12 Deeply angered by this and that *foe*, he, great in his strength,

\* For *tathānyeshām* read *rathasyaśhām*, which the Bombay edition seems to mean by *rathasyeshām*.

† *Dharma-yuddha*, "battle according to the (kshatriyas') code of Right." It appears to mean a battle according to the fair rules of war, fought out to the end till one or other combatant is completely vanquished or slain. Thus Bhishma said to Karṇa—"If this most terrible enmity cannot be relinquished, I give permission, O Karṇa; fight thou with the desire to gain heaven. Without passion, with impetuosity subdued, do the deed of a king in sooth, to the utmost of thy power, with thy full effort, conducting thyself according to the conduct of good men. ... Thou shalt gain from Dhanañjaya the worlds which are won by the righteousness of kshatriyas (*kshatra-dharma*). Fight without arrogance, relying on thy strength and valour, for there is nought better for a kshatriya than righteously conducted battle" (*dharma-yuddha*: M.-Bh., Bhishma-p. cxxiv. 5851-4). Again, Soma-datta said to Śātyaki,—“How is it that thou, O Sāttvata, hast forsaken the righteousness of kshatriyas, which was seen of old by the high-souled gods, and delightest in the righteousness of Dasyus? At one who has turned to flee, at one in distress, at one who has laid down his arms, at one who begs for quarter—how indeed did a wise man, who delights in the righteousness of kshatriyas, ever strike at *such a one* in battle?” (*Droṇa* p. clvi. 6730-1). The matter is summed up by Karṇa thus—“This, we

- set himself to cleave asunder their harness and armour\* also ;  
 13 and enraged thereat, O great muni, those princes forsaking  
 the code of Right† all together fought with him, who continued  
 to fight according to the code of Right, while their faces were  
 14 wet with drops of perspiration. One pierced him with multi-  
 tudes of arrows, another split his bow, another splitting his  
 15 banner with arrows, laid it low on the ground. Moreover,  
 others smote his horses, and others broke his chariot, and others  
 besides smote‡ his back with blows of their clubs and with  
 16 arrows. When his bow was split, the king's son enraged then  
 grasped his sword and shield, but that also another struck down.§  
 17 When his sword and shield were broken, he best of club-wield-  
 ers grasped his club ; and another, like a dexterous man, split  
 18 it with a sharp curved-headed arrow. The kings, turning  
 their faces away from righteously conducted combat, surround-  
 ed him and pierced him, some with a thousand arrows, some  
 19 with a hundred. He fell exhausted on the earth, one torment-  
 ed by many ; and those illustrious princes then bound him.  
 20 Having captured that king's son by unrighteousness they  
 21 all in company with king Viśála entered the Vaidiśa city, glad  
 and merry, taking the king's son bound. And the maiden,  
 who was holding her svayam-vara, was placed by that king in  
 22 front of them ; and was asked by her father again and again,  
 and likewise by the family priest,—“ Take by the hand as thy  
 23 bridegroom him who among these kings pleases thee.” When  
 the high-spirited maiden chose not any of them as her bridegroom,  
 O muni, the king enquired of the astrologer then concerning  
 24 her marriage,—“ Tell me the most distinguished day for the  
 wedding ; such a battle as this which has occurred to-day im-  
 poses an obstacle.”

have heard, is a kshatriya's chiefest righteousness (*dharma*), that he lie, slain in battle, highly honoured by the good.” (Karna-p. xl. 1858-9).

\* *Viśchinna-yantra-kavaśān* in the Calcutta and Bombay editions ; but the Poona edition reads *viśchinna-patra-kavaśān* “ their vehicles and armour.”

† *Dharmam uterijya*.

‡ For *utādayat* read *utādayan* with the Bombay edition.

§ For *anyena pātayal* read *anyo nv apātayal* as in the Bombay edition.

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 25 When asked thus by the king, the astrologer reflected there-  
on and perceiving the real truth spoke with troubled mind\*  
26 to the king,—“ There will be, O king, other days here, charac-  
terized by excellent conjunctures, auspicious, and after no long  
27 *delay*. Thou shalt perform the wedding† when they have  
arrived, O bestower of honour. Enough of this *day*, wherein a  
great obstacle has presented itself, O noble Sir ! ”

---

CANTO CXXIV.‡

---

*Avikshita's exploits.*

*Avikshita's mother Virá roused up his father and allied kings to rescue Avikshita, and they defeated Viśála and his confederates—Avikshita was set free, but refused to marry the princess as she had seen him overpowered, although she praised him and his father entreated him—She vowed to marry no one else, and departed to the forest and wore herself away with austerities—The gods in compassion sent a messenger to her and promised that she should have a son who should be a universal monarch—She then regained her health.*

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 1 Karandhama heard then that his son had been captured ; and  
2 his wife Virá and other kings also *heard it*. On hearing that  
his son had been captured unrighteously, the king pondered  
a long time in company with the neighbouring§ kings, O  
3 great muni. Some of the kings said, — “ All *those* kings should  
be slain, who *banding* themselves all together captured him  
4 single-handed unrighteously in fight.” “ Let the army be  
made ready ; why sit the others still ? Let wicked Viśála be

\* For *dur-maṇá* read *dur-maṇāḥ*.

† The Calcutta text is *karishyati vivdhártham*, and the Bombay text *karishyasi vivdha tvam* ; the proper reading should then be *karishyasi vivdham tvam*.

‡ Canto cxxv in the Calcutta edition.

§ For *samastaiḥ* read *samantaiḥ* with the Bombay edition.

5 slain!" said others who were assembled there. And others  
 said,—“ Righteousness was first discarded in this *affair* by  
 Avikshit,\* who acting unjustly forcibly seized *the princess* who  
 6 did not desire him. In all svayam-varas then he has reduced  
 all the princes to ruin at once; when *they* combined, he was  
 subdued.”

7 On hearing this their speech Virá, mother of a hero, daugh-  
 8 ter of a race of heroes, *and* wife of a hero, rejoiced *and* spoke  
 in view of her husband and of the other kings,— “ A noble  
 9 deed, O kings, has my son who feasts on noble deeds done, in  
 that vanquishing all the kings he seized the maiden by force.  
 While fighting for that *object* single-handed he was captured†  
 10 unrighteously. Even that I reckon entails no deterioration  
 on my son in battle. For this in truth is manliness, that a  
 11 man under the influence of passion‡ recks not so of good poli-  
 cy, just as a lion when attacking *recks not*. Many maidens§  
 12 presented for *their* svayam-vara have been seized by my son  
 in full sight of exceedingly proud kings. What comparison  
 13 is there between birth in a kshatriya family and entreaty  
 which is used by the feeble? By force verily a kshatriya takes  
*things* to himself in the presence of the mighty. On the other  
 hand do not weaklings, being bound with iron chains, pass  
 14 into subjection? Do kings imbued with righteousness, who do  
 daring deeds, pass *thereinto*? Away then with weak-minded-  
 15 ness! Praiseworthy in sooth is his captivity! *Let there be*  
 the down-rush of your weapons among bodies and heads!  
 After ye have actually taken from the kings *their* territory,  
 16 sons and other wealth, then the objects aimed at by your  
 valour, *even their wives*,|| have become *matters of import-*

\* For *mahikshitaiḥ* the Bombay edition reads *aharikshitá*; the correct reading seems to be *avikshitá* and this I have adopted.

† For *yuddha* read *baddha* with the Bombay edition.

‡ *Amarsha-vafán* in the Bombay edition is better than *adharma-vafán*.

§ Both editions read *kanyaká*; but the plural *kanyakáḥ* is required by the adjunct. *bahvyo*.

|| For *bhárýáḍárya-nimittáni* read *bhárýá vírya-nimittáni* as in the Bombay edition.

- ance.\* Hasten then quickly to battle; mount ye the chariots;  
 17 make ready the elephants and horses without delay, and also  
 the charioteers.† What think ye of battling with many kings?  
 18 Deeds have occurred, indeed, enough to satisfy a warrior in a  
 small battle. Who finds not strength *when* amongst petty  
 19 kings and other *petty men* that inspire no fear? For in sooth,  
 O muni, the man who, after prevailing so as to slay *my* son's  
 foes‡ which have all pervaded the world, is self-controlled,  
 he shines forth§ a hero, just as the sun *after prevailing over*  
 the darknesses."

Márkaṇḍeya spoke:

- 20 Thus was king Karandhama aroused to boldness by this *his*  
 wife. He set his army in array to slay his son's foes, O muni.  
 21 Then occurred a conflict between him whose son had been cap-  
 22 tured and all those kings and Viśála, O great muni. Three  
 days lasted the battle then between king Karandhama and  
 23 the kings who followed Viśála's lead. When all that confederacy  
 of kings was almost defeated,|| Viśála with arghya offering in  
 24 hand approached Karandhama then. And that king highly  
 honoured Karandhama with kindly feeling. On his son being  
 25 set free,¶ he abode there that night in happiness. And when

\* Or, "the objects of *your* wives and spiritual guides then attained to importance." The Bombay edition reads differently in verse 15 and the first half of verse 16;—"For you also, who, by accomplishing the slaughter of your foes *and* by taking away in sooth the territory, sons and other wealth of the kings, stood foremost, a wife became then of exceeding importance as being the *sum of the* objects of your valour." But neither text seems satisfactory, and the future appears to be intended rather than the past.

† For *sa-sáruthim* read *sa-sárathi* as in the Poona edition (corrigenda).

‡ The Bombay edition reads differently, thus,—“Who finds not strength *when* amongst petty kings and other *petty men*, that inspire no fear in one who has really displayed his prowess against foes? For in sooth the man who, after prevailing over all those *men* which have pervaded the world, was self-controlled, shone forth, &c.”

§ *Vyaroḍata + iti*. The past tense does not seem happy, and the *iti* is wrong. *Viroḍate* *ḥa* is the reading of the Poona edition (corrigenda), and is preferable.

|| For *parájaya-práyaṁ* read *parájita-práyaṁ* as in the Poona edition (corrigenda).

¶ For *viyukte* read *nimukte* as in the Poona edition (corrigenda)



Viśāla taking the maiden came near, Avīkshit spoke before his father touching the marriage, O brāhman ṛishi :—

- 26 “ O king, I will not take this *maiden*, nor any other woman,  
 27 in whose very sight I have been vanquished by adversaries in  
 28 fight. Bestow her on some one else, and let her choose some one  
 29 else, who is unscathed in fame and valour *and* has not been  
 30 subjected to indignity by adversaries. Since I have been van-  
 quished by adversaries just as this weak girl *might be*, what  
 manhood have I here ? there is no difference between her and  
 29 me. Self-reliance is the quality of men ; a girl is always  
 dependant on others. Of what kind is the manhood of that  
 30 man who is even dependant on others ? How shall I, *who am*  
 such, show her *again* the face *which she has* often seen, I who  
 have been worsted to the ground in her presence by adverse  
 kings ? ”

- 31 When he had thus spoken, the king spoke to the maiden,—  
 “ Thou hast heard, dear child, the speech of this high-souled  
 32 *prince* as he has been speaking. Choose another as thy hus-  
 band in whom thy mind delights, O beauteous one. We bestow  
 perfume \* on whomsoever thou dost honour.† Adopt one of  
 these two very courses, O sweet-faced one ! ”

The maiden spoke :

- 33 Vanquished he has been by many *together*, yet they dealt not  
 absolutely honourably in the fight which brought loss to his  
 34 fame and valour, O king. Since he set himself *single-handed*  
 to battle with many, like a lion with elephants, he has mani-  
 35 fested thereby the highest heroism. *It is not only that* he  
 stood *fast* in the battle, *but also that* they were all defeated.  
 36 He displayed prowess also abundantly by his efforts.‡ All the  
 kings have by unrighteousness conquered him, who is endued  
 with heroism and prowess *and* who observed righteous combat ;

\* *Vāsam* ; or “ a dwelling,” or “ clothing.”

† For *āḍṛitāḥ* read *āḍṛitīḥ* with the Bombay edition ; *āḍṛitī* is not in the dictionary. The Poona edition reads *yasmims te hy āḍṛitam manas* with the same sense.

For *yat tena* read *yatnena*, as in the Bombay edition.

- 37 what fame *is there* herein? And it is certainly not for mere  
 beauty *that* I have become desirous of him, O father! His  
 38 heroism, prowess and fortitude captivate my mind. What  
 need then of much speaking? Do thou make entreaty to this  
 most excellent king on my behalf; no other shall be my hus-  
 band.

Viśāla spoke :

- 39 O prince! my daughter has pronounced this splendid declara-  
 tion, and *there lives* not on the earth a royal youth, who is thus  
 40 indeed thy peer. Thy heroism cannot be gainsaid, and thy  
 prowess is surpassing; purify my family, O warrior, by marry-  
 ing my daughter!

The prince spoke :

- 41 I will not take her nor any other woman, O king, for in my  
 inmost self my intellect is womanish, O lord of men.

Mārkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 42 Then spoke Karandhama,—“O son, take thou this beauteous-  
 browed daughter of Viśāla; she is deeply enamoured of thee.”

The prince spoke :

- 43 No infringement of thy command have I ever committed  
 before, O lord; command me in such wise, dear father, as I may  
 obey thy command.

Mārkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 44 Since the prince was so exceedingly determined in his sen-  
 timents, Viśāla also troubled in mind spoke to his daughter.\*  
 45 —“Turn back thy mind, my daughter, even from this object :  
 choose some other as thy husband; there are many princes *here*.”

The maiden spoke :

- 46 A boon I choose, dear father! If this *prince* wants me not, no  
 other than *a course of* religious austerities shall be my husband  
 in this life!

Mārkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 47 Then king Karandhama stayed there three days joyously

\* For *satām* read *sutām*.

48 with Viśāla and returned to his own city. Avikshita also, after  
being soothed by his own father and the other kings *and* by  
precepts of ancient times, returned to his city.

49 That maiden also went to the forest, being set free by her  
relatives, and practised austerities, abstaining from food *and*  
50 adhering to utter passionlessness. Now when abstaining from  
food she had dwelt *there* three months, she reached the deepest  
distress, being emaciated, in the lowest *condition* and prostrat-  
51 ed.\* The maiden was weakened in energy, extremely thin in  
body, even ready to die. The princess then made up her mind  
52 to quit the body. Thereupon the gods, perceiving that she  
had made up her mind to abandon herself, assembled and des-  
53 patched the gods' messenger to her. Approaching the maiden  
he said :—

“ I am a messenger, O princess, sent to thee by the thirty  
54 *gods* ; hearken to what must be done ! Thou, O lady, must not  
forsake thy body which is exceedingly difficult to be obtained.  
Thou, O fortunate one, shalt become the mother of a universal  
55 monarch ; and along with thy son, who shall have slain his  
foes and whose command shall be unresisted, thou, O illustrious  
56 *lady*, shalt long enjoy the earth and its seven continents. He  
must kill the enemy Taru-jit in the presence of the gods, *and*  
Aya and cruel Śaṅku, *and* then establish the people in right-  
57 eousness. All the four castes must be fully safeguarded accord-  
ing to their respective *rules of* righteousness ; he must slay  
the robbers, the mlecc̥has and others who work wickedness.  
58 He must sacrifice with manifold sacrifices replete with gifts  
and largesse, and with horse-sacrifices and other *sacrifices* six  
thousand in number, O noble *lady*.”

Mārkaṇḍeya spoke :

59 Seeing that messenger of the gods, stationed in the air, *ad-*  
*orned* with heavenly garlands and unguents, the weakened  
60 princess then said this,—“ Truly thou hast come from Svarga,  
*a messenger of the gods without doubt ; nevertheless how*

\* Kṛiśādhuma-nisantatā ; ni-san-tata om ni-san-tan, not in the dictionary.

- 61 shall I have such a son without a husband? 'No one but  
 Avikshita shall be my husband in this life,'—this I vowed  
 62 in my father's presence. And me he wants not, *though* he  
 was admonished by my father and *his* sire Karandhama, and  
*though* he was entreated by me also in seemly wise."

The gods' messenger spoke :

- 63 What need of this further speaking, O illustrious *lady* ! A  
 son shall be born to thee. Abandon not thyself unright-  
 64 eously ! Remain in this very forest and nourish up thy emaci-  
 ated body. Through the power of austerities all this shall be  
 well for thee.

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 65 After speaking thus, the messenger of the gods went *away*  
 as he had come. And the beautiful-browed *lady* nourished  
 up her body day by day.

## CANTO CXXV.\*

*Avikshita's exploits.*

*Avikshita's mother induced him to engage in the 'What-want-ye !' penance, in which he declared he would bestow on any one who asked whatever he wanted—His father Karandhama, being entreated by his ministers, pressed Avikshita to forgo his religious continence and beget a son—Avikshita though very loth was obliged to promise compliance.*

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 1 Now Avikshita's mother Virá, mother of a hero, called her  
 son Avikshita on a sacred day and said :—  
 2 "My son, permitted by thy high-souled father, I will engage  
 in a fast ; *it is* this difficult *penance*, the 'What-want-ye ?'†

\* Canto cxxvi, in the Calcutta edition.

† *Kim-icchakam*, "Whatever one wants *I will give*." A penance in which one binds one's self to satisfy the wish of any applicant (comment.)

- 3 And it depends\* on thy father, and must be achieved by thee and by me also. When thou hast consented, *my* son,  
 4 I *will* then give my endeavours thereto. I will give thee half the riches from *thy* father's great treasury ; thy riches  
 5 depend on thy father, and I have his permission. To be achieved through affliction is *the part of the penance* that depends upon me ; it will indeed be a noble thing. If, on the other hand, any *part of it* may be achievable by thee  
 6 through strength and prowess, that will indeed be unachievable by thee otherwise, or will be achievable with difficulty. If then thou givest me a promise, *my* son, I also will pledge thee here the very same thing. Tell me what thou thinkest."

Avikshita spoke :

- 7 Riches depend on my father ; I indeed have no ownership therein.† I will perform what can be accomplished by my  
 8 body, as thou hast said, *even* the ' What-want-ye? ' penance, O mother—cease then from anxiety and distress‡—if it has been approved for me by the king, *my* father, the master of the riches.

Mārkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 9 Then the queen applied herself wholly to that penance. She performed the worship of the king of kings§ as directed,  
 10 with self subdued, and *the worship* of all the Nidhis|| and of the band of Nidhi-guardians and of Lakshmi, with profound faith, with voice, body and mind restrained.  
 11 Now this king Karandhama dwelt in his house in a sequestered *part*. As he sat there, his ministers, learned in the books of Good Policy, addressed him.

The ministers spoke :

- 12 O king, this thy time of life has reached its decline, while

\* *Āyattas*.

† For *mām asi tvam* read *mat-svāmitvam* as in the Bombay edition.

‡ Or "cease then, mother, from anxiety and distress with regard to the 'What-want-ye' penance." (comment.)

§ Kuvera (comment.)

|| See canto lxviii.

- thou art ruling the earth. Thy only son Avikshit has for-  
 13 sworn possession of his wives ; and he has no son. When  
 he shall reach thy condition,\* O king, thy territory will  
 14 assuredly pass to thy enemies then. There will be ruin to  
 thy family, and ruin to the cakes and water *offered* to the  
 pitris ; thou wilt have this great dread of enemies† with  
 15 loss of sacrifices. Contrive therefore, O king, so that thy  
 son *shall* again steadfastly apply his mind so as to benefit  
 the pitris !

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 16 At this moment the king heard the sound of Vírā's family  
 priest speaking to *some* petitioner ;—  
 17 “ ‘ Who wishes for what, that is hard to be achieved ?  
 Who must achieve what ? ’—this ‘ What-want-ye ? ’ *penance*  
 Karandhama's queen is intent upon ! ”  
 18 Now prince Avikshit also heard the priest's speech and  
 replied to all the petitioners who were assembled at the  
 19 king's gate ;—“ Let him speak out, for whom I must ac-  
 complish *anything* with my body ; my illustrious mother  
 20 is intent upon the ‘ What-want-ye ? ’ *penance*. Let all peti-  
 tioners hear me. I have promised then ; what want ye ?  
 here I give it, while the ‘ What-want-ye ? ’ *penance* is being  
 performed ! ”

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 21 Thereupon the king, on hearing this speech that fell from  
 his son's mouth, springing up said to his son,—“ I have a  
 petition ; grant it me ! ”

Avikshit spoke :

- 22 Tell me, dear father, what I must give to your highness ;  
 I must do it for thee, whether *it be* difficult, or *readily* accom-  
 plishable, or truly hard to be accomplished !

\* *I.e.*, the decline of life ; *nishthám* = *antam* (comment.)

† *Ta* 'ri-bhayam ; this is the Bombay reading. The Calcutta edition reads *te viravam*, which is incorrect ; *virava* is masc., and a Vedic word. The Poona edition reads *te vivareṁ*, “ thou wilt have this great breach with loss of sacrifices.”

The king spoke :

- 23 If thou art true to thy word, and thou grantest the ' What-want-ye ? ' *boon*, show me then the face of a grandson lying upon my lap !

Avikshit spoke :

- 24 I am thy only son, and religious continence is my *lot*, O king ; no son have I, how *can* I show *thee* a grandson's face ?

The king spoke :

- 25 Thy religious continence tends to sin, if thou holdest to this. Therefore deliver thou thy own self and show me a grandson !

Avikshit spoke :

- 26 Any other *thing* that may be arduous,\* O great king, command me that. Intercourse with women has been eschewed by me, with passionlessness—let it be so *still* !

The king spoke :

- 27 *Thou* in sooth hast seen victory over enemies who were fighting *against thee* with numbers ; yet, there if thou hast  
28 recourse to passionlessness, then *thou art* unwise. Yet what *need* have we of more talking ? Abandon thy religious continence. At thy mother's desire show thou me a grandson's face !

Márkanḍeya spoke :

- 29 When the king, *though* accosted by the son in many *words*,  
30 makes no other request, the son then spoke again ;—" By granting thee the ' What-want-ye ? ' *boon*, I am in a strait, dear father. I will therefore without shame wed a wife  
31 again. He, who in a woman's sight has been vanquished *and* has fallen to the face of the earth, shall further be that woman's husband—this is exceedingly hard, dear father.  
32 Nevertheless what am I to do here, who have passed under the power of Truth's fetters ? I will do as thou hast said ; do thou enjoy thy prevailing *in this matter* ! "

CANTO CXXVI.\*

*Atikshita's exploits.*

*Avikshit while hunting found a Daitya had seized a maiden who called herself his (Avikshit's) wife—He killed the Daitya—The gods appeared and offered him a boon—He asked for a son, and they said he should have a son, who would be a universal monarch, by her—She then explained to him she was king Visála's daughter, and told him her history.*

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 1 The prince went hunting in the forest one day, piercing deer and wild boars and tigers and other beasts and elephants.
- 2 Suddenly he heard the cry, "Save me ! Save me !" from a woman who was screaming aloud very often in a voice in-
- 3 articulate through terror. The prince exclaiming, "Fear not ! fear not !" urged his horse in haste *thither* whence the sound
- 4 proceeded. And the maiden then cried out, *for* seized by Danu's son Driḍha-keśa in the lonely forest *was she*, a high-spirited lady :—

- 5 "I belong to Karandhama's son and I am Avikshit's wife ; a villain is carrying off into a thicket *me, the wife* of the
- 6 wise king. I, wife of him, before whom all the kings with the Gandharvas and Guhyakas could not stand, am carried
- 7 off ! I here, wife of him, Karandhama's son, whose wrath is like *that* of Death, *whose* prowess is like Indra's, am carried off !"

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 8 On hearing this, the king's son, bearer of the bow, reflected,—
- 9 "What is this ? Have I a wife here in the forest ? She is surely an illusion *produced* by the wicked Rákshasas who inhabit the forest. However† I have certainly come ; I will ascertain the whole cause."

\* Canto cxxvii in the Calcutta edition.

† *Atha-vā.*



Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 10 Hastening on then he beheld a surpassingly fascinating  
maiden alone in the forest, adorned with every *kind* of orna-  
11 ment, seized by Danu's son Driḡha-keśa who bore a staff, and  
screaming out pitifully "Save *me* ! save *me* !" again and  
12 again. "Fear not !" said he to her, and exclaiming "Thou  
art slain !" to him, *he said*—

- "What wicked *man* exercises rule over this earth while  
13 Karandhama is king here,\* before whose majesty all kings  
bow down to the earth ?"

- Seeing him at hand then, grasping his choice bow, the  
14 slender-limbed *maiden* exclaimed more than once—"Save  
me !" and—

"Here I am carried off ! I am king Karandhama's daughter-  
in-law and Avikshit's wife. I am carried off by this wicked  
*demon* in the forest,—*I* who belong to a master—as if I belong  
to no master."

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 15 Thereupon Avikshit considered the speech so uttered,—  
"How in truth is she my wife ? or how *is she* my dear father's  
16† daughter-in-law ? However I *will* set her free, the slender  
*maiden* ; I will find that out afterwards. Kshatriyas bear  
arms for the sake of delivering the afflicted."  
17 Then the angry hero addressed that most evil-minded  
Dánava,—“Release her and depart while alive ; otherwise  
18 thou shalt not live !” Quitting her then the Dánava raised  
his staff aloft and rushed at him ; and he also, *the prince*,  
19 poured a shower of arrows on him. The Dánava, filled  
with exceeding frenzy, warded them off with a multitude  
of arrows, and hurled his staff that was studded with a  
20 hundred spikes at the prince. The prince split it then, as it  
was rushing onwards, with arrows. And he, *the Dánava*, grasp-  
ing aloft a tree that was near, stood firmly in the battle and

\* Or, "Who is *this* wicked man, while Karandhama rules this earth as king here, &c."

† The Calcutta edition numbers this verse 15 also, and numbers all the following verses incorrectly.

- 21 then hurled that tree at *the prince* who was discharging clouds of arrows. And he shattered it into small fragments with  
 22 crescent-headed arrows shot from his bow.\* And the Dánava next flung a piece of rock at the prince, and it fell vainly on the ground, *for* he avoided† it by agility.  
 23 Whatever the enraged Dánava flung at the prince, each *thing* the king's son playfully split with multitudes of arrows.  
 24 Then, his staff being shattered and all his weapons shattered, he raised his fist in anger and rushed upon the prince.  
 25 Karandhama's son struck off his head with a two-edged sword,‡ as he was in the act of falling *upon him*, and felled him to the very ground.  
 26 When that Dánava, the evil doer, was slain, all the gods exclaimed to Karandhama's son, "Well done, well done!"  
 27 The gods said to the prince then, "Choose *thee* a boon!" and he replied by reason of his desire to benefit his father, "I choose a son, great in valour."

The gods spoke :

- 28 Verily thou shalt have a son, *who shall be* a universal monarch great in valour, by this very maiden in sooth whom thou, O sinless one, hast delivered !

The prince spoke :

- 29 Being bound to my father by a bond of truthfulness I wish for a son, *but* having been vanquished by the kings in fight  
 30 I have discarded wedlock. And I have abandoned king Visála's daughter, who wanted§ me, and she has for my  
 31 sake abandoned union with *any* man but me. How then after discarding her, Visála's daughter, shall I with cruel soul|| marry another woman now ?

\* For *kármukam vjjhitaiḥ* read *kármuka-moṭitaiḥ* as in the Bombay edition.

† For *uñḍitá* read *vjjhitá* with the Bombay edition.

‡ *Vetasa-patra*, a "reed-leaf" on "cane-leaf." It is not in the dictionary, but appears to denote a weapon shaped like the leaf of a reed or of a cane, and would seem to mean something like a narrow double-edged sword.

§ For *yávatṭ* read *yáḍatṭ* as in the Poona edition.

|| For *nṛīḍumśánám* read *nṛīḍumśatmá* as in the Poona edition.

The gods spoke :

- 32 This very maiden is indeed thy wife, whom thou dost always  
extol, *even* Viśāla's beautiful-browed daughter, who has  
33 devoted herself to austerities for thy sake. Of her shall  
be born to thee a son *who shall be* a hero, an embellisher of  
the seven continents,\* a sacrificer of a thousand sacrifices,  
a universal monarch.

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 34 After announcing this to Karandhama's son the gods  
departed, O bráhmaṇ ; and he then addressed her *who was*  
35 *his* wife—" Say, timid one, what now is this ? " And she  
told him *this* story :—

- " When thou, sir, didst forsake me, I forsook my kins-  
36 folk and came away to the forest in despair. There I wished  
to quit *this* body which became almost wasted away with  
austerities, O hero, *but* a messenger of the gods came to me  
37 and prevented *me*, *saying*—' Thou shalt also have a son,  
a universal monarch great in valour, who shall please the  
38 gods and slay the demons.' By this command from the gods  
that messenger of the gods prevented me. I did not abandon  
39 my body, having my thoughts *fixed* on union with thee. And  
the day before yesterday, O illustrious one, I went to Gangá-  
hrada† to bathe, and as I went down *into the water*, I was drag-  
40 ged away by a certain old Nága. He took me then to Rasátala,  
and there in front‡ of me stood Nágas and Nága wives  
41 and youths in thousands ; they approached and offered me  
praise, and *some* others paid me worship ; and the Nága  
42 women besought me respectfully,—' Do thou shew favour  
to us all ; thou must turn aside thy son,§ *who will* seek to  
43 slay *us* who *shall* have incurred offence. The Nágas will

\* Or " islands " or " do-abs," *dvīpa*.

† This is also mentioned as a sacred place of pilgrimage in the *Mahā-Bh.*, Vana-p. lxxxiii. 7048-49, and *Anuśās.*-p. xxv. 1720-21.

‡ For *puram* read *puraḥ*, as in the Poona edition.

§ The son which should be born to her in the future, named Marutta. See canto cxxx, verses 11-14.

- commit offence against thy son ; for that reason *thou* must  
 44 turn him aside ; let this favour be done !' And when I  
 said, ' Be it so,' they decorated me with divine ornaments  
 from Pátála and with choicest flowers odorous and fragrant.  
 45 And that Nága brought me back to this world, as lovely  
 46 as *I was* before, as beautiful in form as before. Seeing me  
 so beautiful and adorned with every *kind of* ornament, this  
 most evil-minded Driḍha-keśa seized me in the desire to  
 47 carry me off. By the strength of thy arm, O prince, I  
 have been rescued ; therefore be gracious, O mighty-armed  
 one ; receive me ! Equal to thee lives no other prince in  
 the world ; I speak the truth."

---

CANTO CXXVII.\*

---

*Avikshita's exploits.*

*Avikshit agreed to marry the rescued maiden—The Gandharvas appeared then, and one of them explained she was his daughter and had been born as king Viśála's daughter Bhávinī because of Agastya's curse—They were married and lived in the Gandharvas' world—She gave birth to a son there—All the celestial beings came to the boy's birth-ceremony, and because of the blessings invoked for him from the Maruts he was called Marutta.*

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 1 On hearing this her speech, he remembered his father's fine speech which the king had uttered upon the promise re-
- 2 garding the " What-want-ye " *penance*, and prince Avikshit replied to the maiden, he with mind full of love to the maiden who had also abandoned all enjoyments for his sake,—
- 3 " When I forsook thee, O slender one, I was vanquished by my enemies. I have *now* met† thee here after conquering the foes ; what *shall* I do ? "

\* Canto cxxviii in the Calcutta edition.

† For *samprápto* read *sampráptā* as in the Poona edition.

The maiden spoke :

- 4 Take thou my hand *in wedlock* in this charming forest.  
May the union of a loving *maiden* and a lover be fraught  
with merit !

The prince spoke :

- 5 Be it so ; may welfare be thine ! Destiny itself is the  
cause here. Otherwise how have thou and I met together  
here ?\*

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 6 At this moment, O muni, the Gandharva Tunaya arrived,  
accompanied by the fairest Apsarases and surrounded by  
other Gandharvas.

The Gandharva spoke :

- 7 O prince, this high-spirited *maiden* is my daughter, by  
name Bháminí. By reason of Agastya's curse she became  
8 Viśála's daughter. *It was* Agastya who was angered with  
her as she was playing in a child's manner, so he cursed  
9 her then, *saying*, "Thou shalt become a woman !"† And we  
appeased him by saying, "She is a child and cannot  
reflect ; do thou show favour for the offence against thee,  
10 O bráhmaṇ ṛishi." Being appeased by us the great muni  
said this—"I passed a lenient curse on her, because I  
considered she is *but* a child ; it cannot indeed be altered."  
11 By reason of that curse by Agastya my daughter was born  
in Viśála's house as this beautiful fine-browed *maiden*, called  
12 by the name Bháviní. Therefore I have come on this  
account ; take this princess *who is* my daughter *in marriage* ;  
of her thou shalt have a son, a universal monarch.

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 13 Uttering the words "Be it so !" the prince then took her‡

\* *Anyatra tvam ahaṁ śa samágataḥ* ; the Poona edition reads *atra tvam ahaṁ śaiva samágataḥ*. These can hardly be correct ; read *atra tvam ahaṁ śaiva samágatau* ?

† That is, of human race. The Gandharvas were semi-celestial.

‡ For *tathety uktveti tasyátha* read *tathety uktvá tatas tasyáḥ* as in the Poona edition.

hand according to the ordinance, and Tumbura\* offered  
 14 up the sacrifice there. The gods and Gandharvas sang forth,  
 and beves of Apsarases danced, the clouds dropped down  
 15 flowers, and the heavenly instruments sounded forth,† as  
 the prince united in marriage with her, who became the  
 instrument for the agent of the deliverance of the whole  
 world.

16 Then they went everyone with that high-souled *muni* to the  
 Gandharvas' world, and she and the prince *went also*, O *muni*.  
 17 Prince Avikshit took his joy in company with Bháviní, and she  
 obtained the riches of enjoyment together with him there.  
 18 Sometimes he sports with that slender one in a charming grove  
 19 near the city; sometimes on a low hill;‡ sometimes on a sand-  
 bank brightened by geese and sárasa cranes in a river; some-  
 times near the mansion and in the very resplendent palace.  
 20 In other charming pleasure-grounds he sported in company  
 with the slender *bride*, and she with that high-souled *prince*.  
 21 Munis, Gandharvas and Kinnaras offered them both food and  
 unguents, clothing, *and* the choicest garlands, beverages and  
 other *gifts* there.

22 And when the hero sported with Bháviní in the hardly  
 accessible world of the Gandharvas, the bright *bride* gave  
 23 birth to a son. When he was born, *who would be great* in  
 valour, a tiger among men, the Gandharvas perceiving what  
 24 he would accomplish held a great festival; and some of *them*  
 sang, and others beat drums and kettle-drums and double  
 drums, and others played on flutes, lutes and other *musical*  
 25 *instruments*; and many beves of Apsarases also danced  
 there; the clouds showered down flowers while they rumbled  
 26 with gentle sound. Now while that medley of sounds so con-

\* A *muni*, see verse 26. He may be the person mentioned in the Mahá-Bh., whose happy conjugal life with his wife Rambhá was famous (Udyoga-p. cxvi. 3975). There was a Gandharva of this name (Sabhá-p. li. 1891), and in the Vishṇu Pur. as a friend of Nala Candanodaka-dundubhi.

† *Ni-sasvanuḥ*; this root as a verb is not in the dictionary.

‡ *Upa-parvate*; not in the dictionary. The Poona edition reads *vara-parvate*, "on a choice hill."

tinued, the muni Tumburu, who was remembered by Tunaya,\*  
 27 approached† and performed the birth-ceremonies. All the  
 gods assembled, and the pure divine rishis; and from Pátála  
 28 came the Nága lords, Śesha, Vásuki, and Takshaka; and  
 there came also the chiefs of the gods and Asuras, of the  
 Yakshas and Guhyakas, O bráhmaṇ, and all the Winds‡  
 29 also. Then the Gandharvas' great city was thronged with  
 those who had come, all the rishis, gods, Dánavas and Nágas  
 30 and the munis. Tumburu then performed the birth-cere-  
 mony and other rites, and performed the rite, which is pre-  
 ceded by praises, to secure good fortune on behalf of that boy,  
 saying—

31 “As a universal monarch, great in valour, mighty of arm,  
 great in strength, exercise thou sovereignty over the entire  
 32 earth a long time. May Indra and all these other world-  
 guardians and the rishis bestow bliss and foe-destroying  
 33 valour on thee, O hero! May the wind§ tend to what is  
 auspicious for thee, *even* the east wind that blows no dust!  
 May the south wind which is clean and unflagging tend to  
 34 gentleness for thee! May the west wind bestow heroism  
 on thee, the noblest *heroism* on thee! And may the north  
 wind likewise confer on thee excellent strength also!”

35 At the end of this rite to secure good fortune a voice  
 spake, issuing from no *earthly* body,—

“Because the preceptor uttered this *phrase* ‘Marut-tava’||  
 36 repeatedly, hence this *boy* shall be famed on earth as  
 ‘Marutta;’ and because kings shall pass into subjection to  
 37 his commands on the earth, this *boy* as a hero shall stand on

\* Tumburu had solemnized the parents' wedding, see verse 13. Tunaya is the Gandharva of verse 6. The Poona edition reads instead *grāyayena smrita*, “who was remembered with affection.”

† For *játa-játa-karmákaron* read *bhetya játa-karmákaron* as in the Poona edition.

‡ *Váyu* in the plural; they are mentioned here because of the invocation which comes afterwards, in which they are called *Marut*.

§ *Marut*, with *tava* or *te* added here and in the following sentences.

|| “May the wind for thee;” the words used in the preceding invocations.

the head\* of all kings. As a universal monarch, great in valour,  
38 he shall assail kings and shall unobstructed enjoy the earth  
which contains seven continents. He shall be chief among  
kings who offer sacrifices. His shall be the supremacy among  
kings by reason of valour and heroism."

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

39 On hearing this speech uttered by some one from among  
the dwellers in heaven, all were gratified, the bráhmans and  
Gandharvas also and his mother and father.

# CANTO CXXVIII.†

*Marutta's exploits.*

*Avikshit returned and presented his son to his father Karandhama, and there was great rejoicing—The boy grew up, learned in sacred lore and skilful with all weapons—Karandhama resigned the kingdom, but Avikshit refused it because of the shame of his former captivity—Marutta was made king, and Karandhama retired to the forest.*

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

1 Then the prince, taking that beloved son and followed by  
his wife‡ and the bráhmans and Gandharvas, went to his  
2 city. Reaching his father's palace he extolled his father's feet  
with respect ; and so did his slender-limbed wife, the bashful  
3 princess. And the prince holding his infant son addressed  
king Karandhama, who was seated on the throne of justice in  
4 the midst of kings,—“ Behold this face of thy grandson who  
rests in my lap, as I promised formerly to thee for my mother's  
5 sake at the ‘ What-want-ye ? ’ vow.” So saying he laid that  
son then on his father's lap, and related to him everything as

\* Or “ at the head.”

† Canto cxxix in the Calcutta edition.

‡ For *padbhyaś* read *patnyá*, as in the Poona edition.



6 it had occurred. The *king* embracing his grandson, while his eyes were beclouded with tears of joy, felicitated himself again  
 7 and again in saying "Fortunate am I!" Then he duly paid honour to the assembled Gandharvas with the arghya offering and other *presents*,\* forgetting other needs by reason of his joy.†

8 In the city then there was great rejoicing in the houses of the citizens, *who exclaimed*—"A son has been born to our master!"  
 9 O great muni. In that glad and opulent city sportive courtesans of the prettiest forms danced an exquisite dance to the  
 10 accompaniment of songs and musical instruments. And the king with glad mind bestowed on the chief bráhmans both gems and riches, cattle, clothing *and* ornaments.

11 The boy grew thenceforward, as the moon *waxes* in its bright fortnight. He was the source of pleasure to his parents, and  
 12 the desire of the people. He acquired the Vedas first from the religious teachers, O muni, then *skill* in all kinds of weapons,  
 13 then complete knowledge of archery. When he had completed his efforts in the use of the sword and bow, he next overcame  
 14 toil like a hero in *learning the use of* other weapons also. Then he obtained weapons from Bhárgava,‡ descendant of  
 15 Bhṛigu,—bowing modestly *and* intent on pleasing his guru, O bráhmaṇ. Accomplished in *the use of* weapons, skilled in  
 16 the Veda, thoroughly master of the knowledge of archery, deeply versed in all sciences—none *such* had there been before him.

16 Viśála also, on hearing all this story of his daughter and of the ability of his daughter's son, rejoiced exceedingly in mind.

17 Now the king *Karandhama* had attained his wishes, in that he had seen his son's son *and* had offered many sacrifices, and had

\* For '*rdhyáddiná*' read '*rghyáddiná*', as in the Poona edition.

† The Poona edition amplifies this and, instead of the second line as in the Calcutta edition, reads—"Then he duly paid honour to the assembled Gandharvas with the arghya offering and other *presents* joyfully, *and* dismissed them with propriety. He continues playing with his grandson, forgetful of other needs."

‡ That is Sukra *Ácárya* (comment.). He was the preceptor of the Asuras

18 bestowed gifts on those who asked. He had performed all ceremonies ; he was united with his fellow-kings \*; having safeguarded the earth righteously, he had conquered his enemies ;  
 19 he was endowed with strength and intelligence. Being desirous of departing to the forest he addressed his son Avikshit—  
 “ My son, I am old, I am going to the forest, take over the  
 20 kingdom from me. I have done what ought to be done ; nothing remains but to anoint thee. Do thou who art highly accomplished in thy opinions take the kingdom which I have  
 21 transferred to thee.” Being addressed thus, Avikshit the prince, respectfully bowing down, said to his father who was desirous of going† to the forest to perform austerities,—

22 “ I will not, dear father, do the safeguarding of the earth ; shame departs not from my mind ; do thou appoint some one  
 23 else to the kingdom. Since I when captured was delivered by my dear father and not by my own valour, how much manliness  
 24 then have I ? The earth is protected by real men. I who was not sufficient to protect even myself, how shall I, being such,  
 25 protect the earth ? Cast the kingdom on some one else. On the same level as a woman‡ is the man who is downright injured§ by another. And my soul has been delivered from delusion by thee, sir,|| who hast delivered me from bondage. How shall I, being such, who am on the same level as a woman, become king ? ”

The father spoke :

26 Not distinct ¶ in sooth is the father from the son, nor the

\* *Sa-varyair*, = *māṇḍalika-nṛīpaṇḥ* (comment.), “ with his provincial kings,” “ with his vassal kings.”

† For *yiyásus* read *yiyásuṁ*, as in the Poona edition.

‡ For *mantrī sa-dharmaḥ* read *sa strī-sudharmaḥ*, as in the Poona edition.

§ *Ava-druhyate* ; the verb *ava-druh* is not in the dictionary.

|| For *átmā 'mohāya bhavato* the Poona edition reads *átmā 'mohás éa bhavataḥ* ; and the comment. says *amohát = snehát* (which seems strange). The meaning then would be, “ Since I myself have been delivered from bondage by thee, sir, out of affection, how shall I &c.” But I have ventured to read *átmā mohás éa bhavataḥ*.

¶ *Na bhinna* ; according to the comment. this means *putra-nirūpita-bheda-viśiṣṭo na*.

son from the father. Not delivered by any one else *then* wast thou, who wast delivered by thy father.

The son spoke :

- 27 I cannot direct my heart in any other wise, O king. There  
is exceeding shame in my heart—I, who was delivered by thee.  
28 He who has been rescued by his father consumes the glory  
acquired by his father; and let not the man, who is known by  
29 reason of his father, exist in the family. Let mine be that  
course, which is the course of those who have themselves  
amassed riches, who have themselves attained to fame, who  
have themselves come forth safe out of difficulties !

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 30 When he, although exhorted\* often by his father, spoke  
thus, O muni, the king then appointed his† son Marutta to  
31 the kingdom. Receiving from his grandfather the sovereignty  
as authorized by his father, he ruled well, inspiring gladness  
among his friends.  
32 And king Karandhama, taking Virá also, departed to the  
forest to *practise* austerities with voice, body and mind re-  
33 strained. After practising very arduous austerities there a  
thousand years, the king quitted his body and gained the  
34 world‡ of Indra. His wife Virá then practised austerities  
a hundred years longer, with her hair matted and *her body*  
35 covered with dirt and mud, desirous of gaining the same  
world as her high-souled lord who had reached Svarga, making  
fruits and roots her food, dwelling in Bhárgava's hermitage,  
encircled by wives of twice-born men, *and* sustained by the  
devoted attendance of the twice-born.

\* For *yadāpy ukto* read *yadā prokto*, as in the Poona edition. Avikshit is mentioned in the Mahā-Bh., Kīśkam.-p. iv. 80-85, but rarely elsewhere. His name chiefly occurs in the patronymic form *Avikshita* applied to Marutta. There was another Avikshit, a son of Kuru, Ādi-p. xciv. 3740.

† *Tasya*, i.e., Avikshit's.

‡ For *sa lokatām* read *sa-lokatām*.

## CANTO CXXIX\*

*Marutta's exploits.*

*Ma-rutta reigned as a universal monarch—Samvarta was his priest—Marutta was a great sacrificer, and a liberal benefactor to bráhmans—Some verses in his honour are quoted—But the Nágas troubled the rishis grievously, and his grandmother Virá sent him a message to administer justice and secure peace.*

## Kraushṭuki spoke :

- 1 Adorable sir, thou hast fully narrated all this to me, *namely*,
- 2 Karandhama's exploits and what were Avikshit's exploits. I
- 3 wish to hear of the exploits of the high-souled king Marutta,†
- 4 Avikshit's son;‡ he is heard of because of his surpassing
- 5 feats as a universal monarch, of great parts, a warrior, a beloved
- 6 king, high-minded, wise in righteousness and a doer of right-
- 7 ousness, a real protector of the earth.

## Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 4 Receiving from his grandfather the kingdom with his
- 5 father's consent, he protected it righteously, as a father protects

\* Canto cxxx in the Calcutta edition.

† He is famed as a universal monarch (Mahá-Bh., Ásvam.-p. iv. 86-91 and Vishṇu Pur. IV. i), and it said he gained his supreme sovereignty through his prosperity (*riddhya*; Sabhá-p. xiv. 650). He was one of the sixteen greatest and most famous kings of antiquity (Droṇa-p. lv. 2170-83; Śánti-p. xxix. 910-17). He is said to have offered a sacrifice to the bráhman rishi Uśiravíja at the Jámbu-nada lake in the Northern region (Udyoga-p. cx. 3842-3), and was praised for his liberality in that he gave his daughter to Āṅgiras (Śánti-p. cccxxiv. 8602; Anuśás.-p. cccxxvii. 6260), but more probably to Āṅgirasa, that is, Samvarta, see verse 11 note.

There were other less famous kings of the same name, as Marutta, son of Karandhama and fifth in descent from Yayáti's son Turvasu (Hari-V., xxii. 1829-1834; Vishṇu Pur. IV. xvi); Marutta, fifth in descent from Śasá-vindu (Hari-V., xxxvii. 1972-75; Matsya Pur. xlv. 24; also Váyu and other Puráṇas; and probably Mahá-Bh., Śánti-p. xxix. 981); and one or two more of the same or similar name.

‡ For *Avikshitasya* read *Avikshitasya*. Marutta's father is generally spoken of here as *Avikshit* and not as *Avikshita*. The Poona edition reads *Avikshatasya*.

- 5 his own begotten sons. He sacrificed very many sacrifices appropriately, whereat most suitable fees *were given away, as a king* whose mind took pleasure\* in the commands of his sacrificing  
 6 priest and family priest. His discus was unresisted in the seven continents; and his course uninterrupted† in the sky, in  
 7 the lower regions, in the waters and elsewhere. He gained riches thereby, being duly intent on his own rites, O bráhma-  
 8 man, and sacrificed with great sacrifices to Indra and the  
 9 other gods;‡ just as these other castes also, unwearied each in its own business *and* possessing riches amassed thereby, per-  
 10 formed pious obligations and other rites. The earth while under high-souled Marutta's protection entered into rivalry with the dwellers in the dwellings of the thirty gods,§ O best  
 11 of twice-born men. Not only were all kings of the earth surpassed by him, but even the king of the gods *was surpassed by him as a sacrificer* with declarations|| of a hundred sacrifices.¶  
 Now his sacrificing priest was Aṅgiras' son Samvarta,\*\* *who was Vṛihaspati's brother, high-souled, a treasure-house of*

\* Or, "was subservient to"; *ramya* = *vaśya* (comment.).

† For *śápy anavíśhinná* read *śápya na víśhinná*, as in the Poona edition.

‡ The Vishṇu Pur. says—he offered an unparalleled sacrifice, his utensils were of gold, Indra was intoxicated with his libations of soma, and the bráhmans were enriched (IV. i). So also Mahá-Bh., *Áśvam*.-p. x. 275-92.

§ It is said in the Mahá-Bh., the earth brought forth fruit without ploughing and was garlanded with *śaityas* in his reign (Śánti-p. xxix. 910-17).

|| *Sata-yajñábhishandhibhiḥ*; the Poona edition reads *Sata-yajño 'pi śantikāḥ*.

¶ The Mahá-Bh. says he overcame Indra in rivalry and so incurred Vṛihaspati's opposition (Śánti-p. xxix. 910-14).

\*\* The Mahá-Bh. says Aṅgiras was Avíkshit's priest (*Áśvam*.-p. iv. 80-85). Aṅgiras had two sons, Vṛihaspati and Samvarta, and there was rivalry between them, but Vṛihaspati the elder got the pre-eminence and became Indra's purohita. Marutta in rivalry overcame Indra, and Vṛihaspati who desired Indra's good repulsed Marutta, and declined to be his family priest. Marutta then by Nárada's advice went to Várāṇasí (Benares) and secured Samvarta as his priest (*Droṇa*-p. lv. 2170-71; Śánti-p. xxix. 910-15; and *Áśvam*.-p. iv. 86 to ix. 274). There was a great quarrel between Vṛihaspati and Samvarta in consequence (*ibid.*, and *Váyu Pur.*). The Aitaroya Bráhmaṇa says Samvarta inaugurated Marutta with the *Mahábhishoku* ceremony, the great inauguration ceremony of Indra (VIII. iv. 21).

12 austerities. The golden mountain Yūñjavat\* is frequented by  
 the gods ; he struck down its summit *and* carried it off† for  
 13 that king. The whole of that *king's*‡ territory, allotment§  
 and other property and palaces were made brilliant, all golden,  
 by that *priest* at a sacrifice by means of austerities, O bráh-  
 14 man. And in this *connexion*, those who are interested in Ma-  
 rutta's exploits sing songs, while all *rishis* are carrying on their  
 study without intermission, thus—

15 “ Equal to Marutta never lived a sacrificer on the face of  
 the earth—at whose sacrifice *his* dwelling-house was cast and  
 16 also golden palaces *as largesse*, Indra was made intoxicated  
 with soma *and* twice-born bráhmans with gifts, *and* Indra and  
 other chiefs of the thirty *gods* became waiters to the bráh-  
 17 mans. At what king's *sacrifice* was everything of gold aban-  
 doned, as at Marutta's sacrifice, by the twice-born bráhmans,  
 18 whose houses were stocked with gems ?|| And at his sacrifice  
 what gold in the shape of palaces and other *things* was cast *as*  
*largesse*, that indeed the three *other* castes received ; therefrom  
 some of *them* gave similar gifts.”¶

19 While thus he ruled the kingdom and protected his subjects  
 well, a certain ascetic came, O best of munis, and said to him  
 20 —“ Thy father's mother, seeing the community of ascetics

\* For Yūñjavat read Muñjavat, as in the Poona edition. It is a mountain on the ridge of Himavat (Mahá-Bh., Áśvsm.-p. viii. 180). It seems to have been also called Muñjávata, and the summit Muñja-prisṭha. It was visited by Vasu-homa, king of Aṅga, and Ráma and Mándhātṛi (Śānti-p. cxxii. 4469-75). It was a sacred place of pilgrimage (Kúrma Pur. II. xxxvii. 38). This may be meant by Mujavant in Atharva-Veda I. xxv. 2. 8. There was another place of pilgrimage called Muñja-vaṭa which was apparently in or near Kuru-kshetra (Mahá-Bh., Vana-p. lxxxiii. 5092, and lxxxv. 8210).

† For *hrítam* the Poona edition reads *kríte*, “ he struck down its summit for that king's sake.”

‡ *Yasya*, i.e., Marutta's.

§ *Bhága*.

|| For *ratna-púrṇa-grihe* read *ratna-púrṇa-grihair*, as in the Poona edition

¶ The Poona edition adds a verse here—The well-behaved folk, who had their thoughts satisfied by what was given away, also offered sacrifices there-with in various places separately.”

overwhelmed with poison by the Nágas who are raging with frenzy, saith this to thee, O king :—

- 21 “Thy grandfather, after protecting the earth well, has departed to heaven, and I am able to practise austerities here,  
 22 dwelling in Aurva’s\* hermitage. I, being such, perceive disorganization while thou rulest the kingdom, such as was  
 not† while thy grandfather and thy ancestors *reigned*, O  
 23 king. Assuredly *thou art* heedless or addicted to sensual enjoyments, or thy senses are uncontrolled, in that thou dost not know the wicked and the good because they, *thine organs*, are  
 24 blind *because thou hast no spies*. Now the Nágas, who have come up from Pátála possessed with frenzy, have bitten seven sons of  
 25 munis, and have defiled the tanks, and have defiled the clarified butter offered in sacrifice with sweat, urine and ordure. Tribute has long been given to the Nágas, *thus* fully indicating  
 26 an offence. These munis are able to reduce the Nágas to ashes, but have no authority herein; thou indeed hast the  
 27 authority herein. Kings’ sons have the happiness that comes of sensual enjoyments so long, O king, as the water of *regal* inauguration is not poured on their head. *But when kings they must think*—‘What friends are there?’ ‘Who is an enemy?’ ‘How great is my enemy’s strength?’ ‘Who am I?’ ‘Who are in my minister’s party?’ Or, ‘Who are my *vassal* kings?’  
 28 ‘Either such a one is ill-disposed, *or he has been alienated* by others; what *is he* like with regard to *my* adversaries also?’  
 29 ‘Who is wholly a *liege-man* to me herein in the city or in the

\* Aurva was a famous rishi descended from Bhṛigu. The Matsya Pur. says he was son of Bhṛigu’s son Āpnuvāna and was father of Jamadagni, and that he established the gotras of the Bhārgavas (exciv. 14-29). It is said king Sagara was brought up in his hermitage (Hari-V., xiii. 762-xiv. 795) and learnt from him the Vedas and the use of arms (Vishnu Pur. III. viii, and IV. iii). The Mahā-Bh. says he was born when the Bhārgavas were almost exterminated by the princes of Kārtavīrya’s race after Kārtavīrya’s death, because they did not restore at the demand of those princes the riches which they had amassed as Kārtavīrya’s sacrificial priests; and it explains his name by saying he was born from his mother’s thigh (Adi-p. clxxviii. 6802-15 and clxxix 6827).

† For *tendbhūd* read *te nābhūd*.

30 country ?' He who puts his trust solely in deeds of right-  
 ousness is besotted. A king must take practical notice—'Who  
 behaves quite properly ?' 'Who must be punished ?' 'Who  
 must be protected ?' Or, 'What men must be regarded\* by  
 31 me, who have to consider† the person to be subdued, the place  
 and the time with regard to my condition of alliance or  
 disunion ?'‡ Further, a king should ward off unknown  
 32 spies by other spies. A king should set spies upon all his  
 ministers and other servants. In this and in other ways a  
 king, whose mind is intent upon business, should constantly  
 33 spend day and night, but not be engrossed with sensual enjoy-  
 ments. The possession by kings of bodies is not for the sake  
 34 of sensual enjoyment, O king ; it excites them to undertake  
 trouble§ in the work of protecting the earth and their own  
 righteousness. For a king who protects the earth and his own  
 35 righteousness well, there is great trouble in this world and  
 supreme undecaying happiness in heaven. Recognizing this  
 36 therefore, O king, discard sensual enjoyments and deign to  
 undertake trouble in this world for the protection of the earth.  
 The calamity, which originating from the Nāgas has thus be-  
 37 fallen the rishis, while thou art reigning, O king, thou being  
 blind because thou hast no spies dost not even know it. What  
 need of saying more in this matter ? Let punishment be inflicted  
 38 on him who is wicked ; protect thou the well-behaved, O king ;  
 thou shalt gain the sixth part allowed thee as tribute by right-  
 eous law. By withholding protection thou shalt without doubt  
 39 fully acquire all the sin that is committed by wicked men  
 through unruliness. Do what thou wishest !

"I have told thee all this that thy grandmother saith to thee.  
 Act, when things are so, as pleases thee, O king."

\* *Upekshyās* ; or " must be disregarded."

† For *avekshatā* read *avekshatām* ? " Let a king consider, &c."

‡ For *saṅga-bheda-tayā dāmya-* the Poona edition reads *mantra-bheda-bheydd*  
*atra*, " who have to consider place and time in this matter by reason of fear lest  
 my counsel should be divulged."

§ Or " it is meant for undertaking great trouble."



*Marutta's exploits.*

*Marutta visited his grandmother's hermitage and set the Nágas' world on fire—They implored his mother Bhúvini's protection according to her old promise—She and Avikshit accepted their entreaties and went to Marutta.*

## Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 1 On hearing this speech from the ascetic, the king became covered with shame. Exclaiming, "Fie on me, who am blind
- 2 *because I have no spies,*" he sighed and took his bow. He went hastily then towards Aurva's hermitage and made obeisance to his father's mother Vírā with his head, and to the ascetics
- 3 as was proper; and they lauded him with blessings. And seeing the seven sons,† the ascetics, bitten by the Nágas on
- 4 the ground, the king reproached himself repeatedly in front of them, and said thus,—
- 5 "What I do now unto the wicked Nágas, who despise my valour and who hate the bráhmans, let all the world with the gods, demons and mankind see that!"

## Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 6 So saying the king took his weapon Saṁvartaka‡ in anger, in order to destroy all the Nágas that roamed in Pátála
- 7 and on the earth. The Nágas' world burst into flame then suddenly all around; while it was being burnt by the glowing
- 8 power of the great weapon§, he hemmed it in. 'Ah! Ah! dear father'—'Ah! mother!'—'Ah! Ah! dear child'—*such* cries arose then among the Nágas in that confusion caused by

\* Canto-cxxxi in the Calcutta edition.

† For *sután* read *mritán*, "the seven dead ascetics"?

‡ *Saṁvartaka*, "the fire that will destroy every thing at the end of the world." The Calcutta edition reads *Sad-vartaka*.

§ For *maháśas tu tejasa* the Poona edition reads *maháśtra-tejasa*, which I have followed.

- 9 the weapon. Some with the ends of their tails burning, other Nágas with their hoods *burning*, both seized their children and and wives, *and* abandoned their ornaments and clothing.  
 10 Quitting Pátála they went for protection to Marutta's mother Bháviní, who had formerly given *them a promise of safety*  
 11 then.\* Approaching her all the Nágas, sick with terror, prostrated themselves and spoke thus in broken accents,—

- “ Let that be remembered *which* was formerly declared *by thee*  
 12 to us. What we entreated† formerly after prostrating ourselves in Rasátala, the time for that has here arrived ; save us, O  
 13 mother of the hero ! Let thy son be turned aside, O queen ; let us retain‡ our lives. All the world of the Nágas is being  
 14 burnt by the fire from his weapon. For us, who are being thus utterly burnt up by thy son, there is no other refuge but thou ; have mercy on us, O renowned lady ! ”

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 15 Hearing this their speech and remembering what she had said at first, the good *lady* spoke this speech to her husband with agitation,—  
 16 “ I related to thee before indeed, what the Nágas in Pátála after making petition said to me with reference to my son.  
 17 They are these who have come in terror ; they are being burnt by his splendour ; these *sought* refuge with me before *and* I  
 18 gave them *a promise of safety*. Those who have come to me for refuge have approached thee for refuge, *for I do not observe a righteousness separate from thine*. I have come to thee for  
 19 refuge. Therefore do thou turn aside our son Marutta by thy word ; when besought by me also, he will assuredly proceed§ to quietness.”

\* The promise was given in canto cxxvi, verses 42-44. For the text *yayá dattam tadābhayam* a better reading would be *yathá dattam tuyābhayam*, “ since she had formerly given them a promise of safety.” See verse 17.

† For *abhyarṣitam* read *abhyarthitam*, as in the Poona edition.

‡ *Sāyojyam* ; a word not in the dictionary. *Sāyojyam* is given there, and this is the reading of the Poona edition.

§ *Abhy-upa-yāsyati* ; this verb is not in the dictionary.

The king spoke ;

- 20 Marutta has given way to wrath which has become fixed in a great crime. It will be hard, I think, to turn away the wrath of him, thy son.

The Nágas spoke :

- 21 We have sought thy protection ; shew us favour, O king ; weapons are borne in order to save from pain him who is wounded.

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 22 On hearing that speech of the Nágas who had become suppliants for protection, and being entreated by his wife, most famous Avíkshi\* spoke,—

- 23 “ I go, lady, and *will* with haste speak to that thy son in order to deliver the Nágas : those who have come for protection must  
24 not be forsaken. If he, the king, does not draw back his weapon at my word, then I will parry the weapon of that thy son with *my own* weapons.”

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 25 Thereupon Avíkshi, noblest of kshatriyas, took up his bow and accompanied by his wife went in haste to Bhárgava's hermitage.

## CANTO CXXXI.†

*Marutta's exploits (concluded).*

*Avíkshit called on Marutta to spare the Nágas, but Marutta insisting on his duty refused—Avíkshit proposed to flight with him, and Marutta, though deprecating such combat, agreed—The rishis, intervened, the Nágas restored the dead rishis to life, and all parted affectionately—Marutta's wives and successor are named.*

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 1 Now he, *Avíkshit*, on seeing *his* son there‡ grasping his choice

\* Here and in verse 25 the text shortens the name to Avíkshi. So also in canto cxxxi, verses 9, 11, and 17. See canto cxxii, verse 2, note

† Canto cxxii in the Calcutta edition.

‡ *Tatra* of the Bombay edition is better than *tasyāḥ*.

- bow, *and seeing* his son's bow and keen weapon filling all the  
 2 regions of the sky with its fiery light, belching forth a great  
 flame, illuminating all the surface of the earth, penetrating *down*  
 into Pátála, unendurable, dreadful and terrifying, *and actually*  
 3 ready for use—he, seeing the king whose countenance was  
 wrinkled with frowns, *said*,—"Be not thou wrathful, O  
 4 Marutta; let thy weapon be drawn back." More than once  
 so said he, lofty-minded *Avíkshit*, to him, the *varying* course  
 of whose colour speedily vanished *in pullor*. Listening to  
 his father's speech and looking at him again and again, he,  
 5 *still* grasping his bow, prostrated himself before his parents  
 with veneration and replied :—

- "Most grievously have the Nágas offended me, O father.  
 6 While I rule this earth, they despising my might advanced to  
 7 the hermitage and bit seven youthful munis; and the fire-offer-  
 ings of these rishis who dwell in the hermitage have been  
 defiled by the evil-behaved Nágas, while I am reigning, O  
 8 king. Moreover every one of the tanks has in truth been  
 defiled by them. This then is the reason; thou must say  
 nothing *in their favour*, O father. I am not to be turned aside  
 as regards the bráhma-killing Nágas."

Avíkshi\* spoke :

- 9 If these Nágas have slain bráhmans, they will go to hell when  
 dead. Let this my word be complied with; desist from using  
 thy weapon.

Marutta spoke :

- 10 I will not pardon these wicked offenders. I in truth shall  
 go to hell if I strive not to curb these sinners. Turn me not  
 back, O father!

Avíkshi spoke :

- 11 These Nágas have come to me for refuge. Because of the  
 veneration due to me draw back thy weapon. Enough of thy  
 wrath, O king!

\* The text reads *Avíkshi* here and in the following places See canto cxvii,  
 verse 2, note.

Marutta spoke :

- 12 I will not pardon these wicked offenders. How shall I,  
transgressing my own righteousness, comply with thy word ?  
13 By inflicting punishment on him who ought to be punished  
and by protecting the well-behaved, a king gains the sacred  
worlds and disregards the hells.

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 14 When the son thus repeatedly forbidden by his father  
draws not back the weapon, he, *the father*, then spoke again,—  
15 “Thou injurest these terrified Nāgas who have come to me  
for refuge, although *thou art* forbidden ; I will therefore  
16 employ a means to counteract thee. I also acquired *skill in*  
weapons ; not thou alone art skilled in weapons on the earth ;  
and how great *will be* thy manhood in my presence, O most  
ill-behaved one † ”  
17 Avikshi, the lordly muni, with eyes dusky-red through anger,  
18 strung his bow and grasped the weapon of fate. Next he  
fitted in his bow the noblest weapon of fate, which was  
surrounded with fiery light, which could slaughter hosts of  
19 foes, which had great vigour. Then made hot by the weapon  
of conflagration,\* quaked the whole heaven and earth with the  
seas and mountains, O bráhmaṇ, when the weapon of fate† was  
raised aloft.

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 20 Marutta also, seeing that weapon of fate made ready by his  
father, spoke aloud,—  
“This my weapon is raised aloft for the punishment of the  
21 wicked—not to kill thee. Why dost thou, sir, discharge the  
weapon of fate at me, thy son, who observe true righteous-  
22 ness and who have ever indeed obeyed thy command ? I  
must protect my subjects fully, illustrious *sir* ; why dost thou  
thus prepare the weapon to kill me ? ”

Avikshi spoke :

- 23 We are determined to accomplish the rescue of him who

\* *Samvarta* ; see canto cxxx, verse 6.

† *Kálástru*.

- has come for refuge ; thou art his assailant, thou shalt not be  
 24 let go alive by me. Either slay thou me by the might of  
 thy weapon and then slay the wicked Nágas here ; or I will  
 25 slay thee with my weapon and save the great Nágas. Fie on  
 the life of that man that shews no favour to one in pain, who  
 has come seeking for protection even though certainly belong-  
 26 ing to an enemy's party ! A kshatriya am I ; these terrified  
 Nágas have come to me for protection ; thou indeed art their  
 injurer ; why shouldst thou not be killed by me ?

Marutta spoke :

- 27 Whoever tends to be an obstacle to the protection of the  
 subjects, whether he *be* a friend or even a kinsman or a father  
 28 or a spiritual preceptor, he must be killed by a king. I, *being*  
 such a king, will fight with thee ; be not thou angry, O father.  
 I must preserve my own righteousness. I have no anger  
 against thee.

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 29 Seeing those two determined to kill each other, Bhárgava  
 and the other munis sprang up then and stood between them,  
 30 and said,—“ Thou must not discharge thy weapon against this  
 thy father ; nor must thou slay this thy son who is renowned  
 for his deeds.”

Marutta spoke :

- 31 I must as king slay the wicked *and* guard the good ; and  
 these are wicked Nágas. What is my fault in this *matter*, O  
 ye twice-born ?

Avikshi spoke :

- 32 I must rescue those who have come *to me* for refuge, and  
 this my son is an offender,\* who kills those that have come  
 for refuge, O bráhmans.

The rishis spoke :

- 33 These Nágas whose eyes are rolling about in terror say,  
 ‘ We *will* bring to life again those bráhmans who were bitten  
 34 by wicked Nágas.’ Enough then of combat ! Be ye both

\* For *aparádhyah* read *aparádhi*, as in the Poona edition.

appeased, O noble kings! Ye both indeed, who are faithful to your promises, are well acquainted with righteousness.

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 35 Now Virá approaching her son said this,—“ At my word  
36 this thy son has tried to kill the Nágas. That is finished.  
When the bráhmans live *unmolested* and the dead *munis* also  
come to life again, *the Nágas may* be set free, since they have  
sought thee for protection.”

Bhávini spoke :

- 37 I was formerly entreated by these denizens of Pátála; for that  
38 reason I commissioned this my husband in this *matter*. There-  
fore *has occurred* this noble outcome, splendid, in both of them,  
both in my husband *and my* son, in thy grandson and *thy* son.

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 39 Those Nágas then restored those bráhmans to life both by  
means of various divine herbs and by drawing out the poison.  
40 The king then bowed at his parents' feet ; and he, *Arikshit*,  
41 embracing Marutta affectionately spoke thus—“ Be thou a de-  
stroyer of thy enemies' pride ; long do thou protect the earth ;  
be thou also merry with thy sons and grandsons ; and may they  
not be haters of thee ! ”  
42 Permitted\* then by the bráhmans and by Virá to depart,  
the two kings mounted the chariot together ; and Bhávini  
went to her own city.  
43 Virá also, best of those who maintain righteousness, after  
performing very great austerities, gained the same world\* as  
her husband, she an illustrious wife, devoted to her lord.  
44 Marutta also protected the earth fully in righteousness, and  
having vanquished the six classes of enemies enjoyed enjoy-  
45 ments as king. And his wife was Prabhá-vatí, the illustrious  
daughter *of the king* of Vidarbha ; and Suvíra's daughter  
46 Sauvírí was *also his wife* ; Su-keśí, daughter of the Mágadha

\* For *anujñáto* read *anujñátau*, as in the Poona edition.

† For *sá lokatám* read *sa-lokatám*, as in the Poona edition.

*king Ketu-vírya was his wife. Kekayí also, daughter of*  
 47 *Sindhu-vírya king of Madra, and Kekaya's daughter Sairan-*  
*dhri, and Vapush-matí, daughter of the lord of Sindhu,\* were*  
*also his wives ; and Su-śobhaná, daughter of the king of C'edi,*  
 48 *was his wife. And his sons by those queens became eighteen*  
*kings, O bráhmaṇ. Chief among them and the eldest son was*  
*Narishyanta.*

49 *Such in valour was Marutta, a great king, great in strength.*  
*His discus was unopposed in the seven continents ; equal to*  
 50 *whom no other king ever lived or shall live. After hearing of*  
*these exploits of that royal rishi, high-souled Marutta, who was*  
 51 *endowed with goodness and prowess, and who was of boundless*  
*vigour, and of his pre-eminent birth, O bráhmaṇ, a man is*  
*freed from all offences.*

---

### CANTO CXXXII.†

---

#### *Narishyanta's exploits.*

*Marutta gave the kingdom to his son Narishyanta—Narishyanta resolv-*  
*ed to do some great deed and performed a great sacrifice at which*  
*he enriched the bráhmaṇs for life—Consequently he could not*  
*induce any bráhmaṇs to attend a second sacrifice except after great*  
*difficulty—All bráhmaṇs then were themselves offering sacrifices.*

#### Kraushṭuki spoke :

1 *Adorable sir, thou hast narrated all Marutta's exploits ; the*  
*wish to hear completely about his descendants prevails in me.*

\* These names seem to be confused so as to be in impossible combinations, for Sindhu, Kekaya and Madra were distinct countries, see canto lvii, verses 36 and 37. For *Saurindhri* read *Sairandhri* as in the Poona edition. The second line of verse 46 and the first of verse 47 would read better thus, by merely transposing the words,—

*Sutá śa Sindhu-víryasya Sindhu-bhartur Vapush-matí,*  
*Madra-rájasya Sairandhri, Kekayasya śa Kekayí.*

"Vapush-matí also daughter of Sindhu-vírya lord of Sindhu, Sairandhri daughter of the king of Madra, and Kekayí daughter of the king of Kekaya were also his wives."

† Canto cxxxiii in the Calcutta edition.



- 2 I wish to hear of those among his descendants, as thou describest them, who were lords of the earth, worthy of sovereignty, and endowed with valour, O great muni.

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 3 Marutta's son was famed as Narishyanta\* ; he was the  
4 eldest and indeed the best of the eighteen sons. And for  
5 eighty-five thousands of years the lordly kshatriya Marutta  
6 enjoyed the entire earth. After ruling the kingdom according to his own righteousness, after offering peerless sacrifices, he anointed his eldest son Narishyanta as king and departed to the forest. With his mind concentrated on one idea the king practised great austerities there. He ascended to the sky, covering the heaven and earth with his glory, O bráhmaṇ.
- 7 His son Narishyanta, being wise, pondered *thus*, considering how his father had acted and other kings also,—
- 8 “ In my family my ancestors have been high-souled kings. Offerers of sacrifices, they protected the earth righteously, being  
9 powerful ; and they were givers of riches ; they turned not back in battle. But who is able to imitate the exploits of  
10 those high-souled *kings* ? Yet the righteous deed which they† did with sacrifices and other *offerings*, that I wish to do ; and  
11 that is not *feasible* ; what *can* I do ? The earth is protected according to righteousness ; what virtue has the king in this ? If he does not duly protect, a king *is* sinful and goes to hell.  
12 If he has riches, a king must certainly offer great sacrifices, and must bestow gifts ; what *is there* wonderful herein ? A  
13 king is the refuge of those who are perishing. High birth and shame and anger, dependance on hostile folk and one's own rules of righteousness ensure that there is no fleeing from  
14 battle. As all this has been well achieved by my ancestors and  
15 by my father Marutta, who *now* can do it so *well* ? What then shall I do, that has not been done by those ancestors, who  
16 were sacrificers, choice *men*, gentle, and who turned not back

\* He and his descendants are given in Vishṇu Pur. IV. i. He must be distinguished from Narishyanta or Narishya one of the sons of Manu Vaivasvata see page 583.

† For *tēna* read *tair yat* as in the Bombay edition.

from battle, whose manliness did not fail in great battles and conflicts\* ? With whose deed shall I coming strive unappal-  
 17 ledly ? Moreover those kings, *my* ancestors, themselves performed sacrifices unweariedly, but did not have them performed by others ; I *will* do that."

Márkaṇḍeya sp ke

18 After doliberating thus the king performed a single sacrifice, the like of which, made splendid by the lavishing of riches, no  
 19 one else had performed. Now after giving very great wealth to the twice-born *bráhmans*, enough for life, the king further  
 20 gave them a hundred times as much food at the sacrifice, *and* cattle, clothing, ornaments and granaries and other *gifts*. Thus he intoxicated each one of them who dwelt in the earth.  
 21 Consequently when the king began a sacrifice again, he got no twice-born *bráhmans* then to conduct it after the sacrifice had  
 22 been begun. Whatever *bráhmans* the king selects for the business of sacrificial priesthood,† they said everyone to him,—  
 " We have consecrated ourselves for a sacrifice elsewhere.  
 23 Choose thou some one else ; the riches which thou didst lavish among us, there is no end thereof. Yet thou mayest give wealth to *others* at *thy* sacrifices."

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

24 And the lord of the whole earth obtained no *bráhmans* then as sacrificial priests. He began then to give a gift on the  
 25 space outside the sacrificial altar. Nevertheless they did not accept it at all, having their houses full of wealth. In order to give again to a twice-born *bráhmaṇ* he spoke thus, being dejected,—  
 26 " Alas ! *it is* very splendid that there is no poor *bráhmaṇ* anywhere in the earth : and *it is* not splendid that this  
 27 treasury is useless to one who does not sacrifice. No one

\* For *mahat-saṅgrāma-saṁsargá viśaṁvāḍita-paurushāḥ* read *mahat-saṅgrāma-sammardeśhv avisaṁvāḍi-paurushāḥ* as in the Bombay and Poona editions.

† For *ārttijya-karmaṇi* read *ārtvijya-karmaṇi*.

undertakes sacrificial priesthood\* ; all folk among the twice-born are sacrificing, and do not assent when we are giving a gift."

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 28 Prostrating himself then before some twice-born bráhmans  
again and again in faith, he appointed them sacrificial priests  
at his own sacrifice. They performed the great sacrifice.  
29 And this was very surprising,—when that sacrifice *offered* by  
the king took place, all folk of the twice-born on the earth  
30 were offering sacrifices at that time ; no one was *present* as a  
spectator thereat. Some of the twice-born were having sacri-  
fices offered, and some of them were themselves offering sacri-  
31 fices. Whenever king Narishyanta sacrificed, *people* might  
make a sacrifice on the earth entirely with the riches *given* by  
32 that giver. Now in the eastern region there were more than  
one hundred and eighty million sacrifices ; in the west seventy  
33 millions† in sooth ; in the south fourteen *tens of millions* ; and  
in the north there were then fifty *tens of millions* of sacrifices  
at one time, O bráhmaṇ muni, when Narishyanta was sacrificing.  
34 Such, O bráhmaṇ, was Marutta's son king Narishyanta of  
yore, righteous in soul, famed for his strength and manliness.

---

CANTO CXXXIII.‡

---

*Dama's exploits.*

*Narishyanta was succeeded by his son Dama, an accomplished king—  
Sumaná daughter of the king of Daśárṇa chose him as her husband  
at her svayam-vara—Three other princes tried to take her by force,  
and Dama, after appealing to the assembled kings against their  
conduct, was left in accordance with marriage rules to assert his  
right by arms—He defeated those kings and married Sumaná.*

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 1 Narishyanta's son was Dama,§ the tamer of the wicked and

\* For *árttijyam* read *ártvijyam*.

† For *koṣṭá* read *koṣṭo* as in the Poona edition.

‡ Canto cxxxiv in the Calcutta edition.

§ He and his descendants are given in Vishṇu Pur. IV. i.

- of enemies ; like Indra's was his strength ; compassion such  
 2 as a muni's was his disposition. That very famous son was  
 born to that king of Indra-sená, a princess descended from  
 Babhru,\* after abiding nine years in his mother's womb.  
 3 Because while abiding in her womb he caused his mother to  
 acquire self-restraint, and because *it was supposed*, ' this prince  
 4 also will be self-restrained in disposition,' therefore indeed his  
 family priest, who knew the three times,† gave Narishyanta's  
 son the name ' Dama.'‡
- 5 Now prince Dama learnt the knowledge of the bow entirely  
 6 from Vṛisha-parvan, king of men ;§ and he learnt *the use of all*  
 kinds of weapons thoroughly from the noble Daitya Dun-  
 7 dubhi|| who dwelt in Tapo-vana ;¶ and *he learnt* the Vedas  
 and all the Vedāṅgas from Śakti,\*\* and controlling himself  
 he learnt the practice of religious devotion from the royal ṛishi  
 Ārshṭi-sheṇa††.

\* This may be Babhru or Vabhru, son of Druhyu, son of Yayāti (Hari-V., xxxii. 1837). There were other kings of the same name later, as Vabhru son of Devāvṛidha (Hari-V., xxxviii. 2010-13, and Matsya Pur. xlv. 56), Babhru son of Viśva-garbha (Hari-V., xcv. 5252), &c.

† The past, the present and the future.

‡ " Self-control."

§ This would appear to be Vṛisha-parvan, a famous king of the Dānavas (Mahā-Bh., Ādi-p. lxxxi. 3367-8, Sabhā-p.iii. 58-60), whose daughter Śarmish-ṭhā married Yayāti (*ibid*, and Ādi-p. xcv. 3760-1, Udyoga-p. cxlviii. 5042-5; Hari V., xxx. 1600-3; and Viṣṇu Pur. IV. x). There was a famous hermitage called Vṛisha-parvan's hermitage near Mount Kailāsa in the Himālayas (Mahā-Bh., Vana-p. clviii. 11541-3, clxxvii. 12340-44), but that Vṛisha-parvan appears to have been contemporary with the Pāṇḍavas, according to the first of these last two passages.

|| I have not found a Daitya of this name elsewhere.

¶ This means a " grove where austerities are practised "; but there appears to have been a place of this name, for Yayāti retired there (Viṣṇu Pur. IV. x).

\*\* This appears to be Vasishṭha's son who was called Śakti (Wilson's Viṣṇu Pur.—edit. F. Hall—I. p. 8, and III, iii, pp. 35 and 36) and, better, Śaktri (Mahā-Bh., Ādi-p. clxxvii. 6757, clxxviii. 6792-4; Śānti-p. cccli.) He was Parāśara's father (*loc. cit.*), see canto cxxiv. verse 32.

†† For *Ārshṭi-sheṇa* read *Ārshṭi-sheṇa*, as in the Poona edition. He is mentioned in the Mahā-Bh., as having a famous hermitage near Mount

- 8 Him, who was naturally high-souled, who was accomplished  
 in arms and was great in strength, did Sumaná, when placed\*  
 9 at the svayam-vara by her father, choose as her husband, *she*,  
 daughter of mighty Āru-karman† king of Daśārṇa,‡ while  
 all the kings looked on, who had assembled there for her sake.  
 10 Now the Madra§ king's son Mahá-náda, who was great in  
 11 strength and prowess, was also deeply enamoured of her, and  
*so also were* the son of Saṅkrandana king of Vidarbha,|| and  
 prince Vapush-mat, who bore a great bow and was of lofty  
 12 intellect. Now seeing that Dama, tamer of the wicked and of  
 enemies, was chosen by her,¶ they took counsel *thus* with one  
 another there, being infatuated by love,—  
 13 “We *will* seize this beautifully-formed maiden from him by  
 force and go home. She shall be his among us, whom she,  
 14 the *maiden* of beautiful hips, shall take with the intention  
*that he shall be her husband* according to the ordinance of the  
 svayam-vara—his wife she shall be, delivered over according  
 15 to righteousness by our wish. Yet *if* that *maiden* of intoxicating  
 eyes does not desire any of us, then she shall be his who  
 shall slay Dama.”

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 16 Having formed this resolve, those three princes seized that  
 most beautifully-formed *maiden*, as she attended by Dama's  
 17 side. Thereupon some kings among them who were of his\*\*  
 party cried out, and other kings shouted out *on the other side* ;

Gandha-mádana in the Himálayas (Vana-p. clviii. 11626-7, Śalya-p. xli, Anuśás.-p. xxv. 1741), and he is there made a contemporary of the Páṇḍavas. That Arṣtīshena or another of the same name was son of Sala (or Laśa), who was son of Su-hotra (Hari-V., xxix. 1518-20; see also the Váyu, Brahma and Bhág. Purāṇas).

\* *Kṛitá*; *svayam-vare kṛite putrá*, “at the svayam-vara arranged by her father,” would seem better.

† I have not found this name elsewhere.

‡ See canto lvii, verse 53.

§ See p. 315, note †.

|| See canto lvii, verse 47.

¶ For *te 'tha yátávrītaṁ* read *te tayá taṁ vrītaṁ* as in the Poona edition.

\*\* *Tut-pakṣhá*, i.e., apparently “of Dama's party.”

- 18 some took a neutral position. Then Dama, looking at those kings all around, made this appeal with full presence of mind, O great muni.

Dama spoke :

- 19 “Ho, ye kings! Since *men* say a svayam-vara is among the duties of righteousness, *is it* unrighteousness or righteousness that these have seized her by force? If *it is* unrighteousness, it is no duty of mine that there shall be another wife *for me*; or *if it is* righteousness, then enough of the life which is retained in an outrage by an enemy!”
- 21 Then king Āru-dharman,\* king of Daśārṇa, making that  
22 assemblage keep silence, spoke, O great muni,—“If this which Dama has spoken depends on righteousness or unrighteousness, O kings, declare *it* then, so that mine and his righteousness be not violated.”

Mārkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 23 Then certain kings addressed that king,—“With mutual affection the Gāndharva ceremony of *marriage* is ordained for  
24 kshatriyas,† but it is not for vaiśyas, śūdras or twice-born brāhmins. And it has been effected by this thy daughter in  
25 that she has preferred Dama. Thus according to righteousness this thy daughter *belongs* to Dama, O king. He who behaves otherwise, proceeds through infatuation *as* one licentious in soul.”
- 26 And others, high-souled kings, who belonged to the party of the *hostile* kings, spoke this speech to the king of Daśārṇa, O brāhman,—
- 27 “Why say they through infatuation *that* this Gāndharva *form* is the *rule* of righteousness for him who is kshatriya-born? But this is certainly not approved. There is another‡  
28 form *also*, the Rākshasa,§ for those who live by *bearing* arms. Now whoever carries off this *maiden* by force after

\* Or Āru-karman in verse 9 above.

† See Manu iii. 26 and 32.

‡ For *na tvasha śīstā nānyo hi* read *na tv esha eva śīsto 'nyo*, as in the Poona edition.

§ See Manu iii. 26 and 33.

slaying those who beset his path, his in truth she is by the  
 29 Rákshasa marriage, O kings. Of the two *forms* of marriage  
 this *Rákshasa form* is esteemed the more excellent here among  
 kshatriyas; hence Mahánanda\* and the other *princes* have  
 acted righteously."

Márkanḍeya spoke :

30 Then the kings, who had first addressed the *assembled* kings,  
 spoke again *this* speech dealing with the righteousness of their  
 caste *as concerned* with mutual affection ;—

31 "It is true the Rákshasa *form* also is commended as an  
 excellent ordinance for kshatriyas, but the maiden has approved  
 him, *Dama*, as her husband under her father's authority.  
 32 Now *she* who is carried off by force *by a man*, who has killed  
 her father or kinsman—that is declared to be the Rákshasa  
 33 ordinance—*provided* she is living in the possession of no one else  
 as husband.† In this completion of the Gándharva *form*  
 here—since this *maiden* chose *Dama* in the sight of all the  
 34 kings—what Rákshasa marriage *has there been* here? A  
 maiden when married certainly retains not her maidenhood,  
 35 and marriage creates a bond‡ on a maiden, O kings. These  
 particular *princes*, who are prepared to take her by force from  
*Dama*, let them do *so* then, if they are strong *enough* ; but  
 that is not good."

Márkanḍeya spoke :

36 Hearing that, *Dama* with eyes reddened with wrath strung  
 37 his bow and spoke this speech,—“ If my own wife is carried  
 off by strong men before my eyes—what then *is* the value of  
 the existence of an impotent man as regards his family or his  
 38 two arms ? § Fie on my weapons ! fie on my valour ! fie on my  
 arrows ! fie on my bow ! fie on my useless birth in the family  
 39 of high-souled Marutta ! If these powerful *princes* in their in-

\* Or Mahánáda, as in verse 10.

† This is according to the comment., which makes *nánya-bhartṛi-kare*  
*sthítá* a clause qualifying the preceding words. The comment. explains  
*hatvá pitṛi-sambandham* as “ severing her tie to her father.”

‡ *Sambandhaḥ* ; = *svámitvam*, “ ownership ” (comment.).

§ For *bhujámyám* read *bhujábhým*, as in the Poona edition.

fatuation take my wife and depart while I live, shame on my useless possession of a bow ! ”

40 So exclaiming, mighty Dama, the tamer of great enemies,  
then addressed all those other kings with Mahánanda at their  
41 head,—“ Here *stands* the surpassingly bright maiden, pretty in  
form, and with intoxicating eyes ; what has he *to do* with life,  
42 to whom this high-born *maiden becomes* not wife ? Thinking  
thus, O kings, so strive ye in combat that ye may by vanquish-  
ing me proudly make her your wife.”

43 Having challenged them thus, he then discharged a shower  
of arrows there, covering the kings *therewith* as a *storm of rain*  
44 *covers* trees with darkness. Those heroic kings also discharged  
arrows, pikes, spears and maces, and Dama playfully clove the  
45 *missiles* used by them. They also *clove* the arrows shot by  
him, and Narishyanta's son clove the multitudes of arrows  
46 *discharged* by those kings, O muni. As the fight went on then  
between Dama and the princes, Mahánanda penetrated with  
47 sword in hand where Dama *was*. Dama, seeing him advancing  
with sword in hand in the great fight, discharged showers of  
48 arrows as Indra *pours out* the rains. Mahánanda immediately  
then clove those his missiles, which composed meshes of arrows,  
49 with his sword *and* avoided others. Mahánanda, great in  
valour, next mounted on Dama's chariot in fury then and fought  
50 with Dama. As Mahánanda was fighting agilely in many  
ways, Dama shot an arrow gleaming like the fire of fate into  
51 his heart. Mahánanda, with himself pierced *as he was*, pulled  
out the *arrow* that had stuck in his heart, and then hurled  
52 his glittering sword against Dama. And Dama dashed *aside*  
this torch-like sword, which was falling on him, with a pike,  
and cut Mahánanda's head off with a double-edged sword.\*

53 When Mahánanda was killed, the kings in a mass turned  
backwards, *but* Vapush-mat, king of Kuṇḍina,† stood his  
54 ground ; and full of strength, pride, and frenzy he fought  
with Dama. He was son of a king of the Southern country

\* *Vetasa-patra*. See canto cxxvi verse 24.

† See p. 335, note §.



55 and was a habitual fighter.\* As that *prince* was fighting  
 fiercely, he, *Dama*, with a scymitar† lightly clove both his  
 56 charioteer's head and his banner in the battle. His sword  
 being broken, that *prince* then seized his mace studded with  
 many spikes, and he, *Dama*, hastily split that also while it  
 57 was in his very hand. Whilst Vapush-mat is taking up  
 another choice weapon, during that interval *Dama* pierced  
 58 him with an arrow and laid him low on the ground. That  
 prince was laid low on the ground then, powerless in his limbs  
 59 and quivering, and ceased in his mind from fighting. After  
 gazing on him as he lay so with no more thought of fighting,  
*Dama* restraining himself‡ abandoned him, and taking *Sumaná*  
 went forth with happy mind.

60 Then the king of *Daśárṇa* filled with pleasure performed  
 the marriage of those two, of *Dama* and *Sumaná*, according to  
 61 the ordinances. *Dama* wedded to his wife remained a short  
 time there in the city of the king of *Daśárṇa*, and departed with  
 62 his wife to his own abode. And the king of *Daśárṇa*§ gave  
 him elephants, horses and chariots, cattle, horses, asses and  
 63 camels, and many slaves both female and male, clothing, orna-  
 ments, bows and other *apparel*, the choicest household utensils  
 of his own; and sent him away, replete also with those other  
 vessels.

---

### CANTO CXXXIV.||

---

#### *Dama's exploits.*

*Dama* returned home triumphant—*Narishyanta* transferred the king-  
 dom to him and retired with his queen *Indra-sená* to the forest—

\* *Raṇa-gocharaḥ.*

† For *kara-bālam*, which form is not in the dictionary, read *kara-bālena* or  
 better *kara-pālena*?

‡ He did not give him the *coup de grace*. *Vapush-mat* re-appears in the  
 next canto.

§ For *Daśárṇádhīpateś śásau* read *Daśárṇádhīptiś śásmai*, as in the Poona  
 edition.

|| Canto cxxv in the Calcutta edition,

*The defeated prince Vapush-mat met him there, and in revenge killed him—Indra-sená sent tidings to Dama that he should punish the murderer.*

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

1 Thus the prince gained her, Sumaná, as his wife, O most  
great muni, and prostrated himself\* at his father's and  
2 mother's feet; and she, beautiful-browed Sumaná, bowed then  
before her parents-in-law. And they were both welcomed then  
3 with blessings by them both. And a great festival was held  
in Narishyanta's city itself, since *Dama* had both married a  
4 wife *and* arrived from the city of the king of Daśárṇa. On hear-  
ing that he was *thus* connected by marriage with the lord of  
Daśárṇa and that the kings were defeated, king Narishyanta  
5 rejoiced with his son. And Dama, son of the great king,  
sporting with Sumaná amidst choice gardens and woodland  
spots, in palaces and on the summits of hills.

6 Now after a long time Sumaná, daughter of the king of  
7 Daśárṇa, while sporting with Dama conceived a child. And  
king Narishyanta, who had enjoyed enjoyments as lord of the  
earth, reached his declining years, and anointing Dama to the  
8 kingdom departed to the forest; and his wife Indra-sená also  
*went as a female ascetic*. He dwelt there according to the  
ordinance of vána-prasthas.†

9 Saṅkrandana's son Vapush-mat, *king* of the Southern region,  
most evil in conduct, went to the forest to kill deer, with a small  
10 body of followers. He saw Narishyanta as an ascetic dirty  
and mud-covered, and his wife Indra-sená most extremely  
11 weakened by austerities, and asked,—“Who art thou, a bráh-  
man, or a forest-wandering kshatriya, or a vaiśya who has  
12 reached the vána-prastha stage?‡ Tell me!” The king,  
being under a rule of silence, gave him no answer at all then,  
and Indra-sená told him all that truly.

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

13 And on knowing that that Narishyanta was his enemy's

\* *Pranāmya* sa is the reading, but *prañanīma* would be better.

† For *vānaprastha* read *vīnaprastha*.

‡ For *vānaprastham* read *vānaprasthyam*?

father, Vapush-mat exclaiming "I have got him!" both  
 14 seized him angrily by his matted locks and, while Indra-sená  
 bewailed "Alas! Alas!" with sobbing voice, drew forth his  
 sword angrily and spoke this word,—

15 "I will seize the father of that Dama, who defeated me in  
 battle *and* who carried Sumaná off from me; let Dama protect  
 16 him! I will kill the father of that evil-minded *man*, who cast  
 off all the princes that had assembled for the maiden's sake.  
 17 Let that Dama, who evil-souled naturally domineers in battles,  
 prevent it; such *as I am* here, I kill that foe's father."

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

18 So saying that king Vapush-mat, evil in conduct, cut off  
 19 his head also, while Indra-sená cried out. The muni folk and  
 other forest-dwellers then said to him, "Shame! Shame!"  
 And after looking at him he, *Vapush-mat*, went from the  
 forest to his own city.

20 When that Vapush-mat had gone, she, Indra-sená, sighing  
 deeply despatched a súdra ascetic to her son's presence,  
*saying*,—

21 "Go thou quickly *and* tell my son Dama my word. Thou  
 verily knowest what tidings of my husband are told here;  
 22 nevertheless thou must tell my son, what I say in my very sore  
 affliction after having seen such an outrage\* as this fallen on  
 23 the king;—'Thou art king, appointed by my lord—a protector  
 of the four stages of life. Is it fit that thou dost not safeguard  
 24 the ascetics?† My lord Narishyanta was engaged in the  
 austerities of an ascetic; and there is no such lord for *me* who  
 25 bewail, while thou art such a lord.‡ Vapush-mat dragged  
 him by the hair with violence and then killed him for no fault;  
 26 thus thy king has attained to glory. In these circumstances

\* *Laṅghaná*; this word in the feminine gender is not in the dictionary. It  
 occurs again in verses 33 and 36.

† For *mad-bharttádhikṛito* read *mud-bhartrádhikṛito*; for *ki yuktam* read  
*kim yuktam*; and for *yan nirákshasi* read *yan na rakshasi*, as in the Poona  
 edition.

‡ This is according to the comment., with the Poona reading *náthe* instead  
 of *ndati*.

do thou that whereby righteousness may not be violated—so do  
 27 thou! I must not\* say more than this, for I am an ascetic. And  
 thy father was an aged ascetic unvitiated by any offence. Do  
 thou determine what should be done to that *man* who killed him.  
 28 Thou hast heroic ministers who can expound the meaning of all  
 the scriptures. Consider with them and do what ought to be  
 29 done in these circumstances. We ascetics have no authority  
 in this *matter*, O king. “Do thou this”—“*do thou so*”—  
 30 such is a king’s speech.† As Vidúratha’s‡ father was slain  
 by the Yavana, so *has this king, the father* of thee, *my son,*  
 31 *been slain*; thereby thy family has been destroyed. The father  
 of the Asura king Jambha was bitten by Nágas, and that  
 king also destroyed the Nágas who inhabited the whole of  
 32 Pátála. Parásara,§ when he heard that his father Sakti||  
 had been smitten by a Rákshasa, cast the whole race of  
 33 Rákshasas into the fire. Moreover a kshatriya cannot verily  
 endure the outrage which any other *person* makes against  
 his lineage; how much less *will he endure* the murder of his  
 34 father? *It is* not this thy father *who* is slain, *it is* not on him  
 that the weapon has been made to fall; *it is* thou *who* hast been  
 slain here I deem, *it is* on thee *that* the weapon has been made  
 35 to fall. Who indeed fears this *foe*, that has laid his weapon

\* For *śu naiva* read *śara na* as in the Poona edition.

† The Poona edition reads *bhūyo 'pi bhāshitum* for *bhūpati-bhāshitam*, ‘We ascetics have no authority here, O king, to say thus “Do thou this,” or even further “Do thou so.”’

‡ This may be the Vidúratha mentioned above in canto cxvi, verse 10. There were other kings of the same name, but all later in time, and it does not appear any of them were killed by a Yavana; as Vidúratha son of Kuru, of the Paurava race (Mahá-Bh., Adi-p. xcv. 3791-5, Sánti-p. xlix. 1790-97, and Hari-V., xxxii. 1816), Vidúratha son of Bhajamāna (Hari-V., xxxix. 2032, and Matsya Pur. xlv. 77), and another later Vidúratha (Hari-V., xcii. 5015-8, and xcix. 5493-5504).

§ Parásara was a famous rishi, son of Saktri or Sakti, see canto cxxxiii, verse 7. He was father by Satya-vatī of Krishna Dvaipáyana (Mahá-Bh., Adi-p. lx. 2209, xcv. 3801-2, and Sánti-p. cceli). But he is wholly out of time in this story.

|| For *pitari Saktau* read *pitaram Saktim* as in the Poona edition.

- on *simple* forest-dwellers; let him not fear thee, my son, as king,  
 36 or let him fear *thee*.\* Since this outrage has been directed  
 against thee, do thou take thorough measures therefore against  
 this Vapush-mat with his dependants, kinsmen and friends.' "

Márkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 37 Dismissing him, Indra-dása, to whom this message had been  
 communicated, the noble-spirited lady embracing her lord's  
 body entered the funeral pyre.

---

CANTO CXXXV.†

---

*Dama's exploits.*

*Dama bewails his father's death and vows vengeance against the murderer.*

Márkaṇḍeya spoke : ‡

- 1 At the tidings of his father's death declared by that ascetic§  
 Dama blazed out with exceeding wrath, as fire is intensified||  
 2 with clarified butter. Now that steadfast *king* burning with  
 the fire of wrath, O great muni, crushed his hands together  
 and spoke out this speech ;—  
 3 " Like a master-less *wretch* my dear father has been slaugh-  
 tered, while I his son actually live, by a very cruel *man* who has  
 4 overwhelmed my family. Let not people utter the calumny¶  
 that I, such as *I am*, condone *this* by reason of impotence. I am  
 in authority to quell the unruly and to protect the well-behaved.  
 5 My father has been slain even by him—seeing *that*, my enemies

\* This is the Poona and Bombay reading, *putrasya má bibhetu* for *viprasya márite tu* ; but both seem corrupt.

† Canto cxxxvi in the Calcutta edition.

‡ The Bombay and Poona editions make the story more precise by inserting a verse here—"That śúdra ascetic as commanded by Indra-sená went and relates to Dama his father's death as narrated above."

§ For *samákhyatāṁ badham* read *samákhyāte badhe* as in the Poona edition.

|| For *uddhṛitāḥ* read *uddhataḥ* as in the Poona edition.

¶ For *nyāya-vádo june tasyápy* read *nápavádo janenu syád* as in the Poona edition.

- live.\* What *is the good* then of this much lamentation ?
- 6 And why again *the cry*, 'Alas ! dear father !' ? What should be done by lamentation here, that I, such as *I am*, *will* do here. When I give no gratification to my sire with the blood that spurts from that Vapush-mat's body, then I will enter the
- 7 fire ! If no water-oblation *be made* to my dear slain father with the blood of that *king* in fight,† and *if no feast be given* duly to twice-born *bráhmans* with flesh, then I will enter the fire !
- 8 If those who are named Asuras, gods, Yakshas, Gandharvas, Vidyádharas, and Siddhas give him assistance, even them also I, such as *I am*, possessed with fury *will* reduce to ashes with
- 9 multitudes of weapons. I will kill in battle that *king* of the Southern country, who is cruel, very unrighteous‡ and unworthy of praise, and I will then enjoy the whole earth also ;
- 10 or failing to kill him I will enter the fire. I will forthwith slay *him*, most evil-minded, who slaughtered an old man among the ascetics,§ who dwells in the forest, is greatly agitated at peaceful words,|| accompanied *as he is* by all his kinsmen, friends, and army of foot-soldiers, elephants and
- 11 cavalry. Let all the assembled bands of my gods see the

\* The Poona edition reads *Pitaram śápi nihatam drishtvá jívaty a-sattamah*, "and seeing my father slain, the evil man lives."

† Or read *sañkhye 'vinipátitasya*, "to my dear father, who was slain not in battle, with that king's blood" ? The Bombay and Poona editions omit the second quarter-verse and read as the third quarter-verse *kuryám pitus tasya śa piṇḍa-dānam*, "Let me with his blood make the water-oblation, and with his flesh a fitting feast to bráhmans and the oblation of the funeral cake to that father of mine ; if not, then I will enter the fire !" *Tasya* in the first quarter-verse may refer to *pituh*, but by position *tasya māmśena* corresponds to *tuś-śhonitena* ; the result is extraordinary, but see verses 34 to 36 on page 683 below.

‡ The Poona edition reads *nishṭhúram* for *niḥ-śúram* ; and the comment. explains *á-dhúrmikam* as *atyantam a-dhúrmikam*.

§ For *tápasa-vṛiddha-mauninam* the Bombay and Poona editions read *tápasa-vṛiddha-ghátinam* ; but both violate the metre. Read *tápasa-vṛiddha-ghátam* ?

|| The Poona edition reads the second quarter-verse thus—*ana-sthagam sádhu-vidhiṁ vidagdham*, "a forest-rogue, observing good ordinances, cunning ;" but *sádhu-vidhiṁ* is erroneous. The Bombay reading is similar.

- destruction that I, such as *I am*, will verily make, taking my bow, armed with a sword, and mounted in my chariot,  
 12 meeting my enemy's might. Whoever shall be his comrade to-day when he comes to battle with me again, I am prepared, with my two arms as my soldiers, speedily to destroy his family  
 13 utterly.\* If in this battle the king of the gods with thunderbolt in hand, and the lord of the pitris too raising his terrible sceptre wrathfully, *and* the lord of wealth, Varuṇa and the Sun strive to safeguard him, I will nevertheless slaughter  
 14 *him* with multitudes of choice sharp arrows. May the vultures be satisfied this day with the flesh and blood of that *man*, by whom was killed, while I the son am powerful, my dear father, whose mind was subdued, who was without fault, who dwelt in a small spot in the forest,† who ate *only* fruits that had fallen, who was friendly to all beings !”

---

CANTO CXXXVI.

---

*Dama's exploits—The slaying of Vapush-mat.‡*

*Dama consulted his ministers and resolved to kill Vapush-mat—He and Vapush-mat met with their armies, and he killed Vapush-mat in fight—He celebrated his father's obsequies with Vapush-mat's flesh and blood.*

Márkandeya spoke :

- 1 When Narishyanta's son Dama uttered this vow, his eyes rolled with anger and passion, while he covered his beard with  
 2 his hand. *Exclaiming* “Alas! I am stricken!” he kept his father in mind and reproached Fate; and he addressed all those ministers; he brought the family priest there.

\* For *tathaiva* read *tasyáśu* as in the Poona edition, or *tasyaiva* as in the Bombay edition.

† *Kánanákhayālauko*, or *-ká* as in the Bombay and Poona editions.

‡ This and the next cantos are the ending given in the Bombay and Poona editions. The Calcutta edition gives a short ending, quite different, which is printed at the end. This ending is printed as an Appendix to the latter edition, but the text there is very incorrect; and I have followed the text in the former editions, noting only such variations as appear worthy of notice.

Dama spoke :

- 3 Tell me what should be done in this *matter*, now that my  
 dear father has reached the gods' abode. Ye, sirs, have heard  
 4 what that súdra ascetic has said. That king was aged, an  
 ascetic, engaged in the vána-prastha's vow, observing the rule  
 of silence, unarmed and *dwelling* with my mother Indra-sená.  
 5 She who was associated with him told the exact account to  
 Vapush-mat. Thereupon the evil-souled *foe*, drawing his  
 scymitar and seizing *my father's* matted locks with his left hand,  
 6 killed the world's master as if he were a masterless *churl*.  
 And my mother, having actually commissioned me, was utter-  
 7 ing the word "Shame!" and, *calling me* feeble in lot and void  
 of good fortune, has entered the fire. Embracing him, Narish-  
 8 yanta, she has departed to the abode of the thirty gods. I  
 being such will now do what my mother has said. And let  
 my army composed of elephants, horses, chariots, and infantry  
 9 be arranged. If I drive not away the enmity against my  
 father, if I kill not my father's murderer and comply not with  
 my mother's word, how can I endure to live here ?

Márkandeya spoke :

- 10 The ministers hearing his speech exclaimed "Alas! Alas!"  
 and did accordingly therefore, while distraught in mind. Ac-  
 11 companied by his dependants, army, and chariots, and by his  
 retinue, they, placing king Dama at their head and taking  
 the blessings of the brahman family priest who knew the  
 12 three *divisions* of time, went forth. Breathing hard like the  
 Serpent king, Dama advanced against Vapush-mat, while  
 slaying the wardens on his boundaries and other neighbouring  
*princes*, and hastening\* towards the southern region.  
 13 Seeing him approaching, Vapush-mat was filled with pa-  
 tience ;† and Sañkrandana's son Vapush-mat recognized Dama,  
 who had arrived attended by his retinue, by his ministers, and  
 14 by his dependants. With unwavering mind he directed his  
 armies ; and issuing from his city he despatched a messenger to

\* *Tvaran* of the Calcutta Appendix is better than *tvará*.

† *Marsha-púritāḥ*. This is hardly appropriate, unless it means "was filled with caution."



- 15 *announce*,—"Come thou on more quickly! Narishyanta with  
his wife awaits thee! O thou of kshatriya caste, approach near  
16 me! These sharp arrows discharged by my arm, which are  
thirsting, shall pierce thy body in battle and drink thy  
blood."
- 17 But Dama, on hearing all that speech from the messenger,  
went on hastily, remembering his previously uttered vow,  
18 breathing hard like a serpent. And the man who boasted of  
his army\* was summoned to battle. And then there was an  
exceedingly fierce combat between Dama and Vapush-mat.  
19 And the armies fought, both chariot-rider against chariot-rider,  
elephant-rider against elephant-rider,† horseman against  
horseman, O bráhmaṇ ṛishi. That battle was tumultuous,  
20 while all the gods, Siddhas, Gandharvas, and Rákshasas looked  
on. The earth quaked, O bráhmaṇ, as Dama fought in that  
21 battle. There was no elephant, no chariot-rider, no horse  
which could endure his arrows. Next Vapush-mat's general  
22 fought with Dama, and Dama pierced him deeply in the heart  
with an arrow at close-quarters. When he fell, his army  
verily was seized with a panic to flee.
- 23 Then spoke Dama, tamer of his foes, to their master thus,—  
"Where goest thou, wicked one, after having slaughtered my  
24 father, who was an ascetic and weapon-less and practising  
austerities? Thou art a kshatriya; stay thou!" Then stay-  
ing back he, Vapush-mat, attended by his younger brother  
25 fought with Dama. Mounted in his chariot he fought in com-  
pany with his sons, relations, and kinsmen. With the arrows  
discharged from his bow the regions of the sky were then  
26 pervaded,‡ and he filled Dama and his chariot with multitudes  
of arrows quickly. And thereupon Dama in wrath excited by  
27 his father's murder split the arrows discharged by them § and

\* *Pumán sená-vikathanah*; but *Vapushmán sainya-katthanah* is suggested as better, "And Vapush-mat who boasted of his army was summoned to battle."

† *Náginá*; this meaning is not in the Dictionary.

‡ For the first *tataḥ*, *tasya* would be better.

§ *Ódśheddśtśśś śharāśś* or *śśśśheda tāśś śharāśś*; both readings are admissible.

28 pierced them also with other arrows. In that way he brought down to Yama's abode the seven sons, the relations and kinsmen and friends,\* each with a single arrow, O dvija.

29 And Vapush-mat after his sons and kinsmen had been killed, mounted in a chariot fought wrathfully with him in battle with serpent-like arrows.† And Dama split those his arrows, 30 O great muni.‡ And those two fought together, being exasperated, wishing to conquer each other, each one's bow being quickly split by the impetus of the other's arrows. They both, 31 great in strength, grasping their swords, made play. § Dama, reflecting for a moment on the king his father who had been 32 killed in the forest,|| seized *Vapush-mat* by the hair and attacked him and felled him to the earth; and with his foot on his neck, 33 raising his arm he exclaimed,—“ Let all the gods, men, Serpents and birds see the heart also of Vapush-mat, who is of 34 kshatriya caste, split open ! ” And so saying Dama tore open his heart also, and desirous of drinking¶ was forbidden by the gods from *tasting* the blood.

35 Then he offered the water-oblation to his dear father with the very blood. Having discharged his debt to his father he 36 returned to his own house. And with Vapush-mat's flesh he offered the cakes to his father, he feasted the bráhmans who were sprung from families of Rákshasas.\*\*

37 Such verily were the kings born of the Solar Race. Others also were of fine intellect, heroic, sacrificers, learned in right- 38 eousness, deeply versed in the Vedánta. And I am not able to

\* *Mitrán*; the masculine with this meaning is unusual.

† The Calcutta Appendix reads *sa rathí vibudhopamah*, “ He, riding in his chariot, resembled a god ”—which probably would refer to Dama.

‡ *Óa mahá-mune*, a mere expletive. The Calcutta Appendix reads *pratyuváca ha*.

§ Or “ made feints.” The Calcutta Appendix reads *grihita-khadgam udaya-myá ékriđati Vapushmati*, “ While Vapush-mat raising the sword in his grasp was making play,” or “ making a feint,” Dama, &c.

|| The Calcutta Appendix reads *jñátvá pitaram éa sthitam vane*.

¶ The Calcutta Appendix reads *svátta-kámas* for *pátu-kámas*.

\*\* An extraordinary statement.

mention them fully.\* By listening to their exploits a man is delivered from sins.

---

CANTO CXXXVII.

---

*Conclusion.*

*The Birds close here the long discourse delivered by Márkaṇḍeya, and Jaimini thanks them and departs.*

The Birds spoke :

- 1 Having spoken thus, O Jaimineya,† the great muni Márkaṇḍeya let the muni Krauṣṭuki depart, and performed the
- 2 mid-day ceremony. From him we also have heard what we have declared to thee, O great muni. For this was perfected by Him who is without beginning.‡ Spoken formerly by the
- 3 Self-existent One to the muni Márkaṇḍeya was *this* which we have uttered to thee. *It is* sacred, pure, *and* grants length of life ; *it* bestows righteousness, love, wealth and final emancipation
- 4 from existence; it delivers immediately from all sin those who read *it*, those who hear *it*.
- 5 And the very four questions indeed, which thou didst put to us at the very first—the conversation between the father and son, and the creation by the Self-existent One, and the administra-
- 6 tions§ of the Manus, and the exploits of the kings, O muni, this we have declared to thee. What now dost thou wish to hear ? After hearing or reading || all these *matters* in assem-

\* Dama's descendants are given in the Vishṇu Pur. IV. i. His son was Rājya-varḍhana, who is the subject of cantos cix and cx, above.

† He and the Birds reappear from canto xlv. The text is *Jaimineyam*, 'Having spoken thus to Jaimineya ;' but the Birds have been relating to Jaimini what Márkaṇḍeya had before told to Krauṣṭuki, and this reading is insuitable unless Jaimineya be taken as Krauṣṭuki's patronymic; and that it cannot be, for Krauṣṭuki's patronymic is said to have been Bháguri, see pp. 436 and 445. I have ventured therefore to read *Jaimineya* instead.

‡ *Anádi-siddham*. The Calcutta Appendix reads *anímá-siddham*, "perfect in minuteness."

§ *Sthiti*; or "positions."

|| The Calcutta reading *paṣhitrá* appears preferable to *paṣhate*.

7 blies, a man discarding all sins may reach absorption into Brahman at the end.\*

There† are eighteen Purāṇas which the Forefather spoke.  
 8 Now the seventh of them is to be known as the very famous  
 Márkaṇḍeya Purāṇa.‡ They are the Bráhma, the Pádma, and  
 9 the Vaishṇava, the Śaiva and the Bhágavata, and also the Nára-  
 díya besides, and the Márkaṇḍeya as seventh, the Ágneya which  
 was declared the eighth, and the Bhavishya ninth, the Brahma-  
 10 vaivarta tenth, the Laiṅga known as the eleventh, Váráha de-  
 11 clared the twelfth, the Skánda next as thirteenth, and the  
 Vámana fourteenth, and the Kaurma fifteenth, and the Mátśya,  
 and the Gáruḍa and next the Brahmáṇḍa.

12 He who may read the titles of the eighteen Purāṇas, *who*  
 repeats § them at the three periods of the day continually,  
 may obtain the result of a horse-sacrifice.

13 Both creation and secondary creation, genealogy and the  
 manvantaras and the exploits in the genealogies constitute a  
 Purāṇa with the five characteristics.||

14 This Purāṇa which contains the four questions is indeed of  
 the highest quality. Now when it is heard, sin committed in  
 15 hundreds of ten millions of ages perishes. Brahmanicide and  
 other sins, and other deeds that are vile, all those perish there-  
 16 by, like grass smitten by the blast. The merit that is gained  
 by making gifts at Pushkara¶ accrues from hearing this  
 Purāṇa; and a man attains to a benefit superior to all the Vedas  
 17 by completely acquiring this. A man should worship him who  
 may cause it to be heard, as he worships the divine Fore-

\* The Calcutta Appendix here introduces Jaimini's reply which is at page 688; and puts what follows here regarding the Purāṇas as a separate pronouncement by Brahmá.

† The Calcutta Appendix puts all that follows down to verse 30, and also the concluding two verses, into the mouth of Brahmá, and places it at the very end.

‡ This sentence is omitted from the Calcutta Appendix.

§ For *japato* read *japate*.

|| This verse and the next are not in the Calcutta Appendix.

¶ See p. 308, note ||.

- father, \*with perfumes and flowers and with *gifts of clothing*  
 18 and with gratifications to bráhmans. And kings should give  
 according to their ability villages and other lands and car-  
 riages.† After hearing all this Puráṇa, which is augmented  
 with the objects of the Veda *and* which is the sole abode of  
 the Dharma-śástras, *a man* may obtain every object.‡ After  
 19 hearing the entire Puráṇa, let a wise man do full reverence to  
 Vyása for the sake of the benefits of righteousness, wealth, love  
 and final emancipation from existence as *therein* declared. Let  
 20 him give his spiritual preceptor a cow, accompanied with gold,  
 clothing and ornaments. In order to gain the benefits *that come*  
 from hearing it let him gratify his spiritual preceptor with gifts.  
 21 He who, without paying reverence to the man who reads  
*the Puráṇa* out, hears a single verse, acquires no merit; verily  
 22 he is known as a Scripture-thief. § Not him do the gods  
 gladden, nor the Pitṛis, with sons; and they desire not || the  
 śraddha given *by him* nor the benefit *gained* by bathing at  
 23 sacred places of pilgrimage. He incurs the censure of a Scrip-  
 ture-thief in an assembly of good men. Wise men must not  
 24 listen to this scripture with contempt; but when *this* noble  
 scripture is contemned as it is being read by sages, ¶ *the offender*  
 becomes dumb; he is born as a fool in seven births.  
 25 Now he, who after hearing *this* seventh Puráṇa may  
 further do reverence to it, being delivered from all sin verily  
 26 purifies his own family. The purified *man* goes without doubt  
 to Viṣṇu's eternal world; never shall he falling therefrom  
 27 become a man again.\*\* By the very hearing of *this* Puráṇa  
*a man* may obtain supreme union with the universal soul.

\* The Calcutta Appendix reads *śrúyeta pájayed śhástram*, "let him hear and reverence *this śástra*."

† The Calcutta Appendix reads instead—"And he should give according to his ability royal carriages and other vehicles."

‡ This verse and the next two are not in the Calcutta Appendix.

§ *Śástra-śoraḥ*.

|| *Ca neddhanti* of the Calcutta Appendix is better than *tatheddhanti*.

¶ *Sádhubhiḥ*.

\*\* The Calcutta Appendix reads—"Moreover until seven Manus *are gone*,

- 28 No gift should be made to an atheist, to one fallen from his caste, to a contemner of the Vedas, to one who contemns religious preceptors and twice-born men, or moreover to one who has broken his vows, to one who contemns his parents, to  
 29 one who contemns the Vedas, Śāstras and other *scriptures*, or to one who infringes the rules of good breeding, or indeed to one who is passionate towards his caste-folk. To these *men* certainly no gift must be made, even when one's life is at its last gasp.
- 30 If entirely through covetousness or infatuation or fear one should read *this Purāṇa* or cause it to be read, he may assuredly go to hell.

Mārkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 31 All this story is characterized by righteousness, and bestows heaven and final emancipation from existence. Who hears it  
 32 or may read it, his earnest endeavour is achieved ; he is never affected by the pain of mental or bodily sickness ; he is delivered from bráhmicide and other sins, there is no doubt  
 33 of this. Good *men* become *his* kindly \* friends, affectionate in mind. No enemies nor robbers will ever arise *against him*.  
 34 Aspiring to what is good, † and eating savoury food, he perishes not with famines ; *nor* with sins touching others' wives or others' property, or with injury to others or with  
 35 such like crimes ; and he is continually freed from many pains, O best of dvijas. Success, affluence, memory, peace, good fortune, nourishment, and contentment—*may each of these*  
 36 be his continually, who hears this story, O bráhmaṇ !. The man who hears the whole of this Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa is not to be lamented ; nor is he indeed to be lamented who recites *this* poetical work properly, O dvija. Endowed with perfection that is purified by knowledge of religious devotion, ‡ and surrounded even in Svarga and the other worlds by Indra

he may, after enjoying delights according to his wishes, and after enjoying the very earth, attain to supreme union with the universal soul."

\* *Su-jana* of the Calcutta Appendix is better than *sva-jana*.

† *Sad-artha* ; or perhaps " being in good circumstances " ?

‡ Or " possessing pure success in the knowledge of religious devotion."

and other gods and other *heavenly beings*, he is always revered  
 37 in Svarga. And after hearing this Purāṇa, which is replete  
 with knowledge and intelligence, being mounted in a choice  
 heavenly car he is magnified in Svarga.

38 And the number of the syllables in the Purāṇa has been  
 declared by him who is intelligent in exactitude. There are  
 39 of verses six thousands and eight hundreds also, thereto are  
 added eighty-nine verses *and* eleven—pronounced of yore by  
 the wise muni Mārkaṇḍeya.

Jaimini spoke :

40 In India there was not *that* which burst asunder my doubts,  
 O ye twice-born ;\* ye, sirs, have accomplished that which no  
 41 one *else* now will do. Ye have attained long life, are good,†  
 and are clever in knowledge and intelligence. And thus let  
 there be unerring intelligence in the application of the  
 42 Sāṅkhya doctrine *to the knowledge of spirit* ! Let evil-minded-  
 ness *that springs* from pain wrought by a father's curse depart  
 from you !"‡ After speaking this much the muni went to  
 his own hermitage, pondering over the speech uttered by the  
 Birds, which was sublimely noble.

End of the Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa.

---

\* The Calcutta Appendix reads more bluntly, "In India twice-born  
*brahmans* have lost the power of bursting asunder perplexities and doubts."

† For *santu* of the Bombay and Poona editions read *santaḥ* with the  
 Calcutta Appendix.

‡ *Vyapaitu vaḥ*. See pages 13-16.

## DIFFERENT ENDING

*according to the Calcutta Edition.*

## CANTO CXXXVI.\*

*Conclusion.**The story of Dania breaks off—A high encomium is passed upon this Purāṇa.*

Mārkaṇḍeya spoke :

- 1 When king Dama had spoken thus, his father's enemy fled.  
 "My father was an ascetic ; and let *any* other man practise  
 great austerities fearlessly." Dama said nothing to them when  
 he saw them intent on flight.

Mārkaṇḍeya spoke : †

- 2 All this story is characterized by righteousness, *and* bestows  
 heaven and final emancipation from existence. Who hears  
 it &c.

\* Canto cxxxvii in the Calcutta edition.

† Here the narrative ends abruptly ; and what follows is the same as  
 verses 31 to 37 on page 687 above. The Purāṇa ends with them according to  
 the Calcutta edition.



## NOTE TO THE INDEX.

The system of transliteration followed in this translation is one that was in use formerly, yet has not been quite uniform. The transliterations of Sanskrit words contained in this Index have been revised and are brought into agreement with the system that is now approved by the Asiatic Society of Bengal and the Royal Asiatic Society. Sanskrit words are printed in the Roman character; all other words are put in italics, whether vernacular or English, Latin or Greek, and the spelling of vernacular words is generally that in common use.

The locality of geographical names is indicated by the letters M (Madhya-desa), C (Central India), and N., S., E., W., NE., NW., SE., and SW. which explain themselves.

## Abbreviations used.

<i>aps.</i> Apsaras.	<i>k.</i> king.
<i>b.</i> brāhman.	<i>ks.</i> ksatriya.
<i>bd.</i> bird.	<i>l.</i> lake.
<i>c.</i> country.	<i>m.</i> man.
<i>cer.</i> cereal.	<i>mt.</i> mountain.
<i>ct.</i> constellation, asterism.	<i>mts.</i> mountain-range.
<i>d.</i> demon (Daitya, Dānava, Asura, Rākṣasa).	<i>p.</i> people.
<i>dg.</i> demi-god, celestial being.	<i>pat.</i> patronymic.
<i>dt.</i> district.	<i>pf.</i> personification.
<i>dyn.</i> dynasty.	<i>pl.</i> place.
<i>f.</i> family.	<i>pr.</i> prince.
<i>f.d.</i> female demon.	<i>prs.</i> princess.
<i>for.</i> forest.	<i>ps.</i> person.
<i>g.</i> god.	<i>pt.</i> plant.
<i>gb.</i> goblin.	<i>q.</i> queen.
<i>gdh.</i> gandharva.	<i>r.</i> river.
<i>gr.</i> grass.	<i>rs.</i> ṛṣi.
<i>gs.</i> goddess.	<i>sf.</i> sacrifice.
<i>h.</i> hill.	<i>t.</i> town, city.
<i>hb.</i> herb.	<i>ti.</i> tīrtha, place of pilgrimage.
<i>isl.</i> island.	<i>tr.</i> tree.
	<i>w.</i> woman.

## INDEX.

- Abhi-jit *est.* 170.  
 Ābhīra *p.* NW, M. 312-314.  
 Ābhīra *p.* S. 334, 362.  
 Abhiṣaha *p.* NW ? 382.  
 Abhiṣāra *c.* NW. 382.  
 Abhiṣārī *t.* NW. 382.  
 Ābilvaka *pt.* 25.  
 Ābu *mt.* W. 289, 340.  
 Ācāra, *see* Custom.  
*Acridotheres* *bd.* 49, 58.  
 Āḍhaka, -kī *pt.* 244, 245.  
 Āḍhakya *p.* S. 334.  
 Adhama-kairāta *p.* N. 369, 379.  
 A-dharma *pfn.* 247, 250.  
 Adhrāraka ? *p.* E. 324.  
 Āḍi *bd.* 58.  
 Aditi *gs.* 550-552, 559, 560, 563-565.  
 Āditya *g.* 168, 461, 555, 582, 586.  
 Adri *d.* 425.  
 Adriṣā *r.* 296.  
*Egle* *tr.*, *see* Bilva.  
*Aganoma* *pt.*, *see* Mālātī.  
 Agastya *rs.* 270, 293, 601-603, 645, 646.  
 Āgastya *rs.* 603.  
 Ages, the Four, 32, 218, 224, 226, 347, 387, 437.  
 Āgneya *p.* N. 378.  
 Agni *g.* 10, 23, 152, 247, 249, 270, 387, 398, 399, 445, 447, 460, 473, 474, 489, 495, 512, 524, 532, 535, 539-548, 561, 562, 582, 621.  
 Agni *rs.* 442.  
 Agnīdhra *k.* 271-274.  
 Agnījya ? *p.* N. 378.  
 Agniṣvāta *pitrs.* 270, 533.  
 Āgrahāyaṇī *est.* 355.  
 Ahalyā *b. w.* 22.  
 Ahaṅkāra 190, 217, 220-223.  
 Ahicchatra *c.* M. 353, 378.  
 Ahicchatrā *t.* M. 353.  
 Ahīr *p.*, *see* Ābhīra.  
 Ahmadnagar *t.* W. 289.  
 Āhuka *p.* W. 324.  
 Aila *k.* 146.  
 Ailika ? *p.* SE. 360.  
 Aindra *pl.* 246.  
 Aindra *est.* 374.  
 Air 217, 221, 222.  
 Airāvata *eleph.* 474, 494, 559.  
 Aigika ? *p.* S. 334.  
 Aja (=Sun) 562, 572.  
 Ajamīdha *k.* 353.  
 Ajanta *h.* W. 288.  
 Ajaras *rs.* 269.  
 Ājyapa *pitrs.* 533.  
 Akanin *p.* C ? 363.  
 Akasines *r.* NW. 291.  
 Ākrīmī, village, 242.  
 Alakanandā *r.* N. 281.  
 Alarka *k.* 93-109, 142-145, 148, 151, 155, 170, 171, 180, 186-190, 194, 198-202, 207, 210-216.  
 Alāvu *pt.* 118, 166.  
 Ali, Āli *dg.* 407.  
 Alimadra ? *p.* N. 322.  
 Allahabad *t.* 310.  
 Almond *tr.* 26.  
 Almora *t.* N. 288, 316.  
 Alme 203, 685-687.  
 Alstonia *tr.* 27.  
 Alūka ? *p.* NW. 375.  
 Alwar *dt.* M. 288, 307.  
 Āmalaka *tr.* 25, 26.  
 Amara-kauṭaka *mt.* C. 298, 331, 334.  
 Amaravati *r.* S. 304.  
 Amarāvati *t.* S. 337.  
 Ambā, *see* Ambikā.  
 Ambāla *t.* and *p.* N. 321, 347, 379.  
 Ambārīṣa *k.* 462.  
 Ambaṣṭha *p.* NW. 323, 333, 377-380.  
 Ambhodhi *d.* 262.  
 Ambikā *gs.* 476-482, 487, 488, 494, 498, 502, 507-511, 516.  
 Ambuja *pt.* 29.  
 Ambupāf.d. 262.  
 Amita *gods.* 465.  
 Amitābha *k.* 449.

- Amitābha gods, 464.  
*Amla tr.* see *Āmalaka*.  
*Amla-vetasa pt.* 25.  
*Amoghā r.* NW. 389.  
*Amra tr.* see *Amrataka*.  
*Amrataka tr.* 23.  
*Āmra-vana for.* W. p. 600.  
*Āmūrtarajas k.* 328.  
*Āmūrtarayas k.* 329.  
*Anagha rs.* 270.  
*Anala d.* 262.  
*Anamitra k.* 450.  
*Ānanda k. and c.* 273.  
*Ānanda k.* 451-453.  
*Ānanda p.* NE. 383.  
*Ānandinī r.* 294.  
*Ananta g.* 482.  
*Ananta (=Śeṣa),* 609.  
*An-aranya k.* 551.  
*Ānarta k.* 368.  
*Ānarta c. and p.* 289, 340, 344, 352, 368, 371, 463.  
*Anas bd.* 30.  
*Anasūyā v.* 91, 95-99, 249, 269.  
*Anāyus* 146.  
*Andha p.* S. 337.  
*Andhaka p.* W. 309, 324, 336, 337.  
*Andhaka k.* 352.  
*Andhaka d.* 479.  
*Andha-tāmisra hell,* 152.  
*Andhra p.* SE. 324, 337, 361, 367.  
*Andhīrāvāka p.* 324.  
*Andropogon gr.* 79.  
*Āṅga k.* 325.  
*Āṅga p. and c.* E. 324-329, 331, 369, 464, 655.  
*Āṅga k p.* 146.  
*Āṅga p.* N. 373.  
*Āṅga-dhṛṣṭ d.* 257, 258, 263.  
*Āṅga-loka pl.* W. 373.  
*Āṅgataka p.* W. 373.  
*Ānger (Krodha),* 15, 16, 250.  
*Āṅgiras rs.* 108, 246, 249, 269, 435, 462, 539, 625, 653, 654.  
*Āṅgiras demi-gods,* 461, 462.  
*Āṅgīrasa f.* 588, 653.  
*Anibhā prs.* 627.  
*Anīkaṭa p.* W. 338.  
*Anila d.* 262.  
*Animadra p.* N. 322.  
*Añjana mt.* NW. 279.  
*Añjana mt.* E. 356.  
*Añjanābha mt.* 356.  
*Annadāraka p.* NE. 383.  
*Anuaja p.* C. 344.  
*Anser bd.* 30, 409, 410.  
*Ant,* 147, 170, 206, 210.  
*Antaḥ-sīlā, -sīrā r.* E p. 301.  
*Antar-dvīpa p.* N. 378.  
*Antar-giri dt.* N. 325, 328.  
*Antar-giri p.* E. 325.  
*Antargīrya p.* E. 301, 324, 325.  
*Antelope* 31, 164, 181.  
*Anthocephalus tr.* 25.  
*Antra-sīlā r.* E p. 301.  
*Antyāgīrā p.* E p. 301.  
*Āpu cer.* 165, 244, 245.  
*Anugraha,* 228, 231.  
*Anuhrāda pr.* 146.  
*Anumati pfn.* 178.  
*Ānūpa c.* W. 344, 371.  
*Anurādhā cst.* 169, 370.  
*Anuvinda k.* 345.  
*Āpagā r.* M. 293.  
*Āpagā r.* NW. 316.  
*Āpukāra d.* 267.  
*Āpāna, vital air,* 203.  
*Āpara p.* 313, 372.  
*Āpara-cīna p.* NE. 319.  
*Āpara-matsya p.* M. 309.  
*Āpara-nandā r.* N. 369, 383.  
*Āparānta p.* W. 313, 371.  
*Āparāntika p.* W. 371, 372.  
*Āparīta p.* NW. 313.  
*Āpatha p.* N. 346.  
*Āpūmvāna rs.* 656.  
*Āpratiṣṭha pl.* 71, 73.  
*Āpsaras,* 2-8, 24, 68, 78, 236, 391, 393, 413, 427, 481, 511, 538, 559, 571, 646, 647.  
*Āpyāyāni,* 70.  
*Arachnechthra bd.* 80.  
*Arand r.* C. 296.  
*Āraṭṭa c. and p.* NW. 311.  
*Aravalli mts.* 286, 289, 312, 338, 340, 349, 369.  
*Ārbuda mt.* W. 289, 340.  
*Ārbuda p.* W. 340.  
*Ārcot dt.* S. 332.  
*Ārdana p.* N. 378.  
*Ārdea bd.* 58.  
*Ārdeola bd.* 59, 86.  
*Ārdha-hārī f.d.* 265.  
*Ārdrā cst.* 169, 358.  
*Argha, Arghya offering,* 18, 88.

- 97, 156, 161, 162, 423-429, 446,  
*Argiga* ? p. W P 368. [581, 633.  
*Ari-mardana* pr. 143.  
*Ariṣṭa* k. see *Nābhāgariṣṭa*.  
*Ariṣṭanemi* dg. 6.  
*Arjuna* (*Kārtavīrya*) k. 101, 106-  
 108, 310, 333, 344, 351, 371, 656.  
*Arjuna* (*Pāṇḍava*) k. 8, 23, 24,  
 316, 322, 359, 363, 379, 384, 629.  
*Arka-liṅga* p. M. 308.  
*Arrah* t. M. 382.  
*Ārṣṭiṣeṇa* k. and rs. 669, 670.  
*Artha-kāraka* k. and c. 273.  
*Artocarpus* tr. 25.  
*Arur* pt. 178.  
*Aruṇa* g. 559.  
*Aruṇa* mt. N. 351, 382.  
*Aruṇa* d. 518.  
*Aruṇākṣa* d. 518.  
*Aruṇāspada* t. N. 392, 395.  
*Arundhatī* star, 207.  
*Arūpa* ? p. C P 344.  
*A-rūpā* f.d. 267.  
*Arvavira* rs. 270.  
*Ārya* race, 290.  
*Ārya*, gods, 454.  
*Aryaman* g. 153, 545, 582.  
*Āśādhā* cst. 170, 374, 376.  
*Asiknī* r. NW. 291.  
*Asi-loman* d. 476, 480  
*Asi-patra* for. 54, 71-74, 83.  
*Asleṣā* cst. 169, 361.  
*Āsmaka* p. M. 352.  
*Āsmaka* p. S. 336.  
*Āsmaka* k. 336.  
*Āsmaka*, p. S. 336.  
*Āsmakī* g. 337.  
*Asoka* tr. 25, 26, 364.  
*Asparagus* pt. 165.  
*Aspasii* p. NW. 374.  
*Āśrama* 148-151, 246.  
*Ass*, 83-85, 209, 235, 255.  
*Assakani* p. NW. 374.  
*Assam*, 382, 411.  
*Asta-giri* mt. 371.  
*Asta-parvata* mt. 371.  
*Asterisms*, 168-170.  
*Astrologer*, 580, 626, 630, 631.  
*Asura* d. 20-23, 104, 115, 120, 152,  
 201, 232, 233, 236, 328, 383, 416,  
 469-484, 494-512, 515-519, 524,  
 531, 533, 546, 552, 558, 560, 565,  
 605, 611, 648, 650, 677, 679.  
*Āśvaka* p. NW. 307, 374.  
*Āśvakālanata* p. NW. 374.  
*Āśva-keśa* p. W P 374.  
*Āśva-kūṭa* p. M. 307.  
*Āśva-mukha* p. W. and N. 368,  
 378, 381.  
*vātaka* p. M. 307.  
*Āśvatara* k. 109, 125, 127, 130, 132,  
 135-139.  
*Āśvattha* tr. 277.  
*Āśvatthāman* b. 464.  
*Āśvinī* cst. 170, 384.  
*Āśvins* g. 22, 55, 109, 392, 460, 461,  
 574-576, 626.  
*Āṭavi* t. S. 334.  
*Ātava* p. S. 334.  
*Atharva* Veda, 236, 404, 554.  
*Atharva* p. M. 308.  
*Ati-nāman* rs. 454.  
*Ati-rātra* b. 426.  
*Atithi* 153.  
*Ati-vibhūti* k. 623.  
*Atom* 128.  
*Atrai* r. E. 320.  
*Ātreya* p. N. 320, 347.  
*Ātreya* r. E. 320.  
*Atri* rs. 95, 96, 99, 102, 151, 154,  
 246, 249, 269, 320, 462, 570, 621.  
*Atri* p., see *Ātreya*.  
*Ātta-khaṇḍika* ? p. NW. 314.  
*Audumbara* p. M. P 355.  
*Aukhāvana* p. S. P 366.  
*Aupdrāmāsa* p. M. P 342.  
*Aupadha* p. N. 322.  
*Aurangābād* t. W. 288.  
*Aurva* rs. 656, 658.  
*Auttama*, *Manu* and *manvantara*,  
 271, 419, 425, 429, 432, 435-437,  
 549.  
*Auttāna*, see *Auttama*.  
*Auttānapādi* k. 421.  
*Āvāhana* offering, 156.  
*Avanta* ? p. M. 308.  
*Avanti* r. M. 295.  
*Avanti* c. M. 295, 333, 340-345,  
 363, 371.  
*Avantya* p. M. 340.  
*Avara* p. W. 372.  
*Avarpī* r. M. 295.  
*Averrhoa* tr. 24.  
*Avikṣi* { k. 625, 628, 631,  
                     634-642, 645-  
*Avikṣit*, -ta { 654, 658-664.

- Avikṣit (son of Kuru) pr.* 652.  
*Āvikṣita pat.* 652, 653.  
*Aya d.* 636.  
*Ayak r.* NW. 316.  
*Āyati gs.* 269.  
*Ayodhyā t.* 57, 58, 308, 352, 353, 371.  
*Āyur-Veda,* 404-406.
- Babhru b.* 591.  
*Babhru k.* 669.  
*Babhru (Siva) g.* 515.  
*Babhru k.* 420.  
*Bābhravya b.* 591.  
*Bābhravya, b.* 598.  
*Bactriane c.* N. 311.  
*Badām tr.* 26.  
*Badara tr.* 27.  
*Baḍavā ti.* NW. 368.  
*Baḍavā r. S. P.* 368.  
*Baḍavā-mukha p.* N. 368, 378, 381.  
*Badhna p.* N. 378.  
*Bag, Baglā, bd.* 58, 59.  
*Baheṛa tr.* 26.  
*Bāhika p.* NW. 311, 313, 318.  
*Bāhlika p., see Vāhlika.*  
*Bāhu k.* 371.  
*Bāhubādha p.* NW. 317, 375.  
*Bahubhadra p.* NW. 317.  
*Bāhudā r. M.* 291, 354, 383.  
*Bāhudā r. S.* 291.  
*Bahulā q.* 420.  
*Bāhya p. M. P.* 309.  
*Baiḍhāra h. M.* 286.  
*Baidyanāth h. E.* 287, 356.  
*Baijnāth, see Baidyanāth.*  
*Bairāt t. M.* 288, 307.  
*Bak bd.* 58.  
*Bakul tr. see Vakula.*  
*Bala d. 4,* 611.  
*Bāla p.* NW. 313, 373.  
*Bala-bandhu k.* 449.  
*Bālābhadrā p.* NW. 317.  
*Bala-deva, see Bala-Rāma.*  
*Bāla-graha d.* 520.  
*Bālāka bd.* 86.  
*Bālāka pr.* 610.  
*Bālākā r. C. P.* 300, 301.  
*Bālākā r. or t. N.* 375.  
*Balakāśva k.* 623.  
*Bālakhilya ṛṣis,* 102, 270, 570.  
*Bala-Rāma k. 3,* 19, 23, 24, 31.  
*Balāśva k.* 623-625.  
*Balasor dt. E.* 327.
- Bālhika p., see Vāhlika.*  
*Bali offering, 151-153, 178, 253, 254,*  
*259-261, 265, 519.*  
*Bali k. 146 (325).*  
*Bali dg.* 461, 465.  
*Bālīka p.* NW. 375.  
*Balin k.* 627.  
*Balin pr.* 610.  
*Bālin k.* 333.  
*Bālīna k.* 329.  
*Balkh c. N.* 311.  
*Bālu-vāhinī r. M. P.* 298.  
*Bālyā P pl.* NW. 315.  
*Banās r. M.* 286, 294.  
*Banavāsi t. S.* 364.  
*Banda t. M.* 359.  
*Bandelkhand dt. M.* 288, 336, 354,  
*359.*  
*Bandhanā r. M. P.* 294.  
*Baṅga p. see Vaṅga.*  
*Banjāri p. S.* 333.  
*Bankura dt. E.* 327.  
*Bannu dt. NW.* 372.  
*Bansdharā r. SE.* 305.  
*Banthawa h. E.* 287.  
*Banyan tr.* 277, 551.  
*Baradā hills, W.* 289.  
*Barākar r. E.* 301.  
*Barbara p. N.* 319.  
*Bardhwān t. and dt.* 326, 359.  
*Barhiṣad pitṛs,* 270, 533.  
*Bark clothing, 35, 42, 150, 181.*  
*Barley 84, 155, 161, 162, 165, 181,*  
*203, 240, 244, 245.*  
*Baroda t. W.* 340.  
*Barugasa t. W.* 339.  
*Barvara p. N.* 319.  
*Bassein t. W.* 338.  
*Bathan-i h. E.* 287.  
*Bauhinia tr.* 27, 165.  
*Bean pt.* 84.  
*Bear, 208.*  
*Bees, 36, 147.*  
*Begun pt.* 167.  
*Bel tr.* 25, 425.  
*Bela pt.* 426.  
*Belgaum t. S.* 337.  
*Bellary t. S.* 337.  
*Bel-phūl pt., see Mallikā.*  
*Benāres t. 38, 46, 307, 308, 360, 367,*  
*371, 654; see Kāśī and Vārāṇasī.*  
*Bengal, 326, 328, 383.*  
*Beni-Israel p. W.* 339.  
*Ber tr., see Jujube.*

- Berār c.* 284, 286, 305, 335.  
*Besagh t.* M. 329.  
*Bes-nagar t.* M. 343.  
*Betwa r.* M. 295, 343.  
*Bhadra p.* M. 309.  
*Bhadra r.* S. 303.  
*Bhadrā r.* NE. 388.  
*Bhadrā q.* 450.  
*Bhadra-dvīpa isl.* S. p. 390  
*Bhadra-gaura h.* E. 357.  
*Bhadra-kāli p.* NW. 316.  
*Bhadra-kālī gs.* 479, 488, 515.  
*Bhadra-kāra p.* M. 309.  
*Bhādrapadā cst.* 381.  
*Bhadra-somā r.* N. 389.  
*Bhadra-sreṇya k.* 371.  
*Bhadrāsava k.* and *c.* NE. 274, 276, 278, 280, 281, 387, 388.  
*Bhagadatta k.* 8, 9, 319, 328.  
*Bhāgalpur t.* and *dt.* E. 325, 326.  
*Bhagīratha k.* 280, 281, 551.  
*Bhāguri pat.* 436, 445, 684.  
*Bhājamāna k.* 677.  
*Bhālātaka tr.* 25.  
*Bhāminī gdh.* 646.  
*Bhananda-na k.* 597-599, 604, 607-610.  
*Bhānukacchra p.* W. 339.  
*Bharadvāja rs.* 31, 310, 320, 435, 462.  
*Bharadvāja } p.* N. 320, 347.  
*Bhāradvāja }*  
*Bharapī cst.* 170, 384.  
*Bharata k.* 271, 274.  
*Bharata p.* M. p. 371.  
*Bhārata c.* 274, 278, 280, 282, 283, 347-349, 387, 688.  
*Bhārga k.* 328.  
*Bhārga p.* E. 328.  
*Bhārga-bhāmi dt.* E. 328.  
*Bhārgava f.* 310, 327, 368, 586, 650, 652, 656, 660, 663.  
*Bhārgava p.* E. 327.  
*Bhārgava k.* 328.  
*Bharuch t.* W. 339.  
*Bhautya, Manu,* 271, 539, 546-550.  
*Bhava g.* 268, 269.  
*Bhava rs.* 249.  
*Bhavācala mt.* N. 278.  
*Bhāvinī pra.* 645, 647, 658, 659, 664.  
*Bhavya k.* 272, 273.  
*Bhavya tr.* 24.  
*Bhavya gods.* 454.  
*Bhela tr.* 25.  
*Bhilsa t.* M. 295, 343.  
*Bhīma (Pāṇḍava) k.* 23, 322, 342, 359.  
*Bhīma (Yādava) k.* 352.  
*Bhīma k.* 627.  
*Bhīma dg.* 268.  
*Bhīma r.* S. 289, 302, 364.  
*Bhīmā gs.* 518.  
*Bhīma-rakṣī r.* S. 302.  
*Bhīmarathā, -thī, r.* S. 302.  
*Bhīrukaccha p.* W. 339.  
*Bhīṣma k.* 9, 350, 629.  
*Bhīṣmaka k.* 336.  
*Bhoga-prastha p.* N. 319, 377.  
*Bhoga-vardhana p.* S. 337.  
*Bhoja f.* 336, 342.  
*Bhoja p.* W. 342, 371.  
*Bhoja-nagara t.* NW. p. 377.  
*Bhoja-prastha p.* t. NW. p. 377.  
*Bhojya p.* C. p. 342.  
*Bhopāl dt.* C. 286.  
*Bhrāmapī gb.* 257, 261, 266.  
*Bhrāmārī gs.* 518.  
*Bhr̥gu rs.* 19, 31, 63, 219, 224, 246, 249, 269, 310, 462, 595, 600-602, 650, 656.  
*Bhr̥gu demi-gods.* 461, 462.  
*Bhr̥gu-bhāmi dt.* E. p. 328.  
*Bhr̥gu-kaccha p.* W. 339, 362.  
*Bhr̥nga-rāja bd.* 28.  
*Bhūbaneswar t.* E. 356.  
*Bhūr* 201, 206, 218, 227, 229, 462, 552.  
*Bhūta gb.* 46, 47.  
*Bhūti rs.* 539, 540, 546, 548.  
*Bhūtilaya pl.* NW. 380.  
*Bhūti-yuvaka p.* N. 380.  
*Bhuvas* 206, 227, 261, 552.  
*Bias r.* NW. 291, 292, 311, 315, 318, 321, 347, 382.  
*Bias r.* M. 297.  
*Bignonia tr.* 27.  
*Bihār c.* 286, 325, 329, 382.  
*Bilva tr.* 25, 425.  
*Bīrbhūm dt.* E. 327.  
*Birds, The,* 1-6, 9-12, 16-21, 32, 34-45, 55-65, 216-218, 684, 688.  
*Blue water-lily,* 29, 30, 104, 115.  
*Boar,* 85, 114, 117, 164, 166, 181, 184, 278, 389, 502-504, 514.  
*Bodha p.* M. 309.  
*Bodha b.* 452.  
*Bodhi p.* M. 309.  
*Body,* 15, 23, 66-70, 190.

- Bombac tr.* 82.  
*Borassus tr.* 27.  
*Brahmā g.* 5, 17, 20, 59, 61, 76, 95, 98, 99, 112, 127, 129, 153, 172, 178, 179, 206, 217-220, 223-238, 244-251, 256, 258, 268, 270, 277, 347, 387, 449, 453, 459, 465, 470-474, 482, 494, 502, 509, 521, 524, 529, 530, 535, 536, 545, 550-562, 570, 582, 588, 685.  
*Brahma-cārin*, 149, 160.  
*Brahma-datta k.* 350.  
*Brahma-kṣetra dt.* 290.  
*Brahma-loka* 89.  
*Brahma-mitra rs.* 404.  
*Brahman g.* 55, 92, 128, 129, 192, 193, 196, 199-202, 205, 206, 210, 213, 251, 535, 588, 685; *see* Supreme Soul.  
*Brāhman-hood*, 14, 43, 596.  
*Brahmāpī gs.* 502, 504, 509, 513.  
*Brahmāpī r.* E. 301.  
*Brāhmanī r.* E. 301.  
*Brahmanicide*, 3, 19, 22, 23, 31, 57, 83, 616, 661, 685, 687.  
*Brāhman's duties*, 148.  
*Brahma-pura mt.* N. 383.  
*Brahma-puraka p.* NE. 382, 383.  
*Brahma-putra r.* NE. 293, 328, 357, 370.  
*Brahmarṣi dt.* M. 307.  
*Brahmāvarta dt.* M. 290, 292, 349 377.  
*Brahminy Duck*, 30.  
*Brahmottara p.* E. 327.  
*Braj dt.* M. 309.  
*Brūjāl pt.* 167.  
*Broach t.* W. 339.  
*Buddha*, 350.  
*Buddhi (Intelligence)*, 190, 221, 249.  
*Buddhist*, 354, 362, 367.  
*Budha dg.* 269, 589, 590.  
*Budh Gayā t.* M. 297.  
*Buffalo* 47, 166-168, 255.  
*Bull*, 255, 256.  
*Buphus bd.* 59.  
*Burdwān, see* Bardhwan.  
*Burning-ground*, 38, 39, 46-48, 51, 53, 177, 197, 264.  
*Buṭ pt.* 84.  
*Butea tr.* 28.  
*Bytarni r.* E. 300, 334.  
*Oaccabis bd.* 28, 29.  
*Cāhuku ? p.* N. 324.  
*Caitra k.* 415, 466.  
*Caitra rs.* 442.  
*Caitra pr.* 452, 453.  
*Caitraratha for.* 278, 281.  
*Ca'anus pt.* 245.  
*Čakora bd.* 28, 29.  
*Čakra-muṇja mt.* N. 278.  
*Čakravāka bd.* 30 389, 399, 409 411.  
*Čakrāvartā r.* NE. 388.  
*Čakṣu r.* N. 323.  
*Čākṣuṣa*, Manu and manvantara, 271, 449, 450, 453, 454, 549.  
*Čakṣuṣmatī r.* N. ? 293.  
*Čalicut t.* S. 331, 338.  
*Čālimadra ? p.* N. 322.  
*Čalingapatam t.* SE. 305.  
*Čāmara d.* 476, 479.  
*Čamel*, 166, 209, 235, 258.  
*Campa k.* 325.  
*Campā t.* E. 325.  
*Campaka tr.* 26, 326, 364. [524.  
*Čāmuṇḍā gs.* 499, 505, 506, 515,  
*Čaṇa pt.* 84.  
*Čanarese p.* S. 363.  
*Čaṇḍa d.* 494, 495, 497-501.  
*Čaṇḍa pr.* 610.  
*Čaṇḍakhāra p.* NW. 374.  
*Čaṇḍāla caste*, 38, 44-47, 53, 54, 59, 68, 85, 87, 100, 104, 159, 182, 184, 257, 259, 266, 267.  
*Candanā r.* M. ? 294.  
*Čaṇḍikā gs.* 465, 473, 476, 480-482, 487, 488, 499-511, 516, 521-523.  
*Candrabhāgā r.* NW. 291.  
*Candrabhāgā r.* N. ? 291.  
*Candra-dvīpa isl.* S. ? 390.  
*Candra-kānta mts.* N. 389.  
*Candra-vatsa p.* E. ? 357.  
*Candrāyana penance*, 564.  
*Candresvara p.* E. 357.  
*Cānīkaṭa ? p.* W. 335.  
*Cānimadra ? p.* N. 322.  
*Čannibalism* 357, 679, 683.  
*Čarissa tr.* 25.  
*Čarmakhaṇḍika p.* N. 314, 374.  
*Čarma-maṇḍala p.* N. 314.  
*Čarmaṇ-vatī r.* M. 294, 363.  
*Čarma-paṭṭa t.* S. 365.  
*Čarpophaga bd.* 28.  
*Čarpopogon pt.* 245.  
*Čarroī pt.* 165.  
*Čāru-dharman k.* 671.

- Cāru-karman k.* 670.  
*Cārvavīrat rs.* 415.  
*Gasarca bd.*, see *Cakravāka*.  
*Castes, duties of*, 148-151, 246, 594-597.  
*Oat*, 49, 85, 184, 191, 450.  
*Cātaka bd.* 29, 87, 394.  
*Cāttakhaṇḍika* p. N. 314.  
*Oatle*, 74, 80, 83, 182, 235, 238, 255, 587, 598.  
*Caulya* p. S. 332.  
*Caurya (Theft) pfn.* 265.  
*Cavery r.* S. 303.  
*Cedi c. and p.* M. 298, 341-344, 350, 359, 371, 665.  
*Cephalandra pt.* 114.  
*Cereals*, 165, 166, 244.  
*Ceylon* 284, 288, 362, 366, 367.  
*Chakor bd.* 28, 29.  
*Chambal r.* M. 286, 295, 345, 351, 359, 363.  
*Chambeli, Chameli*, see *Mālatī*.  
*Champā, Champak, tr.*, see *Cam-paka*.  
*Chanā pt.* 84, 165.  
*Chandas*, 554, 555.  
*Chatak bd.* see *Cātaka*.  
*Chāyā-Sūñijā gs.* 456-461, 464, 566-569, 576.  
*Cheer pheasant*, 29.  
*Chej doab NW.* 315, 316.  
*Chenab r. NW.* 291, 311, 313-316.  
*Chhattīsgarh dt.* C. 285, 327, 341, 342, 359, 371.  
*Chicacole t.* SE. 305.  
*Chick-pea pt.* 84, 245.  
*China*, 319.  
*Chinā cer.*, see *Apu*.  
*Chinā pt.*, see *Jira*.  
*China rose*, see *Javā*.  
*Chingleput dt.* S. 332.  
*Chitrakūṭ mt.* M. 296, 363.  
*Chittar r.* S. 304, 367.  
*Cholera*, 519.  
*Christian*, 364, 367.  
*Chūtia Nāgpur dt.* 286, 297, 327, 329, 335, 365.  
*Cibuka, p.* N. 378.  
*Cicer pt.* 84, 165.  
*Cikṣura d.* 476, 478.  
*Cina p.* NE. 318, 319, 328, 379, 381.  
*Cinaka cer.* 244.  
*Cintā* p. R. C. p. 300.  
*Cira-prāvarapa* p. p. NE. 384.  
*Citrā est.* 169, 367.  
*Citra-kūṭa mt.* M. 296, 359, 363.  
*Citra-kūṭa r.* M. 296.  
*Citra-kūṭaka p.* S. p. 363.  
*Oitron tr.* 25.  
*Citropalā, Citrotpalā r.* M. p. 296.  
*Citrus tr.* 25.  
*Civida p.* N. 378.  
*Civilization, early*, 238-246.  
*Civuka p.* N. 378.  
*Coccystes bd.* 29, 87, 394.  
*Cochin t. and dt.* SW. 303, 367.  
*Cock*, 147, 166, 184.  
*Oococanut tr.* 24, 69.  
*Codaka gb.* 265.  
*Coḍra* p. S. 332.  
*Coia gr.* 245.  
*Cola k.* 331.  
*Cola p.* S. 287, 331, 332, 363.  
*Coleroon r.* S. 303.  
*Combat* 124, 629, 630, 673.  
*Comorin. cape*, S. 285, 331.  
*Conjureram t.* S. 332, 367.  
*Conjugal life*, 118, 119, 422, 424, 430, 433, 456.  
*Constellations*, 168-173, 259, 278, 348, 349, 355, 358, 361, 367, 370, 374, 376, 381, 384-389, 443, 447, 535, 626.  
*Continents*, 272-277.  
*Coorg dt.* 364, 366.  
*Coot bd.* 31.  
*Corpse*, 44-50, 183, 184.  
*Cossye r.* E. 301, 327.  
*Covetousness*, 15, 16.  
*Cranganore t.* S. 364.  
*Creation*, 217-225, 228-248, 268.  
*Creator*, 10, 20, 47, 50, 51, 137.  
*Crime*, see *Sin*.  
*Crocodile*, 238.  
*Crocopus bd.* 28, 86, 87.  
*Crops, care of*, 259, 260, 264, 598.  
*Crow*, 47, 72, 76, 85, 86, 147, 208, 258, 263.  
*Cuckoo* 5, 7, 29, 85, 87, 147, 394.  
*Cuculus bd.* 29.  
*Cucurbita pt.* 118.  
*Cūlika, Cūlika p.* N. 322, 323.  
*Cūlika p.* W. 374.  
*Cūlika dyn.* 374.  
*Cumin, Ominum pt.* 25.  
*Curlew bd.* 85, 87.  
*Custom (Ācāra)*, 2, 107, 170-185, 199, 251-268.



- Outtack t.* E. 360.  
*Cyavana rs.* 219, 288, 310, 368, 600.  
*Cynocephali p.* 378.  
*Cyperus gr.* 245.  
*Dāḍima tr.* 25.  
*Daitya p. and d.* 9, 10, 22, 23, 58, 100-105, 109, 112-123, 312, 349, 352, 386, 395, 465, 481, 488, 493-511, 514, 515, 518-521, 541, 559, 560, 563, 565, 604-608, 641, 669.  
*Dākinī gb.* 46.  
*Dakṣa dg.* 219, 246-249, 269, 259, 369, 408, 524, 535, 550, 551, 590, 561.  
*Dakṣiṇā pfn.* 247, 248.  
*Dakṣiṇa Kosala, see* Kosala, *Dakṣiṇa*.  
*Dakṣiṇāpatha c.* S. 331.  
*Dalbergia tr.* 28.  
*Dālim tr.* 25.  
*Dama k.* 577, 668-689.  
*Dāmalipta t., see* Tāmraliptaka.  
*Dāmaraka p.* NE. 383.  
*Damayanti g.* 344.  
*Damudā r.* E. 301.  
*Dānava p. and d.* 10, 21, 23, 31, 101-105, 113-123, 138, 312, 328, 349, 352, 383, 416, 501-504, 507-509, 517, 518, 541, 559, 560, 563, 565, 581, 605-608, 611, 642, 643, 648.  
*Dancing, 3, 4.* 251.  
*Daṇḍa pfn.* 249.  
*Daṇḍaka for.* S. 336.  
*Daṇḍaka p.* S. 335, 336.  
*Daṇḍaka k.* 336.  
*Dānta k.* 442.  
*Dantākṛṣṭi d.* 257, 262.  
*Danta-vakra k.* 341.  
*Danu dgs.* 119, 559, 641, 642.  
*Danuār p.* N. 322.  
*Darada p.* NW. 311, 312, 318-321, 324, 346, 370, 382.  
*Darada k.* 311.  
*Darbha gr.* 161, 162.  
*Dard p.* NW. 311.  
*Dardistān c.* NW. 311, 318.  
*Dardura mt.* S. 287.  
*Dārīm, tr.* 25.  
*Darkness (Tamas), see* Qualities.  
*Darva, Dārva p.* NW. 324, 346, 372, 383.  
*Dārvāda p.* NE. 383.  
*Darvī t. or r.* N. 324.  
*Darvī-saṅkramana tī.* N. 324.  
*Daśamālika p.* NW. 317.  
*Daśamānika p.* NW. 318.  
*Dāsameya, Dāsamiya p.* NW. 380.  
*Dasān r.* M. 296, 342.  
*Daśanāmaka p.* NW. 318.  
*Daśa-pura, t.* M. 363.  
*Dāśapura p.* M. 363.  
*Dāśapura p.* M. 363.  
*Daśa-ratha k.* 464.  
*Daśārṇa c. and p.* M. 296, 342, 343, 359, 360, 670, 671, 674, 675.  
*Daśārṇā r.* M. 296, 298, 342.  
*Dāseraka, Dāseraka p.* N. 321, 378.  
*Dāseraka p.* N. 321.  
*Dasra g.* 460, 575; *see* Asvins.  
*Dasyu p.* 312-314, 317-320, 335, 516, 629.  
*Dattātreyā rs.* 93, 99-109, 187-193, 198, 202, 205, 207, 212, 213, 269.  
*Dattoli rs.* 269.  
*Dattoli rs.* 415.  
*Dauhitra, animal,* 164.  
*Daurhṛda, Daurhṛta demons,* 501.  
*Davada p.* NE. 382.  
*Day, 224-227.*  
*Death g.* 47, 51, 207-210, 250; *see* Mṛtyu.  
*Deeg r.* N. 292.  
*Delhi t.* 307, 351, 355.  
*Deogarh t.* E. 356.  
*Dephul tr.* 25.  
*Destiny, 474, 543, 646; see* Fate.  
*Deva-dāru tr.* 27.  
*Deva-kūṭa mts.* N. 277, 388.  
*Deva-sāila mt.* N. 278.  
*Devāvṛdha k.* 294, 669.  
*Devdār tr.* 27.  
*Devikā r.* N. 292.  
*Devikā r.* S. 292.  
*Devikā l p.* 292.  
*Devī-māhātmya, 465-522, 524.*  
*Dhak tr.* 28.  
*Dhanajaya k., see* Arjuna (Pāṇ-ḍava).  
*Dhaniṣṭhā est.* 170, 376.  
*Dhanuṣ-mat mt.* N. 376.  
*Dhanvantari g.* 153.  
*Dhārapā (mental abstraction), 194, 196.*  
*Dhāriṇī ps.* 270.  
*Dharaṇi-koṭa t.* S. 337.  
*Dharitṛ deities, 178,*

- Dharma *g.* 9, 22, 23, 38, 44, 50, 55-57, 90, 122, 246-249, 462, 525.  
 Dharma, *see* Righteousness.  
 Dharma-baddha *p.* NW. 375.  
 Dharma-dvīpa *p.* W. 360.  
 Dharmārayya *for.* and *p.* M. 352.  
 Dharma-sāstra, 2, 19, 33, 39, 686.  
 Dhāraṇa *f.* 462.  
 Dhātaki *k.* 272.  
 Dhātṛ *g.* 10, 153, 269.  
 Dhātṛī *gs.* 489.  
 Dhaumra *demons,* 501.  
 Dhautamūlaka *k.* 319.  
 Dhenukākāṭa *t.* S. 337.  
 Dheri Shāhan *t.* NW. 379.  
 Dhṛṣṇu *k.* 462.  
 Dhṛṣṇa *k.* 462, 588.  
 Dhṛta-rāṣṭra *k.* 345.  
 Dhṛti-mat *k.* and *c.* 273.  
 Dhruva *pr.* 112.  
 Dhruva *k.* and *c.* 273.  
 Dhūmra-locana *d.* 497, 498.  
 Dhūmrāśva *k.* 600.  
 Dhūmravatī *w.* 269.  
 Dhūrtaka *p.* W. 369.  
 Dhūta-pāpā *r.* M. 291.  
 Diospyros, *various trees,* 24-28.  
 Dīpti-mat *rs.* 464.  
 Dīrgha-grīva *p.* NW. 374.  
 Dīrgha-tamas *rs.* 325.  
 Dissolution of the universe, 218, 219, 224, 227, 229.  
 Diṣṭa, *see* Nābhagādiṣṭa.  
 Diti *gs.* 102, 508, 559.  
 Diver *bd.* 31.  
 Divodāsa *k.* 307, 328, 371, 600.  
 Doab 364, 378.  
 Dock *pt.* 25.  
 Dog, 44, 46, 49, 73, 74, 84, 85, 153, 155, 166, 167, 175, 184, 251.  
 Dolichos *pt.* 84, 165.  
 Drauni *p.* *rs.* 464.  
 Draupadī *q.* 3, 20, 21, 32, 37; *see* Kṛṣṇā.  
 Drāvapa *p.* NW. *p.* 368.  
 Drāviḍa *c.* and *p.* S. 367, 370.  
 Dṛḍha-dhanvan *k.* 439.  
 Dṛḍha-keśa *d.* 641, 642, 645.  
 Dreams, 207-211, 263.  
 Droṇa *b.* 1-8, 17, 19 (464).  
 Droṇi *rs.* 464.  
 Droṇī-mukha *pl.* 241.  
 Dṛṣadvatī *r.* M. 290, 292, 354, 377.  
 Drupada *k.* 3, 19, 350, 353.  
 Druhya *p.* NW. 316.  
 Druhyu *k.* 316, 669.  
 Dubdubi *bd.* 31.  
 Duck, 30.  
 Dud-Kosi *r.* E. 322.  
 Duḥṣaha *d.* 246-268.  
 Dumbur *tr.* 192.  
 Dundubhi *k.* and *c.* 273.  
 Dundubhi *d.* 669.  
 Dūṅgarapur *t.* W. 338.  
 Durbā *gr.* 262.  
 Dur-buddhi *k.* 350.  
 Dur-dhara *d.* 480.  
 Durdura *mt.* S. 277, 362.  
 Durga *p.* W. 338.  
 Durgā *gs.* 484, 485, 490, 496, 508, 509, 515.  
 Durgā *r.* E. *p.* 301.  
 Durgala *p.* W. 338.  
 Durgama *k.* 445, 446.  
 Durgama *d.* 518.  
 Durjayanta *mt.* W. 288.  
 Dur-mukha *d.* 480.  
 Dururduda *p.* *mt.* S. 287.  
 Durvāsas *rs.* 2, 5, 99, 100, 269.  
 Duryodhana *k.* 23, 24.  
 Dvaitavana *for.* M. 320.  
 Dvāpara *age,* 224, 226, 387, 388.  
 Dvārakā *t.* W. 24, 289, 340, 349.  
 Dvāravatī *t., see* Dvārakā.  
 Dveṣaṇī *gb.* 261.  
 Dvīpa, *doab,* 364, 378.  
 Dwārka *t.* W. 340.  
 Dyuti-mat *rs.* 269.  
 Dyuti-mat *k.* 272, 273.  
 Dyuti-mat, Manu, 411-415.  
 Dyuti-mat *k.* 595.  
 Earth, *The,* 218, 243-245, 271-280, 462, 474.  
 Earth (element), 217, 221, 222.  
 Eating, rules of, 170-180.  
 Ebony *tr.* 24.  
 Echiles *pt.* 27.  
 Edolius *bd.* 28.  
 Egg, *Mundane,* 217, 222-225, 459, 521, 550-553, 556.  
 Egg-plant, 167.  
 Ego, 190, 191, 215.  
 Egret *bd.* 58, 59.  
 Eka-cakrā *t.* NW. *p.* 382.  
 Eka-cakrā *t.* M. 382.  
 Ekapāda-ka *p.* NE. 358, 383.  
 Ekapādapa *p.* NE. 358.

- Eka-śṛṅga mt.** N. 279.  
**Ekekaṣaṇa p.** NW. 374.  
**Ekoddiṣṭa sf.** 185.  
**Elā r.** S. 360.  
**Elements,** 217, 220-222, 231, 557.  
**Elephant.** 77, 235, 255, 256, 413, 414, 466, 474, 494, 559.  
**Elika p.** SE. 360.  
**Emancipation from existence, see**  
     *Final emancipation.*  
**Emblca tr.** 25, 26.  
**Energies, goddesses, see** Sakti.  
**Ephthalites p.** N. 380.  
**Eraṇḍā? r.** C. 296.  
**Erannoboa r.** M. 295.  
**Ervum pt.** 165.  
**Erythrina tr.** 27, 494.  
**Eṣika p.** S. 334.  
**Ether,** 221, 222.  
**Eudynamis bd., see** Kokila.  
**Eugenia tr.** 277.  
**Eulabes bd.** 49.  
  
**Fate,** 18, 52-54, 70, 73, 83, 123, 127, 178, 258, 263, 474, 662, 680; *see*  
     *Destiny.*  
**Fennel pt.** 244.  
**Ferospur t.** NW. 312, 321.  
**Ficus, trees,** 33, 182, 192, 277, 390, 391.  
**Fig, see** Ficus.  
**Final emancipation from existence,**  
     2, 64, 71, 72, 92, 128, 168, 189-  
     194, 198-202, 205, 206, 210-216,  
     265, 280, 283, 284, 453, 469, 512,  
     513, 527, 528, 570, 599, 687.  
**Fire (element),** 222, 581, 582, 608.  
**Fires, sacred,** 82, 128, 159, 160, 176, 178, 206, 391, 397-399.  
**Flax pt.** 85.  
**Flesh-food,** 164, 167, 168, 174, 175, 181, 182, 264, 267, 679, 683.  
**Flute,** 396, 417, 571, 647.  
**Fetus,** 62, 69, 70, 258, 259, 263-266.  
**Food (various),** 180, 181.  
**Form (element),** 217, 221, 222.  
**Forms, Divine; Indra's,** 21-23;  
     Viṣṇu's, 1, 20, 21; Brahmā's, 224, 225, 229.  
**Fortress,** 240, 241.  
**Fowl, domestic,** 181, 191.  
**Francolinus bd.** 86.  
**Fruit, wonderful,** 389.  
**Fulica bd.** 31.  
  
**Gab tr.** 25, 26.  
**Gabala p.** NW. 314.  
**Gabhastimat c.** 284.  
**Gādhi k.** 57, 595.  
**Gajāhvaya t. and p.** M. 355.  
**Gaja-pura t.** M. 355.  
**Gaja-sāhvaya t.** M. 355.  
**Gālava rs.** 109, 112-114, 117, 347, 464.  
**Gālava p.** N. 347.  
**Gallinula bd.** 30.  
**Gaṇa dg.** 47.  
**Gaṇapati dyn.** 365.  
**Gaṇa-vāhya p.** E. 365.  
**Gaṇḍak, see** Gaṇḍakī.  
**Gaṇḍakī r.** M. 292, 294, 329.  
**Gandhamādana mts.** N. 277, 278, 281, 287, 310, 381, 602, 670.  
**Gandhamādana-gāminī? r.** 305.  
**Gaṇḍa-prānta-rati gb.** 257, 259, 263.  
**Gāndhāra c. and p.** NW. 314, 316, 318, 321, 380.  
**Gāndhārī, sound,** 205.  
**Gāndhārī pt.** 166.  
**Gāndhārikā pt.** 166.  
**Gandharva dg.** 55, 68, 78, 103, 113-117, 121, 126, 138, 201, 207, 232, 235, 236, 279, 393-401, 405-408, 413, 481, 495, 497, 511, 541, 559, 571, 581, 608, 619, 641, 645-650, 679, 682.  
**Gandharva p.** N. 384.  
**Gandharva c.** 284.  
**Gāndharva pt.** 246.  
**Gāndharva c.** 284.  
**Gāndharva marriage,** 671, 672.  
**Gandholika pt.** 166.  
**Gaṅgā, see** Ganges.  
**Gaṅgā-chil, gaṅg-chil bd.** 86.  
**Gaṅgā-hrada l.** M. ? 644.  
**Ganges** 6, 59, 183, 280-282, 290, 303, 319, 320, 369, 493, 590.  
**Gaṇ'am t. and dt.** E. 284, 304, 334-337.  
**Gantu-prastha? mt.** 288.  
**Garbhahan-tr gb.** 257, 259, 264.  
**Garcinia tr.** 23.  
**Garga rs.** 101-106, 435, 444.  
**Garhwāl dt.** N. 29, 320.  
**Garlic, pt.** 165.  
**Garō hills** E. 306.  
**Garuḍa, bird,** 6, 8, 112, 125, 502, 559.  
**Gāthā,** 235, 261.

- Gātra *rs.* 270.  
 Gauḍa *c.* E. 352.  
 Gauhāṭi *t.* NE. 306, 331.  
 Gauṛ *t.* E. 326, 352.  
 Gaura-grīva *p.* M. 352.  
 Gaurī *gs.* 484, 488, 489.  
 Gaurī *prs.* 627.  
 Gautama *rs.* 22, 462, 612.  
 Gautama *b.* 446.  
 Gavedhuka *gr.* 245.  
 Gaya (*son of* Vaivasvata) *k.* 589.  
 Gaya (*son of* Amūrtarayas) *k.* 329.  
 Gayā *t.* M. 165, 168, 297, 306, 330, 352, 589.  
 Gayāl, *bt.* 164, 590, 592.  
 Geography, 271-384, 387-391.  
 Geyamālava *p.* E. 328.  
 Geyumārthaka *p.* E. 328.  
 Ghaggar *r.* N. 291.  
 Ghāṭs *mts.* E. and W. 284, 285.  
 Ghogra *r.* M. 376.  
 Gihora-ka *p.* W. 373.  
 Ghoṣa *p.* NE. 383.  
 Ghoṣa (*village*), 241, 242.  
 Ghoṣa-saikhya *p.* M. 351, 383.  
 Ghr̥tācī *aps.* 4, 571.  
 Ghr̥tācī *v.* 600.  
 Ghuṣa-kītaka, *insect*, 87.  
 Ginger, 166.  
 Giri-bhadra *q.* 452.  
 Giri-vraja *t.* NW. 318.  
 Giri-vraja *t.* E. 330.  
 Girjak *t.* NW. 318.  
 Gīrnar *h.* W. 288, 289.  
 Giryek *t.* E. 330.  
 Gou *t.* SW. 362-364.  
 Goat, 147, 164, 182, 235, 255.  
 Goblins, 250-268, 533, 545.  
 Godāvari *r.* S. 284, 286, 302, 305, 310, 336.  
 Godhā, *reptile*, 181.  
 Godhana *mt.* M. ? 290.  
 Golāṅgula *p.* S. 331, 364.  
 Gomal *r.* NW. 291.  
 Gomanta *mt.* N. 289.  
 Gomanta *mt.* W. 289, 364.  
 Gomanta *p.* E. 330, 331.  
 Gomatī *r.* M. 134, 291, 306, 316, 623.  
 Gomatī *r.* NW. 291.  
 Gonarda *p.* S. 363.  
 Gonarddha *p.* S. 331, 363.  
 Goṇḍvāna *c.* C. 284, 286, 305.  
 Goodness (*Sattva*), *see* Qualities.  
 Goomti *r.* M. 291.  
 Goose, 30, 147, 409, 410.  
 Gopācala *mt.* M. 289.  
 Gopa-giri *mt.* M. 289.  
 Go-sāmp, *reptile*, 181.  
 Gotama *rs.* 31.  
 Gourd *pt.* 118.  
 Govardhana *mt.* M. 290, 310.  
 Govardhana *t.* W. 310.  
 Govinda *g.* 112; *see* Viṣṇu.  
 Govinda *p.* E. 331.  
 Gracula *bd.* 49.  
 Grāhaka *qb.* 265.  
 Gram *pt.* 84, 165, 244.  
 Grāma (*village*), 241, 242.  
 Grāma (*music*), 131.  
 Grāma-rāga (*music*), 130.  
 Grasshopper, 147.  
 Grebe *bd.* 31.  
 Greek, 284, 314.  
 Grhastha, 149-156, 186.  
 Gṛhājana *pt.* 165.  
 Guava *tr.* 25.  
 Guḍa *p.* M. 352.  
 Guḍuha *p.* M. 373.  
 Guha *q.* 502.  
 Guha *k.* 361.  
 Guhya *dq.* 178.  
 Guhyaka *dq.* 370, 461, 530, 576, 641, 648.  
 Gujarāt *c.* W. 24, 28, 29, 286, 313, 338-342, 368, 373.  
 Gulaha, Guluha *p.* M. 373.  
 Gurgāṇa *p.* N. 345.  
 Gurjara *p.* NW. 373.  
 Gurkha *p.* N. 345.  
 Guruha *p.* W. 373.  
 Guru-nadī *r.* W. 373.  
 Gurung *p.* N. 346.  
 Guru-sthala? *p.* NW. 373.  
 Guru-svara? *p.* NW. 373.  
 Guru-viśāla *for.* E. 581.  
 Gwalior *t.* M. 289.  
 Hāhā *dq.* 571.  
 Haidarābād *t.* S. 366.  
 Haihaya *k.* 371.  
 Haihaya, *p.* M., C. and W. 99, 107, 344, 351, 371.  
 Haima *mt.* N. 322.  
 Haimagirika *p.* NW. 363.  
 Haimakūṭa *p.* SE. 360.  
 Haimanta-giri *mt.* N. ? 306.  
 Haiminī *q.* 452.

- Hakra* r. N. 291.  
*Hālār* dt. W. 289.  
*Halāyudha* k. 3, 19, 24; see *Bala-Rāma*.  
*Haṁsa* bd. 30.  
*Haṁsakāyana* p. N. p. 323.  
*Haṁsa-mārga* p. N. 323, 345.  
*Haṁsa-nābha* mt. N. 279.  
*Haṁsa-pada* p. N. p. 323.  
*Hanta*, 151, 152, 179.  
*Hanū-mat*, *monkey*, 289, 346, 367.  
*Hara* g. 482, 483.  
*Hāra-bhūṣika* p. NW. 317.  
*Hāra-hūpa* p. NW. 317, 380.  
*Hāra-mūrtika* p. NW. 317.  
*Hāra-pūrika* p. NW. 317.  
*Hare*, 164, 181, 235.  
*Hari* g. 55, 91, 389, 469-472, 483, 502, 562.  
*Hari* gods, 442.  
*Hārīka* p. SE. 360.  
*Hari-parvata* mts. NW. 388.  
*Hariscandra* k. 32-61.  
*Harita* k. and c. 273.  
*Hārīta* bd. 28, 86, 87.  
*Haritaka* tr. 26.  
*Haritāśva* k. 589.  
*Hari-varṣa* c. N. 345, 390.  
*Harṣa-varḍhana* p. N. 319.  
*Hary-śva* k. 371.  
*Hasdu* r. C. 295, 298.  
*Hasta* cst. 169, 367.  
*Hastin* k. 355.  
*Hastinā-pura* } t. M. 307, 351, 355.  
*Hāstina-pura* }  
*Haviṣ-samsthā* af. 128.  
*Havir-varṣa* k. and c. 273.  
*Haviṣ-mat* rs. 454.  
*Hawk*, 182, 208, 263.  
*Hayu* p. N. 322.  
*Hasārībāgh* dt. C. 285.  
*Hedysarum* pt. 166, 245.  
*Hell*, 7, 62, 68, 71-91, 101, 107, 149, 280, 485, 622, 661, 662, 687.  
*Hema-dharma* k. 627.  
*Hema-giri* p. mt. W. 369.  
*Hema-kūṭa* mts. N. 275-277.  
*Hema-kūṭa* mt. N. 360, 369, 370, 383.  
*Hema-kūṭa* mt. SE. 360.  
*Hema-śrīga* mt. N. 369, 370.  
*Hema-tāraka* p. N. 380.  
*Hemp* pt. 245.  
*Herodias* bd. 59.  
*Heron* bd. 49, 58-61, 72, 85, 86.  
*Hestho* r. C. 295.  
*Hibiscus* tr. 553.  
*Hima* mt. = *Himavat*  
*Himālaya* mts., see *Himavat*.  
*Hima-vat* mts. 5, 28, 29, 127, 132, 249, 275-283, 287, 293, 345, 347, 369, 376, 391-396, 475, 488, 489, 494, 518, 598, 655, 669, 670.  
*Himsā* pfn. 250.  
*Hiṅga* p. NE. 384.  
*Hiraṇ-maya* c. N. 390, 391.  
*Hiraṇ-vatī* r. N. 391.  
*Hiranya* k. and c. 273.  
*Hiranya-bāhu* r. M. 295.  
*Hiranya-garbha* g. 220, 226.  
*Hiranya-kasipu* k. 146.  
*Hiranya-loman* rs. 449.  
*Hiranya-śrīga* mt. N. p. 369.  
*Hiranya-vāha* r. M. 295.  
*Hire*, see *Wages*.  
*Hog*, see *Boar*.  
*Hog-plum* tr. 23.  
*Homa*, 87, 94, 150, 172, 184, 256, 386.  
*Honey-sucker* bd. 80.  
*Hoopoe* bd. 80.  
*Horn* article, 87.  
*Horae*, 182, 183, 235, 255, 278, 388, 457, 460, 567, 573, 575.  
*Horae-sacrifice*, 41, 89, 616, 685.  
*House*, ancient, 239-243.  
*Hrada* p. NW. 316.  
*Huhu* dg. 571.  
*Hun* p. 379.  
*Hūpa* p. N. 315, 375, 379.  
*Hun-des* c. NW. 324, 380.  
*Hydaspes* r. NW. 291.  
*Hydraotes* r. NW. 291.  
*Hymns*, see *Gāthā*.  
*Hyphasis* r. NW. 291, 292.  
*Ichneumon*, 210.  
*Ikṣu* p. r. N. 292.  
*Ikṣu* r. E. p. 304.  
*Ikṣudā* r. E. 304.  
*Ikṣukā* r. E. 304.  
*Ikṣulā* r. E. 304.  
*Ikṣvāku* k. 462, 551, 588, 617.  
*Ikṣvāku* (son of *Kṣupa*) k. 618.  
*Ilā* prs. 327, 587-589.  
*Ilā* demi-goddess, 559.  
*Ilāvṛta* k. and c. N. 273, 276, 277, 390.

*Illusion*, see Mahā-māyā.

*Impurities*, 172-185.

*Incarnations*, 23; Indra's, 12-14, 23; Viṣṇu's, 21; Daityas' 22, 23.

*India*, see Bhārata.

*Indigo pt.* 25.

*Indigofera pt.* 25.

*Indivara pt.* 29.

*Indivara dg.* 401-404, 411.

*Indra g.* 4, 8-15, 21-23, 38, 40, 50, 55-57, 68, 75, 90, 97, 102, 109, 129, 147, 153, 227, 276, 415, 420, 436, 437, 442, 454, 461, 462, 473, 474, 496, 502-505, 509, 512, 514, 524-526, 532, 535, 545, 549, 550, 562, 565, 570, 604, 611, 619, 623, 641, 648, 652-655, 669, 673, 680, 687.

*Indra-dāsa m.* 678.

*Indra-dvīpa c.* 283.

*Indra-prastha t.* M. 307, 316, 351, 355.

*Indra-senā q.* 669, 674-678, 681.

*Indus r.* 291, 293, 312, 315, 318, 322, 324, 345, 376, 377, 380.

*Infanticide*, 32.

*Inguda tr.* 26.

*Intelligence (Buddhi)*, 15, 16, 221, 231.

*Intoxication*, 24, 31, 133, 146, 600, 602.

*Irā demi-gs.* 559.

*Irāvātī r.* NW. 291, 316.

*Isāna dg.* 268.

*Israel* 339.

*Jack tree*, 25.

*Jackal*, 46, 47, 53, 67, 85, 183, 208.

*Jada b.* 62, 69, 71, 76, 83, 91, 107-110, 127, 130-145, 186-190, 211.

*Jagad-dhātrī gs.* 127.

*Jāguḍa p.* N. 322.

*Jahnu k.* 303.

*Jaimineya b.* 684.

*Jaimini rs.* 1-4, 17-21, 38, 62, 217, 219, 684, 685, 688.

*Jain*, 354, 367.

*Jalada k.* and c. 273.

*Jala-kukkuṭa bd.* 30.

*Jalālpur t.* NW. 318.

*Jalandhar doab* N. 347.

*Jamadagni rs.* 310, 462, 595, 656.

*Jāmadagnya pat.*, see Paraśu-Rāma.

*Jāmadagnya dt.* W. 338.

*Jambha d.* 102, 103, 611, 677.

*Jambu tr.* 277, 391.

*Jambū r.* N. 278.

*Jambu-dvīpa*, 271-283.

*Jambulā r.* M. P. 297.

*Jambu-mat mt.* 356.

*Jambū-mūla c.* N. 278.

*Jāmbunada l.* 653.

*Jāmbūnada gold.* 278.

*Jambv-ākhyā h.* E. 356.

*Janaka k.* 330.

*Janaka f.* 75, 374.

*Janakpur t.* N. 330.

*Jana-loka*, 227, 229, 553.

*Janamejaya k.* 350.

*Janamejaya k.* 379.

*Janārdana*, 2, 5, 19, 349, 388, 470, 472; see Kṛṣṇa and Viṣṇu.

*Janasthāna dt.* 302.

*Jāngala p.* M. 309.

*Jāngala p.* N. 322.

*Jāṅgha k.* 442.

*Jānu k.* 442.

*Jar and well-rope*, 70-73, 91.

*Jarāsandha k.* 341.

*Jaritāri b.* 8.

*Jartika p.* NW. 313.

*Jārudhi mt.* N. 277, 279.

*Jasmine pt.* 27, 152.

*Jasminum pt.* 24-27, 152, 425, 426.

*Jaṭādhara f.* p. S. 364.

*Jāta-hārinī gb.* 266, 450, 451.

*Jaṭhara mts.* N. 277.

*Jātī pt.* 27, 152.

*Jausi f.* 352.

*Javā tr.* 553.

*Jayadratha k.* 315.

*Jayanta mts.* NW. 388.

*Jew*, 339, 364, 367.

*Jhelam r.* NW. 291, 315, 318, 324.

*Jīmūta k.* and c. 273.

*Jīra pt.* 25.

*Jīvajīva-ka bd.* 28, 87.

*Jīvañjīva bd.* 28, 87.

*Jñeyamallaka p.* E. 328.

*Johla r.* C. 296.

*Jonesia tr.* 25, 26, 364.

*Juguḍa p.* N. 322.

*Jujube tr.* 27.

*Jumna r.* M.; see Yamunā.

*Jumna r.* E. 297.

*Junāgaḍh t.* W. 288.

*Jupiter, planet*, 246, 431, 626.

- Jyesthā est.* 169, 374.  
*Jyestha-sāman.* 159.  
*Jyotirathā, -thyā, r. C.* 295, 296.  
*Jyotir-dhāman rs.* 442.  
*Jyotiṣika p. M.* 352.  
*Jyotiṣ-mat k.* 272, 273.  
  
*Kābul r. NW.* 291, 314.  
*Kaccha dt. W.* 303, 340.  
*Kaccha dt. S.* 367.  
*Kacchapa dg.* 416, 417.  
*Kacchika p. W.* 340.  
*Kacchviya p. W.* 340.  
*Kacch dt. W.* 312, 340, 349, 355.  
*Kadam tr., see Kadamba.*  
*Kadamba tr.* 25, 277, 565.  
*Kadambā g.* 446.  
*Kādamba bd.* 30.  
*Kadru demi-gs.* 559.  
*Kadu pt.* 118, 166.  
*Kāfiristān c. NW.* 318, 321.  
*Kahlāra pt.* 30.  
*Knikaya p.=Kaikaya.*  
*Kaikaya k.* 317.  
*Kaikaya p. NW.* 316-318, 345, 377, 382, 665.  
*Kaikeyī g.* 76.  
*Kailāsa mt. N.* 6, 132, 277, 279, 287, 322, 345, 351, 370, 376, 382, 402, 669.  
*Kairāta p. N.* 379.  
*Kaiṣkindhya p. C.* 342, 360.  
*Kaiṣabha d.* 465, 469, 472, 484, 519.  
*Kāku-jāṅgha gb.* 266.  
*Kākulāhuka p. SE.* 360, 361.  
*Kala p. W.* 369, 374.  
*Kāla, see Fate.*  
*Kāla pt.* 168.  
*Kāla d.* 480.  
*Kalaha gb.* 262.  
*Kala-haṁsa bd.* 30.  
*Kāla-jihva gb.* 262.  
*Kālājina p. C. p.* 362.  
*Kālajosaka p. NW.* 313.  
*Kālaka demons,* 501.  
*Kālakeya demons,* 501.  
*Kālakoṭī ti. M.* 354.  
*Kālakoṭisa p. M.* 354.  
*Kālakūṣa ti. M. p.* 354.  
*Kalama pt.* 84.  
*Kālāñjara p. M.* 354.  
*Kāla-sāka pt.* 164.  
*Kala-titar bd.* 86.  
*Kālatoyaka p. NW.* 312, 313.  
  
*Kalāvati w.* 402, 406-408, 411, 412.  
*Kalāya pt.* 84.  
*Kali d.* 257.  
*Kali dg.* 398-401.  
*Kali age,* 224, 226, 387, 388.  
*Kālī gs.* 499-509.  
*Kālibala p. W.* 338, 369.  
*Kālikā gs.* 494.  
*Kalinda mt. N.* 461, 576.  
*Kalindī g.* 445.  
*Kalīṅga c. and p. SE.* 325-327, 333, 334, 358, 359.  
*Kalīṅga k.* 325.  
*Kalīṅga p. M.* 308, 316, 354.  
*Kalīṅga p. NW.* 316.  
*Kalīṅga mt. N.* 279.  
*Kalīṅga=Kalīṅga p. SE.*  
*Kālīṅgaka p. C.* 354.  
*Kalīṅga-nagara t. M.* 316.  
*Kalīñjar h. M.* 354.  
*Kālī Sindh r. M.* 293.  
*Kālītaka p. W.* 338.  
*Kalmāṣapāda k.* 336.  
*Kalpa (Age),* 228, 229, 235-238, 268.  
*Kalpa (Tree),* 239, 243.  
*Kalpa p. pt.* 315.  
*Kalwan t. W.* 338.  
*Kalyāṇi t. S.* 289, 333.  
*Kāma g.* 115, 132, 249.  
*Kamala pt.* 30.  
*Kāmarāṅga tr.* 24.  
*Kāmarūpa c. NE.* 306, 331, 411, 577, 581.  
*Kāma-sāstra,* 2.  
*Kambala k.* 125, 130-133.  
*Kambala mts. NW.* 388.  
*Kāmboja c. and p. NW.* 311, 318, 319, 350, 368, 371.  
*Kambū demons,* 501.  
*Kambunāyaka p. S.* 366.  
*Kāmini r. NW.* 389.  
*Kāmpil t. M.* 350, 353.  
*Kāmpilya t. M.* 350, 353, 598.  
*Kāmrūp dt. NE.* 331.  
*Kāṁsa k.* 352.  
*Kāṁsavati p. r. E.* 301.  
*Kanak-champa tr.* 27.  
*Kanara dt. S.* 364.  
*Kanauj t. M.* 292, 307.  
*Kāñcanākṣī r. M.* 290, 306.  
*Kāñci t. S.* 332, 367.  
*Kāñcipuram t. S.* 367.  
*Kāñcivaram t. S.* 367.

Kāñcya ? p. S. 367.  
 Kandahar t. NW. 374.  
 Kandhara *bd.* 6-8.  
 Kangra *dt.* NW. 347.  
 Kanhar r. C. 297.  
 Kañka p. M. 353.  
 Kañka p. N. 253.  
 Kañka *bd.* 6, 7.  
 Kañkella tr. 25.  
 Kañkola tr. 25.  
 Kaṭṭakāra ? p. NW. 317.  
 Kāñḥāl tr. 25.  
 Kanyakāgūna ? p. NW. 375.  
 Kānyakubja t. M. 307, 353, 595.  
 Kaorhari r. C. 285.  
 Kapila rs. 120.  
 Kapila mt. N. 279.  
 Kāpila k. and c. 273.  
 Kapilendra mt. N. 279.  
 Kāpili r. NE. 306.  
 Kāpiṅgala p. M. 354.  
 Kāpiñjalā r. 354.  
 Kapiśā r. E. 301, 327.  
 Kapotaka, Nāga k. 431.  
 Karabhā r. E. 301.  
 Karād t. S. 362.  
 Karahākaḍa t. S. 362.  
 Karahākaṭa t. S. 362.  
 Karahāṭaka t. S. 362.  
 Karāla d. 479.  
 Kāramār mt. NW. 290.  
 Karamarda tr. 26.  
 Karambha pt. 165.  
 Karambha-bāluka pl. 83.  
 Karambhaka ? p. NW. 388.  
 Karamcha tr. 26.  
 Karamnāsa r. M. 297.  
 Karamodā r. M. 296.  
 Karaṇḍa *bd.* 30.  
 Kāraṇḍava *bd.* 30.  
 Karandhama k. 622-625, 631-644,  
 649-653.  
 Karandhama k. 653.  
 Kārandhama pat. 625.  
 Kāraakara p. W. 339.  
 Karatoyā r. NE. 290, 293, 383.  
 Karatoyā r. C. 290, 294.  
 Karatoyā r. E. 301.  
 Karatoyā ? r. N. 296.  
 Karavīra-pura t. W. 289.  
 Karbuka p. E. 356.  
 Kardama rs. 270, 272.  
 Kardo *bd.* 30.  
 Kar-kāśa *bd.* 30, 409, 410.

Karkasā *aps.* 4.  
 Karki r. N. 322.  
 Karkoṭaka for. S. 362.  
 Karkoṭaka k. 362.  
 Karma, doctrine of, 10, 57, 62, 67-  
 71, 77, 78, 87-90, 193-233, 282,  
 283, 528, 592.  
 Karma-nāsā r. M. 287, 296.  
 Karma-nāyaka p. S. 366.  
 Karma-nodā ? r. M. 296.  
 Karṇa k. 368, 369, 629.  
 Karṇaprādheya p. W. 368.  
 Karṇa-prāvaraṇa p. N. 346, 369.  
 Karṇāṭa c. and p. S. 363.  
 Karṇāṭaka p. S. 363.  
 Karṇavatī r. M. 297.  
 Karṇikāra tr. 27.  
 Karnul *dt.* S. 366.  
 Kārtavīrya k., see Arjuna.  
 Kārttikeya g. 524, 574.  
 Kāru mt. 290.  
 Karūsa k. 341.  
 Karūsa k. 463, 588, 593.  
 Karūsa } p. C. 309, 334, 341, 359,  
 Karūsa } 366, 463, 593.  
 Kārūṣaka p. = Kārūsa.  
 Karvaṭā c. or t. E. 356.  
 Karvaṭa-ka (town), 241.  
 Karvaṭasana h. E. 356.  
 Kaśāya ? p. E. 357.  
 Kaseruka p. N. 321.  
 Kaserumat c. 283.  
 Kaśerumat, Kaśerumat c. 283.  
 Kasetu c. 283.  
 Kashgar c. N. 318.  
 Kāśī t. M. (= Benares), 187-190,  
 207, 211-216, 308, 329, 341, 357,  
 359, 367, 371, 600.  
 Kāśī p. M. 357, 367.  
 Kāśikā r. 305.  
 Kāśmīra c. and p. NW. 312, 318,  
 319, 322, 323, 340, 370, 382.  
 Kaṭṭa-haraṇa-parvata ? pl. E. 325.  
 Kāśya p. M. 367.  
 Kaśyapa dg. 178, 461, 535, 550-552,  
 559-565.  
 Kāśyapa rs. and f. 462, 465, 612.  
 Kaṭaka t. SE. 360.  
 Kaṭaka-sthala p. SE. 360.  
 Katamālā r. S. 303.  
 Kathaei p. NW. 313.  
 Kathākara p. W. 339.  
 Kāthi p. NW. 313. [344, 373.  
 Kāthiāwār dt. W. 313, 338, 340,



- Kātyāyanī *gs.* 503, 512, 515.  
 Kaurāñja *mt.* NE. 388.  
 Kaurava *pat., race,* 6-9, 23, 24, 37, 360, 378, 567.  
 Kauruṣa *p.* S. 366.  
 Kauśāmba *c.* M. 307.  
 Kauśāmbi *t.* M. 307.  
 Kauśika *pat.* 34, 37, 43, 44, 50, 61, 93, 462.  
 Kauśika *p.* NE. 383.  
 Kauśikā *r.* = Kauśikī.  
 Kauśikī *r.* NE. 292, 293, 329, 369, 383, 595.  
 Kauśikī *gs.* 494.  
 Kāveri *r.* 285, 290, 303, 364, 366.  
 Kāveri *q.* 446.  
 Kāvya *rs.* 442.  
 Kawa *Kol mts.* E. 286.  
 Kāyana *p.* r. M. 297.  
 Kekaya *p.* = Kaikeya.  
 Kekaya *k.* 665.  
 Kekayī *q.* 665.  
 Ken *r.* M. 288, 297, 341, 359.  
 Keora, *shrub,* 26.  
 Kerala *k.* 331.  
 Kerala *p.* S. 331, 332.  
 Kerala *p.* U. 341.  
 Kerra *bd.* 30.  
 Keśava *g.* 472; *see* Viṣṇu.  
 Ketakī *pt.* 7, 26.  
 Ketu *mt.* 290.  
 Ketumāla *k.* and *c.* NW. 274-278, 282, 387-389.  
 Ketumat *k.* and *c.* 273.  
 Ketu-vīrya *k.* 665.  
 Kevala *p.* S. 331.  
 Khambu *p.* N. 322.  
 Khāṇḍava-prastha *t.* M. 355.  
 Khāndesh *dt.* W. 288.  
 Khanīetra *k.* 619-624.  
 Khanitra *k.* 610-617.  
 Khañjana *h.* NW. 370.  
 Kharāṅpur hills E. 356.  
 Kharapatha *c.* N. 380.  
 Kharasāgararāsi *p.* N. 380.  
 Kharmaka *h.* E. 356.  
 Khas *p.* N. 346.  
 Khasa *p.* N. 346, 350, 351, 357, 383.  
 Khasa *p.* N. 346, 382.  
 Khasā *demi-gs.* 559.  
 Khāsi hills E. 306.  
 Khas-khas *gr.* 79.  
 Khaṭvāṅgī *r.* S. 364.  
 Khetaka (town), 241.  
 Khichree, 168, 174.  
 Khyāti *w.* 249, 269.  
 Kīcaka *c.* NE. 381.  
 Kīcaka *p.* M. 382.  
 Kīcaka *m.* 382.  
 Kīkaṭa *c.* E. 331, 382.  
 Kimpurusa *k.* and *c.* N. 273, 274, 282, 381, 390.  
 Kimpurusa *k.* 415.  
 Kimśuka *tr.* 28.  
 King, his duties, 144-148, 157, 656, 657, 666.  
 King-crow *bd.* 28.  
 Kinkara *p.* N. 381.  
 Kinnara *p.* N. and E. 116, 117, 236, 279, 381, 393-397, 647.  
 Kirānti *p.* N. 322.  
 Kirāta *p.* and *c.*, N. and E. 284, 307, 316, 322, 323, 328, 346, 347, 369, 379, 381, 383.  
 Kirati *p.* N. 322.  
 Kisadya *p.* M. 307.  
 Kisaṣya *p.* M. 307.  
 Kisaṣṭa *p.* M. 307.  
 Kisikindhaka *p.* C. 342, 360.  
 Kiśikindhyā *c.* S. 342.  
 Kistna *r.* S. 302, 303, 365.  
 Kite *bd.* 86.  
 Kiyān *r.* M. 297.  
 Kiyul *r.* E. 285.  
 Kochchi *t.* S. 367.  
 Kodagu *dt.* S. 364.  
 Kodo *cer.* 244.  
 Kodungalūr *t.* S. 364.  
 Kohalaka *p.* N. 380.  
 Koil *bd.*, *see* Kokila.  
 Kokanada *p.* NW. 372, 380.  
 Kokanada *pt.* 30.  
 Kokañkaṇa *p.* NW. 372.  
 Kokaraka *p.* NW. 372, 380.  
 Kokila *bd.* 28, 394, 399, 407.  
 Kol *p.* C. 364, 365, 466.  
 Kola *k.* 331.  
 Kola *p.* C. 331, 332, 363, 365.  
 Kola *p.* 466.  
 Kolagira *p.* S. 363, 365.  
 Kolagiri *dt.* S. 364.  
 Kolāhala *mt.* C. 286, 359.  
 Kolavana *p.* W. 338.  
 Kolla *h.* M. 290.  
 Kolūka, Kolūta *c.* N. 375, 382.  
 Kolvagireya *p.* S. 363.  
 Kombunāyaka *p.* S. 366.  
 Koñc-bak *bd.* 86.

- Konkan* dt. S. 362.  
*Konkana* p. S. 362.  
*Kopva* mt. 290.  
*Kophēn* r. NW. 291.  
*Kora* mt. 290.  
*Koradūṣa* cer. 244.  
*Korava*, tribe S. 332.  
*Kosala*, Daksina or Mahā-, c. C. 299, 308, 334, 342, 358, 359, 371.  
*Kosala*, Uttara, c. M. 294, 308, 342, 352, 353, 358.  
*Kosalā* t. M. 57.  
*Kosam* t. M. 307.  
*Kosi* r. NE. 292, 329, 383, 595.  
*Kovidāra* tr. 27, 165.  
*Krakara* bd. 86.  
*Krama* pr. 610.  
*Kratu* rs. 246, 249, 270.  
*Krauñca* mt. N. 288, 376.  
*Krauñca* p. N. 376.  
*Krauñca-dvīpa* 272-275.  
*Krauñca-dvīpa* dt. S. 364.  
*Krauñcālaya* for. S. 364.  
*Krauñca-pura* t. S. 364.  
*Kraugtuki* b. 217, and *passim* 224-237, 263-283, 348, 358, 391, 415-419, 436, 463, 550, 552, 587, 653, 665, 684.  
*Kravyāda*, caste, 182.  
*Krodhā* demi-gs. 559.  
*Kṛpa* rs. 464.  
*Kṛpā* r. 306.  
*Kṛpāvati* prs. 602.  
*Kṛṣṇa* k. and g. 23, 24, 50, 55, 308, 328, 340, 342, 349-352, 361, 383, 474.  
*Kṛṣṇa* mt. N. 279.  
*Kṛṣṇa* mts. NW. 388.  
*Kṛṣṇa* Dvaipāyana rs. 677.  
*Kṛṣṇā* r. S. 290, 302, 365, 366.  
*Kṛṣṇā* gs. 490, 494.  
*Kṛṣṇā* q. (=Draupadī) 3, 19, 23.  
*Kṛṣṇā-dvīpa* dt. S. 365.  
*Kṛṣṇa-veṇā* r. C. 300.  
*Kṛta* Age, 224, 226, 272, 347, 387, 388, 437.  
*Kṛtamālā* r. S. 303.  
*Kṛtasmarā* mt. NW. p. 290.  
*Kṛtavīrya* k. 101, 106.  
*Kṛti* k. 39.  
*Kṛtraka* p. N. 347.  
*Kṛttika* cst. 169, 355.  
*Kṛtyā* r. 306.  
*Krumu* r. NW. 298.  
*Kṣamā* w. 249, 270.  
*Kṣānti* k. 442.  
*Kṣatodara* p. N. 320.  
*Kṣatriya* caste, 36, 317-319, 323, 336, 350, 351, 370, 380, 594-596, 671, 672.  
*Kṣatriya* virtue, 124, 144, 145, 148, 188, 212, 246, 442, 591, 596-601, 627-634, 642, 668, 671, 672, 677.  
*Kṣemadhūrta* p. N. 381.  
*Kṣemadhūrti* k. 381.  
*Kṣemaka* k. and c. 273.  
*Kṣetra-jña*, 220, 223; see *Puruṣa*.  
*Kṣiprā* r. W. ? 299.  
*Kṣiprā* r. 306.  
*Kṣudraka* p. M. 377.  
*Kṣudravīpa* p. N. 377.  
*Kṣupa* (son of Brahṁā) k. 617, 618.  
*Kṣupa* (son of Khanitra) k. 615-618.  
*Kṣurādri* h. NW. 370.  
*Kubhā* r. NW. 291.  
*Kuca-harā* gb. 266.  
*Kuhu* r. NW. ? 291.  
*Kuhaka* p. N. 324.  
*Kuhu* p. NW. 324.  
*Kuhuka* p. N. 324.  
*Kujrmbha* d. 604-609.  
*Kukkūṭa* mt. N. 279.  
*Kukṣi* prs. 272.  
*Kul* tr. 27.  
*Kulaṭa*, Kulati p. NE. 382.  
*Kulattha* pt. 84, 244, 245.  
*Kulattha* p. N. 375.  
*Kulinda* p. N. 316, 317, 323.  
*Kuliṅga* p. N. ? 316.  
*Kulīra* mt. N. 278.  
*Kulīya* p. W. 338.  
*Kulu* dt. N. 316, 382.  
*Kulūta* c. N. 375, 381, 382.  
*Kulya* p. N. 307.  
*Kulya* p. S. 331, 332.  
*Kulya* (semi-divine race?) 559.  
*Kumana* p. S. 332.  
*Kumaon* dt. N. 29, 286, 320.  
*Kumāra* k. and c. 273.  
*Kumāra* g. 502-505, 509, 514.  
*Kumāra* dg. 232.  
*Kumārī* r. C. 285.  
*Kumārī* r. 305.  
*Kumud* pt. 29.  
*Kumuda* mt. W. p. 332, 365, 445.  
*Kumud-vatī* r. E. p. 300.  
*Kumud-vatī* prs. 627.

- Kūpa ? p. NW. ? 315.  
 Kunaha ? p. NW. ? 375.  
 Kupapa p. NW. ? 375.  
 Kuṇḍalā w. 113, 116-118, 120.  
 Kuṇḍikera ? p. C. ? 371.  
 Kuṇḍina t. C. 336, 673.  
 Kūnet p. N. 316.  
 Kuninda ? p. N. 316.  
 Kuñjara k. S. 367.  
 Kuñjara-darī pl. S. 367.  
 Kuntala p. S. 308, 337.  
 Kuntala p. M. 308.  
 Kuntala p. W. ? 308.  
 Kuntapṛavarāṇa p. N. 346.  
 Kunti bā. 6.  
 Kuntī q. 23.  
 Kuntīla dt. M. 308.  
 Kunyatāḍaha ? p. NW. 375.  
 Kūpa r. 306.  
 Kupatha p. S. 332.  
 Kuram r. NW. 298.  
 Kurattee r. E. 294, 333.  
 Kurnool dt. S. 290.  
 Kurru tribe, S. 332.  
 Kuru k. and c. 274.  
 Kuru k. 354, 355, 461, 567, 652, 677.  
 Kuru f., see Kaurava.  
 Kuru p. M. 308, 309, 333, 345-349, 353-355, 359, 377.  
 Kuru, Uttara (Northern), p. N. 282, 345, 376, 387-390, 457-460, 567, 575.  
 Kuruba p. S. 332.  
 Kuru-jāṅgala dt. M. 309, 354.  
 Kuru-kṣetra dt. M. 8, 293, 307, 354, 378, 655.  
 Kurumba p. S. 332.  
 Kurumin p. W. 339.  
 Kururvāhya ? p. M. 354.  
 Kuruṣa p. N. 382, 383.  
 Kuruvinda gr. 245.  
 Kuśa k. 352.  
 Kuśa k. 328, 330.  
 Kuśa gr. 31, 67, 118, 161, 258.  
 Kuśa-dvīpa, 272-275.  
 Kuśala k. and c. 273.  
 Kuśa-sthalī t. (=Dvārakā), 289.  
 Kuśāvarṭta b. 612.  
 Kuśeruka p. N. 321.  
 Kuśika rs. 31, 45, 60, 61.  
 Kuṣmāṇḍa gb. 262.  
 Kuśottara k. and c. 273.  
 Kusuma p. S. 332, 366.  
 Kūṭa-saila mt. 290.  
 Kuich dt. W., see Kachh.  
 Kuthapṛavarāṇa p. N. 346.  
 Kuvalaya pt. 29.  
 Kuvalaya, horse, 109, 113.  
 Kuvalayāsava k. 109-127, 133-142, 145, 186.  
 Kuvera g. 6-10, 460, 474, 475, 489, 494, 531, 562, 574, 638, 680.  
 Kyah partridge, 86.  
 Laḍaha p. NW. 375.  
 Laḍaka ? p. NW. 375.  
 Lagenaria, pt. 118.  
 Lag-Goose, 30, 409, 410.  
 Lajjā ? r. M. ? 297.  
 Lakuca tr. 25.  
 Lakṣmī gs. (=Sṛī), 101-105, 249, 255, 260, 416, 419, 515, 522, 638.  
 Lalitha p. NW. 374.  
 Lambādi p. S. 333.  
 Lambagee p. NW. 321.  
 Lambana k. and c. 273.  
 Lamghān dt. NW. 321.  
 Lampāka c. NW. 321.  
 Lāmālinī r. E. 305.  
 Lāṅgalī r. E. ? 305.  
 Lāṅgūlinī r. E. 305.  
 Lanius bd. 28.  
 Lāṅkā t. S. 346, 362.  
 Lapis lazuli, 366.  
 Lapwing bd. 394.  
 Laśa pr. 670.  
 Laśuna pt. 165.  
 Lāu pt. 118.  
 Lauhi b. 357.  
 Lauhita f. 357.  
 Lauhitya r. NE. 357, 370.  
 Lauhitya c. NE. 357.  
 Lava k. 352.  
 Lavapa k. 352.  
 Laya (music), 131.  
 Lekha goda, 454.  
 Lentil pt. 165.  
 Lepa-bhuja pīṭṭa, 157, 158.  
 Leprosy, 443.  
 Light (element), 128, 129, 217, 221, 230.  
 Lika d. 266, 267.  
 Lila dg. 418 (=Nīla).  
 Līlajan r. M. 297.  
 Līlāvati pre. 627.  
 Līlāyudha p. W. 334.  
 Limbu p. N. 322.

- Lizard*, 181, 210.  
*Locust*, 8.  
*Lohini r.* NE. 293.  
*Lohita r.* NE. 293, 357.  
*Lohita pl?* 357.  
*Lohita f.* 357.  
*Lohitya pl.* M. 357.  
*Lohityā r.* NE. 357.  
*Loka*, see *World*.  
*Lokāloka mts.* 275.  
*Loka-pāla dg.* 55, 277.  
*Lola k.* 439, 441.  
*Lolana p.* NE. 383.  
*Loma-pāda k.* 325, 464.  
*Lopāmudrā pra.* 293.  
*Lotus*, 1, 2, 18, 24, 29, 30, 97, 147, 255, &c.  
*Lotus Water-lily, pt.* 29.  
*Love*, 2, 15, 115, 119, 170-172, 185, 188, 198, 215, 264, 430, 467.  
*Love-god*, see *Kāma*.  
*Lūsātī r.* 305.  
*Lute*, 132, 135, 396, 417, 571, 647.  
  
*Madālasā q.* 114, 115, 118-126, 133, 136-145, 148, 151, 155, 157, 160, 164, 168-171, 180, 181, 186-188, 214.  
*Madanikā fem. d.* 7.  
*Madayanti q.* 336.  
*Madgu bd.* 31, 85, 86.  
*Madguraka p.* E. 324.  
*Madhu mt.* N. 279.  
*Madhu k.* 352.  
*Madhu rs.* 454.  
*Madhu d.* 465, 469-472, 519.  
*Madhumatta p.* NW. P. 375.  
*Madhu-pura t.* M. 352.  
*Madhu-vana M.* 352.  
*Madhya-desa c.* 309, 333, 345, 351-355.  
*Madra c. and p.* NW. 311, 315-317, 347-350, 372, 373, 377-380, 665, 670.  
*Madra? p.* E. 329.  
*Madrā r.* C. 299.  
*Mādra p.*,=Madra.  
*Madraka k.* 311, 315.  
*Madraka p.*,=Madra.  
*Madras*, 332.  
*Mādri q.* 23.  
*Madura t. and dt.* S. 331.  
*Magadha c. and p.* M. 308, 390, 337, 341, 357, 358.  
  
*Magadha p.* M. 330, 664.  
*Maghā est.* 168, 169.  
*Magic*, 79, 201, 392-395, 554, 555, 614.  
*Magician*, 174.  
*Mahā-bhadra l.* N. 278, 282.  
*Mahā-bhadra mt.* N. 279.  
*Mahā-deva g.* 268.  
*Mahā-druma k. and c.* 273.  
*Mahā-gaurī r.* E. P. 301.  
*Mahā-grīva p.* SE. 360.  
*Mahā-hanu d.* 46, 479.  
*Mahā-kāla t.* C. 521.  
*Mahā-kālī gs.* 521.  
*Mahā-Kosala c.* 308, 342, 371.  
*Mahā-mārī, disease*, 519, 521.  
*Mahā-Māyā gs.* 465, 469, 515.  
*Mahā-nada r.* SE. 295, 298.  
*Mahā-nāda pr.* 670, 672.  
*Mahā-nadī r.* SE. 284-286, 295-298, 300, 305.  
*Mahānanda pr.* 672, 673.  
*Mahā-nīla mt.* N. 278.  
*Mahā-padma dg.* 408, 416, 494.  
*Mahā-rāṣṭra c. and p.* W. 333, 363.  
*Mahā-raṭha k.* 612.  
*Mahā-raurava hell*, 54, 71, 72.  
*Mahar-loka*, 227, 553.  
*Mahārṇava p.* W. 370.  
*Mahā-sāla mt.* N. 279.  
*Mahat*, 217, 220-223, 231.  
*Mahatī r.* W. 294.  
*Mahāvīta k.* 272.  
*Mahendra mts.* E. 284-286, 305, 334, 362.  
*Mahesvara g.* 504, 505, 514.  
*Maheswar t.* C. 333.  
*Māheya p.* W. 339.  
*Mahī r.* W. 294, 339.  
*Māhika p.* W. 340.  
*Mahindra mts.* SE. 284.  
*Mahiga d.* 473-487, 519, 524.  
*Māhigaka p.* S. 333.  
*Māhigika p.* S. 333.  
*Māhigikī r.?* C. 334.  
*Māhigṃaka p.* C. 333.  
*Mahigmat k.* 333, 371.  
*Māhigmatī t.* C. 310, 333, 336, 344, 371.  
*Mahitā r.* W. 295.  
*Mahraṭṭa p.* W. 333.  
*Mahyuttara p.* E. P. 327.  
*Mainā bd.* 49, 58-61, 84.  
*Maināka mt.* N. 269, 287, 376.

- Maināka mt.** W. 288.  
**Maināka mt.** S. 288.  
**Maināka-prabha?** r. C. 288.  
**Maitra cat.** 370.  
**Mākandī t.** M. 353.  
**Makara dg.** 416, 417.  
**Makarī r.** M. P. 298.  
**Makrupā r.** M. P. 298.  
**Makṣapā r.** M. P. 298.  
**Māl p.** E. 330.  
**Malada p.** E. 326.  
**Mālada p.** E. 326.  
**Malaja p.** M. 309, 325.  
**Malaka p.** M. 308.  
**Mālatī pt.** 27, 152.  
**Mālava p.** M. 341, 354, 377, 379.  
**Mālavānaka p.** C. P. 326.  
**Mālavartin p.** E. 326.  
**Malaya mts.** S. 285, 287, 304, 362.  
**Mālda dt.** E. 326.  
**Mālā p.** E. 330.  
**Malignant spirits,** 250-268.  
**Mālika?** p. NW. 318.  
**Mālinī t.** E. 325.  
**Mālinī aps.** 538.  
**Malla p.** E. 330.  
**Malli p.** 318.  
**Mallikā pt.** 24, 25, 425, 426.  
**Mallikārjuna temple,** S. 290.  
**Māl Pahāriya p.** E. 330.  
**Mālhoa c.** 286, 312, 338, 341, 354, 361.  
**Mālya?** p. NW. 315.  
**Māna-bhūmi dt.** E. 326.  
**Mānada p.** E. 326.  
**Māpaka,** 178.  
**Mānakalaha?** p. N. 379.  
**Manas (Mind),** 221.  
**Mānasa l.** N. 278, 281, 288, 322, 376, 384.  
**Mānasa k. and c.** 273.  
**Manasvinī v.** 269.  
**Mānavācala h.** E. 356.  
**Mānavarjaka p.** E. 326.  
**Mānavartika p.** E. 326.  
**Mānbhūm dt.** E. 326, 327.  
**Mandagā r.** 305.  
**Manda-gāminī r.** 305.  
**Mandākinī r.** N. 296, 298.  
**Mandākinī r.** S. 302.  
**Manda-pāla b.** 8.  
**Mandār tr.** 27, 494.  
**Mandara mts.** N. 277-280, 310, 316, 322, 351, 381, 382, 402.  
**Mandara mt.** E. 287.  
**Mandāra tr.** 27.  
**Mandāra dg.** 402, 407.  
**Manda-vāhinī r.** 305, 306.  
**Māṇḍavya m.** 91, 94, 97.  
**Māṇḍavya p.** NW. 349, 374, 380.  
**Māṇḍavya rs.** 374.  
**Māṇḍavya-pura t.** S. 374.  
**Mandhātā t.** C. 334.  
**Māndhātā k.** 655.  
**Māṇḍika p.** NW. P. 374.  
**Mango tr.** 24, 197.  
**Mañijālā r.** C. 302.  
**Maṇimat mt.** NW. 370.  
**Maṇi-megha h.** NW. P. 370.  
**Maṇiṅgā r.** C. P. 302.  
**Mānini q.** 578, 584-586.  
**Maṇipur t.** C. 371.  
**Maṇi-śaila mt.** M. 278.  
**Maṇivaka k. and c.** 273.  
**Mañjirā r.** S. 289, 302.  
**Mañjulā r.** M. P. 297.  
**Mān-kachu pt.** 178.  
**Mankind, Primeval,** 231-247.  
**Man-lion incarnation,** 21, 503, 504.  
**Mano-java g.** 454.  
**Mano-ramā r.** M. 290, 306.  
**Mano-ramā demi-gs.** 401, 402, 411.  
**Manus, The,** 226, 227, 271, 408, 411-415, 432, 435-437, 441, 449, 455, 461-465, 535, 549, 550, 684, 686. See Svāyambhuva, Svārociṣa, Auttama, Tāmasa, Raivata, Cākṣuṣa, Vaivasvata, Sāvarni, Raucya, and Bhautya.  
**Manuga k. and c.** 273.  
**Manvantaras, The,** 218, 224, 227, 271, 549, 550, 685.  
**Mānya-vatī prs.** 627.  
**Maraka?** p. NE. 363.  
**Marathī?** r. S. 302.  
**Mārīca dg.** P. 462, 465, 535.  
**Marīci rs.** 246, 249, 269, 558, 559.  
**Mārkaṇḍeya rs.** 1-7, 11, 16-19, and *passim* 217-237, 247, 256, 268-283, 348, 349, 387, 391-467, 522-689.  
**Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa,** 219, 684-688.  
**Markatāka pt.** 165, 245.  
**Markaṭi?** pt. 245.  
**Marking-nut tree,** 25.  
**Marriage,** 118, 119, 149, 155, 166, 170, 176, 177, 252, 526, 527, 594-596, 670-672.

- Mars, planet*, 431, 626.  
*Mārtaṇḍa g.* 455, 550, 551, 563-566  
 574-576.  
*Mārttikāvata t.* W. 349.  
*Maru-dhanvan dg.* 402.  
*Maru-bhūmi c.* W. 354.  
*Marut g.* 55, 461, 645, 648.  
*Māruta pl.* 246.  
*Māruta p.* M. 353.  
*Māruta g.* 474.  
*Marutta k.* 146, 644-649, 652-656,  
 672.  
*Marutta k.* 653.  
*Māsa pt.* 84, 85, 165, 244.  
*Māsh-kalāy pt.* 84.  
*Masūra pt.* 165, 244.  
*Mātariśvan g.* 100, 539.  
*Māthara p.* p. NW 317.  
*Mathurā t.* M. 21, 307, 351, 352.  
*Mathurā t.* S. 331.  
*Mātrā* 128, 194, 205, 470.  
*Matsya k.* 359.  
*Matsya c. and p.* 307, 329, 347, 351,  
 354, 359, 360, 377, 382.  
*Mattā gb.* 264.  
*Matter (element)*, 221.  
*Mauleya p.* S. p. 336.  
*Mauli p.* p. NW. 388.  
*Maulika p.* S. 336.  
*Maunika p.* S. 336.  
*Maurya demons*, 501.  
*Maya d.* 416.  
*Māyā gs.* 250; *see* Mahā-Māyā.  
*Mayūra mt.* N. 279.  
*Maxims, see* Custom.  
*Measures of length*, 240; *of time*,  
 226-228.  
*Meat*, 164, 167, 168, 174, 175.  
*Medhas b.* 466.  
*Medhātithi k.* 272, 273.  
*Medhāvin k. and c.* 273.  
*Megha-parvata mt.* N. 279.  
*Mekala hills* C. 288, 327, 341.  
*Mekala c. and p.* C. 327, 341, 357.  
*Mekalā t. or r.* C. p. 358.  
*Mekhalāmuṣṭa p.* p. E. 357, 358.  
*Menā demi-gs.* 269.  
*Menā ps.* 270.  
*Menā aps.* 287.  
*Menakā aps.* 4, 8, 571.  
*Merchant, see* Trade.  
*Mercury, planet*, 431, 626; *see*  
 Budha.  
*Meru mt.* 22, 223, 244, 269, 275-  
 282, 345, 351, 390, 391, 478, 576,  
 582.  
*Meru-nanda k.* 411.  
*Metempsychosis, see* Transmigra-  
 tion.  
*Metres*, 235, 236.  
*Nichelia tr.* 26, 326, 364.  
*Micitā r.* M. 292.  
*Midnapur dt.* E. 301, 327, 330.  
*Mimusops tr.* 26.  
*Mind*, 190, 221.  
*Mithila p.* M. 330.  
*Mithilā t. and c.* M. 329, 356, 358.  
*Mitra g.* 588, 589.  
*Mitra-vindā cf.* 433.  
*Mleccha p.* 290, 312, 313, 317-320,  
 328, 335, 346, 350, 636.  
*Modāgiri pl.* E. 324.  
*Mohammedans*, 284.  
*Mohana r.* C. 297.  
*Mohanī gb.* 264.  
*Mokṣa-sāstra*, 2.  
*Momordica pt.* 114.  
*Monghyr t. and dt.* E. 324, 325,  
 356.  
*Monkey*, 49, 84, 208, 235.  
*Monkey-jack tr.* 25.  
*Moon, planet and g.*, 147, 280, 431,  
 447, 448, 473, 474, 562, 626.  
*Moon-worship*, 80, 173, 264.  
*Morning-star*, 207.  
*Mosquito*, 72, &c.  
*Mothers, goddesses*, 504-506, 524;  
*see* Sakti.  
*Mountains*, 275-289, 356, 357, 362,  
 370, 376.  
*Mṛga-sīras cst.* 355.  
*Mṛkaṇḍa dg.* 269.  
*Mṛṣika p.* S.E. 332, 359.  
*Mṛttikāvati t.* W. 342, 349.  
*Mṛtyu pfn.* 247, 250, 263.  
*Mucukunda k.* 333, 336.  
*Mudakara p.* E. 324.  
*Mudāvasu p. k.* (=Udāvasu).  
*Mudāvati prs.* 604-609.  
*Mudga pt.* 84, 165, 244.  
*Mudga-giri pl.* E. 324.  
*Mudgala p.* E. p. 325.  
*Mudgalapuri t.* E. 324.  
*Mudgalāśrama t.* E. 324.  
*Mug pt.* 84  
*Mug-kalāy pt.* 84.  
*Mujavant pl.* N. p. 655.  
*Mūka p.* C. 309.

Mukhya gods, 464, 465.  
 Mukti, *see* Final emancipation.  
 Mukti-matī r. C. 298.  
 Mukuṭṭā r. M. ? 298.  
 Mukunda dg. 416, 417.  
 Mūla cat. 170, 374.  
 Mule, 235.  
 Māli dg. 394, 395.  
 Mālī r. SE. 305.  
 Mālinī r. SE. 305.  
 Muṇḍa p. C. 329.  
 Muṇḍa d. 494-501.  
 Muṇḍir t. E. 324, 325.  
 Muni k. and c. 273.  
 Muni demi-ga. 559.  
 Muñja gr. 192.  
 Muñja-prṣṭha mt. N. 655.  
 Muñjavat mt. N. 655.  
 Muñjāvaṭa ti. M. 655.  
 Muñjāvaṭa mt. N. 655.  
 Mura, *see* Muru.  
 Murchanā (music), 131.  
 Murshidabad dt. E. 326.  
 Muru k. 328, 383, 501.  
 Mūṣaka p. S. 332.  
 Musi r. S. 366.  
 Music, 100, 107, 109, 130-132, 135,  
 138, 251, 571.  
 Mūṣika p. S. 332, 366.  
 Musk-rai, 87.  
 Mustard pt. 84, 162, 165, 181, 258-  
 261, 266.  
 Muttra t. M. 307, 351, 352.  
 Myna bd., *see* Mainā.  
 Myrobalan tr. 25, 26.  
 Mysore c. S. 286, 332.  
 Nābhaga } (son of Manu Vaivas-  
 Nābhāga } vata) k. 462, 588.  
 Nābhaga } (son of Manu Vaivas-  
 Nābhāga } vata); *see* Nābhā-  
 Nābhāga } gādīṣṭa.  
 Nābhāga (son of Rīṣṭa) pr. 593-  
 604.  
 Nābhāgādīṣṭa } k. 463, 588, 593.  
 Nābhāgārīṣṭa }  
 Nabhakānana p. S. 337.  
 Nābhānedīṣṭha k. 588, 593.  
 Nābhi k. 271, 273, 274.  
 Nāciketa 159.  
 Nadia dt. E. 326.  
 Nāga, race, 7, 55, 109-111, 115-117,  
 125, 127, 130-140, 201, (232, 234),  
 238, 279, 288, 362, 379, 395, 429-

435, 495, 516, 531, 542, 559, 571,  
 644, 645, 648, 653, 657-664, 677.  
 Nāga-dvīpa c. 284.  
 Nāga-giri mt. C. ? 288.  
 Nāgāhva, Nāga-pura } t. M. 355.  
 Nāga-sāhvaya }  
 Nāgpur t. C. 288.  
 Naimiṣa for. M. 306.  
 Nairṇika p. S. 337.  
 Nairṛta p. S. ? 337.  
 Naiṣadha p. W. 337, 341, 343.  
 Naiṣika p. S. 337.  
 Naiwal r. N. 291.  
 Nakula k. 312, 322, 342.  
 Nala k. 299, 343, 362.  
 Nala pr. 597, 600-602.  
 Nala candanodaka-dundubhi P pr.  
 647.  
 Nalakālīka p. S. 337.  
 Nalakānana p. S. 337.  
 Nala-nābha dg. 404.  
 Naldrug t. S. 289.  
 Nalina tr. 25.  
 Nalinī pt. 30.  
 Nāmavāsaka p. S. 333.  
 Nanda p. N. 383, 412.  
 Nanda m. 517.  
 Nandā r. N. 369, 383, 412.  
 Nanda-ka dg. 416, 418.  
 Nandana pl. 4, 487.  
 Nandana for. N. 278, 281.  
 Nanda-vatī t. N. 411.  
 Nāndīmukha pīṭṭa, 155, 179.  
 Nandinī q. 446.  
 Nandinī q. 618.  
 Nara 2.  
 Nara k. 442.  
 Nārā, waters, 20, 229.  
 Nārada rs. 4, 571, 654.  
 Naraka k. 328, 383.  
 Naraka 47-49, 54, 57, 69-72, 158,  
 247, 250; *see* Hell. [504.  
 Nara-simha incarnation, 21, 503,  
 Nārāyaṇa g. 2, 20, 55, 228, 229,  
 269, 280, 386.  
 Nārāyaṇī ga. 513-515.  
 Nārīkela p. SE. 360.  
 Nārīkela isl. 360.  
 Nārīkhorum dt. N. 324.  
 Nariṣya k. 350, 463.  
 Nariṣyanta (son of Manu Vaivas-  
 vata) k. 463, 588, 666.  
 Nariṣyanta (son of Marutta) k. 577,  
 665-668, 673-676, 680-682.

- Narmadā (*Nerbudda*) r. C. and W. 19, 286, 296, 298, 333, 338, 339, 343, 344, 365, 368, 371, 600.  
 Nāsatiya g. 460, 575; see *Asvins*.  
 Nasik t. W. 289, 337, 339, 365.  
 Nāsikya p. W. 337, 339, 365.  
 Nāsikyāva p. W. 337, 339.  
 Nature (Prakṛti), 192, 193, 196, 224, 225, 231, 232.  
 Nauclea tr. 25, 277, 565.  
 Nava k. 333.  
 Nava-rāṣṭra c. and p. M. 333.  
 Nebu tr. 25.  
 Nediṣṭha, see Nābhānediṣṭha.  
 Nelumbium pt. 29, 30, 147; see *Lotus*.  
 Nepāl c. N. 316, 321, 322, 345-347, 360, 376.  
 Nerbudda r.; see Narmadā.  
 Newar p. N. 345.  
 Nibhā p. prs. 627.  
 Nicotā r. M. 292.  
 Nidhi dg. 408, 409, 415-419, 494, 638.  
 Nigarhara p. N. 345.  
 Nighna gb. 264.  
 Nightshade pt. 166.  
 Nihāra p. N. 345.  
 Nikāṣa p. S. 362.  
 Nikrntana, hell, 71, 72.  
 Nila mts. N. 275-279, 388.  
 Nila k. 334, 344.  
 Nila dg. 416, 419.  
 Nilāyudha p. W. 334.  
 Nilgiri mts. S. 285, 363.  
 Nilī q. 353.  
 Nilotpala pt. 29, 30, 104.  
 Nīpa k. 350, 598.  
 Nīpa rs. 597-599.  
 Nīpa p. 350, 353, 598.  
 Nīpa tr. see Kadamba.  
 Nirāhāra p. N. 345.  
 Niraya, hell, 68, 70.  
 Nirbandhyā r. C. 299.  
 Nirbindhyā r. C. 299.  
 Nir-māṣṭi d. 257.  
 Nirṛti gs. 250, 263, 490.  
 Nirvindhya r. C. 299, 605, 606.  
 Nirvindhya r. S. 299.  
 Nirvirā r. M. 292.  
 Nirvṛti-cakṣus r. 440.  
 Niṣāda p. C. 360, 361.  
 Niṣadha c. and p. W. 300, 343, 360.  
 Niṣadha mts. N. 275-277.  
 Niṣadha mt. NW. 278.  
 Niṣadhā r. W. p. 300.  
 Niṣadhāvati r. W. p. 300.  
 Niscara rs. 415.  
 Niscirā r. M. 292.  
 Niscitā r. M. 292.  
 Niṣpāva pt. 86, 165, 244.  
 Niṣumbha d. 488, 494-497, 500, 503, 506-509, 517-521, 524.  
 Nisvirā r. M. 292.  
 Nitya-naimittika sf. 95.  
 Nivāra cer. 165.  
 Nivārā r. M. 292.  
 Niveśa, 318.  
 Niyati gs. 269.  
 Niyojikā gb. 257, 259, 264.  
 Nṛsimha p. NW. 375.  
 Nūpī r. M. p. 295.  
 Nymphæa pt. 29, 30.  
 Oceans, 275.  
 Ocymum pt. 164, 532.  
 Odra p. and c. E. 329.  
 Ogha-vatī r. M. 290, 306.  
 Okhalakiya p. 366.  
 Om, 128, 195, 205, 206, 550-554, 557, 561.  
 Omens, 207-211, 263.  
 Onion pt. 165.  
 Organs of sense (indriya), 15, 16.  
 Orissa c. E. 284, 301, 327, 334, 335, 360, 361, 365.  
 Ortygornis bd. 28, 86.  
 Osmotreron bd. 28.  
 Ougeinia tr. 28.  
 Owl, 72, 263.  
 Oxalis pt. 25.  
 Oxus r. NW. 292, 324.  
 Oxydraci p. N. 377.  
 Paddy, 84.  
 Paddy-bird, 59, 86.  
 Padgama p. C. 343.  
 Padma, flower, 30.  
 Padma, seat, 195.  
 Padma dg. 416.  
 Pādma mahā-kalpa, 228.  
 Padmāvata c. W. 289.  
 Padmini pt. 30.  
 Padmini, science, 408-411, 415, 416, 419.  
 Pahlava p. W. 314, 320, 350, 353, 368, 371, 383.



- Pahoj r.* W. 299.  
*Pairi r.* C. 285.  
*Paisuni r.* M. 297.  
*Paitrya cst.* 361.  
*Pāka-saṁsthā sf.* 128.  
*Palāṇḍu pt.* 165.  
*Palāśh tr.* 28.  
*Palāśinī r.* 306.  
*Pallava ? p.* N. 314.  
*Pallava p.* S. 332.  
*Palmyra palm, tr.* 27.  
*Pāṁśa-pāla ? p.* NE. 381.  
*Pāṇ p.* SE. 361.  
*Panasa tr.* 25.  
*Pañcadaka p.* NW. 372.  
*Pañcajana ? dt.* NW. 312.  
*Pañcāla c. and p.* M. 308, 309, 350-355, 382.  
*Pañcāla p., = Pañcāla.*  
*Pañcana r.* M. 330.  
*Pañcanada c. and p.* NW. 312, 372, 378.  
*Pañcāpsaras l. C. ?* 342.  
*Pañca-śaila mt.* N. 279.  
*Pañcodaka ? p.* NW. 372.  
*Pandanus, shrub.* 26.  
*Pāṇḍara mt.* M. ? 288.  
*Pāṇḍava f.* 6-9, 19-24, 341, 344-347, 355, 365, 377, 416, 461, 669, 670.  
*Pāṇḍaveya pr.* 31, 37.  
*Pandhawa mt.* M. ? 287.  
*Pāṇḍu k.* 3, 19, 20, 37, 146, 345.  
*Pāṇḍua t.* E. 326.  
*Pāṇḍua h.* M. 288.  
*Pāṇḍura mt.* N. 279.  
*Pāṇḍura mt.* M. ? 288.  
*Pāṇḍya p.* S. 287, 304, 331, 332, 344, 370.  
*Pāṇḍya ? p.* W. 369.  
*Panicum cer.* 165, 203, 244.  
*Pañjāb* 311-318, 321, 324, 333, 347, 351, 373, 377-380.  
*Pañkaja, flower.* 30.  
*Pañkajinī l.* W. 445.  
*Pañkinī r.* M. ? 298.  
*Para p.* S. 365.  
*Para period,* 224, 228.  
*Parā r.* M. 295.  
*Pāra rs.* 402, 407.  
*Pārā r.* M. 295, 299.  
*Pārada p.* NW. 312, 317, 319, 369, 382.  
*Parakṣara p.* W. 339.  
*Parāśara rs.* 669, 677.  
*Pāraśava p.* W. 339, 369.  
*Pāraśava f.* 369.  
*Paraśu-Rāma rs.* 310, 338, 339, 369, 371, 464.  
*Para-taṅgaṇa p.* N. 323.  
*Pārāvata tr.* 25.  
*Pārāvata goda,* 415.  
*Pārbbati r.* M. 295, 299.  
*Pārijāta tr.* 27, 494.  
*Parīkṣit k.* 379.  
*Pāripātra mts.* M. 285, 286, 295, 354.  
*Pāripātra mts.* N. 277, 279.  
*Parita p.* NW. 317.  
*Parivarta-ka gb.* 257, 258, 263.  
*Pāriyātra mts.* M.; = Pāripātra.  
*Parjanya g.* 178, 539, 618.  
*Parjanya rs.* 449.  
*Paruā r.* M. 294.  
*Parpāsā r.* M. 294.  
*Paru-śālāgra mt.* NE. 388.  
*Paru-śavara p.* SE. 361.  
*Parrot,* 28, 87.  
*Parsaroti r.* M. 297.  
*Partridge,* 28, 86.  
*Pārul tr.* 27.  
*Pārvaṇa śrāddha* 157.  
*Parvata rs.* 269.  
*Pārvatī gs.* 290, 488, 493, 494.  
*Parwan r.* M. 299.  
*Pāṣaṇḍa p.* M. 354.  
*Pāśinī r.* 306.  
*Paspalum cer.* 244.  
*Passion (rāga),* 15, 16.  
*Passion (rajas), see Qualities.*  
*Paśu-pāla c.* NE. 381.  
*Paśu-pati dg.* 268.  
*Paṭaccara p.* M. 309, 343.  
*Pātāla tr.* 27.  
*Pātāla, world,* 47, 55, 60, 110-115, 119, 120, 125, 132-137, 429-435, 465, 475, 503, 518, 521, 531, 604-608, 645, 648, 656-661, 664, 677.  
*Pātāla-ketu d.* 109, 113-116, 119-122.  
*Pāstandhama mt.* M. ? 287.  
*Pataṅgaka mt.* N. 279.  
*Pathar mts.* M. 286.  
*Patna t. and dt.* M. 330.  
*Pattīāla dt.* N. 321, 347.  
*Paṭu p.* C. 343.  
*Paudanya t. C. ?* 337.  
*Paupḍra g. and c.* E. 329.

- Paundraka, Paundrika p. E. 329.  
 Paunika p. W. P. 336.  
 Paurava, race, 331, 350, 360, 369, 374, 384, 461, 598, 677.  
 Paurava p. NE. 384.  
 Paurika p. S. 336.  
 Paurpamāsa rs. 269.  
 Paṅkala cer. 165.  
 Pāvaka dg. 270.  
 Pāvamāna dg. 270.  
 Pāvanī r. NE. 323.  
 Payolli p. r. C. P. 299.  
 Payoṣṇī r. W. 299, 335, 365.  
 Payoṣṇī r. M. 299.  
 Pea, 84, 86, 244, 245.  
 Peacock, 87, 147, 260, 394.  
 Pearl, 304, 366, 475.  
 Peepul, see *Pipal*.  
 Pelican, 30.  
 Pelicanus, bd. 30.  
 Pen-gaṅga r. C. 299.  
 Penner r. S. 303.  
 Perdix bd. 28, 86.  
 Peri r. S. 304.  
 Persia, 314.  
 Peyārā tr. 25.  
 Phala-giri mt. W. 373.  
 Phalgu r. M. 297.  
 Phalguluka p. W. 373.  
 Phalgunaka p. W. 373.  
 Phalgunī est. 169, 361, 367.  
 Phaseolus pt. 84.  
 Phasianus bd. 29.  
 Phena-giri mt. W. 373.  
 Pheasant, 28, 29.  
 Phyllanthus tr. 25, 26.  
 Physician, 160, 180, 261.  
 Piṇḍika p. N. 322.  
 Pig, see *Boar*.  
 Pigeon, 28, 84, 86, 87, 208, 263.  
 Pina p. N. 319.  
 Pināka, bow, 403, 474.  
 Pinākā p. r. S. 303.  
 Piṇḍa, cake, 144, 155-158, 162, 167, 179, 183, 255, 532, 683.  
 Piṇḍa-mālaka pt. 165.  
 Piṇḍākṣa bd. 3.  
 Pingala mt. N. 279.  
 Pingala p. NW. 379.  
 Piñjalā r. 379.  
 Piñjara mt. N. 279.  
 Pinus tr. 27.  
 Pipal tr. 33, 277.  
 Pipāṭhaka mt. N. 279.  
 Pipīlika, ant. 86.  
 Pipīrā, large ant. 86.  
 Pippala tr. 33, 277.  
 Pippalā r. M. 297.  
 Pippalīroṇī r. M. 297.  
 Piprā, large ant. 86.  
 Pipyālāroṇī r. M. 297.  
 Piśāca d. 46, 47, 158, 207 232 236, 238, 308, 520, 533.  
 Piśācikā r. M. 297.  
 Piśika p. S. 366.  
 Piśuna gb. 263.  
 Pitrs, 14, 75, 79, 80, 85, 88, 96, 119, 128, 133, 135, 144, 150-172, 176-183, 218, 232, 233, 236, 247, 249, 253, 254, 270, 272, 483, 526-538, 555, 561, 576, 619, 620, 639, 680, 686: their 31 classes, 533-535.  
 Pitrsomā r. SE. 304.  
 Pīvara rs. 442.  
 Pīvarī q. 76.  
 Plakṣa-dvīpa, 272-275.  
 Plakṣāvatarapa ti. N. 127.  
 Planet, 168, 259, 278, 385-387, 431, 535, 581, 626.  
 Plantain tr. 25.  
 Plava bd. 30.  
 Podiceps bd. 31.  
 Pole-star, 112, 207.  
 Polyandry, 3, 19, 21, 23.  
 Pomegranate tr. 25.  
 Ponani r. S. 304.  
 Poona t. W. 336.  
 Porcupine, 49, 181.  
 Pota-ka p. NW. 388.  
 Potter's wheel, 72.  
 Prabhākara rs. 320.  
 Prabhāsa ti. W. 338, 340.  
 Prabhāva k. 411, 412.  
 Prabhā-vatī q. 664.  
 Pracaṇḍa d. 266, 267.  
 Pracaṇḍa pr. 610.  
 Pracīra pr. 610.  
 Pracodikā gb. 264.  
 Pradhā demi-gs. 369, 559.  
 Pradhāna, 217, 220, 225.  
 Prādheya p. W. 368, 369.  
 Pradyumna g. 21.  
 Prāgyotīṣa p., c. and t. NE. 319, 328, 357, 383, 501.  
 Prajāni k. 611.  
 Prajāpati, 22, 70, 96, 99, 152, 153, 178, 179, 219, 233, 234, 238, 248, 258, 272, 273, 415, 436, 453, 455,

- 465, 470, 473, 474, 494, 526, 534-536, 551, 560, 566, 572, 582, 608, 685.
- Prājāpatya *pl.* 246.
- Prajāti *k.* 610, 611.
- Prajā-vatī *q.* 272.
- Prākara *k.* and *c.* 273.
- Prākara *k.* and *c.* 273.
- Prakāśaka *gb.* 267.
- Prākṛt, 352.
- Prakṛti, 217, 220-225, 228, 231, 232, 483, 489.
- Pralolupa *bd.* 6.
- Pramathā *q.* 618.
- Pramati *rs.* 586, 597, 600-603.
- Pramati *k.* 611.
- Pramati *b.* 612.
- Pramattā *gb.* 264.
- Pramlocā *aps.* 538.
- Prāmnū (*son of Manu Vaivasvata*) *k.* 463, 588.
- Prāmnū (*son of Vatsapri*) *k.* 610.
- Pramuca *rs.* 443, 445.
- Prāṇa (*vital air*), 203.
- Prāṇa *dg.* 269.
- Prāṇa *rs.* 415.
- Prāṇāyāma, 194-196.
- Prāṇhita *r.* S. 300, 302.
- Prāpta *p.* N. 378.
- Prāpti (*faculty*) 195.
- Prasandhi *k.* 611.
- Prasātika *cer.* 165.
- Prasthala *p.* 320, 321, 347.
- Prasuhma *c.* and *p.* 327.
- Prasūpāla *c.* NE. 381.
- Prasūta *gods.* 454.
- Prasūti *demi-gs.* 247-249.
- Pratardanākhyagods, 436.
- Pratilomā Sarasvatī *r.* 31.
- Pratipa *k.* 350.
- Pratiṣṭhāna *t.* M. 93, 587, 590.
- Pratyāhara, 196.
- Pratyaya-sarga, 231.
- Praugṭhapadā *cat.* 381.
- Pravaṅga *p.* E. 325.
- Prāvāra-karpa *m.* 346.
- Pravijaya *p.* E. 327.
- Pravira *m.* 44.
- Prāvṛṣeya *p.* E. 327.
- Prayāga *t.* M. 310, 361.
- Pṛiti *w.* 269.
- Priyalaunkika *p.* N. 319.
- Priyaṅgu *cer.* 165, 203, 244, 245.
- Priya-putra *bd.* 28, 29.
- Priya-vrata, 247, 248, 271-274. 445.
- Proṣaka *p.* N. 320, 321.
- Prṣadhra *k.* 463, 588-592.
- Prṣata *k.* 350, 353.
- Prṥthā *q.* 23; *see* Kuntī.
- Prṥthu *rs.* 442.
- Prṣadhru, *see* Prṣadhra.
- Psidium *tr.* 25.
- Pterosperrum *tr.* 27.
- Pudukota *dt.* S. 332.
- Pukkasa, *tribe.* 47-50, 68, 85, 87, 159.
- Pulaha *rs.* 246, 249, 270, 274.
- Pulastya *rs.* 246, 249, 269, 533.
- Puleya *p.* W. 338.
- Pulinda *p.* N. 315, 316, 321-323.
- Pulinda *p.* C. 317.
- Pulinda *p.* S. 335, 359.
- Pulinda *p.* W. 338.
- Pulse, 84, 86, 165, 244, 245.
- Punarvasu *cat.* 169, 358.
- Puṇḍarika *pt.* 29; *see* Lotus.
- Puṇḍra *k.* 325.
- Puṇḍra *p.* and *c.* E. 327, 329, 331, 334, 358.
- Puṇḍraka *p.* E. 329.
- Punica *tr.* 25.
- Puñjikā-stanā *aps.* 407.
- Punnāga *tr.* 26.
- Puṇya *isl.* S. 390.
- Pura, *town.* 241, 242.
- Purāpas, 108, 219, 247, 685-689.
- Purandara *g.* 494, 623.
- Purandara-pura *t.* 113, 114.
- Purandhra *p.* NW. 313.
- Purañjaya *ps.* 146.
- Purantāla *f.* t. S. 412.
- Pure *articles.* 181, 182.
- Puri *t.* E. 336.
- Purification, 180-185.
- Purikā *t.* S. 336.
- Purṇa *r.* W. 289, 299, 335, 365.
- Pūrpa *p.* N. 324.
- Purpotkaṭa *k.* E. 357.
- Puru *k.* 454.
- Pūru *k.* 384.
- Purūravas *k.* 146, 167, 587, 589.
- Puruṣa, 220-224, 248.
- Pṛṣadhra, *see* Prṣadhra.
- Puṣan (*Sun*), 582.
- Puṣkala *p.* N. 320, 321, 378.
- Puṣkalāvati *t.* NW. 321.
- Puṣkara *t.* and *p.* W. 306, 685.
- Puṣkara *rs.* 538.

Puṣkara-dvīpa, 272, 275.  
 Puṣkara-mālin m. 116.  
 Puṣkarāvati t. NW. 321.  
 Puṣpa mt. 288.  
 Puṣpajā r. S. 288, 303.  
 Puṣpa-jāti r. S. 304.  
 Puṣpaka mt. N. 279.  
 Puṣpa-vāhini r. S. 304.  
 Puṣpa-vatī r. S. 304.  
 Puṣpa-vatī ti. E. 304.  
 Puṣpa-vaṇī r. S. P. 304.  
 Puṣya cst. 169, 358.  
 Put, hell, 444.

Qualities (guna), 3-6, 16, 19-21,  
 220, 221, 224, 225, 229-239, 247,  
 251.

Querquedula bd. 30.  
 Quince tr. 25, 425.

Raddhakataka p. NW. 317.  
 Rādheya p. f. 369.  
 Raghu k. 304.  
 Rāi pt. 84.  
 Raivata mt. W. 289, (445).  
 Raivata for. W. P. 23, 24.  
 Raivata, Manu and manvantara,  
 271, 443, 449, 549.  
 Raivataka mt. W. P. 445.  
 Rāja-grha t. NW. 318.  
 Rāja-grha t. M. 286, 330, 357.  
 Rāja-māṣa pt. 165.  
 Rājanya p. N. 380.  
 Rājas rs. 270.  
 Rāja-saila mt. N. 279.  
 Rājasūya sf. 34, 35, 39, 58, 61, 366,  
 541.  
 Rāja-śyāmāka cer. 165.  
 Rājgir t. M. 331, 357.  
 Rājmahall hills, E. 325, 330.  
 Rājputāna c. W. 286, 333, 354.  
 Rājya-varadhana k. 577-579, 583-  
 586, 684.  
 Rākṣasa d. 6-8, 42, 47, 84, 89, 162,  
 166, 201, 232-238, 255, 258, 279,  
 346, 367, 402-405, 425-434, 516-  
 520, 533, 541, 559, 571, 641, 677,  
 682, 683.  
 Rākṣasa marriage, 596, 671, 672.  
 Rakta-kanchan tr. 27, 165.  
 Rakta-vīja d. 501, 504-506, 524.  
 Raktotpala pt. 29, 30.  
 Rāma (Candra), k. 309, 351, 352,  
 655.

Rāma Jāmadagnya, see Paraśu-  
 Rāma.  
 Rama (Bala-), see Bala-Rāma.  
 Rāma p. NW. P. 317.  
 Ramaṇa p. NW. P. 317.  
 Ramaṇa p. NW. 317.  
 Rāmaṭha p. NW. 317.  
 Rambhā w. 647.  
 Rambhaka p. NW. 388.  
 Rām-gaṅgā r. M. 292, 354.  
 Rāmgaṛh c. C. 296.  
 Rāmgaṛh h. E. 330.  
 Ramyaka c. N. 390, 391.  
 Rapavanya p. k. 551.  
 Raṅgeya p. E. 326.  
 Raṅkṣu p. r. N. 292.  
 Rantideva k. 363.  
 Rapti r. M. 294, 329.  
 Rasā r. NW. 377.  
 Rasālaya p. N. 377.  
 Rasātala, world, 109, 110, 115, 133,  
 430, 435, 531, 605-608, 644, 659.  
 Rāṣṭra-varadhana k. 577.  
 Rai, 85, 86, 184, 210.  
 Rati gs. 114.  
 Ratnadhāra p. N. 320.  
 Ratna-vāhini r. M. P. 298.  
 Ratnavat mt. N. 279.  
 Rātrī r. M. P. 298.  
 Raucya, Manu and manvantara  
 271, 524, 526, 536-538, 550.  
 Raudra d. P. 32.  
 Raudrāsva k. 320.  
 Raudrī cst. 358.  
 Raurava, hell, 54, 62, 68, 72, 87,  
 250.  
 Rāvāna d. k. 362.  
 Raven, 81, 208.  
 Rāvi r. NW. 291, 292, 313-318.  
 Rc hymns, 20, 64, 458-460, 484  
 553-557, 561, 565, 570, 581.  
 Roika rs. 310, 462, 595.  
 Rddhi w. 247, 248.  
 Rddhi demi-gs. 248.  
 Rechna doab, NW. 315.  
 Religion, 119, 120, 124, 170-173,  
 178, 179.  
 Religious devotion (yoga), 92, 167,  
 190-207, 210, 213-216.  
 Rer r. C. 296, 297.  
 Rest-house, 81.  
 Reur r. C. 296.  
 Revanta dg. 460, 461, 575, 576.

Revatī *cat.* 170, 384, 443-448.  
 Revatī *q.* 24.  
 Revatī *q.* 443-449.  
 Revenue, 422, 423, 593, 617, 618, 657.  
 Rewa *dt.* C. 297, 341.  
 R̥g-Veda, 152, 206; *see* R̥c hymns.  
 Rhinoceros, 164, 168, 181, 532.  
 Rice, 84, 165, 244, 245.  
 Riches, *see* Wealth.  
 Righteousness (Dharma), 21, 36,  
 39, 41, 53, 54, 66, 88, 96, 108, 124,  
 138, 144, 148, 170-172, 185, 187,  
 198, 215, 264, 273, 282, 400, 422,  
 424, 430, 442, 459, 575, 578, 595-  
 598, 629, 630, 657, 671, 672.  
 R̥iṣṭa *k.* 588, 593.  
 R̥iṣṭa *demi-gs.* 559.  
 R̥kṣa *mts.* C. 285, 286, 298-302, 336,  
 345.  
 Rocana *mt.* 288.  
 Rohi *rs.* 294.  
 Rohiṇī *cat.* 169, 355.  
 Rohiṇī *demi-gs.* 269, 420.  
 Rohita *k.* and *c.* 273.  
 Rohitāśya *pr.* 42, 51, 58.  
 Rope and jar at the well, 70, 71.  
 Rotileria *tr.* 26.  
 R̥ṣabha *k.* 271, 274.  
 R̥ṣabha *p.* *mts.* N. 275, 277.  
 R̥ṣabha *h.* S. 366.  
 R̥ṣabha *p.* S. 366.  
 R̥ṣabha *rs.* 415.  
 R̥ṣabhā *r.* C P 300.  
 R̥ṣi-giri *p.* *h.* M. 357.  
 R̥ṣika *p.* N. 332.  
 R̥ṣika *p.* S. 332, 366.  
 R̥ṣikā *r.* S. 366.  
 R̥ṣikā *r.* 305.  
 R̥ṣikulyā *r.* E. 285, 304.  
 R̥ṣikulyā *r.* 305.  
 R̥ṣis, *Seven*, 22, 226, 246, 270.  
 R̥ṣyamūka *mt.* S. 289, 365.  
 R̥ṣyaśr̥ṅga *rs.* 464.  
 R̥ta-dhvaja *k.*; *see* Kuvalayāśva.  
 R̥ta-vāc *rs.* 443, 444, 447, 448.  
 R̥tu-h̥arikā *gb.* 257, 261, 266.  
 R̥tukulyā *p.* *r.* SE. 304.  
 R̥tu-mālā *r.* S. 303.  
 R̥tvij, 160, 178.

Rucaka *mt.* N. 279.  
 Ruci *dg.* 247, 248.  
 Ruci *rs.* 526-538.  
 Rudra *g.* 10, 55, 168, 225, 232, 246,  
 247, 268, 269, 403, 461, 525.  
 Rules, various, 170-185.  
 Rumex *pt.* 25. |  
 Rūpā *r.* 306.  
 Rūpapa *p.* W. 339.  
 Rūpasa *p.* W. 339.  
 Rūpavāhika *p.* W. P 339.  
 Rūpnarain *r.* E. 300, 301, 330.  
 Ruru, deer, 164, 211.  
 Rutha *k.* 452.  
 Sabala *rs.* 270.  
 Sābandhanā *r.* M P 294.  
 Sabar *p.* C. and S. 335.  
 Sabara *ps.* 18.  
 Sabindu *mt.* N. 278.  
 Saccarum *gr.* 192.  
 Sacī *gs.* 4, 90, 102, 420, 489.  
 Sacrifices, 170, 203, 433, 434, 621;  
*see* Śrāddha, &c.  
 Sad-ācāra, *see* Custom.  
 Sadānīrā *r.* W. 294.  
 Sadānīrā *r.* M. 294, 329.  
 Sadānīrā-mayā *r.* M. P 294.  
 Sadātīrā *r.* M. P 294.  
 Sādhyā *dg.* 55, 461.  
 Sagara *k.* 314, 317-320, 332, 346,  
 350, 362, 371, 656.  
 Sāgarānūpa *c.* E. 328, 344.  
 Saha-deva *k.* 346, 364, 367.  
 Sahaja *k.* 359.  
 Sahajanyā *aps.* 571.  
 Sahasa *p.* *p.* W. 340.  
 Sahasrākṣa *g.* 524.  
 Sahasra-patra *pt.* 30.  
 Sahasra-śikhara *mt.* N. 279.  
 Sahiṣṇu *rs.* 270.  
 Sahiṣṇu *rs.* 454.  
 Sahodaka *kinsman*, 157, 184, 185,  
 255.  
 Sahya *mts.* 285, 289, 303, 310.  
 Saila *c.* S. 332.  
 Sailika *p.* S. 332, 362.  
 Sailodā *r.* N. 351, 381, 382.  
 Sailodakā *r.* N. 351, 382.  
 Sailūṣa *p.* S. 332, 362.  
 Saindhava *p.* NW. 315.  
 Sainika *p.* *p.* N. 322.  
 Sairandhrī *g.* 665.  
 Sairīṣaka *p.* M. 383.

- Sairiṣṭha *p.* NE. 382.  
 Saivāla *mt.* N. 388.  
 Saivyā *q.* 35, 38, 47-52.  
 Saka *p.* NW. 314-320, 346, 353, 371, 463.  
 Saka *p.* M. 350.  
 Sāka *p.* NW. 388.  
 Sākabhava *k.* and *c.* 273.  
 Sāka-dvīpa, 272-275, 569.  
 Sākala *t.* NW. 316, 364, 372, 373.  
 Sākala-dvīpa *dt.* NW. 364.  
 Sākambharī *gs.* 518.  
 Sāketa *t.* M. 353.  
 Sākhā, 129.  
 Sākhā-nagaraka, *city*, 241, 242.  
 Sakra *g.* 482, 503.  
 Sakṛdgrāha *p.* N. 346.  
 Sakṛdgrāha *p.* N. 346.  
 Sakri *r.* E. 285, 286, 298.  
 Sakṛn-nandā *r.* NE. 347.  
 Sakṛtraka *p.* N. 346.  
 Sakti *gs.* 129, 501-509, 512-514, 520.  
 Sakti, Saktri *rs.* 669, 677.  
 Sakuli *r.* E. *p.* 285, 298.  
 Sakuni *gb.* 257, 258, 263.  
 Sākya-muni, 350.  
 Sāl *tr.* 27.  
 Sāla *pr.* 670.  
 Sāla *tr.* 27.  
 Salem *t.* and *dt.* S. 332, 365.  
 Sālīk *bd.* 58.  
 Sālmali *tr.* 82, 147.  
 Sālmali-dvīpa, 272-275.  
 Sālmaveśmaka *p.* W. 373.  
 Salt, 166, 175, 182.  
 Sālva *c.* and *p.* W. 309, 315, 347-350, 373, 595.  
 Sālveya *p.*; *see* Sālva.  
 Salya *k.* 311.  
 Salya-kirtana *pl.* *p.* M. 378.  
 Samādhi *m.* 467.  
 Sāman *hymns*, 20, 64, 235, 236, 458-460, 484, 554-557, 561, 581.  
 Samāna, (*vital air*) 203.  
 Samānodaka, 157; *see* Sahodaka.  
 Samarkand *c.* 314.  
 Sāma-Veda, 152, 206, 235.  
 Sambara *d.* 10, 139.  
 Sambarapa, *see* Samvarapa.  
 Sambhu *g.* 408.  
 Sambhūti *w.* 249, 269.  
 Samīka *rs.* 6, 9, 11, 17.  
 Sampāti *bd.* 6.  
 Samrāj *prs.* 272.  
 Samūla *mt.* N. 279.  
 Samvarapa *k.* 461, 567.  
 Samvarta *rs.* 653, 654.  
 Samvarta-ka, *weapon*, 658, 662.  
 Saṇa *pt.* 245.  
 Sānandini *r.* M. 294.  
 Sanatkumāra, 232.  
 Saṇḍa *tr.* 390.  
 Saṅgala *t.* NW. 316.  
 Sañjñā *gs.* 455-460, 566-569, 575.  
 Saṅkalana, 7.  
 Saṅkalpa *pfn.* 246, 247.  
 Saṅkara *g.* 460.  
 Saṅketa *p.* M. 353.  
 Saṅkha *h.* S. 365.  
 Saṅkha *dg.* 416, 419.  
 Saṅkha-kūṭa *mt.* N. 279, 282.  
 Saṅkhavati *r.* NE. 388.  
 Saṅkhya, 129, 231, 588, 688.  
 Saṅkrandana *k.* 670, 675, 681.  
 Saṅku *d.* 636.  
 Sannati *w.* 249, 270.  
 Sānta *k.* 442.  
 Sānta *k.* 446.  
 Sāntāl Pargana *dt.* 325, 356.  
 Sāntanu *k.* 9.  
 Sānti *b.* 539-541, 546-548.  
 Sāntika *p.* NW. 372.  
 Sānumat *mt.* N. 279.  
 Sānumat *mt.* N. 279.  
 Sapinda 156-158, 184, 185, 255.  
 Sapiśika *p.* S. 366.  
 Saptalā *pt.* = Mallikā.  
 Saptā-parṇa *tr.* 27.  
 Sarabha (*beast*), 49.  
 Saraca *tr.* *see* Aśoka.  
 Saradvat *ps.* 464.  
 Saraja *p.* C. 341.  
 Sarālī *bd.* 58.  
 Sārasa *k.* 333, 364.  
 Sārasa *bd.* 647.  
 Sarasi-ja *pt.* 30.  
 Sārasvata *p.* M. 340, 351.  
 Sārasvata *p.* W. 340.  
 Sarasvati *gs.* 2, 17, 18, 125-132, 434, 435, 515.  
 Sarasvati *r.* M. 23, 127, 290, 310, 312, 320, 351, 354, 377, 378.  
 Sarasvati *r.* W. 340.  
 Sarasvati, Prati-lomā, *r.* 31.  
 Sarasvati (*other rivers*), 290, 306.  
 Sarava *p.* S. *p.* 362.  
 Saravā *p.* *r.* SE. 305.

*Sarāvati r. SE.* p. 305.  
*Sarayū r. M.* 323, 376.  
*Sārdana ? p. N.* 378.  
*Sārgiga ? p. W.* 368.  
*Sārika bd.* 49, 58, 84.  
*Sariṣā pt.* 84.  
*Sarjū r. M.* 376.  
*Sarkara p. NW.* 373.  
*Sārkarākṣya b.* 373.  
*Sārkarāvartā r. S. ?* 373.  
*Sarmāti, see Saryāti.*  
*Sarmiṣṭhā q.* 669.  
*Sārṅga, bow,* 108, 514.  
*Sarpa ? p. C.* 362.  
*Sarṣapa pt.* 84.  
*Sarson pt.* 84.  
*Sarva dg.* 268.  
*Sarva g.* 460.  
*Sarva p. S.* 362.  
*Sarvaga ? p. N.* 345.  
*Sarva-hārī gb.* 265.  
*Sarvānī gs.* 490.  
*Saryāta k.* 368; *see Saryāti.*  
*Sāryāta p. W.* 368, 371.  
*Saryāti k.* 368, 462, 463, 588, 600.  
*Sāsaka p. W. ?* 372.  
*Sasa-vindu k.* 653.  
*Sāśika p. W. ?* 340, 372.  
*Sāstras, Wicked,* 79, 252.  
*Sasurasa mt.* 288.  
*Sāśvata p. W.* 340.  
*Sasya-han-tr gb.* 257, 259, 264.  
*Satabalā r. E. ?* 301.  
*Sata-bhiṣaj cst.* 170, 381.  
*Satadru r. NW.* 291, 316.  
*Sata-dyumna k.* 454.  
*Sātaka p. N.* 380.  
*Satamālā r. S.* 303.  
*Satamālī pt.* 165.  
*Sata-patha ? dt. ?* M. 309.  
*Satāra dt. W.* 362.  
*Sata-rūpā,* 247, 248.  
*Sata-śrṅgin mt.* N. 279.  
*Sata-vāhana p. SE.* 361.  
*Satī gs.* 269, 408.  
*Śatīrā r. M.* 294.  
*Śātipura mts. C.* 286, 287, 299, 343, 345, 362, 365.  
*Satru-ghna pr.* 352.  
*Satru-jit k.* 109-113, 117, 119, 135, 139, 140.  
*Satru-mardana pr.* 142, 143.  
*Śatsura p. C.* 343.  
*Śāttvata f.* 629.

*Saturn, planet,* 431, 461, 567, 576, 626.  
*Satya gods,* 436, 437, 442.  
*Satyaka k.* 449.  
*Satyākhyā gods,* 436, 437.  
*Sātyaki pr.* 629.  
*Satya-loka,* 553.  
*Satya-vat pr.* 349, 350.  
*Satya-vatī q.* 677.  
*Satya-vatī prs.* 595.  
*Saubha t. W.* 349.  
*Saudāsa k.* 336.  
*Saumya c.* 284.  
*Saumyā cst.* 355.  
*Saunaka rs.* 591.  
*Saunanda, club,* 606-609.  
*Saunandā q.* 604.  
*Saupdikera ? p. C.* 344.  
*Saur p. C. and S.* 335.  
*Saurāṣṭra p. W.* 370.  
*Sauri pat.* 31.  
*Sauri k. (son of Prajāti),* 612, 615.  
*Sauvīra p. and c.* 315, 368.  
*Sauvīrī q.* 664.  
*Savadhāna ? p. N.* 378.  
*Savana k.* 272.  
*Savara p. C. and S.* 319, 335, 361, 362.  
*Sāvārpa-ka, Manus and manvan-tara,* 524, 525, 549, 550.  
*Sāvārpi-ka, Manu and manvan-tara,* 458, 461, 463-466, 522-524, 549, 567, 576.  
*Savitṛ (Sun),* 282, 582.  
*Savitṛ d.* 262.  
*Sāvitra for. N.* 278, 282.  
*Sāvitṛī prs.* 349, 350.  
*Sāvitṛī, hymn,* 470.  
*Scythians,* 350.  
*Scorpion rp.* 172, 81, 85.  
*Screw-pine, shrub,* 26.  
*Self, see Soul.*  
*Self-existent, The,* 225; *see Supreme Being.*  
*Self-repression,* 194-200.  
*Selye r. E.* 300.  
*Semecarpus tr.* 25.  
*Seemul tr.* 82, 147, 191.  
*Senses, see Organs of Sense.*  
*Seonath r. C.* 285.  
*Serpents, The,* 232, 234, 531, 577, 681, 683; *see Nāga.*  
*Seṣa (Serpent) k. 1, 21, 469, 475, 609, 648, 681.*

- Sesamum* *pt.* and *seed*, 84, 86, 156, 162-168, 181, 224, 244, 245, 260, 261, 532.
- Setuka *p.* S. 332.
- Shadow-Sañjñā *gs.* 456-461, 464, 566-569, 576.
- Shāhābād *dt.* M. 309.
- Shāh-dheri *t.* NW. 379.
- Sheep, 164, 166, 235.
- Shieldrake *bd.* 30; *see* Cakravāka.
- Shorea *tr.* 27.
- Shrike *bd.* 28.
- Sibi *p.* NW. 377.
- Siddha *dg.* 55, 58, 78, 229, 393, 395, 403, 511, 530, 542, 581, 679, 682.
- Siddha-vīrya *k.* and *rs.* 441.
- Siḡhrā *r.* C. P. 299.
- Siḡhrodā *r.* C. 299.
- Sikhara *mt.* N. 279, 281.
- Sikhi *g.* 442.
- Silavatī ? Silāvatī ? *r.* E. 300.
- Silk, 86, 423.
- Silk-cotton tree, *see* Seemul.
- Silk-worm, 86.
- Siṁhala *p.* S. 366.
- Siṁhikā *d.* 367.
- Simla *t.* N. 316.
- Sin (*particular*), 78-88.
- Sinapis *pt.* 84.
- Sindh *c.* W. 313, 315, 373.
- Sindh *r.* M. 293.
- Sindh-sāgar doab, NW. 315.
- Sindhu *r.* NW. 290, 370.
- Sindhu *r.* M. 293.
- Sindhu *p.* and *c.* W. 315, 347, 368, 370, 665.
- Sindhu-kālaka-vairata ? *p.* W. 369, 370.
- Sindhūttama *ti.* M. 293.
- Sindhūttama *ti.* W. 293.
- Sindhu-vīrya *k.* 665.
- Siṁbāhu *r.* E. 300.
- Siṁbālī *r.* E. 300.
- Siṁrā *r.* N. 285.
- Siṁrā *r.* C. 299.
- Sirāla *p.* W. 338.
- Sirmour *dt.* N. 320.
- Sirsa *dt.* N. 321.
- Sisira *k.* and *c.* 273.
- Sisirakṣa *mt.* N. 279.
- Sisū-pāla *k.* 350.
- Sitā *r.* NE. 281, 388.
- Sitāmbuja *pt.* 30.
- Sitānta *mt.* N. 278-281
- Sitārtta *mt.* N. 278.
- Siterajā *r.* M. P. 297.
- Siṁbāhu *r.* E. 300.
- Sitodā *t.* N. 278, 281
- Siva *g.* 5, 17, 32, 38, 55, 98-100, 112, 125, 132, 133, 178, 206, 219, 224, 225, 249, 258, 262, 280, 281, 343, 356, 460, 471-474, 501-503, 509, 515, 521, 545, 555, 572, 574, 582, 588.
- Siva *k.* and *c.* 273.
- Sivā *r.* 299.
- Siva-dūtī *gs.* 503, 504, 507-509, 514, 524.
- Sivi *k.* 377.
- Sivi *p.* NW. 333, 354, 377-380.
- Sivākhyā *gods.* 436, 437.
- Skanda *g.* 269.
- Slavery, 42-45, 323, 674.
- Smell (*element*), 217, 221, 222.
- Smṛti *w.* 249, 269.
- Smṛti-hārikā *gb.* 257, 261, 266.
- Snake, 76, 85.
- Snātaka, 178.
- Snowy Mountains, *see* Himavat.
- Social rules, 170-184.
- Solanum *pt.* 166, 167.
- Solar Race, *dyn.* 43, 45, 683.
- Soma (*Moon*), *g.* 153, 162, 420, 535, 561, 582, 589, 626.
- Soma *rs.* 99, 269.
- Soma, *juice*, 259, 262, 545, 655.
- Somā *r.* N. 282.
- Soma-datta *pr.* 629.
- Soma-pā *pitṛs.* 533.
- Soma-pā *gb.* 262.
- Soma-saṁsthā *sf.* 128.
- Somekvarī *r.* NE. 306.
- Somnath *t.* W. 338, 340.
- Soṇa *r.* C. and M. 286, 288, 295, 298, 341.
- Sone *r.* = Soṇa.
- Sorrel *pt.* 25.
- Soul, 15, 142, 143, 150, 187, 190-194, 200, 206, 211, 220-225, 422, 459, 527, 542, 587.
- Sound (*element*), 217, 220-222, 238.
- Sparrow *bd.* 6, 28, 210.
- Spirituos liquor, 32, 83, 86, 100, 103, 106, 107, 136, 260, 573, 600, 603; *see* Intoxication.
- Spondias *tr.* 24.



- Sprite*, 250-268, 533, 545.  
*Śrāddha*, 79, 83, 133, 151, 154-171, 181, 185, 199, 203, 264, 266, 530, 531, 536, 537, 566, 686.  
*Śravaṇa* *cat.* 170, 376.  
*Śreevacolum* *t.* SE. 361.  
*Śrī* *gs.* 249, 269, 290, 484; *see* *Lakṣmī*.  
*Śrī-kākula* *t.* SE. 361.  
*Śrī-parvata* *mt.* S. 290, 366.  
*Ś'riphal* *tr.* 25, 425.  
*Śrī-saila*=*Śrī-parvata*.  
*Śrīngavat* *mts.* N. 277.  
*Śrīngavat* *mts.* N. 279.  
*Śrīngin* *rs.* 12.  
*Śrīngin* *mts.* N. 275, 276.  
*Śrījaya* *k.* 353.  
*Śrījaya* *f.* 353.  
*Śruta-devā* *q.* 361.  
*Stanapa* *p.* N. 321.  
*Stanayoṣika* *p.* N. P. 321.  
*Star-worship* 80.  
*Sterna* *bd.* 86.  
*Stośala* *p.* C. 342.  
*Strī-loka* *pl.* NW. 375.  
*Strī-rājya* *c.* and *p.* N. 375.  
*Strī-vāhya* *p.* NW. 375.  
*Su-bāhu* *pr.* 142, 143, 187-190, 207, 212-215.  
*Su-bāhu* *k.* 322, 323.  
*Subalāsya* *k.* 623.  
*Subarna-rekhā* *r.* E. 301, 327.  
*Subhā* *r.* C. 302.  
*Subhadra* *q.* 446.  
*Subhadra* *prs.* 627.  
*Subhra* *p.* E. 356.  
*Su-cakra* *pr.* 610.  
*Suci* *dg.* 270.  
*Sūci-mukha* *bd.* 80.  
*Sudāman* *dg.* 581.  
*Su-darśana* *rs.* 378.  
*Su-deva* *k.* 597, 600-602.  
*Su-deva* *k.* 600.  
*Su-deva* *k.* 627.  
*Sudhāman* *rs.* 449.  
*Sudhī* *gods*, 442.  
*Sūdra*, *caste* 85, 116, 123, 183, 318, 531, 591, 671, 676: *their duties*, 149.  
*Sūdra* *p.* W. and NW. 312-314, 368.  
*Sudrak* *p.* NW. 314.  
*Su-dyumna* *k.* 537-590.  
*Sugar-cane*, 175.  
*Su-grīva*, *monkey* *k.* 289, 333, 356.  
*Su-grīva* *d.* 495.  
*Suhma* *k.* 325.  
*Suhma* *p.* E. 327, 329, 334, 356.  
*Suhmottara* *p.* E. 327.  
*Su-hotra* *b.* 612.  
*Su-hotra* *k.* 670.  
*Suicide*, 621.  
*Suir* *p.* C. 335.  
*Sujaraka* *p.* E. 324.  
*Sujatā* *q.* 446.  
*Sujātya* *p.* M. or W. 371.  
*Sukālin* *pitrs*, 531.  
*Sukapāvata* *mt.* N. 278.  
*Su-kanyā* *prs.* 368, 600.  
*Su-keśī* *q.* 664.  
*Sukhodaya* *k.* and *c.* 273.  
*Sukra* *dg.* 58, 269, 650.  
*Sukra* (=Agni), 541, 544.  
*Sukṛṣa* *rs.* 11, 12.  
*Sukta* *rs.* 270.  
*Sukti* *h.* S. 365.  
*Suktimat* *mts.* 284, 285, 306.  
*Suktimatī* *r.* M. 285, 297.  
*Suktimatī* *t.* M. 298, 359.  
*Sukti-sāhvayā* *t.* M. 359.  
*Su-kumāra* *k.* and *c.* 273.  
*Su-kumārī* *r.* 305.  
*Sukūṭya* *p.* 307.  
*Sulaiman* *mts.* W. 347.  
*Sūlakāra* *p.* N. 321.  
*Sūlika* *p.* N. 323.  
*Sumahā-drumā* *r.* M. P. 296.  
*Sumanā* *q.* 670, 674-676.  
*Su-mati* *b.* 62, 69, 74, 76; *see* *Jaḍa*.  
*Su-mati* *k.* 274.  
*Su-mati* *k.* 361.  
*Su-mati* *pr.* 605.  
*Sumbha* *d.* 116, 488, 494-500, 503, 506-510, 517-521, 524.  
*Sumbha* *p.* E. P. 356.  
*Sumedhas* *gods*, 449.  
*Sumedhas* *rs.* 454.  
*Su-megha* *mt.* W. P. 370.  
*Sumerujā* *r.* M. P. 297.  
*Sumina* *p.* W. 338.  
*Su-mukha* *bd.* 3.  
*Sun* (*Sūrya* &c.) *q.* 147, 178, 280, 431, 455-461, 465, 466, 473, 474, 522, 535, 543, 550-553, 560-569, 580-588, 621, 626, 680.  
*Sunanda*, *club*, 604, 609.  
*Su-nandā* *q.* 604, 609, 611.  
*Su-naya* *k.* "12.

- Sunī? r. M. 297.  
 Su-nīti *pr.* 605.  
*Sunupār p.* N. 321.  
*Sun-worship*, 80, 173.  
*Supara t.* W. 338.  
*Su-pārśva bd.* 6.  
*Supārśva mts.* N. 277, 282.  
*Su-patra bd.* 3.  
*Su-prabhā r.* N. 290, 306.  
*Su-prabhā w.* 597, 600, 601.  
*Supratika, elephant*, 9.  
*Suprayogā r.* S. 303.  
*Supreme Being or Soul or Spirit*,  
 55, 63-65, 92, 198, 201-206, 210,  
 216, 217, 229, 414, 459, 532, 552-  
 555, 558, 570, 587, 588, 687; *see*  
 Brahman.  
*Sūra k.* 24.  
*Surā r. M. P.* 295.  
*Sūra? p.* NW. 313.  
*Sūra (son of Vatsapri) pr.* 610.  
*Surabhi dg.* 116, 117.  
*Surahādrumā r. M. P.* 296.  
*Surakṣa mt.* N. 279, 281.  
*Surāla p.* W. 338.  
*Surasa mt.* N. 279.  
*Surasā r. M. P.* 296.  
*Sūrasena k.* 351.  
*Sūrasena c. and p.* M. 307, 309,  
 351-354, 371, 377.  
*Surāṣṭra c. and p.* W. 288, 309,  
 340, 342, 344, 370, 446.  
*Surat t.* W. 340.  
*Su-ratha k. and c.* 273.  
*Su-ratha k.* 465, 466, 522, 523  
*Su-ratha k.* 601, 602.  
*Surathā r. M.* 296.  
*Su-reṇu r. M.* 290, 306.  
*Sūrpakarṣa h.* E. 356.  
*Sūrpāraka c., t. and p.* W. 289,  
 338.  
*Sursooty, see Sarasvatī r. M.*  
*Su-ruci q.* 420.  
*Su-rūpa gods.* 442.  
*Sūrya, see Sun.*  
*Sūrya h.* S. 365.  
*Sūryā? r. M. P.* 295.  
*Sūrya-kānta mts.* N. 389.  
*Sūryāraka? see Sūrpāraka.*  
*Sūrya-vaśśa dyn.* 308.  
*Su-sānti Manu, = Auttama.*  
*Susarasa mt.* 288.  
*Su-sarman k.* 321.  
*Su-sarman b.* 426.  
*Su-śobhanā q.* 665.  
*Sūta*, 28, 31.  
*Sutapa gods.* 464.  
*Su-tapas rs.* 270.  
*Su-tapas b.* 440.  
*Sūta-vaśśa dt.* E. 326.  
*Sūtika? p.* S. 332.  
*Sutlej r.* NW. 291, 292, 311, 312,  
 316, 324, 378-380.  
*Sūtpalāvātī r.* S. 304.  
*Su-varcas rs.* 540.  
*Su-varcas k.* 623.  
*Suveṇā r. C.* 300.  
*Su-vikrama pr.* 610.  
*Suvīra k.* 311, 315.  
*Suvīra p.* NW. 370.  
*Suvīra k.* 664.  
*Su-vrata rs.* 605.  
*Su-yaśṭavya k.* 449.  
*Svadhā*, 94, 151, 152, 163, 178, 249,  
 269, 270, 470, 483, 515, 527, 530-  
 532, 542.  
*Svadhāman gods.* 436.  
*Svāhā*, 94, 151, 152, 162, 249, 269,  
 270, 470, 483, 527, 542.  
*Svakambalā r.* NW. 389.  
*Svapaca p.* W. P. 339.  
*Svāpada p.* W. 339.  
*Svapāka p.* W. P. 339.  
*Svar*, 71, 206, 218, 227, 553.  
*Svara*, 130.  
*Svarakṣu mt.* N. 281.  
*Svarakṣu r.* N. 281.  
*Svarasa mt.* 288.  
*Sva-rāṣṭra k.* 438.  
*Svar-bhānu (Sun)*, 582.  
*Svarga* 36-41, 50, 57-61, 69-71,  
 75-78, 88-90, 147, 152, 168, 169,  
 279, 280, 283, 284, 310, 409, 443,  
 460, 462, 473, 513, 530, 652, 687,  
 688. [383].  
*Svarga-bhaumānavadyaka? p.* NE.  
*Svarṇa-śrṅgin mt.* N. 279.  
*Sva-rociś ps.* 401-415.  
*Svarociśa, Manu and manvantara*,  
 271, 391, 392, 398, 401, 406, 408,  
 411-415, 449, 466, 549.  
*Sva-rūpa pr.* 610.  
*Svastika posture*, 195.  
*Svāti cst.* 169, 370.  
*Svayam-bhū g., see Self-existent.*  
*Svāyambhuva, Manu and man-*  
*vantara*, 247, 248, 270-274, 403,  
 424, 448, 449, 549.

- Svayaṁ-hārikā *gb.* 257, 260, 265.  
 Sveta *k.* and *c.* 273.  
 Sveta *mts.* N. 275, 276.  
 Sveta-giri *mt.* N. 287, 381.  
 Sveta-parva *mt.* NE. 388.  
 Sveta-parvata, *see* Svetagiri.  
 Svetodara *mt.* N. 279.  
 Syāmā *cer.* 165.  
 Syāmā *r.* NW. 389.  
 Syāmā *r.* NW. 389.  
 Syāmaka *p.* N. 380.  
 Syāmaka *cer.* 165, 245.  
 Syeni *semi-gs.* 559.  
 Tailaṅga *p.* S. 367.  
 Taittirika *p.* W. 339.  
 Takka *p.* NW. 379.  
 Takṣaka *d. k.* 379, 648.  
 Takṣa-silā *t.* NW. 379.  
 Tāla *tr.* 27.  
 Tāla (*music*), 131.  
 Tāla *t.* S. 411, 412.  
 Talagāna *p.* N. 321.  
 Tālajaṅgha *p.* M. 371.  
 Tāla-ketu *d.* 121, 122, 125.  
 Tamaḥ-pracchādaka *gb.* 265.  
 Tamāla *tr.* 28.  
 Tāmalipta-ka *p.* E. 330, 357, 358.  
 Tāmarasa *pt.* 30.  
 Tamas, *hell.* 71, 72, 152.  
 Tamasā *r.* M. 296, 298.  
 Tāmusa *mt.* N. 278.  
 Tāmusa, Manu *and* manvantara.  
 271, 437, 438, 442, 549.  
 Tāmusa *p.* N. 323, 347.  
 Tāmāsī *r.* M. 296.  
 Tamba *rs.* 415.  
 Tamiḥ *p.* S. 370.  
 Tāmisa, *hell.* 152.  
 Tamluk *t.* E. 301, 327, 330.  
 Tāmra *d.* 479.  
 Tāmra, *semi-gs.* 559.  
 Tāmrahvaya-dvīpa *c.* 367.  
 Tāmra-ka *mt.* N. 279.  
 Tāmralipta-ka *c.* and *t.* E. 301, 329, 330.  
 Tāmraparva *c.* 284.  
 Tāmraparvī *r.* S. 303, 367.  
 Tāmraparvī *p.* *r.* SE. 305.  
 Tāmraparvī *t.* and *isl.* S. 367.  
 Tāmraparvī *h.* S. 367.  
 Tāmraparvī *dt.* S. 367.  
 Tāmra-varva *c.* 284.  
 Tanapa *p.* N. 321.  
 Tanaya *p.* N. *p.* 321.  
 Tangana *p.* N. 316, 317, 322, 323, 346, 375, 381, 382.  
 Tañjor *dt.* S. 332.  
 Tañkapa *p.* N. 323.  
 Tan-mātra, 231.  
 Tāpasa *p.* W. 339.  
 Tāpasāśrama *p.* S. 339, 366.  
 Tapatī *q.* 461, 567, 576.  
 Tāpī *r.* C. and W. 299.  
 Tapo-loka, 553.  
 Tapo-rati *b.* 590.  
 Tapo-vana *for.* 669.  
 Tapta-kumbha, *hell.* 71, 74, 83.  
 Tapti *r.* C. and W. 285, 286, 299, 335, 336, 340, 344, 365, 368.  
 Tārakṣati, Tārakṣiti, *dt.* W. 372.  
 Tārakṣura *p.* NW. *p.* 372.  
 Tārksī *bd.* 6, 8.  
 Tārkyya *p.* NW. *p.* 372.  
 Taru-jit *d.* 663.  
 Taste (*element*), 217, 221, 222.  
 Taupdikera *p.* C. *p.* 371.  
 Taxila *t.* NW. 379.  
 Teal *bd.* 30.  
 Teesta *r.* NE. 293.  
 Teliṅga *c.* and *p.* SE. 334, 337, 367.  
 Telugu *p.* S. 334, 337, 367.  
 Tendukhera *t.* C. 344.  
 Tephrodornis *bd.* 28.  
 Terminalia *tr.* 26.  
 Tern *bd.* 86.  
 Tetrao *bd.* 28.  
 Tewar *t.* C. 343, 371.  
 Thāmi *p.* N. 322.  
 Thibet *c.* 319, 323.  
 Thunder-bolt, 2, 75.  
 Til *pt.* 84.  
 Tila *pt.* 84; *see* Sesamum.  
 Tilaṅga *p.* N. 308.  
 Tilaṅga *p.* S. 367.  
 Tilottamā *aps.* 4, 571.  
 Time, measures of, 224-228, 459 543, 580.  
 Tindaka *tr.* 24, 25.  
 Tindu-ka *tr.* 24, 26.  
 Tinnevely *dt.* S. 331.  
 Tippera hills, E. 306.  
 Tīr *bd.* 86.  
 Tittira *p.* 339.  
 Tittiri *bd.* 86.  
 Tochari *p.* N. 320.  
 Todya (*music*), 132.  
 Tomara *p.* N. 323.

- Tons r. M.* 296.  
*Tortoise*, 30, 49, 84, 85, 181, 195, 278, 348, 349, 355, 358, 367, 374, 376, 381, 384-387, 417.  
*Tortures*, 48, 49, 66-68, 72-90.  
*Tośala p. C.* 342.  
*Touch (element)*, 217, 221, 222.  
*Towns*, 240-242.  
*Toya r. C.* 301.  
*Trade*, 101, 108, 214.  
*Traigarta p. N.* 347.  
*Traipura p. C.* 343, 360.  
*Transmigration*, 3, 5, 8-18, 38, 48-50, 54, 66-71, 77-88, 91, 158, 280.  
*Travancore dt. S.* 367.  
*Tretā age*, 32, 224, 226, 235, 239, 243, 272, 347, 387, 388, 437.  
*Tribhāgā r. E.* 304.  
*Trichinopoly dt. S.* 332.  
*Tridivā r. C.* 298.  
*Tridivā r. E.* 305.  
*Tridivācalā r. E.* 305.  
*Trigarta c. N.* 321, 324, 346-349, 372, 377-382.  
*Triḥ-srotasī r. NE. ?* 293.  
*Trilinga c. and p. SE.* 367.  
*Tri-netra p. NE.* 384.  
*Tripīṣṭapa dt. M.* 290.  
*Tripurā t. C.* 343, 360, 371.  
*Trisāmā r. SE.* 304, 305.  
*Trisāṅku k.* 339.  
*Tri-śikha mt. NW.* 281.  
*Tri-srotas r. NE. ?* 293.  
*Tri-suparṇa hymns*, 160.  
*Tritīyā r. E. ?* 293.  
*Triyāmā r. SE.* 304.  
*Truthfulness*, 14, 15, 35, 39, 41, 66, 68, 88, 122, 151, 568, 640.  
*Trumpet-flower tr.* 20.  
*Tryambakā gs.* 513.  
*Tukhāra p. N.* 320, 350, 353.  
*Tulsi pt.* 164.  
*Tumba pt.* 118.  
*Tumbara p. C.* 343.  
*Tumbhadra r. S.* 303.  
*Tumbula p. C.* 343.  
*Tumbuma p. C.* 343.  
*Tumbura p. C.* 343.  
*Tumburu rs.* 12, (118), 571, 647, 648.  
*Tumura p. C.* 343.  
*Tunaya gdh.* 646, 648.  
*Tuṇḍikera p. C.* 344.  
*Tunga r. S.* 303.  
*Tuṅga-bhadrā r. S.* 303.  
*Tuṅgana p. N.* 323.  
*Tuṅga-prastha mt.* 288.  
*Turasita p. W.* 339.  
*Turdus bd.* 49, 58.  
*Turk p.* 372.  
*Turkestan c. N.* 324, 372.  
*Turmeric pt.* 165.  
*Turuṣka p. W.* 372.  
*Turvasu k.* 623, 653.  
*Tuṣāru p. N.* 319, 320.  
*Tuṣita gods*, 415.  
*Tuṣṭikāra p. C.* 344.  
*Tvaṅgana p. NE.* 382.  
*Tvaṣṭṛ g.* 21, 22, 120, 455-460, 569, 605.  
*Uccaiḥ-śravas, horse*, 494, 495.  
*Udagra d.* 476, 479.  
*Udāna, air*, 66, 204.  
*Udāra cer.* 244.  
*Udāvasu k.* 612.  
*Udaya-giri h. M.* 357.  
*Udaya-giri h. E.* 356.  
*Udbhida k. and c.* 273.  
*Udbhida p. S.* 337.  
*Uddhata d.* 479.  
*Udgītha*, 484.  
*Udumbara p. M.* 355.  
*Udumbara c. W.* 355.  
*Udumbara tr.* 182, 192, 255.  
*Udumbarāvati r. S.* 355.  
*Ugra dg.* 268.  
*Ugra k.* 454.  
*Ugra-darsana d.* 476, 480.  
*Ugrāsya d.* 479.  
*Ugra-vīrya d.* 479.  
*Ugrāyudha k.* 350, 598.  
*Uḥkani t. M.* 351.  
*Ujjain t. C.* 295, 345, 521.  
*Ujjayanta mt. W.* 288.  
*Ujjayini t. C.* 295, 345.  
*Ujjihāna p. M.* 350, 351.  
*Ukti gb.* 257, 258, 262.  
*Ulāka p. N.* 346, 375.  
*Umā gs.* 132, 269.  
*Umbilical cord*, 70.  
*Unmattā gb.* 264.  
*Unnata rs.* 454.  
*Upa-giri dt. N.* 325, 328.  
*Upaṇiṣad*, 259.  
*Upaṇiveśa*, 318.  
*Upaplava, -vya. l. M.* 307.  
*Upupa bd.* 80.

- Urdamaru *p.* N. 376.  
 Ūrdhva-bāhu *rs.* 270, 449.  
 Ūrdhva-karpa *p.* SE. 342, 360.  
 Ūrja *rs.* 415.  
 Ūrjā *w.* 249, 270.  
 Ūrjasvin *g.* 462.  
 Urjihānā *t.* M. 351.  
 Ūrpa *p.* and *c.* N. 324, 346, 376.  
 Urū, Ūru, *k.* 454.  
 Urukarma ? *pl.* N. 376.  
 Urvaśī *aps.* and *q.* 4, 571.  
 Uśanas *dg.* 9, 10, 58.  
 Uśnara *k.* 333, 377-380.  
 Uśnara *p.* M. 377.  
 Uśira *gr.* 79.  
 Uśira-vīja *rs.* 653.  
 Uśua *k.* and *c.* 273.  
 Utkala *k.* 589.  
 Utkala *p.* and *c.* E. 299, 327, 329, 334, 341, 589.  
 Utpala *pt.* 29.  
 Utpalā *r.* S. 304.  
 Utpalāvata-ka *for.* 425.  
 Utpalāvati *r.* S. 304.  
 Utpalāvati *q.* 439.  
 Utsarga *oblation,* 151, 153.  
 Utsava-saṅketa *p.* N., W. and S. 319, 337.  
 Uttama *p.* C. ? 342.  
 Uttama *k.* 419, 420, 423-425, 429, 432, 435, 436.  
 Uttamarpa *p.* C. 342.  
 Uttānapāda *k.* 247, 248, 419, 420, 423.  
 Uttānapāla *k.* 112.  
 Vābhavya *pat., see* Bābhavya.  
 Vābhru, *see* Bābhru.  
 Vācaspati *dg.* 626.  
 Vadana-dantura *p.* E. 356, 357.  
 Vadantika ? *p.* N. 379.  
 Vādhadhāna ? *p.* NW. 312.  
 Vadhra *p.* N. 378.  
 Vahirgira *p.* E. 325.  
 Vahir-giri *p.* E. 325.  
 Vahir-giri *dt.* NE. 325, 328.  
 Vāhlika *k.* 311.  
 Vāhlika *p.* NW. 311, 315, 375.  
 Vāhya ? *p.* M. 354.  
 Vāhyā *r.* S. 303.  
 Vāhyatodara ? *p.* N. 320.  
 Vaihāra *mt.* M. 286.  
 Vaihhrāja *for.* N. 278, 281.  
 Vaihhrāja *mt.* M. 286.  
 Vaidehaka *p.* M. 352.  
 Vaidika ? *p.* C. 343.  
 Vaidiśa *p.* M. 343, 627, 630.  
 Vaidūrya *mt.* W. and C. 279, 287, 299, 365.  
 Vaidyanātha *k.* E. 287.  
 Vaidyuta *k.* and *c.* 273.  
 Vaidyuta *mt.* 287.  
 Vaigai *r.* S. 304.  
 Vaihāra *mt.* M. 286.  
 Vaikārika, 221.  
 Vaikuṇṭha *k.* 449.  
 Vaiṇava *k.* and *c.* 273.  
 Vaiṇī *r.* S. 303.  
 Vaippar *r.* 304.  
 Vaipracitta *pat.* d. 517.  
 Vairāṭa *c.* M. 288, 307.  
 Vairocana *d.* 465.  
 Vaisāli *pat.* 426.  
 Vaisāli *t.* M. 329, 600.  
 Vaisālinī *prs.* 625, 627.  
 Vaisikya *p.* S. 334.  
 Vaiṣṇava *sect.* 108.  
 Vaisya *caste,* 74, 318, 671; *its duties, &c.,* 148, 591, 594, 597.  
 Vaitaraṇī *r.* E. 300, 334.  
 Vaitariṇī, *fabulous r.* 54.  
 Vaivasvata, Manu *and* manvantara, 271, 341, 350, 368, 454-463, 517, 549, 551, 566, 568, 575, 576, 587-590, (600), 617, 666.  
 Vāji-keśa *p.* NW. 374.  
 Vājivāsika ? *p.* S. 333.  
 Vajra-ketu *d.* 115.  
 Vaka *bd.* 58.  
 Vaka *p.* N. 376.  
 Vakṣu *r.* NW. 292, 324.  
 Vakula *tr.* 26.  
 Vala ? *pl.* NW. 375.  
 Valaka *rs.* 442.  
 Valāka *d.* 425, 426.  
 Valāva ? *pl.* NW. 375.  
 Vamana *p.* NW. 372.  
 Vāmana *incarnation,* 21.  
 Vamśa-dharā *r.* SE. 305.  
 Vamśa-dhāriṇī *r.* SE. 305.  
 Vamśa-karā *r.* SE. 305.  
 Vamśa-varā *r.* SE. 305.  
 Vanadāraka *p.* S. 337.  
 Vānaprastha, 149, 150, 216, 616, 675, 681.  
 Vana-rāṣṭra-ka ? *p.* and *c.* NE. 382.

- Vānava *p.* NW. ? 372.  
 Vanavāhyaka *p.* NE. 383.  
 Vanavāsaka *p.* S. 333, 364.  
 Vanavāsi, *c.* S. 333.  
 Vanavāsika *p.* S. 333.  
 Vanavāsin *c.* S. 333, 364.  
 Vanāyu, Vānāyu, *c.* and *p.* NW. 372.  
 Vaṅga *k.* 325, 326.  
 Vaṅga *p.* and *c.* E. 324-329, 334.  
 Vaṅgeya *p.* = Vaṅga.  
 Vanitā-mukha *p.* W. 368.  
 Vañjukā *r.* M. 297.  
 Vañjula *tr.* 28.  
 Vañjulā *r.* M. 297.  
 Vañjulā *r.* S. 302, 303.  
 Vañkṣu *r.* NW. 292, 389.  
 Vapantī ? *r.* C. 295.  
 Vapu *aps.* 1, 2, 5-8.  
 Vapuṣ-mat *k.* 272, 273.  
 Vapuṣ-mat *pr.* 670, 673-683.  
 Vapuṣ-matī *q.* 665.  
 Vara *sf.* 433.  
 Varā *pra.* 627.  
 Varadā *r.* C. 300.  
 Varadā *r.* S. 303.  
 Varāha *incarnation*, 21.  
 Varāha *g.* 505, 509.  
 Vārāha kalpa, 228.  
 Vārāhādri *mt.* N. 279.  
 Vāraṇāhvaya *t.* M. 355.  
 Vāraṇa-sāhvaya *t.* M. 355.  
 Vārāpasī (*Benares*) *t.* M. 308, 654  
 Vārāpasī *t.* E. 360.  
 Vāraṇa-sthala *t.* M. 351, 355.  
 Vāraṇāvata *t.* M. 347, 355.  
 Vardhamāna *mts.* NW. 388.  
 Vardhamāna *p.* E. 358.  
 Vāri-cara *p.* S. 365.  
 Varmavat (*town*), 242.  
 Varuṇā *r.* S. 303.  
 Varṇāśā *r.* M. 286, 294.  
 Vārtaki *pt.* 167.  
 Vartula *pt.* 84.  
 Varuṇa *g.* 10, 122, 125, 153, 473, 474, 489, 494, 535, 538, 545, 562, 588, 589, 621, 680.  
 Varuṇā *r.* N. 392.  
 Vāruṇa *c.* 284.  
 Vāruṇa *cat.* 381  
 Varuṇoda *l.* N. 278, 381.  
 Varūtha *k.* 446.  
 Varūthinī *aps.* 391, 394-402.  
 Varva *p.* N. 376.  
 Varvara *p.* NW., NE. and S. 319, 369, 372.  
 Vagaṭ, 151, 152, 444, 470, 545.  
 Vasati (*village*), 242.  
 Vasa-vartin *gods*, 436, 437.  
 Vāsika *p.* W. 339.  
 Vasiṣṭha *rs.* 59, 246, 249, 270, 289, 314, 336, 462, 570, 590, 615.  
 Vasiṣṭha *rs.* 449.  
 Vasiṣṭha *dg.* 403.  
 Vāsiṣṭha *pat.* b. 612.  
 Vāskala *d.* 476, 479.  
 Vasu *g.* 129, 168, 460, 461, 474.  
 Vasu *k.* (*of Cedi*), 330, 359.  
 Vasu *k.* (*of Magadha*), 330.  
 Vāsudeva *k.* and *g.* 3, 19-21, 55.  
 Vasu-dhāra *mt.* N. 279.  
 Vasu-homa *k.* 655.  
 Vāsuki, Nāga *k.* 648.  
 Vasu-mat *k.* 463.  
 Vasu-mat ? *mt.* N. 376.  
 Vasurāta *pr.* 599.  
 Vāsya *k.* and *c.* 273.  
 Vāsyatā ? *r.* S. 302.  
 Vāṭadhāna *k.* 312.  
 Vāṭadhāna *p.* NW. 312, 378.  
 Vātā-rūpā *gb.* 267.  
 Vātasvana *mt.* 277.  
 Vatsa *k.* 307.  
 Vatsa *c.* and *p.* M. 307, 341, 351.  
 Vatsa-prī *k.* 604, 607, 610.  
 Vatsari ? *r.* S. 302.  
 Vātsya *c.* and *p.* M. 307, 341.  
 Vāyu (*Wind*) *g.* 6, 10, 22, 23, 147, 178, 473, 474, 489, 562, 582, 648.  
 Veda-bāhu *rs.* 449.  
 Vedamali *r.* S. 303.  
 Veda-mantra *p.* M. 349.  
 Vedānta 129, 683.  
 Veda, 553-557, 685-687.  
 Vedasini *r.* M. 293.  
 Veda-siras *rs.* 269.  
 Veda-smṛtā, -ti, *r.* M. 293.  
 Veda-srī *rs.* 449.  
 Veda-trayī ? *r.* M. 295.  
 Veda-vatī *r.* N. 293.  
 Veda-vatī *r.* S. 303.  
 Vēdi-pālā *r.* C. ? 300.  
 Vegetables, 165, 166, 244, 245.  
 Vega-vahinī *r.* M. ? 298.  
 Vena *k.* 146, 320, 588.  
 Veṇā *r.* S. 300.  
 Veṇā *r.*, see Veṇvā and Veṇyā.  
 Veṇī *r.* S. 362.

- Venika p. W. P 373.  
 Vepuā r. S. 303.  
 Vepu mt. N. 278.  
 Vepugradha pt. 245.  
 Vepuka ṣ. N. 379.  
 Vepu-matī r. W. 373.  
 Vepu-matī r. NW. P 375.  
 Venus, planet, 9, 207, 431, 626.  
 Vepvā r. N. 286, 294.  
 Vepvā r. N. P 294.  
 Vepvā r. W. 289.  
 Vepvā r. S. 294, 300.  
 Vepvā r. C. 300, 362.  
 Vepvā r. S. 303, 362.  
 Vepūpāsā p. r. C. P 300.  
 Vetāla gb. 46, 47.  
 Vetasini r. M. 293.  
 Vetra-vatī r. M. 295, 343.  
 Vetra-vatī r. W. 295.  
 Vibhāvarī demi-gs. 402, 406-408, 411.  
 Vibhītaka tr. 26.  
 Vibodha bd. 3.  
 Vibhu g. 449.  
 Vibhūti k. 623.  
 Vicu pt. 165.  
 Vicī-kāka bd. 86.  
 Viḍāla d. 476, 479.  
 Vidarbha c. C. 76, 293, 299, 335, 343, 359, 360, 365, 618, 664, 670.  
 Vidarbha k. 335.  
 Vidarbhā t. C. 335.  
 Vidarbhā q. 454.  
 Vidoḡha pr. 330.  
 Videha c. and p. M. 75, 294, 329, 330, 352, 356, 374.  
 Vidhātṛ g. 10, 153, 154, 269.  
 Vidisā t. M. 295, 342, 343, 625, 627.  
 Vidisā r. M. 295.  
 Vidūratha k. 578.  
 Vidūratha k. 604, 605, 677.  
 Vidūratha k. 677.  
 Vi-dveṣaṇī gb. 257, 261, 267.  
 Vidyā (Science), 128.  
 Vidyādhara dg. 115, 279, 401-404, 407, 460, 571, 679.  
 Vidyud-rūpa d. 6-8.  
 Vighna-rāj dg. P 32.  
 Vigna pt. 165.  
 Viṣa-hāriṇī gb. 257, 261, 267.  
 Viṣalpā gb. 262.  
 Viṣāpahāriṇī gb. 261.  
 Viṣa-pūraka tr. 25.  
 Vijaya k. 411.  
 Vijaya t. NE. 411.  
 Vikāra 228, 231, 232.  
 Vikrama pr. 610.  
 Vikrama-sīla k. 445.  
 Vikrānta pr. 140-143.  
 Vikrānta k. 449-452.  
 Vikṛti gs. 263.  
 Village, ancient, 242.  
 Vilolā r. M. 455 (=Yamunā)  
 Vimalā r. N. 305.  
 Vimalā r. E. P 305.  
 Vimalodā r. N. 305, 306.  
 Vimalodakā r. N. P 290, 306.  
 Vimāṇḍavya p. M. 349.  
 Vimarda k. 438.  
 Vimba pt. 114.  
 Viṁśa k. 618.  
 Viṣa r. S. P 303.  
 Vinaśana t. M. 290, 310, 312.  
 Vinata k. 589.  
 Vinatā demi-gs. 559.  
 Vinatāśva k. 589.  
 Vinaya k. 589.  
 Vinda k. 345.  
 Vindhaculaka p. N. 374.  
 Vindhya mts. C. 3, 11, 12, 17, 19, 285, 286, 298, 299, 310, 331, 340-344, 360, 517.  
 Vindhya-mauleya p. C. 335.  
 Vindhya-mūlika p. C. 335.  
 Vindhya-pūṣika p. C. 335.  
 Vindhyaavat m. 116.  
 Vinnā r. C. 300.  
 Vipāsā r. N. 292.  
 Vipāsā r. C. 297.  
 Vipāscit g. 415.  
 Vipāscit k. 75, 76, 83.  
 Vipāṭhā q. 446.  
 Vipracitti d. 21, 102, 517.  
 Viprasastaka p. W. 372.  
 Viprāṣika pt. 165.  
 Vipula mts. N. 277, 281.  
 Vipulasvat rs. 12.  
 Vira k. 618.  
 Vira k. 627.  
 Virā q. 625, 631, 632, 637, 639, 65., 653, 658, 664.  
 Virā r. 297.  
 Vira-bhadra k. 627.  
 Virahotra p. C. 344.  
 Virajā r. M. P 297.  
 Virājaka mt. N. 279.  
 Virajas rs. 269.

- Virajas *rs.* 454.  
 Virāṅkarā *r.* 297.  
 Virāṭa *k.* 353, 382.  
 Vira-vatī *r.* 297.  
 Virodhinī *gb.* 257, 260, 265.  
 Virtue (see Righteousness), 2, 14, 34, 36, 468.  
 Virūpa *gb.* 263.  
 Vīrya-candra *k.* 625.  
 Vīrya-hārī *gb.* 265.  
 Viśākhā *cat.* 169, 370.  
 Viśākha-vat *mt.* N. 279.  
 Viśālā *mts.* NW. 388.  
 Viśālā *b.* 426.  
 Viśālā *k.* 627, 630-636, 641-646, 650.  
 Viśālā, *village*, 452, 453.  
 Viśālā *r.* E. 290, 297, 306.  
 Viśālā *t.* M. 345.  
 Viśālā *r.* C. 297.  
 Viṣṇu *g.* 1, 2, 10, 17, 20, 21, 40, 70, 98-102, 106, 108, 112, 130, 206, 219, 224, 225, 278, 290, 348, 349, 387, 389, 460, 465, 469-474, 489, 490, 502-505, 509, 512, 514, 522, 545, 555-558, 572, 574, 582, 588, 686.  
 Viśoka *mts.* NW. 388.  
 Viśvācī *ups.* 571.  
 Viśva-garbha *k.* 669.  
 Viśva-karman (=Tvastṛ) *g.* 455-460, 475, 566, 569, 572, 574.  
 Viśva-kṛt *g.* = Viśva-karman.  
 Viśva-mālā *r.* E. ? 301.  
 Viśvāmitra *rs.* 32-47, 50, 55-60, 309, 314, 347, 357, 462, 464, 591.  
 Viśvāvasu *d.* 113, 115.  
 Viśva-vedin *m.* 612-615.  
 Viśve Devās. *gods.* 32, 37, 153-156, 161, 163, 168, 178, 253, 461, 462.  
 Vīṭahavya *f.* 371, 600.  
 Vīṭahotra *p.* C. 344.  
 Vīṭal *airs.* 66, 197, 202-204.  
 Vitastā *r.* N. 291, 438.  
 Vīṭihotra *k.* 344.  
 Vīṭihotra *p.* C. 344, 371.  
 Vivasvat (*Sun*) *g.* 455, 457, 523, 566, 576, 577, 586.  
 Vivimśa, -śati, *k.* 618, 619.  
 Viśugapatam *t.* SE. 334, 335.  
 Vraja *dt.* and *p.* M. 308.  
 Vrata-ghnī *r.* M. P. 293.  
 Vṛhad-ratha *k.* 330.  
 Vṛhaspati 10, 50, 101, 102, 109.  
 Vṛhaspati *rs.* 654.  
 Vṛthi *cer.* 165.  
 Vṛjī *dt.* M. 309.  
 Vṛka *k.* 309.  
 Vṛka *p.* M. 309.  
 Vṛṣabha *mt.* N. 279-282.  
 Vṛṣa-dhvaja *k.* E. 356.  
 Vṛṣaparvan *k.* 669.  
 Vṛṣavat *mt.* N. 278.  
 Vṛṣni *p.* W. 336.  
 Vṛtra *d.* 4, 22, 514.  
 Vṛtra-ghnī *r.* M. P. 293.  
 Vulture *bd.* 46, 53, 72, 74, 85, 208, 263, 680.  
 Vyāghra-grīva *p.* SE. 360.  
 Vyāghra-mukha *k.* E. 356.  
 Vyāna (*vital air*), 204.  
 Vyañjana-hārikā *gb.* 266.  
 Vyāsa *rs.* 2, 18, 20, 464, 677, 686.  
 Vyūṣitāśva *k.* 316, 350.  
 Wages, 43, 46-50.  
 Wain-gaṅgā *r.* C. 300, 305, 363.  
 Warangal *t.* S. 337.  
 Warda *r.* S. 300, 364.  
 Water (*element*), 217, 221, 222.  
 Water-fowl, 30.  
 Water-lily, 29, 30, 104, 115.  
 Wealth (*Artha*), 2, 119, 128, 170-172, 185, 187, 198, 252, 264, 430.  
 Well-rope and jar, 70-73, 91.  
 Wheat, 84, 165, 181, 244, 245.  
 Wind, see Vāyu.  
 Wine, 421.  
 Wolf 72, 82, 85.  
 Wood-pecker *bd.* 28.  
 Wool, 40.  
 Worlds (*Loka*), 20, 22, 55, 57, 71, 89, 95, 96, 102, 103, 110, 111, 116, 124, 128, 144, 151, 201, 206, 218, 223, 225, 227, 229, 246, 397, 462, 574, 662.  
 Xanthochymus *tr.* 28.  
 Yādava *race*, 309, 336, 342, 351, 352, 359, 371.  
 Yadu *k.* 26, 364, 371.  
 Yajña *pfn.* 247, 248.  
 Yajur-Veda, 152, 206, 235.  
 Yajus *hymns*, 64, 235, 458, 460, 484, 554-557, 561, 581.  
 Yak *bt.* 166.



- Yākhā p.* N. 322.  
*Yakṣa dg.* 46, 115, 232, 234, 236, 246, 272, 279, 460, 497, 541, 559, 571, 581, 648, 679.  
*Yakṣma*, 179.  
*Yama g.* 7, 10, 23, 48, 50, 66-68, 71-77, 80-83, 88-90, 147, 153, 162, 209, 215, 263, 420, 455, 457, 460, 473, 474, 489, 533, 562, 566-568, 574, 575, 579, 680, 683.  
*Yāma gods*, 248.  
*Yamī demi-gs.* 566.  
*Yamunā r.* M. 121, 122, 125, 291, 377, 378, 455, 461, 566, 576, 590.  
*Yāmuna hills* N. 377, 378.  
*Yāmuna p.* N. 377.  
*Yāmya cst.* 384.  
*Yasodā q.* 517.  
*Yaso-matī ? r.* N. 380.  
*Yasomatya p.* N. 380.
- Yati (music)*, 132.  
*Yatudhāna gb.* 262.  
*Yaudheya p.* NW. 333, 380.  
*Yauna p.* (=Yavana), 381.  
*Yavana p.* NW. 284, 311, 314, 318, 319, 328, 350, 371, 377, 384, 466, 677.  
*Yayāti k.* 316, 336, 371, 384, 623, 653, 669.  
*Year*, 224-228, 271.  
*Yena ? p.* NE. 381.  
*Yoga*, 91, 92, 100, 133.  
*Yojana*, 240, 275-277, 284.  
*Yudhisthira k.* 9, 23, 353, 366.  
*Yuga*, 226.  
*Yunjavat ? mt.* N. 655.  
*Yūthaga gods*, 454.
- Zizyphus tr.* 27.  
*Zodiac*, 169, 348, 387, 580.

